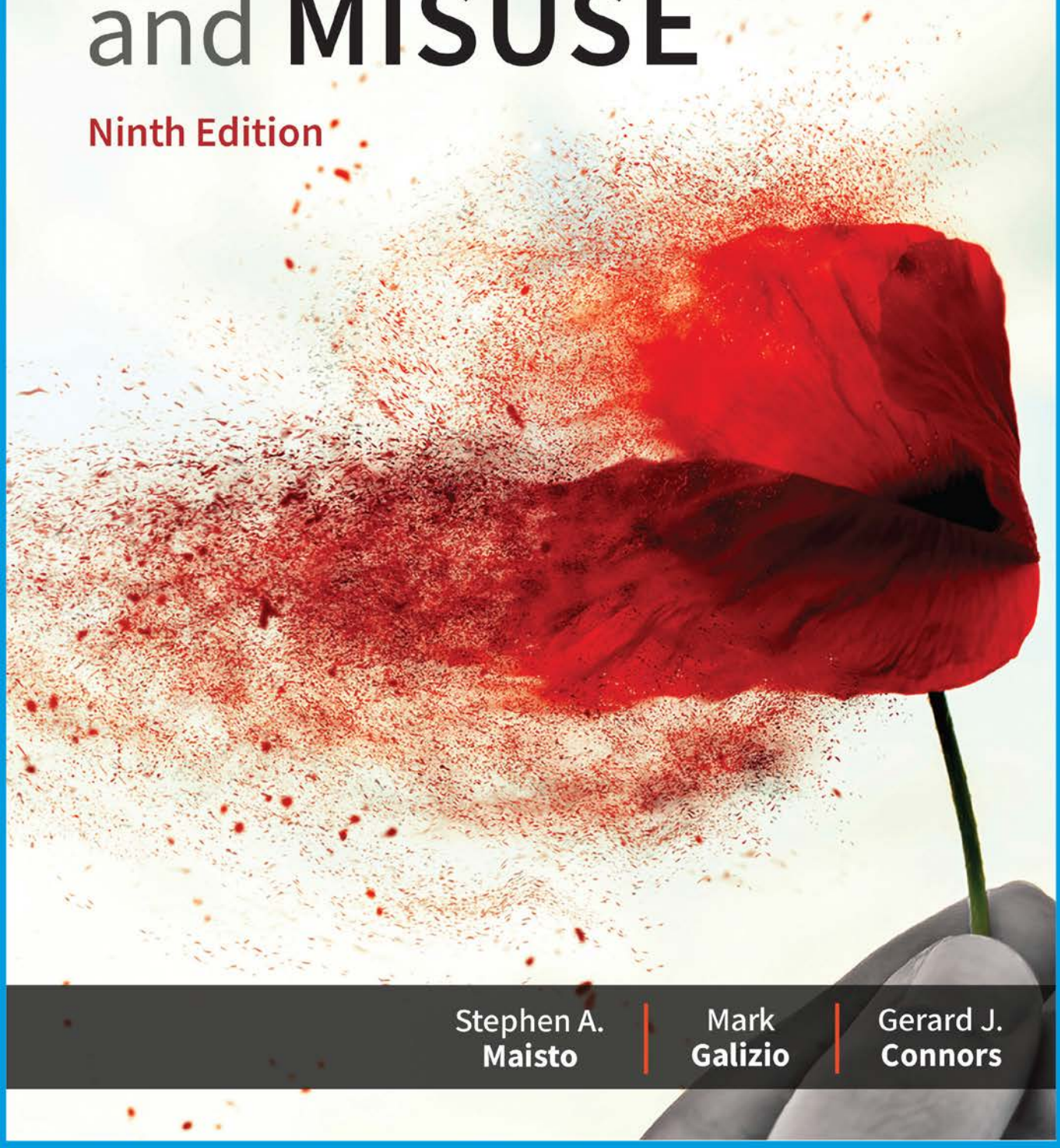
CENGAGE

DRUG USE and MISUSE

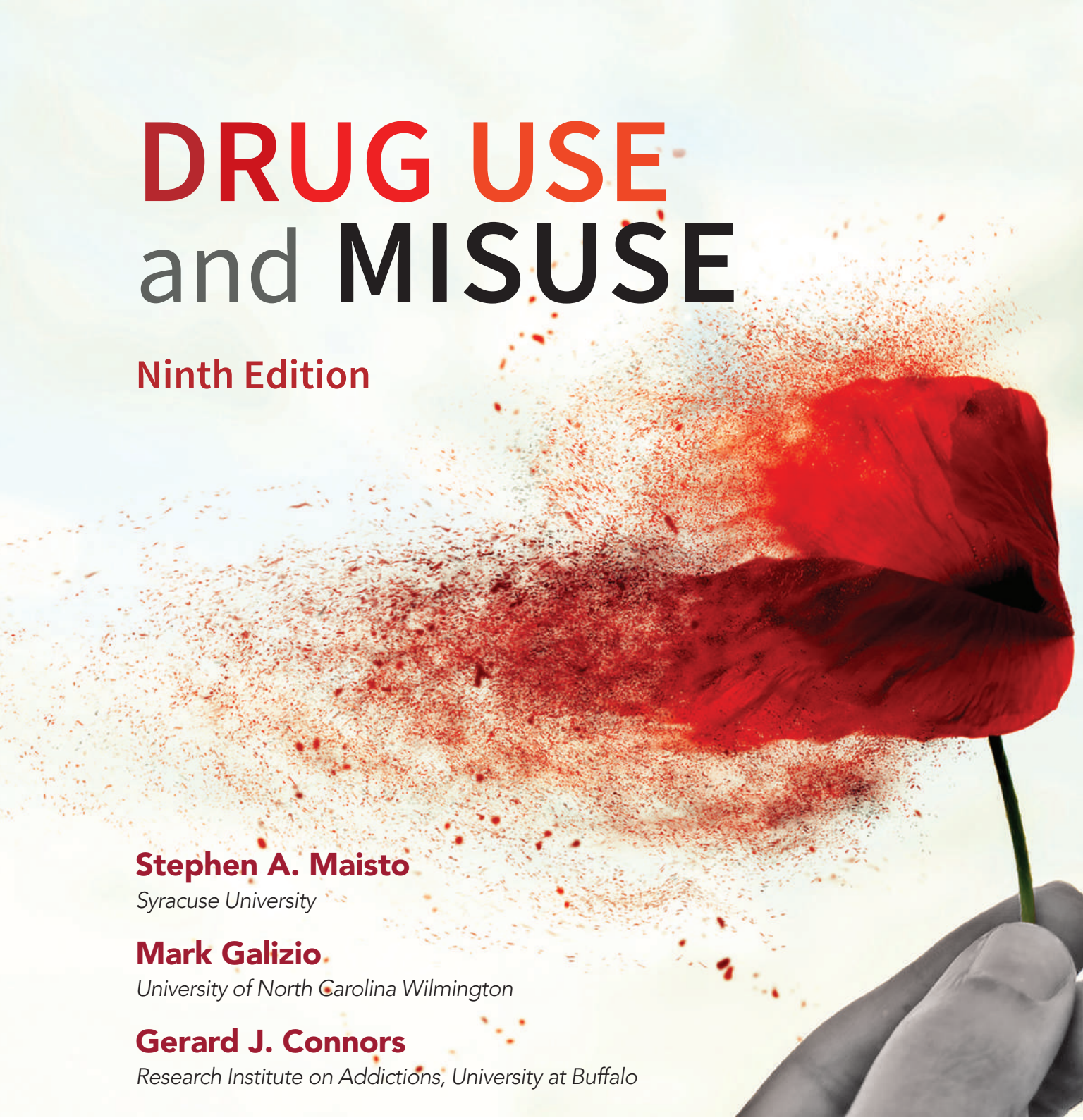
Ninth Edition



Stephen A. Maisto | Mark Galizio | Gerard J. Connors

DRUG USE and MISUSE

Ninth Edition



Stephen A. Maisto
Syracuse University

Mark Galizio
University of North Carolina Wilmington

Gerard J. Connors
Research Institute on Addictions, University at Buffalo

CENGAGE

Australia • Brazil • Canada • Mexico • Singapore • United Kingdom • United States

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

This is an electronic version of the print textbook. Due to electronic rights restrictions, some third party content may be suppressed. Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. The publisher reserves the right to remove content from this title at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it. For valuable information on pricing, previous editions, changes to current editions, and alternate formats, please visit www.cengage.com/highered to search by ISBN#, author, title, or keyword for materials in your areas of interest.

Important Notice: Media content referenced within the product description or the product text may not be available in the eBook version.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CENGAGE

***Drug Use and Misuse*, 9th Edition**
Stephen A. Maisto, Mark Galizio, and Gerard J. Connors

Product Director: Laura Ross

Associate Product Manager: Cazzie Reyes

Learning Designer: Natasha Allen

Manager, Content Creation: Kevin O'Brien

Content Manager: Jacqueline Czel

Product Assistant: Jessica Witczak

Marketing Manager: Tricia Salata

Art Director: Bethany Bourgeois

Intellectual Property Analyst: Deanna Ettinger

Digital Delivery QP: Scott Diggins

Manufacturing Planner: Karen Hunt

Production Services: Lumina Datamatics, Inc.

Production Services: Integra

Cover Image Credit: iStock.com/stock_colors

Production Management and Composition: Lumina Datamatics, Inc.

© 2022, 2019 Cengage Learning, Inc.

WCN: 02-300

Unless otherwise noted, all content is © Cengage.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at **Cengage Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706.**

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at **www.cengage.com/permissions.** Further permissions questions can be e-mailed to **permissionrequest@cengage.com.**

Library of Congress Control Number: 2021937456

Soft-Cover Edition: ISBN: 978-0-357-37595-2

Loose-Leaf Edition: ISBN: 978-0-357-37602-7

Cengage
200 Pier 4 Boulevard
Boston, MA 02210
USA

Cengage is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with employees residing in nearly 40 different countries and sales in more than 125 countries around the world. Find your local representative at **www.cengage.com.**

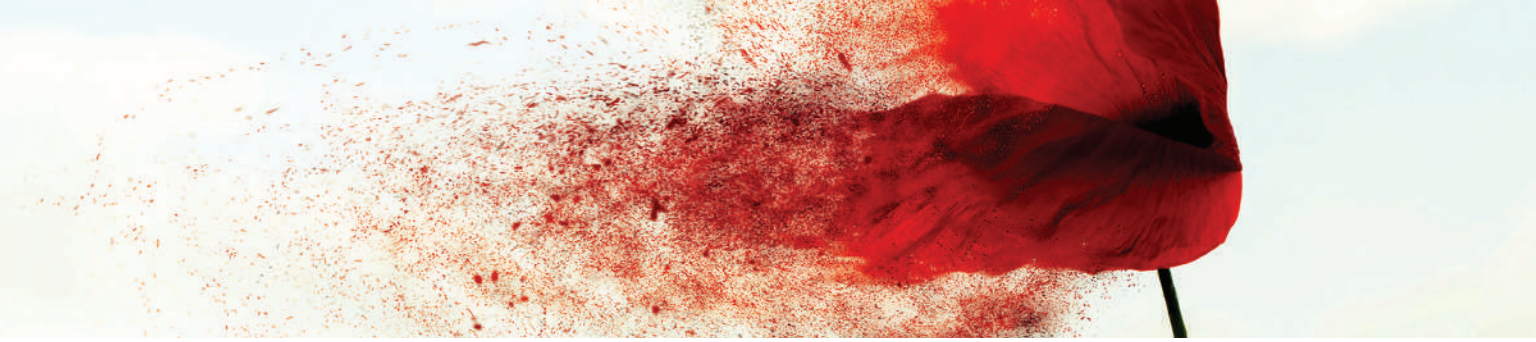
Cengage products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

To learn more about Cengage Learning Solutions, visit **www.cengage.com.**

Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store, **www.cengage.com.**

Printed in the United States of America
Print Number: 02 Print Year: 2021

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



To Joseph A. Maisto
S. A. M.

To Kate and Annie
M. G.

To Elyse and Guy
G. J. C.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Stephen A. Maisto
received a PhD in experimental psychology from the University of Wisconsin–Milwaukee and completed a postdoctoral respecialization in clinical psychology from George Peabody College of Vanderbilt University. He is a professor of psychology at Syracuse University. He has been engaged in research, teaching, clinical practice, and clinical training in the assessment and treatment of the substance use disorders for well over 30 years. Dr. Maisto has published over 300 articles, 30 book chapters, and several books on substance use and the substance use disorders. His current research is supported by the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism and the Department of Veterans Affairs. Dr. Maisto is a member of the American Psychological Association (Fellow, Divisions of Clinical Psychology and Addictive Behaviors), Association for Psychological Science, Research Society on Alcoholism, and the Association for Behavioral and Cognitive Therapies. Dr. Maisto was appointed editor for *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, a journal published by the American Psychological Association, for the term January 1, 2008, to December 31, 2013.

Mark Galizio
received his PhD in experimental psychology in 1976, from the University of Wisconsin–Milwaukee. He is professor of psychology at the University of North Carolina Wilmington, where he has taught and conducted research for over 30 years. He has published extensively in the areas of behavioral pharmacology and behavior analysis and has served as associate editor of the *Journal of the Experimental Analysis of Behavior*. His research has been supported by grants from the National Institute on Drug Abuse, the National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke, and the National Science Foundation. He is a fellow of the Association for Behavior Analysis International and the American Psychological Association (Divisions of Psychopharmacology and Substance Abuse, Behavior Analysis, Behavioral Neuroscience and Comparative Psychology, and Experimental Psychology) and is past president of the Division of Behavior Analysis.

Gerard J. Connors
is a senior research scientist at the Research Institute on Addictions at the University at Buffalo. He earned his doctoral degree in clinical psychology from Vanderbilt University in 1980. Dr. Connors's research interests include substance use and abuse, relapse prevention, self-help group involvement, early interventions with heavy drinkers, and treatment evaluation. He is a member of the American Psychological Association (Fellow, Divisions of Clinical Psychology and Addictive Behaviors), Research Society on Alcoholism, and Association for Behavioral and Cognitive Therapies. Dr. Connors has authored or coauthored numerous scientific articles, books, and book chapters. His current research activities are funded by grants from the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTRIBUTORS

Adaobi Obi Tulton
is a freelance editor and owner of Serendipity23 Editorial Services and has been working in publishing for over 20 years. After graduating from New York University with a bachelor's degree in English, she started her editorial career as a manuscript coordinator for the *Journal of Cell Biology* at Rockefeller University. She then became a project editor for John Wiley & Sons, working on their computer technology titles, before later freelancing for them and other technology publishers such as Apress and O'Reilly. She is also a freelance copyeditor and proofreader for trade publishers such as Hachette Book Group and Hay House. She lives in New York City with her husband, daughter, and cat.

Kimberley A. Phillips
is professor and director of the neuroscience program at Trinity University, core scientist at Southwest National Primate Research Center, and adjunct clinical faculty at the Research Imaging Institute, UT Health San Antonio. She received her PhD from the University of Georgia. Dr. Phillips is a behavioral neuroscientist, and her research focuses on comparative neuroanatomy and social and hormonal contributions to healthy brain aging. She is a 2018 HERS Leadership Institute alumna and past president of the American Society of Primatologists, and has been a member of the Society for Neuroscience (SfN) for over 20 years. She currently serves on SfN's Committee on Animal Research. She is also a freelance writer for the travel company Peak Planet. When she is not teaching or in the lab, you can find her hiking, paddleboarding, running, or trying to surf.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

BRIEF CONTENTS

PREFACE xiv

CHAPTER 1 **Drug Use and Misuse** 3

CHAPTER 2 **Drug Use Yesterday and Today** 27

CHAPTER 3 **Drugs and the Nervous System** 51

CHAPTER 4 **Pharmacology** 75

CHAPTER 5 **Psychopharmacology and New Drug Development** 103

CHAPTER 6 **Cocaine, Amphetamines, and Related Stimulants** 131

CHAPTER 7 **Nicotine** 159

CHAPTER 8 **Caffeine** 191

CHAPTER 9 **Alcohol** 215

CHAPTER 10 **Opiates** 261

CHAPTER 11 **Marijuana** 285

CHAPTER 12 **Hallucinogens** 317

CHAPTER 13 **Psychotherapeutic Medications** 347

CHAPTER 14 **Other Prescription and Over-the-Counter Drugs** 389

CHAPTER 15 **Treatment of Substance Use Disorders** 413

CHAPTER 16 **Prevention of Substance Misuse** 459

GLOSSARY 484

REFERENCES 490

INDEX 529

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTENTS

PREFACE xiv

CHAPTER 1
Drug Use and Misuse 3

Pharmacology and Drugs 5
- Drug Classification 6
- The Drug Experience 7

Alcohol and Drug Use in the United States 8
- National Survey on Drug Use and Health 9
- Multiple Drug Use 11
- International Comparisons of Drug Use 12
- Negative Consequences of Alcohol and Drug Use 14

Defining Harmful Drug Use 15
- Use of the *DSM* 15
- Drug Tolerance, Withdrawal, and Drug-Taking Behavior 18

Overview of the Text 21

Evaluating Websites 21

Summary 23

CHAPTER 2
Drug Use Yesterday and Today 27

Historical Overview 28
- Drug Use in the United States 29
- Medical Science and Drug Use 34

Development of Drug Laws 35
- The San Francisco Ordinance 36
- Pure Food and Drug Act 37
- Harrison Narcotics Tax Act 37
- Alcohol Prohibition 38
- Post-Prohibition Legislation 39

Current Drug Laws 40

Summary 46

CHAPTER 3
Drugs and the Nervous System 51

The Neuron 52

Neural Transmission 53

Drugs and Neural Transmission 56

Major Neurotransmitter Systems 59
- Acetylcholine 59
- Monoamines 60
- Endorphins 62
- Amino Acid Neurotransmitters 63
- Other Neurotransmitters 63

The Nervous System 63

The Brain 65
- The Hindbrain 65
- The Midbrain 66
- The Forebrain 67
- Imaging the Human Brain 69

Summary 71

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER 4
Pharmacology 75

Pharmacokinetics and Drug Dose 77
Drug Dose 77
Routes of Administration 78
Drug Absorption 82
Drug Distribution 85

Conclusion 89

Pharmacodynamics 91
The Dose-Effect Curve 91
Effective and Lethal Doses 94
Drug Interactions 96

Summary 99

CHAPTER 5
Psychopharmacology and New Drug Development 103

Factors Influencing Drug Effects 104
Biological Factors 105
Psychological Factors 106

Social and Environmental Factors 109

Tolerance 109
Types of Tolerance 110
Explanations of Tolerance 111

Behavioral Pharmacology 114
Reinforcement and Punishment 115
Operant Principles and Drug Dependence 116
Drug Discrimination 117
Conflict Paradigm 118

Animal Models and Human Drug Use 119

Human Behavioral Pharmacology 120
Ethical Questions 120
Placebo Controls 120

New Drug Development 122
Clinical Trials and FDA Approval 123
Distribution and Marketing 124
Generic Drugs 125

Summary 127

CHAPTER 6
Cocaine, Amphetamines, and Related Stimulants 131

The Coca Leaf 132

Early Use of Cocaine 134

The Amphetamines 136

Cocaine Epidemic II 137

The Return of Meth 142

Bath Salts 144

Pharmacokinetics of Stimulants 146

Mechanism of Stimulant Action 146

Acute Effects at Low and Moderate Doses 148
Physiological Effects 148
Behavioral Effects 149

Acute Effects at High Doses 150

Effects of Chronic Use 150
Tolerance 151
Dependence 152

Stimulant Drugs and ADHD 153

Summary 156

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER 7
Nicotine 159

History of Tobacco Use 161
The West Discovers Tobacco 161
Tobacco as Panacea 162
From Panacea to Panned 162

Prevalence of Tobacco Use 163
Smoking in the United States 163
Initiation of Smoking 165
Smokeless Tobacco Use 166

Pharmacology of Nicotine 167
Sites of Action 167
Pharmacokinetics 168
Distribution 168
Metabolism and Excretion 169

Tolerance and Dependence 170
Tolerance 170
Physical Dependence 171

Acute Effects of Nicotine 171
Nicotine's Dependence Liability 173

Effects of Chronic Tobacco Use 173
Tar, Nicotine, and Carbon Monoxide 175
Diseases Linked to Cigarette Smoking 176
Other Tobacco Products and Health 177
Passive Smoking 178

Treatment of Cigarette Smoking 179
The Necessity of Formal Treatment 180
Treatment Effectiveness 181
Conclusions about the Treatment of Cigarette Smoking 183

Summary 186

CHAPTER 8
Caffeine 191

Sources of Caffeine 192

History of Caffeine Use 194

Prevalence of Caffeine Consumption 195

Pharmacology of Caffeine 198
Mechanism of Action 198
Pharmacokinetics 199

Tolerance and Dependence 200
Tolerance 200
Caffeine Withdrawal 200

Acute Effects of Caffeine 201
Behavioral and Psychological Effects 201
Interactions among Caffeine, Nicotine, and Alcohol 202
Acute Toxic Effects of Caffeine 206

Chronic Effects of Caffeine Use 207

Therapeutic Uses of Caffeine 210

Conclusions 210

Summary 211

CHAPTER 9
Alcohol 215

Alcoholic Beverages 216
Fermentation and Distillation 216
Expressing the Alcohol Content of a Beverage 217

History of Alcohol Use 219

Consumption of Alcohol and Heavy Drinking in the United States 221
Per Capita Consumption 222
Consumption of Alcohol among College Students 224

Pharmacology of Alcohol 226
Mechanism of Action 226
Pharmacokinetics of Alcohol 227

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Tolerance and Dependence 231
Tolerance 231
Physical Dependence 232

Therapeutic Uses 232

Acute Effects of Alcohol 233
Physiological Effects 233
Sensorimotor Effects 236
Alcohol and Driving Ability 236
Psychological Effects 239
Alcohol and Behavior 239

Effects of Chronic Heavy Drinking 243
Alcohol and Brain Functioning 246
Alcohol and the Liver 247
Alcohol and Reproductive Functioning 248
Fetal Alcohol Syndrome 248
Moderate Drinking and Health 250

The Development of Alcohol Use Disorder 252
Traditional Approaches to Etiology 252
"Biopsychosocial" Approaches to Etiology 254

Summary 256

CHAPTER 10
Opiates 261

History of the Opiates 262
Early History 263
Opiate Use in the 19th Century 263
Opiate Use after the Harrison Act 265
The Making of an Epidemic 269
The Opiate Epidemic 270

Pharmacokinetics 272
Absorption 272
Distribution, Metabolism, and Excretion 272

Mechanisms of Opiate Action 273
Discovery of Endorphins 273
What Do Endorphins Do? 274

Medical Use of Opiate Drugs 275

Acute Psychological and Physiological Effects of Opiates 277

Chronic Effects of Opiates 278
Tolerance 279
Withdrawal and Dependence 280

Summary 281

CHAPTER 11
Marijuana 285

Historical Overview 287
Cannabis in the Americas 288
Committee Reports on Marijuana 291

Epidemiology 292

Methods of Use 295

Active Ingredients 297
Potency of Cannabis 297

Pharmacokinetics 297
Absorption 298
Distribution, Metabolism, and Excretion 298

Mechanisms of Action 299
Research Findings 299
Tolerance and Dependence 300

Medical and Psychotherapeutic Uses 301
History of Therapeutic Use 301
Current Status of Medical Uses of Marijuana 303

Physiological Effects 305
Acute Effects 305
Longer-Term Effects 305

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Psychological Effects 308
Behavioral Effects 308
Cognitive Effects 309
Emotional Effects 310
Social and Environmental Effects 311
Summary 313

CHAPTER 12
Hallucinogens 317
Overview 318
Serotonergic Hallucinogens: LSD and Related Compounds 320
Early History 320
Recent History 323
Mechanisms of Action of LSD-Like Drugs 326
Pharmacokinetics of LSD-Like Drugs 327
Psychotherapeutic Uses 328
Effects of Serotonergic Hallucinogens 329
Adverse Effects of Serotonergic Hallucinogens 330
Methylated Amphetamines 333
Overview 333
History and Epidemiology 334
Effects of Methylated Amphetamines 335
Toxicity 337
Residual Effects of MDMA 337
Psychotherapeutic Uses 339
Anticholinergic Hallucinogens 340
Dissociative Anesthetic Hallucinogens 341
History 341
Pharmacokinetics 341
Effects of PCP and Ketamine 342
Psychotherapeutic Uses 342
Salvinorin A (Salvia) 343
Summary 344

CHAPTER 13
Psychotherapeutic Medications 347
Historical Overview 349
The Pre-Chlorpromazine Era 349
The Age of Chlorpromazine 350
Epidemiology 351
Classes of Drugs and Their Actions 354
Antipsychotics 354
Antidepressants 360
Antianxiety Agents 367
Nonbenzodiazepine Treatment 380
Mood-Stabilizing Drugs 380
Psychotherapeutic Drugs and Pregnancy 383
Summary 384

CHAPTER 14
Other Prescription and Over-the-Counter Drugs 389
Overview 390
Prescription Drugs 390
Birth Control Drugs 390
Anabolic Steroids 393
Over-the-Counter Drugs 398
FDA Classification 398
Analgesics 399
Cold and Allergy Medications 401
Over-the-Counter Stimulants and Sedatives 401
Herbal Products, Hormones, and Dietary Supplements 402
Areca (Betel) 403
DHEA 403
Ephedra/Ma Huang 404

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Ginkgo Biloba 404
Kava 404
Kratom 405
Melatonin 406
S-Adenosyl-Methionine 406
St. John's Wort 406
Valerian 406
Gamma Hydroxybutyrate 407

Inhalants 408

Summary 410

CHAPTER 15
Treatment of Substance Use Disorders 413

Motivation to Change 415

Change without Formal Treatment 417

Self-Help Groups 417

Alcoholics Anonymous 418
Other Self-Help Groups 421

Models of Substance Use Disorders 422

Five Model Categories 422
Biopsychosocial Model 424

Professional Treatment: Assessment and Goals 425

Abstinence or Moderation? 426
Harm Reduction 427

Alcohol Treatment Settings and Services 428

Types of Settings and Services 428
Pharmacological Treatment 430
Effectiveness of Alcohol Treatment 431
Nonpharmacological Professional Treatment 432
Self-Help Treatment 433
Effectiveness of Pharmacological Treatments 436

Other Drug Treatment Settings and Services 438

Treatment of Nonopiate Drug Use Disorder 438
Pharmacotherapy of Other Drug Use Disorders 439
Effectiveness of Drug Treatment 441
Nonpharmacological Professional Treatment 441
Self-Help Treatment 442
Pharmacological Treatments 443
Promising Treatment Techniques 444

Special Topics in Alcohol and Drug Treatment 445

Treatment of Polysubstance Misuse 445
Treatment of Dual-Diagnosis Patients 446
Relapse 446

Models of Causes and Treatment Methods 450

Economic Factors in Alcohol and Drug Treatment 450

The Stepped-Care Approach 452

Summary 454

CHAPTER 16
Prevention of Substance Misuse 459

Defining Prevention 461

Models of Prevention 462

Sociocultural Model 462
Distribution of Consumption Model 464
Proscriptive Model 466

Principles of Drug Misuse Prevention 468

Current Topics in Prevention 470

Education and Mass Media Efforts 471
Affect-Oriented Programs 473

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Alternative Behaviors and Resistance-Skills Training 474
Temperament-Based Interventions 475
Worksite Programs 476
Programs for College Students 477

Closing Comments on Prevention 480

Summary 481

GLOSSARY 484

REFERENCES 490

INDEX 529

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

PREFACE

We began writing the first edition of this text in the late 1980s. At that time, drug use and related problems were of major interest and concern in the United States and in other countries. Awareness, interest, and concern about drug use have not abated since that time, nor has the need for a general undergraduate text to educate college students on the biological, psychological, and social factors that influence drug use and its effects. Therefore, we have completed this ninth edition, which retains many features of previous editions but also reflects changes that have occurred in this very dynamic area of study since the eighth edition was published in 2019.

As in all of the text's previous editions, the central theme of this edition is that a drug's effects are determined not only by its chemical structure and interaction in the body but also by drug users' biological and psychological characteristics and the setting in which they use the drug. This central theme is reflected in the inclusion of chapters on pharmacology and psychopharmacology, and is continued throughout the presentation of individual drugs or drug classes and in the discussion of prevention and treatment. The text examines the complexity of human drug consumption on biological, psychological, and social levels. Although the text is scholarly, it is understandable to students with little background in the biological, behavioral, or social sciences.

The text also retains a number of pedagogical features designed to increase students' interest and learning. **Diagnostic pretests** at the beginning of each chapter challenge students to test their knowledge of drugs while drawing their attention to important concepts or facts that follow in the chapter. Pretest answers and explanations at the end of each chapter provide an important review of the main concepts. The **margin glossary** helps students identify and define important terms within the text. **Margin quotes** help bring abstract concepts to life through personal accounts, comments, and quips about drug use and its ramifications. **Drugs and Culture boxes** explore variations in drug use and its consequences. They highlight the importance of differences in drug use that are associated with factors such as a person's sex, race, and ethnic background. Finally, **Contemporary Issue boxes** discuss current controversies involving drugs or drug use, as well as events related to such controversies.

New in This Edition

As mentioned earlier, drugs and drug use are popular and dynamic areas of study. For example, when the seventh edition was published in 2015, synthetic designer drugs like "Spice" and "bath salts" had recently emerged as international phenomena. These designer drugs are sold on the Internet, often legally. The ninth edition chronicles the impact of this drug trade, with a focus on the legal changes in the United States designed to address the problem (Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act of 2012, Chapter 2) and reviews of the major drugs involved: synthetic cathinones or bath salts (Chapter 6), synthetic opiate drugs (Chapter 10), synthetic cannabinoids or Spice (Chapter 11), and phenethylamine hallucinogens (2C-B, Chapter 12).

Numerous other changes have occurred in the field since publication of the eighth edition. Each chapter of the ninth edition has been updated to represent findings from the latest research, as well as to reflect social and legal changes related to drugs.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Among the many revisions, we present the latest survey data available at this writing on patterns of drug use in the United States and in other countries worldwide. Chapter 2, "Drug Use: Yesterday and Today," includes new information on the voter and legislative approvals in multiple states to regulate, tax, and control marijuana use and distribution; updates on the continuing movement to legalize the use of marijuana for medical reasons; and new coverage on the synthetic opioid fentanyl being used alone or mixed with heroin.

Chapter 3, "Drugs and the Nervous System," adds detail on how drugs affect neurotransmission processes.

Chapter 6, "Cocaine, Amphetamines, and Related Stimulants," adds information on the changing trends in cocaine and methamphetamine use, as well as new information about synthetic cathinones (bath salts).

Chapter 7, "Nicotine," has updated National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH) data on the epidemiology of nicotine use in the United States, along with an expanded and updated section on the treatment of nicotine addiction. The latter includes how the concept of precision medicine is influencing the pharmacological treatment of tobacco cigarette smoking. Chapter 7 also features updated material on the harm-reduction approach to cigarette smoking, including expanded discussion of products billed as "safer" alternatives to traditional cigarettes, such as the electronic cigarette and smokeless tobacco products.

Chapter 8, "Caffeine," includes the latest data on caffeine effects, including a variety of apparent health benefits of coffee. Also included are new insights on the metabolism of caffeine, including the genetics of caffeine consumption. The chapter also features coverage of caffeine withdrawal as a clinical phenomenon. The latest information on the combined use of alcohol and caffeine is also provided.

Chapter 9, "Alcohol," has new epidemiological data on alcohol consumption in the United States and around the world, as well as the health "benefits" of moderate alcohol consumption. Chapter 9 also contains updated data on the effects of a pregnant woman's moderate alcohol use on the health of the fetus that she is carrying.

Chapter 10, "Opiates," provides extensive new coverage of the dramatic increase in use of heroin, prescription opiates, and synthetic opiates. Two new sections are included on the events that led to the opiate epidemic and the current status and impact of the epidemic. The increase in opiate overdose deaths is chronicled, and a new box on treating overdose with naloxone is added.

The chapter on marijuana (Chapter 11) includes the latest epidemiological data on marijuana use around the world, including use among youth. Chapter 11 also contains the latest information on the therapeutic uses of marijuana, on the relationship between cannabis use and various mental health outcomes, and on newer methods of consumption (such as vaping and dabbing).

Chapter 12 covers the exciting new research on psychological effects of hallucinogens, especially psilocybin and MDMA (methylenedioxymethamphetamine). New sections expand coverage of the therapeutic uses of hallucinogens like psilocybin for anxiety and depression, MDMA for posttraumatic stress disorder, and ketamine for depression. A new box discusses the potential and challenges for medical use of hallucinogens.

Chapter 13, "Psychotherapeutic Medications," includes the most recent data on the nature and extent of mental illness in the United States. It also includes the latest information on newly prescribed psychotherapeutic medications, with discussion of their benefits and side effects. Chapter 13 also provides coverage of the use of psychotherapeutic medications during pregnancy, which often has been a difficult and challenging issue for pregnant women and their physicians alike.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 14, "Other Prescription and Over-the-Counter Drugs," adds coverage of the controversial plant compound "kratom," which has become popular in recent years.

Chapter 15, "Treatment of Substance Use Disorders," includes a new Contemporary Issue Box on the use of telehealth (the use of technology, such as electronic medical records, smartphones, and web-based applications to support the delivery of health care, health-related education, and other health-related services and functions) in efforts to help patients sustain changes that they make in treatment, added discussion of the effectiveness of mutual help support groups such as Alcoholics Anonymous, and updated information on the integration of the Affordable Care Act in our discussion of economics and the stepped-care approach to substance use disorders treatment.

Chapter 16, "Prevention of Substance Abuse," covers the latest trends in prevention interventions, including temperament-based programs that focus on traits, such as sensation seeking and anxiety sensitivity, uniquely associated with risk for subsequent development of a drug-related problem. Updates on the broad array of negative consequences associated with problematic use of alcohol among college students, including deaths, assault, sexual abuse, and academic problems, are provided.

Accompanying the ninth edition are both new and expanded supplements that will help instructors with class preparation and help students by providing opportunities for review, including an Instructor's Manual, Test Bank, Instructor PowerPoints, an online companion website, and MindTap. The Instructor's Manual provides chapter outlines, learning objectives, key terms, glossary terms and definitions, and useful web links. The Instructor's Manual follows the text chapter by chapter with organized material to aid in planning an effective, engaging course. To aid instructors in integrating technology into their classroom, the manual also includes a MindTap Integration Chart and Educator's Guide, designed to highlight important activities and content found in MindTap.

The Test Bank is available in Cognero electronic format, an online system which allows instructors to author, edit, and manage Test Bank content from multiple Cengage solutions. Instructors may also easily create multiple test versions in an instant and deliver tests from a chosen learning management system (LMS), the classroom, or anywhere else Internet access is available. The Test Bank features multiple-choice, true/false, and essay questions. Questions are tagged to Bloom's Taxonomy and to the associated text content.

Instructor PowerPoint presentations accompany each chapter. These slides address all major topics covered within the text in an easy-to-use and condensed format. Slides may be used to guide classroom presentations or conversations, as a classroom handout for student preparation, or as an additional student resource for chapter review. Instructors may customize the slides to best suit their course.

A student companion website offers text-specific review and enrichment materials, including tutorial quizzes, flash cards, and an online glossary. An instructor companion website features the Instructor's Manual, PowerPoint lectures, and Test Bank materials.

The ninth edition also includes MindTap. MindTap®, a digital teaching and learning solution, helps students be more successful and confident in the course—and in their work with clients. MindTap guides students through the course by combining the complete textbook with interactive multimedia, activities, assessments, and learning tools. Readings and activities engage students in learning core concepts, practicing needed skills, reflecting on their attitudes and opinions, and applying what they learn. Instructors can rearrange and add content to personalize their MindTap

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

course and easily track students' progress with real-time analytics. And MindTap integrates seamlessly with any learning management system.

Acknowledgments

This text could not have been completed without the help of a number of people. We want to thank the many talented folks at both Cengage Learning and Lumina Datamatics, Inc., who provided guidance through content development, permissions, and production. This book would not be possible without all of you.

We also want to thank other special people who helped us in completing the ninth edition. Stephen Maisto would like to thank his wife, Mary Jean Byrne-Maisto, for her love and support in finishing this edition. He also would like to thank his outstanding graduate student, Dezarie Moskal, for all of her help in preparing this edition. Mark Galizio thanks his wife, Kate Bruce, and daughter, Annie. Their love and support make it all worthwhile. Mark also thanks the many students at the University of North Carolina Wilmington who provide continuing challenges and inspiration. Gerard Connors thanks his wife, Lana Michaels Connors, for her constant support and love throughout the preparation of the ninth edition. Finally, all three authors would like to thank Mark R. Duerr for his tireless assistance and patience in preparing the chapters for this edition.

Stephen A. Maisto
Mark Galizio
Gerard J. Connors

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

- **1-1** Differentiate among the definitions of *drug*
- **1-2** Explain the major ways of classifying drugs
- **1-3** Describe the pharmacological and nonpharmacological factors that influence the drug experience
- **1-4** Explain current patterns of alcohol and drug use in the United States
- **1-5** Describe negative consequences associated with alcohol and drug use
- **1-6** Describe advantages and disadvantages of using the *DSM*-5 definitions for substance use disorder, addiction, psychological dependence, and craving
- **1-7** Differentiate between tolerance and withdrawal
- **1-8** Explain the criteria used to evaluate websites

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

1

Drug Use and Misuse

Pharmacology and Drugs

Drug Classification
The Drug Experience

Alcohol and Drug Use in the United States

National Survey on Drug Use and Health
Multiple Drug Use
International Comparisons of Drug Use
Negative Consequences of Alcohol and Drug Use

Defining Harmful Drug Use

Use of the *DSM*
Drug Tolerance, Withdrawal, and Drug-Taking Behavior

Overview of the Text

Evaluating Websites

Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Because the effects of drugs are both predictable and obvious, it is relatively easy to define harmful drug use.

___ 2. A drug's street name sometimes describes the actual effects of that drug.

___ 3. A person's reaction to a drug depends mostly on the biological action of the drug in the body.

___ 4. Because drug use is complicated, it is impossible to estimate patterns of drug use for the population of a whole country.

___ 5. From 2008 to 2018, the use of alcohol, cocaine, and heroin increased in the United States.

___ 6. The highest rates of alcohol and other drug use are found among 18- to 25-year-olds.

___ 7. A person's use of more than one drug at a time is of little concern because it happens so infrequently.

___ 8. Estimated economic costs associated with alcohol and drug use include illness, death, medical expenses, and crime.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

___ 9. The chemical action of alcohol and other drugs causes violence and crime.

___10. Modern researchers rely on definitions of alcohol and other drug use that are free of social or cultural biases.

___11. A diagnosis of substance use disorder is made when a person has become either physically or psychologically dependent on a drug.

___12. Definitions of addiction emphasize overwhelming involvement with a drug.

___13. The continued use of any drug will eventually lead to tolerance of and physical dependence on that drug.

Athletic	Legal	Religious
Biological	Medical	Social/cultural
Economic	Political	
Educational	Psychological	

Q: How are these 10 systems alike?
A: They influence or are influenced by alcohol and other drug use.

This one-question quiz shows that drugs[1] may affect us in many ways, whether or not we use them. Although what we see and hear in the media often focuses on the negative consequences of drug use, drugs are popular all over the world because people perceive that they benefit from using drugs. For example, on an *individual* level, people say that drugs make them feel more relaxed, socialize more easily, feel sexier, escape boredom, and feel more confident and assertive. Drugs have also helped to ease a lot of suffering in humans and other animals when used for specific medical purposes. On a *group* or *community* level, drugs have been used for thousands of years as part of social and religious rituals. Drugs are used for such purposes less for the effects of the drug's chemistry than for social or cultural reasons. One society may condone the use of a drug—say, alcohol in the United States and European countries—whereas another society condemns it—such as the societies in Iran and Saudi Arabia. This complex picture of human drug use suggests that many different factors influence drug use.

What influences drug use and how that use affects us make up the subject of drugs and human behavior and are what this text is about. Because our subject matter is so wide-ranging, this introductory chapter spans a variety of topics. We include formal definitions throughout the chapter, beginning with terms such as *pharmacology*, *drug*, and *drug abuse*.

As you'll soon see, we introduce many key terms in this chapter. These terms will be used throughout the text, so it is important for you to begin learning and differentiating among them.

In this chapter, we also explain the drug classification systems used in this book and then move to a discussion of who uses drugs. The final sections of the chapter cover ways to define harmful drug use. The chapter closes with a brief overview of the rest of the text.

> *"Food is good. Poison is bad. Drugs may be good or bad, and whether they are seen as good or bad depends on who is looking at them."*
>
> (Weil & Rosen, 1983, p. 10)

[1]Sometimes in this text we use the phrase *alcohol and drugs*; at other times, we use *drugs* as the inclusive term. Because alcohol is a drug, saying "alcohol and drugs" is redundant. However, we do so on occasion, when it seems useful, to distinguish alcohol from all other drugs.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1.1 Pharmacology and Drugs

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-1 Differentiate among the definitions of *drug*

1-2 Explain the major ways of classifying drugs

1-3 Describe the pharmacological and nonpharmacological factors that influence the drug experience

pharmacology
The scientific study of drugs concerned with how drugs act on biological systems and how the body responds to the drug.

psychopharmacology
The subarea of pharmacology that concerns the effects of drugs on behavior.

psychology
The scientific study of behavior and mental processes.

drug
Broadly defined as any substance with the potential to treat or cure disease, or enhance physical or mental welfare; any chemical agent that alters the biochemical physiological processes of tissues or organisms; psychoactive drugs, for which there is nonmedical use in addition to any medical use.

Humans have used drugs for several thousand years, but the scientific study of drugs is more recent. The scientific study of drugs is called **pharmacology**, which is concerned with how drugs act on biological systems and how the body responds to the drug. Pharmacology is a separate discipline in the health sciences; it is considered a part of biology, and allied with physiology and biochemistry (Blum, 1984). **Psychopharmacology** is an area within the field of pharmacology that focuses on the effects of drugs on behavior. Although *psychopharmacology* is a joining of the words **psychology** and *pharmacology*, it is now recognized that understanding how drugs affect human behavior requires knowledge about social and environmental factors as well. This book is about human psychopharmacology.

Drugs are easy enough to talk about, or so it seems from the numbers and variety of people who do so. However, defining **drug** is not so simple, as it has varied usage. According to the World Health Organization, the term can mean:

1. "any substance with the potential to prevent or cure disease or enhance physical or mental welfare" (in medicine);
2. "any chemical agent that alters the biochemical physiological processes of tissues or organisms" (in pharmacology);
3. psychoactive drugs, or more specifically illicit drugs, "of which there is non-medical use in addition to any medical use" (in common usage).

These fundamental definitions bring us to the questions: What is drug *use* (and *misuse*), and what is drug *abuse* (or harmful drug use as it may be known as the field begins to use less stigmatizing language)? We discuss these distinctions in more detail later in this chapter, but it is important for you to get an idea at the outset of what is called drug use and drug abuse. Abuse has been referred to in different ways when people write about drugs, and there is no generally accepted definition. In such circumstances, one way to define a term is by a consensus of experts. A study by Rinaldi et al. (1988) achieved such a consensus definition for a number of terms used in research and clinical work on alcohol and drugs. In the Rinaldi et al. study, the experts defined **drug abuse** as "any use of drugs that causes physical, psychological, legal, or social harm to the individual or to others affected by the drug user's behavior." The term *drug misuse*, while sometimes used interchangeably with drug abuse, is also used to refer to the use of a drug for reasons other than what it was prescribed for.

drug abuse
Any use of drugs that causes physical, psychological, legal, or social harm to the individual user or to others affected by the drug user's behavior.

As you can see, the definition of abuse centers on the consequences of drug users' behavior, both to themselves and to others in their social environment. Our opening question on the 10 systems and drug use comes into sharper relief with this definition of abuse. The definition also illustrates the difficulties in defining abuse. A major problem is that the behavior that causes consequences in one community or culture

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

may not cause them in another, or not to the same degree. Therefore, the goal to have a standard reference for drug abuse has proved elusive. Nevertheless, the word *abuse* is used frequently, and efforts to arrive at a more generally applicable definition should continue. For now, however, our initial definition of abuse is sufficient for understanding what we say in the first part of this chapter.

If *abuse* is drug use with negative consequences, then drug *use* may be viewed as the larger category, with drug abuse as a subset. Drug consumption that does not meet the criteria for drug abuse is referred to as drug use.

Drug Classification

As the WHO panel of experts understood, their definition of *drug* is very broad. To make the definition useful for research and practical purposes, it is necessary to order the substances that fit the definition of drug into smaller categories. Pharmacologists have done this with their many systems for classifying drugs. These classification systems have been based on the primary properties of drugs to communicate a drug's nature and the ways it can be used. Following are some of the major ways of classifying drugs:

1. *"by origin"*. An example is drugs that come from plants, such as the opiates, which are derived from the opium poppy. The "pure" (nonsynthetic) opiates include compounds such as morphine and codeine. Heroin, which is a semisynthetic compound, is often called an opiate drug. Because this classification distinguishes only the source of the drug, a given drug class may include many drugs that have different chemical actions.
2. *"by therapeutic use"*, or according to similarity in how a drug is used to treat or modify something in the body. For example, with this system, amphetamines are called appetite-suppressant drugs. Note that the reasons some drugs are used can be much different from their therapeutic effects. Amphetamines are often used nonmedically because of their stimulant effects. Similarly, morphine may be used medically as a powerful painkiller, but those who misuse morphine most commonly take it for its euphoric effects.
3. *"by site of drug action"*, which pertains to where in the body the drug is causing physical changes. For example, alcohol is often called a depressant drug because of its depressant action on the central nervous system (CNS). Conversely, because of its CNS stimulant properties, cocaine is often called a stimulant drug. The utility of this system is limited when a drug affects several different body sites. One example is the CNS stimulant cocaine, which also has local anesthetic (pain-reducing) effects. Furthermore, drugs that differ widely in chemical structure or mechanisms of action may affect the same body site.
4. *"by chemical structure"* For example, the barbiturates (such as phenobarbital, amobarbital, and secobarbital) are synthetic compounds derived from the chemical structure of barbituric acid, the synthetic compound that forms the chemical base for barbiturate drugs.
5. *"by mechanism of action"*, which means how a drug produces its **drug effects**. This is a good system in principle, and ongoing research in pharmacology is directed at specifying the mechanisms of action of an increasing number of drugs.
6. *"by street name"*, which comes from drug "subcultures" and the street drug market. For example, amphetamines are called "speed," and drugs like the barbiturates

drug effects
The action of a drug on the body. Drug effects are measured in different ways.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"I don't do drugs. I am drugs."
Salvador Dali

or depressants such as methaqualone (Quaalude) are called "downers." As these examples show, street names sometimes reflect actual drug effects (Brands et al., 1998, pp. 11–13).

The topics of this text's drug chapters (Chapters 6 through 14) were determined according to several different ways of classifying drugs. One of the ways to classify drugs, by their effects, applies to virtually all of the drugs covered in this text. We are most interested in **psychoactive** drugs—those that affect mood, thinking, and behavior. Some substances have been designated formally as psychoactive, such as alcohol, whereas others have not, such as aspirin. Psychoactive drugs are most important in this text because they are the ones that people are most likely to use, sometimes in ways that create serious problems for them. This text mainly concerns the nonmedical use of psychoactive drugs, but we also discuss medical uses.

psychoactive
Pertaining to effects on mood, thinking, and behavior.

The Drug Experience

As we said earlier, people like many of the experiences they have when they take drugs. This raises an important question: What causes the "drug experience"? The drug's chemical action is part of the answer, but how much? Not too long ago, the chemical actions of drugs were viewed as the primary reason people experienced certain changes when they took different drugs. However, research from different disciplines, such as pharmacology, psychology, and sociology, has shown that the drug experience is a product of more factors than just the drug's pharmacological action.

Generally, we can look at three sets of factors, one pharmacological and two nonpharmacological. The first set includes *pharmacological factors*, and three of them stand out. First are the chemical properties and action on the body of the drug used. Another is **drug dosage** (or dose), which is the measure of how much of the drug is consumed. The third pharmacological factor is the **route of drug administration**, or the way the drug enters the body. This is important because the route affects how much of a dosage reaches its site(s) of action and how quickly it gets there. Chapter 4 discusses in detail major routes of drug administration and their effects on the drug experience.

drug dosage
Measure of the quantity of drug consumed.

route of drug administration
The way that drugs enter the body.

The second set of factors is nonpharmacological and consists of the *characteristics of the person who uses drugs.* Included are such factors as the person's genetic makeup (biologically inherited differences among people govern their bodies' reaction to the ingestion of different drugs), gender, age, drug tolerance, and personality. An important part of personality is the person's **psychological set** about a drug, which refers to knowledge, attitudes, expectations, and thoughts about a drug. For example, sometimes the strong belief that a drug will produce a certain effect will be enough to produce the effect, even though the person has ingested a chemically inactive substance (**placebo**).

psychological set
An individual's knowledge, attitudes, expectations, and other thoughts about an object or event, such as a drug.

placebo
In pharmacology, a chemically inactive substance.

The third and last set of factors, also a nonpharmacological one, is the *setting in which a drug is used*. The factors in this group span a wide range and include laws pertaining to drug use in the community where the drug is taken, the immediate physical environment where the drug is used, and whether other people are present at the time of drug use.

Together, these three sets of factors influence what people experience when they take a drug. You may have guessed that the path to a drug experience is not always easy to chart. However, many people are trying to do just that—to understand how drugs affect people. The accumulated knowledge from these efforts is the foundation of this book.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Describe the different ways that drugs are defined, and give an example of a substance that would be included under each definition.
2. Create a table listing the six major ways that drugs can be classified. Then give an example for each classification type.
3. Explain how pharmacological and nonpharmacological factors influence the drug experience.

1.2 Alcohol and Drug Use in the United States

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-4 Explain current patterns of alcohol and drug use in the United States

To get an understanding of the rates of alcohol and drug use in the United States, the federal government conducts regular national surveys, interviewing individuals age 12 or older throughout the country. The administrants of the survey generally ensure that those interviewed are representative of the U.S. population as a whole—taking into account variables such as gender, age, race, region of the country, and rural versus urban living environments. These data provide the best estimates concerning alcohol and drug use for all individuals in the population over age 12. In the United States, this is currently approximately 255 million people.

The U.S. federal government goes to great trouble and expense to support these national surveys of drug use, because the knowledge gained from them is extremely valuable in making legal, tax, educational, and health policy decisions. More narrowly, we are interested in the information from national surveys for this text because

> *"I could have easily gotten stoned [before coming to this interview]; it wouldn't have bothered me. It depends on the situation. I wouldn't like to smoke [marijuana] in the middle of the day if I have things to do. Or I wouldn't smoke in the middle of a class. Things like that."*
>
> Research participant (Zinberg, 1984, p. 140)

Dmitriy Shironosov/Alamy stock photo

Thomas Baker/Alamy stock photo

People use drugs in a variety of situations.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 1.1

U.S. Society and Drug Use

Learning about alcohol and drug use in the United States is important. One reason is the sheer number of people in the United States who use alcohol or other drugs. Another reason is the negative consequences associated with alcohol and drug use, which are discussed later in more detail. A third reason is the amount of controversy that drugs, especially illicit drugs, create. Despite the prevalence of drug use among U.S. citizens, popular opinion in the country has been to eradicate illicit drug use, at times ranking such use among the nation's top problems. Indeed, a 2007 survey conducted by the University of Michigan involved collection of data on adults' perceptions of the main problems threatening children's and adolescents' well-being, and "drug abuse" was number 2 in the top 10. (Interestingly, smoking tobacco and alcohol misuse were numbers 1 and 4, respectively.) Think of some of the major headline events that have occurred and the controversies they have generated in the last few years. Some of them touch upon the basic constitutional rights of Americans:

- The right of the federal government and other public and private employers to conduct urine screens (tests for drug taking) of employees as a way to control drug abuse in the workplace
- The question of whether people who use intravenous drugs should be supplied with clean syringes free of charge as a way of preventing the spread of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection
- The continuing debate on whether marijuana should be available as a prescription drug, and, more recently, whether it should be legally available to adults for recreational purposes
- Some proposed legal penalties related to selling or using drugs—the requirement of life sentences for drug dealers who are convicted twice of selling drugs to teenagers and the imposition of the death penalty for dealers when a murder occurs during a drug deal

Many Americans use alcohol or other drugs. However, the country's attitudes toward such use, especially regarding illicit drugs, are far from permissive. Society's proposed and actual solutions to drug use in the United States have far-reaching legal, social, and financial implications. Which stand out to you?

many people do not know the typical patterns of drug use among Americans. For example, the popular media expose us primarily to extreme cases of use and problems associated with it. The national survey data on alcohol and drug use give us a more balanced reference for understanding any one person's or group's use. In the same way, our brief review of national survey data in this chapter will help you understand drug use patterns and related problems that we write about in later chapters of this book.

National Survey on Drug Use and Health

To provide you with an overview of alcohol and drug use, we used a national survey that is conducted annually by the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, an agency in the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. The National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH) includes households in all 50 states and the District of Columbia (but not U.S. territories such as Puerto Rico or Guam). In this section we refer to findings from the 2018 survey (Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration, 2019).

This survey included individuals 12 years of age or older. Interviews were completed with 67,791 individuals, including 16,852 interviews with adolescents aged 12 to 17 and 50,939 interviews with adults over age 18. As it was a household survey, individuals with no fixed address (e.g., military personnel on active duty, residents of

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

jails or nursing homes) were excluded from the sample. As a result, the data cannot be viewed as completely representative of everyone in the 50 states. Nevertheless, the NSDUH provides the best single description of frequency and quantity of drug use among a broad age range of people in U.S. society.

In the 2018 NSDUH, a variety of data about drug use in the United States were collected. We first discuss data on the overall **prevalence** of use in the last year and the last month respectively for different drugs, including alcohol and tobacco cigarettes. In this case, "use" means the person used the reference drug at least once during the time in question; "past month" and "past year" are from the time the respondents give information about their drug use. Figure 1.1 presents data on reported substance use within the past month. Several findings stand out. First, alcohol leads the use list, followed by tobacco in a distant second place. Marijuana heads the list of illicit drug use (drug use not in accordance with legal restrictions). Note that, although it now is legal in several U.S. states to use marijuana, in the 2018 NSDUH marijuana was defined as an illicit drug. Looking into these data a bit more closely, we see that an estimated 60.2% of the population aged 12 or older engaged in substance use during the past month. About two in five people aged 12 or older did not use substances in the past month.

Table 1.1 compares the types of substances used among individuals aged 12 or older who reported the use of drugs during the past month, comparing 2008 and 2018.

prevalence
The general occurrence of an event, usually expressed in terms of percentage of some population. Another common statistic in survey studies is incidence, or the number of first-time occurrences of an event during some time period.

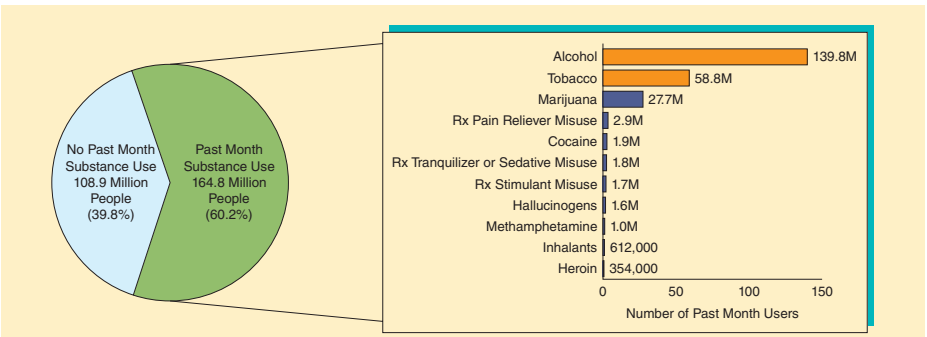


FIGURE 1.1
Past month substance use among people aged 12 or older: 2018

RX = prescription

Note: The estimated numbers of current users of different substances are not mutually exclusive because people could have used more than one type of substance in the past month.

TABLE 1.1 Substances Used Among Individuals Aged 12 or Older Who Reported the Use of Drugs for the Past Month, 2008 and 2018

Drug	2008	2018
Alcohol	51.2	51.1
Tobacco	28.4	21.5
Marijuana	6.1	10.1
Cocaine	0.7	0.7
Heroin	0.1	0.1
Opioids	nc	1.1

nc = not comparable due to methodological changes.

Source: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2019). *Key substance use and mental health indicators in the United States: Results from the 2018 National Survey on Drug Use and Health* (HHS Publication No. PEP19-5068, NSDUH Series H-54). Rockville, MD: Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality, Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from https://www.samhsa.gov/data/

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 1.2

Survey Data on Drug Use: Are They Accurate?

There are compelling reasons for conducting national survey studies of drug use and its consequences. Such information can help a society formulate effective legal and social policies on the use of specific drugs. National survey data also may help to identify groups within a population that are at the greatest risk for experiencing health or other problems related to drug use, which could help in creating more effective prevention programs.

These and other benefits of national survey data on drug use are significant, but a big question is whether the information that is obtained reflects a society's *actual* drug use. That is, are the data accurate?

There are several reasons for asking this question. For example, even the largest surveys rarely collect data from every person in a target population, so it is possible that the sample of people chosen to participate in the survey is biased in some way. This means that the sample might not reflect the population's characteristics on sex, race, religion, or education of the respondent, all of which could be associated with the main behavior of interest (here, drug use). In addition, because many of the drugs asked about are illegal for nonmedical use, or for any use at all, people may be reluctant to admit to a researcher that they have used a particular drug or have used it in particular amounts or frequency. Furthermore, as surveys typically ask about past behavior, memory limits may interfere with the collection of accurate information, regardless of the respondent's intention to tell the truth.

These and other problems are real and must be addressed if national survey data on drug use are to have the utility that they are intended to have. Fortunately, the challenge to collect accurate survey information has been an active research area over the years, and methods of representative sampling and data collection to assure confidentiality or anonymity of responses have led to better survey design and procedures. These advances have resulted in data that meet high standards of reliability and accuracy. This is not to say that national survey data provide a literal picture of drug use in a population, but that the picture is getting clearer and more detailed as survey research methods continue to improve.

If you were designing a survey to study some behavior, such as drug use, in a given population, what potential sources of bias in the data would you consider? How would you handle them?

The use of alcohol, cocaine, and heroin remained relatively stable over this 10-year period. The use of tobacco products declined. Unfortunately, due to methodological changes in the survey, we are unable to compare the use of opioids from 2008 to 2018. However, given the current opioid crisis in the United States, we might expect these numbers to have increased. We will discuss this issue more in Chapter 10. The reported use of marijuana increased from 2008 to 2018. Given that many states have legalized the use of marijuana recreationally and medically, this is not unexpected.

Multiple Drug Use

polydrug use
A person's regular use of more than one drug.

Individuals may use more than one drug, such as both alcohol and marijuana. This is known as multiple drug use (or **polydrug use**) and is extremely important because of the effects drug combinations have on the body. We explore those effects in detail in Chapter 4. For now, it is important for you to know that polydrug use is a critical health and social problem.

Using multiple substances on one occasion is not uncommon. For example, according to the 2018 NSDUH data, 6.4% of people who used alcohol in the past month also used marijuana on an occasion within 2 hours of their alcohol use.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 1.3

Nonmedical Use of Prescribed Drugs

The United States has seen an alarming increase in the nonmedical use of prescribed drugs. Painkillers such as OxyContin that became available relatively recently have been identified as a major source of the increased misuse rates, but many other drugs meant to be used as medical treatments to alleviate physical or psychological suffering are abused too. Another example especially prevalent on college campuses is the nonmedical use of prescription stimulant medications.

Two factors that may contribute to the increased misuse of medications are "doctor shopping" to get multiple prescriptions to treat a single physical or psychological ailment and the advertisement of prescription drugs over the Internet. Sales of drugs over the Internet are difficult for officials to track.

The misuse of prescription drugs is associated with the same kinds of physical, psychological, and social problems that come with the harmful use of any other drug. Therefore, it is important to find ways to prevent or reduce such misuse. One way is for the federal government to provide resources to the individual states to develop computerized drug-prescription monitoring systems (which monitor who writes the prescriptions and who gets them). Such systems may help to address the doctor-shopping problem. Can you think of other solutions to the misuse of prescription drugs?

This pattern of use was most prevalent among 12- to 17-year-olds and 18- to 25-year-olds compared to older age respondents. The respondents who reported "binge" drinking (five or more drinks at the same time or within a few hours of each other) in the past month were considerably more likely to report concurrent alcohol–illicit drug use than were the respondents who did not binge drink (drank alcohol but did not meet the criterion for "binge" drinking [32% vs. 20%]).

> *"I think I did every drug known to mankind, smoked crack, boozed, dropped acid, you name it."*
>
> Kid Rock

In its extreme, multiple drug use can include taking drugs with different or opposite physical effects in sequence on the same occasion. In such cases, the motive for use seems to be change, positive or otherwise, from one drug experience to another. An instance of extreme polydrug use, excerpted from Goldman (1971) and cited in Mendelson and Mello (1985, pp. 200–201), illustrates how people may use one type of drug after another, without apparent rhyme or reason. The example involves the famous comedian Lenny Bruce, who died in 1966, at age 40, and an associate of his:

> The night before, they ended a very successful three-week run in Chicago by traveling to the Cloisters (in New York City) and visiting the home of a show-biz druggist—a house so closely associated with drugs that show people call it the "shooting gallery." Terry smoked a couple of joints, dropped two blue tabs of mescaline, and skin-popped some Dilaudid; at the airport bar he also downed two double Scotches. Lenny did his usual number: 12, 1/16-**grain** Dilaudid pills counted out of a big brown bottle, dissolved in a 1-cubic centimeter (cc) ampoule of Methedrine, and heated in a blackened old spoon. The resulting soup was drawn into a disposable needle and then whammed into mainline (intravenously) until you feel like you're living inside an igloo. Lenny also was into mescaline that evening: Not just Terry's two little old-maidish tabs, but a whole fistful, chewed up in his mouth and then washed down with a chocolate Yoo-Hoo.

grain
As a measure, a unit of weight equal to 0.0648 gram.

International Comparisons of Drug Use

The national surveys on drug use that the United States conducts provide extremely useful information. It would be valuable if similar data were available annually from other countries so that comparisons would be possible. Unfortunately, population surveys of both alcohol and other drug use that different countries, including the United States,

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

typically have done have not been designed with consideration of how other countries have designed their surveys, so comparisons of findings across countries can be difficult. Fortunately, the WHO initiated the "Global Burden of Disease" project in 1990, which was designed to gather health-related information from individual countries worldwide that would help to estimate the status of health-related concerns and problems and related risk factors for disease. Such data help nations to formulate evidence-based public health programs and policies. To place this WHO initiative in some context, global burden of disease refers to mortality and disability from major diseases, injuries, and risk factors.

One such risk factor is alcohol and other drug use. A paper by Degenhardt et al. (2008) is a report of lifetime alcohol and other drug use in each of 17 countries. These countries had agreed to participate in the "World Mental Health Survey" study, which was part of the ongoing Global Burden of Disease initiative. Each of these countries agreed to conduct population surveys of (among other health-related information) lifetime alcohol and other drug use. The data were collected by personal interviews conducted from 2002 to 2003, and the interviews followed a standardized format across the participating countries. The geographic span covered is impressive, as seen by some of the participating countries: Belgium, China, Columbia, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, Lebanon, Mexico, the Netherlands, New Zealand, Nigeria, South Africa, Spain, Ukraine, and the United States. Across the 17 countries there were 54,069 respondents to questions about lifetime alcohol and other drug use.

The results show interesting similarities and differences across the countries. For example, the large majority (typically, mid-80% to mid-90% range, except for Italy at 73%) of respondents in the Americas, Europe, Japan, and New Zealand reported alcohol use, compared to much smaller percentages in the Middle East, Africa, and China (generally, 40% to 60% range). In addition, the United States and New Zealand showed the highest percentage of cannabis use at about 42%, but cannabis use was below 5% in Asian countries. The United States stood out by far with lifetime use of cocaine at 16%, whereas all other countries were below 5%.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 1.4

The National Survey on Drug Use and Health and Subgroup Differences

You know from our discussion that the National Survey on Drug Use and Health data give us a great description of drug use among people living in the United States. At the same time, a general description of findings from national surveys does not tell us as much as it seems to. We must take into account the differences in use patterns according to characteristics—such as age, gender, and race—of the person and the person's environment—such as area of residence and local laws and policies regarding alcohol and drug use.

Demographic group differences in drug use reflect differences in complex historical or current factors common to certain groups of people or regions. Therefore, drug use differences could reflect biological, psychological, or social/environmental factors that distinguish one group from other groups or from the population as a whole. These factors are so complex that certain groups have been designated "special populations." This label emphasizes that, to understand a particular group's drug use, we need to understand their unique history and current circumstances. Groups that today are considered special populations by experts who study drug use include women (because traditionally women have received far less attention from alcohol and other drug researchers than have men), Native Americans, African Americans, Hispanics, the homeless, and LGBTQ+ people.

The drug chapters in this text incorporate cultural and regional differences with features such as a historical account of the drug or drug class in question, and with attention to special cultural differences in use of the drug.

Given the importance of subgroup differences within a total survey sample, how might you adjust the sampling in a national survey to get a more accurate look at a subgroup that is of particular interest to you?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Several demographic variable correlates of use were similar to what we saw in the 2018 NSDUH survey. For example, across all countries, a higher proportion of males used all drugs compared to females. In addition, younger adults were more likely to have used all drugs compared to older adults.

Although the data on lifetime use of alcohol and other drugs provided by Degenhardt et al. (2008) are limited, they do provide a systematic look at how different countries compare. Cross-national data can be a valuable vehicle to understanding how cultural, legal, psychological, and biological factors affect alcohol and other drug use. We hope the material we present in the rest of this book begins to help you to do that as well.

"No animal ever invented anything as bad as drunkenness or as good as drink."

Lord Chesterton

Negative Consequences of Alcohol and Drug Use

Describing alcohol and drug use returns us to the question of the consequences of such use. People may experience both positive and negative consequences from their use of drugs. Definitions of drug use are concerned with the negative effects. One way to look at the negative consequences of alcohol and drug use for society is to conduct "cost-of-illness" studies. The purpose of these studies is to quantify in dollars what society "pays" for its members incurring specific illnesses. It is important to add that focusing on economic factors does not mean that no psychological costs are associated with illness. However, psychological consequences are not easily quantified and thus are much more difficult to analyze.

Two major "illness" distinctions that have been studied in detail are alcohol misuse and other drug use. In such research, "drug abuse" concerns the use of illegal drugs and the nonprescription use of drugs typically used for therapeutic purposes. Nicotine use has not been included. (This is not to understate the costs of nicotine use to U.S. society. The costs are substantial and are reviewed in Chapter 7.)

The U.S. National Institute on Drug Abuse website (drugabuse.gov, accessed November 18, 2020) provided estimated economic costs of alcohol misuse and other drug use to U.S. society. The estimated cost of alcohol misuse was about $249 billion, and the estimated cost of tobacco and illicit drugs was $493 billion. The total: $742 billion.

The costs come from a wide range of sources, although the costs are not distributed in the same proportions for alcohol and drug use. The sources include illness, death, medical expenses, and crime. As you might expect, crime-related costs are especially significant for drug abuse.

Cost-of-illness studies give us a reasonable, well-rounded estimate of what society pays for its members' involvement with alcohol and other drugs. The multibillion-dollar cost estimates are staggering but ironically understate the impact. Some of the consequences of alcohol and drug use become clear when we think about what events make up the cost computations. For example, lifetimes of individuals will not be lived fully because the individuals were born with fetal alcohol syndrome (see Chapter 9). Hospital emergency room resources are used for overdoses of cocaine, heroin, and MDMA (see Chapters 6, 10, and 12, respectively). Then there is the suffering of a family who lost one of its young members as the result of a crime committed to obtain drugs. Maybe you have experienced what it is like to lose a friend or family member in one of the thousands of fatal alcohol-related traffic accidents that occur every year in the United States. It is important to step away from the statistics to look at these and other realities that make up the true costs of alcohol and drugs to society.

"Unlike others, he (a heroin addict) could not find a vocation, a career, a meaningful, sustained activity around which he could wrap his life. Instead he relied on the addiction to provide a vocation around which he could build a reasonably full life and establish an identity."

Psychologist Isidor Chein (quoted in Krogh, 1991, p. 133)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Describe the process by which the federal government acquires data on alcohol and drug use.
2. Compare the concepts tolerance and withdrawal.

1.3 Defining Harmful Drug Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-5 Describe negative consequences associated with alcohol and drug use

1-6 Describe advantages and disadvantages of using the *DSM*-5 definitions for substance use disorder, addiction, psychological dependence, and craving

1-7 Differentiate between tolerance and withdrawal

Discussing cost-of-illness research brings our focus back to harmful drug use, or use that is associated with detrimental consequences to the person using drugs or to others. Indeed, to reflect on harmful use, cost-of-illness studies have used terms like *alcohol abuse* and *drug abuse*. Yet, in the beginning of this chapter, we mentioned the widely different meanings of these terms. This is a problem, because it hampers communication about drug use. The lack of standard definitions also tends to slow the advance of knowledge. If there is disagreement about what it is we are trying to gain knowledge about, you can see why scientific advances might be impeded. As you read this text, keep in mind that the terminology to describe use and those affected has changed. While the term *drug abuse* is still used by some and found on older documents and publications, know that the field is beginning to use alternative terms that are less stigmatizing.

Use of the *DSM*

In the United States and other countries, providers of care for physical and mental illness have handled problems of definition by developing systems of definitions of illnesses, or *diagnostic systems*. A diagnosis typically is based on a cluster of symptoms that is given a name (the diagnosis). The advantage is that, say, if two physicians are communicating about pneumonia in a patient and they are following the same diagnostic system, then each knows exactly what the referent of the other is when the term *pneumonia* is used. That is, a specific cluster of symptoms is being referred to. It also is possible to create diagnostic systems of mental illnesses. In the United States, the primary organization responsible for doing that has been the American Psychiatric Association (APA). Since the early 1950s, the APA has published formal diagnostic systems of different mental illnesses or disorders in its *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (*DSM*). The most recent version (systems are revised because of ongoing research that provides new information about different disorders) appeared in May 2013 and is called *DSM*-5. The *DSM*-5 has a section called "substance-related" (alcohol- or other drug-related) disorders, which includes definitions of "substance use disorders."

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

INTERFOTO/History/Alamy Stock Photo

Jan Sochor/Alamy stock photo

© Kenneth Summers/Shutterstock.com

The sometimes tragic consequences of drug use have drawn national attention and response.

Table 1.2 lists the criteria for defining substance use disorder according to *DSM*-5 (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). These criteria are applied consistently regardless of the drug being used.

Criteria 1 through 9 focus on what traditionally has been called "compulsive drug use," or drug **addiction**. In essence, the individual's life centers on drug use and its procurement to the point of reduced attention to or outright neglect of other aspects of life. Similarly, drug use persists despite the risk of incurring serious consequences by doing so. Individuals with addictions also have an inability to stop or to reduce drug use for any length of time, if that is the intention. This phenomenon has been called "loss of control." The last two criteria introduce two terms: *tolerance* and *withdrawal*. We have more to say about them later in this chapter and in other chapters in this text. At least two of the 11 criteria listed in Table 1.2 must be met for the diagnosis of substance use disorder.

addiction
In reference to drugs, overwhelming involvement with using a drug, getting an adequate supply of it, and having a strong tendency to resume use of it after stopping for a period.

Although *DSM*-5 no longer includes substance dependence as a separate substance use disorder, the term *drug dependence* still is, and likely will continue to be, widely used. In this regard, we would like to define a term that you probably have heard or read because it is so commonly used: **psychological dependence**.

psychological dependence
The emotional state of craving a drug either for its positive effect or to avoid negative effects associated with its abuse.

Like many terms used in communicating about drugs and their use, *psychological dependence* has had different meanings. So the Rinaldi et al. (1988) consensus

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 1.5

Drugs, Criminal Activity, and Aggression

We have noted how costs associated with criminal behavior are especially significant for harmful drug use. The association of alcohol, drugs, and crime is one we happen to see and hear about continually in the popular media.

The problem of drugs, alcohol, and crime is an old, much-studied one. It should be clear that we are dealing with associations, or correlations, and not causes. For example, the pharmacological effects of cocaine are not known to *cause* a person to commit murder. Yet the high positive correlation between drugs and crime remains a fact: As drug use in a community increases, the occurrence of certain kinds of crimes tends to increase as well, depending on the drug.

Much of the earlier and still more recent research on drugs and crime has concerned heroin. Most crimes committed by people with a heroin addiction are either violations of the drug laws or ways to get money to buy more heroin. Therefore, the most commonly committed crimes are burglary, larceny, assault, and other street crimes. These crimes are indeed serious and sometimes result in injury or death to the victims. The direct intent of the crime is not to harm the victim, however, but to get money. This same motive probably applies to much of the violence related to cocaine, and to conflicts over money among cocaine dealers and their customers.

The use of some drugs has no relationship to criminal activity, and there may even be a negative association between use of the drug and crime. Use of hallucinogens, for example, is not associated with crime, and marijuana seems to fall in the same category. The evidence is mixed for barbiturates and tranquilizers: Some studies show no relationship, but others suggest that the relationship between use and crime is the same for barbiturates and alcohol.

Alcohol intoxication has a high correlation with criminal activity. Because alcohol is legal and very available, little violence is connected with violating drug laws or stealing to obtain alcohol. Most of the crimes associated with alcohol intoxication are assaultive, which means that they are committed with the intent to harm the victim. Alcohol is correlated with other types of crime as well, such as aggravated assault, homicides, property offenses, sexual offenses, and check fraud.

Therefore, one point is clear: Some types of drug use are associated with criminal activity. But what is the explanation? Pharmacology figures complexly in the answer but seems to be only one of many factors. Others include the person's expectations about the drug's effects, the setting where the drug is being used, and the person's personality characteristics.

The drug–crime problem is a good example of how a society and its individual members are affected by drug use. It also illustrates that drug use and its effects on people are influenced by many factors working together.

craving
A term that has been variously defined in reference to drug use; typically a strong or intense desire to use a drug.

definition is useful again. In the Rinaldi study, psychological dependence was defined as "the emotional state of **craving** a drug either for its positive effect or to avoid negative effects associated with its abuse" (p. 557). Interestingly, note that "craving" (for a substance) is one of the 11 criteria for a diagnosis of substance use disorder according to *DSM*-5.

We would like to say a few more words about the *DSM*-5 definitions before concluding our discussion of them. The *DSM*-5 criteria, which are based on the most current knowledge about substance use disorders that comes from research and clinical practice, ease problems in communication because they are clearly written, descriptive criteria. This does not mean that the criteria are perfect; indeed, the expectation is that the criteria will continue to evolve as new knowledge accrues. In this regard, having a generally accepted definition of a phenomenon makes it far more likely that we will acquire new knowledge about substance use and will eventually have a good understanding of it. Another point you may have noticed is that

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 1.2 *DSM*-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Current Substance Use Disorder

Substance use disorder is a problematic pattern of substance use leading to clinically significant impairment or distress, as manifested by at least two of the following, occurring within a 12-month period:

1. The substance is often taken in larger amounts or over a longer period than was intended;
2. Users have a persistent desire or unsuccessful efforts to cut down or control use of the substance;
3. A great deal of time is spent in activities necessary to obtain the substance (e.g., visiting multiple doctors or driving long distances), to use the substance (e.g., chain-smoking), or to recover from its effects;
4. Users have cravings, or strong desires, to use the substance;
5. Recurrent use of the substance results in a failure to fulfill major role obligations at work, school, or home;
6. Use of the substance is continued despite having persistent or recurrent social or interpersonal problems caused, or exacerbated, by the substance;
7. Use of the substance is recurrent so that important social, occupational, or recreational activities are given up or reduced;
8. Use of the substance is recurrent in situations in which it is physically hazardous;
9. Use of the substance is continued despite knowledge of having a persistent or recurrent physical or psychological problem that is likely to have been caused or exacerbated by the substance; and
10. Tolerance has developed, as defined by either of the following:
    (a) Need for markedly increased amounts of the substance to achieve intoxication or desired effect, or
    (b) Markedly diminished effect with continued use of the same amount of the substance.
11. Withdrawal is experienced, as manifested by either of the following:
    (a) The characteristic withdrawal syndrome for the substance, or
    (b) The same (or closely related) substance is taken to relieve or avoid withdrawal symptoms.

Specify current severity: Mild, presence of two to three symptoms; Moderate, presence of four to five symptoms; Severe, presence of six or more symptoms.

Source: From the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fifth Edition. Copyright 2013. American Psychiatric Association.

the *DSM*-5 provides no definition of drug use. In *DSM*-5 terms, *drug use* would be any consumption of alcohol or other drugs and related events that do not meet the criteria for "use disorder."

Although we may never get away entirely from the influence of societal values on definitions of substance use disorders, the creators of *DSM*-5 have considerably advanced our ability to communicate about harmful drug use. Because of this, *DSM*-5 is ubiquitous in alcohol and other drug treatment and research settings in the United States. Accordingly, we follow the *DSM*-5 definitions where relevant in the remaining chapters of this text.

Drug Tolerance, Withdrawal, and Drug-Taking Behavior

tolerance
Generally, increased amounts of a drug needed to achieve intoxication, or a diminished drug effect with continued use of the same amount of a drug.

The *DSM*-5 criteria for substance use disorder include the term drug **tolerance**, which was defined in parts (a) and (b) of criterion 10 in Table 1.2. Another new

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

withdrawal
A definable illness that occurs with a cessation or decrease in use of a drug.

syndrome
In medicine, a number of symptoms that occur together and characterize a specific illness or disease.

term is **withdrawal** symptoms. Withdrawal is a definable illness that occurs with a cessation or decrease in drug use after the body has adjusted to the presence of a drug to such a degree that it cannot function without the drug. Not all drugs are associated with an identifiable withdrawal **syndrome** (also called *abstinence syndrome*). For any drug associated with withdrawal symptoms, the severity of those symptoms may change with the characteristics of the individuals and their history of use of that drug. Furthermore, psychological symptoms, such as anxiety, depression, and craving for drugs, are often part of withdrawal syndromes. These psychological symptoms strongly influence whether the individual can stop using drugs for any length of time.

We draw your attention to drug tolerance and withdrawal in this introductory chapter because they are central topics in psychopharmacology. Tolerance and withdrawal are addressed as part of any evaluation or study of a drug. As a result, we discuss these concepts in far more detail in later chapters. It is critical to mention now, however, that tolerance and withdrawal affect drug-use patterns. For example, if tolerance to a drug develops, the individual must consume increasing amounts of it to achieve a desired drug effect. Such a trend in use may affect how much time the person devotes each day to acquiring the drug and to using it. Furthermore, with greater quantities and frequencies of drug use, the person becomes more susceptible to experiencing various negative physical, social, or legal consequences.

Drug withdrawal also makes a person more likely to continue or resume the use of a drug after a period of abstaining. Many studies have shown that relief from withdrawal is a powerful motivator of drug use. In this regard, drug withdrawal may begin when the level of drug in the blood drops. If the person takes more of the drug at this point, the withdrawal symptoms are relieved. Here the motivating force is the "turning off" of unpleasant withdrawal symptoms, which works to perpetuate a powerful cycle of drug use–drug withdrawal–drug use. Withdrawal is also associated with a higher likelihood of resuming drug use following a period of abstinence because of learned reactions to cues in the environment. We describe how this might happen in Chapter 5.

We want to emphasize here that the influences of tolerance and withdrawal are at the heart of psychopharmacology—the incentives or motivators that drive human (and other animal) drug use. Chapter 5, on the principles and methods of psychopharmacology, addresses this topic in detail.

You may have observed from this discussion of drug tolerance, withdrawal, and drug-taking behavior that they may be instrumental in the development of what we defined earlier as drug addiction. Another factor that may be critical to the development of addictive drug-use patterns is "sensitization" (Robinson & Berridge, 2003). The sensitization hypothesis is that one result of repeated use of a drug in interaction with environmental factors is changes in the brain neural pathways (Chapter 3) that may heighten (sensitize) the reward value of that drug. This means that the drug's effects become more appealing to an individual, and therefore procurement of the drug may assume increasing control over the individual's behavior. Critically, the brain changes resulting from repeated drug use may be permanent, which is one reason why drug addiction may be such an intractable problem for many people, as we show later in this text.

This discussion shows that using a drug for a long time alters the patterns of use for that drug. Long-term use also relates to the *DSM*-5 criteria. Tolerance, withdrawal, and sensitization may result not only in changes in drug use and preoccupation but also in the likelihood that the person's life and the lives of those around that person are affected by the drug in a snowballing effect, with one consequence building on another. The outcome can reflect some of the criteria included in the *DSM*-5 definition of substance use disorder.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Astrid Stawiarz/Stringer/Getty Images Entertainment/Getty Images

David McNew/POOL New/REUTERS/Alamy stock photo

Many celebrities are frank about their struggles with alcohol and the problems it creates for their careers.

Of course, discussion of the effects of tolerance and dependence on motivations for drug use addresses only a small minority of the different reasons that people use drugs, which takes us back to the 10 systems that influence or are influenced by drug use that we discussed at the beginning of this chapter. In this regard, people give numerous reasons for "why" they use different drugs, and different drugs may be most strongly associated with different reasons. At the same time, multiple drugs may be used for the same reasons. The same drug also may be used for different reasons in different times and places. This suggests that reasons for use are not limited to a drug's pharmacological effects but relate to a variety of other variables as well. For example, Boys et al. (2001) conducted an interview study of 364 men and women aged 16 to 22 in the United Kingdom who had used two or more substances in the last 90 days. The study showed that use of substances such as alcohol, marijuana, cocaine, ecstasy, and LSD was associated with multiple "purposes" or functions, which referred to what the participants expected to gain by using the drugs. Each substance was associated with eight to nine different functions (such as feeling better when depressed, getting intoxicated, enhancing sex, helping to relax, helping to sleep, and enhancing another activity, such as listening to music), and there was considerable overlap in the functions cited for each drug, despite the drugs' considerable differences in pharmacology. The upshot of findings such as these is that they highlight the complexity in motivations for drug use among humans, and we will spend considerable space elaborating upon this basic point in subsequent chapters of this text. The complexity of human alcohol and drug use is also represented in the models of the causes of the substance use disorders that are summarized in Chapter 15.

"If drinking is interfering with your work, you're probably a heavy drinker. If your work is interfering with your drinking, you're probably an alcoholic."

Anonymous

"No one is immune from addiction; it afflicts people of all ages, races, classes, and professions."

Patrick J. Kennedy

"In the 1960s, people took acid to make the world weird. Now the world is weird, and people take Prozac to make it normal."

Author unknown

REVIEW

1. Identify three criteria the *DSM*-5 uses to diagnose substance use disorder.
2. Explain how the concepts of addiction, drug dependence, psychological dependence, tolerance, and withdrawal are included in the *DSM*-5 criteria for current substance use disorder.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1.4 Overview of the Text

You now are ready for a brief overview of the rest of this text, which is divided into three main sections. The first section, which includes Chapters 1 through 5, gives you fundamental information on psychopharmacology and the history of laws and policy regarding drug use in the United States and other countries. You saw that this first chapter introduced you to important definitions of concepts and the epidemiology of drug use. Chapter 2 places human drug use in a historical context by giving you a better appreciation of today's use patterns and the social and political contexts in which they occur. Chapter 3 is a basic discussion of the nervous system and how drugs affect it. This knowledge is essential to understanding psychotropic drugs because, no matter what drug effect or experience you consider, some change in the nervous system is inevitable. Chapter 4 concerns pharmacology, as we review the methods scientists use to study drugs and their effects. Chapter 5 focuses on principles and methods of psychopharmacology, which is the central topic of this text. Chapters 4 and 5 will help you to understand how we have learned much of what we know about drugs.

Chapters 6 through 14 constitute the second section of the text and concern individual drugs and drug classes. Our drug topics include cocaine and the amphetamines, nicotine, caffeine, alcohol, opiates, marijuana, hallucinogens, psychiatric medications, and other prescription or **over-the-counter drugs**. These chapters follow a broad outline of historical overview and epidemiology; mechanisms of drug action; medical and psychotherapeutic uses; and physiological, psychological, and social or environmental effects. Your study of each of the drug chapters will give you a good understanding of that drug (or drug class) and its use.

over-the-counter drugs
Drugs that can be obtained legally without a medical prescription.

The last section of the text consists of two chapters on topics geared to the general public that are often discussed in media. Chapter 15 is a review of the treatment of substance use disorders, and Chapter 16 covers the prevention of substance use disorders before they occur. Prevention is a fitting topic on which to end this text because that is what all the research, politics, and discussion are about—reaching the goal of living in a society free of substance use disorders.

1.5 Evaluating Websites

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

1-8 Explain the criteria used to evaluate websites

We will close this chapter with a discussion of a topic that is relevant to your research on drugs and therefore central to this text: evaluating online sources. College students often view "doing research" as synonymous with "searching the web," and there are good reasons for that. An internet search will yield information on the topics we cover.

Online information is wide-ranging in scope and usually instantly accessed. Information on drugs is a good example. Search for the word *drugs* on Google, and you have access to over 1,000,000,000 (as of November 2020) potentially useful web pages! *Potential* is a key word here, because web pages are not monitored for accuracy or currency or even for whether they or links related to them still exist. Therefore, in seeking nonfictional information, the web user must determine whether the data under review meet standards that would stand up in the research community.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 1.3 Five Criteria for Evaluating Web Pages

1. Accuracy of web documents
   - Who wrote the page, and can you contact him or her?
   - What is the purpose of the document, and why was it produced?
   - Is the person qualified to write this document?
   - Make sure the author provides an e-mail or a contact address and/or phone number.
   - Know the distinction between author and web master.
2. Authority of web documents
   - What credentials are listed for the author(s)?
   - Who published the document, and is the publisher separate from the web master?
   - Check the domain of the document: What institution publishes this document?
   - Does the publisher list its qualifications?
3. Objectivity of web documents
   - What goals and objectives does this page meet?
   - How detailed is the information?
   - What opinions (if any) are expressed by the author?
   - Determine whether the page is a mask for advertising; if so, information might be biased.
   - View any web page as you would an infomercial on television. Ask why was this written, and for whom.
4. Currency of web documents
   - When was it produced?
   - When was it updated?
   - How up-to-date are the links (if any)?
   - How many dead links are on the page?
   - Are the links current or updated regularly?
   - Is the information on the page outdated?
5. Coverage of web documents
   - Are the links (if any) evaluated, and do they complement the document's theme?
   - Is the site all images or a balance of text and images?
   - Is the presented information cited correctly?
   - If special software is required to view the information, how much are you missing if you do not have the software?
   - Is it free, or is there a fee to obtain the information?
   - Is there an option for text only, or frames, or a suggested browser for better viewing?

Source: J. Kapoun. (1998). Teaching undergrads web evaluation: A guide for library instruction. *College and Research Library News, 59*, 522–523. Reprinted with permission from the American Library Association.

Fortunately, a number of educators have thought a lot about evaluating web pages. Kapoun (1998) provided a checklist of five criteria to help you to evaluate a web page: accuracy, authority, objectivity, currency, and coverage. They are summarized for you in Table 1.3. Even though this was published in 1998, this checklist remains highly relevant and applicable. We encourage you to learn these criteria until they are second nature to you, if you have not done so already. The effort will be valuable to you in this course and in any other context that requires you to have accurate and current information. A study done by the Stanford History of Education Group (2016) showed that over 7,000 students at multiple levels (middle school, high school, and college) in 12 U.S. states found it difficult to discriminate between fact and fiction in researching information on the web. As part of this study, undergraduate students at six different colleges or universities were included in the sample. The colleges ranged from those considered the elite in the United States to large state universities that accept the majority of students who apply for admission.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Create a table describing the five criteria to help you evaluate websites.
2. Google "drug use" to locate a website describing drug use in the state in which you reside. Then apply the five criteria for evaluating web pages to this website to determine if this is a reliable and accurate source of information.

Summary

- Psychopharmacology—the scientific study of the effects of drugs on behavior—is the subject of this chapter.
- Drugs may be classified in different ways; six of the major ones are reviewed in this chapter.
- The experience that humans have from taking drugs is influenced by three sets of factors: pharmacological factors, characteristics of the person who uses drugs, and the setting in which the drug is used.
- National survey data show that people in the United States use a variety of drugs. Alcohol, tobacco, and marijuana consistently have appeared as the most commonly tried and currently used psychoactive drugs.
- Some individuals use more than one drug regularly and may use different drugs together on the same occasion.
- The U.S. National Institute on Drug Abuse estimates that the annual cost of alcohol and illicit drug use to the United States is more than $742 billion.
- The formal definition of substance use disorders in the United States is given in the fifth edition of the American Psychiatric Association's *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual*.
- The *DSM*-5 definition includes drug tolerance and withdrawal, which may powerfully affect drug-use patterns.
- This book covers basic psychopharmacology concepts, details on major drugs and drug classes and those who use them, and discussions of prevention and treatment for a better understanding of drugs and human behavior.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Because the effects of drugs are both predictable and obvious, it is relatively easy to define harmful drug use.
   F *Drugs have a variety of effects on people, and the way drugs are perceived may vary in different cultures and subcultures. As a result, it has proved difficult to create a definition of drug abuse that is generally agreeable.*
2. A drug's street name sometimes describes the actual effects of that drug.
   T *Street names, which come from drug subcultures and the street drug market, sometimes do reflect actual drug effects.*
3. A person's reaction to a drug depends mostly on the biological action of the drug in the body.
   F *Biology is important, but psychological and social or environmental factors must also be included to explain the effects of psychoactive drugs on humans.*
4. Because drug use is complicated, it is impossible to estimate patterns of drug use for the population of a whole country.
   F *Drug use is complicated, but sophisticated sampling methods and computers have made it possible to select large numbers of people and survey them to derive precise estimates of drug use in a given population.*
5. From 2008 to 2018, the use of alcohol, cocaine, and heroin increased in the United States.
   F *From 2008 to 2018, the use of alcohol, cocaine, and heroin use remained relatively unchanged in the United States. During this time, however, the use of marijuana increased.*
6. The highest rates of alcohol and other drug use are found among 18- to 25-year-olds.
   T *People in this age group, called "young adults," have the highest rates of alcohol and other drug use in the United States.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

7. A person's use of more than one drug at a time is of little concern because it happens so infrequently.
   F *Although multiple drug use is not as frequent as use of a single substance, it is hardly rare, especially among young people. It is of great concern because combining drugs sometimes has unpredictable effects that may be life-threatening.*
8. Estimated economic costs associated with alcohol and drug use include illness, death, medical expenses, and crime.
   T *When governments estimate the economic cost associated with alcohol and drug use, they include costs of illness, death, medical expenses, and crime.*
9. The chemical action of alcohol and other drugs causes violence and crime.
   F *The use of alcohol and other, but not all other, drugs is associated with violence and crime but does not directly cause such behavior.*
10. Modern researchers rely on definitions of alcohol and other drug use that are free of social or cultural biases.
    F *We are improving our ability to rid our definitions of biases, but due to the influence of social and cultural factors on alcohol and other drug use and the perception of such use, it is unlikely that we will ever arrive at bias-free definitions.*
11. A diagnosis of substance use disorder is made when a person has become either physically or psychologically dependent on a drug.
    F *Tolerance and physical dependence are two of 11 criteria in DSM-5 that must be considered in making a diagnosis of substance use disorder. In DSM-5, psychological dependence "is not among the criteria for a substance use disorder."*
12. Definitions of addiction emphasize overwhelming involvement with a drug.
    T *Addiction is identified when a person has overwhelming involvement with using a drug. The person's life centers on getting an adequate supply of the drug, which takes priority over most or all other parts of life, such as school, job, family, and friends.*
13. The continued use of any drug will eventually lead to tolerance of and physical dependence on that drug.
    F *The continued use of many, but not all, drugs may lead to tolerance of and physical dependence on that drug.*

Key Terms

addiction
craving
drug
drug abuse
drug dosage
drug effects
grain
over-the-counter drugs
pharmacology
placebo
polydrug use
prevalence
psychoactive
psychological dependence
psychological set
psychology
psychopharmacology
route of drug administration
syndrome
tolerance
withdrawal

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Even though marijuana is still defined by the National Survey on Drug Use and Health as an illicit drug, the percentage of individuals reporting the use of marijuana has increased over the last decade. Considering that drug use has both positive and negative consequences, what do you think of this trend? Should efforts be made to further legalize the recreational or medicinal use of marijuana? Why or why not?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2. Many factors influence the drug experience, including characteristics of the person who uses the drug such as their gender, age, and personality. Personality variables include one's knowledge, expectations, and thoughts about a drug. How do you think these factors influence an individual's drug experience? Can you create an example of how someone's knowledge and expectations of how they will experience alcohol can affect their experience of using alcohol?
3. What are some of the advantages and disadvantages of having a formal, standard way to define a construct like "substance use disorder," such as *DSM*-5 does? Should cultural differences in substance use and definitions of *abuse* (or harmful drug use) matter in defining substance use disorder? Why or why not? If you believe that cultural factors should be incorporated in definitions of substance use disorder, how would you do it?

Suggested Readings

Kapoun, J. (1998). Teaching undergrads web evaluation: A guide for library instruction. *College and Research Library News, 59*, 522–523.

Weil, A., & Rosen, W. (2004). *From chocolate to morphine* (rev. ed.). Houghton Mifflin Co.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

2-1 Describe the historical use of psychoactive drugs in African, Asian, European, and American cultures

2-2 Explain how the development and use of drugs for medical and nonmedical purposes are intertwined

2-3 Evaluate the history of drug laws in the United States in terms of their effect on rates of drug use

2-4 Evaluate the effects of the Eighteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which prohibited the production, sale, transportation, and importation of alcohol

2-5 Describe the Controlled Substances Act and the criteria by which a drug is scheduled

2-6 Discuss the current drug laws in the United States and factors contributing to continued legislative action on possession and use

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

2

Drug Use Yesterday and Today

Historical Overview

Drug Use in the United States
Medical Science and Drug Use

Development of Drug Laws

The San Francisco Ordinance
Pure Food and Drug Act
Harrison Narcotics Tax Act
Alcohol Prohibition
Post-Prohibition Legislation

Current Drug Laws

Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. The first recorded use of cannabis was in the early 1800s.

___ 2. Grape wine was the first alcoholic beverage to be used.

___ 3. The Opium Wars between China and Great Britain in the mid-1800s occurred in large part because Britain was unwilling to curtail its trade of opium into China.

___ 4. Khat, a mild stimulant consumed by chewing, is used by Sufi men for religious purposes.

___ 5. Many of the drugs that are now illegal in the United States were widely used to treat a broad spectrum of maladies in the 1800s and early 1900s.

___ 6. The first notable drug law in the United States—the 1875 San Francisco ordinance—banned the smoking of opium.

___ 7. The Pure Food and Drug Act of 1906 had little impact on individuals who were dependent on drugs.

___ 8. The Harrison Narcotics Tax Act of 1914 sharply curtailed the prevalence of heroin use in the United States.

___ 9. The Eighteenth Amendment, which prohibited the production, sale, transportation, and importing of alcohol, failed because it did not have a substantial effect on drinking in the United States.

___10. Several states in the United States have decriminalized marijuana possession and use.

___11. The most successful aspect of the war on drugs has been the interception of drugs.

___12. Hair testing is a reliable method of testing for drug use.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Humans have used drugs for thousands of years, for religious purposes, recreational use, altering states of consciousness, and obtaining relief from pain or distress. In this chapter, we have three objectives. The first is to provide a historical overview of drug use, from prehistory to current times. More detailed histories of specific psychoactive substances appear in their respective chapters. This general overview is useful as a picture of the evolution of drug use and as a background for considering the patterns of today's drug use described in Chapter 1. You will notice in some cases that history has repeated itself, and we hope understanding such patterns will help us learn from past experiences. A second goal of this chapter is to discuss some parallels between developments in medicine and the nonmedical use of drugs. The third goal is to review the restrictions that have been placed on drug use and summarize current drug laws.

2.1 Historical Overview

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

2-1 Describe the historical use of psychoactive drugs in African, Asian, European, and American cultures

Indications of psychoactive substance use date back to the beginnings of recorded history and revolve around the use of alcohol and plants with psychoactive properties. Throughout history, cultures have been characterized by their diversity and similarity in patterns of drug use. Investigations by archaeologists suggest that beer and huckleberry wine were used as early as 6400 B.C. (Mellaart, 1967). Alcohol probably was discovered following accidental **fermentation**. Also, various plants were used for the physical and psychological changes they produced, usually in religious or medicinal contexts. As an example, what probably was the **opium poppy** was used in Asia Minor about 5000 B.C. as a "joy plant" (Blum, 1984; O'Brien & Cohen, 1984). The use of ***Cannabis sativa*** (brewed as a tea) dates to around 2700 B.C. in China. Emperor Shen Nung recommended it to his citizens for the treatment of gout and absentmindedness, among a host of other ailments. People in the Stone Age are thought to have been familiar with opium, **hashish**, and cocaine, and to have used these drugs to produce altered states of consciousness (typically in a religious context) or to prepare themselves for battle (Government Printing Office [GPO], 1972). In the horn of Africa, khat chewing has a long history. Its leaves were viewed as sacred by ancient Egyptians, and Sufi religious men chewed on khat while meditating on the Koran. Archaeological studies in Central and South America indicate coca use dates to as early as 1000 B.C. Under Incan rule, coca was used for several purposes, including ritual, social, and physiological uses.

Throughout history, contact between distant cultures has often been forced by trade agreements or by wars or other hostilities. For example, the Crusades and the expeditions of Marco Polo exposed Europeans to the drugs, particularly opium and hashish, that were popular in Asian cultures. Other contacts were opened later through the travels of European explorers (particularly from England, France, Portugal, and Spain) to the Americas. The predominant psychoactive substances brought to Europe from the Americas were cocaine (from South America), various hallucinogens (from Central America), and tobacco (from North America). According to O'Brien and Cohen (1984), the exchange was not one-sided. The trees that

fermentation
A combustive process in which yeasts interact with the sugars in plants such as grapes, grains, and fruits to produce an enzyme that converts the sugar into alcohol.

opium poppy
A plant cultivated for centuries, primarily in Eurasia, for opium—a narcotic that acts as a central nervous system depressant.

Cannabis sativa
The Indian hemp plant popularly known as marijuana; its resin, flowering tops, leaves, and stem contain the plant's psychoactive substances.

hashish
A drug produced from the resin that covers the flowers of the cannabis hemp plant. The resin generally contains a greater concentration of the drug's psychoactive properties.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

produced the caffeine-containing coffee bean were native to Ethiopia. The coffee beverage derived from this bean was brought to Europe in the 1600s, and European seagoers were responsible for the eventual spread of coffee bean cultivation to the current world-leading supplier of coffee, South America. In addition, Europe introduced distilled alcoholic beverages to the Americas and cannabis to Chile in 1545 (O'Brien & Cohen, 1984).

There were relatively few restrictions on drug availability or drug use prior to the beginning of the 20th century (an exception is Islamic law's edicts on alcohol consumption). Occasional efforts were made to decrease or eliminate certain substances, but these efforts tended to be short-lived or ineffective. For example, initial introductions of tobacco, coffee, and tea to Europe all met some resistance. Rodrigo de Jerez, a colleague of Columbus and the first European thought to smoke tobacco, was jailed in Spain because the authorities felt the devil had overtaken him (Whitaker, 1987). Also, at different times, efforts were made to ban the use of coffee and tea.

Cases are also known in which governments acted not to make drugs unavailable but rather to keep the drug trade open and flourishing. The best example was armed conflicts between China and Great Britain in the mid-19th century. These conflicts, because they dealt with British traders bringing opium into China, are now known as the Opium Wars. By the mid-1800s, millions of Chinese men had become dependent on opium. In fact, China appears to have had the highest national use of opium at that time. Most of the opium used in China was cultivated in India and brought to China by British traders. Chinese officials passed a variety of laws to control or eliminate opium imports, but none (including **prohibition**) had the desired effect of reducing opium use or the prevalence of dependence. Furthermore, the British were unwilling to curtail the trade of opium into China, in part for financial reasons and in part because they did not witness such a degree of dependence among those who used opium in England (where opium was widely used in medicine). Relations reached a crisis in 1839, when the Chinese government destroyed large shipments of opium being brought into China by British and American traders. Thus began the First Opium War between China and England. The British won the conflict and, as part of the 1842 Treaty of Nanking, received rights to the port of Hong Kong (rights that ended in 1997) as well as reimbursement for the shippers who lost their opium cargo. The opium trade continued until 1856, when the Second Opium War commenced. The war ended in 1858, and the Treaty of Tientsin mandated that China would continue to import opium but could impose heavy taxes. Not until the beginning of the 20th century was this trade reduced and eventually terminated, dovetailing with a growing international recognition of **narcotic** drug use.

prohibition
The legislative forbidding of the sale of a substance, as in the alcohol prohibition era in the United States, 1920–1933.

narcotic
A central nervous system depressant that contains sedative and pain-relieving compounds.

In the 20th century, few differences existed between Europe and North America in the types of drugs being used. What is of interest is that a large number of new or "rediscovered" drugs were first popularized in the United States and later became popular in other countries, making the United States something of a trendsetter in drug use.

Drug Use in the United States

Native Americans used **peyote** and tobacco during spiritual experiences and for shamanic use. Before European colonization, fermented beverages were rather low in alcohol content and are believed to have been mainly used in ceremonial and religious practices. When Europeans arrived they introduced indigenous peoples to distilled spirits.

One of the most interesting times in this country in terms of drug use was the 19th century. Into the mid-1800s, few restrictions were placed on drugs. Drugs such as opium, **morphine**, marijuana, heroin (at the end of the century), and cocaine were

peyote (pā -'ō -tē)
A cactus plant, the top of which (a "button") is dried and ingested for its hallucinogenic properties.

morphine
A derivative of opium best known as a potent pain-relieving medication.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

easy to obtain without prescription, often at grocery stores or through mail order. Opium, for example, was sold legally and at low prices; some opium poppies were grown in the United States (opium cultivation was not outlawed nationally until 1942). Morphine was commonly used, especially during and after the Civil War, and opium, morphine, and cocaine could be obtained in a variety of **patent medicines** readily available in stores. Examples were Godfrey's Cordial, Swaim's Panacea, Ayer's Sarsaparilla, and Mrs. Wilson's Soothing Syrup. Opium was frequently taken in liquid form in mixtures such as laudanum (which contained 1 grain of opium to 25 drops of alcohol), and one of its common uses was in calming and quieting crying babies!

patent medicines
Products that were sold, most often in the 19th century, as medicines that would cure a host of illnesses and diseases.

Most narcotic use throughout this period was legal—whether through over-the-counter "tonics" or prescription. Physicians recommended these substances widely and referred to opium and morphine as "God's own medicine," or "G.O.M." (Morgan, 1981). Indeed these were effective calming agents. Opium was recommended for a nearly endless list of ailments. A short list includes dysentery, pain, swelling, delirium tremens (associated with withdrawal from alcohol), headache, and mental illness in certain cases. Morphine, the active agent in the opium poppy, was isolated in 1806. It was named after Morpheus, the god of sleep and dreams, and was used widely during and after the Civil War, its administration greatly facilitated by the introduction of the hypodermic needle in the late 1840s. In fact, the widespread use of morphine during the Civil War is generally considered responsible for large numbers of soldiers developing the "soldier's disease"—morphine dependence. The smoking of opium was introduced in the United States by Chinese laborers and was a widespread practice in the mid-1800s, especially on the West Coast. However, increased recognition by medical experts and others of the physically and mentally dependent nature of opium poppy products—opium, morphine, and heroin—triggered efforts to control their use and availability. We discuss some of these efforts later in this chapter.

Marijuana is another substance with a long history of use. In the 1800s, physicians used a liquid extract of the *Cannabis sativa* plant as a general all-purpose medication (Nahas, 1973). Its nonmedical use was much wider in the 1920s, probably in part a reaction to alcohol prohibition (Brecher, 1972). The use of marijuana was fairly constant in the 1930s through the 1950s but was generally limited to urban areas and to the rural areas in which marijuana was grown and harvested. In the 1960s, its popularity soared, and that popularity has remained strong. Coinciding with this popularity have been efforts to decriminalize or legitimize marijuana sale and use. Organizations active in this effort include the National Organization for the Reform of Marijuana Laws, or NORML, and the Drug Policy Alliance. Some advocacy groups have focused their efforts on legalizing marijuana for medical uses. Via Proposition 215 in 1996, California was the first state to legalize medical marijuana. Laws surrounding the use of marijuana are

Contraband Collection/Alamy stock photo

Several million Chinese men and women became physically and mentally dependent on opium by the mid-1800s. This photograph depicts a Chinese man smoking opium in a raised bed in a Peking (now Beijing) den around 1905. Beside him is a woman attendant in traditional clothing and hairstyle.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Pictorial Press Ltd/Alamy stock photo

Patent medicines, such as Hamlin's Wizard Oil, were widely marketed in the 1800s as cures for a variety of ailments and illnesses.

changing rapidly. By 2020, 14 states and the District of Columbia had decriminalized marijuana and legalized recreational and medicinal use. Thirty other states allowed for the use of medical marijuana, but varied as to whether its use had been decriminalized. However, possession and use of marijuana remained fully illegal in six states: Alabama, Idaho, Kansas, South Carolina, Tennessee, and Wyoming.

A drug whose popularity has fluctuated among those who use drugs in the United States is cocaine. Cocaine was widely used in various "tonics" and patent medicines in the late 1800s and early 1900s, despite concerns over negative effects associated with its extended use; not until 1914 was cocaine brought under strict legal controls and penalties. Its use was apparently limited in the United States until the 1960s. In the late 1960s and up to now, it has been in much wider use. In the 1970s cocaine was seen as a fashionable drug and used by celebrities and businesspeople. By the 1980s different forms of the drug were used, such as crack cocaine (a free-based form of cocaine made by cooking cocaine powder, water, and baking soda until it forms a solid), making the drug more accessible and affordable. As a result, the use of cocaine steadily increased. Recent increases in use have been attributed to increases in availability.

Other psychoactive substances have had their distinct periods of popularity during this century. **Amphetamines**, for example, were widely used to treat depression in the 1930s. In addition, they were given to soldiers during World War II in the belief that the drug would enhance alertness (O'Brien & Cohen, 1984). Obtaining amphetamines through medical outlets such as physician prescriptions was not particularly difficult. As concern arose about the dangers inherent in the continued use of these drugs, restrictions on their availability became much tighter. At this juncture, the stage was set for a much greater production and distribution of amphetamines through illicit channels. Later, in the 1960s and 1970s, amphetamines went through another period of heavy use when they were overprescribed for weight control. Amphetamines also became widely available on the street during this time. The misuse of amphetamines remains a significant problem today, particularly when these drugs are taken intravenously.

amphetamines
Central nervous system stimulants that act like naturally occurring adrenaline.

The 1950s were the era for two central substances. Use of the minor tranquilizers became popular, and that trend continues today. As we discuss in Chapter 13, minor tranquilizers are among the most commonly prescribed psychiatric drugs in the United States. The 1950s are also associated with the contemporary appearance of **solvent** inhaling. The first report of such misuse was in 1951, by Clinger and Johnson, who described the intentional inhalation of gasoline by two boys. Solvent misuse tended to be more common with other substances, however, such as model cements, lighter fluids, lacquer thinner, cleaning solvents, and more recently the propellant gases of aerosol products (Hofmann, 1975; MacLean et al., 2012). The problem was marked in the early 1960s, with solvent inhaling causing deaths and leading hobby glue producers to remove the two most toxic solvents—benzene and carbon tetrachloride—from their products (Blum, 1984). A more recent example has been the sniffing of correction fluids that contain the solvent trichloroethane. Manufacturers of correction fluid have replaced trichloroethane with other solvents or added unpleasant substances to the fluid, such as mustard oil. Solvent inhalant misuse (such as the current "huffing" of propane and spray paint fumes) is still a serious problem, especially among teenagers. Indeed, there have been recent reports of teenagers using aerosol products and then diving into a swimming pool because they had heard that the underwater

solvent
A substance, usually a liquid or gas, that contains one or more intoxicating components; examples are glue, gasoline, and nonstick–frying pan sprays.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

pressure would increase the rush. Instead, doing so has sometimes resulted in "sudden sniffing death syndrome," whereby the individuals have a heart attack and drown.

A historical view of psychoactive substance use might show the 1960s as the era of lysergic acid diethylamide-25, commonly known as LSD. The drug had been used in various tests during the 1950s (e.g., as an adjunct to psychotherapy) but did not reach the height of its popularity until the mid-1960s, when Dr. Timothy Leary, a Harvard psychologist, began to expound on what he found to be its mind-altering advantages. LSD was banned in 1967, and its use waned considerably until a recent resurgence in its popularity, particularly in the context of the "rave" culture. Recent studies have investigated the use of LSD in palliative care and in the treatment of several disorders, including anxiety, depression, posttraumatic stress, cluster headaches, and substance use disorders (Dakwar, 2016). Most of the studies have demonstrated positive short-term changes in patients. LSD may emerge as an effective therapeutic agent in psychiatry, but additional research is needed. A more recent psychedelic substance to appear on the scene is methylenedioxymethamphetamine, better known as MDMA or "Ecstasy." MDMA is one of a cluster of drugs collectively referred to as "club drugs" (others include methamphetamine, GHB, LSD, and ketamine; they are discussed in greater detail in Contemporary Issue Box 2.1).

Angela Hampton Picture Library/Alamy stock photo

Solvent sniffing remains a serious problem, particularly among teenagers.

> *"The universal, immediate reaction is that the amphetamine high is like nothing else. You fix up a shot. You dissolve it in water. You draw it up into the dropper. You put a belt or a tie around your arm. In the meantime, you're very excited, your heart's beating fast. 'Cause you know you're going to get happy in a couple minutes. Then you give yourself a shot."*
>
> A person dependent on amphetamine (Goode, 1972)

Heroin is another drug with a long history of use in the United States. Heroin was first synthesized in the late 1890s, and it has been available for use since the early 1900s. The extent of use traditionally has been greater among two populations: lower and higher socioeconomic groups (O'Brien & Cohen, 1984). During the Vietnam War, the high incidence of heroin use among U.S. soldiers in Vietnam was a significant concern, but soldiers who used the drug overseas did not tend to continue its use following their return to the States. In recent years, heroin has been showing a renewed popularity. The same factors that contributed to the spread of crack—low price and easy availability—appear to be behind this increase in heroin use. However, there are some new wrinkles and concerns. First, the level of purity of the currently available heroin is higher than in the past. In the 1980s, the purity of heroin sold on the street was less than 10%; it is now estimated at more than 60% and can be as high as 80%. Second, fewer individuals are injecting the drug. Instead, they have been snorting or smoking it, or mixing heroin and crack and smoking the combination. Third, heroin was a drug historically used by adults. However, early use and experimentation with heroin by U.S. teenagers have been an ongoing concern. Among those using heroin for the first time, approximately 25% are under the age of 18.

This overview provides only a sample of the major drugs that have been used over the years for their psychoactive properties. It is important to recognize that patterns of drug use and misuse are not static. The drugs more frequently used next year might include a drug used in the past that develops a renewed popularity or a newly synthesized substance, such as one of the so-called designer drugs. Two examples serve to highlight this. The first is the recent attention focused on **"bath salts"** and **synthetic marijuana**. The second example, quite profoundly, is the recent increased use of fentanyl, a synthetic opioid being used alone or mixed with heroin. An anesthetic used in surgery settings, fentanyl can be 50 to 100 times more potent than

bath salts
A psychoactive "designer drug" that is synthesized from various amphetamine-like chemicals and can be inhaled, swallowed, smoked, or injected.

synthetic marijuana
A psychoactive "designer drug" comprised of natural plants that are sprayed with synthetic chemicals that mimic the effects of cannabis when consumed.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 2.1

The Rise of "Club Drugs"

The popularity of a group of substances collectively referred to as "club drugs" has more or less been sustained over the past 2 decades. This term was originally used to describe drugs used by young adults at all-night dance parties such as "raves" and "trances" and at dance clubs and bars. However, club drug use more generally is inextricably linked to a variety of nonrave social contexts and as well to patterns of polysubstance use (Parks & Kennedy, 2004). They now have usage beyond those more specific contexts. All indications are that club drugs can cause serious health problems and even death in some cases. Some of these drugs are stimulants, some are depressants, and some are hallucinogens. When used in combination with alcohol, these drugs can be even more dangerous. Because some club drugs are colorless, tasteless, and odorless, individuals who want to intoxicate or sedate others (often to commit sexual assaults) can unobtrusively add them to beverages. Following is some information on the leading club drugs. More details on these substances are provided in later chapters of this text:

Methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA) (street names: Ecstasy, Molly, XTC, X, Adam, clarity, lover's speed). MDMA is chemically similar to the stimulant methamphetamine and the hallucinogen mescaline. MDMA can produce both stimulant and psychedelic effects and can be extremely dangerous when taken in large doses.

Gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB) (street names: grievous bodily harm, G, liquid Ecstasy, Georgia homeboy, bedtime scoop). GHB can be produced in clear liquid, white powder, tablet, and capsule forms, and it is often used in combination with alcohol, making it even more dangerous. GHB has been increasingly involved in poisonings, overdoses, rapes, and fatalities. GHB is often manufactured in homes with recipes and ingredients found and purchased on the Internet. It is usually misused either for its intoxicating, sedative, or euphoriant properties or for its growth hormone–releasing effects, which can build muscle. When taken in smaller doses, GHB can relieve anxiety and produce relaxation; however, as the dose increases, the sedative effects may result in sleep and eventual coma or death.

Ketamine (street names: special K, K, vitamin K, cat valiums, jet). Ketamine is an injectable anesthetic that has been approved for both human and animal use in medical settings since 1970. Ketamine is produced in liquid form or as a white powder that is often snorted or smoked with marijuana or tobacco products. Taken in larger doses, ketamine can cause delirium, amnesia, impaired motor function, high blood pressure, depression, and potentially fatal respiratory problems. Low-dose intoxication from ketamine results in impaired attention, learning ability, and memory.

Rohypnol (street names: roofies, rophies, roche, forget-me pill). Rohypnol (flunitrazepam) belongs to the class of drugs known as benzodiazepines. It is not approved for prescription use in the United States, although it is approved in Europe and is used in more than 60 countries as a treatment for insomnia, as a sedative, and as a presurgery anesthetic. Rohypnol is tasteless and odorless, and it dissolves easily in carbonated beverages. The drug can cause profound "anterograde amnesia"; that is, individuals may not remember events they experienced while under the effects of the drug.

Methamphetamine (street names: speed, ice, chalk, meth, crystal, crank, fire, glass). Methamphetamine is a toxic, addictive stimulant that affects many areas of the central nervous system. The drug is often made in clandestine laboratories from relatively inexpensive over-the-counter ingredients. Available in many forms, methamphetamine can be smoked, snorted, injected, or orally ingested. Its use is associated with serious health consequences including memory loss, aggression, violence, psychotic behavior, and potential cardiac and neurological damage. Those who use methamphetamine typically display agitation, excited speech, decreased appetite, and increased physical activity levels.

Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) (street names: acid, boomers, purple haze, yellow sunshines). LSD is a hallucinogen; it induces abnormalities in sensory perceptions. The effects of LSD are unpredictable, depending on the amount taken, on the surroundings in which the drug is used, and on the individual's personality, mood, and expectations. Two long-term disorders sometimes associated with LSD are persistent psychosis and hallucinogen persisting perception disorder (which used to be called "flashbacks").

Source: Adapted from *community Alert Bulletin on Club Drugs* (National Institute on Drug Abuse [NIDA], 2004, updated 2017).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 2.2

Recreational Designer Drugs: "Bath Salts" and Synthetic Cannabinoids

Although synthetic drugs are not a new phenomenon, the recent appearance of two such synthetic designer drugs—"bath salts" and synthetic marijuana—has elicited widespread concern and subsequent legislative action.

"Bath salts" in the present context are not the bath salts you are more familiar with, those fragranced salts added to bath water. Instead, the drug "bath salts" is synthesized from various amphetamine-like chemicals. The formulation varies, and it can be snorted, swallowed, smoked, or injected. These drugs are nicknamed "bath salts" because they tend to be white or off-white crystals, similar to the more traditional understanding of bath salts. Frequently, "bath salts" contain the compounds MDPV (3, 4-methylenedioxy-pyrovalerone) and/or mephedrone, known as synthetic cathinones. As the popularity of "bath salts" spread, more and more cases of emergency room visits by those who used "bath salts" were recorded, with individuals typically presenting with extreme agitation, violent behaviors, and psychotic symptoms. In response, a number of states passed laws banning "bath salts," which were typically being sold for $25 to $50 per 50 milligram packets at convenience stores and head shops as plant food or cleaning/hygienic products. The "bath salts" were packaged under names like Aura, Ivory Wave, Blue Silk, Loco-Motion, Vanilla Sky, and Ocean Burst.

Synthetic cannabinoids are synthesized from various man-made chemicals and sprayed onto an appropriate plant and smoked like regular cannabis. They are best known by the brand names Spice and K2. The use of synthetic cannabinoids can lead to serious side effects that are different from marijuana use, including rapid heart rate, vomiting, agitation, and confusion.

The use of these recreational designer drugs has led to a surge in visits to emergency rooms. Many states have banned these drugs. Along with the actions taken by individual states, the federal Drug Enforcement Agency in 2011 added several of the ingredients most commonly used in "bath salts" and synthetic marijuana to the controlled substances schedule. In 2012, the Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act was passed to ban these ingredients at the federal level. In addition to adding these latest ingredients to the controlled substances schedule, the new law closed a loophole that was associated with the 1986 Controlled Substances Analogue Enforcement Act. In this regard, "bath salts" and synthetic marijuana came in packages labelled as "not for human consumption," which helped them avoid the provisions of the Analogue Enforcement Act, under which any substance substantially similar to a banned drug was deemed illegal if intended for human consumption.

morphine. In many communities, fentanyl fatalities are exceeding those associated with heroin. More broadly, the rapid rise in heroin and fentanyl use, and the associated negative consequences and deaths, have been widely cited as a national epidemic. The only thing that can be said with confidence is that drug use will continue and that some drug misuse will be associated with any given psychoactive substance.

Medical Science and Drug Use

Before leaving our historical perspective section, we should note the interesting long-term parallel between the development and use of psychoactive substances in medicinal forms (discussed in more detail in Chapter 5) and the nonmedicinal use or misuse of these drugs. Many of the drugs described in this text were used for medicinal purposes at one time or another. Medical science only gradually became the well-respected institution that we know today. Even in the 20th century, folk cures, potions, and so-called patent medicines were freely available and widely used.

Perhaps the best examples of this are the opiates opium and morphine that, throughout most of the 1800s, were used to treat a variety of complaints, including rheumatism, pain, fever, delirium tremens, and colds. The opiates were also used as an anesthetic for some surgeries and for setting broken bones. As we noted earlier, physicians used and prescribed the opiates despite a lack of understanding of how they acted in the body. All that was known was that opium and morphine seemed to

> *"LSD did unlock something for me, and pot definitely did something for the old ears. Suddenly I could hear more subtle things."*
>
> Musician and former Beatle George Harrison (*Musician*, May 1992)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

help alleviate pain and symptoms that simply were not understood (Morgan, 1981). Unfortunately, such widespread use contributed to a considerable number of people becoming physically dependent on these substances. Not until the 1870s did a clearer picture of the physically and mentally dependent properties of these drugs emerge.

Numerous other examples can be cited. Chloroform and ether were developed as anesthetics, but each also went through a period in the 1850s when its nonmedical use was quite fashionable. At one time, cocaine was used to treat complaints such as depressed mood and pain. In fact, one of its uses was as a treatment for opiate dependence. In the latter half of the 19th century, physicians recognized an array of uses for cannabis, including treatment of insomnia and nervousness, although its prescribed use was not nearly as extensive as with the opiates. The 20th century witnessed the development of the synthetic stimulant amphetamines, some of which initially were available without prescription.

"It's not good for the body; it's not good for the mind. It's the real immature adolescent in everybody that finds romance in that."

Branford Marsalis on using drugs to enhance creativity (*Musician*, May 1992)

We could provide additional examples, but the important point is that medicinal uses of psychoactive substances (whether folk medicine or more contemporary medicine), medical science, and nonmedical drug use and misuse will always be closely intertwined. In the past, folk or cultural use of a substance often became incorporated into the practice of medicine. More common today is the incorporation of a substance developed for the practice of medicine into the array of drugs that can be used in nonmedicinal ways. The reverse can still occur, however, as shown by the attention being given to the medical uses of marijuana. In any event, keeping the medical and nonmedical uses of drugs separate is impossible.

REVIEW

1. Describe the historical use of opium poppy, *Cannabis sativa*, hashish, coca, and khat throughout the cultures of the world.
2. Create a timeline indicating the main events in the history of drug use in the United States, from the 18th Century to the current day.

2.2 Development of Drug Laws

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

2-2 Explain how the development and use of drugs for medical and nonmedical purposes are intertwined

2-3 Evaluate the history of drug laws in the United States in terms of their effect on rates of drug use

2-4 Evaluate the effects of the Eighteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which prohibited the production, sale, transportation, and importation of alcohol

2-5 Describe the Controlled Substances Act and the criteria by which a drug is scheduled

Legislation is the main way society establishes formal guidelines for drug use. Furthermore, such legislation essentially reflects a society's beliefs about drugs. Laws generally establish restrictions or prohibit the manufacture, importation, sale, or possession of the substance under evaluation. Actual drug use in the United States, and

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

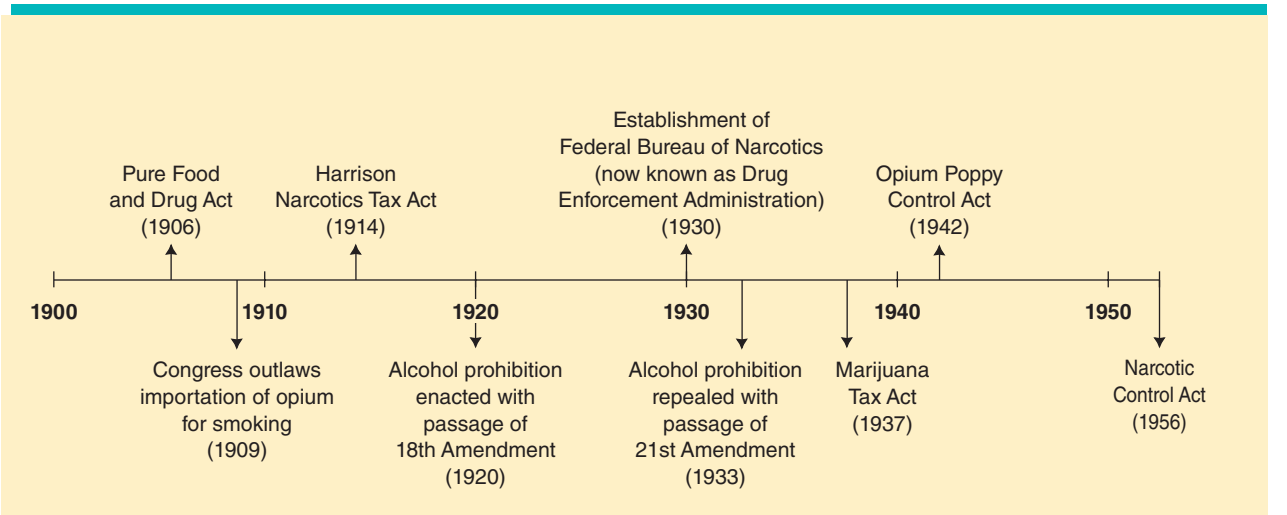

Pure Food and Drug Act (1906)
Harrison Narcotics Tax Act (1914)
Establishment of Federal Bureau of Narcotics (now known as Drug Enforcement Administration) (1930)
Opium Poppy Control Act (1942)
1900
1910
1920
1930
1940
1950
Congress outlaws importation of opium for smoking (1909)
Alcohol prohibition enacted with passage of 18th Amendment (1920)
Alcohol prohibition repealed with passage of 21st Amendment (1933)
Marijuana Tax Act (1937)
Narcotic Control Act (1956)

FIGURE 2.1
Major U.S. drug legislation

in other countries, is not a crime under federal law, nor is it a crime to have a drug or alcohol problem.

Drug laws for the most part have had limited effectiveness in reducing overall illicit drug availability and use (Australian Drug Law Reform Foundation, 1996; Jung, 2001; Nadelmann, 1989). In fact, the more restrictive the laws, the less effective they have tended to be in the long run (Brecher, 1972, 1986). The only time these laws seem to be more effective is when drug use or misuse is particularly unpopular (Brecher, 1986; Hofmann, 1975). However, the duration of these periods and the time between them are variable. Nevertheless, legislation remains society's central means for addressing its concerns about drugs.

Describing the history of drug laws in the United States will provide an example of one society's response to drug use and misuse. Interestingly, the implementation of drug laws in the United States did not really begin until the turn of the 20th century. This made the United States one of the last industrialized nations to formally implement drug legislation. Various efforts were mounted to regulate opiates in the second half of the 19th century, but these were largely half-hearted and ineffective. That is not to say that sanctions on drug use did not exist, but rather there were no legal penalties to speak of. At different times and in different locations, varying degrees of social sanctions existed, such as the ostracism of citizens who displayed certain forms of drunkenness in Colonial times.

The San Francisco Ordinance

The only notable law regarding drug use in the 19th century that had any effect was a city ordinance passed in San Francisco in 1875. Chinese men had entered this country throughout the mid-1800s, to meet demands for labor in the rapidly expanding West. Most of these immigrants worked on the building of the railways. When this construction was finished, many of the laborers made their way back to San Francisco, where they frequented "opium dens"—places where people could smoke opium. Although this drug use had little negative effect on the San Francisco community per se, some thought the practice was sinister. Rumors began to circulate that the opium den houses were evil and that unsuspecting members of the community—young women were used frequently as examples—were at risk for unknowingly heading down dangerous paths toward disrepute

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

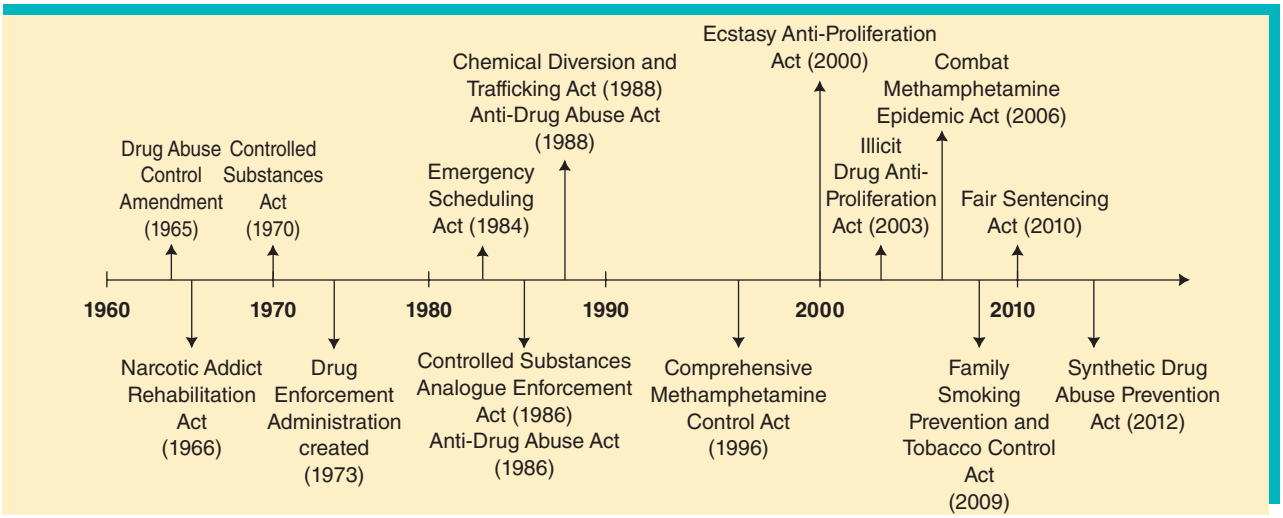


FIGURE 2.1
(*Continued*)

and substance use dependence. This concern led to the 1875 ordinance. Only opium dens were banned, however, not the smoking of opium. Conviction for operating or frequenting an opium den carried a fine of $50 to $500 and/or a jail sentence of 10 days to 6 months. The actual impact of the ordinance was not great; the larger and more obvious opium dens closed, and the number of smaller dens increased. The effect was greater in the sense of setting the stage for drug regulation in other parts of the country, as a number of other cities and states passed similar ordinances in later years. Not until 1909 did Congress pass a law banning the importation of opium for smoking.

Pure Food and Drug Act

The first federal legislation of note was the Pure Food and Drug Act passed in 1906 (see Figure 2.1). This act, which was designed to control opiate dependence, legislated that producers of medicines must indicate on the packaging the amount of drug contained in their products. The law focused particularly on the opiates opium, morphine, and heroin, but also mandated the accurate labeling of products that contain alcohol, marijuana, and cocaine. The overall effect of the act was mixed: It did not ban opiates in patent medicines and thus had little impact on those who were dependent upon opium at the time, but the legislation may have served to decrease the number of people who become newly dependent, given the subsequent political and educational efforts to describe the dependence potential of patent medicines containing opiates (Brecher, 1972).

Harrison Narcotics Tax Act

Another major piece of federal legislation, the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act, was passed in 1914. Curiously, this law was passed not in response to domestic demand but rather as a consequence of the United States signing the Hague Convention of 1912, an international agreement that directed signing nations to regulate opium traffic within their respective countries (Brecher, 1986). The Harrison Narcotics Tax Act strictly regulated, but did not prohibit, the legal supply of certain drugs, particularly the opiates. The law stated that marketing and prescribing these drugs required licensing. The physician was directed to prescribe narcotics only "in the course of his professional practice." This phrase is certainly general and open to interpretation, and controversy

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

between law enforcement agencies and physicians ensued. The central debate was whether the prescribing of an opiate for a person with an opioid addiction was part of a treatment plan or merely served to maintain that person's dependence on the drug. Although this confusion of the act's intent led to more restrictions on prescribing and supplying opiates, the act had little effect on opiate misuse (even when subsequent amendments mandated more severe penalties for possession). In fact, Brecher (1986) argued that the act was actually counterproductive. Brecher maintained that, in the years since its passage, the law actually has served to shift users of opium and morphine to heroin (which became easier to obtain on the black market) and overall to double the number of people with drug dependence in the United States. This occurred despite more than 50 modifications to the act during the 50 years following its passage, each change designed to toughen the law (Brecher, 1972).

Three other facets of the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act should be mentioned: First, the act did not restrict manufacturers of patent medicines, with the exception that their preparations could "not contain more than two grains of opium, or more than one fourth of a grain of morphine, or more than one eighth of a grain of heroin . . . in one **avoirdupois** ounce" (U.S. Pure Food and Drug Act of 1906, cited in Brecher, 1972). A second interesting aspect of this narcotic control act was its inaccurate inclusion of cocaine as a narcotic. Finally, one treatment-related result of the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act was that treatment centers for those dependent on narcotics began to open in some of the larger cities (Morgan, 1981). Most of these centers, however, were open for only a few years and thus had limited opportunity to help alleviate opiate dependence.

avoirdupois
Something sold or measured by weight based on 1 pound equaling 16 ounces.

Alcohol Prohibition

Alcohol prohibition was enacted several years later when, in 1920, Congress passed the Eighteenth Amendment to the Constitution. The legislation was a victory for the forces that viewed alcohol as evil and destructive, notably the Anti-Saloon League and the Women's Christian Temperance Union. The amendment was not vague about its intent: It prohibited the production, sale, transportation, and importing of alcohol in any part of the United States. The only exception was that alcoholic beverages kept in the home, such as naturally fermented hard cider, could be consumed but not offered for sale (Lender & Martin, 1982).

The National Prohibition Act subsequently was passed to provide the means to investigate and punish violators of the Eighteenth Amendment. The legislation, which was passed over the veto of President Woodrow Wilson, is better known as the Volstead Act because Minnesota Representative Andrew Volstead introduced it. Scheduled to take effect in 1920, the act defined an "intoxicating beverage" as one containing more than 0.5% alcohol.

As you may be aware, and as discussed further in Chapter 9, Prohibition was an experiment in drug control that did not succeed, and the Eighteenth Amendment was repealed 13 years later by the Twenty-First Amendment. Although Prohibition is commonly cited as a drug use control measure that failed overall, it nevertheless did have a substantial effect on drinking in the United States. For example, the rate of drinking was reduced markedly (reasonable estimates range from one-third to one-half); other decreases were in the death rates attributable to liver cirrhosis, admission rates to state hospitals for treatment of alcoholism, and arrest rates for alcohol-related offenses (Aaron & Musto, 1981). The greatest decrease in alcohol consumption was among the working population, and this made the legislation vulnerable to widespread criticism that it was a biased law. Unfortunately, a variety of other undesired consequences were associated with Prohibition, including more extensive use of marijuana, a shift in drinking habits away from beer to distilled

"Our country has deliberately undertaken a great social and economic experiment, noble in motive and far-reaching in purpose. It must be worked out constructively."

President-elect Herbert Hoover (1928, on Prohibition)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Niday Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo

Agents pour alcohol into a sewer during Prohibition, circa 1925.

speakeasy
A slang expression used to describe a saloon operating without a license; popularly used during Prohibition.

spirits, the advent of the **speakeasy**, and the takeover of alcohol distribution by criminal groups. (Coffee intake, according to Brecher [1972], also soared during this period.) Thus, although Prohibition was successful in achieving some of its intended effects, these outcomes were tempered by other undesired results. Ultimately, Prohibition was repealed because it lacked sufficient public support to maintain it.

Post-Prohibition Legislation

Following the repeal of Prohibition, the 1930s were characterized by stricter guidelines and penalties for the possession and sale of drugs, particularly marijuana. Legislative action taken in 1930 provided independent status for narcotic control agents through the establishment of the Federal Bureau of Narcotics (later to be called the Bureau of Narcotics and Dangerous Drugs and now the Drug Enforcement Administration). A major thrust of the Federal Bureau of Narcotics, spearheaded by Commissioner Harry J. Anslinger, was the eradication of marijuana use. Anslinger's crusade resulted in the Marijuana Tax Act of 1937. Like the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act, this measure did not ban marijuana but instead required authorized producers, manufacturers, importers, and dispensers of the drug to register and pay an annual license fee. Only the nonmedical possession or sale of marijuana was outlawed (Brecher, 1972). Some medical uses for marijuana were still recognized. Legislative actions regarding marijuana use gradually grew more restrictive and provided for greater penalties until the decriminalization movement began in the latter part of the 1970s.

Additional federal legislation was passed between 1940 and 1970. However, like previous legislation, these actions failed to have a sustained influence on the prevalence of drug use or dependence, despite the increased severity of the penalties for drug law infractions. Two trends are worth noting: The first is increased attention to nonnarcotic drug use, whereby stimulants, depressants, and hallucinogenic substances became

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Margaret Bourke-White/Contributor/TIME & LIFE Images/Getty Images

Customers turned to speakeasy establishments to drink during Prohibition.

regulated under legislation such as the Drug Abuse Control Amendment of 1965. The second notable change in federal legislation was a shifting of at least some attention to the treatment of drug use through such measures as the Community Mental Health Centers Act of 1963 and the Narcotic Addicts Rehabilitation Act of 1966.

A landmark legislative act, the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act, was passed in 1970. More commonly known as the Controlled Substances Act, this legislation is the basis for drug regulation in the United States today. We discuss this act, along with some other more recent legislation, in the following section.

REVIEW

1. Create a table listing the major drug laws in the United States; then in associated columns with each law, summarize the rationale behind and the intended effect of enacting each law.
2. Compare and contrast laws concerning drug use, particularly marijuana, pre- and post-Prohibition.

2.3 Current Drug Laws

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

2-6 Discuss the current drug laws in the United States and factors contributing to continued legislative action on possession and use

Drug classifications for law enforcement purposes are rooted in the 1970 Controlled Substances Act. Under this measure, drugs are not classified according to their pharmacological action but according to their medical use, their potential for misuse,

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"Will we be able to teach the dangers of drugs to later generations who have little or no experience with them?"

David F. Musto, Yale School of Medicine Professor of Psychiatry and History, asked to ponder life in the year 2053 (*U.S. News & World Report*, October 25, 1993)

and their likelihood for producing dependence. Almost all psychoactive substances (alcohol and nicotine are two notable exceptions) have been placed in one of the five categories, or schedules, generated by the act. Table 2.1 shows a description of each of the five schedules, and Table 2.2 lists examples of the drugs in each classification. Several substances that have little or no potential for misuse or dependence are not classified. These include the major tranquilizers, such as chlorpromazine (trade name Thorazine), thioridazine (Mellaril), and haloperidol (Haldol); and the antidepressants, such as imipramine (Tofranil) and amitriptyline (Elavil). We discuss these drugs in greater detail in Chapter 13.

The Controlled Substances Act contains provisions for adding drugs to the schedules and for rescheduling drugs. For example, diazepam (Valium) and other benzodiazepines were unscheduled when the act was passed but were classified as Schedule IV drugs in 1975. Similarly, phencyclidine (PCP, or "angel dust") was initially unscheduled but then classified as a Schedule II substance in 1978 when it began to be misused. A variety of Schedule III substances were reclassified into Schedule II during the early 1970s, including amphetamine (Benzedrine), methylphenidate (Ritalin), and secobarbital (Seconal). Methcathinone was classified as a Schedule I drug in 1992.

Consistent with its intended comprehensive character, the Controlled Substances Act also establishes the penalties for criminal manufacture or distribution of the scheduled drugs. Many of these penalties, particularly those for drug trafficking, were increased during the 1980s and 1990s, through legislation such as the 1988 Anti-Drug Abuse Act. The penalties are greatest for trafficking Schedule I and II drugs (excluding marijuana, hashish, and hashish oil, for which the penalties are only slightly less severe), and the penalties increase with the quantity involved and the number of previous offenses. For example, a first conviction for trafficking 100 to 999 grams of heroin mixture or 500 to 4,999 milligrams of cocaine mixture carries a sentence of not less than 5 years (up to 40 years) and a fine of up to $2 million. If a death or serious injury is associated with the drug trafficking, the sentence is not less than 20 years imprisonment. Larger quantities carry greater penalties, as do subsequent offenses. Penalties for trafficking any amounts of Schedule III through V substances are lower but still substantial. A first conviction for trafficking any amount of a Schedule III substance is up to 5 years and a $250,000 fine. A subsequent conviction can result in up to 10 years imprisonment and a $500,000 fine.

"The solution to our drug problem is not in incarceration."

Barry McCaffrey, retired general and former U.S. drug czar (1996)

Library of Congress/Handout/Archive Photos/Getty Images

A federal policeman is shown destroying a rumrunner's cargo in San Francisco during Prohibition.

Penalties for the possession of lesser amounts of a drug without intent to distribute are less severe, though still substantial. As part of the "zero-tolerance" feature of the "war on drugs" implemented in the late 1980s, law enforcement agencies may seize the assets of people who possess or sell drugs (see Contemporary Issue Box 2.3). For example, individuals caught with drugs in their cars or boats have had their vehicles seized and sold by government agencies, such as customs, or local authorities.

Each state has the opportunity to modify current drug laws according to its own needs and preferences. Most states have adopted guidelines, but many have changed certain components. For example, marijuana is classified as a Schedule I substance, but the penalties for possession in many states are less severe than those applied to other Schedule I substances. And as previously noted, many states have passed legislation decriminalizing marijuana.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 2.1 Schedules of Controlled Substances

Schedule I: The drug or other substance has a high potential for harmful use. It has no currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States. There is a lack of accepted safety for use of the drug or other substance under medical supervision.

Schedule II: The drug or other substance has a high potential for misuse. It has a currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States or a currently accepted medical use with severe restrictions. Misuse of the drug or other substances may lead to severe psychological or physical dependence.

Schedule III: The drug or other substance has a potential for misuse less than the drugs or other substances in Schedules I and II. It has a currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States. Misuse of the drug or other substance may lead to moderate or low physical dependence or high psychological dependence.

Schedule IV: The drug or other substance has a low potential for misuse relative to the drugs or other substances in Schedule III. It has a currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States. Misuse of the drug or other substance may lead to limited physical dependence or psychological dependence relative to the drugs or other substances in Schedule III.

Schedule V: The drug or other substance has a low potential for misuse relative to the drugs or other substances in Schedule IV. It has a currently accepted medical use in treatment in the United States. Misuse of the drug or other substance may lead to limited physical dependence or psychological dependence relative to the drugs or other substances in Schedule IV.

Source: From the United States Controlled Substances Act.

It is important to recognize that new legislation is always on the horizon, whether in response to the latest trends in drug use and misuse or reflecting emergent political mandates. During the 1980s, law enforcement agencies were having difficulties controlling the production of the so-called designer drugs—drugs that were structurally similar but not identical to illegal substances. Each time a slight modification in the chemical structure of a drug was made, enforcement officials were forced to go through a time-consuming process of documenting the drug and having it certified as a controlled substance. In response, in 1986, Congress passed the Controlled Substances Analogue Enforcement Act, which allowed for the immediate classification of a substance as a controlled substance. In this way, drug enforcement officials were in a better position to address a new drug as soon as it appeared in circulation. Similarly, legislation has been put in place to allow the Drug Enforcement Administration to monitor and regulate the distribution of chemical substances and other equipment needed for the preparation of illegal drugs. Titled the Chemical Diversion and Trafficking Act of 1988, this legislation controls the distribution of particular chemicals, tabulating machines, and encapsulating machines that are used in the manufacture of illicit substances. In 1996, the Comprehensive Methamphetamine Control Act was enacted to curb the spread of methamphetamine. The act's provisions restrict access to chemicals used to make methamphetamine, monitor purchases of these preparation chemicals, increase penalties for the possession of chemicals or equipment used in the production of methamphetamine, and increase penalties for trafficking and manufacturing methamphetamine. In 1999, chemicals used as "date rape" drugs were added to the schedule of controlled substances. A likely candidate for upcoming legislation is *Salvia divinorum*, a hallucinogenic member of the sage family. Known as "magic mint" or "Sally-D," salvia has been used traditionally by the Mazatec people in Mexico for ailments such as diarrhea, headaches, and rheumatism and for interacting with the spiritual world. Although

> *"[Drug control efforts] have had harmful collateral consequences: creating a criminal black market; fuelling corruption, violence, and instability; threatening public health and safety; generating large-scale human rights abuses, including abusive and inhumane punishments; and discrimination and marginalization of people who use drugs, indigenous peoples, women, and youth."*
>
> The United Nations Development Program (2015)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 2.2 Examples of Scheduled Drugs and Drug Products

Schedule I	
Heroin	Methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA, Ecstasy)
Peyote	Methaqualone
Mescaline	Tilidine
Psilocybin	Marijuana
Hash	Lysergic acid diethylamide-25 (LSD)
Hash oil	Dimethyltryptamine (DMT)
Gamma hydroxybutyric acid (GHB)	Quaalude
Nicocodeine	Methcathinone
Synthetic cathinones (bath salts)	Synthetic marijuana
Schedule II	
Opium	Hydrocodone
Morphine	Methamphetamine
Fentanyl	Phencyclidine (PCP)
Codeine	Cocaine
Percodan	Benzedrine
Ritalin	Dexedrine
Seconal	Dilaudid
Oxycodone (Percodan, Percocet, OxyContin)	Demerol
	Methadone
Schedule III	
(for products containing less than 90 mg of codeine per dosage unit)	Nodular
Tylenol with codeine	Ketamine
Paregoric	Butisol
Marinol	Fiorinal
Doriden	Anabolic steroids
Schedule IV	
Luminal	Ativan
Darvon	Halcion
Valium	Restoril
Librium	Serax
Chloral hydrate	Dalmane
Placidyl	Tranxene
Darvocet	Miltown
Ambien	Xanax
Valmid	Equanil
Flunitrazepam (Rohypnol)	
Schedule V	
Cheracol with codeine	Phenergan
Robitussin A-C	Cosadein
Lomotil	

Source: Adapted from S. Cohen, *The substance abuse problems*. The Haworth Press, 1981, updated 2017.

salvia is legal to buy, sell, and smoke in most states, concerns over its use, growing popularity, and effects have led a rapidly growing number of states and also other countries to restrict or criminalize the sale and possession of salvia.

Special note should be made of the 2009 Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act, which authorized the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to regulate the manufacture, marketing, and sale of tobacco products. The legislation provided the FDA with broad control over how tobacco (a product with no medical use) in its

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 2.3

The War on Drugs

One of the foremost efforts of multiple presidential administrations in the United States has been the "war on drugs," implemented in the 1980s, and continuing since. Hallmark features of this "war" are efforts to catch drug smugglers and sellers (in this country and overseas) and the implementation of a "zero-tolerance" approach to those who use drugs, including those who use drugs casually. The U.S. government has been spending approximately $1 billion a year on antidrug operations overseas alone, most of it used to catch drug smugglers.

These efforts appear to have had only a limited impact on drug use. Most experts conclude that efforts to intercept drugs have been a failure. Hundreds of millions of dollars have been spent on these efforts, yet the flow of drugs into the United States has not been significantly altered. So what is the best strategy for combating the drug problem? Some organizations, such as the Physician Leadership on National Drug Policy, have been pushing for a greater focus on reducing the demand for drugs through prevention efforts and treatment (including the use of treatment services as an alternative to incarceration). Portugal decriminalized the use and possession of all drugs, and treats drug dependence as a medical problem rather than a criminal problem. This emphasis on demand reduction appears to reflect the attitudes of most individuals as well. An ABC News poll found that almost 70% of Americans favored treatment over jail for first- and second-time drug offenders.

It is unlikely that the war on drugs will cease anytime soon, though some states are softening their stance on the use of some drugs, notably marijuana. Instead, changes in the "battle plan" will reflect shifts in focus, such as paying more attention to policing drug supply routes than to drug demand, or vice versa. Overall efforts continue to be coordinated by the head of the White House Office of National Drug Control Policy, better known as the "drug czar." Recent holders of this title have professed a desire to abolish the use of the "war on drugs" phraseology and to shift greater emphasis on treatment relative to imprisonment.

It is noteworthy that the two drugs most associated with deaths in this country—tobacco and alcohol—are not a focus of attention in any of these efforts.

various forms is marketed and sold, and over claims made about tobacco products, although it does not provide the authority to impose an outright ban on tobacco products. A number of FDA actions were mandated in the legislation. These include the banning of candy-flavored cigarettes (within 3 months of the passage of the law), the banning of the marketing of cigarettes as "light," "mild," or "low-tar" (within 12 months), implementing stronger warnings on smokeless tobacco products that will cover 30% of the front and back package panels (within 12 months), and graphic warnings on cigarette packages covering 50% of the top front and top back of the packages (within 39 months). The mandated restrictions on marketing also included limiting advertisements and promotions to a black-and-white text-only format in stores that children can enter. The bill overall contains a strong focus on deterring young people from smoking. Because an estimated 9 out of 10 smokers begin smoking before age 18, the bill may have the effect of hindering tobacco companies' access to youth and thus dramatically reduce the number of smokers in the longer term.

The most recent notable legislative actions are the Fair Sentencing Act of 2010 and the Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act of 2012. The primary feature of the sentencing act was to reduce long-standing disparities between those arrested with crack cocaine versus those arrested with powder cocaine. Prior to the act, the sentencing disparity between offenses for crack and powder cocaine was 100:1; the act reduced the disparity to 18:1. What this means is that sentences for offenses involving crack cocaine were significantly longer than sentences for the same amount of powder cocaine. As the majority of people arrested for crack cocaine offenses are African American, while

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 2.4

Drug Testing in the Workplace, at School, and at Home!

One result of the concern over drug use and misuse has been efforts by corporations to have their workers submit to mandatory drug tests. Employers argue the tests are needed to identify those workers who, because of their drug use, may be at risk for subpar or even dangerous work performance. Employers also believe random drug tests serve as a deterrent to drug use. More than one-third of the largest U.S. corporations currently use drug screening as part of their hiring process.

The argument employers put forth may appear relatively straightforward: If drugs can impair work performance, then checking for drugs is a legitimate practice. However, drug testing remains controversial for several reasons. Consider three aspects of the controversy.

First is the possible infringement on constitutional rights of privacy when tests are administered randomly (i.e., without warning and independent of "probable cause"). This concern has led some to suggest that tests should be used only if a demonstrable "reasonable cause" exists to believe a person is under the influence of a drug.

A second issue is the relationship between a positive test result and actual job performance. For example, traces of marijuana can be detected in a person's system for several weeks and sometimes much longer after it was smoked, even though no associated impairment in the person's functioning can be proven. Is drug use a legitimate reason for termination or other disciplinary action if no obvious effect of that drug use on the worker's job performance can be demonstrated?

A third issue is very basic yet crucial—the accuracy of the drug tests themselves. For example, the test results from urinalysis, the most commonly used screening procedure, have often been unreliable. In some cases, the presence of a drug has been missed, and in other cases, a legitimate drug (such as a prescribed medication) has been identified by the test as an illicit substance. However, more stringent guidelines and efforts at quality control have been implemented in recent years, and there has been considerable progress on this front. Nevertheless, urine tests remain best viewed as preliminary screening tests; they test not for the presence of the drug in the urine but rather for the metabolic products of drugs. Positive readings should be followed by confirming tests, such as mass spectrometer procedures that identify chemical compounds associated with specific drugs.

A more recent advance in drug screening has been the use of radioimmunoassay procedures to test for the presence of particular drugs (such as heroin, cocaine, and marijuana) in strands of hair. However, the current scientific consensus is that the hair-testing process is not sufficiently reliable for widespread use. Among the concerns are that test results can be incorrect due to environmental contaminants in the hair samples, including, as an example, those associated with being around individuals who smoke marijuana. Also, studies have shown that some drug molecules are attracted to the pigment melanin and adhere more strongly to dark hair than to light hair.

Although the issues surrounding drug testing continue to be debated, similar issues are arising on a pair of new fronts—drug testing of students at school and at home by their parents. An increasing number of school districts nationwide now conduct drug tests with students, either on a random basis or with students in particular extracurricular activities (such as sports or serving on a school committee). Several Supreme Court decisions have upheld the constitutionality of random testing. Testing has typically occurred through urine testing. Meanwhile, numerous companies are now offering home drug-testing products. Most such products entail testing urine samples; others evaluate either hair samples or saliva. Yet another approach, less obtrusive in nature, involves the parent wiping a special moist pad across a child's clothing, books, or furniture. The pad is then sent to the manufacturer, which analyzes it for traces of drugs. This approach has its own set of drawbacks, as the moist pad does not necessarily prove the child has used a particular drug. Drug traces could have been left by another person or picked up through incidental contact with another person using drugs.

European Americans are mostly arrested for powder cocaine, this resulted in racial disparities in sentencing. In addition, the act allows judges to consider mitigating factors when sentencing convicted individuals, reversing the mandatory minimum sentences previously in place. With respect to the Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act, this legislation bans synthetic compounds commonly found in synthetic cannabinoids (such as Spice and K2) and synthetic stimulants (most commonly known as

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"bath salts"). (These are described in greater detail in Contemporary Issue Box 2.2.) The legislation added a large number of these synthetic compounds to Schedule I of the Controlled Substances Act. Importantly, the legislation addressed a loophole in the 1986 Analogue Enforcement Act that limited its impact to substances intended for human consumption. The producers of "bath salts" and synthetic marijuana had avoided the reach of the 1986 legislation by labeling their products "not for human consumption." That problem has now been remedied.

In the 2020 election, voters in several states voted to liberalize drug laws. Oregon voted to decriminalize the personal possession of all illegal drugs, including cocaine, heroin, oxycodone, and methamphetamine. This measure passed by a double-digit margin. Drug manufacturing and drug dealing remain illegal in Oregon—but now possession of smaller amounts for personal use will be a civil offense and not a criminal offense. The law also provides funds for the treatment, housing, and services for those with substance use disorders. This is a first step in treating rather than criminalizing drug use.

We have focused on drug laws in the United States. Drug laws and their implementation in other countries reflect considerable diversity. For example, European drug policy derives largely from the framework provided by the United Nations Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs in 1961. The 12 participating European countries pledged to fight drug misuse and international trafficking through national legislation. Each country would implement a strategy of response best suited to its needs. In 1972, the Single Convention document was amended to encourage efforts to prevent harmful substance use and to provide treatment services for those who have a substance use disorder. Nearly 2 decades later, in 1990, came the Frankfurt Resolution, which involved representation from the cities of Amsterdam, Frankfurt, Hamburg, and Zurich. This resolution asserted that attempts to eliminate drugs and drug use cannot succeed. It encouraged legislation to decriminalize the purchase, possession, and consumption of cannabis. As such, many jurisdictions began to focus more on reducing the negative effects of drug use and misuse on individuals and society, a philosophy referred to as "harm reduction" or "harm minimization." Nevertheless, drug laws throughout Europe, and indeed throughout the world, continue to differ in many ways, and many do not distinguish between so-called hard drugs and soft drugs (e.g., marijuana). In addition, countries differ in the extent to which they actually enforce existing drug laws.

REVIEW

1. Identify the criteria used for determining if a drug is placed on the Controlled Substances Act.
2. Describe the necessary characteristics of drugs for placement as s Schedule I, II, III, IV, or V Drug.
3. Explain factors that contribute to the current regulations on the possession and use of drugs in the United States.

Summary

- Drugs have been used for a variety of reasons in different cultures for thousands of years; the earliest drug use involved ingestion of alcohol and of plants with psychoactive properties.
- Prior to the 20th century, few restrictions were placed on drug availability or drug use.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- During the 19th century, drugs such as opium, morphine, marijuana, heroin, and cocaine could be obtained easily without prescription.
- Marijuana was used by physicians during the 1800s as a general all-purpose medication; its nonmedical use increased during the Prohibition era of the 1920s. Currently, medical use of marijuana is increasing.
- Different drugs have enjoyed periods of popularity in the United States. Cocaine was widely used in medicines and tonics during the late 1800s and early 1900s. Cocaine use again became popular in the 1960s, and its popularity continues today. Amphetamines were used relatively widely during the 1930s, minor tranquilizers and inhalants during the 1950s, and LSD during the 1960s. Heroin has been showing signs of increased use in recent years. A current trend is the emergence of a group of substances collectively known as "club drugs."
- A parallel exists between the development and use of psychoactive substances in medicinal forms and the nonmedical use or misuse of these drugs.
- The main mechanism through which society establishes formal guidelines regarding drugs and drug use is legislation. However, the history of drug laws in the United States does not really begin until the turn of the 20th century.
- The first major federal legislation regarding drugs was the 1906 Pure Food and Drug Act, which mandated a listing of the types and amounts of drugs contained in medicines.
- Other major legislation of note included the 1914 Harrison Narcotics Tax Act, which regulated the legal supply of certain drugs, and alcohol prohibition, which spanned the years between 1920 and 1933.
- Drug classifications for law enforcement today are based on the 1970 Controlled Substances Act, which classifies drugs according to their legitimate medical uses and their potential for misuse and dependence.
- Other legislation has been enacted in the years since to respond to changes in drug-use patterns and address racial disparities in sentencing. Notable recent legislation includes the 2009 Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act, the 2010 Fair Sentencing Act, and the 2012 Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. The first recorded use of cannabis was in the early 1800s.
   F *The use of Cannabis sativa dates back to around 2700 B.C. in China, where Emperor Shen Nung recommended it for the treatment of various ailments.*
2. Grape wine was the first alcoholic beverage to be used.
   F *Beer and huckleberry wine were used as early as 6400 B.C. Grape wine did not appear until between 300 B.C. and 400 B.C.*
3. The Opium Wars between China and Great Britain in the mid-1800s occurred in large part because Britain was unwilling to curtail its trade of opium into China.
   T *Most of the opium used in China at the time was cultivated in India and brought to China by British traders. Although opiate dependence was a major problem for China, the British were unwilling to curtail this trade in part because of financial reasons and in part because in England, those who used opium were not experiencing the same degree of dependence.*
4. Khat, a mild stimulant consumed by chewing, is used by Sufi men for religious purposes.
   T *Khat is a mild stimulant that has been used in the Horn of Africa and surrounding regions for at least eight centuries. Sufi religious men chew on khat while mediating on the Koran.*
5. Many of the drugs that are now illegal in the United States were widely used to treat a broad spectrum of maladies in the 1800s and early 1900s.
   T *Opiates, marijuana, cocaine, and amphetamines were all used at one time or another to treat various ailments. Use of these drugs was restricted when their physically and mentally dependent natures were recognized.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6. The first notable drug law in the United States—the 1875 San Francisco ordinance—banned the smoking of opium.
   F *The San Francisco ordinance banned opium dens but not the actual smoking of opium.*
7. The Pure Food and Drug Act of 1906 had little impact on individuals who were dependent on drugs.
   T *This act was designed to control opiate dependence and legislated that producers of medicines indicate on their packaging the amount of drugs contained in the products. The act had little impact on those dependent on drugs at the time but may have served to decrease the number of those who become newly dependent.*
8. The Harrison Narcotics Tax Act of 1914 sharply curtailed the prevalence of heroin use in the United States.
   F *This act strictly regulated the legal supply of certain drugs but actually served to shift those with an opium or morphine addition to heroin (which became easier to obtain on the black market).*
9. The Eighteenth Amendment, which prohibited the production, sale, transportation, and importing of alcohol, failed because it did not have a substantial effect on drinking in the United States.
   F *Prohibition did have an effect on drinking. In fact, the rate of drinking decreased markedly. In addition, death rates attributable to liver cirrhosis decreased, and there was a decline in both admission rates to state hospitals for alcoholism and arrest rates for alcohol-related offenses.*
10. Several states in the United States have decriminalized marijuana possession and use.
    T *As of late 2020, 14 states and the District of Columbia had decriminalized marijuana.*
11. The most successful aspect of the war on drugs has been the interception of drugs.
    F *Most experts conclude that this effort has been a failure, even though hundreds of millions of dollars were spent on it. The flow of drugs into the United States has not been significantly altered.*
12. Hair testing is a reliable method of testing for drug use.
    F *While it is possible to test for the presence of drugs such as cocaine and marijuana in strands of hair, the process is not sufficiently reliable.*

Key Terms

amphetamines
avoirdupois
bath salts
Cannabis sativa
fermentation
hashish
morphine
narcotic
opium poppy
patent medicines
peyote (pā -ʻō -tē)
prohibition
solvent
speakeasy
synthetic marijuana

Essays/Thought Questions

1. While almost all psychoactive substances are regulated by the Controlled Substances Act, there are two striking omissions: alcohol and nicotine. Given that drugs are classified according to their medical use, potential for misuse, and likelihood of producing dependence, should these be listed as scheduled drugs?
2. What are the potential benefits of reducing the availability of illegal drugs versus reducing the demand for such substances?
3. Oregon recently decriminalized the personal possession of all illegal drugs. What are the potential benefits and harms of this action?
4. Describe the 2009 Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act. Discuss whether the mandated elements of this act will impact smoking among children and young adults.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Suggested Readings

Aaron, P., & Musto, D. (1981). Temperance and prohibition in America: A historical overview. In M. H. Moore & D. R. Gersten (Eds.), *Alcohol and public policy* (pp. 127–181). Academy Press.

Burnham, J. C. (1993). *Bad habits: Drinking, smoking, taking drugs, gambling, sexual misbehavior, and swearing in American history*. New York University Press.

Jonnes, J. (1999). *Hep-cats, narcs, and pipe dreams: A history of America's romance with illegal drugs*. Johns Hopkins University Press.

Lender, M. E., & Martin, J. K. (1982). *Drinking in America*. The Free Press.

McGirr, L. (2015). *The war on alcohol: Prohibition and the rise of the American state.* W.W. Norton.

McKenna, T. (1992). *Food of the gods: The search for the original tree of knowledge*. Bantam Books.

Okrent, D. (2010). *Last call: The rise and fall of prohibition*. Scribner Book Company.

Parks, K. A., & Kennedy, C. L. (1996). Club drugs: Reasons for and consequences of use. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *36*, 295–302.

Rudgley, R. (1993). *Essential substances: A cultural history of intoxicants in society*. Kodansha International.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

- **3-1** Describe the main components of a neuron and their function
- **3-2** Explain how changes in ion channels and the movement of ions across the neural membrane result in an action potential
- **3-3** Discuss how electrical signals are transmitted from one neuron to other neurons
- **3-4** Differentiate between ionotropic and metabotropic receptors
- **3-5** Summarize the ways drugs can affect neural transmission
- **3-6** Describe the major neurotransmitter systems and their functions; then identify conditions that may result due to abnormalities within each system
- **3-7** Identify the structure and organization of the nervous system
- **3-8** Describe the main functions of the two divisions of the peripheral nervous system
- **3-9** Describe the main structures that compose the hindbrain, midbrain, and forebrain
- **3-10** Explain the role of the mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway in reward and drug addiction
- **3-11** Summarize the techniques used in imaging the human brain

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

3

Drugs and the Nervous System

The Neuron

Neural Transmission

Drugs and Neural Transmission

Major Neurotransmitter Systems

- Acetylcholine
- Monoamines
- Endorphins
- Amino Acid Neurotransmitters
- Other Neurotransmitters

The Nervous System

The Brain

- The Hindbrain
- The Midbrain
- The Forebrain
- Imaging the Human Brain
- Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Certain cells in the nervous system have the unique ability to communicate with each other.

___ 2. The effects of drugs always involve naturally occurring physiological processes.

___ 3. Some drugs work by blocking the reuptake of neurotransmitters into the axon terminals.

___ 4. All drugs have the same basic effect on a cellular level; that is, they all block neural firing.

___ 5. The brain is shielded from many toxic substances by a protective barrier.

___ 6. The two main branches of the nervous system are the peripheral nervous system (PNS) and the autonomic nervous system (ANS).

___ 7. An excess of dopamine is associated with Parkinson's disease.

___ 8. The brain is firmly attached to the inside of the skull by tough membranes known as the meninges.

___ 9. The autonomic nervous system is responsible for regulating food and water intake.

___10. Animals will work for the electrical stimulation of certain parts of the brain.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Every feeling or emotion you have—in fact, all psychological experience—is based on brain activity. The fact that this physical entity, the brain, is the basis of conscious experience is the key to understanding how the chemical agents we call drugs alter psychological processes.

One feature all psychoactive drugs have in common is that they produce their effects by acting in some way on cells of the nervous system; this chapter is concerned with these physiological actions of drugs. Most of these actions occur at the level of the brain. As recent discoveries in neuroscience have led to a greater understanding of how the brain works, parallel advances have taken place in our understanding of drug actions. These developments have led to some radically new ways of thinking about drug effects and drug problems such as addiction. Before we discuss how drugs act on the brain, however, we must first cover some of the fundamentals of just how the brain works.

3.1 The Neuron

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **3-1** Describe the main components of a neuron and their function
- **3-2** Explain how changes in ion channels and the movement of ions across the neural membrane result in an action potential
- **3-3** Discuss how electrical signals are transmitted from one neuron to other neurons

The basic building blocks of the nervous system are cells called **neurons**. Neurons are similar to other cells in the human body, such as blood cells or muscle cells, but they have the unique feature of being able to communicate with one another. The structural properties of neurons provide us with some clues to the nature of the neural transmission process.

Notice that the neuron depicted in Figure 3.1 has a cell body similar to those of any other cell. The cell body includes a nucleus that contains the genetic material for the neuron and other processes that control the metabolic activities of the cell. Extending from the cell body of the neuron are a number of small spinelike or branchlike structures called **dendrites** and one long cylindrical structure called the **axon**. These structures are unique to the neuron and are responsible for some of its remarkable properties.

Axons vary in length from just a millimeter or so to well over a meter, such as those that go from the brain down the spinal cord. Some axons, such as the one depicted in Figure 3.1, are enclosed within a sheath of a white, fatty substance called **myelin**. Myelin provides insulation for the axon, similar to insulation for a wire. The comparison is fitting because the principal function of the axon is to conduct electrical current. The axon transmits information by conducting an electrical signal from one end of the neuron to the other. Generally, information is gathered by dendrites and the cell body and transmitted along the axon in the form of an electrical signal called the **action potential**.

The action potential does not work in precisely the way that electricity travels along a wire. Rather it is produced by the flow of charged particles called ions

neurons (‘nü-‘räns)
Individual nerve cells that are basic building blocks of the nervous system.

dendrites (‘den-‘drīts)
Spiny branchlike structures that extend from the cell body of a neuron, typically contain numerous receptor sites and are thus important in neural transmission.

axon (‘ak-‘sän)
A long cylindrical extension of the cell body of the neuron; conducts electrical charge from the cell body to the axon terminals.

myelin (‘mī-e-len)
A fatty white substance that covers the axons of some neurons.

action potential
The electrical impulse along the axon that occurs when a neuron fires.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

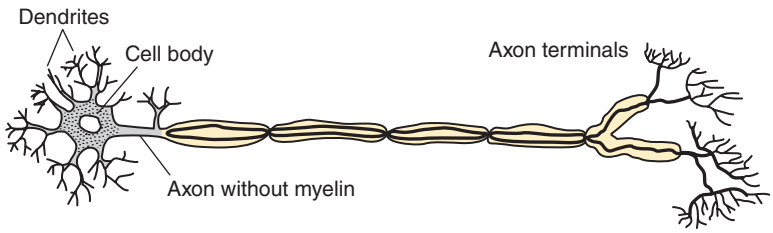


FIGURE 3.1
Diagram of a neuron

through channels in the membrane that covers the axon. When the neuron is at rest, the concentration of positively charged sodium ions is greater outside the axon membrane, whereas negatively charged protein and chloride ions are concentrated within the axon. When the neuron is stimulated, certain ion channels open, permitting positive ions into the axon, and some depolarization of the axon will occur. If the level of stimulation becomes high enough, a threshold of excitation is reached, and a massive depolarization of the axon membrane occurs as positively charged sodium ions rush into the axon. This rapid depolarization that produces a change of about 110 millivolts is also termed the *action potential.* The action potential travels rapidly along the axon like a wave and is said to be "all or none," in that the axon is either "firing" with the full voltage charge or at rest. Once the neuron has fired, sodium ions are pumped out of the axon, channels close, and the neuron returns to its resting potential.

REVIEW

1. Sketch a neuron and then label the following structures: dendrites, cell body, axon, and myelin sheaths.
2. Explain the process of how information is transmitted along the length of an axon via the action potential.

3.2 Neural Transmission

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

3-4 Differentiate between ionotropic and metabotropic receptors

axon terminals (or terminal buttons) Enlarged buttonlike structures at the ends of axon branches.

synapse ('si-'naps) The junction between neurons.

neurotransmitters Chemical substances stored in the axon terminals that are released into the synapse when the neuron fires. Neurotransmitters then influence activity in postsynaptic neurons.

The branches at the end of the axon shown in Figure 3.1 terminate in small buttonlike structures known as **axon terminals or terminal buttons**. These axon terminals hold the key to an important puzzle: how the electrical message actually gets from one neuron to another. When advances in microscopy made possible the viewing of neurons as they are seen here, a surprising finding was that most axon terminals of one neuron do not come into direct contact with the dendrites of the neighboring neuron as had been supposed; instead, the junction between two neurons, the **synapse**, is generally separated by a gap called the synaptic cleft (see Figure 3.2). How does one neuron communicate with another without direct contact between them? When an action potential reaches the axon terminal, chemical substances stored in the terminal button are released into the synapse, and these chemical substances, called **neurotransmitters**, actually trigger activity in the adjacent neuron.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Thus, neural transmission may be thought of as an electrochemical event—electrical along the axon and chemical at the synapse. This is of some importance for our purposes; it suggests that drugs may interact with the nervous system at the synapse because that is where chemical transmission takes place. In fact, we now know that most psychoactive drugs produce their important effects by action at the synapse (see Valenstein, 2005, for an account of the discovery of neurotransmitters and synaptic transmission). Therefore, more detailed analysis of the chemical processes that occur at the synapse is required.

A lock–key analogy is useful for depicting the neural transmission process. Scattered along the dendrites and cell body are special structures known as **receptor sites**, or receptors. Receptors are large protein molecules located on the surface of the neuron, and these structures may be viewed as locks that must be opened before the neuron fires. To fire, the receptors must be "unlocked," which is accomplished by the neurotransmitter substances released at the terminal button. The neurotransmitter molecules may be thought of as keys. The idea is illustrated in Figure 3.2. Receptor sites protrude from the membrane of the postsynaptic neuron like golf tees with a circular depression, and neurotransmitters are depicted as circles being released from the axon terminal. The notion is simple: The key must fit the lock to trigger an event such as neural firing.

receptor sites
Specialized structures located on dendrites and cell bodies for neurons that are activated by neurotransmitters.

In fact, neurotransmitter molecules and receptors have chemical structures that are considerably more complex than is illustrated, and the lock–key analogy does not completely explain the process. Transmitters and their receptors are said to have an affinity for one another; that is, the transmitter is attracted to the receptor site,

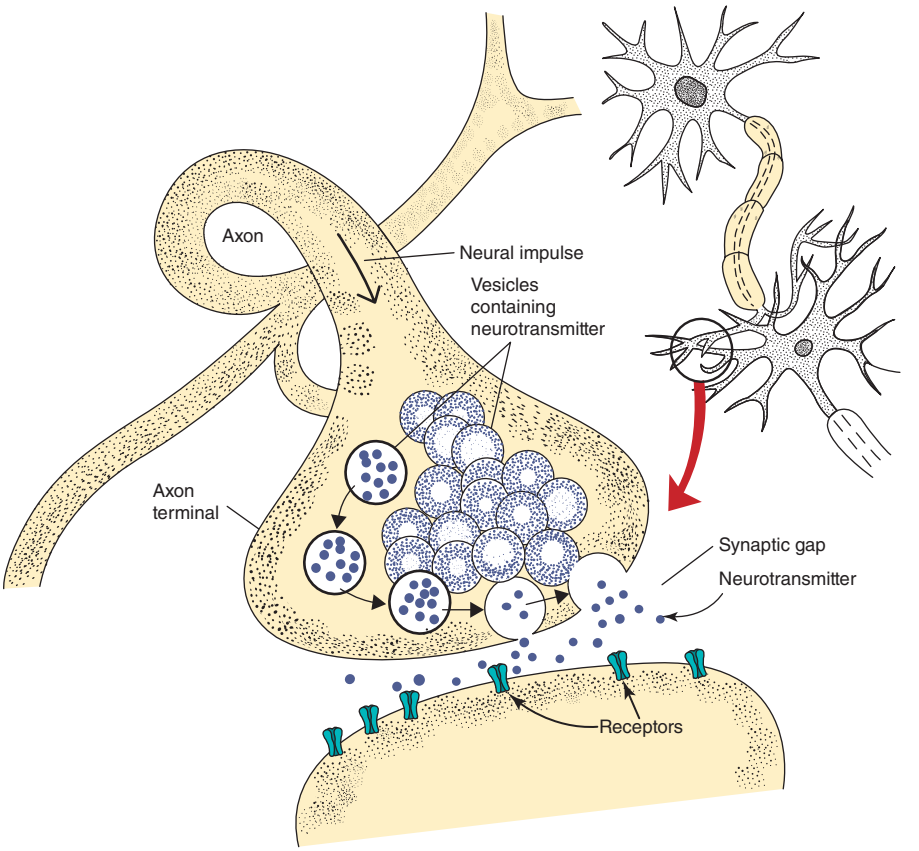


FIGURE 3.2
Diagram of a synapse showing an enlarged axon terminal with vesicles containing neurotransmitter molecules

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and when a transmitter key occupies a receptor lock, it briefly becomes attached in a process called binding. When a neurotransmitter molecule binds to a receptor, changes occur in the neuron that may make the neuron more or less likely to fire. There are two types of receptors that are responsible for these changes: ionotropic and metabotropic.

ionotropic receptors Receptors that are coupled to ion channels and affect the neuron by causing those channels to open.

- **Ionotropic receptors** are directly coupled to the ion channels that regulate the number of charged molecules inside and outside the neuron (see Figure 3.3). When a transmitter binds to the receptor site, it causes the channel to open and allows charged particles to enter or leave the cell. If the receptor opens a channel that allows positively charged ions into the neuron, then the neuron will be more likely to depolarize and fire. If enough of these channels are opened, the neuron will generate an action potential, and such receptors are referred to as *excitatory*. At other synapses, when the neurotransmitter binds to a receptor, it may open ion channels that result in negative ions entering the neuron, and this will hyperpolarize the neuron and make it *less* likely to fire. These receptors are referred to as inhibitory. Ionotropic receptors result in rapid changes, milliseconds in duration.

metabotropic receptors Receptors that act through a second messenger system.

- **Metabotropic receptors** (see Figure 3.4) produce changes in the neuron that are slightly delayed (by a few hundred milliseconds) and that can be relatively long-lasting. Metabotropic receptors are not directly coupled with ion channels, but rather cause the release or activation of specialized molecules called G proteins. The G protein may then cause a number of effects within the neuron. The G protein may act much like ionotropic receptors and open ion channels somewhere in the neuron. Also like ionotropic receptors, some metabotropic receptors increase the likelihood of neural firing (excitatory) and others may decrease firing (inhibitory). G proteins may also initiate the synthesis of other chemicals (such as cyclic adenosine monophosphate [cyclic AMP]), which are often referred to as second messengers. These second messengers may produce metabolic changes or activate genes within the neuron with a variety of consequences that may continue over a fairly extended period of time.

REVIEW

1. Explain why the relationship between a neurotransmitter and its receptor is similar to that of a lock and key.
2. Compare and contrast ionotropic receptors and metabotropic receptors.

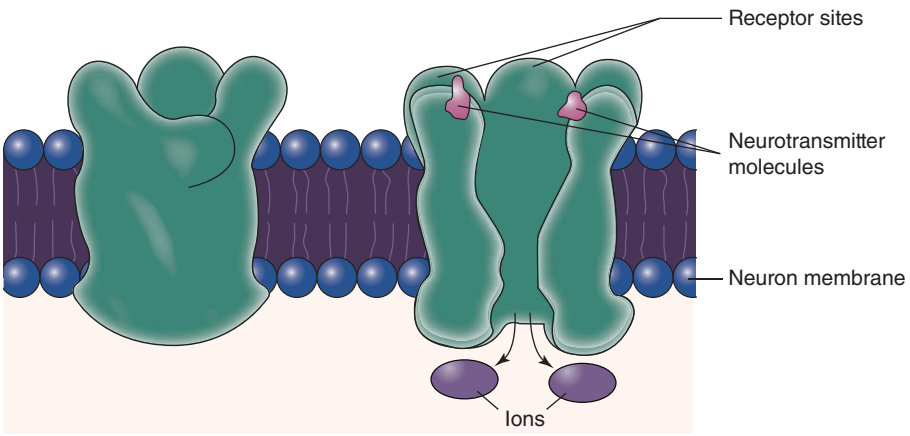


FIGURE 3.3
An ionotropic receptor is situated within the neuron membrane and consists of an ion channel (shown in the cutaway) and receptor sites. Receptor activation may open or close the ion channel, allowing ions into the neuron (Adapted from Prus, A. [2014]. *An introduction to drugs and the neuroscience of behavior.* Wadsworth, Cengage Learning).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

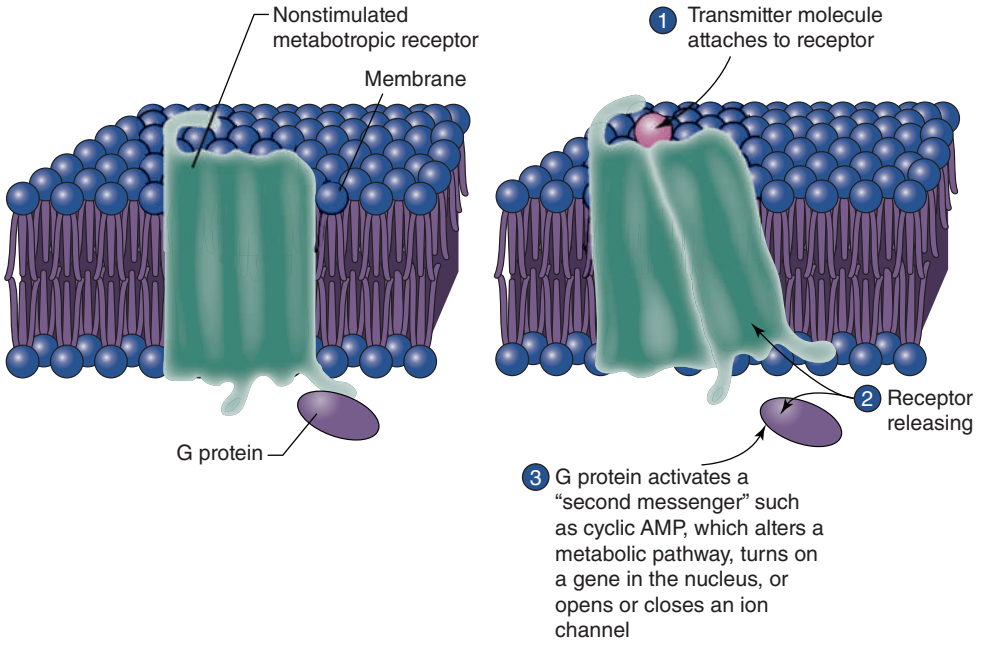

Nonstimulated metabotropic receptor
Membrane
G protein
1 Transmitter molecule attaches to receptor
2 Receptor releasing
3 G protein activates a "second messenger" such as cyclic AMP, which alters a metabolic pathway, turns on a gene in the nucleus, or opens or closes an ion channel

FIGURE 3.4
A metabotropic receptor. The left panel shows a nonstimulated receptor and the right panel depicts a neurotransmitter binding to the receptor and releasing the G protein (From Kalat, *Biological Psychology*, 11E. © 2013 Cengage Learning).

3.3 Drugs and Neural Transmission

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

3-5 Summarize the ways drugs can affect neural transmission

There are many different types of neurotransmitters and many corresponding receptor sites. We now understand that the brain is chemically coded with different pathways that respond to different neurotransmitter chemicals and these hold the key to understanding drug effects. Several ways that drugs can interfere with synaptic transmission may have already occurred to you. For example, suppose the chemical structure of some drug is similar to the structure of a naturally occurring (endogenous) neurotransmitter. If the similarity is close enough, the drug molecules might bind to the receptor sites, thus duping the receptor into reacting as if the natural neurotransmitter is present and stimulating the neuron. Just such a process actually does occur with some drugs. For example, opiate drugs like morphine and heroin work by activating opioid receptors of neurons, similar to endogenous opioids called endorphins.

Mimicry is an obvious mechanism of drug action, but drugs can influence neural transmission in numerous other ways as well. A sampling of these mechanisms is listed in Table 3.1. Neurotransmitters must be manufactured from simpler building blocks, or precursor molecules. Neurotransmitters are usually manufactured in a cell body or axon terminal, but if the substance is manufactured in the cell body, it must still be transported to the terminal before it is functional. Some drugs interfere with neurotransmitter production or transport. Neurotransmitter molecules are stored in small packages called **vesicles** located in the terminal buttons. Some drugs affect the ability of the vesicles to store neurotransmitter substances. For example, the drug

vesicles ('ve-si-kəls)
Tiny sacs in axon terminals that store neurotransmitters.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 3.1 Neurochemical Mechanisms of Drug Action

Drug effects can be produced by altering the following neurochemical systems:

1. *Neurotransmitter synthesis.* A drug may increase or decrease the synthesis of neurotransmitters.
2. *Neurotransmitter transport.* A drug may interfere with the transport of neurotransmitter molecules to the axon terminals.
3. *Neurotransmitter storage.* A drug may interfere with the storage of neurotransmitters in the vesicles of the axon terminal.
4. *Neurotransmitter release.* A drug may cause the axon terminals to release neurotransmitter molecules into the synapse prematurely.
5. *Neurotransmitter degradation.* A drug may influence the breakdown of neurotransmitters by enzymes.
6. *Neurotransmitter reuptake.* A drug may block the reuptake of neurotransmitters into the axon terminals.
7. *Receptor activation.* A drug may activate a receptor site by mimicking a neurotransmitter.
8. *Receptor blocking.* A drug may cause a receptor to become inactive by blocking it.

reserpine, once used to treat high blood pressure, causes certain vesicles to become leaky, and then the neurotransmitters involved are not effectively released into the synapse. Alternatively, other drugs can enhance the release of neurotransmitter substances into the synapse; this is one of the ways stimulants such as amphetamines are thought to act.

enzyme breakdown
One process by which neurotransmitters are inactivated. Chemicals called enzymes interact with the transmitter molecule and change its structure so that it no longer is capable of occupying receptor sites.

reuptake
One process by which neurotransmitters are inactivated. Neurotransmitter molecules are taken back up into the axon terminal that released them.

Another important rule of neural transmission is that neurotransmitters, once released, must be deactivated to terminate cell activity. Neurotransmitters are deactivated in two ways: **enzyme breakdown** and **reuptake**. Certain chemicals called enzymes act both to build the complex molecules of neurotransmitters and to break down neurotransmitters to inactive form. These processes are complex and reveal one reason that identifying and isolating the functions of neurotransmitters in the brain are difficult. The brain contains many different chemicals, and they are constantly changing form. Consider the processes involved in the production and destruction of **acetylcholine**, one of the better-known neurotransmitters. The precursor molecule choline is acted on by an enzyme (choline acetyltransferase) to make acetylcholine. Acetylcholine itself is broken down by a different enzyme—acetylcholinesterase—to yield two metabolites: choline and acetate. A drug can alter neural transmission by affecting enzyme activity. For example, some antidepressant drugs alter brain levels of the neurotransmitters norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin by inhibiting the activity of monoamine oxidase, the enzyme that breaks down these compounds.

acetylcholine (ə-ˈse-tᵊl-ˈkō-lēn)
A neurotransmitter linked with cognitive processes and memory that is found both in the brain and in the parasympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system.

A second mechanism for removing neurotransmitters from the synapse is called reuptake. Neurotransmitters are taken back up into the terminal button after they have been released—hence, the term *reuptake*. This is an economical mechanism of deactivating transmitters because the neurotransmitter molecule is preserved intact and can be used again without the expense of energy involved in the manufacture of new transmitters. Some drugs (notably cocaine) exert some of their action by blocking the reuptake process.

As noted, an important site of drug action is directly at the receptor. Some drugs directly affect the receptor by mimicking the activity of natural neurotransmitters—similar to a duplicate key that fits into and opens a lock. Other drugs seem to act as if they fit into the lock but then they jam the lock and prevent the neuron from firing. Such a drug is called a *blocking agent*. In general, any

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

chemical—natural or otherwise—that fits a receptor lock and activates it is said to be an **agonist** of that receptor. Any compound that occupies a receptor and does not activate it, but rather prevents other compounds from activating the receptor, is said to be an **antagonist** (see Table 3.2). For example, naloxone is an antagonist of the receptors on which opiate drugs (such as heroin) work. If naloxone is promptly administered to a patient who has just taken a potentially lethal dose of heroin, the patient will likely survive and will rapidly be brought to a state in which it appears as if the heroin had never been taken. Thus, naloxone is called an opiate antagonist. These examples describe direct agonists or antagonists: drugs that produce their actions by binding directly to the receptor. The terms *agonist* and *antagonist* may also be used more generally to refer to drugs that enhance (agonist) or inhibit (antagonist) the activity of a particular neurotransmitter system without binding to the receptor for that neurotransmitter. Such drugs are often referred to as *indirect* agonists or antagonists. For example, cocaine does not bind to dopamine receptors, but does enhance dopamine transmission by blocking reuptake, and so is considered an indirect dopamine agonist.

agonist ('a-gə-nist)
A substance that occupies a neural receptor and causes some change in the conductance of the neuron.

antagonist
A substance that occupies a neural receptor and blocks normal synaptic transmission.

Up until now, we have considered only the acute effects of drugs on neural transmission, that is, effects that occur during a single use of the drug. When drugs are used more regularly, long-lasting changes in neurotransmission can occur that are important in the development of drug tolerance and dependence. For example, chronic use of some drugs can result in a long-term reduction of the amount of neurotransmitter produced and released in affected neurons. Alternatively, the number of available receptor sites can be reduced. Such changes result in the affected pathway becoming less sensitive to the drug and thus illustrate neural mechanisms of tolerance development. Depending upon the functions of the affected pathway, these changes may alter responsiveness to nondrug environmental stimuli as well. If the user stops taking the drug, the loss of stimulation in these pathways may result in withdrawal symptoms (see Nestler, 2009).

We have seen a number of ways that drugs can act to influence neural transmission (see Prus, 2014, for a more detailed review). A point to remember is that although drugs can interact with the brain in many different ways, the effects of the drugs always involve naturally occurring processes. That is, some systems in the brain or body with defined natural functions are made more or less active by the drug. The different effects of various drugs are coming to be understood in terms of which transmitter systems they influence and exactly how they influence them. Therefore, we next take a brief look at the neurotransmitter systems of the human brain and note some of their known functions.

TABLE 3.2 Major Neurotransmitters with Representative Agonists and Antagonists

Neurotransmitter	Agonist	Antagonist
Acetylcholine	Nicotine	Atropine
Dopamine/norepinephrine	Cocaine/amphetamines	Chlorpromazine
Serotonin	Lysergic acid diethylamide	Chlorpromazine
Endorphins	Morphine	Naloxone
Gamma aminobutyric acid (GABA)	Barbiturates	Bicuculline
Glutamate	Aspartic acid	Ketamine
Anandamide	Tetrahydrocannabinol	Rimonabant

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Describe three mechanisms by which drugs can affect neural transmission.
2. Explain how the processes of enzyme breakdown and reuptake result in deactivation of neurotransmitters.

3.4 Major Neurotransmitter Systems

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

3-6 Describe the major neurotransmitter systems and their functions; then identify conditions that may result due to abnormalities within each system

More than 100 different chemicals are now thought to act as neurotransmitters in the human brain. We discuss a few of these that are known to be important in modulating drug action.

Acetylcholine

neuromuscular junction Junction between neuron and muscle fibers where release of acetylcholine by neurons causes muscles to contract.

One of the first neurotransmitters to be discovered was acetylcholine, probably because it is found in the more easily studied neurons located outside the brain. Acetylcholine resides in the axon terminals of neurons that activate the skeletal muscles. At sites where nerves meet muscles, there is a space similar to the synapse called the **neuromuscular junction**. When the neurons that synapse with muscle fibers fire, they release acetylcholine into the neuromuscular junction, and the muscle contracts. Some muscle disorders are related to problems with this process. For example, myasthenia gravis, a disease characterized by severe muscle weakness and fatigue, is caused by a blockage of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction. A related similar process is the basis for one of the deadliest toxins known: botulinum. One gram of botulinum toxin (about the weight of a dollar bill) is enough to fatally poison more than 3 million people (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). Botulinum toxin is produced by a bacterium that grows in oxygen-free environments such as improperly prepared canned goods and is a concern with respect to biological warfare and terrorism. The basis for botulinum toxicity is that it blocks the release of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction, resulting in muscle paralysis and, in sufficient doses, death by asphyxiation. There are also two medical uses for Botox, a carefully prepared form of botulinum toxin. When Botox is injected into one of the facial muscles, it causes the muscle to become partially paralyzed, producing a temporary smoothing of certain types of facial wrinkles and lines. Botox is also used to treat chronic migraine; it is injected around pain fibers that are involved in these headaches and works by blocking the release of chemicals involved in pain transmission.

As a point of terminology, if the name of a neurotransmitter is to be used as an adjective, simply take the stem of the name (e.g., *choline*) and add the suffix "-ergic." Thus, neurons that contain acetylcholine are *cholinergic* neurons, and drugs that block acetylcholine, such as atropine, are *anticholinergic* drugs. Nicotine is an example of a cholinergic drug because it is an agonist at acetylcholine receptors. Interestingly, nicotine does not bind to all acetylcholine receptors, but only a subtype

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

referred to as nicotinic receptors. Other acetylcholine receptors are structurally somewhat different than nicotinic receptors, and because a compound called muscarine binds to them, they are referred to as muscarinic receptors. The discovery that acetylcholine binds to more than one receptor is important because it turns out that most neurotransmitters have multiple receptor subtypes as well. Receptor subtypes often occur in different brain regions and regulate different neurotransmitter functions. These features have made them important targets in drug discovery because of the possibility that a drug might affect a receptor subtype that produces a desirable effect, while not affecting a subtype related to an undesirable side effect.

Acetylcholine is an important neurotransmitter in the brain as well as at the neuromuscular junction, but like most neurotransmitters, its function in the brain is not thoroughly understood. Acetylcholine is thought to be important in sensory processing, attention, and memory. In fact, there is evidence that **Alzheimer's disease**, a progressive loss of memory function, is related to the loss of neural function in some of the brain's cholinergic pathways. Much current research on Alzheimer's disease is attempting to determine just what might be going wrong in these pathways and to develop medications that may reduce symptoms. Drugs such as Aricept (donepezil) and Exelon (rivastigmine) reduce the symptoms of Alzheimer's disease by elevating levels of acetylcholine in the brain through inhibition of the enzyme acetylcholinesterase. However, the effects of these drugs are limited and some individuals may not see improvement. As Alzheimer's disease is a progressive neurodegenerative condition, even those who see some improvement in their symptoms will only benefit for several months.

Alzheimer's disease ('älts-'hī-mərz)
One of the most common forms of dementia involves a progressive loss of memory and other cognitive functions.

The problem of Alzheimer's disease underscores an important point: When neurotransmitter systems malfunction, disease states are a likely consequence, and drugs that target the affected system may provide effective treatments. However, complex neurological disorders such as Alzheimer's disease likely have multiple underlying pathologies affecting several neurotransmitter systems. This underscores the limitations in using drugs to treat neurological diseases. These ideas have been critical to contemporary theories of the biological basis of mental illness, which are considered in the next section.

World History Archive/Alamy stock photo

Late President Ronald Reagan retreated from public life after it was revealed that he suffered from Alzheimer's disease.

Monoamines

Three important neurotransmitters—**norepinephrine** (noradrenaline), **dopamine**, and **serotonin**—are collectively known as the **monoamines** because the chemical structure of each contains a single amine group. Like acetylcholine, norepinephrine was discovered early because it is found outside the brain. It serves as a key chemical to mediate the physical changes that accompany emotional arousal. Norepinephrine is also found in the brain as a neurotransmitter, where it seems to be important in the regulation of hunger, alertness, and arousal. Serotonin is found in specific pathways in the brain and is important in the regulation of sleep. Dopamine is a key neurotransmitter in the pathways that regulate coordinated motor movements. This discovery led to the hypothesis that dopamine insufficiency may be the basis of **Parkinson's disease**, a disorder characterized by progressive loss of fine motor movements, muscle rigidity, and tremor.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

norepinephrine (ˈnoˈr-ˈe-pə-ˈne-frən) A neurotransmitter in the brain that is also involved in activity of the sympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system.

dopamine (ˈdō-pə-ˈmēn) A neurotransmitter in the brain that is involved with movement and reward.

serotonin (ˈsir-ə-tō-nən) A neurotransmitter in the brain that is involved with sleep and mood.

monoamines (ˈmä-nō-ə-ˈmēns) A class of chemicals characterized by a single amine group; includes the neurotransmitters norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin.

Parkinson's disease A disease that involves a progressive deterioration of motor control.

L-dopa (ˈel-ˈdō-pə) A chemical precursor of dopamine used in the treatment of Parkinson's disease.

blood-brain barrier The system that "filters" the blood before it can enter the brain.

The dopamine deficiency hypothesis of Parkinson's disease led to new treatment approaches involving the administration of **L-dopa**, a precursor of dopamine. Starting in the 1970s, L-dopa was administered to patients in hopes of correcting the dopamine deficiency and proved to be dramatically effective in relieving the symptoms of this disease. Dopamine itself is not effective because it does not enter the brain from the bloodstream. The brain is protected from toxic compounds that might enter the bloodstream by a **blood-brain barrier** that screens many chemicals, including dopamine. But L-dopa does penetrate the barrier, and once it reaches the brain, it is converted to dopamine (Deutsch & Roth, 2009). Using L-dopa in the treatment of Parkinson's disease is a dramatic example of the value of new knowledge about neurotransmitters for the treatment of disease. Although L-dopa does not cure the disease process (dopaminergic neurons continue to be lost and eventually even L-dopa cannot correct the loss), it has brought years of productive living to many whose lives would otherwise have been prematurely ended by Parkinson's disease.

In addition to these functions, the monoamine neurotransmitters norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin have been closely linked to mood states and emotional disorders. In fact, drugs that influence the monoamine systems have revolutionized modern psychiatry. For example, considerable evidence shows that severe clinical depression may have a biological basis. Current theories propose that clinical depression is associated with dysregulation of monoamines, particularly norepinephrine and serotonin. This monoamine theory of depression originated with the finding that certain drugs that depleted monoamines seemed to produce depression. Reserpine, once used to treat high blood pressure, makes monoaminergic vesicles leaky (as we noted earlier), and the transmitters are then destroyed by enzymes, resulting in a depletion of norepinephrine, serotonin, and dopamine. This process often causes depression in people whose mood states were normal before treatment (as you may have guessed, it also produces Parkinson's symptoms due to dopamine depletion, and this side effect led to the use of L-dopa previously mentioned). Evidence of abnormal monoamine activity in clients who suffer from depression has been reported; for example, numerous studies have linked deficient serotonin activity to suicidal behavior (Arango & Mann, 2009). Finally, the drugs that are useful in the treatment of depression (e.g., Prozac) generally influence either norepinephrine or serotonin transmission or both, which further supports this monoamine dysregulation hypothesis. Increased knowledge of neurochemical processes linked to depression is suggesting new and promising approaches to the understanding and treatment of depressive disorders (Lucassen et al., 2016—see Contemporary Issue Box 3.1).

Monoamines, particularly dopamine and serotonin, appear to be important as the biochemical basis of another important mental illness: schizophrenia. Schizophrenia involves a major loss of contact with reality, characterized by false beliefs or delusions, hallucinations, social withdrawal, and distortions of emotionality. Strong evidence ties these symptoms to high levels of monoamine activity. First, all the drugs that are effective in the treatment of schizophrenia also block monoamine transmission. In fact, it has long been known that a close correlation exists between the clinical potency of the various drugs used and their ability to block dopamine receptors (Snyder et al., 1976). Another interesting piece of evidence is that stimulant drugs such as cocaine and amphetamines increase monoamine activity in the brain. Although low or moderate doses of these stimulants enhance mood, overdoses often lead to paranoid delusions and a loss of reality contact that strongly resembles some symptoms of schizophrenia. When the drug wears off and monoamine activity returns to normal, these symptoms generally dissipate—a finding that further supports the link between abnormal monoamine activity and schizophrenia (see Sawa & Snyder, 2002). Although complex disorders such as schizophrenia

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 3.1

You Are Never Too Old to Make New Neurons: Adult Neurogenesis and Depression

Until very recently, it was almost universally accepted that the birth of new neurons—neurogenesis—ended very early in development. Young adults were considered to possess all the neurons they would ever have. It was believed that cells lost due to stroke, injury, or drug misuse could never be replaced. However, in the 1990s, it was discovered that new neurons were born in certain brain regions in adult rats (Gould et al., 1999). These findings were subsequently confirmed in adult humans, and it is now believed that neurogenesis may occur in the hippocampus and certain other brain areas throughout adulthood. As yet, little is known about the functions of adult neurogenesis. However, research indicates that impaired adult neurogenesis is associated with Alzheimer's disease and major depressive disorder (Berger et al., 2020). The possibilities for treatments of neurological disease are enormous if researchers can find a way to induce neurogenesis. The role of neurogenesis in mental health has become a major research emphasis. A number of studies have shown that various types of stress can suppress production of new neurons in several species including humans (Lucassen et al., 2016). Stress is also linked to depression, and there is evidence of reduced hippocampus size in patients with depression, which likely reflects reduced neurogenesis (Jacobs, 2004). We noted earlier that antidepressant medication generally elevates levels of the neurotransmitter serotonin, and several studies now indicate that elevated serotonin levels increase neurogenesis. Importantly, it requires several weeks for new neurons to become integrated into functional neural pathways, and this corresponds well with the time course of antidepressant action. These drugs generally increase serotonin levels fairly rapidly, but it takes several weeks for the depression to lift, which suggests that it may be the increased birth of new neurons, rather than the elevation of serotonin per se, that is responsible for antidepressant action. If this new neurogenesis theory of depression is correct, it could lead to new and more effective treatments for this serious disorder (see Lucassen et al., 2016, for a review).

and depression cannot be understood completely without considering a host of psychological and social factors, the biological approaches just noted have certainly improved our understanding and treatment of them. We consider the use of drugs to treat these and other disorders in more detail in Chapter 13.

Endorphins

During the late 1970s, compounds were discovered in mammalian brain tissue that were functionally similar to opiate drugs such as morphine and heroin. Unlike acetylcholine and the monoamines, these compounds were large molecules in the peptide family. Because they appeared to be, in effect, a naturally occurring morphine, they were named **endorphins**—a contraction of *endogenous morphine*. We now understand that the effects of opiate drugs are mediated through endorphinergic activity. The natural functions of the endorphins themselves are still far from clear, but they certainly modulate pain relief. The endorphins are explained in more detail in Chapter 10.

William Philpott/Reuters/Alamy Stock Photo

Boxing legend Muhammad Ali pretends to punch actor Michael J. Fox. Both developed Parkinson's disease.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

endorphins (en-'do·r-fənz)
Neurotransmitters in the brain that are mimicked by opiate drugs.

GABA
Short for gamma aminobutyric acid; the most abundant inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain.

glutamate
An excitatory amino acid neurotransmitter.

Amino Acid Neurotransmitters

Two additional neurotransmitters are the amino acids gamma aminobutyric acid, commonly referred to as **GABA**, and **glutamate**. GABA is among the most abundant of the known neurotransmitters in brain tissue, and it is the most significant inhibitory neurotransmitter of the brain. That is, GABA opens negatively charged chloride ion channels that do not cause the neuron to fire but rather hyperpolarize the membrane and impede neural firing. If a neuron has a GABAergic receptor site that is activated, a larger quantity of the excitatory neurotransmitter is required for the neuron to fire. A number of drugs are now thought to act on the GABA system; as you might guess, they are the classic depressant drugs: barbiturates, tranquilizers such as Valium (diazepam) and Xanax (alprazolam), and alcohol. Glutamate is among the most abundant of the excitatory neurotransmitters and is known to be important in learning and memory processes. Some hallucinogenic drugs (PCP and ketamine) act on glutamate receptors in some parts of the brain (see Chapter 12).

Other Neurotransmitters

The development of more sophisticated research techniques has led to the recognition that many more neurotransmitters await discovery. A thorough discussion of recent advances in neuropharmacology is beyond the scope of this text, but some developments have already had a substantial impact on our understanding of psychoactive drug actions. Indeed, many neurotransmitters have been discovered beyond those previously mentioned, and no doubt many more remain to be found. We have much to learn about the brain's chemical code. Often the discovery of a new neurotransmitter increases our understanding of drug action. For example, one neurotransmitter discovered relatively recently is a lipid called **anandamide**. It is of considerable interest because the active chemical in marijuana appears to act by mimicking anandamide (see Chapter 11).

anandamide
A lipid neurotransmitter mimicked by marijuana.

REVIEW

1. Create a table listing the major neurotransmitters (acetylcholine, monoamines, endorphins, amino acid neurotransmitters, other neurotransmitters) and their associated functions.
2. Discuss how the neurotransmitter dopamine is involved in Parkinson's disease and schizophrenia.

3.5 The Nervous System

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

3-7 Identify the structure and organization of the nervous system

3-8 Describe the main functions of the two divisions of the peripheral nervous system

We have been focusing on a microscopic view of the nervous system as we considered how drugs might act at the level of the single neuron. We now turn to the larger picture and consider a macroscopic view of the nervous system. The structure of

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the nervous system is outlined in Figure 3.5. The major distinction is between the **central nervous system (CNS)** and the **peripheral nervous system (PNS)**. The CNS includes the brain and spinal cord. All nervous tissue outside (or peripheral to) the CNS is part of the PNS. The PNS includes nerves (nerves are simply bundles of axons) that send input from the senses to the brain (sensory nerves) and nerves that send output from the brain to muscles (motor nerves).

The PNS also includes an important regulatory system known as the **autonomic nervous system (ANS)**. The ANS regulates various nonconscious or automatic functions and is divided into two parts. The **sympathetic branch** of the autonomic nervous system is activated during emotional arousal by a release of epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal glands. This branch is responsible for the physiological changes that characterize the "fight-or-flight" reaction. During sympathetic arousal, heart rate increases, blood pressure increases, respiratory rate increases, sweating increases, pupils dilate, the mouth becomes dry, and changes occur in blood flow as blood is shunted away from the internal organs and to the brain and large muscle groups. These physiological effects are important to keep in mind because some psychoactive drugs mimic sympathetic arousal. Such drugs are said to be **sympathomimetic**; they include cocaine, amphetamines, and some hallucinogens such as LSD. Another group of drugs blocks a type of norepinephrine receptor in the sympathetic nervous system called "beta-adrenergic" receptors. These beta receptors regulate blood pressure, and the so-called **beta-blockers** (drugs such as propranolol) are widely used in the treatment of hypertension and other vascular disorders.

The other branch of the autonomic nervous system is the **parasympathetic branch**, which in general balances the actions of the sympathetic branch by exerting opposite effects. Parasympathetic activity reduces heart rate, blood pressure, and so on. In contrast to sympathetic neurons, parasympathetic synapses are primarily cholinergic.

central nervous system (CNS)
The brain and the spinal cord.

peripheral nervous system (PNS)
Sensory nerves, motor nerves, and the autonomic nervous system.

autonomic nervous system (ANS)
Part of the PNS has two branches: sympathetic and parasympathetic.

sympathetic branch
Branch of the ANS that is activated during emotional arousal and is responsible for such physiological changes as increased heart and respiratory rate, increased blood pressure, and pupil dilation.

sympathomimetic
Drugs such as cocaine and amphetamines that produce the physiological effects of sympathetic activity.

beta-blockers
Drugs that block beta-adrenergic receptors of the sympathetic system and thus act to relieve high blood pressure.

parasympathetic branch
Branch of the ANS that is responsible for lowering heart rate and blood pressure.

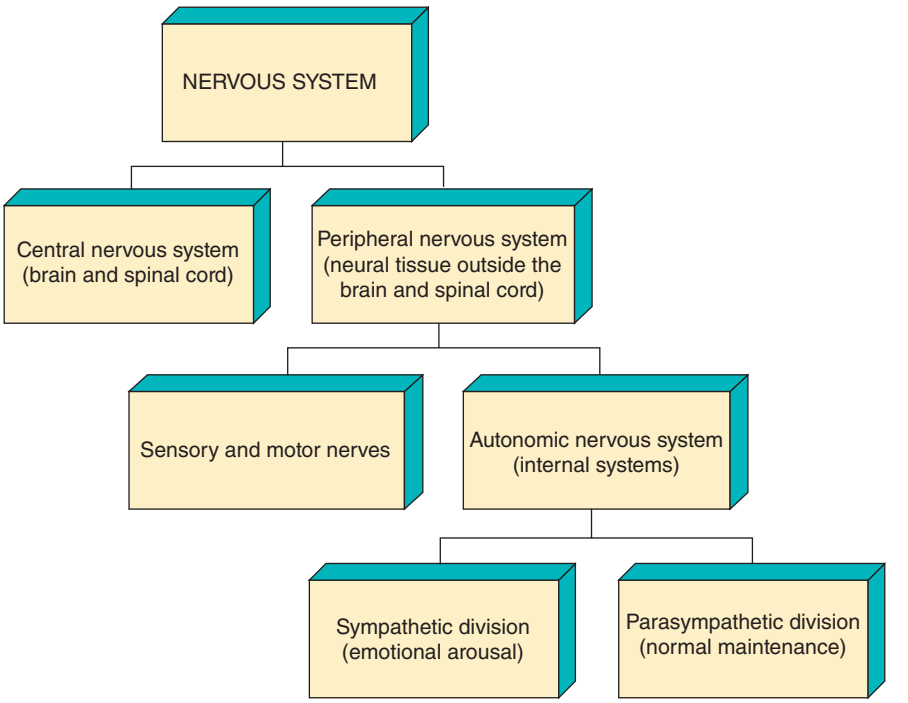

NERVOUS SYSTEM
Central nervous system (brain and spinal cord)
Peripheral nervous system (neural tissue outside the brain and spinal cord)
Sensory and motor nerves
Autonomic nervous system (internal systems)
Sympathetic division (emotional arousal)
Parasympathetic division (normal maintenance)

FIGURE 3.5
Organizational structure of the nervous system

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Create a chart illustrating the divisions of the nervous system.
2. Explain how the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions of the autonomic nervous system work together to modulate vital functions.

3.6 The Brain

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

3-9 Describe the main structures that compose the hindbrain, midbrain, and forebrain

3-10 Explain the role of the mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway in reward and drug addiction

3-11 Summarize the techniques used in imaging the human brain

The key organs of the nervous system are the brain (see Figure 3.6) and spinal cord, which are covered in tough membranes called the meninges. The brain floats within the skull in a liquid known as cerebrospinal fluid. Although weighing just a few pounds, the human brain is an extremely complex structure. We have just examined the processes involved when a single neuron fires. Now consider that the human brain contains literally billions of neurons. Many of the brain's neurons synapse with several thousand other neurons because of an elaborate branching of axons, organized into specific pathways. Neuroscientists consider the different structures of the brain and their connections in an attempt to understand function.

The major divisions of the human brain are the **hindbrain**, **midbrain**, and **forebrain**. If a voyage through the brain began at the spinal cord and moved up, the first part of the brain encountered would be the hindbrain.

hindbrain
The lower part of the brain, including the medulla, pons, and cerebellum.

midbrain
Part of the brain that includes the inferior and superior colliculi and the substantia nigra.

forebrain
The largest part of the human brain; includes the cerebral cortex, thalamus, hypothalamus, and limbic system.

medulla oblongata (mə-'də-lə-'ä-bl˙oh-gä-tə)
The lowest hindbrain structure of the brain; important in the regulation of breathing, heart rate, and other basic life functions.

cerebellum ('ser-ə-'be-ləm)
Hindbrain structure important in motor control and coordination.

pons ('pänz)
Hindbrain structure important in the control of sleep and wakefulness.

reticular activating system
Pathway running through the medulla and pons that regulates alertness and arousal.

The Hindbrain

The hindbrain consists of three main components: the **medulla oblongata**, the **cerebellum**, and the **pons** (see Figure 3.7). The medulla is located just above (and is really a slight enlargement of) the spinal cord. A highly significant structure for the regulation of basic life functions, the medulla controls breathing, heart rate, vomiting, swallowing, blood pressure, and digestive processes. Normal functioning of the medulla is critical, and when drugs begin to affect the medulla, the person is often in danger due to respiratory or cardiovascular failure. When toxic chemicals reach high levels in this area, the vomit center is often triggered to purge the body, which may be why drinking large quantities of alcohol often causes nausea and vomiting. Farther up the hindbrain is an enlarged section called the pons. In addition to providing the pathways for input up and output down from the spinal cord, the pons plays a role in the control of sleep and wakefulness. Running along the pons and through the medulla is a pathway (not visible in Figure 3.7) known as the **reticular activating system**, which is critical for alertness and arousal. Drugs that lower arousal and induce sleep (such as barbiturates and tranquilizers) are thought to act in this region of the brain.

The cerebellum, the last major organ of the hindbrain, is a highly complex structure containing several billion neurons itself. The cerebellum is critical for motor

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

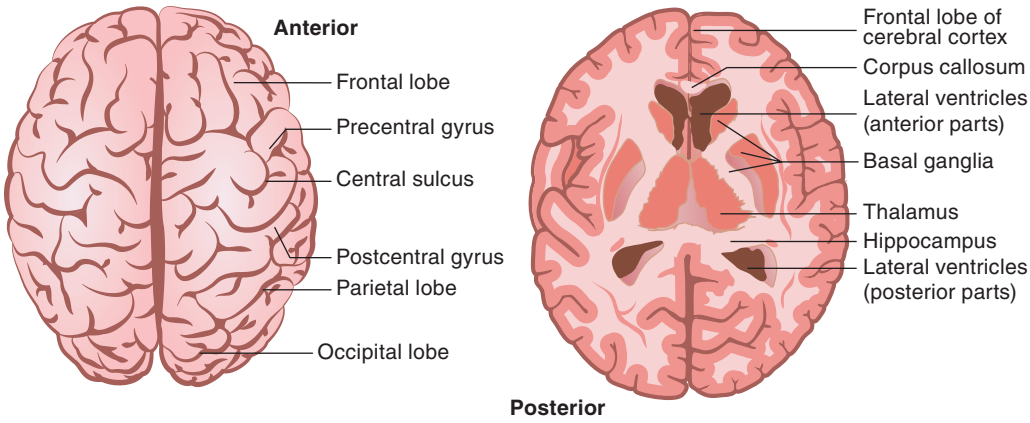


FIGURE 3.6
A dorsal view (from above) and a cross section of the human brain

Kalat, *Biological psychology*, 11E. © 2013 Cengage Learning

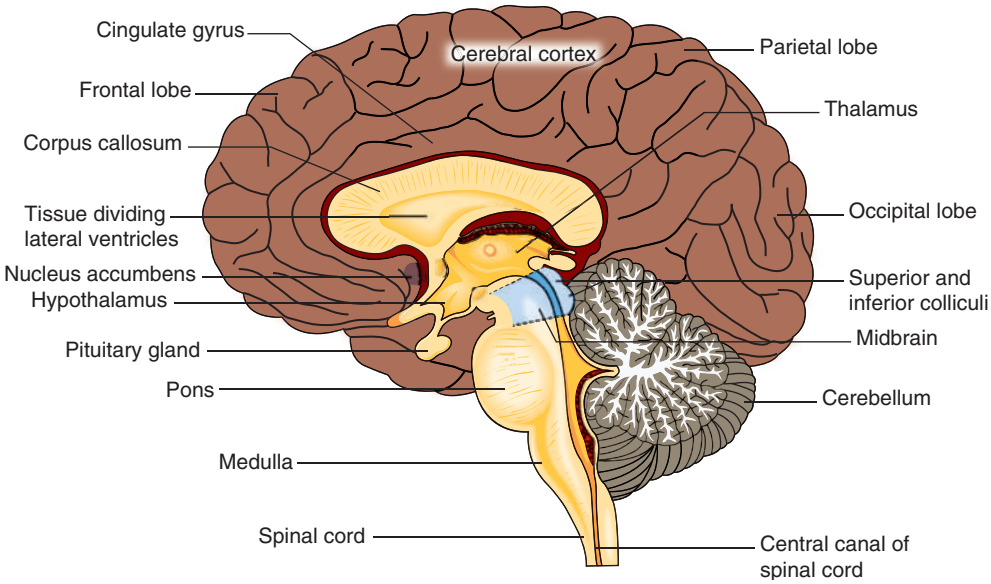


FIGURE 3.7
A sagittal (inside) view of the human brain

Kalat, *Biological psychology*, 11E. © 2013 Cengage Learning

control. Activities of the cerebellum are largely unconscious but do involve balance, coordinated movement of all kinds, and speech. The loss of motor control and balance produced by drugs such as alcohol may be caused by their action on the cerebellum.

The Midbrain

The midbrain consists of a number of structures, including the **inferior colliculi**, the **superior colliculi**, and the **substantia nigra** (not shown). The inferior colliculi form part of the auditory system. The superior colliculi function in localization of visual stimuli. These structures are specifically involved with localization of stimuli and mediation of reflexes. The actual recognition and interpretation of visual and

inferior colliculi (ko-'lik-yü-lī)
Midbrain structures that control sound localization.

superior colliculi
Midbrain structures that control visual localization.

substantia nigra (səb-'stan(t)-shē-ə-'nī-grə)
Literally "black substance," this basal ganglia structure is darkly pigmented and produces dopamine. Damage to this area produces Parkinson's disease.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

auditory stimuli take place elsewhere in the brain (see the section on the cerebral cortex).

Parkinson's disease involves damage to the substantia nigra and the nigrostriatal motor pathway. Specifically, Parkinson's disease develops when nerve cells in this brain region begin to degenerate. The substantia nigra produces dopamine, which is transported through this motor pathway, and as the substantia nigra deteriorates, less and less dopamine is available for neurotransmission. Parkinson's symptoms do not appear until about 80% of the substantia nigra is destroyed. Although the causes of Parkinson's disease are not completely understood, toxins such as rotenone and permethrin appear to be capable of killing neurons in the substantia nigra and triggering the disorder.

The Forebrain

The most important brain regions from the perspective of interpreting complex human behavior are in the forebrain, particularly the cortex, but also including the **thalamus** and **hypothalamus** (see Figure 3.7).

thalamus ('tha-lə-məs) Forebrain structure that organizes sensory input.

hypothalamus ('hī-pō-tha-lə-məs) Forebrain structure that regulates eating, drinking, and other basic biological drives.

The Thalamus and Hypothalamus

The thalamus is often referred to as a relay station because it receives incoming sensory stimuli and then "relays" that information to relevant centers throughout the brain. The hypothalamus is a critical structure in the motivation of behavior. It contains areas that appear to be involved in the regulation of eating and drinking, and the control of body temperature, aggression, and sexual behavior. Worth noting is that information about the particular function of a given brain region has not been easily determined and remains somewhat controversial. Historically, the methods for analyzing brain structures were primarily lesions and stimulation. Lesioning a structure involves performing surgery on an animal subject and causing localized damage to the structure in question. When the animal has recovered from surgery, changes in behavior are then attributed to the damaged structure. For example, lesions in one part of the hypothalamus result in greatly reduced food intake, whereas if another part is damaged, overeating and obesity occur. Thus, the hypothalamus contains at least two sites that appear to be important in the regulation of food intake. One area seems to inhibit eating (because its loss results in overeating) and the other seems to excite hunger (because its loss results in less eating). The effects of electrical stimulation of a brain region generally are the opposite of the effects of lesioning or removing that region.

A note of caution accompanies these findings. When cells in the brain are lesioned or stimulated, the effects extend beyond those specific cells, and indeed entire pathways may become damaged or stimulated. Thus, rather than speaking of the hunger or satiety *centers*, a more appropriate term is hunger or satiety *pathways*. However, even this may be an oversimplification because some researchers have noted that the role of these pathways may not be as specific to hunger as we first thought. That is, these pathways could affect motor movements, the sensation of taste, or more general motivational variables, and much current research is devoted to these effects. However, there is general agreement that the hypothalamus is an important structure in the regulation of hunger, thirst, and other basic biological motives (Kalat, 2013).

The Neural Basis of Reward

Despite the difficulties of such research, electrical stimulation of brain regions led to one of the most significant discoveries in the quest to understand the relationship of

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

brain, behavior, and drugs. During the 1950s, the psychologist James Olds was trying to map the effects of stimulation on the rat brain by implanting electrodes into various regions. The rat seemed to enjoy the electrical stimulation in some areas of the brain. Here is how Olds describes his serendipitous discovery:

> I applied a brief train of 60-cycle sine wave electrical current whenever the animal entered one corner of the enclosure. The animal did not stay away from the corner, but rather came back quickly after a brief sortie which followed the first stimulation and came back even more quickly after a briefer sortie which followed the second stimulation. By the time the third electrical stimulus had been applied the animal seemed indubitably to be "coming back for more." (Carlson, 2001, p. 457)

Following up on this finding, Olds and Milner (1954) discovered that when electrodes are implanted in some brain areas, particularly in a region called the **mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway**, rats could actually be trained to press a lever to electrically stimulate themselves. The mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway includes a small subcortical area called the nucleus accumbens and travels through the ventral tegmental area all the way to the frontal cortex. When rats have been trained to self-stimulate this area, they often respond with great vigor (more than 1,000 responses per hour), and the potency of the reinforcement related to this center led Olds and others to refer to it as the "pleasure center." The notion is that the region may represent the final common pathway for pleasurable stimulation and reward. It has been argued too that this brain region is of significance in understanding the rewarding properties of drugs. The nucleus accumbens is rich in dopamine, and some investigators have suggested that dopamine is a critical chemical in producing the rewarding properties of drugs (Koob et al., 2014; Nestler, 2009). Indeed, some have viewed this region of the brain as critical to drug addiction: "There is now a wealth of evidence that [the mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway] is a crucial substrate for the acute rewarding effects of virtually all drugs of abuse and for the derangements in reward mechanisms that contribute to drug addiction" (Nestler, 2009, p. 777). As Dackis and Gold (1985) once put it, addicts can be seen as individuals who have "tampered chemically with endogenous systems of reward and lost control of this shortcut to pleasure" (p. 476).

mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway
Pathway that is rewarding when stimulated.

It is true that many pleasurable events result in the release of dopamine in this pathway—good-tasting food (especially chocolate); sex; and indeed many drugs such as cocaine, heroin, and nicotine (Goldstein, 2001). However, the idea that dopamine release in this pathway always translates into the psychological experience of pleasure appears to be an oversimplification. For example, events that are surprising or arousing but not especially pleasurable (like an electrical shock) seem to release dopamine in the nucleus accumbens, so perhaps activity in this pathway reflects events that have motivational significance or are "attention-getters" (Salamone & Correa, 2012; Salamone et al., 2012).

The Limbic System, Basal Ganglia, and Cerebral Cortex

The forebrain also includes three complex systems: the **limbic system**, the **basal ganglia**, and the **cortex**. The aspects of behavior that are most uniquely human, such as complex reasoning, memory, logic, speech, and planning, are largely derived from these structures.

The limbic system includes several structures in the interior of the forebrain. One limbic structure, the amygdala, seems to be important in mediating certain types of aggression, fear, and other emotional experiences. Another important limbic structure is the **hippocampus**, which appears to be critical in memory storage. People

limbic system
Forebrain structures including the amygdala and hippocampus.

basal ganglia ('bā-ə-'gaŋ -glē-ə)
Forebrain structures important for motor control; they include the caudate nucleus, the putamen, and the globus pallidus.

cortex
The outermost and largest part of the human brain.

hippocampus ('hi-pə-'kam-pəs)
A structure of the limbic system thought to be important in the formation of memories.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

with damage to the hippocampus can remember things that occurred in their lives prior to the damage but, for the most part, are unable to store new memories. In other words, their long-term memories are intact, but they have difficulty in forming new permanent memories. The basal ganglia include the caudate nucleus, the putamen, and the globus pallidus. These structures are critical for motor movements.

One feature that distinguishes the human brain from those of most other animals is the greatly enlarged cerebral cortex. Indeed, many of the complex psychological functions that are characteristically human are thought to involve the cortex. The occipital lobe is at the back of the brain and is often referred to as the visual projection area (see Figure 3.6). Stimulation of the eye is eventually perceived as a visual stimulus when the signal reaches the occipital cortex. The temporal lobe is similarly specialized for auditory stimulation and also appears to be important in language. Damage to the left temporal lobe results in severe impairment of language abilities (at least for most right-handed individuals). Right temporal lobe damage often results in dysregulation of emotions. This relationship between right and left temporal lobe mediation of language and emotions is reversed in some cases (e.g., left-handed individuals). The frontal lobe is important in the initiation of movement and is involved with emotionality, intelligence, and personality. Tactile stimuli are registered in the parietal lobe (see Figure 3.6).

Because most nonhuman species do not share the enlarged cortex of humans, using animal models to study the functions of the cortex is more difficult. Much of what we know about the cerebral cortex then has come from unfortunate accidents and diseases such as strokes and tumors, which in effect produce lesions in the patient's brain that may result in some loss of psychological function. Upon autopsy, the nature of the psychological impairment can be matched to the site of the damage. For example, consider the tragic but instructive example of Phineas Gage. Gage was a 25-year-old railroad worker in 1848, when an accidental explosion drove an iron rod through his head. Remarkably, Gage not only survived but after a recovery period was able to walk, talk, and remember as well as he had before the accident. It was clear, however, that Gage's personality had changed. His friends said that he was no longer himself. Before the accident, he was regarded as a mild-mannered, well-adjusted, friendly man, but his brain damage left him impulsive, ill-tempered, and unreliable. He was apparently unable to execute or stick to even the simplest plans. His skull was preserved, and nearly a century and a half later, a reconstruction of the trajectory of the rod showed that the likely area of damage was a region of the frontal lobe known as the prefrontal cortex, which is now recognized to be important in the ability to plan, to control impulses, and generally to consider the long-term consequences of behavior (Brevet-Aeby et al., 2016). Abnormal regulation in the prefrontal cortex has been observed in drug-dependent individuals, and some theories suggest this dysregulation may be critical to understanding the neurobiology of impulsive behavior and addiction (Bickel et al., 2016).

Imaging the Human Brain

Although much of what we know about the brain comes from a combination of research with animals and autopsy data from humans, new imaging technologies in recent years have opened new windows on the human brain. These technologies are teaching us much about the functional neuroanatomy of the normal brain. They also provide us with more sophisticated answers to questions that come up whenever chronic effects of drugs are discussed: the issue of drug-induced brain damage. We discuss this problem throughout the text as we consider individual

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

drugs, but now, after this lengthy discussion of the brain, a few general comments are warranted. Detecting brain damage caused by drugs is often very difficult. Rarely do psychoactive drugs produce such dramatic long-term effects as those seen with Phineas Gage, for example, so we must rely on specialized methods to determine whether damage has occurred. Various neuropsychological tests are available that can be used to detect impairment in memory, perceptual motor skills, language, and other functions that may be influenced by chronic drug use. More direct analysis of brain tissue may be accomplished through **electroencephalography (EEG)**. This technique involves measuring the brain's electrical activity through the scalp. These brain waves change in predictable ways with sleep or various kinds of arousal, and abnormalities in EEG patterns can reveal gross brain damage.

Katie Neesling/Dreamstime.com

A technician monitors a patient during a CAT scan.

A more recently developed and more sensitive measure of brain impairment is **computerized axial tomography**, better known as the CT or CAT scan. The CT scan involves passing X-rays through the head in a circular pattern to get a three-dimensional image of the brain. The focus can be changed to different depths of the brain to detect internal tumors, enlarged spaces or ventricles, and other internal abnormalities.

CT scans provide a picture of the brain but reveal nothing about its functioning. However, a technique called the PET scan may greatly increase our ability to detect brain activity. **Positron-emission tomography (PET)** involves intravenous injection of radiotracers to visualize and measure aspects of brain function. Radioactive glucose or oxygen or even radioactive neurochemicals are then measured by sensitive detectors that can determine where the isotopes are absorbed, their rate of absorption, and so on. Then changes in activity in various brain regions can be assessed, including changes induced by drugs. Techniques like the PET scan and the closely related SPECT (single-photon emission computed tomography) scan promise to greatly increase our ability to determine where in the brain damaging drugs produce their effects.

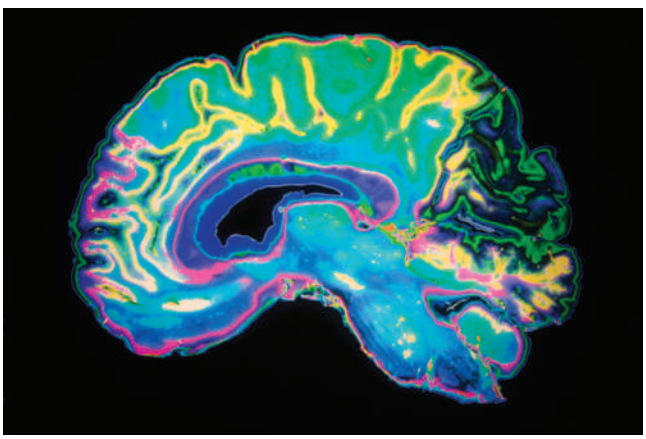
electroencephalography (EEG)
Technique used to measure electrical activity in the brain.

computerized axial tomography (CT)
Technique that produces a three-dimensional X-ray image of the brain.

positron-emission tomography (PET)
Technique used to measure activity in selected brain regions.

magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
Technique that creates a high-resolution, three-dimensional image of the brain.

Another sophisticated and sensitive technique used to image the brain is **magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)**. With this technique, a strong magnetic field is passed through a person's head. Radio waves are then generated, which cause the molecules of the brain to emit energy of different frequencies, depending on their properties. This technique creates a localized and detailed brain image and eventually may greatly improve our ability to detect and understand brain dysfunction (Uttal, 2001). A modification of MRI technology called functional MRI (fMRI) has been developed; fMRI permits very rapid imaging and enables us to measure oxygen levels in blood vessels of the brain. Oxygen levels are correlated with the metabolism of a particular brain region and are taken as an index of brain activity in that region. Thus, fMRI



Dayzeedayzee/Dreamstime.com

An MRI image of the brain.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 3.2

Drug Craving and the Brain

Those with a drug use disorder often report experiencing strong reactions when they are exposed to environmental stimuli associated with drug use. For example, being in a place where they have frequently used drugs or with friends who use them can evoke drug craving, excitement, and even physical symptoms such as elevated heart rate. Using some of the sophisticated brain-imaging tools described in the text, researchers are now able to characterize how the brain reacts to drug-related stimuli. In a recent study, Kober et al. (2016) used fMRI to compare the reactions of cocaine-dependent individuals with those of problem gamblers and control participants. Participants in all three groups watched videos in the laboratory while measurements were taken. Some videos showed an individual talking about using cocaine, in others the individual was talking about gambling, and in a control video the individual talked about sad things. The cocaine users, but not the problem gamblers or control subjects, reported strong craving after watching the cocaine video. The problem gamblers, but not the other participants, reported craving-like urges to gamble after watching the gambling video. The fMRI revealed increased activity in a part of the limbic region of the brain called the perigenual region of the anterior cingulate cortex that correlated with cocaine craving. That is, the cocaine users exhibited activity in this region only while watching the cocaine video, but neither the problem gamblers nor the controls showed activation in this region to any of the videos. It is possible that this region is uniquely associated with drug craving.

Interestingly, in another region of the anterior cingulate, highest activation was observed for problem gamblers when watching the gambling video, for cocaine users when watching the cocaine video, and for the controls when watching the sad video. Perhaps this brain region is associated with more general distress. Certainly, much more research is needed to fully interpret results such as those obtained by Kober et al., but it is clear that brain-imaging techniques have the potential to identify the brain regions involved with psychological experiences, such as drug craving, that are thought to be important aspects of drug dependence.

images obtained while a subject is engaged in some psychological activity (e.g., doing mental arithmetic) can be used to make inferences about the brain regions that were most active during the activity. These various imaging techniques are increasingly being used to learn about the neural mechanisms of drug action and dependence (see Contemporary Issue Box 3.2), as well as to evaluate changes in the brain after long-term exposure to drugs.

REVIEW

1. Evaluate the role of the mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway in drug addiction.
2. Describe how positron-emission tomography (PET) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can be used in understanding where in the brain drugs exert their effects.

Summary

- All psychoactive drugs produce their effects by acting on the nervous system—primarily by altering normal brain function.
- The brain is composed of specialized cells called neurons. Neurons transmit information by conducting electrical currents along their axons and releasing chemical substances called neurotransmitters into the synapse. Most drugs act by altering this chemical phase of neural transmission.
- Neurotransmitters work through a lock–key mechanism. The neurotransmitter substance is like a key, and specialized areas on the neuron, called receptor sites, are like locks. Neurotransmitter chemicals must occupy the receptor sites for the neuron to fire.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Drugs alter neural transmission in several ways. For example, a drug may mimic a natural or endogenous neurotransmitter by activating receptor sites. Alternatively, a drug may block a receptor site. Drugs can also affect the deactivation or release of neurotransmitters.
- Dozens of different chemicals have been proposed to act as neurotransmitters in the human brain; several are known to be related to drug effects. These include acetylcholine, anandamide, dopamine, endorphins, GABA, glutamate, norepinephrine, and serotonin.
- The nervous system is divided into two main sections. The central nervous system includes the brain and spinal cord. The peripheral nervous system includes the sensory nerves, motor nerves, and the autonomic nervous system.
- The autonomic nervous system is divided into two branches. The sympathetic branch produces the physiological effects that accompany emotional arousal, and the parasympathetic branch controls the body when at rest.
- The brain is divided into three divisions: the hindbrain, the midbrain, and the forebrain.
- The evolutionarily primitive hindbrain includes the medulla, the pons, and the cerebellum.
- The midbrain includes the superior and inferior colliculi and the substantia nigra.
- The forebrain includes the cerebral cortex, the thalamus, the hypothalamus, the basal ganglia, and the limbic system.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Certain cells in the nervous system have the unique ability to communicate with each other.
   T *Neurons are able to communicate with each other through an electrochemical process known as neural transmission.*
2. The effects of drugs always involve naturally occurring physiological processes.
   T *Drugs act by making defined natural functions of the brain or body either more or less active.*
3. Some drugs work by blocking the reuptake of neurotransmitters into the axon terminals.
   T *Some drugs work by blocking the reuptake of neurotransmitters into the axon terminals, thereby changing the levels of neurotransmitter in the brain.*
4. All drugs have the same basic effect on a cellular level; that is, they all block neural firing.
   F *Although some drugs, called antagonists, do block receptor sites and prevent activation of the receptor, other drugs, called agonists, activate the receptor.*
5. The brain is shielded from many toxic substances by a protective barrier.
   T *The brain is protected from toxic compounds that might enter the bloodstream by a blood-brain barrier that screens many, but not all, chemicals.*
6. The two main branches of the nervous system are the peripheral nervous system (PNS) and the autonomic nervous system (ANS).
   F *The two main branches of the nervous system are the central nervous system (CNS) and the peripheral nervous system (PNS).*
7. An excess of dopamine is associated with Parkinson's disease.
   F *Dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra degenerate in Parkinson's disease, which leads to a deficiency of dopamine.*
8. The brain is firmly attached to the inside of the skull by tough membranes known as the meninges.
   F *The brain floats within the skull in a liquid known as cerebrospinal fluid.*
9. The autonomic nervous system is responsible for regulating food and water intake.
   F *Food and water intake appears to be regulated by the hypothalamus, a structure found in the brain.*
10. Animals will work for the electrical stimulation of certain parts of the brain.
    T *The mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway is sometimes called the pleasure center of the brain.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Key Terms

acetylcholine (ə-ˈse-təl-ˈkō-lēn)
action potential
agonist (ˈa-gə-nist)
Alzheimer's disease (ˈälts-ˈhə-merz-)
anandamide
antagonist
autonomic nervous system (ANS)
axon (ˈak-ˈsän)
axon terminals (or terminal buttons)
basal ganglia (ˈbā-səl-ˈgaŋ-glē-ə)
beta-blockers
blood-brain barrier
central nervous system (CNS)
cerebellum (ˈser-ə-ˈbe-ləm)
computerized axial tomography (CT)
cortex
dendrites (ˈden-ˈdrīt)
dopamine (ˈdō-pə-ˈmēn)
electroencephalography (EEG)
endorphins (en-ˈdo·r-fənz)
enzyme breakdown
forebrain
GABA
glutamate
hindbrain
hippocampus (ˈhi-pə-ˈkam-pəs)
hypothalamus (ˈhī-pō-tha-lə-məs)
inferior colliculi (ko-ˈlik-yū-lī)
ionotropic receptors
L-dopa (ˈel-ˈdō-pə)
limbic system
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
medulla oblongata (mə-ˈdə-lə-ˈä-bl·oŋ-gä-tə)
mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway
metabotropic receptors
midbrain
monoamines (ˈmä-nō-ə-ˈmēn)
myelin (ˈmī-ə-lən)
neuromuscular junction
neurons (ˈnü-ˈrän)
neurotransmitters
norepinephrine (ˈno·r-ˈe-pə-ˈne-frən)
parasympathetic branch
Parkinson's disease
peripheral nervous system (PNS)
pons (ˈpänz)
positron-emission tomography (PET)
receptor sites
reticular activating system
reuptake
serotonin (ˈsir-ə-tō-nən)
substantia nigra (səb-ˈstan(t)-shē-ə -ˈnī-grə)
superior colliculi
sympathetic branch
sympathomimetic
synapse (ˈsi-ˈnaps)
thalamus (ˈtha-lə-məs)
vesicles (ˈve-si-kəls)

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Recent research shows that drug abuse alters cognition, particularly in areas of decision making and inhibition. If cognition is central to drug addiction, how might this explain why those with drug use disorders easily relapse even after long periods of drug abstinence?
2. Is continued drug use a voluntary behavior? Consider the implications of the National Institute on Drug Abuse's position that addiction is a brain disease that can be treated.

Suggested Readings

Koob, G. F., Arends, M. A., & Le Moal, M. (2014). *Drugs, addiction, and the brain*. Academic Press.

Prus, A. (2014). *An introduction to drugs and the neuroscience of behavior*. Wadsworth, Cengage Learning.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

- **4-1** Identify the routes of drug administration
- **4-2** Describe the advantages and disadvantages associated with each route of drug administration
- **4-3** Discuss the factors that influence how a drug is distributed to its site of action in the body
- **4-4** Explain how drugs are eliminated from the body, including the two general laws the rate of elimination follows
- **4-5** Describe the significance of the dose-effect curve in pharmacology, and the information that slope, efficacy, and potency provide toward understand the action of a drug
- **4-6** Distinguish between effective and lethal doses
- **4-7** Explain the importance of understanding drug interactions

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

4

Pharmacology

Pharmacokinetics and Drug Dose

- Drug Dose
- Routes of Administration
- Drug Absorption
- Drug Distribution

Conclusion

Pharmacodynamics

- The Dose-Effect Curve
- Effective and Lethal Doses
- Drug Interactions
- Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. A given amount of a drug has similar biological effects on different people.

___ 2. Despite the large number of known drugs, there are only three ways that drugs are commonly administered or taken.

___ 3. Some drugs cannot be taken orally, as acid and digestive enzymes in the stomach destroy the drug.

___ 4. Taking a drug intravenously is a highly efficient, safe way to get a drug into the blood.

___ 5. Smoking is a relatively slow way of getting a drug into the blood.

___ 6. Some drugs can enter the body through the skin.

___ 7. The body protects the brain from toxic substances.

___ 8. The liver is the most important organ for the excretion of drugs and their metabolites.

___ 9. Scientific study of the effects of drugs is difficult because there is no way to represent such effects quantitatively.

___10. When more than one drug is taken at a time, the effects of one can enhance or diminish the effects of the other(s).

___11. Caffeine and alcohol have antagonistic effects.

___12. It is important to know about drug interactions because of the high prevalence of using more than one drug at a time among people who present for drug treatment.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The aim of this chapter is to cover the basic principles and methods of pharmacology that apply to the description and evaluation of all drugs. We will elaborate on an idea we first mentioned in Chapter 1—the drug experience, or the pharmacological and nonpharmacological factors that influence how an individual perceives the effects of a drug. The importance of any one factor, or set of factors, for a given drug-taking occasion depends on the importance of the other factors. This idea sounds complicated, and it is even more complicated to analyze in practice. To evaluate the importance or contribution of any one factor to a drug effect or experience, researchers must comprehend or at least somehow **control** the effects of other relevant factors.

control
In research, to be able to account for variables that may affect the results of a study.

We will try to walk down the path of the drug experience from beginning to end as if it were a logical and linear route. That analogy is flawed, however, because not only are the contributory factors of a drug effect interdependent, but **feedback** relationships may also occur among those factors. For example, a large quantity of some drug may be taken and **absorbed** into the blood. Then the drug is carried to its site of action (distributed). In some cases, a large quantity of a drug may cause the body to slow absorption or quicken **metabolism** of the drug to defend itself against a toxic drug effect. In this event, the **distribution** of the drug is information that the body "feeds back" to its regulators of absorption and metabolism to, in effect, reduce the drug quantity.

feedback
In this context, in a series of events, what happens in a later event alters events that preceded it.

absorbed
When drugs have entered the bloodstream.

metabolism
The process by which the body breaks down matter into more simple components and waste.

distribution
The transport of drugs by the blood to their site(s) of action in the body.

Including all the possible feedback loops would strangle this discussion, so we will review the drug experience and the factors that influence it as if everything will proceeds linearly.

The "steps" in the drug experience are:

1. A drug of a specified chemical structure is present.
2. A certain quantity of this drug is measured.
3. This quantity of the drug is administered in one of a number of possible ways.
4. The drug is absorbed into the blood and distributed to the site(s) of action.
5. Some pharmacological effect is produced.
6. In humans, a drug's pharmacological effects may be modified depending on various characteristics of the person, including genetic makeup, gender, age, personality, and drug tolerance.
7. The setting or context of drug use may also modify a drug's pharmacological effects.

To pharmacologists, the drug experience involves two branches of that science: pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. **Pharmacokinetics** concerns the study of "what the body does to the drug" and includes the main processes of absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion (known as the acronym ADME). Drug absorption and distribution are essential for determining how much drug reaches its sites of action and therefore for determining its effects. Metabolism and excretion are the two routes of drug elimination. Knowing about drug excretion or elimination is required for learning the effect a drug will have after it enters the body.

pharmacokinetics
Pharmacokinetics refers to the study of "what the body does to the drug" and includes the main processes of absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion (known as the acronym ADME).

Pharmacokinetics might be viewed as the vehicle for **pharmacodynamics**, which is the study of the "biochemical and physiological effects of drugs and their mechanisms of action" (Benet et al., 1990a, p. 1). The mechanisms by which drugs affect neural transmission were discussed in Chapter 3. In this chapter, we introduce some of the language that pharmacologists use to describe drug effects and some ways that have been developed to depict them. In later chapters on individual drugs and drug

pharmacodynamics
The branch of pharmacology that concerns the biochemical and physiological effects of drugs and their mechanisms of action.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

classes, pharmacodynamics enters into our description of a drug's biological mechanism of action. Pharmacodynamics is relevant to the drug experience because this branch of pharmacology concerns the biological bases of observed drug effects. It will be valuable for you to know what standards are followed in describing and representing these effects.

The emphasis of this chapter is on the characteristics of drugs and the role the body plays in producing drug effects. Unique characteristics of people and setting factors that affect the drug experience are the subject of Chapter 5.

4.1 Pharmacokinetics and Drug Dose

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **4-1** Identify the routes of drug administration
- **4-2** Describe the advantages and disadvantages associated with each route of drug administration
- **4-3** Discuss the factors that influence how a drug is distributed to its site of action in the body
- **4-4** Explain how drugs are eliminated from the body, including the two general laws the rate of elimination follows

We begin our overview of pharmacokinetics by describing how to specify and measure a given amount of a drug and how the drug gets into the body. The combination of drug and body chemistry determines the drug experience.

Drug Dose

Recall from Chapter 1 that the effect of a drug depends most fundamentally on how much of the drug is taken. A science about drugs relies on a standard way to determine drug quantities. How do pharmacologists compute drug dose? How is that quantity communicated? A drug's dose is computed according to a person's body weight, as the volume of body fluid is positively correlated with body weight. Therefore, a given amount of a drug is less concentrated in those with higher body weights, and similarly at the site of drug action, than it is in those with lower body weights (White, 1991). As you will see later in this chapter, in general, the greater the drug concentration at a site, the greater the drug effect. Therefore, the amount of a drug that is administered has to be adjusted according to body weight if we are to assure that the drug is given in equivalent strength (dose) to people who have different weights.

The first step is to determine the desired dose, expressed in milligrams of the drug per kilogram (mg/kg) of body weight. The next step is to weigh the person and record the weight in kilograms. With these two quantities, the amount of drug required for the desired dose is easily determined. For example, if the desired dose is 0.08 mg/kg and the person weighs 80 kg, the necessary amount is $0.08 \times 80 = 6.4$ mg of the drug (Leavitt, 1982).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Routes of Administration

> *"Whether you sniff it, smoke it, eat it,… the result is the same: addiction."*
>
> William S. Burroughs

In pharmacology, the "route of drug administration" may refer to either the site where a drug is taken or how a drug is taken.[1] The route of drug administration can strongly influence the effects that a drug has. In this section, we discuss eight administration routes. While over 100 routes of administration are recognized by the FDA, we will focus on these main routes:

- Oral
- Injection
  - Subcutaneous
  - Intramuscular
  - Intravenous
- Inhalation
- Intranasal (sniffing)
- Sublingual (under the tongue)
- Transdermal (through the skin)

Oral

Oral administration, or swallowing, is probably the route most familiar to you. Drugs taken orally are usually in the form of pills, capsules, powders, or liquids. Examples include medications found at drugstores, such as headache medicines and cough syrups, and prescription medications such as birth control pills. Such accessible medications are virtually always prepared for oral administration because it usually is the safest, most convenient, and most economical way to administer a drug.

When drugs are swallowed, they pass through the stomach and are absorbed primarily through the small intestine. This travel course affects both how fast a drug can register its effect physically and how much effect is registered. A major factor in determining the effect is how much food is in the digestive tract when the drug is taken. You may have noticed that many medications have instructions to take them on an empty stomach. For example, the thyroid medication Synthroid (levothyroxine) is to be taken on an empty stomach with only water, and you should wait at least 30 minutes to 1 hour before eating or drinking anything other than water. The presence of food delays the stomach from emptying and may dilute the concentration of a drug. The result: delayed absorption and a decrease in the maximum drug level achieved. Another point about oral administration is that food may encapsulate the drug so that it is passed out of the body in the feces. Finally, oral administration, even without the complications of food in the stomach, causes the drug to be absorbed into the blood more slowly than with other routes.

Therefore, the pluses of oral administration—relative safety, convenience, and economy—must be balanced against considerations of time to absorption and the maximum drug effect that can be reached with a particular drug dose. With some drugs, such as heroin, the stomach acids used in digestion actually break down the drug to some degree before it is absorbed into the blood. Once in the blood, the chemically altered drug is passed through the liver before it reaches the brain. Because the liver is the major site of the metabolization of most drugs, only a fraction of the drug dose actually reaches the brain. The outcome is a diminished drug effect.

[1]Our discussion of routes of drug administration draws heavily from Benet et al. (1990a, 1990b); Brand et al. (1998); Jacobs and Fehr (1987); and Julien et al. (2008).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Injection

Three of the most common routes of drug administration involve injecting drugs into the body using a needle and syringe. These three injection routes are subcutaneous, intramuscular, and intravenous. When drugs are taken this way, they typically are **dissolved** or **suspended** in some solution ("vehicle") before injection.

dissolved
When a drug changes from solid to liquid by mixing it with a liquid.

suspended
When a drug's particles are dispersed in solution but not dissolved in it.

Subcutaneous

This route involves injecting the drug under the layers of the skin. This route is relatively simple to administer, as a short needle is used to inject just below the skin surface. Many of those beginning to use drugs may use the subcutaneous injection route. This route may also be preferred medically for drugs that are not irritating to body tissue because of the route's relatively slow (but faster than oral) and constant absorption rate. In fact, the solution in which the drug is administered may be selected to adjust the drug's absorption rate. A drug should not be taken subcutaneously when the drug irritates body tissue or when large volumes of solution must be taken to introduce enough of the drug to achieve the desired effect. Examples of medications administered via subcutaneous injection include hormones, like insulin, and allergy medications.

Intramuscular

The name of this route means "within the muscle." Intramuscular injection requires a deeper penetration and thus a longer needle than the subcutaneous method but is associated with a faster absorption rate when the drug is prepared in a water solution and there is a good rate of blood flow at the site of administration. Examples of medications administered via intramuscular injection include vaccinations and antibiotics. Absorption rates may differ depending on the rate of blood flow to the muscle group the drug is injected into; in practice, the most common muscle sites are the deltoid, thigh, and buttocks. The absorption rate can also be modulated by the solution that the drug is prepared in for administration.

One disadvantage is that intramuscular injection can result in localized pain (at the site of injection). Furthermore, when a person who is not formally trained administers drugs intramuscularly, the risk of infection from irritating drugs and tissue damage is high.

South_agency/E+/Getty Images

Drug user injecting heroin into arm.

Intravenous

Intravenous means "into the veins," and therefore most absorption problems are avoided. A common street term for the route is "mainlining." The drug is injected in solution directly into the veins. The effects can be immediate. As a result, intravenous administration is valuable in emergency medical situations, and doses can be precisely adjusted according to the person's response. In addition, irritating drugs as well as irritating vehicles can be taken intravenously (as opposed to, say, subcutaneously or intramuscularly) because blood vessel walls are relatively insensitive and the drug is further diluted by blood.

The apparent advantages of intravenous administration raise the question of why this is not

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the preferred route for prescribed medications. A major reason is that the intravenous route is the one most highly associated with complications because large quantities of the drug quickly reach the site of action. This feature contrasts with oral administration, which is considered safe because drugs reach their sites of action relatively slowly. Another point to consider is that if a drug is repeatedly administered intravenously, then a healthy vein must be maintained. In general, intravenous injection is associated with such risk that administration must be done slowly and with careful monitoring of a person's response. Obviously, this care is much more likely in a controlled medical environment than in other settings where drugs are taken.

Those who regularly take drugs like cocaine and heroin typically take them intravenously, as this route provides immediate and powerful effects. However, the risks of taking a drug intravenously, coupled with the assault that such drug taking has on the body, usually take a toll on a person. Drug-induced deaths, intentional or not, are an ever-present danger among those who take their drugs intravenously.

Another critical point to consider when drugs are taken by injection is that, to prevent diseases such as AIDS, hepatitis, and tetanus, drugs must be injected using sterile needles and solutions (see Contemporary Issue Box 4.1). When any of the three injecting routes are used, the body's natural protections against microorganisms, such as skin and mucous membranes, are bypassed. Therefore, dirty needles or nonsterile solutions may carry illness-inducing microorganisms that the body cannot "screen out." That is why, for instance, individuals who share their needles are at increased risk for contracting HIV/AIDS.

"I had not taken a bath in a year nor changed my clothes or removed them except to stick a needle every hour in the fibrous wooden flesh of heroin addiction. I did absolutely nothing."

William S. Burroughs

"Your veins get hard. They died out. You killed them and they're gone, and then you can no longer have any more veins. Then you have to skin pop it (intramuscular injection)."

Research participant in a study of those who take drugs intravenously long term reported by Anderson and Levy (2003)

"There's this thing called freebasing. It's not free, it costs you your home. It should be called 'home basing.'"

Robin Williams

Inhalation

Some drugs may be inhaled and then absorbed through the lung's membranes. For such drugs, inhalation results in a fast and effective absorption. A drug has to be in one of a few states to be inhaled. If drugs can be changed into gaseous states then their vapors may be inhaled. Three examples of such substances, which typically are

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 4.1

Needle Sharing and HIV/AIDS

Intravenous (IV) drug use remains a risk factor for contracting human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), which can lead to the disease acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). The reason the risk for AIDS is high among those who take drugs intravenously is that they often share needles while taking drugs. The risk for becoming HIV positive increases when one or more of the needle sharers are HIV positive and the needle is not sterilized before being passed from person to person.

Individuals may share needles for several reasons. It may be a simple matter of syringe availability. If few needles are around, then sharing becomes more likely. In this regard, one's first priority is to get the drug into their body. However, a more entrenched and difficult-to-modify reason for needle sharing is that it may be part of local drug-taking social norms. In addition, needle sharing is often part of socialization into the drug use subculture and has been viewed as a way that individuals can feel a sense of group belonging and friendship.

Syringe services programs are community-based programs that provide individuals access to sterile needles and syringes, allow for the safe disposal of used syringes, and also provide services such as referral to social, mental health, and medical services. These programs are effective in reducing HIV infection from nonsterile injection and in helping individuals stop using drugs.

Some fear that such programs will encourage or accelerate the use of IV drugs. Therefore they remain controversial in several parts of the United States.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

ingredients of commercial products and are aptly called *inhalants* when used for their psychoactive properties, are benzene, toluene, and naphtha. We have more to say about this important group of substances in Chapter 14. Drugs that can be administered in the form of fine liquid drops also may be inhaled. Lastly, drugs in small particles of matter that are suspended in a gas may be inhaled (Jacobs & Fehr, 1987). For example, tobacco smoke contains tiny drops of nicotine. Similarly, the smoke from **freebase** cocaine (crack) contains droplets of cocaine.

freebase
When a substance is separated, or "freed," from its salt base. The separated form of the substance is thus called "freebase."

As we noted, inhaling a drug results in rapid and effective absorption. However, it is possible to absorb only a small amount of a drug by inhalation in one administration.

Intranasal

In this route, a drug in powdered form is taken through the nose. The drug is then absorbed through the mucous membranes of the nose and the sinus cavities. Other terms for intranasal administration that you may have heard are *snorting* and *sniffing*. Examples of drugs commonly absorbed this way are cocaine, heroin, and powdered tobacco snuff. When a drug is fat soluble, sniffing is a rapid and effective way to absorb it. However, lipid solubility should not be too high, because highly fat-soluble drugs tend to be low in water solubility. Drugs administered nasally should be water-soluble as well as fat-soluble, because of the high water content in the nasal cavity. If the drug has poor water solubility, then drug bioavailability will be low (Pires et al., 2009). Another point is that if a sniffed drug is irritating and disrupts blood flow, then it can cause damage. An example that has been cited often is the damage that cocaine sniffing causes to the nasal septum and lining of the nose.

Sublingual

With this route, a drug tablet is placed under the tongue and dissolves in saliva. The drug is absorbed through the mouth's mucous membranes. Nitroglycerin, which is taken for treatment of angina pectoris (heart pain), is usually taken sublingually. Nicotine may be taken in the form of chewing tobacco or "dipping" snuff by the sublingual route.

Photo Researchers/Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo

Common household and industrial products including paint thinners, gasoline, and glues are inhaled or "huffed" to get high.

The sublingual route results in faster and more efficient drug absorption than oral administration. It also is preferred to oral administration for drugs that irritate the stomach and cause vomiting. Almost any drug with the right chemical properties may be taken in pill form sublingually. However, this route is used less frequently than might be expected because of the unpleasant taste of many of the drugs that may be taken sublingually.

Transdermal

Some drugs may be taken transdermally, or through the skin. One common medical use of the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

transdermal route is to provide an alternative to oral administration when a drug may cause unwanted gastrointestinal effects. The transdermal route actually is not an effective one for many drugs, because the skin acts as a barrier to some chemicals and thus is relatively impermeable. For those drugs that more readily penetrate intact skin, absorption is better because the drug is applied to a wider area.

Drugs that penetrate the skin are absorbed better at sites that have a higher rate of cutaneous blood flow. In addition, a drug dose may be modified by mixing it with other substances, such as an oily preparation, to improve penetration at the site of administration. In Chapter 7, we discuss a patch containing a preparation of nicotine and other substances that is applied to the skin so that nicotine can enter the body. This is one type of pharmacological treatment of nicotine dependence. Nitroglycerine may be administered by patch, which avoids the problem of metabolizing the drug before it reaches its site of action when it is taken orally (see the earlier discussion of the oral route and the discussion of "first-pass effects" later in this chapter). Finally, patches may be used to place a drug at a site of the skin that is advantageous for its increased blood flow, such as the buttocks, abdomen, or upper arm.

bioavailability
The portion of the original drug dose that reaches its site of action or that reaches a fluid in the body that gives it access to its site of action.

Routes of drug administration should be thought of as ways to get drugs into the body, and they can have a considerable influence on the drug experience. No route is inherently better than any other. Rather, determining the preferred route depends on the drug administered, the goals of administration, and the advantages and disadvantages of using a particular route with a particular drug under particular circumstances.

Table 4.1 is a summary of general considerations in using the eight routes of drug administration that we have discussed. Table 4.2 is a summary of the routes typically used with drugs taken for medical and nonmedical reasons.

Drug Absorption

Absorption (of a drug into the bloodstream) also may be defined as the rate and extent to which a drug leaves its site of administration, and it plays a major role in the drug experience. Absorption and the factors that affect it are extremely important because they influence **bioavailability**. Bioavailability is the portion of the original drug dose that reaches its site of action or that reaches a fluid in the body that gives the drug access to its site of action (Benet et al., 1990b). As such, the bioavailability of a drug tells us about its effects.

We have explained in detail how the route of administering a drug affects its absorption. Actually, differences among the routes in absorption rates are related to the factors that influence absorption in general. We cite a few major examples here (Benet et al., 1990b; White, 1991). For all routes besides intravenous, the drug must pass through at least one body membrane before it can reach the circulatory system. Because membranes consist largely of lipids (fats), drugs that are more soluble in lipids are much more readily absorbed. Alcohol is an example of a drug that dissolves in

J&A Photography/Shutterstock.com

Probably the best-known way of ingesting a drug by inhalation is taking nicotine by smoking cigarettes.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 4.1 General Considerations for the Eight Major Routes of Drug Administration

Route	Considerations
Oral	• Among the safest, most convenient, and most economical routes of administration • Food in the stomach retards absorption or may diminish the amount of drug absorbed • Stomach acids may break down some drugs, resulting in reduced drug effect
Subcutaneous	• Easiest of the three injection routes to use • Associated with absorption rates faster than oral administration but slower than intramuscular and intravenous routes • Preferred for medical use of drugs that are not irritating to body tissue because of its relatively slow but constant absorption rate with sustained drug effects • Should not be used when a drug irritates body tissue or when large volumes of solution must be used for taking the drug
Intramuscular	• Requires deeper penetration of injection than subcutaneous but results in a faster absorption rate with proper preparation of solution and an injection site with good blood flow • May be painful at the injection site • Use by untrained people is associated with a high risk of infection from irritating drugs and tissue damage
Intravenous	• Considered one of the fastest absorption rates • Valuable for emergency medical needs because the resulting drug effects can be immediate • Doses can be adjusted precisely according to the person's response because of immediacy of drug effects • Better than subcutaneous or intramuscular routes for irritating drugs because blood vessel walls are relatively insensitive and the blood further dilutes the drug • Danger in the potential for a large quantity of a drug to reach its site of action • Repeated use requires maintenance of a healthy vein • Drug dose must be administered gradually and the person's response monitored carefully to prevent serious complications
Inhalation	• When feasible, absorption is effective and the most rapid for some drugs • Only a small amount of drug can be absorbed in any one administration
Intranasal	• For a fat- and water-soluble drug, absorption is rapid and effective • Can cause damage when the drug is irritating or disrupts blood flow
Sublingual	• May be used for many drugs in pill form • Results in faster and more efficient absorption than oral administration • Preferable to oral administration for drugs that irritate the stomach and cause vomiting • Not used as often as it might be because of the unpleasant taste of many drugs
Transdermal	• An alternative to the oral route when a drug may cause unwanted gastrointestinal effects • Not used for many drugs because the skin is a relatively impenetrable barrier to many chemicals • Resulting absorption is enhanced at sites that have greater cutaneous blood flow, and mixing a drug with another substance may improve penetration of the skin

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 4.2 Drugs Used for Medical and Nonmedical Reasons and Their Routes of Administration

Drug	Route
Alcohol	Oral
Amphetamines	Oral; intravenous (preferred by those who use drugs chronically); sniffed by those who use the drug occasionally or are new to it
Barbiturates	Oral; rectal (through the mucous membrane of the rectum); subcutaneous; intramuscular; intravenous
Benzodiazepines	Most commonly oral; some intravenous or intramuscular
Caffeine	Most commonly oral; medically, occasionally by injection for mild stimulant properties; intravenous injection by those who use drugs chronically
Cannabis	Almost all routes; most commonly smoking (inhalation); injection not efficient because THC is not water-soluble
Cocaine	Cocaine hydrochloride is taken through nasal or other mucous membranes, such as those of the mouth, vagina, and rectum; also intravenous. Cocaine freebase (crack) is volatile and therefore most often vaporized in a freebase pipe and inhaled into the lungs
Heroin	Most commonly is dissolved in water and injected subcutaneously, intramuscularly, or intravenously; may be inhaled by smoking, or sniffed
LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide-25)	Oral; inhalation; the three injection routes; transdermal
MDMA (methylenedioxymethamphetamine)	Most commonly oral
Nicotine	Inhaled by smoking (cigarettes); nicotine in cigar or pipe smoke mainly absorbed across membranes of the mouth and upper respiratory tract; may be absorbed through membranes of the mouth (chewing tobacco) and nose (snuff) and transdermally
PCP (phencyclidine)	Oral; sniffed; inhalation by smoking (sprinkled on marijuana, parsley, tobacco, or other substance that can be smoked); intravenous injection

lipids. Another factor is the form in which the drug is administered: Drugs taken in water solution are absorbed more rapidly than are drugs taken in suspension, in oily solution, or in solid form because they are dissolved more readily at the site of absorption. When a drug is taken in solid form, as aspirin is, for example, its solubility depends on conditions at the site of absorption. For instance, aspirin is fairly insoluble in the acidic environment of the stomach, and this places a limit on its absorbability. This point relates to the importance of the environment in the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"Giving up smoking is the easiest thing in the world. I know because I've done it thousands of times."
Mark Twain

gastrointestinal system and its influence on the absorption of drugs that are taken orally, as we have discussed. Circulation at the site of absorption also influences it, as more blood flow speeds absorption. Finally, the size of the absorbing surface makes a difference. Drugs are absorbed more rapidly from larger surface areas.

Because each of these and other factors may singly or in combination affect absorption, you can see why it is so difficult to specify a drug effect for a person under specific conditions at a given time. This discussion also reaffirms why intravenous injection is the most efficient way to get a drug to its sites of action. Intravenous injection bypasses many factors that may retard absorption because it puts the drug in direct contact with the blood—the vehicle of drug distribution.

Drug Distribution

The biochemical properties of both the body and the drug have a lot to do with a drug's distribution to its sites of action. Because the blood transports a drug, it follows that regions of the body that receive the most blood get the most drug. Indeed the heart, brain, kidney, liver, and other systems that receive a lot of blood get major portions of the drug shortly after absorption. Other parts of the body that receive less blood flow, such as muscle, viscera, and fat, may take considerably longer to receive the drug. Besides blood flow, the **diffusibility** of membranes and tissues affects distribution: The more diffusible tissues receive the drug more rapidly.

diffusibility
A more diffusible substance is more easily entered into or "receptive" of another.

solubility
The ease with which a compound can be dissolved or entered into a solution.

Drug properties may influence distribution considerably. One such property is fat **solubility**. Drugs that are more soluble in lipids penetrate body membranes and therefore reach sites of action more easily than do less lipid-soluble drugs. The fat solubility of a drug also plays a role in how much of it can reach the brain. This is important to us because we concentrate on drugs that affect the central nervous system (CNS) in this text. Although the blood flow to the brain makes it a natural repository for drugs (and other chemicals) that enter the body, substances must cross the blood-brain barrier before they can reach the brain. As we noted in Chapter 3, the blood-brain barrier filters out toxins from the blood before they reach the brain. Pores of the capillary walls in the brain are small and close together, so they restrict the passage of substances through them. In addition, a thick wall of glial cells encloses the capillaries to form another line of defense. A drug that is highly fat-soluble, like the benzodiazepine diazepam (Valium), can easily pass through the capillary and glial cell membranes, but passage of less fat-soluble drugs is impeded (Johanson, 1992).

Another feature of a drug's chemistry that affects its distribution is whether it selectively binds to elements of the body. Some drugs, such as the barbiturates, may bind chemically to certain proteins in the plasma. The more "tightly" bound a drug is, the slower its distribution to sites of action (Benet et al., 1990b; Leavitt, 1982; White, 1991). Similarly, some drugs have an affinity for fatty tissue in the body. In this case, the drug may be released, but it can take a relatively long time. With such longer-term unbinding, the drug may remain in the blood for some time, yet the drug's release from fat tissues is slow enough that the psychoactive effects are negligible (White, 1991). A notorious example of a drug that has an affinity for fat is marijuana. Its distribution is uneven throughout the body because of selective binding, and the effects achieved by taking the drug are attenuated. Part of the dose does not immediately reach its sites of action.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In summary, the processes of drug absorption and distribution illustrate that a drug is a chemical that, when introduced into the body, disrupts its steady biochemical state. Absorption and distribution are the complex fundamentals of bioavailability, or how much drug reaches its sites of action. Bioavailability tells us most about drug effects. To understand the effects of a drug over time, it is essential to track its excretion or elimination from the body.

Metabolism and Drug Elimination

Drugs may be excreted from the body directly or first metabolized into pharmacologically inert, water-soluble by-products that are less likely to be reabsorbed. The metabolic by-products are then excreted. Enzymes in the liver play the major part in drug metabolism. These enzymes also are present in other organs such as the kidneys and gastrointestinal (GI) tract. As a result, a drug administered orally is subject to a "first-pass effect," which means that enzymes in the GI tract break down a drug to some degree. Therefore, less drug than was administered is eventually distributed to its sites of action. In Chapter 9, we discuss differences between men and women in first-pass effects with alcohol.

One question that may have occurred to you is whether the drug metabolic by-products themselves have pharmacologic action. If they do, then it is difficult to see how a drug state could ever become deactivated. In fact, some drug metabolites are pharmacologically active and are responsible for unwanted **side effects** of different medications, for example. The metabolites of other drugs have desired psychoactive effects. Two examples are the metabolites of diazepam (Valium) and of chlordiazepoxide (Librium). In fact, one of Valium's metabolites is eliminated from the body more slowly than is Valium (Jacobs & Fehr, 1987). When metabolites are active, the action ends with further metabolism of the by-products or by their direct excretion in the urine (Benet et al., 1990b).

side effects
Effects of a drug other than those of central interest; used most often in reference to the other-than-therapeutic effects of medications, such as the side effect of drowsiness for antihistamines. Note that what are considered a drug's side effects depend on what specifically the drug is being used for.

> *"There are three side effects of acid: enhanced long-term memory, decreased short-term memory, and I forget the third."*
>
> Timothy Leary

The kidney is by far the most important organ for excretion of both drugs and their metabolites, but excretion may occur in other ways as well. For example, drugs that are taken orally may be excreted directly in the feces. Drug metabolites may be excreted in liver bile. Drugs are excreted in mother's milk, which is not critical so much because of the proportion of drug that leaves the body this way but because of the dangers posed to the nursing infant. Drugs also may be excreted through the lungs, which is why you can smell alcohol on a person's breath after they drink it. Finally, drugs may be excreted in perspiration.

Pharmacologists have discovered that the rate of elimination of drugs from the body obeys two general laws: zero-order kinetics and first-order kinetics (Clark et al., 1988). Zero-order kinetics means that the rate at which a drug is metabolized is independent of its concentration in the blood; a well-known example is alcohol (Julien, 1996). First-order kinetics means that the amount of drug that is metabolized in a unit of time depends on how much drug is in the blood. Most drugs obey the law of first-order kinetics. Knowledge of these laws is a great help to people who do research on drugs and to physicians when they prescribe medications.

A term relevant to drug elimination that you may come across is **half-life**, which is the time that must pass for the amount of drug in the body to be cut by half. *Drug half-life actually* is a term that has been given more importance than is warranted. It has been discovered to be a result of other statistics that reflect the body's ability to clear a drug. These other statistics are directly linked to the kinetics law that the drug is obeying. In any case, you will see the term *half-life* again in this text and likely in other sources, so it is useful to know it.

half-life
The amount of time that must pass for the amount of drug in the body to be reduced by half.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Drug Testing

Discussing drug-elimination processes raises the topic of procedures used in drug testing. *Drug testing* is a term applied to various methods of determining drug use, most commonly by analyzing "biomarkers" such as urine or blood samples. In recent years, drug testing by analysis of sweat, saliva, and hair samples has also been applied with increasing frequency as the technology for such application improves (Dolan et al., 2004; DuPont & Selavka, 2015). Analysis of urine samples (urinalysis) remains the most commonly used method, in part because its technology is the best developed among the main methods, and its cost is relatively low (Jaffee et al., 2008). In addition, urinalysis is a sensitive method if samples are not adulterated, because a drug's metabolites may be detected in urine. If a drug is detected in the blood directly, it is an indication of recent use (Miller, 1991). Much of the discussion and research on drug testing concerns detection of use more remote than the immediate past, which is where the use of urine and other biomarker samples is relevant. This discussion focuses on analysis of urine samples, because as noted earlier the relevant methods are most commonly used and developed compared to other possibilities, such as hair analysis. It is notable, however, that hair analysis by far is the method of choice if the goal is to detect drug use from more than the past several days. It is capable of detection of use for up to 90 days compared with the typical 1–3 days for detection by urine or saliva (DuPont & Selavka, 2015).

> *"Why is there so much controversy about drug testing? I know plenty of guys who would be willing to test any drug they could come up with."*
>
> George Carlin

The validity of drug testing depends on factors such as the dose last taken of the drug, the testing method used, and the laboratory quality control procedures used in testing. The detectability of drug use is determined by the drug's clearance rates from the body and the clearance rates of the drug's metabolites. Table 4.3 is a list of common drugs of abuse, their range of elimination times, and their range of detectability in days by testing of urine samples. The range of elimination times pertains to elimination of the drug itself (shorter time) and to elimination of the drug's metabolites (longer time) from the body. Alcohol has no range because its metabolites are used too efficiently in the body to be measured reliably (Miller, 1991).

The right-hand column of Table 4.3 gives the ranges of detection times under the best testing conditions. Detection times are substantially longer if the drug's metabolites can be measured by the testing method. Note that the detection time ranges are generally much shorter than the elimination time ranges of drugs and their metabolites. This is because the testing method is not sensitive enough to pick up the metabolite(s) at some point. Where that point is depends on the metabolite and the testing method. Therefore, a positive drug test does not necessarily provide precise information about when the drug actually was used. The exception, as we noted, is that if the drug is detected in blood, we then know that use was recent. A final point about Table 4.3 is that an acute dose of marijuana can be detected for up to 8 days after use. In those who use drugs chronically, the drug can be detected for longer than a month after the last dose was taken.

Drug testing is highly accurate if a two-step drug-testing process is used (screening of the urine sample followed by a confirmatory test if the sample shows positive for some drug) and high-quality specimen collection procedures and laboratory protocols are followed (Bina, 1998). Nevertheless, many methods have been tried to undermine the validity of drug tests. Most often these methods are designed to result in a false-negative finding—that is, for the test to show a negative result for a given illicit drug when in fact the individual has used the drug. The main goal is to trick the screening test into giving the false-negative finding, which virtually always stops the drug-testing process. Typically only positive results are confirmed because of cost

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 4.3 Commonly Used and Misused Drugs and Their Ranges of Elimination and Detection Times

Drug	Range of Elimination Times	Range of Detection Times (Days) in Urine
Alcohol	Hours	Up to 1
Cocaine	Hours to days	0.2–4.0
Marijuana	Weeks to months	2–8 (acute), 14–42 (chronic)
Benzodiazepines	Weeks to months	7–9
Opiates	Days to weeks	1–2
Barbiturates	Weeks to months	3–14

Note: Shorter time in the elimination range refers to the drug itself and longer time to the drug's metabolites.

Source: Adapted with permission from N. S. Miller, *The Pharmacology of Alcohol and Drugs of Abuse/Addiction*. Copyright © 1991 Springer-Verlag.

considerations. To give you an idea, the screening procedure costs only pennies to complete, but the most current and accurate confirmatory test costs about $200. The confirmatory test (of positive screens) is essential to the drug-testing process because the screening methods that are used are wrong 25%–35% of the time.

Three major methods have been used to get a false-negative finding on a drug screen: substitution, adulteration, and dilution. Substitution is the simplest method and is the exchange of a "dirty" urine sample (one that shows evidence of use of a banned substance) for a clean one. Urine samples may also be adulterated with compounds that interfere with the mechanism that the screening test uses to detect the presence of a given drug or its metabolites. Dilution refers to drinking large quantities of liquids before the drug screen so that the urine is diluted and the drug metabolite concentration falls below the level that the test can detect. Each of these methods of deception, if done correctly and without detection, can fool the drug screen. However, after years of experience in managing deception, drug-testing laboratories have developed procedures for determining that a urine sample has been somehow altered or substituted. Some products, especially aids to sample dilution, purport to be effective but are not.

"Most players don't mind drug testing once they realize they don't have to study for it."

Mack Brown

A false-positive screen might also be a concern to an individual. Some legal drugs or compounds show positive for an illicit substance on both the screen and the confirmatory tests. In fact, some people who use illegal drugs try to get a prescription for a fitting legal substance before a drug test so that a positive finding may be attributed to the prescribed substance. Other legal substances yield a positive screen, but the confirmatory tests negate such a result (Connecticut Clearing House, 2001). For example, poppy seeds eaten in sufficient quantities (about the amount on a hundred bagels) give a positive screen for opiates (see Chapter 10), and over-the-counter decongestants give a positive screen for amphetamines (see Chapter 14).

Drug testing is a major social concern in the United States and other countries because of the consequences to individuals in the workplace and other environments of confirmed illicit drug use. If current laboratory technology and protocol are followed, then drug testing may be seen as performing its task well. And it is important to note that research is ongoing to improve the technology of drug testing by using

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Bettmann/Getty Images

Drug testing is becoming a more frequent requirement for obtaining and keeping employment.

> *"I'm in favor of it as long as it's multiple choice."*
>
> Kurt Rambis, on drug testing

biological samples. For example, as we noted earlier, there is a developing technology in the use of hair samples, which offers the potential major advantage of enabling detection of drug use from longer periods before the sample is taken than is possible with any of the other drug-testing methods. In general, it is important to remember that the different methods of drug testing have different advantages and disadvantages, and the one chosen depends on the purpose of administering the test and the context in which it is administered (Dolan et al., 2004).

REVIEW

1. Create a table listing the routes of drug administration; then identify a drug that can be administered for each route.
2. Compare and contrast the various routes of drug administration in regard to absorption rate and the effects of the drug.
3. Explain why it is important to understand zero-order kinetics and first-order kinetics.

4.2 Conclusion

Our discussion of drug elimination concludes our review of the first four steps of the drug experience and of pharmacokinetics. Figure 4.1 is a summary of what we have covered in this chapter so far. A given quantity of a drug (dose) may be administered by one of several methods (routes of administration). The drug then leaves its site of administration (absorption) to be distributed to the sites of drug action. The route of administration and biochemical factors influence the speed and amount of drug absorption. Biochemical factors also affect the amount of drug that is distributed. The latter refers to bioavailability, which determines what portion of the original

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

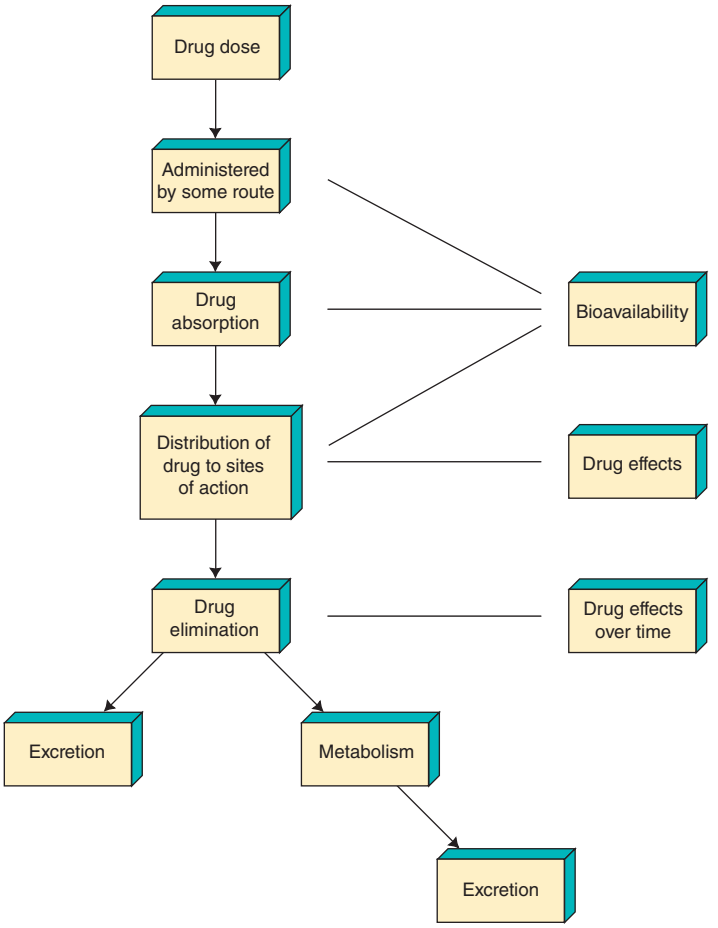


FIGURE 4.1
A summary of the first four steps of the drug experience and pharmacokinetics

dose reaches sites of drug action. Bioavailability is the pharmacological basis of the drug experience. Once they reach their sites of action, drugs are eliminated from the body either by direct excretion or by metabolism into by-products that are excreted. The course of elimination of a drug is one influence of a drug effect over time.

It is important to point out that a drug's exit from the body may not be the end of the drug experience. In later chapters on specific drugs, you will see that elimination of a drug from the body often is associated with physical and psychological changes that are the opposite of those that were caused by the drug. For example, the feelings of euphoria and tranquility that heroin causes switch to irritability and intense, extremely unpleasant physiological changes when the drug leaves one's body. The euphoria and high energy that cocaine and amphetamines typically induce turn to lethargy and depression as the drugs end their course of action. Such opposite (sometimes called "rebound") effects are important to us because of their influence on drug use patterns. The rebound effect of depression that follows cocaine use is sometimes so unpleasant, for example, that individuals feel a strong need to take more cocaine to stop the bad feelings. Avoiding the effects of heroin abstinence is a powerful force in an individual's continued use of the drug. When coming down from a dose of alcohol, people often feel sleepy and somewhat depressive, so they may start drinking again to try to recapture the more euphoric mood associated with just starting to drink.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4.3 Pharmacodynamics

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

4-5 Describe the significance of the dose-effect curve in pharmacology, and the information that slope, efficacy, and potency provide toward understand the action of a drug

4-6 Distinguish between effective and lethal doses

4-7 Explain the importance of understanding drug interactions

Our overview of pharmacokinetics prepares you for the description and explanation of drug effects—the subject of pharmacodynamics. In the remainder of this chapter, we present terms that pharmacologists use to describe drug effects and graphic representations of such effects. This standard language of drug effects is essential to your understanding of not only information in this text but also much other information that is available on drugs and behavior.

The Dose-Effect Curve

Knowing the size or magnitude of an effect for a range of drug doses is important. Pharmacologists use a dose-effect curve (formerly referred to as a dose-response curve) as a standard means of representing the relationship between dose of a drug and its effects. For example, several groups of people may drink different doses of alcohol and be asked to report their degree of relaxation at a given point. If the average reports of relaxation for each group were then plotted, we would have a dose-effect curve.

"Tout est poison, rien n'est poison, tout est une question de dose." ("Everything is poisonous, nothing is poisonous, it is all a matter of dose.")

Claude Bernard, experimental pathologist

Figure 4.2 is a prototype dose-effect curve. The vertical axis of the graph, labeled "Effect size," represents the change we are interested in recording. The changes that we emphasize in this text are reported in some generally accepted measurement of mood, behavior, or nervous system function. Examples might include memory task performance, ratings of mood, or some measure of physiological arousal such as heart rate. On the vertical axis, the effect is generally depicted as going from smaller to larger. The graph's horizontal axis represents the range of doses under investigation, from smaller to larger doses. (Often the logarithm of the drug dose is represented on the horizontal axis.) Typically, a minimum of three doses is studied. Creating the curve is then simply a matter of plotting the effect, however measured, for the individuals who have received a given dose of the drug under evaluation. Usually, different groups of research participants each receive a given dose, or the same participants receive all the doses studied in an experiment lasting a number of days. In either case, the average effect of each dose is plotted. When the effect is plotted for each dose investigated, the resultant graph represents effect **as a function of** drug dose.

as a function of
A term expressing correlation. In graphs of functional relationships between two variables, changes in one variable (for example, drug effect) associated with changes in another (drug dose) are represented.

"My motto is: Live every day to the fullest—in moderation."

Lindsay Lohan

Figure 4.2 shows that the effects of this hypothetical drug are not constant across different doses. Rather, the S shape (sigmoid) of the curve reflects that an accurate description of this drug's effects requires the specification of a dose. The hypothetical drug in Figure 4.2 produces a larger effect as the dose increases. However, a limit exists; the graph plateaus for the highest doses. This means that increasing the dose beyond a given level does not increase the drug's effects. For example, we will consider the effect of alcohol on reaction time, which can be formally measured by timing an individual's "yes–no" response to the presence or absence of a stimulus. For the "average" person (see Chapter 9), having two 12-ounce beers in an hour

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

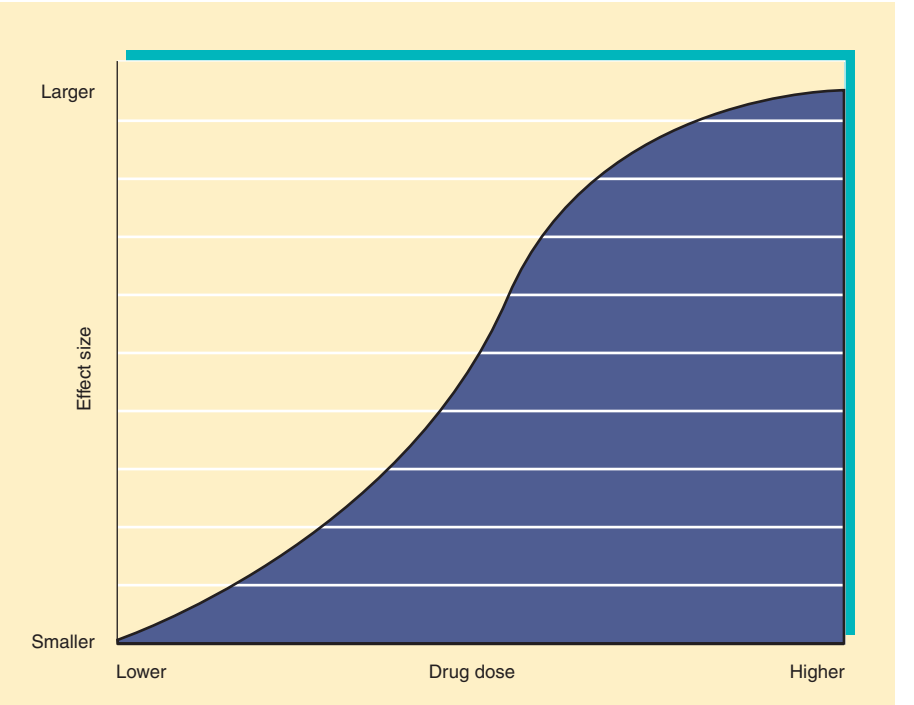


FIGURE 4.2
Dose-effect curve for a single drug

has little effect on simple reaction time. After about four beers, however, reaction time is significantly increased (the person's response is slower). After five beers, reaction time is slowed even further. If an individual consumed additional alcohol after this point, they would likely have difficulty remaining awake; therefore continuing to measure reaction time would yield little new information. The example of alcohol and simple reaction time shows that the question is not what effects drug X has but rather what the effect of drug X is at a specified dose.

Variations of the Dose-Effect Curve

Not all drug effects look like Figure 4.2 when plotted over a range of doses. Some drugs may have a biphasic drug effect, illustrated in Figure 4.3. This means that the effect of a drug may go in one direction—say, increase as the dose goes up—but then the effect changes direction (decreases) as the dose continues to go up.

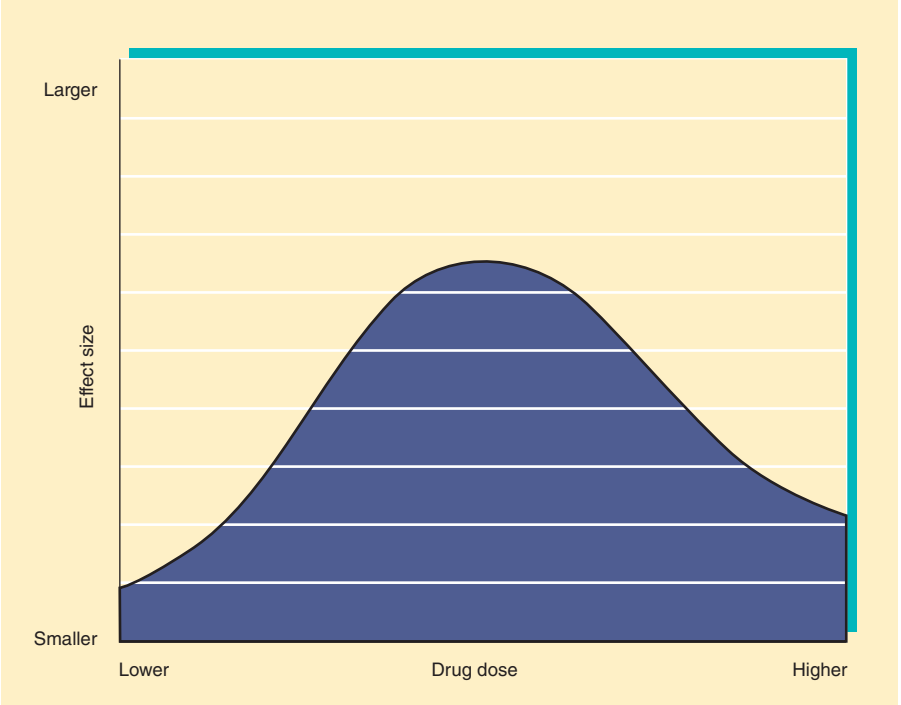
As illustrated, the drug effect gets larger as the drug dose increases to the moderate range. As the dose continues to increase, however, the curve changes direction to represent the decrease in drug effect with higher drug doses. In this example, the size of the effect essentially returns almost to the level at the lowest drug doses. Heart rate is an effect that has been reported to be biphasic for both alcohol and marijuana (Blum, 1984).

> *"All substances are poisonous, there is none that is not a poison; the right dose differentiates a poison from a remedy."*
>
> Philippus Aureolus Paracelsus

Any drug may cause many different effects that can be measured, and for each of these effects, a dose-effect curve can be plotted. Many of the curves look alike and they usually are similar to the curve in Figure 4.2. Some dose-effect curves for a given drug could look quite different, however, depending on what effects are being measured. This brings out a major point: The dose-effect curve for a drug depends on the effect being measured—it is not a characteristic of the drug itself. Figure 4.4 shows how college women in laboratory studies perceive their sexual arousal (one effect) and a physiological measure (such as vaginal blood flow) of their sexual arousal (a second effect) at lower to moderate doses of alcohol. Figure 4.4 looks different from the other dose-effect curves we have shown because we have changed

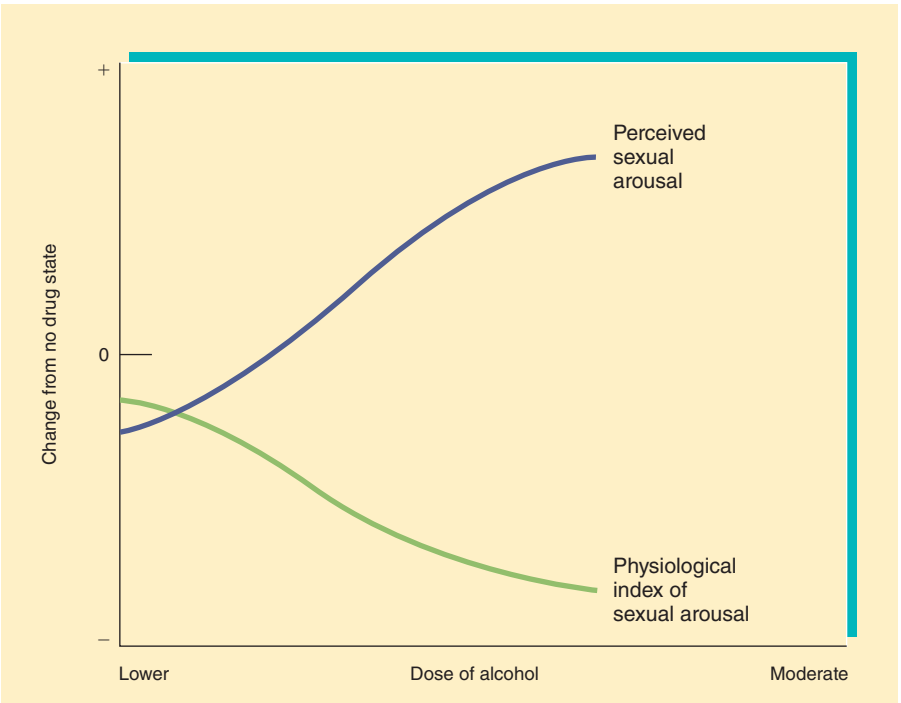
Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

FIGURE 4.3
Dose-effect curve for a biphasic drug effect



how effect is represented (vertical axis) to accommodate a negative drug effect. As the figure shows, the college women perceived that their sexual arousal increased with increasing doses of alcohol, at least up to moderate doses (very high doses have not been studied). However, physiological measures of the women's sexual arousal showed decreases as the dose increased (Abel, 1985).

FIGURE 4.4
Dose-effect curves for perceived sexual arousal and a physiological measure of sexual arousal in college women after drinking low to moderate doses of alcohol



Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Slope, Efficacy, and Potency

Pharmacologists use a few terms to more specifically describe a drug's action. These terms are illustrated in Figure 4.5, which shows the dose-effect curves for two hypothetical drugs, A and B. The first feature of the curves is the *slope*, or steepness. The slope of the curve reflects how much the drug dose changes before the effect gets larger. Slope can have very practical implications in prescribing drugs therapeutically or in considering potentially life-endangering effects of drugs taken nonmedically. Examples of the latter are the sedating effect of barbiturates and the effects of taking a benzodiazepine drug and alcohol together. In Figure 4.5, curve A has a steeper slope than curve B, so as the curves rise to a plateau, a given dose of A yields a larger effect.

Two other terms illustrated in Figure 4.5 are a drug's **efficacy** and **drug potency**. Efficacy is defined as the peak of the dose-effect curve for a given effect. In Figure 4.5, that peak is where each curve reaches a plateau. Curves A and B are drawn to show two drugs with the same efficacy. Drug A requires a lower dose to achieve the same efficacy as drug B. The last concept we have included in Figure 4.5 is drug potency: the minimum dose of a drug that yields its efficacy. On the dose-effect curve, a line extending from the point of efficacy down to the horizontal axis gives the dose called the drug's potency (Ross & Gilman, 1985).

Slope
The steepness or rise of a curve.

efficacy
The most intense, or peak, level of a drug effect.

drug potency
The minimum effective dose of a drug.

Effective and Lethal Doses

The last two terms we define to describe a drug's effect are its *effective* and *lethal doses*. Both terms arise from observing the considerable variability in individuals' reactions to a given dose of a drug. Testing only one person does not accurately show

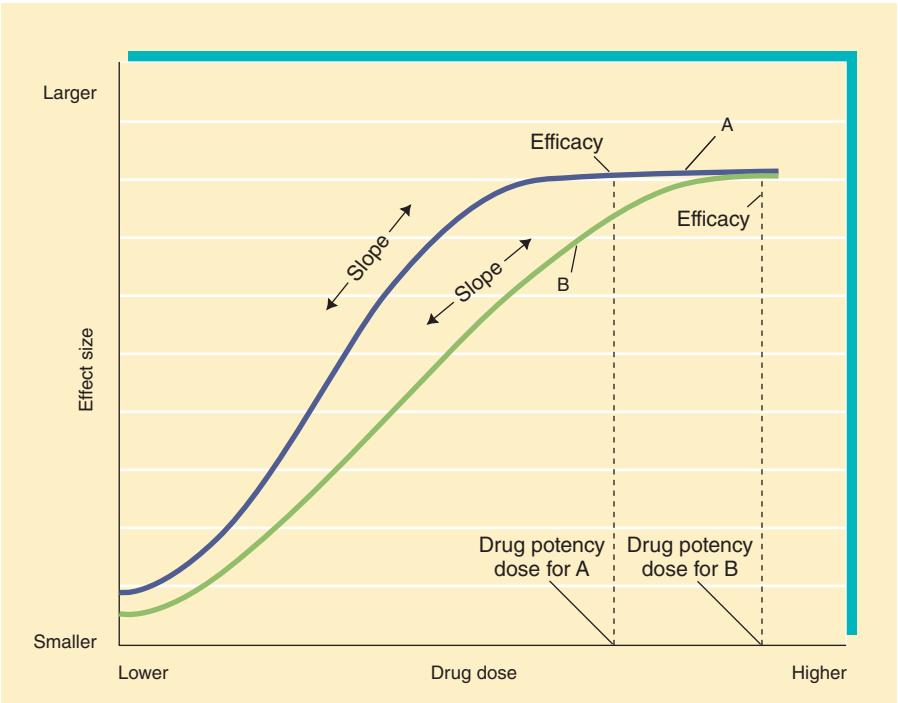


FIGURE 4.5
The dose-effect curves for two hypothetical drugs, A and B. The terms *slope*, *efficacy*, and *potency* are illustrated on the curves

Source: Adapted from E. M. Ross & A. G. Gilman, *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 7th ed. © 1985 McGraw-Hill.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

a drug's effect at a given dose. Rather, an effect is viewed in relative terms, or in the proportions of groups of people who show an effect at a specified dose.

Figure 4.6 shows the dose-effect curves for two effects of a hypothetical drug. Notice that in this figure, the vertical axis represents the percentage of individuals who show an effect rather than the effect size. This slight change enables us to plot effective and lethal doses. With these terms, an effect is specified and then the drug dose associated with different percentages of people experiencing the effect is found.

effective dose
The dose at which a given percentage of individuals show a particular effect of a drug.

The **effective dose** (ED) is the dose at which a given percentage of individuals show a particular effect of a drug. The ED is found on a dose-effect curve by extending a horizontal line from the vertical axis at a given percentage to the relevant effect curve and dropping a vertical line to the drug dose axis from there. That point represents the ED for a given percentage. ED 50 is a standard term that pharmacologists use, and Figure 4.6 shows ED 50 for sedation for the hypothetical drug. This means 50% of the people who receive that amount of the drug will experience sedation. Of course, the ED for any percentage can be found in the same way. Two other EDs are also shown in Figure 4.6.

lethal dose
The dose of a drug at which a given percentage of individuals die within a specified time.

The **lethal dose** (LD) of a drug is a special case of the effective dose. As the name implies, in lethal dose, the effect of interest is death, and the LD is the dose at which a given percentage of nonhumans (human subjects are not used in experiments to determine the lethal doses of drugs) die within a specified time. A standard referent in pharmacology is a drug's LD 50, which is the dose at which 50% of the animals administered a given dose of a drug died within a stated time. Determining the LD 50 of a drug in humans is a matter of extrapolating the findings with animal subjects to humans. The LD 50 of our hypothetical drug is illustrated on the curve on the right in Figure 4.6.

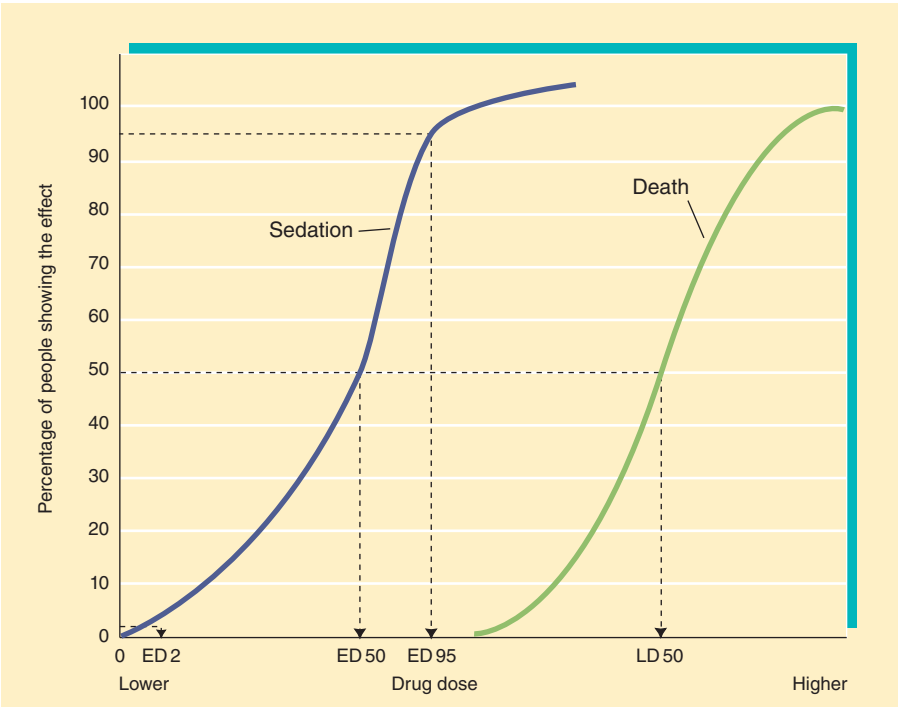


FIGURE 4.6
The dose-effect curves for two effects of a hypothetical drug, sedation and death—the curves are used to compute three effective doses for sedation and the drug's LD 50

Source: Adapted from E. M. Ross & A. G. Gilman, *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 7th ed., 1985.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

A drug's EDs and LDs are of more than casual interest. Of particular importance for a city's health officials, for example, is the difference between a drug's ED and LD. When the difference is small, much more danger of accidental death exists for a person who is using drugs. For some drugs, such as caffeine, the ED–LD difference is large. Accidental deaths due to heart damage from a dose of cocaine have been described in the popular media, especially during the late 1980s. Currently (December 2016) the small margin between the ED and LD of the synthetic opiate drug fentanyl is a major public health concern. Alcohol is another example. A 160-pound man with average tolerance to alcohol typically would report feeling relaxed after drinking about 3 ounces of whiskey in an hour on an empty stomach. However, that person would reach LD 50 for alcohol if he drank about a fifth (25.3 ounces) of that whiskey in an hour. Such drinking occurs more often than you might think and has been responsible for serious injuries and deaths in fraternity hazings (initiation rites). Furthermore, when some drugs are combined, such as alcohol and the barbiturates, the resulting ED and LD are pushed even closer and the danger is greater. We discuss the effects of combining drugs in the next section of this chapter.

> *"Ros was dead. He had loved heroin more than it loved him. I was shocked beyond imagining; he was the first of my friends to fall."*
>
> Craig Ferguson, *American on Purpose: The Improbable Adventures of an Unlikely Patriot*

The ED–LD difference is also important when a physician or nurse practitioner administers a drug for medical reasons. In medicine, the goal is to find a drug that can be given in a dose that is therapeutic (i.e., effective) for all patients, has no side effects, and is not lethal. Accordingly, the **therapeutic index** has been derived: the ratio LD 50/ED 50 for a given drug. Here, the ED of interest is the alleviation of the symptoms of some disease or injury. The higher a drug's therapeutic index, the more useful the drug is in medical treatment. Another point is that steeper dose-effect curves tend to have smaller therapeutic indices. The therapeutic index gives health care providers a quick idea of the benefits of prescribing a drug as part of a specific treatment.

therapeutic index
A measure of a drug's safety in medical care; it is computed as a ratio: LD 50/ED 50.

Drug Interactions

So far we have simplified our discussion by considering only one drug at a time. The study of pharmacodynamics often involves the actions of two or more drugs, however. A person could take multiple drugs at the same time, or take one drug before another has totally cleared from the body. The extremes are seen in polydrug misuse, which we discussed in Chapter 1.

Using more than one drug at a time increases the complexity of the drug experience because two or more drugs entering the body may **interact**. Two drugs have an interaction if the effect of one modifies or alters the effect of the other. Drug interactions may be analyzed qualitatively or quantitatively; the degree of effect, or quantitative study, is by far better understood in pharmacology. The quantitative study of drug interactions considers both enhancing and diminishing effects of combining drugs.

interact
When the effects of one drug are modified by the presence of another drug.

Enhancing Combinations

Drug ***synergism*** is a confusing term because its use in the field is not consistent. Here we will use it to denote any enhancing drug interaction. Another word that currently is used interchangeably with synergism is *potentiation*. When two drugs are synergistic, the effects of taking them together are greater than the effects of taking either drug alone. In practice, pharmacologists find it difficult to tell for sure whether synergistic effects are a simple result of adding the separate effects of the two drugs together or if somehow one of the drugs is "multiplying" the effects of the other.

synergism
Any enhancing drug interaction.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 4.2

Pharmacokinetics, Pharmacodynamics, and Cultural Factors

Up to this point in our discussion of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, we have emphasized the body's neurochemical changes in response to its ingestion of chemical compounds we call drugs. This emphasis is consistent with the content and long history of the research that has been conducted on pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics. However, a more recently recognized area of research is concerned with possible ethnic and cultural differences in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics (Kalow, 2012; Lin & Poland, 1995; Zhou & Liu, 2000).

As reviewed in Zhou and Liu (2000), studies have shown ethnic differences in drug metabolism for a number of drugs. Recent studies suggest genetic variation in encoding drug metabolizing enzymes are expressed at different rates among ethnic groups.

An example of ethnic differences in pharmacodynamics is response to propranolol, a beta-blocker drug used to control high blood pressure, or hypertension. Studies have shown that African Americans are least responsive (in regard to blood pressure, heart rate) to propranolol, Asians are most responsive, and Caucasians are midway between the two other groups.

The mechanisms underlying ethnic/cultural differences in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics are not always clear and warrant considerably more study. Such group differences do remind us, however, that nonpharmacological factors may influence the drug experience.

"E and crystal, Mmm. When I decided I wanted to do E and it was somewhat early in the night, and I was gonna be at a rave that's gonna last for a long time. And I knew that I wanted to roll, but I wanted to be not rolling the whole time; but I wanted to be alert. So I used a combination of the two."

Research participant in a study of combining substances reported by Hunt et al. (2009, p. 118)

In quantitative studies of combining drugs, interactions are represented by changes in the dose-effect curve. Figure 4.7 represents a synergistic relationship between drug A and drug B. You can see that the solid line is like the typical dose-effect curve for a drug that we illustrated in Figure 4.2. The effect of synergy between the two drugs, then, is to "shift" the dose-effect curve to the left, represented by the broken line in Figure 4.7. The broken line curve shows that larger effects of drug A are evident at lower doses of it when drug B is present.

Diminishing Combinations

Drug ***antagonism*** is a term that refers to the diminished or reduced effect of a drug when another drug is present. As you might guess, drug antagonism is represented by a shift to the right of a drug's dose-effect curve. For example, the amphetamines, which are CNS stimulant drugs, antagonize alcohol's CNS depressant effects. However, the amphetamines do not reduce alcohol's impairment of motor skills, like driving (Blum, 1984).

antagonism
The diminished or reduced effect of a drug when another drug is present.

The Importance of Interactions Between Drugs

An awareness of interactions between drugs is important for several reasons. In medical practice, knowledge of drug interactions is vital because drugs are often used in combinations for more effective treatment of an illness. Therefore, drug interactions may be used to improve medical care. On the other hand, interactions could be a problem, for example, for physicians. Difficulties may occur if a physician is not aware of all the drugs a patient may be using at a given time. For example, the effects of one drug could cancel the therapeutic effects of another. Furthermore, prescribed medication could have detrimental or even lethal effects in the presence of other drugs. Fortunately, pharmacies now commonly have computerized profiles of the medications that a patient has been prescribed. Such information allows pharmacists

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

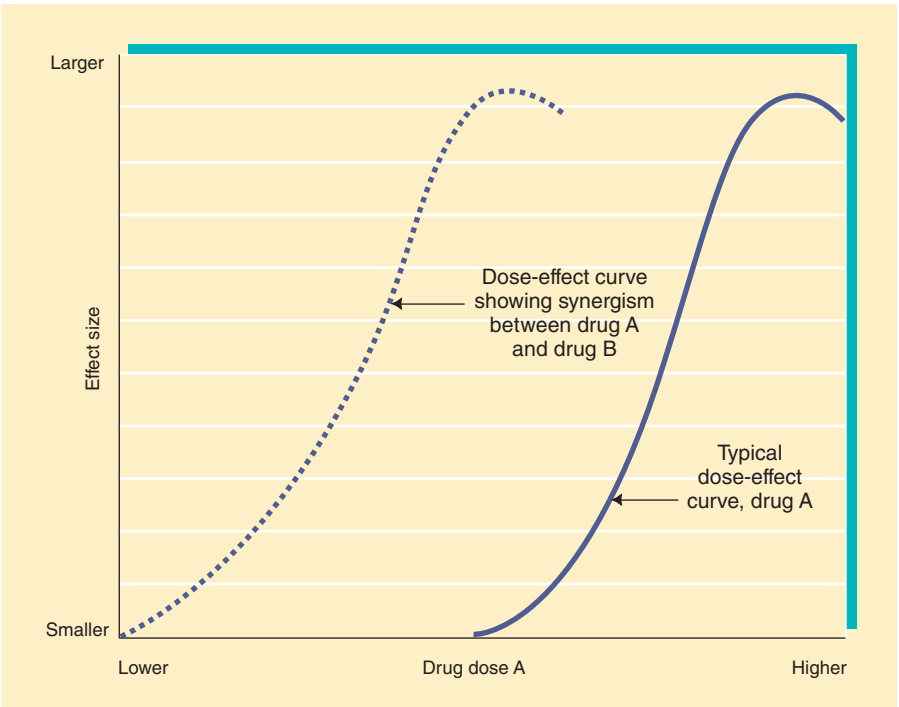


FIGURE 4.7
Representation by dose-effect curves of a synergistic relationship for drugs A and B

to inform customers how newly prescribed medications interact with other medications they may be taking and what precautions they should follow to avoid harmful combined drug effects.

Drug interactions also may cause problems with different nonprescribed drugs or combinations of prescribed and nonprescribed drugs. The most common examples are mixing drugs that depress the CNS. For example, consuming alcohol with medications such as Xanax or Valium may be lethal, as the sedative effects of each drug are enhanced. This drug combination has caused many intentional and accidental deaths.

Drug interactions also are important for their influences on the reasons for and patterns of human drug use, so they are of central concern in this text. Individuals may intentionally combine drugs that have the same or similar action to achieve a "super" high or effect. Or individuals may use drugs that have opposite effects in a deliberate effort for one drug to modify the other. An example heard commonly in treatment settings is using alcohol's depressant effects to modify the overstimulation sometimes induced by cocaine. One

© Edw/Shutterstock.com

People often use more than one drug at a time, which sometimes can pose considerable risks to safety.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

may sometimes consume large amounts of black coffee (containing caffeine) in hopes of antagonizing alcohol's CNS depressant effects. In truth, however, caffeine seems to do little to counter alcohol's effects on the CNS. These two examples illustrate individuals' attempts to modify the intensity (quantitative) of drug effects. However, drugs also may be combined to achieve **qualitative** interaction effects that could not be achieved by any of the drugs separately. An individual may take a depressant drug, such as one of the benzodiazepines, along with LSD to have a tranquil state while they experience the perceptual alterations that result from LSD (Jacobs & Fehr, 1987).

qualitative
The kind, as opposed to quantity, of effect.

REVIEW

1. Draw a dose-effect curve for a single drug and a drug with a biphasic effect. Be sure to label all components of the graph (vertical axis, horizontal axis).
2. Draw a dose-effect curve for two hypothetical drugs with different slopes; explain the significance of the dose-effect curve with the steeper slope.
3. Explain the difference between an effective dose and a lethal dose of a drug.
4. Describe possible positive and negative effects of drug interactions.

Summary

- The basic principles of pharmacology emerge in discussions of what contributes to the drug experience.
- To pharmacologists, principles of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics are most relevant to the drug experience.
- Drug dose is computed according to the recipient's body weight. A standard way of expressing dose is in milligrams of drug per kilogram of body weight (mg/kg).
- Eight routes of drug administration were discussed in detail: oral, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravenous, inhalation, intranasal, sublingual, and transdermal. A route of administration is selected according to the drug taken and the goals and circumstances of administration.
- The route of drug administration affects the drug experience primarily through the rate of drug absorption and the amount of drug absorbed.
- Once they enter the body, drugs are absorbed into the blood and distributed to their site(s) of action. The body also works to metabolize and excrete drugs that enter it.
- Drug elimination may occur either by direct excretion of the drug from the body or by metabolism of the drug and excretion of its by-products.
- A common term related to drug elimination is drug half-life.
- Drug absorption, distribution, and elimination are affected by different biochemical factors and highlight the complexity of the drug experience.
- Pharmacodynamics most directly concerns actions of the drug on the body and thus drug effects. This chapter covered fundamental terms that pharmacologists use to describe drug effects and ways to depict them graphically.
- Pharmacologists use the dose-effect curve as a standard way to represent graphically the size of an effect in relation to the dose of a drug taken. The prototype dose-effect curve has an S shape, but variations depend on the effects studied.
- Three concepts derived from a dose-effect curve offer valuable information about a drug's action: slope of the curve, drug efficacy, and drug potency.
- Two other important features of a drug's actions are its effective dose and lethal dose. The relationship between these two doses is essential information for medical and nonmedical drug use.
- Pharmacodynamics often involves the consideration of more than one drug in the body at the same time. Multiple drugs interact to contribute to the drug experience. Interactions may be enhancing or diminishing.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Drugs that enhance the effects of each other are called synergistic. Antagonism between drugs creates diminished drug effects.
- Enhanced and diminished drug effects refer to the quantitative (degree of effect) study of drug interactions. Qualitative study of drug interactions also is possible.
- It is essential to be aware of drug interactions in both medical and nonmedical drug use.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. A given amount of a drug has similar biological effects on different people.
   F *The quantity of a drug is adjusted for a person's body weight to yield pharmacologically equal amounts of the drug.*
2. Despite the large number of known drugs, there are only three ways that drugs are commonly administered or taken.
   F *There are a variety of ways to take drugs; we described eight of them in this chapter.*
3. Some drugs cannot be taken orally, as acid and digestive enzymes in the stomach destroy the drug.
   T *Some drugs are destroyed by the acid and digestive enzymes in the stomach and cannot be taken orally. Other routes of administration are then required.*
4. Taking a drug intravenously is a highly efficient, safe way to get a drug into the blood.
   F *The intravenous route is highly efficient because it bypasses problems of absorption associated with, say, the oral route. Because the drug is injected directly into veins, however, the intravenous route is the most risky because of problems of overdosing. Great caution is required when drugs are administered intravenously.*
5. Smoking is a relatively slow way of getting a drug into the blood.
   F *For drugs that can be taken by inhalation, that route results in very rapid absorption.*
6. Some drugs can enter the body through the skin.
   T *Some drugs can be taken through the skin, or transdermally. Nicotine is among the best known of such drugs.*
7. The body protects the brain from toxic substances.
   T *The blood-brain barrier prevents many toxic substances from reaching the brain. Drugs that are less fat-soluble have a tougher time getting through the blood-brain barrier.*
8. The liver is the most important organ for the excretion of drugs and their metabolites.
   F *The kidney is the most important organ for the excretion of drugs and their metabolites. The liver plays a major role in drug metabolism.*
9. Scientific study of the effects of drugs is difficult because there is no way to represent such effects quantitatively.
   F *The effects of drugs can generally be measured and can be represented with dose-effect curves.*
10. When more than one drug is taken at a time, the effects of one can enhance or diminish the effects of the other(s).
    T *Drugs modify the effects of each other when taken simultaneously. Sometimes the outcome is difficult to predict.*
11. Caffeine and alcohol have antagonistic effects.
    F *Although it is intuitive that caffeine and alcohol are antagonists, research shows that caffeine does little to alter alcohol's effects on the CNS.*
12. It is important to know about drug interactions because of the increasing prevalence of using more than one drug at a time among people who present themselves for drug treatment.
    F *Although using more than one drug is more common among people who present themselves for treatment, knowledge of drug interactions also is important because many people are prescribed more than one medication.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Key Terms

absorbed
antagonism
as a function of
bioavailability
control
diffusibility
dissolved
distribution
drug potency
effective dose
efficacy
feedback
freebase
half-life
interact
lethal dose
metabolism
pharmacodynamics
pharmacokinetics
qualitative
side effects
slope
solubility
suspended
synergism
therapeutic index

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Older individuals may take prescribed medications, over-the-counter drugs such as nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), consume alcohol or other drugs, and take herbal supplements. Furthermore, they may forget to take mediations as prescribed. All of these behaviors substantially increase the risk of adverse drug interactions. What steps can be taken to help prevent adverse drug interactions among older individuals?
2. Should college students be routinely tested for drug use, for both illicit drugs (such as cocaine) and nonprescribed medications (such as Adderall)? Describe the advantages and disadvantages of such a program.

Suggested Readings

Bina, C. (1998). Drug testing 101: Detecting tainted samples. *Corrections Today, 60*, 122–127.

Bramson, H., DesJarlais, D. C., Arasteh, K., Nugent, A., Guardino, V., Feelemyer, J., & Hodel, D. (2015). State laws, syringe exchange, and HIV among persons who inject drugs in the United States: History and effectiveness. *Journal of Public Health Policy,* 36, 212–230.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

- **5-1** Describe biological factors that may influence an individual's drug experience
- **5-2** Describe psychological factors that may influence an individual's drug experience
- **5-3** Discuss how social and environmental factors influence the drug effects people experience
- **5-4** Differentiate between these three distinct types of tolerance: dispositional, functional, and behavioral
- **5-5** Discuss contemporary theories to explain how tolerance to a drug develops
- **5-6** Apply principles of operant conditioning to explain drug use and drug dependence
- **5-7** Explain the behavioral pharmacology research methods of drug self-administration, drug discrimination, and conflict paradigm
- **5-8** Discuss the generalizability of research findings from studies based on animals to humans
- **5-9** Discuss the ethical concerns associated with conducting drug research on human participants
- **5-10** Explain the importance of placebo controls in experimental research
- **5-11** Describe the steps involved in testing and marketing of a new drug
- **5-12** Distinguish between Phase 1, Phase 2, and Phase 3 clinical trials

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

5

Psychopharmacology and New Drug Development

Factors Influencing Drug Effects

- Biological Factors
- Psychological Factors

Social and Environmental Factors

Tolerance

- Types of Tolerance
- Explanations of Tolerance

Behavioral Pharmacology

- Reinforcement and Punishment
- Operant Principles and Drug Dependence
- Drug Discrimination
- Conflict Paradigm

Animal Models and Human Drug Use

Human Behavioral Pharmacology

- Ethical Questions
- Placebo Controls

New Drug Development

- Clinical Trials and FDA Approval
- Distribution and Marketing
- Generic Drugs
- Summary

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Gender differences in the effects of drugs are due primarily to body weight differences.

___ 2. Older individuals may have impaired metabolism of drugs, resulting in prolonged duration of drug action.

___ 3. Expectancies about alcohol's effects may be a more powerful determinant of its effects than the pharmacological action of alcohol.

___ 4. Theories about the effects of drugs on humans always have taken into account social and environmental factors.

___ 5. Tolerance to a drug develops only because of biological changes that occur as a result of using the drug.

___ 6. Tolerance to a drug may be evident within the same occasion of using it.

___ 7. People who have tolerance to alcohol will also demonstrate tolerance to barbiturates the first time they use them.

___ 8. There is no relationship between the drugs that animals show preference for and the drugs that humans prefer.

___ 9. Pharmacological research conducted on animals can be generalized to humans.

___10. In general, drug researchers are not concerned with placebo effects when studying the actions of a drug.

___11. Because new medications are needed to treat diseases like AIDS, government regulation of the process of drug development and marketing has been greatly simplified.

___12. Folk uses of naturally occurring products are important sources for discovering new drugs.

In Chapter 4 we identified seven steps of the drug experience, but discussed only five of them. In this chapter, we focus on Steps 6 and 7; Step 6 concerns biological and psychological factors that affect the experiences humans have when they use drugs, and Step 7 concerns social and environmental factors and their influence on the drug experience. Our discussion of these steps raises the question of how the drug experience relates to human drug use, which leads to our consideration of research methods in the field of psychopharmacology. (Another narrower use of the term *psychopharmacology* is the study of drugs used to treat mental illness.) Psychopharmacology research, as you might guess, focuses on the reasons behind drug use patterns and on the patterns of use themselves. Information on research basics will prepare you for understanding the process of discovering and developing new drugs, which we review in the last sections of this chapter.

5.1 Factors Influencing Drug Effects

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-1 Describe biological factors that may influence an individual's drug experience

5-2 Describe psychological factors that may influence an individual's drug experience

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As ethnic and cultural differences in pharmacokinetics suggest (Chapter 4), differences among people probably account for most of the differences in how they react to a given dose of a drug. We add to this point by presenting other major factors in this section. Roughly, we can divide these factors into two types: biological and psychological.

Biological Factors

A number of biological factors may be important in understanding drug effects in humans. In this section, we consider inherited differences in reactions to drugs, gender, body weight, and age.

Inherited Differences in Reactions to Drugs

initial sensitivity
The effect of a drug on someone using it for the first time.

Major differences in how people react to drugs are genetically based (Nies, 2001). For example, the way people are affected by their first dose of a drug is called their **initial sensitivity** to a drug. Differences in sensitivity are thought to be determined genetically. An important area of research focuses on understanding the role genes play in the development of substance use disorders. Alcohol use disorder in particular has received much attention from scientists. Inherited differences in how alcohol is experienced (as a result of action in the brain) and metabolized may be of major importance in some individuals developing alcohol use disorder (see Chapter 9).

Gender

A specified dose of a drug administered to a man and a woman on average will have somewhat greater effects on the woman. One major reason for this difference is the tendency for women to have a higher percentage of body fat and therefore a lower percentage of body water than men do. Therefore, based on information you learned in Chapter 4, percentage of body fat may influence drug effects in two ways. If there is less body water because of more body fat, then a drug will be more concentrated in the body and thus have greater effect. In addition, some drugs selectively bind to fat molecules in the body, so the drug is eliminated more slowly with a higher percentage of body fat and thus remains active in the body for a longer time.

Weight

In Chapter 4, you saw that body weight is part of the formula for computing drug dose. This is because the concentration of a drug in the blood depends on how much blood and other body fluids are in the body. These fluids dilute an absorbed drug. Simply put, individuals weighing more have more blood and other fluids, so for a given quantity of drug, they would have a smaller concentration of it than would individuals weighing less. As we noted for gender differences, this contributes to a lesser drug effect in individuals weighing more.

Age

Age can influence drug effects if the individuals are very young or old. Children are more sensitive to drugs because enzyme systems that metabolize drugs may not be fully developed. As a result, a drug stays active longer. In older individuals, these same enzyme systems may be impaired, with the same result of increased duration of drug action.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Psychological Factors

How an individual's psychological traits affect the drug experience has often been studied in research on personality and drug use. It is not surprising that the relationship between personality and the drug experience is difficult to understand. *Personality* is a term used to represent a cluster of characteristics that describe the ways in which an individual thinks, perceives, feels, and acts. These characteristics are thought to be fairly constant, although variations occur in how a person acts in different situations. Nevertheless, personality characteristics are for the most part viewed as enduring.

One personality characteristic that has received a lot of attention regarding its relationship to drug use is sensation seeking. Zuckerman (1979) defined *sensation seeking* as "the need for varied, novel, and complex sensations and experiences and the willingness to take physical and social risks for the sake of such experience" (p. 10). Four different aspects of sensation seeking have been discovered: thrill and adventure seeking, experience seeking, disinhibition, and boredom susceptibility.

"The great art of life is sensation, to feel that we exist, even in pain."
Lord Byron

A number of studies have shown a positive association between a person's level of sensation seeking and their frequency of drug and alcohol use and the variety of drugs that are used. The more sensation seeking a person is, the more they tend to use alcohol and drugs and use more kinds of drugs (Earleywine, 2016). One explanation for these findings is that sensation seeking represents the individual's higher degree of sensitivity to the pleasurable effects of drugs. That is, *sensation seeking* is a summary term for one source of the differences in how people experience drugs.

Personality factors also have been shown to influence the degree of stress reduction that people get from taking alcohol and other drugs. This is particularly important because stress reduction has long been held to be a major reason people drink and use drugs, particularly people who develop drug or alcohol use disorders (Greeley & Oei, 1999). For example, Sher (1987) developed the "stress-response dampening"

"I am an Addictive Personality, they say, a natural slave to passion —and many doctors have warned me against it. I am a High-risk Patient."
Hunter S. Thompson

Barbara Stitzer/PhotoEdit

People differ in how they react when they use drugs in a given setting as a result of differences in biological and psychological factors.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

(SRD) model of alcohol and other drug use. Alcohol and drugs such as the benzodiazepines have anxiety-reducing effects. People who experience such effects therefore are more likely than others to use drugs to cope with unwanted stress. Of particular interest here is that individuals seem to vary in the SRD of alcohol they experience according to their personality characteristics. For example, Sher and Levenson (1982) showed that people characterized as aggressive, impulsive, and extroverted were more sensitive to alcohol's SRD effects. Notably, studies have shown that those individuals who developed alcohol use disorder tended to be high on these characteristics before they began to experience problems with alcohol.

"I'm not an addictive personality, I just like getting high, that's all."

Rita Mae Brown, *Six of One*

A general discussion of research on personality and drug use will undoubtedly bring up the idea of the "addictive personality," the hypothesis that there is a personality structure common to all individuals who have substance use disorders. This idea holds that people who have particular personality characteristics experience a unique reaction to alcohol and drugs, or they find alcohol and drugs especially valuable for coping with stress. According to this hypothesis, those with an addictive personality are more likely to develop substance use disorders than those who do not have this personality.

Researchers have searched for decades for evidence of the addictive personality, without success. Individuals who are diagnosed with substance use disorder show considerable variation in personality. However, men and women who have developed substance use disorders may be distinguished from people who did not develop such problems by personality characteristics predating development of the disorders (Costello & Angold, 2010). For example, young men who later developed alcohol use disorder were characterized as self-centered, rebellious, impulsive, thrill seeking, talkative, gregarious, and in need of personal power. Importantly, these studies do not provide evidence for an addictive personality. But this research does suggest that some personality characteristics may interact with other factors, like stress, influences of peers, and quality of family life, to make it more likely that a person will develop problems with alcohol and drugs. There is no single genetic factor that is responsible for addiction. Instead, numerous factors, including early life trauma and genes that code for metabolic enzymes, influence whether an individual develops a substance use disorder.

Drug Expectancies and Beliefs

The history of experience with drugs, beliefs, knowledge, attitudes, and other thoughts about drugs that people have are part of their uniqueness. These nonpharmacological variables can exert powerful influences on the drug experience. One factor that is prominent in this regard is what a person expects to achieve or happen when using a drug. This anticipation is called a **drug expectancy**.

drug expectancy
A person's anticipation of or belief about what they will experience upon taking a drug.

A person's expectancies are based on previous experiences with a given psychoactive substance and its effects. These experiences could have been direct (i.e., the person has used the substance) or indirect (the person has been exposed to the substance and its effects through instruction, friends' use, television, advertising, reading, and so on).

Most of the research on expectancy has been conducted on alcohol use, and we review some of that work in Chapter 9. In one early discussion, MacAndrew and Edgerton (1969) proposed that what people have learned and believe about alcohol is an important determinant of how they conduct themselves while drinking. Thus, what people expect to happen when they drink can be an important factor in determining their response to the alcohol consumed. In some cases, this may be

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

more influential than alcohol's pharmacological action! Researchers have investigated alcohol-related expectancies by conducting studies in which some participants are told they are drinking alcohol but actually receive a nonalcoholic "placebo" beverage. An earlier summary of such research showed that expectancy effects are most prominent with behaviors or emotions that society proscribes from free expression, such as aggression, sexual arousal, and humor (Hull & Bond, 1986). Therefore, it would be predicted that people who believe alcohol fosters aggression or enhances sexual arousal would experience those effects, but at least partly because they expect that result, along with any specific pharmacological effect of alcohol. Expectancies may affect other kinds of behaviors, too. For example, one experiment showed that young adult men's beliefs about alcohol and skills on a motor task (e.g., tracking a target moving on a rotating disk with a stylus) affected their performance on such tasks while they were under the influence of a dose of alcohol equal to about four 12-ounce beers in a 175-pound man (Fillmore & Vogel-Sprott, 1996). In this regard, as expected, alcohol did affect motor performance. However, the impairment was reduced in experienced drinkers who expected alcohol to have only mildly impairing effects on the task, even though they were told that alcohol would severely impair their performance.

© Henrique Daniel Araujo/Shutterstock.com

Expectancies appear to have a considerable effect on the way people respond to other drugs as well (Vogel-Sprott & Fillmore, 1999). Marijuana is a good example (Orcutt, 1987). People who anticipate a relaxed, "mellow" feeling are more likely to experience that result than people who anxiously anticipate some type of drug-induced "loss of control" over their behavior. In part, this relates to the ways that smokers interpret or understand the various sensations that marijuana produces. One person might interpret a given sensation positively, and another person might interpret it negatively. Much of that discrepancy is likely attributable to what individuals expect to occur as a result of smoking (Metrik et al. 2012). Marijuana is not the only other drug besides alcohol that seems to be affected by expectancies. Brandon et al., (1999) found that expectancies about the positive effects of smoking tobacco are associated with its use and with how much of it is used. Finally, although expectancy effects have been studied primarily in the context of using one drug on an occasion, a few studies have investigated how expectancies affect responses to the use of more than one drug. A common combination of drug use is alcohol and caffeine. Fillmore and Vogel-Sprott's (1996) study showed that behavioral impairments related to alcohol intoxication tended to increase or decrease with participants' beliefs about how combining the drugs would affect them.

> *"Over the course of socialization, people learn about drunkenness what their society 'knows' about drunkenness; and, accepting and acting upon the understandings thus imparted to them, they become the living confirmation of their society's teachings."*
>
> MacAndrew & Edgerton (1969, p. 88)

> *"You lose all your inhibitions when you're drinking and you'll be able to talk to people a lot easier. That's what I say, you get more friendlier."*
>
> Research participant (Bradizza et al., 2006)

REVIEW

1. Identify two biological and two psychological factors that can affect the drug experience.
2. Explain why the concept of the "addictive personality" is not supported by evidence.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5.2 Social and Environmental Factors

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-3 Discuss how social and environmental factors influence the drug effects people experience

5-4 Discuss contemporary theories to explain how tolerance to a drug develops

It is now generally accepted that the drug effects people experience are strongly influenced by social and environmental (setting) factors (Zinberg, 1984). *Environment* is an extremely broad term, and its components range from government laws about alcohol and other drug availability (see Chapter 2) to the people and places that define the immediate drug use setting (McCarty, 1985).

Setting seems to be a particularly important influence on the effects of alcohol, marijuana, and hallucinogenic drugs. Pliner and Cappell (1974) were among the first to study experimentally setting's influence on alcohol's effects. In their study, participants drank moderate amounts of alcohol alone or with others. When the research participants drank alone, they mostly reported experiencing physical changes, like fuzzy thinking, sleepiness, and dizziness. In contrast, participants who drank the same amount of alcohol but with others said their mood changed to feeling friendly and more pleasant.

> *"I wasn't really persuaded to smoke (marijuana). I just watched everybody. I saw nobody going mad or anything; they were all laughing and having a good time. So . . . I smoked and got high. I liked the high and I smoked."*
>
> Research participant (Zinberg, 1984, p. 85)

Another early example of the influence of the setting involves reactions to marijuana. Carlin et al. (1972) noted that, with lower doses of marijuana, smokers viewed others in the setting as more intoxicated than they actually were. The experimenters were able, again using lower doses of the drug, to enhance or diminish the degree of reported marijuana intoxication by having an accomplice act "up" or "down." Setting was not so influential with higher doses of marijuana. Studies such as these support Becker's (1963) ideas about the "making" of a marijuana smoker. Becker described this as a sociocultural process in which experienced smokers essentially "teach" new smokers what to anticipate, how to interpret the effects, what effects to enjoy, and what effects to ignore. Becker's ideas imply that what people experience when taking marijuana is influenced by their expectations about the drug's effects and by others' presence in the drug-taking setting.

REVIEW

1. Give an example of a social factor and an environmental factor that have been demonstrated to influence the drug experience.

5.3 Tolerance

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-5 Differentiate between these three distinct types of tolerance: dispositional, functional, and behavioral

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Repeated administration of a given dose of a drug often results in reduced response to the drug (O'Brien, 2001). This phenomenon, known as tolerance, was defined and briefly introduced in Chapter 1. Here we delve deeper into this term, summarizing the major principles and explanations of tolerance. Our discussion of tolerance follows our overview of biological, psychological, and social/environmental characteristics of those who use drugs because, as you will see, tolerance involves all three types of factors.

> *"It takes only one drink to get me drunk. The trouble is, I can't remember if it's the thirteenth or the fourteenth."*
>
> George Burns

Types of Tolerance

It is widely agreed that there are three distinct types of tolerance involving different mechanisms: dispositional tolerance, functional tolerance, and behavioral tolerance. Regular use of a given drug results to some degree in **dispositional tolerance**, an increase in the metabolism rate of a drug so that users must consume greater quantities of the drug to maintain a certain level of it in their body.

dispositional tolerance
An increase in the rate of metabolizing a drug as a result of its regular use.

functional tolerance
Decreased behavioral effects of a drug as a result of its regular use.

acute tolerance
A type of functional tolerance that occurs within a course of action of a single drug dose.

Another type of tolerance is **functional tolerance**. Functional or pharmacodynamic tolerance means that the brain and other parts of the central nervous system (CNS) become less sensitive to a drug's effects. There are two types of functional tolerance: acute and protracted. **Acute tolerance** is measured within the course of action of a single dose or the first few doses of a drug. When a person takes a dose of a drug, the amount of drug in the body—measured as the amount of drug in the blood, or the blood level—rises to some peak level. With some drugs, at any point when the blood level is rising to peak, users may experience greater drug effects than at that same point when the blood level is falling. For example, people show acute tolerance to alcohol. One effect of alcohol when consumed in moderate amounts is impairment in speed of performance of cognitive tasks (generally, tasks that require functions like memory, decision making, and problem solving, for example). Because of acute tolerance to alcohol, we are more likely to see impairment in the speed with which we perform cognitive tasks when the blood level of alcohol is rising than when it is falling. Interestingly, this same acute tolerance effect does not hold for the accuracy of performance (Schweizer & Vogel-Sprott, 2008).

A second example of acute tolerance is with regard to stimulant drugs like cocaine. Cocaine is a short-acting drug, and when the highly pleasurable effects of an initial dose begin to wear off, individuals using it are prone to taking another dose. However, the second administration—even when the same amount is taken—generally produces much less of a pleasurable high due to rapidly developing acute tolerance.

protracted tolerance
A type of functional tolerance that occurs over the course of two or more drug administrations.

Protracted tolerance pertains to the effects of a given dose of a drug when it is administered more regularly or chronically. Protracted tolerance means that the individual consumes greater amounts of a drug to achieve an effect that was once achieved with a lesser dose. So, in our example of alcohol and short-term memory, people who drink may show impairment in memory today after drinking six cans of beer, when they formerly showed the same degree of impairment after drinking only three beers.

behavioral tolerance
Adjustment of behavior through experience in using a drug to compensate for its intoxicating effects.

The third type of tolerance involves a behavioral adjustment by the individual and is called **behavioral tolerance** (or learned tolerance). For example, individuals who have had considerable experience with the effects of alcohol on motor coordination may learn to compensate for their intoxication by walking slowly or with a lower center of gravity to keep from falling—even if they are quite drunk (see, e.g., Vogel-Sprott, 1992).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In addition to these three types of tolerance, there are other mechanisms to consider. For example, tolerance to one drug may extend to other closely related drugs—a phenomenon called **cross-tolerance**. People who have developed tolerance to one drug also will have tolerance to certain other drugs, even though they may never have taken those other drugs. A practical consequence of cross-tolerance commonly occurs in surgical treatment. People who are highly tolerant to drugs that depress the CNS, such as alcohol or the barbiturates, are a problem for anesthesiologists. Anesthetic drugs are used in surgery because of their depressant effects, so people who use drugs like alcohol or the barbiturates show cross-tolerance to drugs used medically as anesthetics. As a result, it may be difficult to determine a safe yet therapeutically effective dose of anesthetic to administer to cross-tolerant patients.

cross-tolerance
Tolerance to a drug or drugs never taken that results from protracted tolerance to another drug or drugs.

People may develop tolerance to some effects of a drug but not to others. The barbiturates present a complex case of this phenomenon. Tolerance develops rapidly to the sleep-inducing and pleasantly intoxicating (e.g., euphoric) effects of these drugs, but tolerance does not develop as readily to their effects of impaired motor coordination and slowed reaction time. And tolerance to the anticonvulsant effect of the barbiturate phenobarbital does not seem to occur at all (Jacobs & Fehr, 1987). Another example is the amphetamine drugs. Tolerance to their appetite-suppressant and euphoric effects may develop rapidly, but the **psychosis**-like effects of amphetamines are not subject to tolerance. Similarly, one amphetamine-like drug, methylphenidate (Ritalin), is used to treat **attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder** in children. Fortunately, tolerances do not develop to the **paradoxical** attention-focusing and calming effects that Ritalin has on these children. Finally, we have **reverse tolerance** (sensitization) to a drug, which is increased sensitivity to the effects of a drug with its repeated use. Reverse tolerance has been reported, for example, for marijuana and cocaine. Much less research has been done on drug sensitization than on drug tolerance.

psychosis
A severe mental disorder whose symptoms include disorganized thinking and bizarre behavior.

attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder
A disorder with features such as a greater-than-normal amount of activity, restlessness, difficulty concentrating or sustaining attention, and impulsivity.

paradoxical
Contrary to what is expected. A paradoxical drug effect is opposite in direction to what is expected based on the drug's chemical structure.

reverse tolerance
Increased sensitivity to a drug with repeated use of it.

Explanations of Tolerance

Because tolerance is so important in psychopharmacology, researchers have investigated how tolerance develops. So far, no one theory has been able to account for all the nuances in tolerance that have been observed, but a few theories can account for portions of what has been discovered. These theories reflect current thinking that tolerance is multifaceted and involves both biological and learning processes.

Cell Adaptation Theory

One explanation for tolerance is called the cell adaptation or **homeostasis** hypothesis (Cicero, 1980). This theory assumes that a drug acts on specific cells in the CNS. Because of the plasticity of the CNS, the cells become "adapted" to the presence of the drug with repeated exposure to it. The adaptation allows the cells to maintain normal functioning at a given drug dose. As a result, more drug is required to disrupt cell functioning. This required increase is called tolerance.

homeostasis
A state of equilibrium or balance. Systems at homeostasis are stable; when homeostasis is disrupted, the system operates to restore it.

Cell adaptation is a general notion that some kinds of changes occur in the cells of the CNS to account for the changes we call tolerance to drugs. The idea of cell adaptation is important, because it seems that changes in a drug's effects as a result of its repeated use are due only in minor part to dispositional tolerance. Instead, protracted functional tolerance is more important, and the reduced sensitivity to a drug in the CNS seems to be caused by cellular changes there. Several hypotheses have been proposed for the specific

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

changes that might explain tolerance at the cellular level. For example, chronic exposure to a drug that affects a particular neurotransmitter system results in a reduced synthesis of that neurotransmitter. Because of reduced neurotransmitter levels, more of the drug might be required to effect the same overall neurochemical actions. Alternatively, there is evidence that repeated exposure to drugs may reduce the number of receptor sites on neurons that the drug activates. This process is called *down regulation* and could also explain the phenomenon of cellular tolerance. Although several hypotheses have been advanced and tested, the specific mechanisms underlying those changes have not yet been determined (Allen, 2009).

Drug Compensatory Reactions and Learning

Scientists have discovered that tolerance to drugs is learned, in part. To illustrate the observations that led to this conclusion, imagine that two people who are "theoretically equal in all ways" take a particular dose of a drug on 10 occasions. Person A takes the drug every time under the same conditions, whereas person B takes the drug under different conditions every time. For example, the room where B takes the drug may vary, or the color of the drug tablets may change. Then on the 11th occasion, tolerance for some effect of the drug at the specified dose is measured in A and B under the conditions in which A took the drug 10 previous times. Who would show greater tolerance? The cell adaptation hypothesis predicts equal tolerance for A and B. Yet numerous studies of humans and other animals show that A has the greater tolerance (Siegel, 2016).

To understand this idea, you have to know about compensatory reactions. When an event, like taking a drug, occurs to disrupt the body's homeostasis, then sometimes the body counteracts the disruption with a reflex-like response. In this case, the counterreaction is an effect opposite to the drug effect. So, for example, when you drink two cups of coffee, the caffeine is absorbed and acts to increase your heart rate. Simultaneously, your body begins to work to counteract this effect; that is, a compensatory reduction in heart rate begins. This mechanism of compensatory reactions means that when you take a drug, two major actions are biologically triggered: one is the drug effect, whatever it might be, and the other is homeostatic counterreaction.

One more aspect of compensatory reactions is that they are thought to become stronger with repeated use of a given dose of the drug. You can see that we have the makings of an explanation of tolerance here, one that two psychologists, Richard Solomon and John Corbit, made prominent in the 1970s, when they published their "opponent process" theory of motivation (Solomon & Corbit, 1974).

Learning enters into the final part of the explanation, which involves the phenomenon of classical conditioning.[1] The cues associated with drug taking, such as where it is taken, who is there, and what colors the pills are, are "conditioned stimuli" that become associated with drug actions and compensatory reactions. Over repeated pairings of drug taking and drug-taking cues, just presenting the drug-taking cues alone may elicit a drug compensatory reaction. For example, presenting drug-taking paraphernalia, such as a syringe and tourniquet, may elicit strong urges in IV heroin or cocaine users to consume their respective drugs. This urge to use is based on elicitation of biological reactions associated with drug deprivation. Therefore, drug compensatory reactions—one hypothesis of what underlies tolerance—seem to grow

[1]Classical conditioning is a type of learning in which, by repeated pairing, a neutral stimulus elicits a response similar to the response elicited without prior learning by another stimulus. For example, a puff of air (a type of stimulus) blown at the eye elicits an eyeblink. If a buzzer, which normally does not elicit an eyeblink, is repeatedly followed by an air puff directed at the eye, then at some point, presenting the buzzer alone will elicit an eyeblink. We then say that classical conditioning has occurred: The buzzer now elicits a reaction that it did not before the repeated pairing with the puff of air.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

stronger with their repeated pairings with the same environment. They seem to be tied to the specific drug-taking context. As a result, the "sum" of the drug effect and countereffect that is observed when a person takes a drug depends on how often the same drug-taking conditions have occurred in the past. The higher the number of pairings, the larger the compensatory reaction and the smaller the observed drug effect. In our initial example, that is why person A showed more tolerance than B did: The drug-taking event never changed for A, so that conditioning or learning in that context was stronger than it was in B, who changed contexts every time.

In addition, because the stimuli paired with drugs come to elicit reactions opposite to those elicited by the drug, exposure to these stimuli in the absence of the drug may produce discomfort or craving in users. For example, people who are trying to quit cigarette smoking often report that the smell of tobacco produces cravings, and those who use crack cocaine may react strongly to the sight of a crack pipe. Only when people have been exposed to these stimuli many times without the drug do these effects dissipate—a process called *extinction*.

Final Notes on Tolerance

Once tolerance to a drug effect has developed, it is not irreversible. A period of abstaining from a drug increases one's sensitivity to drug effects that they may have become highly tolerant to in the past. This, for example, has resulted in the deaths by overdose of some who use heroin when they resumed heroin use after a relatively long time of not using the drug. When use was resumed, they failed to take into account the loss of tolerance that resulted from the long period of abstinence. In general, acute tolerance reverses in a short time, whereas protracted tolerance requires more extended abstinence to reverse. Learned or behavioral tolerance may not reverse at all unless special procedures such as extinction are used.

Another point about tolerance concerns its reacquisition. Often resumption of the use of a drug after a long period of abstinence from it results in the reacquisition of tolerance more quickly than it developed when first acquired (Kalant et al., 1971).

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 5.1

Tolerance and DUI Laws

There have been radical changes in the attitudes and behaviors of U.S. politicians and other citizens about the availability of alcohol and its legal and social consequences. For example, the legal drinking age in the United States is now 21 for all alcoholic beverages, compared to in the early 1980s, when many states had a legal drinking age of 18 or 19. Another major area of change is the set of laws about driving under the influence (DUI) of alcohol (and other drugs). At this writing, the blood alcohol level at which an individual is declared legally intoxicated is 0.08% in all states and the District of Columbia. Arrest and conviction for driving at this level of intoxication now bring far harsher penalties than before, especially for repeat offenders. The main reason behind this change is compelling: For years, it had been a consistent finding that about 50% of U.S. traffic fatalities are associated with alcohol use. In 2014 that statistic was 31%, still very high but a substantial drop from 50%.

A blood alcohol level of 0.08% was chosen for several reasons, but a central one is that the driving skills of the average person are greatly impaired at that level. Now that you know something about tolerance to a drug and that alcohol is one of the drugs to which people develop a tolerance, what do you think of the "average driver" approach to the DUI law? Do you see any value in the argument that arrest should be based on behavioral (especially driving skills) impairment of the driver at a given blood alcohol level, whether it is above or below some specified level? What do you see as the health, social, and political consequences of this stance?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Our consideration of factors included under Steps 6 and 7 and their effects on the drug experience raises a final point: As we have mentioned before, factors from different "domains" (biological, social) may interact in affecting the drug experience. For example, the major advances in genetics that have been made in the last few decades have paved the way for increasing our understanding about genetically based differences in how individuals react to a given dose of a psychotherapeutic drug (see Chapter 13). We referred to one genetically based difference in reactions to drugs earlier when we discussed initial sensitivity to a drug. But in Chapter 4, we saw that there also are genetically based differences that underlie differences among racial and ethnic subgroups around the world in reactions to a dose of a given psychotherapeutic medication. A major reason for these differences is inherited variations (mutations) of the genes responsible for the enzymes that metabolize drugs, and they occur both within subgroups of individuals and between racial and ethnic subgroups (Keh-Ming et al., 2001). Genetically based differences such as these combine with other culturally based beliefs, attitudes, and expectancies about psychotherapeutic drugs, which of course overlap to a degree with racial and ethnic differences, to affect how individuals react to a given dose of psychotherapeutic medication. This same process may occur for other types of drugs as well.

The information presented so far in this chapter and in Chapter 4 completes our overview of the drug experience and the factors that affect it. We have shown that the drug experience in humans is complex, because biological, psychological, and social/environmental factors influence it. This knowledge about the drug experience prepares us to address the fundamental topic of this text: the links between the drug experience and the behavior of drug use or, as commonly referred to by scientists, "drug-taking behavior." We now turn to some of the principles and methods of **behavioral pharmacology**, which is the specialty area of psychopharmacology that concentrates on drug use as a learned behavior.

behavioral pharmacology The specialty area of psychopharmacology that concentrates on drug use as a learned behavior.

REVIEW

1. Create a chart to compare and contrast the three types of tolerance: dispositional, functional, and behavioral
2. Explain how cellular adaptation to the presence of a drug may underlie tolerance
3. Describe the role of classical conditioning in the development of drug tolerance

5.4 Behavioral Pharmacology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-6 Apply principles of operant conditioning to explain drug use and drug dependence

5-7 Explain the behavioral pharmacology research methods of drug self-administration, drug discrimination, and conflict paradigm

One premise of behavioral pharmacology is that drug use is a learned behavior governed by the same principles as any other learned behavior. We already saw in this chapter how a learning process called classical conditioning may influence some

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

aspects of drug use, so we do not discuss that further. Instead, in this section, we emphasize drug use as an "operant" or voluntary behavior.

Reinforcement and Punishment

reinforcer
A consequence of a behavior that increases its future likelihood.

The basic principle of operant conditioning is that behavior is controlled by its consequences: reinforcement and punishment. A **reinforcer** is a consequence of a behavior that increases the likelihood that it will occur in the future. For example, if studying for an exam is followed by getting an "A" on it, then studying is more likely to occur when it is time for the next exam. If a person who has not eaten for 12 hours goes to the refrigerator and finds food, then at the next occasion of hunger, going to the refrigerator is a more likely event. In these two examples, getting an "A" and finding food are reinforcers.

> *"Consider the ordinary lab-rat, once taught that pressing a lever will give him a rat-sized hit of crack. . . . This rat, I can identify with. Until recently he could, I fancy, identify with me. But Facebook is an addiction ole Ratty would look on with pity and contempt."*
>
> Sam Leith

When receipt of something, such as an "A" or food, results in an increase in the likelihood of the behavior it followed, it is called positive reinforcement. Another concept is negative reinforcement: The likelihood of a behavior increases if it results in avoidance of or escape from something. In this case, the reinforcer is avoidance of or escape from something, in contrast to receipt of something in positive reinforcement. Common examples of negative reinforcement are taking an aspirin to relieve a headache, or having the annoying "beep, beep, beep" sound go away when you fasten your seatbelt.

punisher
A consequence of a behavior that suppresses or decreases its future likelihood.

A **punisher**, on the other hand, is a consequence of a behavior that suppresses or decreases its future likelihood. We touch a hot stove only once because of the consequence that was transmitted to our fingertips. If inviting someone out for a date is followed by insults and rejection, the likelihood of asking that individual out again will likely decrease.

You may reasonably wonder what getting an "A," fastening your seatbelt and burning your fingers have to do with drug use. If drug-taking behaviors are controlled by their consequences, as behavioral pharmacologists believe, then individuals must derive either positive or negative reinforcement from their behavior and experience relatively little punishment for it. Thus, the study of drugs as reinforcers has become an important research area. Behavioral pharmacologists often study drug access as consequences for behavior in what are called **self-administration studies**. As the name implies, a drug self-administration study involves testing whether research participants will self-administer a drug. Imagine that an animal—say, a rat—has no experience whatsoever in psychopharmacology experiments. The essential question is whether the rat can learn to perform a simple behavior, like pressing a lever, if the lever press is followed by access to or infusion of some drug. If the rat learns to press the lever, then the question becomes whether it will continue to press the lever to get the drug. Based on years of research, the answer to both questions is a resounding yes. And not just rats—the yes applies to monkeys, baboons, dogs, mice, and humans as other examples. An impressive array of drugs has been tested, including alcohol, marijuana, cocaine, opioids, PCP, barbiturates, benzodiazepines, amphetamines, and nicotine (Bickel et al., 1995; Bozarth, 1987; Higgins et al., 2013; Mello & Griffiths, 1987; Young & Herling, 1986).

self-administration study
A study that involves testing whether research participants will "give themselves" a drug.

These robust findings suggest that humans and other animals, under given environmental, biological, and psychological conditions, "prefer" the drug experience. They show this preference experimentally by voluntarily working to obtain the drug. As one research group put it: "[A]bused drugs are those that serve as positive reinforcers and thereby maintain drug-seeking behavior" (Henningfield et al., 1986, p. 75).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

It is important to insert a note of caution here. There is a high positive correlation, or association, between pleasant or desired drug effects and their reinforcing effects in humans (Griffiths & Woodson, 1988b). The correlation is not perfect, however. Therefore, asking people why they use a drug or what they like about it is only an indirect way of studying a drug's reinforcement value. Technically, the reinforcement efficacy of a drug is measured by its ability to maintain or increase the frequency of a behavior that precedes access to a drug.

Self-administration studies also are an important source of knowledge about drug use because they show that not all drugs have reinforcement value. Drugs that humans tend not to abuse, such as the psychiatric drugs (see Chapter 13) chlorpromazine and imipramine, are not self-administered by other animals. Another insight about drug use that can be derived from reinforcement principles is that reinforcers are most effective when they are presented immediately following a behavior. When a drug like crack is smoked or heroin is injected intravenously, the drug taking is reinforced almost instantly by the "rush" or flash, and it is thus not surprising that these methods of delivery lead to harmful drug use more frequently.

"I think maybe it is time we stopped all the . . . nonsense about social milieus and how your daddy fell off a horse . . . and just say . . . what you mean, which is 'I got loaded because I love to do it.'"

Respondent cited in Le Dain Commission Interim Report (Brecher, 1972, p. 456)

Operant Principles and Drug Dependence

Principles of operant conditioning and drug self-administration may help us understand changes that take place in drug use over time. For example, the initial use of most drugs is not determined by drug reinforcement; rather, it is typically in response to the instructions or advice of peers, parents, or a physician. Only when an individual has actually taken the drug will the individual experience the drug effects that may reinforce behavior. Thus, in regard to drugs with powerful reinforcing properties, the observation that an "ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure" may be quite valid.

"First you take a drink, then the drink takes a drink, then the drink takes you."

Francis Scott Key Fitzgerald

Although social factors may instigate initial drug use, continued use is more likely determined by the positive reinforcement effects noted previously. As drug use continues and increases in frequency, however, a change in motivation may occur. Consider that with chronic use, tolerance develops to the effects of many drugs, and withdrawal symptoms may occur when the drug wears off. Thus, because of tolerance, the effects individuals desire are more difficult to experience, but unless they take the drug, they feel withdrawal distress. Taking the drug now relieves the unpleasant withdrawal symptoms and thus produces negative reinforcement. The general principle is that incentives for use of some drugs, especially those associated with significant physical dependence, may come to include negative as well as positive reinforcement contingencies as initial use becomes more chronic (Crowley, 1981).

"I tried to drown my sorrows, but the bastards learned how to swim."

Frida Kahlo

Negative reinforcement may also be important in the early use of some drugs. For example, people often say that they drink alcohol to escape unpleasant feelings of anxiety or depression. Because drugs such as alcohol can elevate mood rapidly, people who are prone to negative mood states may be more vulnerable to abuse.

© Paul Schlemmer/Shutterstock.com

Despite the possible consequences of a hangover from overindulgence in alcohol, its consumption remains popular.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

So far we have shown that getting a drug as a consequence of behavior can be a powerful force in maintaining drug use. But we still have not addressed the negative drug effects we reviewed in Chapter 1 that have been extremely serious for some individuals and for society in general. Perhaps the major challenge for people who study harmful drug use is to explain humans' continued use of drugs in the face of punishing consequences. At least part of the explanation may be that punishment, like reinforcement, is most effective when it is immediate.

In general, the effects of a consequence decrease the more removed they are from the target behavior. For example, the decision of whether to eat a piece of chocolate cake is usually affected more powerfully by how the cake will taste if eaten now than by the possible weight gain or tooth decay later. Similarly, some negative consequences of drug use, like social, family, and health problems, do not tend to occur until some time, often years, after any given episode of drug use. Furthermore, such consequences are not certain. This contrasts sharply with the immediate, desirable effects of drugs of abuse. Immediate consequences have a lot more control over an individual's drug use patterns than do the distant, more negative consequences. Note that this idea of delay of reinforcement holds even if the delay is not very long. People have been known to put off considerations of a hangover tomorrow for the pleasures of drinking alcohol tonight, for example.

These behavioral principles have proved to be useful in developing treatment strategies for drug dependence. The idea is to reduce drug use by arranging punishment for drug use and reinforcement for abstinence (see Bickel & DeGrandpre, 1995; Higgins et al., 1991; Iguchi et al., 1997, for examples). We say more about these approaches to treatment in Chapter 15.

The drug self-administration procedure is perhaps the most obvious method in behavioral pharmacology through which research with animals can provide important information about human drug use. There are other important methods, however, and we now consider two of them: drug discrimination and the conflict paradigm.

Drug Discrimination

drug discrimination study
A research procedure that primarily concerns the differentiation of drug effects.

Another research method in behavioral pharmacology is the **drug discrimination study**, which is important because it provides a way of asking nonhuman subjects about the subjective effects of drugs (Bolin et al., 2016). Many species of animals can be trained to make a target response to achieve some reinforcer, such as food, based only on a drug state. For example, a rat may first learn to press a lever for food reinforcement. Then over multiple sessions, the rat is injected with either some drug—for example, an amphetamine—or a placebo saline solution (a solution containing salt but no drug) and placed in an experimental chamber that has two levers. Pressing one of the levers results in food when the animal has been injected with the amphetamine, and pressing the other lever is reinforced when the animal has been given the placebo. Pressing the "wrong" lever for a respective drug state (here, drug or placebo) results in no food. With only the drug state as a signal, the animal can learn what lever to press to receive food. This shows that the animal can learn to discriminate between drug and nondrug states. Naturally, this basic paradigm can be extended to test ability to discriminate among different doses of a drug and among different drugs.

Drug discrimination studies provide important knowledge about drug use because they can help us to explain the bases of perceived similarities and differences between internal changes produced by different drugs and by different doses of the same drug (part of what we have called the drug experience). Thus, an animal that has learned to

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

discriminate amphetamine from saline will respond on the amphetamine lever when injected with the related stimulant cocaine but not when alcohol or other depressants are administered. Similarly, if LSD is the training drug, other hallucinogens will be "recognized." These techniques have allowed behavioral pharmacologists to classify experimental drugs according to their "subjective" effects even before they have been administered to people (Bolin et al., 2016).

Conflict Paradigm

The last major research method in behavioral pharmacology that we present involves the **conflict paradigm**. The conflict paradigm is generated by creating a history of some behavior being followed by both reinforcement and punishment. To return to our previous example, a rat may learn to press a lever to get food as a reinforcer. Then, after this learning occurs, the rat is also punished by pressing the lever—say, by administering electric shock if the lever is pressed during some programmed time period. You can see why this is called the conflict paradigm: The rat has a learning history of both reinforcement and punishment for the same behavior. This arrangement of consequences typically suppresses the behavior in question.

conflict paradigm
A research procedure that concerns the effects on a behavior of a drug that has a history of both reinforcement and punishment.

The conflict paradigm is important because it has been shown to be sensitive to drugs such as benzodiazepines that are in the family we call "antianxiety drugs." When an animal is injected with such drugs, the usual disruption in behavior seen by introducing the punishment component of the conflict does not occur when the animal has been given an antianxiety drug. Anticonflict effects in animals have been found for a range of drugs that have been shown to have the effect of reducing the perception of anxiety in humans (see Chapter 13).

These basics of behavioral psychopharmacology have advanced our knowledge about drug use and drug effects. A lot of what we say in the rest of this text about specific drugs or drug classes was discovered using behavioral pharmacology principles and methods. Another way those principles and methods have been extremely important is in the development of new drugs, which we review later in this chapter (Sanger et al., 2003). For example, self-administration studies with animals can tell us a lot about the harmful-use potential of a drug that is being developed for medical reasons, or whether prolonged use of a new drug has toxic consequences. Self-administration studies of the harmful-use potential of a drug also may be conducted with human participants. One excellent example is Troisi et al. (1993) experiment, which helped to establish that BuSpar, an antianxiety drug, is less likely to be misused than the benzodiazepine drug lorazepam, which is also used to treat anxiety. This conclusion was based on individuals' ratings of liking (or disliking) the drug as well as on the size of the dose they selected to take.

Knowledge of the principles and methods of behavioral pharmacology in animals is essential to our understanding of new drug development. Before we get to that, however, we address questions about generalizing from animal research and using human subjects in drug research.

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast reinforcement and punishment.
2. Give an example of how reinforcement and punishment are associated with drug dependence.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5.5 Animal Models and Human Drug Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-8 Discuss the generalizability of research findings from studies based on animals to humans

generalizable
Applicability of a research finding from one setting or group of research participants to others.

Much has been learned about drug effects in humans from research on animals other than humans. Yet questions frequently arise about the relevance of findings about drugs based on nonhuman animals (Soliman et al., 2010). A more technical way to ask this question is: How **generalizable** to humans are findings based on animals? The answer is that generalizability is remarkably good. In our discussion of drug self-administration studies, you saw the similarities among different animal species, including humans, in the reinforcement value of drugs. Other areas of comparable generalizability are the effects of drug dose, age, the presence of other drugs in the body, and environmental factors on drug use (Johanson & Uhlenhuth, 1978; Vuchinich & Tucker, 1988).

causal relationship
A relationship between variables in which changes in a second variable are due directly to changes in a first variable.

Fortunately, what we learn about drugs in animal studies can be used to learn more about human drug use and effects. Such research has vastly increased our knowledge without unduly risking human health. Furthermore, a **causal relationship** between drugs and functioning in parts of the human body, like the brain, could never have been established with certainty without animal studies.

The use of animals in drug research raises several ethical questions. You should know that strict federal regulations provide guidelines for the use of monitoring and alleviation of potential pain and distress, and surgical procedures. Research conducted on animals must have a clear purpose, such as advancing the health of humans or other animals. Consideration of the three R's in research planning underpins the humane use of animals in scientific research. The three R's are:

1. *Reduce* the number of animals used to a minimum, to obtain information from fewer animals.
2. *Replace* the use of animals with alternative techniques if possible.
3. *Refine* the way the experiment is conducted, by adjusting techniques so as to minimize potential pain or distress.

Scientific techniques are continually progressing and may result in an entirely new way of conducting research. For example, animals were used in the LD 50 test (described in Chapter 4) to determine toxicity of drugs. Scientists have developed tests that can acquire the important information using fewer animals and in such a way that does not administer a fatal dose.

REVIEW

1. Identify the ethical considerations for conducting pharmacological research and how scientists ensure the protection of research participants.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5.6 Human Behavioral Pharmacology

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-9 Discuss the ethical concerns associated with conducting drug research on human participants

5-10 Explain the importance of placebo controls in experimental research

In studying the effects of a drug on human behavior, there are a number of problems to consider. Here we discuss two of them, the ethics of conducting drug administration research with humans and the related matter of using placebo substances as part of such research.

Ethical Questions

Just as there are ethical concerns in animal research, using humans as participants in drug research poses a number of ethical dilemmas. Many kinds of biomedical research hold the potential to harm human research participants. Atrocities committed in the name of biomedical research in Nazi Germany led the postwar scientific community to adopt a set of ethical guidelines called the Nuremberg Code to govern scientific research. One basic principle of the code is that research with humans cannot be conducted without their responsible, voluntary, informed consent. That is, individuals must agree to participate in the study and must give their consent without coercion after being told all the risks or potential problems related to the research.

Despite the principle of informed consent, ethical difficulties in human research remain. After all, when a new drug is developed, someone has to be the first person to take it. Even though federal law says that a drug must be tested extensively in animals before it is tried with people, some side effect not detected in the animal studies could still occur.

Placebo Controls

A second research, and, in some contexts, an ethical question, in human behavioral pharmacology is a methodological one: the need for placebo controls. A **control group** or control condition is a referent that scientists usually build into their experiments to tell whether the drug they are investigating is really causing an effect. In psychopharmacology, an important control condition is the **placebo control**. The idea that such a control is essential to determining the pharmacological part of a drug's effect arose long ago; the idea of "placebo effects" arose even long before that, in the 16th century, in the Catholic Church's effort to discriminate between exorcisms of the devil that were real and fake (Finniss et al., 2010).

Earlier in this chapter, we noted that drug effects might be influenced by participants' histories with and beliefs and expectancies about drugs. These nonpharmacological effects of drug administration are often called *placebo effects* and may be difficult to disentangle from the pharmacological effects of drugs. When drugs are used as part of medical treatment, placebo effects seem to be

control group
The reference or comparison group in an experiment. The control group does not receive the experimental manipulation or intervention whose effect is being tested.

placebo control
A type of control originating in drug research. Placebo subjects have the same makeup and are treated exactly like a group of subjects who receive a drug, except that placebo subjects receive a chemically inactive substance.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

most pronounced in administering drugs to treat symptoms that tend to fluctuate over time, such as pain and depression (Julien et al., 2008, 2011). Indeed, one study used brain-imaging techniques to show that the administration of a placebo to participants who expected to receive a painkiller drug may result in chemical changes in the CNS that follow those induced by actual painkillers (Zubieta et al., 2005). In their review of the literature, Finniss et al. (2010) described similar neurobiological changes resulting from the administration of placebo drugs in the treatment of, for example, Parkinson's disease and depression. Therefore, in many experiments, the effects of administration of an actual chemical compound of interest can be specified only by comparing conditions in which people are told that they receive a drug, and then half actually get a chemically active substance and half do not. Sometimes all the experimental participants are told that they may or may not receive the real drug and then half really get the drug and half do not. In either case, neither the experimenter nor the participant knows whether the drug or placebo is administered to any one participant. This "double-blind" method is used so that biases from the experimenter or participant, according to their respective beliefs and expectancies about the drug or the experimental situation in general, are less likely to affect the results of the study. For example, a person who takes the drug may have specific expectancies about what effects it will have. Similarly, a person who administers the drug may have expectancies about its effects and accordingly may react to a person receiving the drug in a certain way. Both the participant's and the experimenter's expectancies may influence the effects of the drug that the participant experiences. Even professionals who are skeptical about whether a person's expectancies can affect the response to a medication agree that placebo controls are needed in drug research (Hrobjartsson & Gotzsche, 2001).

group design
A type of experimental design in which groups (as compared to individual cases) of subjects are compared to establish experimental findings.

Using a placebo and control **group design** can get complicated, as you can imagine. And, when new drugs are being tested for their effectiveness in treating illnesses, many argue that it is unethical to have a placebo control group if there is an alternative drug that has demonstrated some effectiveness to use as a comparison. The notion here is that it is unethical to give people who are ill a compound that is thought to be ineffective (the placebo) if there is a compound that has some effectiveness compared to a placebo but that potentially may be less potent than an experimental drug. However, many view such a design as essential to learning how drugs affect people, and this does seem to be the case at least in the treatment of some disorders. For example, Walsh et al. (2002) reviewed all double-blind randomized clinical trials of the use of medications to treat major depression that were published in English from 1981 to 2000. They found that the average proportion of the participants in each study showing a "therapeutic response" to taking the medications in question was about 50%. However, the average for the placebo groups was about 30%. Moreover, the strength of both the drug and placebo response was greater the later in the 20-year period that a study was published. This suggests that it is indeed ethical practice to use placebo control groups in trials of drugs designed to treat depression, as one case, and reaffirms why a placebo control group is part of clinical trial research designs: It allows the experimenter to say with confidence what the chemical action of a drug has to do with the way a person reacts upon taking it. In this respect, it is reasoned that if the measured effect in the people who take the real drug is greater than the effect in the people who take the placebo, then the chemical action of the drug must be responsible for the effect.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 5.2

Rapid Pace of Approval for SARS-CoV-2 Therapeutics

A novel coronavirus first detected in late 2019 quickly lead to a global pandemic. As this was a novel respiratory illness, there was a lack of knowledge about how to best care for patients and also a lack of drugs to effectively target the virus. Scientists rapidly pivoted existing research projects to apply their discoveries toward identifying effective treatments. As a result of these efforts, by October 2020 the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) had granted an emergency use authorization (EUA) for two drugs to be used to treat certain types of patients testing positive for Covid-19.

Given the steps involved and the timeline for the approval of a new drug, you may be wondering how these medications were developed and approved so quickly. And are they effective and safe?

The EUA allows the FDA to rapidly facilitate the availability and use of medications during public health emergencies. The drugs approved, bamlanivimab and remdesivir, are monoclonal antibodies, which are synthesized versions of antibodies naturally produced to fight pathogens, such as the SARS-CoV-2 virus. Scientists have worked with monoclonal antibodies for decades, so knowledge about the underlying mechanisms of action and safety for these types of therapeutics was already known to a large degree. Small, well-designed clinical trials were conducted for both treatments. Individuals who received these experimental drugs showed improvement compared to those who did not receive the treatment.

While these small trials were not conclusive as to the efficacy of the drugs, the results showed enough benefit that the FDA granted the EUA. These drugs will continue to be evaluated for their effectiveness and potential side effects; the results from the additional clinical trials will determine whether these medications receive FDA approval after the EUA expires.

You now have the foundation for understanding the last section of this chapter, which concerns how a new drug is developed according to guidelines established by the U.S. government. All of what we have discussed here and in Chapter 4 enters into drug development.

This text concerns mostly nonmedical drug use, yet this emphasis does not diminish the importance of drugs developed legally for medical reasons. First, many of these drugs are in fact used in a way that was not prescribed by a physician, as you saw in Chapter 1. Second, medical drug use is far more prevalent among adults than is nonmedical use. A final point is that legal drug development and distribution make up a major economic force in the United States. For these reasons, your knowledge about drugs and human behavior is not complete without understanding how legal drugs are developed.

REVIEW

1. Explain why control groups and placebo controls are used in human behavioral pharmacology research.

5.7 New Drug Development

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

5-11 Describe the steps involved in testing and marketing of a new drug

5-12 Distinguish between Phase 1, Phase 2, and Phase 3 clinical trials

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The "discovery" of new drugs generally occurs in one of three ways (Baldessarini, 1985): the rediscovery of traditional usages of various naturally occurring products, the accidental observation of an unexpected drug effect, or the synthesizing of known or novel compounds. No matter how a drug's potential usefulness is discovered, however, the procedure for testing and marketing it is fairly standard. In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) details these guidelines. The typical stages of the procedure are shown in Table 5.1.

Clinical Trials and FDA Approval

A "new" drug may be a novel molecular synthesis, a recombination of known ingredients, or a new use of an existing compound (Walters, 1992). In all these cases, the FDA has guidelines that must be met to make a "new drug application," which must be approved before a drug can be marketed. The extensive process of meeting the guidelines is outlined in Table 5.2.

TABLE 5.1 Stages in the Testing and Marketing of a Drug

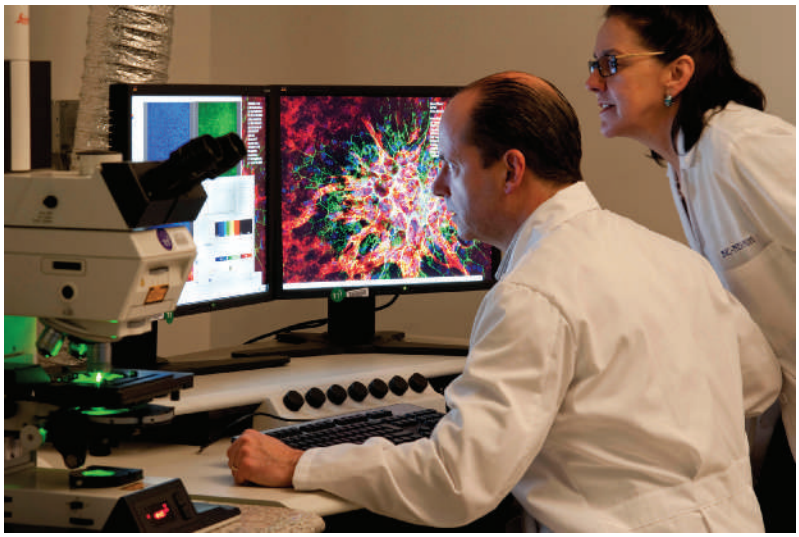
1. Belief that a particular compound has clinical value
2. Animal studies
3. Experimental studies with healthy volunteers
4. Experimental studies with clinical patients, rigorously conducted
5. Broader clinical trials
6. Licensing and marketing approval
7. After-marketing evaluation of clinical use, particularly short-term and long-term effects

TABLE 5.2 Steps, According to FDA Guidelines, in the Development of a New Drug

Step	Duration
Initial synthesis and preclinical studies	1–3 years
↓	
Phase 1 clinical trials: to establish safety, up to 50 normal volunteers	1 year
↓	
Phase 2 clinical trials: controlled studies in patients with a target disease, 50–200 patients	2 years
↓	
Phase 3 clinical trials: controlled and open studies of 1,000 or more patients monitored for drug effectiveness and for adverse reactions; data used for determining doses and labeling requirements	3 years
↓	
FDA review/approval	1–2 years
↓	
Postmarketing testing	1–2 years

Source: Adapted from information in Rowberg (2001, p. 13), Walters (1992, p. 334), and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration website (fda.gov, 02/11/2016).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



NEI/BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo

Methods of drug discovery have been aided substantially in recent years by advances in computer technology, biochemistry, and genetic engineering.

As you can see in Table 5.2, the first step is, where relevant, synthesis and adequate chemical description of the compound and a series of preclinical or animal studies. The animal studies are conducted to establish the safety of the compound for use by humans. The first step in the process may take 1 to 3 years, and the animal research relies heavily on research designs such as drug self-administration and drug discrimination that we described earlier. Because of differences among animal species in their reactions to drugs, these initial studies must be done on at least two species. If the compound at this point is deemed to have therapeutic potential, then the drug developer applies to the FDA for designation of the new product as an Investigational New Drug (IND), which, if approved, allows the drug to be distributed for purposes of completing the three phases of clinical trials or studies in humans, as outlined in Table 5.2.

The three phases of clinical trials are straightforward, if not easily accomplished. Phase 1 involves healthy human volunteers and is completed to specify human reactions to the drug and to determine that it is safe for human use. In Phase 2, the efficacy of the drug in alleviating or curing a target disease is determined through controlled clinical trials in humans who are diagnosed as having the disease. Phase 3 expands Phase 2 by increasing the number of patients involved in clinical trials and also by evaluating the drug's effects in less controlled trials (Spiegel & Aebi, 1983). Throughout the Phase 1 to Phase 3 trial process, drug developers are required to be in frequent contact with the FDA to monitor the development of the drug. As can be seen from the information in Table 5.2, the clinical trials part of the steps to drug approval (Phases 1 to 3 trials) tends to take about 6 years.

When Phase 1 to Phase 3 clinical trials are completed, the developer files a New Drug Application with the FDA, which contains the data on the drug that have been collected so far. The FDA has up to 6 months to act on the application; if the drug is approved or determined to be safe and effective, then the developer may market the drug within the United States and may export the drug for sale outside the United States. Anything less than approval means more time must be spent to correct deficiencies or solve problems so that a new application for approval may be filed.

Distribution and Marketing

Monitoring is not over once the developer begins to distribute and market the new drug. Clinical researchers continue to evaluate the effectiveness of the drug and the appearance of any unforeseen side effects associated with its use. In recent years, controversy has surrounded the FDA with criticism that it does not allocate sufficient resources to identifying untoward drug side effects after a drug is approved for marketing and is used by millions of consumers (Harris, 2004, 2007).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

chemical name
The name given to a drug that represents its chemical structure.

brand name
The commercial name given to a drug by its manufacturer.

generic name
The general name given to a drug that is shorter (and easier for most people to say) than its chemical name.

Drugs are designated in different ways once they reach commercial status. First is the **chemical name** of the drug, which indicates the drug's structural formula and allows chemists to reproduce the drug's structure. The manufacturer of the drug also gives it a **brand name** or trademark. Most people would know this name because it is the commercial name for the drug that the manufacturer uses exclusively until its sole rights to market the drug expire. The brand name says nothing about the drug's chemical structure. Finally, a drug is also given a **generic name**, a general name that is shorter than its chemical name. Like its trade name, a drug's generic name tells nothing about its chemical structure.

As one example, consider the names of Valium (brand name): The generic name is diazepam, and its chemical name is 7-chloro-1, 3-dihydro-1-methyl-5-phenyl-2H-1, 4-benzodiazepin-2-one.

The U.S. pharmaceutical industry reported that, in 2003, it spent $25.3 billion on developing new drugs (Golan, 2005). The data are controversial, but estimates of drug company costs of developing a successful new drug (i.e., it makes it to market) are as high as $1.3 billion in 2005 dollars (Wang, 2012). (The lower end of the estimate scale is at about $100 million to $200 million.) That money is spent over the course of the average 10–15 years that it takes to complete a successful process of drug discovery to market distribution. The process also results in a lot more failure than success: For every drug that makes it to market approval, 5,000 to 10,000 drugs have been screened, 250 enter clinical testing, and 5 enter clinical trials.

Generic Drugs

"Don't stop trials too early: Whatever the pressures are, keep going as long as possible. We must look to the longer term regarding benefit and harm."

Dr. Ian Weller, head of the British Concorde Research Team (*New York Times*, April 16, 1993, p. c3)

"Silence = Death"

Campaign banner to lobby the FDA to release experimental drugs to AIDS patients (1987)

No introduction to marketing and distributing new drugs is complete without mention of generic drugs. Generics have fueled heated debate. When a drug is approved, the source of its invention, usually a drug company, is granted sole rights to market the drug for 20 years after the filing date of the patent for the drug. After that, generic drug companies can sell their versions of the same compound as long as they use the generic rather than the brand name. Generic versions are not chemical copies of the respective brand-name drugs, but the FDA officially designates the generics as equivalent in effect to the brand names. Generic drugs are usually sold at a price lower (an average of 50% lower) than that charged for the drug of the company that invented it. Therefore, not only can the widespread use of generic drugs considerably lower the costs of health care, but also, because generic drugs are less expensive, people are more likely to be compliant with their treatment if they can access generic drugs rather than be restricted to brand-name drugs.

Generic drug companies have made a significant impression in the drug market. For example, a July 1987 article in the *New York Times* noted that, between 1981 and 1986, generic drug sales tripled to $5.1 billion. This was 23% of the $21 billion prescription-drug market for 1986. In 2002, the National Center for Policy Analysis estimated that generic drugs accounted for 50% of the prescription drugs that are dispensed, and in 2007, they accounted for 60%. The sales of generic drugs in the United States totaled $39.1 billion in the first 9 months of 2012 (Thomas, 2012).

The drug companies that are awarded patents have not always appreciated the generic drug market. Their gripe is understandable, considering all the time, money, and energy they have spent in gaining new drug approval and the losses incurred in testing the far higher proportion of drugs that do not make it to market approval status. Brand-name drug companies did fight back by claiming that using generics may be unsafe for some patients. However, there is little evidence to support this claim, as shown in a recent review of drugs used to treat cardiovascular disease (Kesselheim et al., 2008). Such findings are

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

not surprising, because the FDA requires that generic drugs meet the same standards of safety as innovator drugs meet. It is fair to say that the generics are here to stay. Their use is encouraged by the American Medical Association, and consumers have responded. For example, in the United States in 2014, 88% of all dispensed prescriptions were generic drugs, but they were only 28% of the money spent on prescribed drugs (Lee et al., 2016). That means 72% of the money spent on prescribed drugs were for "brand name" (patented) versions of drugs, which accounted for only 12% of prescriptions dispensed.

Jeffrey Coolidge/Iconica/Getty Images

Generic drugs are popular pharmacy items.

REVIEW

1. Describe the process involved for obtaining FDA approval of a new drug.
2. Compare and contrast Phase 1, Phase 2, and Phase 3 clinical trials.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 5.3

Awaiting Drug Approval

As we have seen, going from preliminary indications of a drug's usefulness to its final approval for prescription use is a long and rigorous process. The main reasons the process takes so long are to ensure the drug's effectiveness and to study possible side effects. Probably the best-known example in support of the FDA's exhaustive new drug approval process is the case of thalidomide. Its use by women in Europe as a sedative in early pregnancy in the 1960s (although banned by the FDA in the United States) resulted in damage to thousands of developing embryos. Nevertheless, the time needed to complete the FDA's approval process can seem interminable to a person suffering from a fatal disease that in a few years may be treatable with a new drug.

A case in point is the ongoing testing of potential drug treatments for AIDS. This syndrome, first identified in the early 1980s, grew in 5 years from being an isolated clinical oddity to near epidemic proportions. Moreover, there typically was only a short time between patients' initial medical treatment for AIDS symptoms and their death. This rapid course of AIDS created pressure on the FDA to shorten the drug approval process. In fact, in 1987, the FDA eased its regulations to expedite commercial use of the drug AZT, which then seemed to be a major and singular hope for slowing the advance of AIDS in some patients. That change has become a more general policy (called the "Accelerated Drug Approval Process") that allows less lengthy approval requirements for drugs that may be of help in fighting fatal diseases like AIDS.

This change was a victory for patient advocate groups, but a 1993 study conducted in England, Ireland, and France, called the Concorde study, shows the importance of scientists' concerns about the risks of shortening drug approval requirements. The Concorde study suggested that AZT may show benefits in slowing the progression of AIDS during the first several months but not in the longer term.

The results of the Concorde study suggest that the clinical trials process will continue to take a substantial period of time, although it was reduced by almost 1.5 years during the 1990s. Other parts of the drug approval process have also been reduced in recent years with little apparent harm. And advances in biotechnology and genomics may considerably reduce the time for the beginning part of the drug discovery/approval process, synthesis, and preclinical testing.

Decisions about drug approval requirements are extremely complex and are of interest to patients, scientists, clinicians, and drug companies. If you were a top FDA administrator, would you continue to relax drug approval requirements for quicker distribution of a drug that may help fight a fatal disease? In what part(s) of the approval process? Why?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Summary

- Step 6 of the drug experience concerns characteristics of the individual, which may be classified as biological or psychological.
- The relationship between personality and drug use has been the subject of considerable research attention. Although some personality characteristics seem to be associated with the drug experience, there is no evidence for an "addictive personality."
- Step 7 of the drug experience concerns environmental factors, which range from government laws about alcohol and drug availability to the immediate drug use setting.
- Tolerance is an extremely important concept in understanding human drug use patterns. There are several different types of tolerance.
- Both biological and learning factors seem to be involved in the development of tolerance.
- Behavioral pharmacology provides a link between the drug experience and drug use.
- Drug use has been shown to follow the operant principles of reinforcement and punishment.
- An extremely important way to learn about drug use is self-administration studies.
- The effects of delay of consequences on behavior may be at least part of the explanation for continued drug use by humans in the face of negative consequences.
- Two methods of learning about drug effects are drug discrimination and conflict paradigm studies.
- A lot of knowledge that we have today in psychopharmacology is the result of experiments with nonhuman animals, yet the question of what research on nonhuman animals says about the human drug experience is still debated.
- Ethical questions must be addressed carefully in the administration of both active and inactive (placebos) drugs to human research participants.
- New drugs become available through a process of drug discovery, development, marketing, and distribution.
- Once a drug is commercially available, it is given a chemical name, a brand name, and a generic name. Generic drugs have had a major impact on the prescription drug market in the United States.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Gender differences in the effects of drugs are due primarily to body weight differences.
   F *Although men tend to be heavier than women, drugs tend to have a greater effect on women than on men because men tend to have less body fat.*
2. Older individuals may have impaired metabolism of drugs, resulting in prolonged duration of drug action.
   T *Enzymes involved in drug metabolism are often impaired with aging, resulting in drugs having a prolonged duration of action.*
3. Expectancies about alcohol's effects may be a more powerful determinant of its effects than the pharmacological action of alcohol.
   T *Alcohol expectancies, especially at lower doses of alcohol, are powerful determinants of behaviors and emotions that normally are socially proscribed.*
4. Theories about the effects of drugs on humans always have taken into account social and environmental factors.
   F *The importance of social and environmental factors in understanding the effects of drugs on humans has been generally recognized only in the last 30 years.*
5. Tolerance to a drug develops only because of biological changes that occur as a result of using the drug.
   F *Important biological changes do seem to occur at the cellular level and they seem to explain tolerance in part. However, learning and environmental variables also seem related to demonstrations of tolerance.*
6. Tolerance to a drug may be evident within the same occasion of using it.
   T *For example, impairment in some behavior, like driving with a given concentration of*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

alcohol in the blood, tends to be greater when the blood alcohol level is rising than it is at that same concentration when the level is falling.

7. People who have tolerance to alcohol will also demonstrate tolerance to barbiturates the first time they use them.
   T *These people are demonstrating cross-tolerance to the two drugs, which have similar action in the body.*
8. There is no relationship between the drugs that animals show preference for and the drugs that humans prefer.
   F *Self-administration studies show that the drugs that animals "take" are similar to the ones subject to human use. Conversely, the drugs that animals tend not to self-administer are less prone to use by humans.*
9. Pharmacological research conducted on animals can be generalized to humans.
   T *Drug effects are similar in humans and nonhuman animals in many areas, including dosage, age, drug interactions, and environmental factors. Carefully conducted animal studies can further our understanding of human drug use.*
10. In general, drug researchers are not concerned with placebo effects when studying the actions of a drug.
    F *Expectancies and beliefs about a drug may influence what drug effects are experienced. Therefore, a "placebo control" group(s) is often included in drug experiments.*
11. Because new medications are needed to treat diseases like AIDS, government regulation of the process of drug development and marketing has been greatly simplified.
    F *Some of the regulations have been eased, resulting primarily in a potentially shorter time from drug discovery to distribution for public use. However, the process is still extensive and takes a considerable amount of time.*
12. Folk uses of naturally occurring products are important sources for discovering new drugs.
    T *Rediscovery of old folk medicines based on, for example, plants growing "wild" is an important source of creating new drugs.*

Key Terms

acute tolerance
attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder
behavioral pharmacology
behavioral tolerance
brand name
causal relationship
chemical name
conflict paradigm
control group
cross-tolerance
dispositional tolerance
drug discrimination study
drug expectancy
functional tolerance
generalizable
generic name
group design
homeostasis
initial sensitivity
paradoxical
placebo control
protracted tolerance
psychosis
punisher
reinforcer
reverse tolerance
self-administration study

Essays/Thought Questions

1. How might biological, behavioral, social, and environmental factors interact to influence the effects drugs have on an individual? Can you identify factors that could be considered protective, in that they are associated with a lower likelihood of negative outcomes from drug use?
2. How can research in behavioral pharmacology enhance our understanding of behavioral science? For example, what do studies of drug self-administration tell us about the nature of reinforcement? Or, how might drug-discrimination tasks aid in the development of treatments for substance use disorder?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Suggested Readings

Congress of the United States. (2017, February 7). *Research and development in the pharmaceutical industry.* Congressional Budget Office. cbo.gov.

Finniss, D. G., Koptchuk, T., Miller, F., & Benedetti, F. (2010). Biological, clinical, and ethical advances of placebo effects. *The Lancet, 375*, 686–695.

Hrobjartsson, A., & Gotzsche, P. C. (2001). Is the placebo powerless? An analysis of clinical trials comparing placebo with no treatment. *New England Journal of Medicine, 344*, 1594–1603.

MacAndrew, C., & Edgerton, R. B. (1969). *Drunken comportment*. Aldine.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

FDA: Clinical Trials: https://clinicaltrials.gov

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

- **6-1** Examine the historical and contemporary use of coca leaves in Latin America
- **6-2** Describe the early use of cocaine in European countries and in the United States
- **6-3** Explain how different preparations of cocaine are associated with the drug experience
- **6-4** Discern how the early, unregulated medical use of cocaine and amphetamines was associated with their misuse
- **6-5** Discuss the stimulant psychosis that can occur with prolonged use of cocaine and amphetamines
- **6-6** Explain the role of synthetic stimulants in drug use
- **6-7** Explain the mechanism of action for stimulants
- **6-8** Compare the behavioral effects stimulants produce at low, moderate, and high doses
- **6-9** Compare the physiological effects stimulants produce at low, moderate, and high doses
- **6-10** Summarize the complex pattern of tolerance for stimulants
- **6-11** Describe drug dependence and the symptoms of withdrawal associated with stimulants
- **6-12** Explain why stimulant drugs are used to treat symptoms of attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

6

Cocaine, Amphetamines, and Related Stimulants

The Coca Leaf

Early Use of Cocaine

The Amphetamines

Cocaine Epidemic II

The Return of Meth

Bath Salts

Pharmacokinetics of Stimulants

Mechanism of Stimulant Action

Acute Effects at Low and Moderate Doses

- Physiological Effects
- Behavioral Effects

Acute Effects at High Doses

Effects of Chronic Use

- Tolerance
- Dependence

Stimulant Drugs and ADHD

- Summary

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Cocaine is a synthetic drug developed during World War II.

___ 2. Cocaine use was epidemic in the United States in the 1880s.

___ 3. Cocaine acts by deactivating enzymes that breakdown monoamine neurotransmitters.

___ 4. Amphetamine effects are very similar to cocaine effects.

___ 5. Overdoses of cocaine and amphetamine may produce a psychotic state.

___ 6. Synthetic analogs of methcathinone are often sold under the name "bath salts."

___ 7. Crack is a smokable form of amphetamine.

___ 8. The most common withdrawal symptom associated with cocaine is depression.

___ 9. Stimulant drugs enhance learning and intellectual performance.

___10. One difference between cocaine and the amphetamines is that cocaine has a longer duration of action.

___11. Severe physical withdrawal symptoms follow heavy cocaine use.

___12. Amphetamines are synthetic drugs that were previously used as a treatment for heroin dependence.

Stimulants are a category of drugs that tend to increase overall levels of neural activity. Stimulants heighten mood, increase alertness, and decrease fatigue. In our discussion we will separate stimulants into two groups according to their legal and social status. Controlled stimulants—cocaine, amphetamines, methylphenidate (Ritalin), and methcathinone (bath salts)—are treated in this chapter, and the over-the-counter stimulants nicotine and caffeine are discussed in Chapters 7 and 8, respectively. In this chapter we will begin with a history of stimulant use and discuss some of the effects of cocaine and the amphetamines. We will then consider pharmacological aspects of stimulants.

6.1 The Coca Leaf

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-1 Examine the historical and contemporary use of coca leaves in Latin America

For thousands of years, Indigenous Peoples of the Andean regions of Bolivia, Ecuador, northern Argentina, and Peru have chewed coca leaves. Coca leaves come from the coca plant (*Erythroxylum coca*), which is one of the oldest cultivated plants in South America. While the coca leaf had important religious significance to the Incas, it was also used for medicinal and work-related purposes as it provides an energetic high. When the Spanish *conquistadores* encountered the Incas during the 16th century, they were at first disturbed by the religious use of coca, which was,

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of course, inconsistent with Catholicism. After conquering the Incas, the Spanish permitted and actually encouraged the use of coca because they believed it helped the Incas to work harder and longer. The Spanish ultimately came to control Inca access to the coca leaf by using it as a form of payment and levying taxes to be paid in coca leaves. The Spanish considered chewing coca a vice and neither used coca themselves nor encouraged other Europeans to use it (Kennedy, 1985; Streatfeild, 2001).

Thus, until the 1800s, the coca plant was relatively unknown in Europe. Then European naturalists began to explore Peru and experiment with coca, and soon strange and often conflicting tales began to circulate about coca. Some, such as the German naturalist Edward Poeppig, viewed coca as deadly: "The practice of chewing the leaf is attendant with the most pernicious consequences, producing an intoxication like that of opium. As indulgence is repeated the appetite for it increases and the power of resistance diminishes until at last death relieves the miserable victim" (Kennedy, 1985, p. 55). Others, such as the Italian biologist Paolo Mantegazza who chewed coca while in Peru, were more positive: "I sneered at poor mortals condemned to live in this valley while I, carried on the wings of two coca leaves, went flying through the spaces of 77,438 worlds, each more splendid than the one before" (Mortimer, 1901, p. 137).

Neither of these quotes is a very accurate depiction of the effects of chewing the coca leaf. Of the two, however, apparently Mantegazza's was more compelling because nearly every historical reference attributes the rise of scientific interest in coca to his praise. This scientific interest led to the increased availability of the coca leaf in laboratories, and in the 1850s, European chemists were able to isolate the far more potent active agent in the leaf, which they called cocaine. The extraction of cocaine

Mark Galizio

A woman collecting coca leaves on a coca plantation in Bolivia.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

from the leaf led to a new era in the history of stimulant drug use. Cocaine has a greater potency than coca leaves, as a single coca leaf contains only a small amount of cocaine. Recall from Chapter 4 that the route of administration greatly impacts the drug experience. As cocaine is taken via intravenous injection or smoking, this results in rapid absorption rates compared to chewing coca leaves. This is why individuals experience more intense actions of cocaine when it is injected.

6.2 Early Use of Cocaine

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-2 Describe the early use of cocaine in European countries and in the United States

The next chapter in the history of cocaine is fascinating because it involves an ambitious young physician working in Vienna who was looking for some medical breakthrough to make his mark. Though he is now best known for other contributions, Sigmund Freud was first recognized for his writings on cocaine. Freud obtained a sample of cocaine in 1884 and, after taking it a few times, felt he had come across a miracle drug. In his first major publication, "Uber Coca," he advocated cocaine as a treatment for depression, indigestion, asthma, various neuroses, syphilis, morphine dependence, and alcoholism.

Freud did not recognize one of the major medical uses of cocaine: It is a terrific local anesthetic. When cocaine makes direct contact with peripheral neurons, it prevents neural firing, which has the effect of "numbing" the area. This action is unlike cocaine's effects on the central nervous system. Cocaine was the first local anesthetic and revolutionized surgery. Now, of course, related "-caine" drugs such as procaine and xylocaine are used frequently, and cocaine continues to be used in eye surgeries.

"Cocaine produces . . . exhilaration and lasting euphoria. . . ."

Freud on cocaine

Freud was mistaken in his early suggestions about cocaine, and he helped launch a major period of harmful cocaine use. Ironically, an indication of what was to come was observed in one of Freud's friends, Ernst von Fleischl-Marxow. Fleischl-Marxow suffered from chronic pain and had developed a morphine use disorder. Freud prescribed cocaine, and Fleischl-Marxow began to consume larger and larger doses of it. Although doing quite well at abstaining from morphine, Fleischl-Marxow eventually was consuming a gram of cocaine daily. Not only had he become the first European with a cocaine use disorder, but he also began to show bizarre symptoms that we now recognize as characteristics of cocaine overdose. These symptoms included paranoid delusions, which are often seen in paranoid schizophrenia, and a feeling of itching called the **formication syndrome**, which is described as something like insects or snakes crawling just under the skin. Today, these symptoms are recognized as caused by cocaine overdose, but Fleischl-Marxow was the first reported to experience these effects.

formication syndrome
Symptoms of itching and feeling as if insects were crawling under skin, caused by cocaine and amphetamine.

Surprised by the disastrous effects of cocaine on Fleischl-Marxow, Freud in his later writings on cocaine was not quite so enthusiastic, but the damage had been done. The cocaine epidemic of the '80s was on—the 1880s, that is! Not only was cocaine prescribed by physicians but it also was readily available in patent

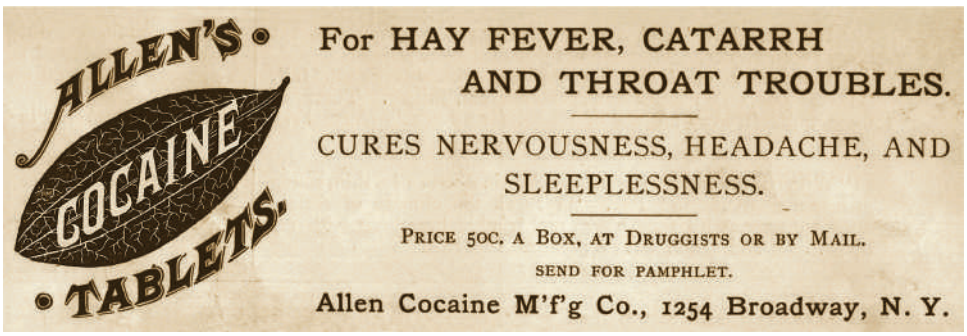
Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

medicines that could be obtained without prescription, such as Mariani's Coca Wine, a top seller in Europe, and yes, Coca-Cola. Coca-Cola's early advertising touted it as containing the "tonic and nerve stimulant properties of the coca plant"—back when it *was* the real thing! Cocaine was popularized in music and literature as well. Author Sir Arthur Conan Doyle depicted the famous fictional detective Sherlock Holmes as using cocaine to give him energy and aid his powers of deductive reasoning. Robert Louis Stevenson apparently wrote the Jekyll and Hyde story while taking cocaine treatments for tuberculosis, and others who provided testimonials to the value of cocaine include Thomas Edison, Jules Verne, Emile Zola, Henrik Ibsen, Czar Nicholas of Russia, and President Ulysses Grant (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1976). Numerous remedies and tonics of the late 1880s had cocaine as an ingredient. An advertisement from Allen's Cocaine Tablets indicates these can be taken for hay fever, catarrh, and throat troubles, and will also cure nervousness, headache, and sleeplessness. All for only 50 cents a box (approximately $12.50 today)!

It is not hard to understand how cocaine became popular with this kind of publicity, and with so many people using cocaine, casualties began to emerge. By the end of the 19th century, many of those who used cocaine had discovered firsthand its hazards, and with cocaine psychosis, overdose death, and severe dependence becoming major problems, popular sentiment turned against cocaine (Spillane, 2000).

One of the most influential works that changed ideas about cocaine was an article that described the case of Annie C. Meyers, an affluent, successful businesswoman. She had a bad cold, and on recommendation by her lawyer she took Birney's Catarrh Powder, a remedy of the time that contained cocaine. She rapidly became dependent on the drug and lost all of her money. She recounted: "I deliberately took a pair of shears and pried loose a tooth that was filled with gold. I then extracted the tooth, smashed it up, and the gold went to the nearest pawnshop (the blood streaming down my face and drenching my clothes) where I sold it for 80 cents" (Kennedy, 1985, p. 93).

Thus, beliefs and attitudes about cocaine continued to change. In addition to dramatic accounts of dependence on cocaine, reports of violent acts committed under the influence of the drug led to a dramatic swing of public opinion, culminating in the control of cocaine under the 1914 Harrison Narcotics Act. Although the Harrison Act was primarily designed to control opiates such as morphine and heroin, cocaine's inclusion as a dangerous drug was no accident.



Bettman/Corbis

Cocaine was a popular ingredient in many remedies and tonics of the late 1800s, as shown in this advertisement for toothache drops.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Create a time line indicating the major events associated with the historical use of coca leaves and cocaine.
2. Create a table with three columns—one for the form of cocaine, one for the route of administration, and one for the resulting drug experience. Then fill in each row using a specific form of cocaine.
3. Create a chart to associate events related to the historical and contemporary medical uses of cocaine.

6.3 The Amphetamines

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-3 Explain how different preparations of cocaine are associated with the drug experience

Use of cocaine in the United States declined during the years following the Harrison Narcotics Act, but new stimulants soon entered the scene: the amphetamines. The amphetamines are a class of drugs first synthesized in the late 19th century that include amphetamine, dextroamphetamine, and methamphetamine (see Table 6.1). Although amphetamines had been available for research for many years, the first medical applications were developed in the 1920s. Amphetamines have been used as a treatment for cold and sinus symptoms (the original inhalers contained Benzedrine, an amphetamine), obesity, narcolepsy (a disease in which the patient uncontrollably falls asleep), and paradoxically, attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Amphetamines also have a high potential for harmful use. Soldiers on both sides during World War II used these drugs for their stimulant properties. After the war, harmful use of amphetamines reached epidemic proportions in Japan, Sweden, and other parts of Europe, yet the drugs were not recognized as dangerous in the United States until the 1960s. Ironically, amphetamines became a major problem in the United States when physicians began to prescribe methamphetamine as a treatment for heroin dependence. Like Freud's cocaine treatment of morphine dependence, this treatment backfired, resulting in an explosion of amphetamine misuse, particularly on the West Coast during the early 1960s (Brecher, 1972).

TABLE 6.1 Controlled Stimulants

Generic Names	Brand Names	Slang Terms
Cocaine	—	angel powder, diosa blanca, mama coca, white wove
Dextroamphetamine	Adderall, Vyvanse	addy, speed
Methamphetamine	Desoxyn	chicken feed, speed, speed dog, yellow cake
Methylphenidate	Ritalin, Concerta	kiddie coke, vitamin R
Methcathinone	—	cat
Mephedrone	—	bath salts, bubbles, meow-meow

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The use of injected amphetamine resulted in a pattern of misuse reminiscent of the cocaine problems seen at the turn of the century and again today. Individuals experience a brief but intense "flash" or "rush" immediately after the drug is injected. The strongly pleasurable feeling produced following amphetamine or cocaine injection is often described as orgasmic in nature, but because it lasts only a few minutes, one soon craves a return to the heights of pleasure even though the level of the drug in the body remains high. A series of injections often follows; individuals become more and more stimulated but have difficulty obtaining a rush as pleasurable as the first. Because both cocaine and amphetamines suppress appetite and prevent sleep, people may go for days without sleep, eating very little and administering dose after dose.

When dose levels of amphetamine get large enough, individuals develop formication symptoms (called "speed bugs" or "crank bugs") and paranoid delusions. Thus, a psychosis is produced not only by cocaine, but amphetamines can also cause an almost identical phenomenon.

stimulant psychosis Paranoid delusions and disorientation resembling the symptoms of paranoid schizophrenia, caused by prolonged use or overdose of cocaine and/or amphetamine.

The paranoid psychosis produced by cocaine and amphetamine overdose is properly called **stimulant psychosis**. While amphetamine overdose deaths did occur, they were relatively rare. Far more common was the development of a paranoid state that often led to acts of violence. In addition, after a long binge of harmful amphetamine use, individuals may crash (sleep for an extended period) and then awaken deeply depressed. The depression could last for days and is now recognized as a common withdrawal symptom after heavy use of either amphetamine or cocaine. The depression often leads one back to drugs to try to get "up" again, and the cycle is repeated. Eventually, one's physical and mental health deteriorates badly unless they can break out of the cycle.

As the word spread about the hazards of harmful amphetamine use, people tried to obtain other stimulants they thought might be safer. For example, a compound related to the amphetamines called phenmetrazine had a run of popularity in the 1970s, but soon it was recognized that it, too, produced all the adverse effects of the amphetamines. By the middle of that decade, a different trend was clear: A "new" stimulant drug was on the scene, an "organic" or "natural" drug—surely there could be nothing wrong with . . . cocaine?

REVIEW

1. Create a time line indicating the major events associated with the historical use of the amphetamines.
2. Create a chart to compare the historical and contemporary medical uses of the amphetamines.

6.4 Cocaine Epidemic II

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-4 Discern how the early, unregulated medical use of cocaine and amphetamines was associated with their misuse

It has been said that those who do not know history are condemned to repeat it, and that certainly seems to be true with cocaine. Why did cocaine reemerge as a stimulant of choice? One reason is that, in the early 1970s, cocaine was fairly difficult to obtain

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and was quite expensive. It became glamorized as the drug of movie stars and pro athletes (who were among the few who could afford to buy it), and thus acquired a reputation as the "champagne" of the stimulants. Most who used cocaine during this period experimented with low doses taken intranasally and thus rarely encountered the problems associated with intravenous use. There were occasional exceptions: One of the first of many athletes to admit to a major cocaine problem was former Dallas Cowboy linebacker Hollywood Henderson, who acknowledged he had acquired a $1,000-a-day habit in 1978. But this type of cocaine casualty was relatively rare. Cocaine was believed to be a fairly innocuous drug. To give you a feeling of the times, Ashley (1975) concluded in a popular book that cocaine was "not an addictive, especially dangerous drug" (p. 186).

Unquestionably, the contemporary view is that cocaine is, in fact, a very dangerous drug. Today, Ashley's comments seem naive because there have been many well-documented deaths from cocaine overdose and, through the media, we have witnessed the struggles of many famous personalities trying to recover from cocaine dependence. Several factors led to the increase in cocaine-related problems. One has been the increased availability of cheaper cocaine. This has led to changing patterns of use, as more people were able to regularly use the drug in high doses. Another critical factor was the practice of smoking freebase cocaine or crack. Although freebasing cocaine seemed to emerge in the late 1970s, **crack** burst upon the national scene in 1986.

crack
A freebase cocaine produced by mixing cocaine salt with baking soda and water. The solution is then heated, resulting in brittle sheets of cocaine that are "cracked" into small smokable chunks or "rocks."

The form in which cocaine is administered is an important determinant of misuse potential (see Table 6.2). Street cocaine, which takes the form of a white powder, is produced by combining a paste made from coca leaves with a hydrochloric acid solution to form a salt—cocaine hydrochloride. Because it is a salt, street cocaine is water-soluble and can be injected or taken intranasally (sniffed or snorted). Intranasal cocaine can produce intense effects, but because it causes constriction of blood vessels in the nose, absorption is slowed. By the way, it is this vasoconstriction that results in inflammation and tissue damage of the mucous membranes of the nose in those who chronically took cocaine intranasally. Overdose deaths, psychosis, and dependence are all possible consequences of intranasal cocaine but are less common than with injected cocaine. Because sniffing was the major method of administration on the street until the late 1980s, the hazards of cocaine use were underestimated.

Freebasing is the term used to describe the practice of smoking cocaine, but as a point of clarification, it should be noted that cocaine is not burned like tobacco but rather is heated until it vaporizes. When the vaporized cocaine is inhaled, it is absorbed rapidly and completely in lung tissue and produces an intensely pleasurable high of very short duration followed by a severe crash. However, cocaine is broken down at the high temperatures necessary to smoke it when it is in the salt form. To smoke cocaine, the hydrochloride salt must be separated from the cocaine base, and this is where "freebase" and crack come in.

TABLE 6.2 Types of Cocaine and Routes of Administration

Cocaine	Form	Method
Coca leaf	—	Oral
Coca paste (basuco)	Cocaine sulfate	Smokable
Street cocaine	Cocaine hydrochloride	Intranasal, injection
Crack	Freebase cocaine	Smokable

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Newphotoservice/Dreamstime.com

Sniffing lines of cocaine through a rolled dollar bill.

Freebase cocaine is made by mixing street cocaine with a highly flammable substance—ether. Many people have been badly burned by failing to handle the ether properly. The late comedian Richard Pryor developed a popular routine in which he spoofed the severe burns he received in a freebase accident. Base cocaine can be produced more simply and safely by dissolving the cocaine salt in an alkaline solution (e.g., baking soda). When the water in the solution is boiled off, what remains is a hard, rocklike substance called "crack" or "rock" cocaine. Crack has a low melting point and thus can be heated and the fumes inhaled while the potency of the cocaine is preserved. The name *crack* is said to come from the crackling sound made by the baking soda left in the compound when it is heated (Inciardi, 2002). Smoking crack results in rapid and concentrated delivery of cocaine to the brain, and the intense "rush" is so pleasurable that those with substance use disorder actually prefer it to comparable doses of injected cocaine (Foltin & Fischman, 1993). The euphoria is short-lived, however, and within 10 to 20 minutes, those who use crack report a "crash" and begin to crave another hit.

Crack is cheaper and less dangerous to produce than other forms of freebase, so dealers became attracted to it. Also it is so potent that it can be sold in small chunks or rocks and so is relatively affordable. Because it produces such strong cravings and dependence, a large market for crack developed almost overnight. Although there is evidence of sporadic crack use in the 1970s, it came to the attention of the media in late 1985, and by early 1986, national media such as *Time*, *Newsweek*, and various television documentaries reported that crack use had emerged as a national crisis. By the late 1980s, millions of Americans had tried crack, and overdose deaths were increasing. Cocaine can kill, especially when smoked. Other cocaine overdose emergencies, such as paranoid reactions, also increased rapidly during this period. According to the National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA) statistics, more than 80,000 cocaine-related emergency room visits occurred in 1990, up from 10,000 in 1985, and almost none in the early 1970s (NIDA, 1991). Dependence on cocaine, once viewed as a minor problem, came to be seen as one of the nation's major health problems with the introduction of crack. The National High School Senior Survey reported peak levels of use in 1986, when 4.1% of students reported using crack and 12.7% used powdered cocaine during the past year. By 1992, these figures had dropped to a low of 1.5% using crack and 3.1% using powdered cocaine during the year, and use has continued to decline slightly since then. The 2016 survey (the most current data available at this writing) revealed 2.3% of high school seniors using cocaine in any form during the past year (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2016). Contemporary use among adults is somewhat higher, with 5.8% of Americans between the ages of 18 and 25 reporting use of some cocaine during the past year in a recent national survey (SAMHSA, 2018). Medical problems associated with cocaine use continue to be quite high. Indeed, cocaine overdose deaths increased between 2009 and 2019. This increased mortality is largely due to using cocaine in combination with opioids such as fentanyl or heroin (see Chapter 10) (Jones et al., 2017—see Contemporary Issue Box 6.3).

> *"You want to know why I grow coca, right? The answer is: because I can live on it."*
>
> Colombian coca farmer (Streatfeild, 2001)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Despite the intense war on drugs in the United States and Latin America, it has proven difficult to prevent cocaine from reaching the United States. Although the United States has spent billions of dollars on drug eradication in Latin America, availability of cocaine in the United States remains high (Miroff, 2017). Historically, the distribution of cocaine was controlled by large and well-organized cartels based in Colombia, and these cartels supplied most of the cocaine that reached the United States. As the United States and Colombian governments began to crack down on cocaine smuggling in the 1980s, the war on drugs became a literal war. For example, the city of Medellín, Colombia, was a quiet, conservative town; then the powerful Medellín Cartel emerged, and more than 2,000 murders were reported during the first 6 months of 1989 alone. Government officials, judges, and court employees were often targets of assassinations, and the impact of this terror on the fabric of the city and perhaps the entire country has been enormous (Roldan, 1999; Streatfeild, 2001). Pablo Escobar, former head of the Medellín Cartel, was eventually killed in a gunfight with police in 1993, but the decline of the Medellín Cartel simply allowed another group, the Cali Cartel, to take control. During the early 1990s, the Cali Cartel is thought to have made billions of dollars in the cocaine trade annually and was rich enough that they once tried to lease their own satellite to avoid eavesdropping by the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) and U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA). By the end of the decade, the Colombian National Police working with the U.S. DEA had arrested virtually all the Cali Cartel leaders. The cocaine trade did not vanish but simply became less centralized, with former Cali Cartel members moving their operations to multiple sites (Inciardi, 2002). Cooperative efforts to control cocaine production in Colombia did result in an 11% decline in production in that country, but this was offset by increased production in Peru and Bolivia (Efron, 2005), and more recently, production is back up in Colombia (Miroff, 2017).

Aizar Raldes/AFP/Getty Images

A woman selling various products made from coca leaves at a market.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

One of the difficulties in controlling coca production is that the tradition of coca use is still very much alive in many Andean countries and coca cultivation is often supported by the government. Farmers obtain licenses to grow coca, which is used to produce legal coca products that remain popular throughout the Andean region (see Drugs and Culture Box 6.1). Most of the cocaine entering the United States comes through Mexico, so you might think that preventing access to U.S. borders would be straightforward. But land, air, and sea routes provide many possible entry points, and despite significant interdiction efforts, it continues to be difficult to control the amount of cocaine that reaches the United States.

Once in the United States, cocaine distribution continues to contribute to crime and violence. Organized gangs generally control the cocaine market. These highly organized criminal elements pose a major threat to police and civilians alike. Unlike the traditional notion of small-time drug dealers, modern drug criminals often possess high-tech weapons and sophisticated transportation systems. Cocaine, particularly

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 6.1

The Coca Leaf in Latin America

The practice of chewing the coca leaf in the Andean countries of South America was never eliminated, despite the efforts of the early Spanish colonists. Use of coca remains very popular today in the mountainous regions of Argentina, Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, and Peru. Today, populations in these countries are all predominantly Catholic, so use of the coca leaf has lost its religious significance, but rather is primarily based on the desired stimulant effects. Chewing coca and drinking tea brewed from coca leaves are common daily activities in the region, and these practices are thought to stimulate alertness, reduce fatigue, and combat altitude sickness, among other health benefits. Despite pressure from the United States to eradicate coca production, limited cultivation of coca is legal in Bolivia, Colombia, and Peru, and coca leaves and coca tea bags are sold legally at local markets throughout the region. Opposition to the U.S. coca eradication policies has become a nationalistic issue in several Latin American countries. As an example, Evo Morales was elected president of Bolivia in 2006, in part because of his pledge to decriminalize coca production. President Morales spoke to delegates at the Vienna meeting of the United Nations Commission on Narcotic Drugs in March 2009, to demand that coca be removed from the United Nation's list of prohibited drugs. He was not arguing for the legalization of cocaine powder or crack, but rather that the small amounts of cocaine absorbed by chewing coca are not harmful, a position that has some scientific support (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1976). He dramatized his speech by holding up a coca leaf and chewing it after his presentation.

Spencer Platt/Staff/Getty Images

Bolivian President Evo Morales held up a coca leaf at a United Nations conference to dramatize his defense of the traditional use of coca in South America.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

crack cocaine, has detrimental effects on those who use it. Because the allure of crack is so great, dependence on the drug leads many people to tragic levels of desperation and self-destruction. The "crack house"—a place where crack is sold and smoked—became a symbol of the devastation that drugs can cause. Studies of crack house activities chronicle examples of prostitution, murder, rape, child abuse, and other acts of violence (Inciardi, 2002). The dangers of smoking cocaine are well known. So why are people still smoking crack?

Consider this seductive and sinister description from a cocaine smoker:

> Imagine you are on an island and offshore about a dozen yards is this orange-pink haze that is glowing and extremely enticing. So you walk out into that cold, dark water and you swim a ways to get near that glow and you're out on the edge of it and it feels so good and so warm, but it moves away a little. So you swim out into deeper water and this time you get even closer to the center and it is so incredibly seductive. But now it's moving a little faster out into the ocean and you swim harder trying to keep up and you're getting farther and farther away from shore. That's how with the first few tokes you feel pretty good and then with a deep toke you are near the center and it's so exhilarating but you come down and keep wanting more. Pretty soon you are way the hell out in the cold black ocean and you're faced with keeping up swimming harder toward that warm, wonderful, glowing haze just out of reach or turning back and swimming miles back to shore in that dark, cold water. (Kirsch, 1986, p. 49)

Concerns about crack cocaine led to the passage of the Anti-Drug Abuse Acts of 1986 and 1988, which specified penalties for sale (1986) and possession (1988) of crack. These laws became highly controversial, and some discussion here is warranted. A conviction for selling large quantities (500 grams or more) of cocaine powder (the salt form) triggered a minimum sentence of 5 years in prison. The 1986 law created a 5-year minimum sentence for selling only 5 grams of crack—100 times less than that needed for cocaine in the powder form. The 1988 law extended the 5-year minimum penalty to those convicted only of *possession* of 5 grams of crack cocaine. Although these extreme penalties were designed to curb the very real crack problem in the United States, the laws resulted in inequities that were increasingly seen as problematic. Basically, small-time crack dealers and those who used crack cocaine were punished more severely than major, high-volume dealers of cocaine powder. Ironically, powder dealers may actually be the suppliers of cocaine for those who use crack, thus those who used crack were actually hit harder than their suppliers! These laws also disproportionately affected African Americans, as they represent more than 80% of crack prosecutions (see Alexander, 2011). Recognizing these inequities, a review of the policy by the Obama administration resulted in the 2010 Fair Sentencing Act, which eliminated the minimum-sentence requirement for small amounts of crack.

6.5 The Return of Meth

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-5 Discuss the stimulant psychosis that can occur with prolonged use of cocaine and amphetamines

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Although the United States was coming to grips with the dangers of cocaine during the 1980s, a "new" stimulant drug began to appear on the street called "ice," "crystal," "crank," or "meth." Of course, this was really nothing new. The drug is methamphetamine, and we reviewed its devastating impact on people in the 1970s earlier in this chapter. In the early 1990s, methamphetamine (meth) reappeared on the West Coast and Hawaii, and steadily spread east. Illegal methamphetamine laboratories began to spring up with great frequency in the Midwest in the early 2000s, and by 2005, it began to reach the East Coast as well. Some other aspects of the epidemiology of meth use are of interest. In the 1980s and 1990s, meth was known as a "biker" drug, and it was associated with blue-collar White males. Today, meth is often referred to as a "club" drug, and its use has become more cosmopolitan. Methamphetamine use has become more common among women and non-White populations and is very prevalent among gay and bisexual men (Zule et al., 2012). However, the overall rates of methamphetamine use among adults 18 and older continues to decline, with a peak of 4.1% in 1999 and a drop to 0.4% in 2018 (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2018).

Although overall levels of meth use have declined in recent years, the drug continues to have a significant social impact. As noted in Chapter 2, the 1996 Comprehensive Methamphetamine Control Act was passed in the early stages of the problem to increase penalties for meth manufacture and trafficking. At that time, meth trafficking appears to have been controlled by organized cartels primarily located in California and Mexico, and although these large-scale operations may have been affected by the legislation, meth production then shifted to "kitchen" labs, which have been much more difficult to curb (Coleman, 2016; Cunningham & Liu, 2005). It does not require much space or sophisticated equipment to produce meth, and a meth lab can be set up easily in a garage, shed, or trailer. As these "kitchen" meth labs proliferated around the country, new problems emerged: The products they use pose a significant public health problem because of risk of explosion and because they produce toxic waste. Many of the chemicals used to produce meth are highly flammable, and the process also requires that the ingredients be heated with a burner; therefore, a significant risk of explosion and fire is present. Several of the chemicals used to make meth are toxic, as are some of the by-products that can cause significant health hazards wherever they are dumped; thus, meth labs represent a biohazard not only to those making the drug but to nearby residents as well (Halkitis, 2009). Those who use meth are also at risk for a number of health complications that we review in Contemporary Issue Box 6.2.

> *"Meth was a call to action. . . . I felt ultrasharp. Edgy and exhilarated. Ready to roll. Equal to any task. . . . Give me enough meth and I was ready to conquer the world."*
>
> F. Owen (2007, p. 3), on meth

Most meth labs use pseudoephedrine (or ephedrine) as a key chemical component. Pseudoephedrine is used in a wide variety of over-the-counter cold formulations (see Chapter 14) and, until recently, was easily obtained. In an effort to shut down "kitchen" meth labs, the federal Combat Methamphetamine Epidemic Act went into effect in 2006. This act now regulates sales of any products containing pseudoephedrine and ephedrine. Sales are restricted to pharmacies, and although no prescription is required, the drugs must be kept behind the counter and pharmacists are required to record each purchase and purchaser. The amount that any individual may purchase is restricted to relatively low levels. There are indications that this act reduced meth production. However, when meth became more difficult to produce in the United States, drug trafficking organizations in Mexico returned to the field, and it is estimated that as much as 80% of the meth consumed in the United States is produced in Mexican laboratories and is smuggled across the border (Coleman, 2016). This is a good illustration of the complexity of controlling drug availability when a strong demand exists for the drug.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 6.2

Methamphetamine and Health

In addition to the hazards associated with meth production, those who regularly use high doses of meth risk a number of health problems. Exposure to very high doses poses a risk of seizures, convulsions, and cardiovascular collapse. Overdose can also produce the paranoid symptoms of stimulant psychosis often associated with violent behavior. A study of young adults who regularly use high doses of meth found that over one-third of the respondents reported committing acts of violence while under the influence of meth (Sommers et al., 2006). Those who use meth regularly face additional problems. Depression is a common feature of methamphetamine withdrawal syndrome. "Meth mouth," characterized by deterioration and loss of teeth, is also common among those who use meth regularly (Shetty et al., 2016). In addition, several studies in animals and humans suggest that methamphetamine produces a relatively long-term reduction in dopamine activity in the brain (Ashok et al., 2017) and some studies have found those who use methamphetamines to have higher rates of Parkinson's disease (Grenado et al., 2013).

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast the symptoms associated with prolonged use or overdose of cocaine and methamphetamine.
2. Describe factors associated with the recent increased use of cocaine and methamphetamine in the United States.
3. Explain the risks associated with prenatal exposure to cocaine.

6.6 Bath Salts

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-6 Explain the role of synthetic stimulants in drug use

As noted in Chapter 2, a new wave of synthetic drugs emerged in the 2000s and some of these were stimulant drugs. Drugs like mephedrone, methylone, and methylenedioxypyrovalerone (MDPV) were rarely seen in the United States before 2009, but began to appear in products labeled "**bath salts**" or "plant food" sold on the Internet or in specialty shops. The drugs sold as bath salts are nearly all amphetamine-like stimulants that are synthetic analogs of a compound called cathinone, a stimulant drug found naturally in a plant called khat, which is native to Africa (see Drugs and Culture Box 6.5).

bath salts
A psychoactive "designer drug" that is synthesized from various amphetamine-like chemicals and can be inhaled, swallowed, smoked, or injected.

The history behind these synthetic cathinones is quite interesting. Mephedrone was actually synthesized in the 1920s, but was virtually unknown until it was applied as a means of insect control in Israel in the early 2000s. Apparently, its stimulant properties became recognized and it became widely used as a club drug in Israel—often called "plant food" because of its agricultural origins. The drug spread to Europe where it became one of the most popular club drugs by 2009, but generated a media storm as it was associated with a number of emergency room visits and overdose deaths (Nutt, 2012).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

AP Images/Daily Post Athenian/Ben Benton

Law enforcement officers clean up hazardous waste from a meth lab in rural Tennessee.

Mills, Andy/Star Ledger/Corbis

Synthetic methcathinone is often sold as bath salts or plant food.

Bath salts are sometimes taken orally, but more often are taken intranasally or injected, and high doses can easily be obtained through these methods. Like cocaine and amphetamines, high doses of synthetic cathinones can produce acute psychotic effects and paranoia, and very high doses can be fatal (Murray et al., 2012). In 2010, these drugs emerged in the United States in the guise of dozens of brands of what was sometimes called plant food, but more often bath salts, perhaps because of the resemblance of the compound to products actually used in the bathtub! Generally the products are labeled as "not for human consumption," as this may make prosecution of the distributor more difficult.

As in Europe, these drugs quickly became controversial. Their use was associated with a high incidence of emergency room visits and some deaths due to overdose. The number of emergency calls to U.S. poison control centers regarding these drugs went from 0 in 2009 to 298 in 2010 and then to 6,062 in 2011. The main features associated with acute toxicity include panic attacks, paranoia, hallucinations, hostility, self-mutilation, tachycardia, and elevated blood pressure (Wood, 2013). To be sure, some of the negative publicity associated with bath salts was misleading at best. One widely publicized episode involved Rudy Eugene, a Miami man who attacked and was chewing the face of his victim when he was shot and killed by police in May 2012. Initial news reports claimed that Eugene was high on bath salts during the attack, implying that the drugs caused cannibalism! However, an autopsy found no evidence of synthetic cathinones or any other drug other than THC in his system (CBS Miami, 2012), although this fact was less well publicized. Nonetheless, there were enough genuine emergencies involving bath salts that the DEA placed the three main synthetic cathinones—mephedrone, methylone, and MDPV—on an emergency Schedule I status in 2011, and mephedrone and MDPV were included in the 2012 Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act (see Chapter 2). Since then several more synthetic cathinones were placed on emergency Schedule I status, but the problem continues as new compounds continue to be synthesized and distributed. That said, increased legal control and the adverse publicity seem to be having an impact as the number of emergency calls to U.S. poison centers for synthetic cathinones dropped from a peak of over 700 cases in the single month of June 2011 to 266 between January 1 and August 1 of 2016 (NDEWS, 2017; Wood, 2013).

REVIEW

1. Describe the history of synthetic cathinones.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6.7 Pharmacokinetics of Stimulants

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-7 Explain the mechanism of action for stimulants

As noted, stimulant drugs may be administered and absorbed in a variety of ways, and their intensity and duration of action vary accordingly. Cocaine, amphetamines, and amphetamine-like stimulants (e.g., bath salts, methylphenidate) are readily absorbed after oral administration, but the onset of drug action is slower and the peak effect somewhat less than with other methods. These drugs are commonly administered intranasally, and the absorption properties are similar to those associated with oral administration (Iversen et al., 2009). In contrast to oral or intranasal routes, which require 10 to 15 minutes for drug action to begin, intravenous injection of stimulants results in intense effects within 30 seconds. When crack cocaine and crystal methamphetamine are smoked in the form of crack or freebase, the onset of action is even faster (Jones, 1987a).

In general, the effects of the drugs considered in this chapter are quite similar. One important difference between cocaine and the amphetamines is their duration of action. Cocaine is metabolized rapidly, with most of its effects dissipating 20 to 80 minutes after administration (Newton et al., 2005). Cocaine or its metabolites (chemicals produced when the drug is broken down in the body) are detectible in human urine for 2 to 3 days after administration (Hawks & Chiang, 1986). Amphetamines are much longer acting, with effects that persist 4 to 12 hours (Newton et al., 2005), and they or their metabolites are also detectible in urine for 2 to 3 days (Hawks & Chiang, 1986). The synthetic cathinones are more similar to amphetamines with typical duration of action 3 to 4 hours (Gershman & Fass, 2012).

> *". . . it's the best feeling you ever had. It's like your mind is running 100 miles an hour, but your feet aren't moving."*
>
> An individual who uses meth describing the effects of "slamming" (injecting) methamphetamine (Jefferson, 2005)

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast the drug experience associated with cocaine and methamphetamine.

6.8 Mechanism of Stimulant Action

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-8 Compare the behavioral effects stimulants produce at low, moderate, and high doses

As noted in Chapter 3, stimulant drugs such as cocaine and the amphetamines are thought to affect the brain primarily through complex actions on monoamine neurotransmitters: dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin. For example, both cocaine and the amphetamines block reuptake of dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin. In addition, the amphetamines and methylphenidate also increase the release of

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

dopamine and norepinephrine (Iversen et al., 2009). The synthetic cathinones work through similar actions with some increasing release of monoamines like amphetamines (e.g., mephedrone) and others (MDPV) blocking reuptake more like cocaine (Cameron et al., 2013; Lehner & Baumann, 2013). Thus, the initial effect of stimulants is to produce a storm of activity in neural pathways that are sensitive to the monoamine transmitters. Because of this increased activity, however, and particularly because reuptake is blocked so that enzymes break down the neurotransmitters, the long-term effects of stimulant use involve depletion of monoamines. If you remember that low levels of monoamines may be associated with clinical depression (see Chapter 3), then you have the basis for one theory of why the aftereffects of heavy cocaine and amphetamine use involve depression (Dackis & Gold, 1985). To explain this hypothesis, we must turn briefly to data from animal research.

It has been known for a long time that animals will self-administer cocaine and amphetamines. Given a choice between responses that produce cocaine and other rewards, rats and monkeys will choose cocaine over other drugs and sometimes even over food (Bozarth & Wise, 1985). The powerful reinforcing properties of cocaine and amphetamines are thought to stem from their action on dopamine-containing neurons in the mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway (Koob et al., 2014). As you may recall from Chapter 3, this brain region is thought to mediate reward, and thus use of these stimulants has been described as a chemical shortcut to the reward systems of the brain. Because a depletion of dopamine (along with other neurotransmitters important in depression) may occur in the long run, however, those who use stimulants may then find that their ability to experience normal pleasure is diminished. The feeling of depression and lack of joy is so common during cocaine withdrawal that it is known as the "cocaine blues."

Figure 6.1 illustrates the relationship between mood and cocaine use for moderate and heavy use. The peak at the left shows the mood elevation that occurs upon

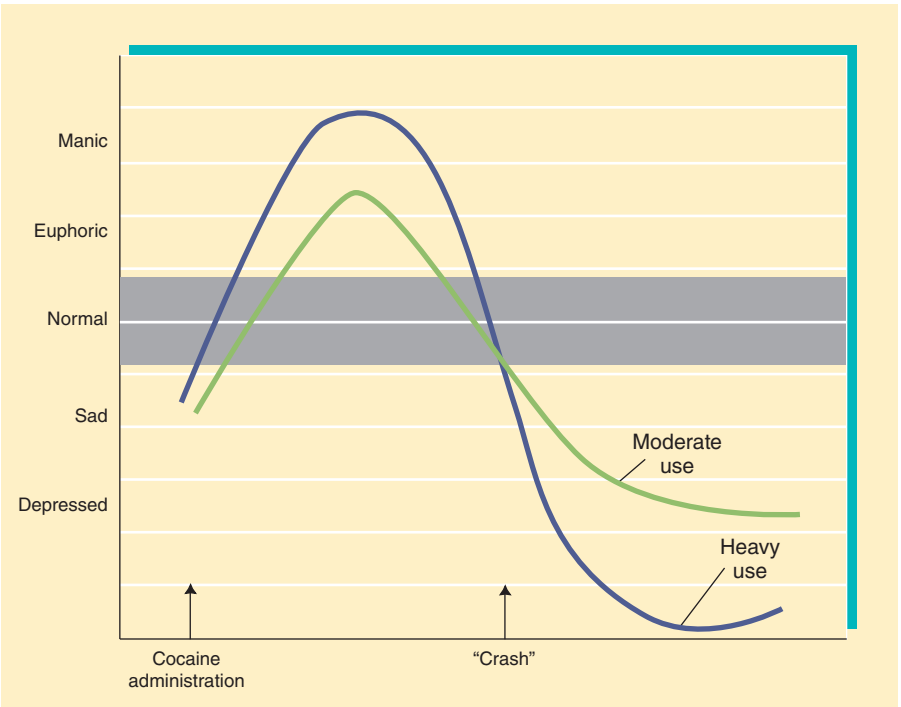


FIGURE 6.1
Relationship between cocaine dose and mood

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

cocaine administration; the valley at right depicts the consequent depression. The depression of mood is greater with heavy use. Note that these general observations seem to hold for the dose in a single session and long-term use. However, the depressive abstinence syndrome is thought to be stronger and last longer in those who have been taking the drug for an extended period. The function for amphetamines is of similar shape, but is more extended because of their longer duration of action. Of considerable concern is that some alterations in the monoamine systems after chronic stimulant use may be long term. A recent review found consistent evidence of decreased dopamine activity in those who use stimulants (cocaine, amphetamine, or methamphetamine) even after as much as 3 weeks of abstinence (Ashok et al., 2017).

REVIEW

1. Describe the short-term and long-term effects stimulants have on the brain.

6.9 Acute Effects at Low and Moderate Doses

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-9 Compare the physiological effects stimulants produce at low, moderate, and high doses

Effects of stimulant drugs differ across the range of doses. We first consider effects that are typical in the low to moderate dose range.

Physiological Effects

Stimulant drugs produce physiological effects that are observable outside the brain. We discuss the effects of cocaine, amphetamines, and cathinones together because, for all practical purposes, their measurable effects are identical. Although individuals often claim to notice subjective differences between stimulants, even those who have repeatedly used stimulants cannot discriminate among the effects of cocaine, amphetamines, and methylphenidate except for the different durations of action during laboratory experiments (Fischman, 1984; Sevak et al., 2009).

Stimulants are classic examples of sympathomimetic drugs; that is, they act to stimulate or mimic activity in the sympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system. Thus, many of their physiological effects are the same as those seen during emotional arousal: Heart rate is up, blood pressure is up, respiratory rate is up, and sweating increases. Meanwhile, blood flow decreases to the internal organs and extremities but increases to the large muscle groups and the brain. Finally, body temperature is elevated and pupils are dilated.

These drugs also produce appetite-suppressant or **anorectic effects**. People simply do not feel hungry after taking stimulant drugs. It is these anorectic effects that were sought when amphetamines were prescribed as diet pills. Although patients definitely ate less and lost weight on diet pills, they had to take larger doses to maintain the

anorectic effects Causing one to lose appetite; suppression of eating.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

weight loss, and patients typically regained the weight when they went off the drugs. Thus, the benefits of diet pills were outweighed by the risk of dependence and other side effects. This approach to treating obesity is now considered questionable at best.

Behavioral Effects

Moderate doses of cocaine, amphetamines, and cathinones produce a sense of elation and mood elevation (Hart et al., 2008; Iversen, 2008). Individuals show increased talkativeness and sociability (Higgins & Stitzer, 1988). Alertness and arousal are increased, and marked insomnia often develops. These drugs also enhance performance on a wide variety of tasks involving physical endurance, such as running and swimming, and they increase physical strength. In a review of the literature on amphetamines and sports, Laties and Weiss (1981) concluded that amphetamines confer a small but significant edge to athletes. Although the data on cocaine are scant, it appears to have the same effects but is limited by its short duration of action (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1976).

Because stimulants increase resistance to fatigue and boredom, they have often been used as a study aid, as in the amphetamine-induced "all-nighter." Several problems result from this type of stimulant use. One is that information learned under the influence of a drug is best recalled when the individual is in that same drug-induced state. This phenomenon is called **state-dependent learning**, and it is true of a number of drugs other than stimulants (Poling & Cross, 1993). Now, we are not suggesting that students should take the test "high" if they study high. Rather, the phenomenon of state-dependent learning suggests that people will have problems learning information when under the influence of a drug because the ability to retrieve the information will not be as good when sober.

state-dependent learning
When learning under the influence of a drug is best recalled when one is in the same "state."

Stimulants have been shown to enhance some types of cognitive performance. They have consistently been shown to speed up performance on a variety of cognitive tasks, but often with the cost of increased errors (Iversen, 2008). However, stimulants actually may impair one's ability to learn highly complex tasks (Fischman, 1984). Considerable anecdotal evidence suggests that stimulants may impair performance in complex reasoning. Consider the case of William Halsted. Halsted became known as the father of modern surgery for his pioneering work in the early 1900s. But later in his career, while studying the anesthetic properties of cocaine, he was probably the first American to develop physical and mental dependence on the drug. At one point during his cocaine dependency, he published an article in the *New York Medical Journal* that begins with this sentence:

> Neither indifferent as to which of how many possibilities may best explain nor yet quite at a loss to comprehend, why surgeons have, and that so many, quite without discredit, could have exhibited scarcely any interest in what, as a local anaesthetic, had been supposed, if not declared, by most so very sure to prove, especially to them, attractive, still I do not think that this circumstance, or some sense of obligation to rescue fragmentary reputation for surgeons rather than the belief that an opportunity existed for assisting others to an appreciable extent, induced me, several months ago, to write on the subject in hand the greater part of a somewhat comprehensive paper, which poor health disinclined me to complete. (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1976, p. 32)

Given the apparent effects of cocaine on Halstead's writing style, it is frightening to imagine how his surgery was going! So the notion that cocaine enhances intellectual performance appears to be a myth.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6.10 Acute Effects at High Doses

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-10 Summarize the complex pattern of tolerance for stimulants.

As we noted earlier, when people take high doses of stimulant drugs, a characteristic psychotic state emerges. This state can be produced in normal volunteers in a laboratory setting by amphetamines, cocaine, the methcathinones, or methylphenidate (Ritalin) (Davis & Schlemmer, 1980; Wood, 2013). Such psychotic reactions are currently a serious problem with those who use high doses of methamphetamine or crack cocaine. Paranoid delusions are the most common symptom of stimulant psychosis, but a second symptom commonly noted is compulsive stereotyped behavior like rocking, hair pulling, chain smoking, or "fiddling with things." Other symptoms may include hallucinations and, as noted earlier, formication. Interestingly, stimulant psychosis may be successfully treated with chlorpromazine (Thorazine) or other drugs used in the treatment of schizophrenia (Davis & Schlemmer, 1980).

A risk of overdose death also accompanies high doses of stimulant drugs. Specifying the dose that places those who use stimulants at risk is difficult. With cocaine in particular, when we speak of low-to-moderate doses, we refer to 15 to 60 milligrams (a typical "line" contains 10 to 20 milligrams). But cocaine overdose deaths have been reported in individuals who were given as little as 20 milligrams as a local anesthetic, apparently because they suffered from a rare deficiency of the enzyme that breaks down cocaine in the blood and liver (Weiss & Mirin, 1987). Such cases are certainly exceptional, and generally much higher doses are taken before either stimulant psychosis or death results. When very high doses of stimulant drugs are taken, several complications may produce a medical emergency or overdose death. These include convulsions or seizures that may result in respiratory collapse, myocardial infarction (heart attack) due to coronary artery spasm, and stroke (Sorer, 1992). To further complicate matters, those who use stimulants often combine cocaine with other drugs to produce complex and often unpredictable drug interactions (see Contemporary Issue Box 6.3). There has been a great deal of publicity regarding death due to synthetic cathinone overdose in recent years, and although some have argued that the risks have been exaggerated (Nutt, 2012), there certainly have been documented fatal overdose cases (Murray et al., 2012).

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast physiological and behavioral effects of stimulants when taken at low and moderate doses.
2. Compare and contrast physiological and behavioral effects of stimulants when taken at high doses.

6.11 Effects of Chronic Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-11 Describe drug dependence and the symptoms of withdrawal associated with stimulants.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

When stimulants are taken regularly over a long period (chronic use), several additional problems and issues arise. These are discussed in the following sections.

Tolerance

Chronic drug use may result in the development of tolerance, and this turns out to be fairly complex in the case of the stimulants. First, acute tolerance develops for cocaine; that is, the effects obtained from the first administration of the drug are not produced by a second administration shortly afterward, unless a higher dose is used. An individual who freebased cocaine describes this effect:

"I need it. I need it. You couldn't possibly understand."

John Belushi on cocaine (Woodward, 1984)

> You can do enough freebase to kill you and not realize it because the base numbs your lungs and you can keep sucking it in. After that first hit, you spend the rest of the night trying for that same rush. You keep hoping the next hit will do it, and you add more to the pipe and breathe in deeper, but it's never the same and I mean never the same. Nothing compares to that first hit. (Kirsch, 1986, p. 49)

Acute tolerance to the subjective effects of cocaine has been demonstrated in humans in laboratory settings (Ward et al., 1997). This acute tolerance dissipates rapidly too, usually within 24 hours. But studies of the development of long-term protracted tolerance to cocaine and amphetamines have not yielded consistent findings. Ward et al. (1997) found both acute and chronic tolerance to the heart rate increases produced by cocaine in the laboratory. That is, tolerance to the heart rate–increasing effects developed within a single session, and the tolerance persisted and developed further across sessions. However, only acute tolerance was found with the effects of cocaine on blood pressure and subjects' self-reports of stimulation and feeling high. On a given day, the effects of the first cocaine injection were not matched by subsequent injections, but strong effects could still be obtained the next day (Ward et al., 1997).

Comer et al. (2001) studied the effects of chronic methamphetamine use in a 15-day residential study with seven volunteers. The participants lived in a dormitory-style laboratory during the experiment and were given questionnaires several times each day about

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 6.3

Cocaine and Methamphetamine in Combination with Other Drugs

Cocaine and methamphetamine are often taken in combination with other drugs, particularly alcohol and opiates. Laboratory studies in humans have shown that alcohol can enhance and prolong the subjective pleasure associated with cocaine, and this is likely the basis for their frequent association. Recent studies have revealed that when cocaine is taken with alcohol, a new compound called cocaethylene is formed in the body. Cocaethylene has pharmacological properties similar to cocaine, but it may be more toxic. Some cases of cocaine overdose may in fact involve cocaethylene toxicity caused by combining cocaine and alcohol (Raven et al., 2000; Rush et al., 1998). Recent years have seen an alarming increase in deaths involving methamphetamine and cocaine. Overdose deaths involving methamphetamine started to rise in 2009 and had increased onefold by 2019. The number of overdose deaths involving cocaine has shown a similar pattern over the same decade. Most of the deaths appear to be due to individuals using these drugs in combination with opioids like heroin or fentanyl. Why might someone combine these stimulants and opioids? Some who use heroin and cocaine or methamphetamine report that the stimulant helps to balance out the drowsiness-inducing effects of opioids, allowing them to function "normally." However, combining these drugs enhances the toxicity and lethality of the drugs and can exacerbate cardiovascular and pulmonary effects.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

their subjective state as well as computer-based cognitive and performance tasks. On days 4 through 6 and 10 through 12, they were administered methamphetamine tablets, and on all other days, they received identical placebo tablets. Participants reported feeling a "good drug effect" and "high" on the first day of each methamphetamine run (days 4 and 10), but they did not report these positive effects on the second and third methamphetamine days (days 5 and 6, and days 11 and 12). Instead, on the third methamphetamine days (days 6 and 12), participants reported unpleasant effects such as dizziness and flulike symptoms. Their food intake declined, and their sleep patterns were also disrupted across each of the methamphetamine exposure periods. In sum, Comer et al. (2001) found that tolerance developed to positive subjective effects of methamphetamine use. The increase in negative effects with repeated administration was attributed in part to the accumulation of sleep loss and reduction of caloric intake. Although there is evidence of tolerance to both cocaine and the amphetamines, some studies have shown the development of what might be termed reverse tolerance or sensitization following repeated administration. In these cases, a given dose of cocaine produces a larger effect after one or more repetitions (e.g., Kollins & Rush, 2002). In any case, the occurrence of reverse or regular tolerance may depend on complex aspects of the situation and response being studied (Hughes et al., 1996; Reed et al., 2009).

Dependence

For many years, drug dependence was defined by physical withdrawal symptoms like those produced after heroin withdrawal (see Chapter 10). As a result, the severity of cocaine and amphetamine dependence was underestimated because some do not show dramatic signs of physical illness upon withdrawing from these drugs. The broader definition of drug dependence in use today (see Chapter 1) has helped to change perceptions about dependence on stimulants. Although the withdrawal syndrome associated with stimulants does not involve life-threatening physical symptoms, it is real and compelling. The primary symptoms are depression, anxiety, changes in appetite, sleeping disturbances, and craving for the drug (Schuckit, 2000). The temptation to resume use of the drug is described by many as overpowering. Some individuals go through distinct phases of withdrawal, but variability is considerable. The "crash" occurs first and involves several days of intense craving and exhaustion alternating with agitation and depression. Particularly in methamphetamine withdrawal, individuals may show greatly increased sleep time and food intake during this phase (McGregor et al., 2005). For several weeks, those who regularly use stimulants such as cocaine or amphetamines continue to feel intense cravings, moderate to severe depression, and an inability to experience normal pleasure (*anhedonia*). Although improvement gradually occurs, they may continue to experience intermittent cravings for months or even years. This phase has been called the *extinction phase* because the cravings seem to be caused by exposure to particular cues in the environment that were associated with cocaine use in the past and continue to "trigger" craving until eventually, perhaps via classical conditioning, the craving response is extinguished to these cues (Halkitis, 2009). Much less is known about dependency and chronic effects of the synthetic cathinones, but because their neuropharmacological actions are so similar to those of cocaine and amphetamines, and because they show strong misuse potential in animal self-administration studies, they are likely to produce similar problems in humans (Huskinson et al., 2017; Schindler et al., 2016).

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast the patterns of tolerance and dependence associated with stimulants.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6.12 Stimulant Drugs and ADHD

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

6-12 Explain why stimulant drugs are used to treat symptoms of attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder

Some children (and adults) have trouble sitting still and paying attention. This problem can be serious enough to interfere with a child's ability to perform in school, and such children are often diagnosed as suffering from attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder, or ADHD. Children with ADHD are not necessarily hyperactive, and many suffer primarily from symptoms of inattention. ADHD often leads to impaired academic performance, misbehavior at school, and conflict with peers, siblings, and parents. Although some children outgrow ADHD during puberty, more often these problems persist into adulthood.

In 1937, a physician named Charles Bradley discovered what appeared to be an extraordinary paradox: Hyperactive children were calmed by a dose of the stimulant drug amphetamine. Since then, many millions of children with ADHD have been treated with stimulant drugs, and methylphenidate (e.g., Concerta, Ritalin, Daytrana) and amphetamines (Adderall, Vyvanse) are now the most widely prescribed treatments for ADHD. The effects of methylphenidate are essentially the same as those of amphetamines reviewed previously in this chapter. Whether stimulants are overprescribed in the United States today has become controversial in part because of the enormous increase in prescriptions for Ritalin and other stimulants. Since 1990, use of these stimulants increased by nearly 500%. Over 10 million prescriptions for ADHD medications are filled annually, accounting for more than $8 billion in sales with most of these prescriptions for school-aged children (Chai et al., 2012; Cox et al., 2008; Newmark, 2013).

One line of criticism holds that children with ADHD should not be prescribed drugs because ADHD is not truly a medical disorder:

> The collection of behaviors subsumed in the diagnosis of ADHD including squirming in a seat and talking out of turn are not symptoms and do not reflect a syndrome. They are behaviors that disrupt classrooms and can be caused by anything from normal childhood energy to boring classrooms or overstressed parents and teachers. We should not suppress these behaviors with drugs; we should instead identify and meet the needs of our children in the school and the home. (Breggin, 2001, p. 595)

But, here is another side of the issue:

> Seemingly unknown to the experts du jour and talking heads of the popular media is that ADHD handily meets the two simple yet elegant criteria for constituting a "real disorder." . . . It constitutes a failure or serious deficiency in a mental mechanism that is universal to humans (a psychological adaptation in the evolutionary sense), in this case, response inhibition and self-regulation. And it produces harm. That is, it leads to substantial impairment in major life activities, including increased psychological and physical morbidity. (Barkley, 2001, p. ix)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 6.4

Prenatal Cocaine Exposure: Future at risk

Taking drugs during pregnancy creates additional risks. Women who use cocaine during pregnancy have higher rates of spontaneous abortion, fetal death, and premature labor and birth. Infants born to mothers who use cocaine had lower birth weights and lengths and were more likely to die during infancy. There has been widespread publicity and concern that children exposed to cocaine in utero would show permanent neurological damage with attendant learning disabilities.

Many reports have indicated a higher percentage of abnormal arousal patterns and other neurological problems as a result of prenatal exposure to cocaine. However, these effects may be relatively short-lived. Some studies have reported long-term learning and behavioral problems in children exposed to cocaine in utero, but the studies often lack an appropriate comparison or control group. Remember that such infants may also suffer from maternal neglect and an impoverished family and social environment as well. It is difficult to separate the effects of prenatal cocaine exposure from the other concerns that these children face after birth. In studies that have controlled for such factors, infants with prenatal exposure to cocaine generally do not appear to perform worse than the comparison group. Neither group does very well on intellectual tasks. Perhaps for children growing up under deprived environmental circumstances, adding cocaine exposure makes little long-term difference. If there is any good news here, it is that the difficulties may not involve permanent neurological damage induced by cocaine. (see Schama et al., 1998; Zuckerman et al., 2002, for reviews).

We will consider the diagnosis of psychological disorders in Chapter 13, but the ADHD controversy is certainly a thorny one. What seems clear is that, although many of the symptoms of ADHD (inattention, fidgeting, restlessness) are indeed common to virtually all children (and adults), these problems are far more severe and debilitating for some children.

One thing is certain: Stimulant drugs *do* improve parent and teacher ratings of performance in children with ADHD. Numerous studies have evaluated the effects of Ritalin and other stimulants on children's performance, and it is well documented that these drugs improve attention, time on task, and other measures of classroom performance, while decreasing disruptive behavior (see Brown et al., 2005, for a review). One study showed that children who received medication for ADHD scored higher on standardized tests for mathematics and reading achievement than unmedicated peers with ADHD (Scheffler et al., 2009). There are problems as well, however. Some children experience physical side effects such as insomnia, loss of appetite, and weight loss. Growth delays may occur but are usually managed by giving the child a "drug holiday," often during the summer months, and although some "catching up" may then occur, there is evidence of continued mild growth suppression (Lerner & Wigal, 2008). There are concerns about psychological effects as well. Some have argued that Ritalin is a gateway drug to other stimulants or to other drug use problems, but the literature on this indicates otherwise. Children diagnosed with ADHD are more likely to develop substance use problems as adults, but several studies suggest that children with ADHD who were treated with stimulants are no more likely to develop drug and alcohol problems than are children with untreated ADHD, and may actually be less likely to develop substance use problems (Hammerness et al., 2017; Molina et al., 2013; Wilens et al., 2003). The short

Photowitch/Dreamstime.com

Just say yes? Millions of children are given stimulant drugs to treat ADHD.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

duration of action of Ritalin can also lead to problems. Because the beneficial effects of the drug wear off in about 4 hours, children often experience a midday loss of functioning and have to be given another dose. This entails a visit to the school nurse or other school staff and can lead to compliance problems. An extended-release oral preparation (Concerta) and slow-release removable patch (Daytrana) deliver methylphenidate with 10- to 12-hour duration of action, and these are now widely used to solve this problem.

Another controversial aspect of ADHD is its increasing diagnosis in adults. This led to a tenfold increase in stimulant drug prescriptions to adults between 1994 and 2009 (Olfson et al., 2013). Although ADHD used to be thought of as a disorder that children "outgrew," the symptoms may persist into adulthood for many individuals. Another source of controversy is that prescription stimulants are increasingly being diverted (illegally sold or traded). In fact, Ritalin has come to be a popular recreational drug because, like amphetamines, it makes those who use it feel energetic and enhances mood (Hall et al., 2005). Weyant et al. (2013) reviewed 22 studies on college campuses which found that between 5% and 35% of students reported misusing ADHD medication. Interestingly, although many college students reported recreational use of these drugs, the majority of students reported taking amphetamines or methylphenidate to study.

> *"I take it whenever I have class or when I need to study a lot. I take it because it focuses my thoughts and makes me feel driven to work."*
>
> College student on Adderall misuse (Center for Lawful Access and Abuse Deterrence, 2012)

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 6.5

Khat: A Stimulant from the Horn of Africa

Cocaine and the amphetamines are the best known of the monoamine stimulants in North America, but the most popular stimulant from this group worldwide may be khat (pronounced "kaht"), a plant native to East Africa. Khat, or qat, is the local name for a small shrub (*Catha edulis*) that is widely cultivated in the countries of Yemen, Somalia, and Ethiopia. Among some Muslim cultures, it is considered a more acceptable drug than alcohol, and it is widely used throughout East Africa and the Arabian Peninsula. Some estimates of khat use indicate as many as 5 million people use it daily throughout the region (Spinella, 2001).

The most common route of khat administration is chewing the fresh leaves of the plant. The juices are swallowed and contain two stimulants: cathine and cathinone. These substances produce effects that are very similar to cocaine and amphetamine mediated by actions on the monoamine neurotransmitter systems. Individuals report that khat provides energy and a euphoric feeling. An initial period of several hours of stimulation and euphoria generally is followed by a period of depression. In a variety of laboratory studies, the effects of cathinone are indistinguishable from those of cocaine and amphetamine, but khat effects appear to be less intense in practice, perhaps because drug absorption is poor when khat is chewed.

With the increased U.S. military presence in the Middle East and East Africa, there has been concern that Americans may become dependent on khat and that the drug could gain a foothold in the United States. The fear that military personnel would become dependent on the drug appears to have been unfounded, but khat has turned up in some large U.S. cities. Khat use in North America may be limited by the fact that leaves are pharmacologically active only when fresh, so unless khat is smuggled in by air, it is unlikely to be effective.

Peter Smolka/dpa/CORBIS

Women sell khat leaves at a market in Ethiopia.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In summary, Ritalin's advocates view it as a nearly miraculous treatment for ADHD, whereas its detractors argue that it is a greatly overprescribed drug with substantial misuse potential. This controversy cannot be resolved here and is expected to be a major research focus in the next decade.

REVIEW

1. Explain how stimulant drugs reduce the symptoms of ADHD.

Summary

- Cocaine comes from the leaves of the coca bush, and the practice of chewing coca leaves by Indigenous South Americans goes back many centuries. The Spanish introduced cocaine to Europe, and when the process necessary to separate cocaine from the leaf was developed in the 19th century, a major epidemic of cocaine use swept the world.
- Amphetamines are synthetic stimulant drugs discovered in the 1920s. They became major drugs of harmful use as well, but their popularity waned in the 1970s and 1980s, as cocaine returned to favor.
- Cocaine became one of the most frequently used drugs in the 1980s and 1990s with the introduction of an inexpensive smokable form—crack.
- Synthetic cathinones became widely used stimulants in recent years, primarily marketed legally over the Internet as "bath salts" or "plant food." Two of these drugs (mephedrone and MDPV) were banned by the Prevention of Synthetic Drugs Act of 2012, and several others have been made illegal since then.
- The effects of cocaine, synthetic cathinones, and the amphetamines are virtually identical except that cocaine is metabolized rapidly and thus has a short duration of action (20 to 80 minutes), whereas synthetic cathinone and amphetamine effects are more prolonged (4 to 12 hours).
- Cocaine, amphetamines, and the synthetic cathinones act through the monoamine neurotransmitter systems, particularly by enhancing dopaminergic activity. This action in the brain's reward pathways may account for the high rates of substance use disorder associated with cocaine.
- These stimulants are sympathomimetic drugs that increase heart rate, blood pressure, and respiratory rate, and cause pupil dilation.
- Other effects of stimulants include anorectic effects, increased alertness and arousal, mood elevation, and at low doses, enhanced performance on a variety of tasks.
- High doses of these stimulants may produce a paranoid state called stimulant psychosis or cause death through overdose.
- Dependence may develop after chronic use of cocaine, amphetamines, or synthetic cathinones. The abstinence syndrome is characterized primarily by depression and craving with few measurable physiological effects. Thus, a drug that does not cause severe physical withdrawal symptoms can cause dependence.
- Ritalin (methylphenidate), amphetamines (Adderall), and other stimulants are widely used to treat attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD).

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Cocaine is a synthetic drug developed during World War II.
   F *Cocaine is derived from the leaves of the coca bush.*
2. Cocaine use was epidemic in the United States in the 1880s.
   T *Cocaine was a legal drug in the United States until the passage of the 1914 Harrison Narcotics Act and was widely used around the turn of the century.*
3. Cocaine acts by deactivating enzymes that break down monoamine neurotransmitters.
   F *Cocaine acts by blocking the reuptake of monoamine neurotransmitters (dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin).*
4. Amphetamine effects are very similar to cocaine effects.
   T *Cocaine and amphetamine are virtually indistinguishable in their major physical and behavioral effects.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5. Overdoses of cocaine, amphetamine, and synthetic cathinones may produce a psychotic state.
   T *The stimulant psychosis resembles paranoid schizophrenia.*
6. Synthetic analogs of methcathinone are often sold under the name "bath salts."
   T *Mephedrone and other synthetic cathinones are sold as "bath salts" and "plant food."*
7. Crack is a smokable form of amphetamine.
   F *Crack is smokable cocaine.*
8. The most common withdrawal symptom associated with cocaine is depression.
   T *Depression following cocaine use is referred to as the "cocaine blues."*
9. Stimulant drugs enhance learning and intellectual performance.
   F *Experimental evidence shows that stimulants may impair learning ability and complex reasoning performance.*
10. One difference between cocaine and the amphetamines is that cocaine has a longer duration of action.
    F *Amphetamine effects last from 4 to 12 hours, whereas cocaine is a relatively short-acting drug.*
11. Severe physical withdrawal symptoms follow heavy cocaine use.
    F *Cocaine produces no major physical withdrawal symptoms.*
12. Amphetamines are synthetic drugs that were previously used as a treatment for heroin dependence.
    T *Physicians in the United States previously prescribed methamphetamine, a type of amphetamine, as a treatment for heroin dependence*

Key Terms

anorectic effects
bath salts
crack
formication syndrome
state-dependent learning
stimulant psychosis

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Cocaine can be taken in various forms—chewing a coca leaf, snorting, injecting, and smoking. Each form produces different effects in an individual. Should all forms of cocaine use be regulated in the same way? Why or why not?
2. You have learned that stimulant medications, such as Ritalin, can improve some aspects of cognitive performance. What are your thoughts about college students who use these medications as a "study aid"? What are some of the consequences of using stimulants as "cognitive enhancers"?

Suggested Readings

Halkitis, P. N. (2009). *Methamphetamine addiction: Biological foundations, psychological factors, and social consequences*. American Psychological Association Press.

Iversen, L. (2008). *Speed, Ecstasy, Ritalin: The science of amphetamines*. Oxford University Press.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

- **7-1** Describe the historical use of tobacco
- **7-2** Discuss the early medicinal uses of tobacco and the factors that led to the recognition of the dangers of tobacco
- **7-3** Describe the patterns of tobacco use in the United States
- **7-4** Identify the factors that contribute to the initiation of smoking in adolescents and young adults
- **7-5** Explain the mechanism of action for nicotine
- **7-6** Describe the physiological effects of nicotine
- **7-7** Describe the behavioral effects of nicotine
- **7-8** Explain why individuals quickly develop tolerance and physical dependence to nicotine
- **7-9** Describe the acute and chronic effects of tobacco use
- **7-10** Discuss the diseases that are linked with cigarette smoking
- **7-11** Explain the risks associated with passive smoking
- **7-12** Describe behavioral programs used to treat cigarette smoking and evaluate their effectiveness
- **7-13** Describe pharmacological programs used to treat cigarette smoking and evaluate their effectiveness

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

7 Nicotine

History of Tobacco Use

- The West Discovers Tobacco
- Tobacco as Panacea
- From Panacea to Panned

Prevalence of Tobacco Use

- Smoking in the United States
- Initiation of Smoking
- Smokeless Tobacco Use

Pharmacology of Nicotine

- Sites of Action
- Pharmacokinetics
- Distribution
- Metabolism and Excretion

Tolerance and Dependence

- Tolerance
- Physical Dependence

Acute Effects of Nicotine

- Nicotine's Dependence Liability

Effects of Chronic Tobacco Use

- Tar, Nicotine, and Carbon Monoxide
- Diseases Linked to Cigarette Smoking
- Other Tobacco Products and Health
- Passive Smoking

Treatment of Cigarette Smoking

- The Necessity of Formal Treatment
- Treatment Effectiveness
- Conclusions about the Treatment of Cigarette Smoking
- Summary

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Tobacco was once thought to have major medical value.

___ 2. Throughout the age ranges, men have higher smoking rates than women do.

___ 3. The prevalence of smokeless tobacco use among men is about three times that of use among women.

___ 4. Nicotine can be considered both a stimulant and a depressant.

___ 5. When using commercial tobacco products, people reach the peak blood level of nicotine most quickly by using smokeless tobacco.

___ 6. Though psychological dependence is common, no cases of physical dependence on nicotine have been identified.

___ 7. Nicotine's calming effects are a main reason for its use.

___ 8. Nicotine plays a secondary role to learning and social factors in maintaining tobacco use.

___ 9. Cigarette smoking is the leading cause of preventable death in the United States.

___10. Low-tar, low-nicotine cigarettes are less damaging to health than cigarettes that do not have reduced tar and nicotine content.

___11. Despite the media hype, passive smoking actually poses a serious health risk to few Americans.

___12. The majority of individuals who use behavioral therapies alone to stop smoking will resume smoking within a year.

In this chapter and in Chapter 8, we review two additional stimulant drugs: nicotine and caffeine. We cover these two drugs apart from other stimulant drugs because nicotine and caffeine are used so prominently in societies around the world. Use of other stimulant drugs has a small fraction of the prevalence that the use of nicotine or caffeine does.

The structure for this chapter will be similar to how we discussed cocaine in Chapter 6:

1. Background information about the source of tobacco and the ways that tobacco is consumed
2. History of tobacco use
3. Prevalence of nicotine use
4. Mechanisms of pharmacological action
5. Acute and chronic effects of nicotine

We will end with an overview of professional services available to help individuals stop using tobacco products.

Nicotine is found naturally in one source: the leafy green tobacco plant. The plant belongs to the genus *Nicotiana* and has 60 species. Only two of these can be used for smoking and other human consumption: *Nicotiana rustica* and *Nicotiana tabacum*. The latter species provides all of the tobaccos typically consumed in the United States, including burley, oriental, and cigar tobaccos. Different types of tobacco result mostly from differences in cultivation and processing. In this regard, tobacco leaves are harvested when still green and then undergo curing and fermentation. The tobacco then is converted into commercial products—cigarettes, cigars, snuff, chewing tobacco, and pipe tobacco (Blum, 1984).

Tobacco has many constituents, but nicotine is singled out as having the broadest and most immediate pharmacological action. Nicotine is extremely toxic—about as toxic as cyanide (Rose, 1991)—and only 60 milligrams (mg) are needed to kill a human. When tobacco is burned, the smoke contains a small portion of nicotine, which the body metabolizes to a nontoxic substance.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Dusan Zidar/Shutterstock.com

These tobacco plants await conversion to commercial products such as cigarettes and chewing tobacco.

The tobacco products meant for smoking are cigarettes, cigars, and pipes. Smokeless tobacco includes snuff and chewing tobacco (Gritz et al., 1985). Snuff is powdered tobacco that is mixed with salts, moisture, oils, flavorings, and other additives; a Swedish variant of snuff is called "snus." Snuff is marketed in two forms, dry and moist. Chewing tobacco is marketed in loose-leaf form, pressed as a rectangle called a plug, or in a twist or roll. As with snuff, aroma and flavoring agents are added to chewing tobacco. A quid (piece) of tobacco can be either chewed or held between the cheek and gum. "Dipping" is holding a pinch of moist snuff in the same place. In Europe, snuff is most commonly taken dry and intranasally.

7.1 History of Tobacco Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **7-1** Describe the historical use of tobacco
- **7-2** Discuss the early medicinal uses of tobacco and the factors that led to the recognition of the dangers of tobacco

The West Discovers Tobacco

In the late 15th century, Columbus and other explorers encountered Native Americans using tobacco for medicinal purposes as well as its medicinal effects. The pleasant effects of nicotine caught on like fire, and smoking quickly became popular among the Europeans. They brought home seeds of the tobacco plant and spread them to other parts of the world on their ventures. In these early years, the Spanish held a monopoly on the world tobacco market because *Nicotiana tabacum* is

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

indigenous to South America. However, the English took a piece of the business when John Rolfe's *Nicotiana tabacum* crop flourished in the colony of Virginia.

At first, tobacco was expensive. For example, tobacco in England was worth its weight in silver, and people paid that price. By the early 17th century, however, tobacco became cheaper and its use widespread. In 1614, London had about 7,000 tobacco shops. By the middle of that century, tobacco use had spread throughout central Europe.

Not everybody regarded tobacco so highly. In the middle 1600s, Popes Urban VIII and Innocent X issued decrees against tobacco use, but clergy and laymen alike continued to smoke. In 1633, the Sultan Murad IV in Constantinople paid surprise visits to his men in combat during war. If the soldiers were caught smoking, the good sultan punished them by quartering, hanging, beheading, and worse. Yet the soldiers continued to smoke. The Russian czar in 1634 also prohibited smoking. He punished individuals by slitting their nostrils and by imposing other consequences that might discourage them from smoking. However, the Russians did not give up tobacco either.

Portuguese seamen introduced tobacco to the Japanese in 1542. Like their Western counterparts, the Japanese quickly took to smoking—so quickly that the emperor had issued an edict against smoking by 1603. However, the Japanese did not stop. In 1639, smoking had become so established in Japan that a person was offered a smoke with a ceremonial cup of tea. "From these days until today . . . no country that has ever learned to use tobacco has given up the practice" (Brecher, 1972, p. 213). No substance has replaced tobacco in people's hearts, minds, and bodies. When those who smoke tobacco discovered the pleasures of smoking marijuana or opium, even these drugs did not displace tobacco; they were merely smoked in addition to it.

> *"A custom loathsome to the eye, hateful to the nose, harmful to the brain, dangerous to the lungs, and in the black, stinking fume thereof nearest resembling the horrible Stygian smoke of the pit that is bottomless."*
>
> James I of England, *A Counterblaste to Tobacco*, 1604

Tobacco as Panacea

Tobacco has a long history of use for medicinal purposes, with peak recognition as a medicinal herb at the beginning of the 17th century. Ways that tobacco has been used medically include:

> *"Just what the doctor ordered."*
>
> Advertisement, L & M Cigarettes, 1956

- Applied externally in various forms (such as ashes, hot leaves, balm, lotion, mush, oil, and many more) for pain due to internal or external disorders and for skin diseases or injuries of any kind
- Introduced into all openings of the head to treat diseases of the ears (such as smoke blown into), eyes (juice to cleanse), mouth (such as small ball chewed), and nose (such as snuff blown up nose of patient by physician)
- Introduced into the mouth to reach other organs, such as the lungs (such as smoke introduced directly by a physician), the stomach (such as through juice, boiled or uncooked), and the teeth (such as use of ashes to clean)
- Introduced into the nostrils to reach lungs (such as inhaled odor of snuff powder)
- Introduced into the intestinal canal (such as smoke or tobacco enema)
- Introduced into the vagina by injection

From Panacea to Panned

> *"We shall not refuse tobacco the credit of being sometimes medical, when used temperately, though an acknowledged poison."*
>
> Jesse Torrey (1787–1834), *The Moral Instructor*, Part IV

The promotion of tobacco as a therapeutic agent took a serious blow in 1828, when two German chemists, W. H. Posselt and L. A. Reimann, isolated nicotine. The chemical was named after a man named Nicot, who was the French ambassador to Portugal and who conducted exacting experiments with tobacco as a medicinal herb. He published his purported successes worldwide. The isolation of nicotine was damaging to its medical reputation because the toxic and addictive properties of the compound began to be understood.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

During the years between 1830 and 1860, the use of tobacco for medicine and pleasure in the United States was subject to a stream of attacks by clergy, educators, and some physicians. This also occurred in Europe. Sometimes the ills attributed to tobacco were not based in medical science. For example, perverted sexuality, impotency, and insanity all were attributed to tobacco. In 1849, Dr. R. T. Trall denounced the medical use of tobacco and illustrated his argument by describing a case of tobacco dependence. By the middle of the 19th century, tobacco had all but vanished from the *U.S. Pharmacopoeia*, and the dangers of tobacco as a drug were well known. As the United States prepared for a civil war in 1860, the use of tobacco as a medical agent had virtually ended. However, people continued to use tobacco for pleasure.

REVIEW

1. Create a time line indicating the major events associated with historical use of tobacco.
2. Create a time line describing the early medicinal uses of tobacco and factors that led to awareness of its addictive and dangerous properties.

7.2 Prevalence of Tobacco Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

7-3 Describe the patterns of tobacco use in the United States

7-4 Identify the factors that contribute to the initiation of smoking in adolescents and young adults

History shows that tobacco's popularity can resist even the most severe obstacles. A 2018 report by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) indicated that among those who currently use tobacco, 86.7% smoked a combustible tobacco product. In the United States, cigarette smoking is by far the most common way to use tobacco. Furthermore, cigarette smoking demands the most attention because it is the most toxic way to smoke tobacco, followed in order by cigar and pipe smoking (Blum, 1984). Accordingly, we begin this discussion with the prevalence of cigarette smoking.

Smoking in the United States

Many national surveys of smoking among American adults have been conducted. These studies show that the percentage of men and women who smoke declined in the latter part of the 20th century. Coupled with the decline in those who smoke is a steady increase in the percentage of adults who identified themselves as those who quit smoking (Molarus et al., 2001). That is, increasing numbers of people have said they quit smoking, and most of them did so on their own (Zusy, 1987). Self-quitters are thought to have been "lighter" (smoking fewer than 25 cigarettes a day). Nevertheless, many who currently smoke say they want to quit but find it difficult to do so.

It probably is no coincidence that the peak of smoking among Americans was in 1963. In 1964, the U.S. Public Health Service's *Smoking and Health: Report of the Advisory Committee to the Surgeon General* was published. It detailed the health hazards of cigarette smoking in a way then unprecedented in scope and persuasion.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

You learned in Chapter 1 that the overall prevalence of drug use masks important differences among subgroups of the population. This also applies to smoking. Table 7.1 summarizes 2015 national survey data for cigarette use in the past month by age, gender, and racial/ethnic subgroups (Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality, 2016). One point that emerges from Table 7.1 is that age is an important factor, with the highest rates of current cigarette use among 18- to 25-year-olds. An interesting comparison within this age group is individuals enrolled full-time in college versus individuals not enrolled full-time in college. Among individuals aged 18 to 22, 22.2% who were enrolled in college full-time reported cigarette use in the last month, compared to 35.9% of those who were not full-time college students.

"I never smoke to excess—that is, I smoke in moderation, only one cigar at a time."

Mark Twain

On the other hand, there has been a resurgence in popularity among college students and other young people of the hookah (or *qalyān* or *shisha*). The hookah first appeared in Africa and Asia over four centuries ago, but has gained new popularity around the world since the 1990s. A main reason for the reemergence seems to be the perception that the hookah is a harm-free, pleasant way to smoke tobacco. According to a Tobacco Regulation Advisory Note published by the WHO in 2005, the hookah has been billed as a safer way to smoke tobacco. In addition, a proliferation of websites promoting the hookah and retailing it in ways that are highly appealing have fed what Maziak (2008) called its use "epidemic" (p. 1763). Unfortunately, as with other alternatives to tobacco cigarettes that have been promoted as "safe," smoking from a hookah is a threat to health, because the smoke contains nicotine, tar, and carbon monoxide (Gathuru et al., 2015). For example, an experimental study was conducted with 31 young adults who regularly smoke tobacco via cigarettes and hookah. The experiment involved comparing each individual's exposure to target toxins when smoking one tobacco cigarette and smoking tobacco by use of a hookah for as long as 45 minutes. The results showed that hookah smoking resulted in greater exposure to smoke and carbon monoxide and no difference in nicotine exposure compared to smoking a cigarette (Eissenberg & Shihadeh, 2009). We show later in this chapter that carbon monoxide (and tar) are especially toxic. Although few studies have addressed this question, the prevalence of use of the hookah among college students in the United States in the past month has been estimated to be in the range of 15% to 20% (Eissenberg et al., 2008).

The relation between gender and smoking prevalence varies with age. Rates of smoking for men and women are less different among individuals 12 to 17 years old and among those 26 and older, compared to individuals 18 to 25 years old.

TABLE 7.1 Percentages of Individuals in Different Age, Gender, and Racial/Ethnic Groups Who Reported Cigarette Use in the Past Month, 2015

	Age (Years)			
	12–17	18–25	26 and older	Total
Gender				
Male	4.6	30.7	22.5	21.8
Female	3.8	22.7	17.7	17.1
Race/Ethnicity				
White	5.4	30.9	20.7	20.7
Black	2.6	22.3	23.8	21.3
Hispanic	2.7	20.9	16.2	15.3

Source: Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality (2016).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

It warrants mention that differences in smoking rates between men and women during the 1950s were considerably greater (around 20%) than they are now. The rates of decline in smoking prevalence since that time have been steeper for men than for women, but men started out at a considerably higher rate.

"Smoking is one of the leading causes of statistics."

Anonymous

Racial/ethnic identity also relates to smoking rates. White individuals have the highest rates of the three groups in Table 7.1 in the 12- to 17- and 18- to 25-year-old age groups, but Black individuals have a slightly higher rate among those who are 26 and older.

Two factors not included in Table 7.1 are education and employment status. Although these variables are correlated, it is of interest to look at them separately. Past month smoking prevalence in 2015 for all respondents 18 years and older consistently was highest for individuals who were unemployed: The prevalence rate for those unemployed was 36.2% and was 18.7% and 21.7% for those employed part-time and full-time, respectively. Regarding education among respondents 18 years and older, there was a negative relationship between smoking and education: As years of education went up, prevalence tended to go down, with the difference more than a factor of 2 between all those who were 4-year college graduates and those who were not. Data such as these on education and employment are the bases for arguments that the ills of smoking fall disproportionately on the least advantaged in U.S. society (Droomers et al., 2002).

Initiation of Smoking

It is important to know who initiates smoking and the number of people who do so because people tend to become dependent on nicotine quickly and before they are 20 years old. This point takes on practical significance because, once nicotine dependence is initiated in adolescence, it tends to persist into the adult years (O'Loughlin et al., 2009). For example, close to 90% of the people who die from smoking-related causes in the United States began smoking when they were adolescents (Primack et al., 2006). Moreover, the younger the age at which a person starts to smoke, the harder it seems to be able to quit later (Breslau & Peterson, 1996). This tendency can be seen during the undergraduate college years. One study (Wetter et al., 2004) classified first-year college students as "nonsmokers," "occasional smokers," or "daily smokers." Four years later, these students were reassessed, and the findings showed that the majority of students who smoked as freshmen still smoked as seniors—this was true for 90% of those who smoked daily and for 50% of those who smoked occasionally. Overall, it seems a lot easier to start smoking than it is to stop (Colder et al., 2001).

A lot of research has been devoted to explaining smoking initiation because of the enormous public health consequences of smoking. Consistent with the approach to understanding human drug use that is taken in this chapter, the reasons for smoking initiation are a complex interplay of biological, psychological, and social/environmental factors. We will give you a few examples of findings that have led to this conclusion. From the biological side, animal research suggests a major reason why smoking tends to begin in adolescence is that teens' brains are more sensitive to the rewarding (reinforcing) effects of nicotine than are the brains of older individuals (Belluzzi et al., 2004). In this same vein, biopsychological research has used brain imaging (PET scans) to provide data suggesting that individuals who score higher on the personality characteristics of hostility and aggression are more stimulated by a dose of nicotine than are individuals who score lower on these characteristics. This finding suggests that certain people not only are more likely to begin smoking, but are also more likely to continue the behavior than are other individuals (Fallon et al., 2004).

"Have you ever experienced the snuff sensation yet? Wow, it's heady stuff. Well here's your chance to delight in the sensual pleasure of snuffing for free."

Promotion of Imperial Tobacco, England (Wilkinson, 1986, p. 62)

Psychological factors also may combine with environmental variables to affect smoking initiation. One study found that adolescents who score high on the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

characteristic of "novelty seeking" (they tend to be impulsive, to take risks, and to have a high need for stimulation) are more receptive to tobacco company advertisements than are people who score lower on novelty seeking (Andrain-McGovern et al., 2003). Advertising attracts those who are new to smoking broadly by depicting cigarette smoking as socially desirable in different ways. Similarly, exposure to smoking in the movies, where highly desirable and visible actors and actresses in different character roles smoke cigarettes, is positively related to likelihood of smoking initiation in adolescents (Leonardi-Bee et al., 2016).

The use of electronic cigarettes ("e-cigarettes"; also see Contemporary Issue Box 7.3 in this chapter) is another method of tobacco use, which itself is likely determined by multiple factors and may be an increasingly important determinant of initiating cigarette smoking. Its popularity among youth and young adults had a steep increase from about 2011 to 2013, although it may have plateaued in the last few years. Nevertheless, a report issued by the Campaign for Tobacco-Free Kids (2016) cites survey data that the CDC and the FDA released showing that e-cigarette use by middle-school and high-school-aged students increased by 9-fold and 10-fold, respectively, from 2011 to 2015. Survey data also show that in 2015, about 13% of high school students in 2015 and 10% of 18- to 24-year-olds in 2014 who did not use any other tobacco products had tried e-cigarettes. This information on e-cigarette use among adolescents and young adults is significant in and of itself in light of the U.S. Surgeon General's report on dependence on tobacco (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [USDHHS], 2016) that notes the health-related risks of youth using any tobacco product. Moreover, although the evidence still is preliminary, there is concern that use of e-cigarettes may increase the likelihood of the later use of other tobacco products, including cigarettes.

In summary, a complex of biological, psychological, and social/environmental variables affect smoking initiation and its continuation. As we will discuss, the consequences are substantial.

Smokeless Tobacco Use

Subgroup data on smokeless tobacco use in the past month also are available from the 2015 national survey and are presented in Table 7.2. As we have seen for other drugs, smokeless tobacco use is most popular among 18- to 25-year-olds. An even more striking difference is between men and women—men's usage rates exceed those of women by over 10-fold.

> *"An e-cigarette does not function in manner of a traditional cigarette because it functions electrically rather than via combustion of a material such as tobacco."*
>
> Ken Cuccinelli

TABLE 7.2 Prevalence of Smokeless Tobacco Use in the Past Month by Age and Gender, 2015

	Prevalence (%)
Age (years)	
12–17	1.5
18–25	5.4
26 and older	3.2
Gender	
Male	6.3
Female	0.6

Source: Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality (2016).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Evgeniy Kleymenov/Alamy stock photo

Vaping pens, also known as e-cigarettes, are filled with vaping oil that contain nicotine.

Aliaksandr Barouski/Alamy stock photo

When vaping pens, or e-cigarettes, are used, they produce a cloud of vapor.

REVIEW

1. Create a chart summarizing gender and racial/ethnic patterns of tobacco use in the United States since the 1950s.
2. Describe two biological, two psychological, and two social/environmental factors that contribute to the initiation of smoking in adolescents and young adults.

7.3 Pharmacology of Nicotine

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **7-5** Explain the mechanism of action for nicotine
- **7-6** Describe the physiological effects of nicotine
- **7-7** Describe the behavioral effects of nicotine

In this section, we turn to an overview of nicotine's pharmacology, including its sites of action in the body and pharmacokinetics, or its absorption, distribution, and metabolism and excretion.

Sites of Action

To understand the action of nicotine, it is essential to understand the neurotransmitter acetylcholine (ACH), which we discussed in Chapter 3. Nicotine stimulates the same receptors that are sensitive to ACH and therefore is a cholinergic agonist drug (Julien, 2005). ACH stimulates both the autonomic and central nervous systems.

The effects nicotine has on the nervous system and behavior are as follows:

- Increases dopamine levels in the mesocorticolimbic system
- Increases blood pressure
- Increases heart rate
- Stimulates release of adrenalin from adrenal glands
- Increases tone and activity of the gastrointestinal tract

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Facilitates release of dopamine and serotonin
- Affects CNS functions of arousal, attention, learning, memory storage and retrieval, mood, and rapid eye movement (REM) during sleep

Nicotine is called a biphasic drug because it stimulates ACH receptors at low doses, but it retards neural transmission at higher doses (Taylor, 2001). This biphasic action partly explains the complex effects that humans perceive when they ingest nicotine, which we discuss shortly.

Pharmacokinetics

Absorption

Nicotine can be absorbed through most of the body's membranes. The drug is absorbed through the oral, buccal (the cheeks or mouth cavity), and nasal mucosa; the gastrointestinal tract; and the lungs (O'Brien, 1995). Russell (1976) related a story to illustrate how readily nicotine can be absorbed: A florist was using a pesticide spray that contained nicotine and soaked the seat of his pants with it by accident. In only 15 minutes, the florist had **nicotine poisoning** and had to be hospitalized for 4 days. When he recovered and was dressing to return home, the florist put on the same pants, which still had some nicotine on them. He was readmitted to the hospital an hour later with nicotine poisoning.

nicotine poisoning
A consequence of nicotine overdose characterized by palpitations, dizziness, sweating, nausea, or vomiting.

Nicotine absorption depends on both the site of absorption and how the nicotine is delivered. Nicotine is most readily absorbed from the lungs, which makes inhaling cigarette smoke an efficient way to get a dose of nicotine. Nicotine is not as readily absorbed through the oral, buccal, or nasal mucosa. The nicotine in cigar or pipe smoke, for example, is not as readily absorbed as the nicotine in cigarettes because people usually do not inhale smoke from cigars or pipes. As a result, the nicotine is absorbed through the mouth. When nicotine is taken by using snuff or by chewing tobacco, it is absorbed through the mucosa of the nose and the mouth, respectively.

How nicotine is delivered also affects its absorption. You will recognize some of the factors that affect absorption from reading Chapter 4. One factor is the acidity of the medium (e.g., smoke) of delivery. The less acidic (more basic) the medium, the easier the absorption. Cigar or pipe smoke is more basic than cigarette smoke, which compensates to some extent for the difference between the mouth and lungs in ease of absorption. Length of contact of the nicotine-containing substance with the absorption site also is important. The longer the contact, the greater the amount of nicotine absorbed. For example, using snuff and chewing tobacco allows considerable time for nicotine absorption at the nose and mouth (Blum, 1984).

Distribution

After nicotine is absorbed, the blood distributes it to a number of sites of pharmacological action. When a cigarette is inhaled, nicotine reaches the brain from the lungs in about 7 seconds and takes about 3 to 5 minutes to reach peak levels in the brain (Rose, Mukhin, et al., 2010). By comparison, it takes 14 seconds for blood to flow from the arm to the brain, which is the typical route for intravenous injection. Therefore, nicotine reaches the brain rapidly and there is an "overlapping presence" of nicotine doses in the brain with successive puffs on a cigarette. The effects of nicotine are observed rapidly, because its distribution half-life is only 10 to 20 minutes (Heishman et al., 2010). A study using PET scan methods illustrates this phenomenon nicely. It showed that, with only one cigarette puff, almost one-third of the primary nicotine receptors (nicotinic ACH) of the brain are occupied,

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

RichLegg/E+/Getty Images

The use of smokeless tobacco is most prevalent among young men.

and with three puffs, almost three-quarters of the receptors are occupied. After smoking two and a half cigarettes, the receptors are saturated and the individual feels satiated (Brody et al., 2006). However, because nicotine levels in the brain also fall relatively rapidly, we have a major biological reason why those who smoke tend to reach for a cigarette soon after they have finished their last one. Those who regularly smoke a typical cigarette manufactured in the United States absorb between 0.1 and 0.4 mg of nicotine for each cigarette they smoke (Julien, 2005).

Metabolism and Excretion

The major organ responsible for metabolizing nicotine is the liver. The lungs and kidneys also play a part in the body's chemical breakdown of nicotine (Taylor, 2001). Nicotine is eliminated primarily in the urine, and about 10% to 20% of nicotine is eliminated unchanged through the urinary tract (Blum, 1984). Less important vehicles of eliminating nicotine and its metabolites are saliva, sweat, and the milk of lactating women (Jones, 1987b; Russell, 1976). Nicotine's elimination half-life in an individual who has chronically smoked is about 2 hours (Julien, 2005).

One study compared blood nicotine levels over a course of 2 hours in 10 subjects administered comparable doses of nicotine in cigarettes, oral snuff, and chewing tobacco (Benowitz et al., 1988). The study showed that the peak nicotine blood levels reached through the three sources did not differ. However, the rise in nicotine level was steepest for smoking, with a quick and then a more gradual decline leveling off to about one-third the peak level. In contrast, with both snuff and chewing tobacco, the rise in blood level was slower, but higher levels of nicotine were maintained considerably longer. These findings follow from the quicker nicotine absorption time through inhalation but the increased nicotine exposure time in using chewing tobacco or snuff.

The course of nicotine blood levels by smoking gives additional insight into why individuals often smoke many cigarettes a day. They must smoke often to maintain a nicotine blood level that is not below a threshold for the beginning of withdrawal symptoms. Figure 7.1 is a graph of the average level of nicotine in the blood of an individual who smokes over the course of a full day. The level of nicotine in the blood rises during the 16-hour part of the day when people are awake, with a peak around midnight. The level then declines during sleeping hours, but there is a positive level upon wakening in the morning.

REVIEW

1. Describe the drug experience associated with tobacco use.
2. Metabolism and excretion contribute to individuals smoking many cigarettes each day.
3. Describe the short-term and long-term effects nicotine has on the brain.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

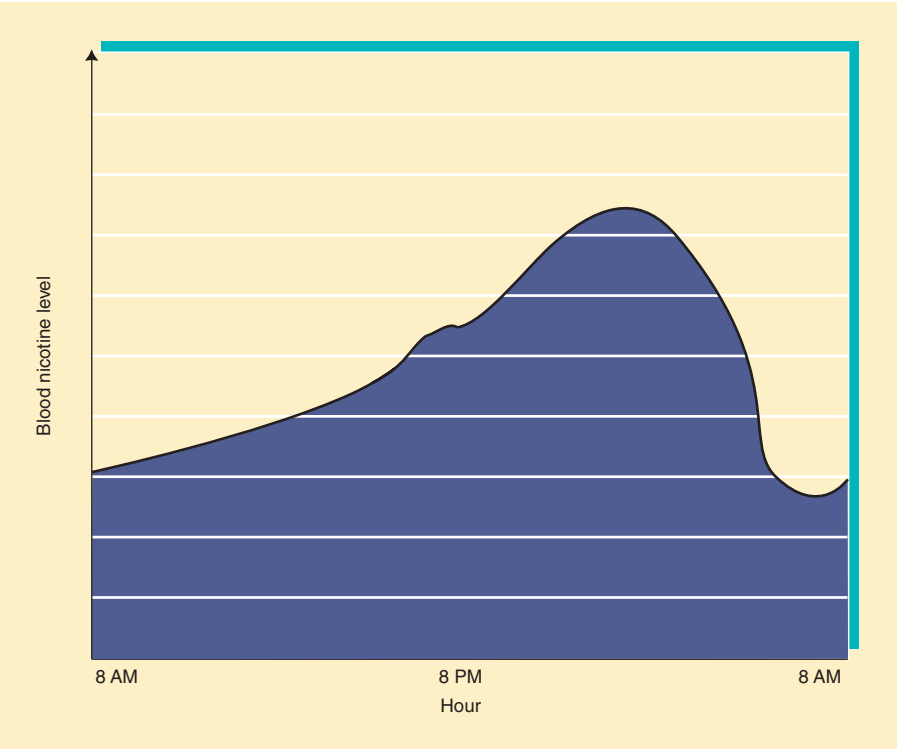


FIGURE 7.1
Blood nicotine levels in a typical individual who smokes over a 24-hour period

7.4 Tolerance and Dependence

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

7-8 Explain why individuals quickly develop tolerance and physical dependence to nicotine

> *"Recruits, you'll find that smoking will make you nauseous at first, but you will keep with it, and smoke a little more with each passing month until you level out your consumption, usually at about 20 cigarettes a day, and hold this pattern for years, maybe a lifetime."*
>
> Drill sergeant, describing smoking to new users of nicotine (Krogh, 1991, p. 74)

Tolerance

Tolerance to nicotine develops quickly. For example, a person's first attempts at smoking usually result in palpitations, dizziness, sweating, nausea, or vomiting (Russell, 1976). These are signs of acute nicotine poisoning. However, signs of tolerance to these autonomic effects of nicotine are evident even within the time of smoking the first cigarettes. Similarly, the effects of the nicotine in the initial puffs of the first cigarette of the day are greater than those in the last few puffs of that cigarette (Jones, 1987b). The rapid development of tolerance to nicotine also is apparent in the short time it takes some people to become experienced in smoking. The time from their unpleasant first cigarette to pleasurable smoking of a pack a day or more can be as short as several weeks. Besides tolerance to the effects of nicotine, dispositional tolerance develops. For instance, those who smoke metabolize the drug more quickly than those who do not smoke (Edwards, 1986).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Physical Dependence

There is no question that people can become physically dependent on nicotine (Pagliaro & Pagliaro, 2009). The major criterion for classification of a drug as one that induces physical dependence is what ensues when the drug is taken away for long enough that the amount of it in the blood drops considerably or is eliminated. When a consistent set of physical symptoms results, it is said that the drug induces physical dependence. The reverse side of this criterion of physical dependence is that readministration of the drug alleviates any withdrawal symptoms that are present. In 1988, the U.S. Office of the Surgeon General issued a full report with the conclusion that physical dependence on nicotine develops and that the drug leads to dependence. In 1989, the Royal Society of Canada came to the same conclusion.

> *"Thank heaven, I have given up smoking again! . . . God! I feel fit. Homicidal, but fit. A different man. Irritable, moody, depressed, rude, nervy, perhaps; but the lungs are fine."*
>
> A. P. Herbert

Actually, studies have shown for some time that those who use nicotine may become physically dependent on it. For example, Hughes et al., (1987) collected reports of the symptoms individuals experienced 24 hours after stopping smoking. The most common report (73%) was a craving for tobacco, followed in order by irritability, anxiety, difficulty concentrating, restlessness, increased appetite, impatience, somatic complaints, and insomnia. A range of what are generally considered unpleasant symptoms results when those who have a physical dependence stop smoking. As we noted earlier, once people begin smoking cigarettes, they have a high likelihood of becoming dependent on nicotine.

REVIEW

1. Explain the factors that contribute to nicotine producing rapid tolerance and physical dependence in individuals.

7.5 Acute Effects of Nicotine

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

7-9 Describe the acute and chronic effects of tobacco use

You have seen that nicotine's effects are pervasive and complex. Table 7.3 is a summary of nicotine's acute pharmacological effects at doses that individuals typically ingest. Because of nicotine's biphasic effects, its effects at higher doses would tend to be more depressant than are the effects listed in Table 7.3.

A major point to notice in Table 7.3 is that nicotine has ACH-like effects, which agrees with its ACH agonist action. Table 7.3 shows that nicotine has major CNS stimulant action, although these effects are not as intense as what is observed with cocaine and amphetamines. Nicotine's enhancing effects on alertness, learning, and memory are of considerable importance to us because these effects may account for part of nicotine's reinforcing effects in humans. It is important to note that nicotine deprivation tends to result in impaired performance on cognitive tasks, but administration of nicotine reverses that impairment. Reversal of cognitive impairment, therefore, could play a part in maintaining cigarette use (Heishman et al., 2010).

Another point to notice in Table 7.3 is nicotine's autonomic effects, particularly on the cardiovascular system. The stimulation of the heart and its resultant increased demands for oxygen underlie the association of nicotine and heart disease. In this

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 7.3 Acute Pharmacological Effects of Nicotine

General CNS stimulant

- Increases behavioral activity
- May produce tremors
- Stimulates vomiting center in brain stem (tolerance to this effect develops quickly)
- Stimulates release of antidiuretic hormones from hypothalamus, increasing fluid retention
- Reduces muscle tone by reducing activity of afferent nerves from muscles
- Enhances alertness, learning, and memory

Other actions

- Increases heart rate, blood pressure, and contraction of the heart
- Initiates dilation of arteries, if they are not atherosclerotic, to meet heart's increased oxygen demand caused by nicotine

Source: Adapted from Julien (2005) and Taylor (2001).

regard, a less-than-adequate supply of oxygen to the heart may result in chest pain (angina) or a heart attack (Julien, 2005).

Nicotine is classified as a stimulant drug, but people who use it often report decreased arousal. That is, the perception is that nicotine has a calming effect, and those who use nicotine find this effect reinforcing (Todd, 2004). The reasons for this perception of lowered arousal are complex. One factor may be nicotine's acute effect of relaxing the skeletal muscles (see Table 7.3; also see Jones, 1987b). Another pharmacological reason is nicotine's biphasic action: At higher doses, nicotine acts as a depressant.

Pharmacology is only part of the explanation of how aroused people feel when they use nicotine (Rose, Salley, et al., 2010). One of the sedating psychological effects of smoking is the individual's perception of successfully coping with stress while smoking, which suggests that their beliefs about nicotine's effects influence their reaction to smoking cigarettes (Abrams & Wilson, 1986; Juliano & Brandon, 2002). More fundamentally, personality research suggests that arousal and the perception of stress reduction are independent factors, so they co-occur on occasion, not surprisingly (Parrott, 1998). Along these same lines, nicotine use often is associated with pleasant social situations like parties. Many other secondary (associated) effects of nicotine use exist and can contribute to perceptions at times that the drug has calming effects.

A final acute effect of nicotine is its relationship to lower body weight. Nicotine decreases one's appetite for sweet foods and increases the amount of energy the body uses both while it is resting and while it is exercising (Jaffe, 1990; West & Russell, 1985). These effects of nicotine use help to explain the common finding that quitting smoking is associated with weight gain. The nicotine–body weight relationship is noteworthy to us for a couple of reasons. First, the association of smoking with body weight may affect adolescents' decisions to start smoking. Austin and Gortmaker (2001) found that frequency of dieting among middle-school girls (which implies concern about weight control) was directly related to the probability that they would start smoking within the following 2 years. In addition, among adults who already smoke, the perception that smoking controls weight is a powerful motivator for continuing to smoke and for resuming smoking after stopping for a period of time (Pomerleau & Saules, 2007; Spring et al., 2010). The motivation seems to be particularly strong among women (McKee et al., 2005), although weight gain also has been associated in men who resume smoking after stopping for a period of time (Borelli et al., 2001).

> *"Reach for a Lucky instead of a sweet."*
>
> Lucky Strike advertisement, 1920 (Krogh, 1991, p. 69)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Nicotine's Dependence Liability

The U.S. Surgeon General's 1988 conclusion that nicotine has physical dependence liability stunned many people, although knowledge that physical dependence on nicotine can develop had been around for decades. The shock of the report probably lay in the public's failure to view nicotine as a "serious" drug like cocaine or heroin. Yet, the circumstances are most conducive for developing both psychological and physical dependence on nicotine.

Nicotine's CNS-stimulating effects, coupled with the frequent perception that it is sedating, are powerfully reinforcing to humans (Le Foll & Goldberg, 2006). Nicotine remains a highly accessible drug in spite of the numerous taxes levied on its purchase over the years. In addition, although the number of social settings where nicotine use is acceptable has decreased, enclaves of social support for its use remain in the United States.

The relatively rapid rise and fall of nicotine blood levels creates the demand for many nicotine reinforcements a day. Each inhalation results in a drug reinforcement that must be replaced quickly because of a rapid fall in the blood level of nicotine. For those who smoke a pack each day, estimates average 150 nicotine reinforcements a day, which equals about 55,000 a year.

Reasons such as these make psychological dependence on nicotine so likely once use of the drug starts. Many social and environmental associations with nicotine use strengthen the psychological dependence. Additionally, strong incentive to continue using the drug is added when people become physically dependent on it. Use must continue to avoid unpleasant withdrawal symptoms, or to escape such symptoms if they begin. Use of nicotine under such conditions is strengthened through negative reinforcement. Therefore, pharmacological, psychological, and social/environmental variables combine to make nicotine a drug with high-dependence liability.

7.6 Effects of Chronic Tobacco Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

7-10 Discuss the diseases that are linked with cigarette smoking

7-11 Explain the risks associated with passive smoking

Chronic or long-term use of tobacco products is associated with life-threatening diseases (see Figure 7.2). The seriousness of these consequences is reflected in precedent-setting legislation enacted in Canada in 2001. Part of the law requires cigarette packs to display gruesome pictures of possible long-term consequences of smoking, such as a lung tumor or a mouth with oral cancer. In 2016, in Canada the requirement is an average of at least 75%, 75% front and 75% back of the product packaging must contain the warning. The Canadian legislation is part of an international trend to use the cigarette (and cigar and smokeless tobacco) package itself to reduce the world's health care burdens by helping people either to stop smoking or not to initiate it (National Cancer Council of Australia, 2006). In 2016, 105 countries (the United States is not among them) required pictorial warnings on cigarette packaging (Canadian Cancer Society, 2016).

> *"Nicotine addiction is like an itch. If you itch, it's nice to scratch it. But better to have no itch at all."*
>
> Dali Lama

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

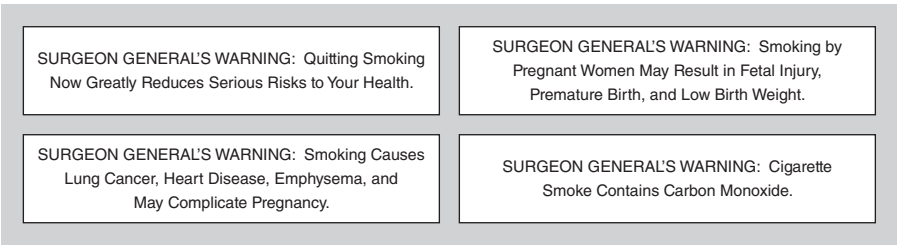

SURGEON GENERAL'S WARNING: Quitting Smoking Now Greatly Reduces Serious Risks to Your Health.
SURGEON GENERAL'S WARNING: Smoking by Pregnant Women May Result in Fetal Injury, Premature Birth, and Low Birth Weight.
SURGEON GENERAL'S WARNING: Smoking Causes Lung Cancer, Heart Disease, Emphysema, and May Complicate Pregnancy.
SURGEON GENERAL'S WARNING: Cigarette Smoke Contains Carbon Monoxide.

FIGURE 7.2
Four warnings that must appear on cigarette packages, according to a 1984 U.S. federal law. One warning per package appears, with each message rotated every 3 months. The contents of the message are based on the Reports of the Surgeon General on the *Health Consequences of Smoking* report

We begin this section with a discussion of the effects of chronic cigarette smoking because that is the dominant way tobacco is used. According to the CDC, estimates in 2014 were that annually there are 480,000 deaths attributable to smoking in the United States, 41,000 of which are due to "secondhand" smoke (discussed later in this chapter). Smoking is, as it has been for decades, the largest preventable cause of disease and death in the United States. Woloshin et al. (2002) made this figure more personal by comparing rates of death from different diseases among adults 20 years of age and older who currently smoke or who never smoked. These researchers computed the chances of dying in the following 10 years for a given medical problem for different age groups, and used the 1998 National Center for Health Statistics Public Use Multiple Cause of Death files for their computations. For women, there were some diseases for which the probability of dying in the following 10 years does not differ at any age between those who did and did not smoke. For example, at age 30, the chance of dying of breast cancer in the following years is 0.001 for both groups, and at age 45, it is 0.004. For other diseases, however, there are big differences between the groups. At age 45, 6 of 1,000 (0.006) women who smoked are likely to die of a heart attack compared with 2 of 1,000 (0.002) women who did not smoke. At age 55, the counterpart numbers are 24 (0.024) and 7 (0.007). The disparity continues with further aging; at age 80, the numbers are 453 (0.453) and 90 (0.090). For all causes of death, at age 30, the numbers are 14 (0.014) for those who smoked and 7 (0.007) for those who did not smoke; at age 45, they are 50 (0.050) and 26 (0.026); at age 55, 125 (0.125) and 66 (0.066); and at age 80, 950 (0.950) and 581 (0.581).

The picture is similar for men. Those who did and did not smoke did not differ in projected death rates from diseases like colon or prostate cancer, and they did not differ in rates of death by accidents. However, for death by heart attack, stroke, or lung cancer, the disparities in death rates were large and evident from age 30 to old age. The proportions of death from all causes at age 30 were 0.030 for those who smoked and 0.013 for those who did not smoke; at age 45, they were 0.091 and 0.039; at age 55, 0.125 and 0.066; and at age 80, 0.950 and 0.650. Statistics like these are represented in cost-of-illness studies: The CDC cites an estimated cost of smoking to the U.S. economy in 2017 of well over $300 billion a year, which includes $170 billion for direct medical costs and $156 billion for loss of productivity.

All the data we cited on the health consequences of chronic cigarette smoking are for the United States only. However, a 2008 World Health Organization (WHO) report included an estimate that over 5 million men and women worldwide die prematurely due to cigarette smoking. The problem is not estimated to resolve itself. The WHO report also included an estimate that, in the 20th century, 100 million people around the world died prematurely due to smoking; by the year 2100, the WHO projects 10 times that number, or 1 billion premature deaths due to smoking worldwide (see the Drugs and Culture Box 7.1).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 7.1

Tobacco Use Overseas

As we discussed earlier, the prevalence of cigarette smoking among adults in the United States has gone down considerably over the last 50 years. This reduction has been attributed mainly to information about the health hazards of smoking and to government policies and laws that restrict access to smoking. In Western Europe, the rates of smoking also have gone down in the past few decades, but the current prevalence of smoking is still considerably higher in some of those countries than it is in the United States. In several countries, such as Serbia, Bulgaria, Austria, and Portugal, the prevalence of smoking increased between 1980 and 2012 (Ng et al., 2014). Prevalence of tobacco use varies in South and Southeast Asian countries, though in all countries, smoking prevalence is much lower in women compared with men. In Indonesia, Maldives, and Bangladesh, smoking among men is high. Nepal, Bangladesh, Maldives, and Cambodia report high rates of chewing tobacco use among men.

Of course, the knowledge about the effects of smoking on health that is available to Americans is available to the governments of other countries as well. Thus, it seems that cultural, social, and financial factors account for the continued and sometimes increased popularity of smoking around the world. For example, in the United States, many view smoking as a personal choice that may cause some harm but not that much. As such, society and governments alike should tolerate smoking. In France, smoking is very much a part of café life and lends an intellectual aura to those who smoke. And in China, the government is at best ambivalent about its citizens' smoking. Although the Chinese government of course is aware of the health risks of smoking, it also controls tobacco product distribution and sales in China. Countries with monopolies on tobacco have an incentive to keep people smoking.

The financial and health implications of smoking trends overseas are profound. It is estimated that about half of those who smoke daily will die from tobacco-related illnesses. Given what is known about the consequences of chronic cigarette smoking, what do you see as the major ethical, social, and financial factors that must be considered in deciding on a government's smoking laws? How much weight do you think should be given to each of these factors?

Tar, Nicotine, and Carbon Monoxide

Cigarette smoking damages health because of the constituents of tobacco smoke. The three main culprits are tar, nicotine, and carbon monoxide, and those who smoke face continual exposure to them for years. For example, an individual who smokes two packs per day could be seen with cigarette in hand, mouth, or ashtray 13.4 hours a day, taking about 400 puffs and inhaling as much as 1,000 mg of tar. Carbon monoxide appears to facilitate many of the disease processes associated with smoking. This is due to carbon monoxide's advantage over oxygen in binding to hemoglobin, which carries oxygen from the lungs to the tissues in the body. Exposure to even small amounts of carbon monoxide reduces the amount of hemoglobin available for binding to oxygen and thereby deprives the body's tissues of oxygen. The brain and heart are especially vulnerable to this action of carbon monoxide because they depend on aerobic respiration for proper functioning (Blum, 1984).

Most of the cancer-causing substances in smoke are in tar, which is the material that remains after cigarette smoke is passed through a filter. A cigarette typically contains 0.3 mg to 2.0 mg of nicotine (cigars yield 9 to 12 times more). When cigarettes are smoked and inhaled, about 20% of the nicotine is absorbed, compared with 2.5% to 5% when smoke is drawn into the mouth and then exhaled. That virtually all who smoke inhale is one reason (other than sheer numbers) that cigarette smoking, as opposed to cigar or pipe smoking (those who smoke cigars and pipes tend to inhale to a lesser degree), is the major cause of diseases related to tobacco use.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Because of the importance of the tar and nicotine content of cigarettes, until the mid-1980s, the Federal Trade Commission (FTC) published statistics on the tar and nicotine yield of cigarette brands manufactured in the United States. The FTC used to conduct its own yield tests by using smoking machines; today, tobacco companies report the results of the same kind of tests, which the FTC requires them to do (Cotton, 1993).

The amount of tar and nicotine delivered in U.S. brand-name cigarettes has declined considerably. In 1968, the average tar and nicotine yields of cigarettes produced in the United States were 21.6 mg and 1.35 mg, respectively. In 1978, these contents were 16.1 mg and 1.11 mg; in 1988, they were 13.3 mg and 0.94 mg; and in 1998, 12.0 mg and 0.88 mg (Federal Trade Commission, 2001). These averages cover a range of values for "light" versus "regular" versus "ultra" brands. For example, according to a report published by the Lorillard Tobacco Company in February 2009, each Newport Lights Box 80s cigarette has 9.0 mg of tar and 0.80 mg of nicotine, each Newport Medium Box 80s cigarette has 12.0 mg of tar and 1.00 mg of nicotine, and each Newport Regular Box 80s cigarette has 18.0 mg of tar and 1.30 mg of nicotine. A similar range is evident in cigarettes manufactured in other countries. For example, Endo et al. (2009) reported the tar and nicotine levels of the 10 most popular cigarette brands in Japan. The tar and nicotine levels were determined by following the testing procedures of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO), whose protocol is aligned with that of the FTC. (It is interesting to note that Canadian cigarette brands published tar and nicotine levels according to a far stricter protocol called "Health Canada Intense" that results in considerably higher estimates of tar and nicotine levels than those of either the FTC or the ISO.) The findings for the Japanese brands ranged from 0.90 mg of tar and 0.20 mg of nicotine for each "Pianissimo" cigarette, to 14.80 mg of tar and 1.11 mg of nicotine for each "Seven Stars" cigarette.

Reduced delivery of tar and nicotine from cigarettes seems like a good thing, given what we know about their contribution to serious disease. Indeed, the American public perceives that cigarette brands with low tar and nicotine yields are healthier (Campaign for Tobacco-Free Kids, 2010; Cotton, 1993). However, an essential point to understand throughout this discussion is that tar and nicotine delivery is measured by a smoking machine, which puffs consistently in the same controlled way regardless of the cigarette content. Humans are not so standardized. When the nicotine content of a cigarette is reduced, individuals consciously or unconsciously either inhale the smoke more intensely or smoke more cigarettes (DeGrandpre et al., 1992). The result is exposure to similar amounts of toxic substances in the smoke from lower-yield and higher-yield cigarettes. This was confirmed over 2 decades ago in a study of 298 individuals who smoked from New Mexico (Coultas et al., 1993). It is a critical finding because the risk of death from smoking goes up with increased exposure either by number of cigarettes smoked or by depth of inhalations. Therefore, any implication that low-yield nicotine and low-yield tar cigarettes are less hazardous can be deceptive. Accordingly, in 2010 the U.S. FDA mandated that tobacco companies no longer use terms such as "light," "medium," or "low" as part of their cigarette package labeling. This mandate has a biological basis as well. Brody et al.'s (2008) experiment showed that, when individuals smoked a cigarette containing 0.6 mg of nicotine, which is at the lower end of the range of quantities contained in commercial "light" brands, close to 80% of the nicotinic-ACH receptors in their brains were occupied.

Diseases Linked to Cigarette Smoking

Cigarette smoking kills because it leads to the development of coronary heart disease, cancer, and chronic obstructive lung disease. Heart disease is the single

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

biggest killer in the United States, and people who smoke have nearly twice the risk of contracting it compared with those who don't smoke. Cancers of the larynx, oral cavity, esophagus, bladder, pancreas, and kidney are associated with cigarette smoking—so associated that 30% of all cancer deaths are caused by it, as are 80% to 90% of all lung cancer deaths. For the first time, a study showing a link between smoking and lung cancer at the cellular level gave strong support that smoking causes lung cancer (Denissenko et al., 1996). Finally, smoking causes 80% to 90% of chronic obstructive lung diseases, such as **emphysema**. Overall, an individual who smokes can expect to live about 10 years less than someone who does not smoke. Fortunately, the risk of contracting smoking-related diseases decreases with time away from cigarettes. If individuals can manage to quit smoking for good before age 40, then the risk of death related to continued smoking would be reduced by about 90% (Jha et al., 2013).

emphysema
Disease of the lung characterized by abnormal dilution of its air spaces and distension of its walls. Frequently, heart action is impaired.

Many of the statistics on cigarette smoking and health in the United States have been based on studies done with men. However, large numbers of women began smoking after World War II, and they soon fell prey to similar health damages (USDHHS, 1987b). This upsurge likely was due in part to the tobacco industry's specific targeting of women in their advertising campaigns and to their design of cigarettes to suit women's product preferences (Henningfield et al., 2005). The rate of death due to lung cancer in women in 1990 was more than four times higher than it was in 1960, and lung cancer displaced breast cancer as the leading cancer-related cause of death for women in the 1980s (Center for Disease Control and Prevention, 1993; Ernster, 1993). According to information that the University of Michigan's Comprehensive Cancer Center provided in 2006, the ratio of lung cancer diagnoses in men to women in the 1970s was 3.5:1, and by 2000, it was 1.5:1. This trend has continued, so that a study published in 2013 showed that smoking-related risk of death for men and women in the United States is almost identical (Thun et al., 2013). In this regard, the rates of lung cancer in men in the United States began to fall in the 1980s, as the rate for women began to climb.

"Cigarettes are killers that travel in packs."

Anonymous

"SURGEON GENERAL'S WARNING: Not Quitting Smoking Now Is Absurd."

Hypothetical Surgeon General's warning, Letters to the Editor page, *The New York Times*, June 13, 2009

Women also face some unique health consequences of smoking. For example, women who smoke are at higher risk of cervical cancer, unwanted side effects of using oral contraceptives, and early menopause (Ernster, 1993). Furthermore, pregnant women who smoke incur a higher risk of spontaneous abortion, preterm births, low-weight babies, and fetal and infant deaths. If the infant is born healthy, there still is risk from nicotine present in the mother's milk (USDHHS, 1987b, 2001).

"They don't get your wind."
"Kent, the one cigarette that can show you proof of greater health protection."
"Less 'tar' than all leading longs."

Camels ad, 1935; Kent ad, 1953; L&M ad, 1979, respectively (Viscusi, 1992, pp. 38–39)

Other Tobacco Products and Health

The use of other tobacco products is not risk-free. Those who smoke pipes and cigars also have higher death rates than those who do not smoke. The differences are not as large as the comparisons we cited for those who smoke cigarettes, however, because those who smoke pipes and cigars tend to consume less tobacco and tend not to inhale (World Health Organization, 1999). A review of studies conducted around the world showed some mixed evidence, but, overall, it appears that those who use snuff and other kinds of smokeless tobacco are more likely to get oral cancer and types of noncancerous oral disease than those who do not use snuff as well as those who do not smoke cigarettes (Bofetta et al., 2008). Another finding from the Bofetta et al. review was that those who smoked cigarettes and switched from cigarettes to "spit" (chewing) tobacco still were at considerably higher risk to incur various cancers than were individuals who changed from cigarette smoking to no tobacco use at all. It seems that the risk for cancer is lower for smokeless tobacco use than for cigarette use, but smokeless tobacco use is not risk-free for cancer.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Passive Smoking

> *"Smoke-free environments are the most effective method for reducing exposures."*
>
> Michael O. Leavitt

It once was thought that individuals who smoked were harming only themselves. However, we know now that if you merely stay in the vicinity of people smoking, then you absorb nicotine, carbon monoxide, and other elements of tobacco smoke, although in lesser amounts than if you were actively smoking. You are essentially smoking passively if your body is the recipient of the toxins of another person's tobacco smoke.

Passive smoking (also referred to as "secondhand" smoking) is an active killer. Researchers who followed 32,000 healthy female nurses who did not smoke for 10 years found that regular exposure to cigarette smoke almost doubled the nurses' chances of contracting heart disease (Kawachi et al., 1997). As we noted at the beginning of this chapter, the U.S. CDC estimates that 41,000 deaths a year in the United States are attributable to secondhand smoke. In 1993, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency declared environmental tobacco smoke (secondhand smoke)

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 7.2

Cigarette Smoking and Health: Who's Responsible?

In the 1950s, individuals who smoked began to file hundreds of lawsuits against cigarette companies, claiming that the companies were responsible for the individuals' poor health. Until the 1980s, all these cases had failed, and the tobacco industry never paid a cent in damages. Their main defense was the 1965 Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act that took effect in 1966. (This is the same act that was extended to require the rotation of four warning labels on cigarette packages.) Federal courts had always claimed that this act preempted the tobacco industry from responsibility for the health consequences of smoking, at least for any smoking done on or after January 1, 1966. Furthermore, juries had tended to perceive that those who smoked were responsible for their own decisions regarding smoking.

Great attention was given to a lawsuit filed in 1983 by a New Jersey woman. In 1988, a jury awarded $400,000 to the husband of the woman, who died in 1984 of lung cancer. This landmark decision was overturned in 1990 by an appeals court, which ruled that whether the woman had seen or believed tobacco industry advertisements before 1966 had not been proven. The woman's family continued to fight, but they dropped their suit in November 1992, at least partly due to the great financial cost of pursuing it. Other individuals who smoked and their families filed separate suits in the early to mid-1990s. However, legal action brought against the tobacco industry generally was unsuccessful.

Class action suits against the tobacco companies have been more successful, perhaps in part because groups of individuals tend to have more resources than any one person does. In 1997, both Florida and Mississippi won damages ($11.3 billion and $3.3 billion, respectively) from the tobacco industry to cover the states' costs in Medicaid payments for smoking-related illnesses. In 1999, the omnibus tobacco settlement was reached as the attorneys general of 46 states and five territories signed an agreement totaling $206 billion, with tobacco companies to settle Medicaid lawsuits. This accord also has numerous other provisions aimed at preventing young people from starting smoking in the first place, as well as underwriting the costs of treating individuals who already are dependent on nicotine. The omnibus tobacco settlement likely was due primarily to revelations that the tobacco industry concealed early knowledge about the relationship between smoking and serious health problems.

Overall, the consequences of legal actions related to the chronic effects of cigarette smoking have been profound for the tobacco industry, for consumers of tobacco products, and for our principles of choice and personal responsibility. For example, if tobacco companies are held liable for diseases that can be traced to the use of their products, then what does that imply about liability for the public's use of alcohol—another legal drug that could have chronic detrimental effects? What would the companies' liability imply about the principle that individuals have the freedom and responsibility for their actions?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"If children don't like to be in a smoky room, they'll leave." When asked by a shareholder about infants who cannot leave a smoky room, Harper stated, "At some point, they begin to crawl."

David Carrig about Charles Harper (R.J. Reynolds chairman), in "RJR Wins Fight," *USA Today*, April 18, 1996

a "Group A" carcinogen. For reference, other Group A carcinogens include arsenic, asbestos, benzine, and radon. Such action has led to the widespread restriction of smoking in public places. Passive smoking is no less of a problem in other parts of the world. A report from the University of California–Berkeley showed that, in 2002, over 48,000 women in China died from ischemic heart disease and lung cancer caused by passive smoking (Yang, 2005). This compares to the 47,300 Chinese women who died that year from the same diseases caused by active smoking. Overall, a study published in 2011 provided the estimate that, in 2004, passive smoking killed about 600,000 people around the world, 379,000 from heart disease, 165,000 due to lower respiratory infections, 36,900 from asthma, and 21,400 from lung cancer (Oberg et al., 2011).

Age is no barrier to passive smoking, as its effects can be felt by anyone from young children to older adults. Moreover, research has shown that the fetus is exposed to significant amounts of nicotine if a mother who did not smoke is regularly exposed to cigarette smoke during the gestation period, and that such exposure can harm the fetus (Grant, 2005; Leonardi-Bee et al., 2011). Children whose parents smoke are more likely than children whose parents do not smoke to have bronchitis and pneumonia as well as some impaired pulmonary function (Rees & Connolly, 2006; World Health Organization, 1999), and these childhood illnesses may extend into adulthood (Lovasi et al., 2010). Of further concern is "thirdhand" smoke. One study showed that the toxins in tobacco smoke linger (Winickoff et al., 2009). Therefore, going outside of the home to smoke a cigarette, for example, does not eliminate the problem, because the toxins in tobacco smoke are deposited onto hair or clothes, even though the cigarette has been extinguished. Thirdhand smoke is especially a problem for young children, whose immune systems are not fully developed.

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast the acute and chronic effects of tobacco use.
2. Create a table with two columns. Identify diseases associated with chronic tobacco use in the first column, then describe the disease in the second column.

7.7 Treatment of Cigarette Smoking

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

7-12 Describe behavioral programs used to treat cigarette smoking and evaluate their effectiveness

7-13 Describe pharmacological programs used to treat cigarette smoking and evaluate their effectiveness

In this section, we consider ways to stop smoking. Although stopping the use of other tobacco products also is an important topic, we again focus on cigarette smoking because it accounts for the vast majority of tobacco use and because it has been the major subject by far in the literature on ways to stop nicotine use.

Note that nicotine is the only nonalcohol drug for which we consider treatment outside of Chapter 15. This is because such a large amount has been written on treatment of tobacco (nicotine) use compared to treatment of the use of other drugs besides

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

alcohol. Furthermore, treatments for stopping smoking have been at the center of attention for health professionals and the public due to the health hazards of smoking.

In reviewing nicotine's acute effects, you saw how easily a person might acquire and keep the habit of tobacco use. In reviewing the health consequences of chronic tobacco use, you may have wondered why anyone would continue to use tobacco products. Yet, of course, many people do continue, despite wanting to quit; others find quitting easier.

Adults say they quit smoking for a variety of reasons. These reasons may be categorized broadly as "intrinsic motivation" and "extrinsic motivation" (Curry et al., 1990). Examples of intrinsic reasons are a fear of getting sick, feeling in control, and proving that quitting is possible (for the individual). Extrinsic reasons include stopping others from nagging, being forced by others to quit, and saving money (McBride et al., 2001). Researchers (e.g., Lichtenstein, 1982; Shiffman et al., 1996) also have summarized the determinants of smoking relapse, which is a major problem in smoking treatment and in treatment of the substance use disorders in general. Smoking **relapse** determinants include nicotine withdrawal symptoms, stress and frustration, social pressure, alcohol use, and weight gain. Furthermore, Pomerleau (1997) suggested that people with psychiatric problems such as depression, anxiety, bulimia, and attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder have a higher prevalence of smoking and a lower rate of quitting smoking successfully than do people without such problems.

relapse
A term from physical disease; return to a previous state of illness from one of health. As applied to smoking, it means one resumes smoking after having abstained for some amount of time.

We will examine how the determinants of stopping and resuming smoking have influenced the content of formal treatments and their long-term effectiveness. Before we get to that, there is the question of whether formal treatments of cigarette smoking are needed.

The Necessity of Formal Treatment

The survey studies we cited earlier in this chapter show the decline in smoking rates among U.S. adults beginning in the 1960s. Most individuals stopped smoking on their own, without the aid of formal treatment (CDC, 2017). This raises the question of whether formal treatments for smoking are necessary.

In answering this question, we must consider several points. Although most people stop smoking without help, they tend to succeed only after multiple attempts. Perhaps you have heard the comment attributed to Mark Twain: "Quitting smoking is easy; I've done it many times." Indeed, with or without formal treatment, success at stopping smoking is more likely with more previous tries at quitting. Another important statistic, which we discuss in more detail in Chapter 15, is the rate of "spontaneous remission." Briefly, this refers to the rate of "cure" (in this context, stopping smoking) during a given time period without any formal treatment. Although data on spontaneous remission are basic to evaluating treatment effectiveness, they unfortunately are extremely hard to collect. For cigarette smoking, Abrams and Wilson (1986) estimated that the rate of spontaneous remission ranges from 3% to 14%. Formal treatments have to do better than that rate to prove their worth.

Another set of statistics to consider in deciding whether formal treatments of smoking are necessary are the economic and social costs of cigarette smoking: Earlier, we cited the figure $300 billion in the United States in 2017. This figure does not begin to reflect the human suffering of patients and their families that goes with contracting cancer, heart disease, and other diseases associated with chronic tobacco use.

Add to this the finding of a 1991 study of men and women in three different communities that showed that quitting smoking, even at a later age, prolongs life. The increased longevity is due to a quick reduction in the risk of major

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Lady with a Lamp
(1946 Version)
According to a recent Nationwide survey:
MORE DOCTORS SMOKE CAMELS THAN ANY OTHER CIGARETTE
TRY CAMELS ON YOUR "T-ZONE"
CAMELS Costlier Tobaccos

Apic/Hulton Archive/Getty Images

The health message of this 1930s advertisement stands in stark contrast to current thinking.

smoking-influenced illnesses (LaCroix et al., 1991). Similarly, Anthonisen et al. (2005) reported the findings from a follow-up of adults who smoked with chronic obstructive pulmonary (lung) disease who had received intensive smoking cessation therapy 14.5 years earlier. The results showed that over 21% of the individuals who had received smoking cessation treatment sustained their status as individuals who stopped smoking, compared to about 5% of the individuals who had not received the treatment. Moreover, the percentages of individuals who had died at 14.5 years from all causes were significantly lower in the smoking treatment group compared to the rates for the group without treatment. Therefore, it seems that if smoking treatments increase the rate of smoking cessation compared to what people do on their own, then they would be more than worth their cost. We return to this point later.

Treatment Effectiveness

Programs to help people stop smoking focus on controlling nicotine withdrawal symptoms, breaking the habitual motor behavior involved in smoking, and learning skills to cope with the emotions, thoughts, and situations in which individuals say they use cigarettes to help them. People who stop smoking permanently have learned these skills well; have incentives to abstain, such as avoiding poor health; and have help in staying off cigarettes from family, friends, and others who care about them (Abrams & Wilson, 1986; Jones, 1987b).

> *"To smoke or not to smoke: I can make either a life work."*
>
> Mignon McLaughlin, *The Neurotic's Notebook*, 1960

Smoking cessation approaches may be classified into two main categories: behavioral programs and nicotine replacement therapies (NRTs). Regardless of the type of treatment, the usual treatment goal is total abstinence from nicotine.

Behavioral Programs

Behavioral programs to stop smoking have changed in major ways in recent years. Formerly, these programs involved ongoing, direct, often weekly contact with clinical staff in an individual or group format for a period of 2 or 3 months. The primary aims of these programs were to teach individuals to identify situations that presented a "high risk" for them to smoke, to apply techniques to weaken the habit components of smoking, to teach competing (with smoking) coping responses in high-risk situations, and to teach individuals to self-monitor their smoking behavior (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2002).

> *"Quitting smoking is rather a marathon than a sprint. It is not a one-time attempt, but a longer effort."*
>
> Aristotle

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As you can imagine, while these programs are successful, they are not practical or affordable for a great number of people. Traditional behavioral programs are still offered and may be especially suited to those showing greater dependence on tobacco. However, the format, intensity, and duration of behavioral smoking cessation programs all have expanded from their original version in recent years. For example, behavioral programs may involve telephone contact and the use of text messaging or the use of computer programs and the use of written materials (Das et al., 2016). In addition, contact frequency may be limited to once or twice for 30 minutes, with additional consultation as needed, or it may be more extended. Regardless of these variations, the aims of behavioral programs have stayed the same. Overall, participation in behavioral programs is an effective way to stop smoking (Hughes et al., 1999; National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2002). It is incorporated in the American Psychiatric Association's guidelines for the treatment of cigarette smoking.

> *"Nicotine patches are great. Stick one over each eye and you can't find your cigarettes."*
>
> Anonymous

Nicotine Replacement Therapies

Although behavioral programs are effective relative to "placebo" or standard care comparison treatments, the majority of individuals who complete such programs resume smoking after 6 months to a year (Shiffman, 1993). This problem of relapse has been attributed to the cravings that individuals experience when they abstain from smoking or from other ways of ingesting nicotine (Naqvi et al., 2007).

> *"I'm telling you I wanted a cigarette so bad I cried. I was so nervous I could hardly carry on at work, and I couldn't hide it. After a while I would just shake. People said they couldn't see it, but I could feel it."*
>
> Person trying to stay off cigarettes (Krogh, 1991, p. 71)

To the extent that craving is due to physical withdrawal, a person would have a better chance of quitting for good if nicotine could somehow be used in the treatment of smoking. Based on this possibility, there has been major growth in the use of what are called nicotine replacement therapies (NRTs). These treatments involve administering nicotine as part of the effort to help individuals stop smoking. The vehicles of nicotine replacement that have FDA approval are nicotine gum, the nicotine patch, nicotine nasal spray, nicotine inhaler, and nicotine lozenges (Das et al., 2016).

The growing literature on clinical trials of NRTs leads to several conclusions (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2002; Stead et al., 2012). First, each of the NRTs raises the chances of quitting smoking by a factor of 2, compared to placebo. Second, the research that has compared different NRTs shows no differences in their effectiveness. Third, individuals may have initial preferences for one replacement therapy over another, but typically they come to adapt to the one that they are using. Fourth, combining NRTs with behavioral programs enhances the quit rates that typically are achieved by either type of treatment alone. The parts of behavioral programs that are particularly important, skills building and social support, make sense in view of our earlier comments on some of the characteristics of individuals who are able to stop smoking and refrain from restarting. Finally, there is little evidence of long-term negative consequences of the use of NRTs, assuming they are used as intended. The general effectiveness of these therapies led to the Food and Drug Administration's approval of the five nicotine replacement medications listed earlier for helping people quit smoking cigarettes, two by prescription of a medical provider, and three (patches, gum, and lozenges) available over the counter (as opposed to prescribed by a medical provider).

The finding that combining behavioral and nicotine replacement treatments leads to the best outcomes raises important points about nicotine replacement treatment. Why a person experiences drug craving is extremely complex and is not just dependent on biological factors such as physical withdrawal. Craving also is a result of psychological, social, and environmental factors. In this context, it is not startling that craving for a cigarette may be reduced only to a limited degree as a result of NRT

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

GARO/Phanie/Alamy stock photo

The nicotine patch is a popular type of nicotine replacement therapy.

(Rose, 1991). Behavioral programs complement nicotine replacement by addressing facets of smoking behavior that administration of nicotine cannot. Behavioral programs help people to cope better with the factors that encourage them to continue to smoke or to resume smoking after stopping. Examples of these factors are social pressure to smoke, general environmental cues that are strongly associated with smoking, and psychological states like stress and frustration (Lichtenstein, 1982). As we discussed earlier, people with mental disorders may be especially vulnerable to the nonpharmacological aspects of smoking as well as to nicotine's actions on the body that may help to alleviate their psychiatric symptoms. Furthermore, Perkins's (1996) review suggests that women may have a more difficult time quitting smoking than men do, and one hypothesis is that factors other than nicotine more strongly affect their smoking. The results of a review by Cepada-Benito et al., (2004) are consistent with this hypothesis. This review of studies of the effectiveness of NRTs showed that, for men, NRTs with "low-intensity" behavioral support were effective in reducing or stopping smoking throughout the follow-up period (12 months). However, for women, NRTs with low-intensive support tended to be effective only in the short term (3 or 6 months following treatment). However, long-term effectiveness of NRT for women tended to require more intensive behavioral support. These findings accentuate the importance of giving those who smoke ways other than nicotine to cope with feelings and situations that are powerfully connected to smoking.

We should add two FDA-approved pharmacological treatments for smoking that do not work by replacing nicotine: the drugs bupropion and varenicline (USDHHS, 2008). Clinical trials have shown these medications to be superior to placebo in treating adults with nicotine dependence, and they are useful for nonpregnant individuals who request a pharmacological treatment that is not nicotine based. It is important to note that although bupropion is an antidepressant medication, and we mentioned earlier that individuals who are depressed may find it more difficult than others to stop smoking, the effectiveness of bupropion is not related to a history of depression (Lingford-Hughes et al., 2004). In this regard, other antidepressant medications, such as fluoxetine (Prozac), have been tested as a treatment for nicotine dependence but have not been shown to be effective. In contrast to buproprion, varenicline is a drug developed specifically for the treatment of smoking and works by competing with nicotine in binding to nicotine receptors in the brain. Varenicline stimulates nicotine receptors as nicotine does, so that smoking cravings are assuaged. Furthermore, if individuals smoke while on varenicline, they feel reduced nicotine effects compared to when not on the medication so that smoking is less reinforcing.

Conclusions about the Treatment of Cigarette Smoking

Nicotine is a strongly reinforcing drug to humans and use can quickly lead to dependence. Nicotine does have some "adaptive" acute effects, such as improved sensory and cognitive functioning, but most attention has been paid to the negative health consequences of chronic nicotine use through smoking cigarettes. As a result, the emphasis today is on how to stop people from using nicotine. The best way to do this is by continuing the information campaigns and other "macro-environmental" methods, such as banning smoking in public places, which have advanced the overall

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

decline in the prevalence of smoking and other use of tobacco among U.S. adults as well as reduced the number of individuals exposed to secondhand and thirdhand smoke. Along these lines, programs aimed at youth who have not begun to use tobacco are the best investments, because tobacco use is hard to stop once started. Promising tobacco use prevention programs are being developed, but a major counterforce is tobacco industry advertising. According to the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, in 2010, the tobacco industry spent $8.05 billion on advertising and promotions, or $22 million a day. For both adolescents and adults, advertising strengthens the positive associations that go along with smoking and other tobacco use. This is why the U.S. government continues to try to impose greater restrictions on advertising by tobacco companies, as prominently reflected in the omnibus tobacco settlement.

One direction for the future is the continued expansion of smoking treatment formats. Such treatments are the best way to capture the widest segment of the population that smokes. For example, smoking quit lines are becoming an increasingly popular and cost-effective way to reach large numbers of people who want to stop smoking but do not want to or cannot afford to access the traditional health care system (Fiori et al., 2007). Their popularity is evident by going to the CDC website (https://www.cdc.gov) to see quit lines available in the United States, as well as references for other kinds of resources to help people quit smoking.

In addition, new treatments at work sites already have proved to be an effective way to help people stop smoking. Brief behavioral or nicotine replacement treatment also may be delivered to adolescents or adults in the primary (medical) care setting (Hollis et al., 2005). Future research should continue to refine and strengthen treatments for those who show strong dependence on smoking. A combination of behavioral and pharmacological treatments seems to work best for these individuals. Improvements in treatment efficacy can be realized, for example, by discovering what combination of treatment components works best for different individuals.

Along these lines, a study by Uhl et al. (2008) identified several genes that marked individuals who were successful versus unsuccessful in abstaining from smoking for up to 24 weeks after the respective "quit dates" of three different clinical trials of buproprion and nicotine replacement treatment. Data such as these give information about one characteristic of individuals who are likely or not likely to have successful outcomes if they are administered buproprion or one of the NRTs, respectively, to stop smoking. The Uhl study is an earlier example of the current emphasis on "precision medicine," which has been at the forefront of pharmacotherapy research. Precision medicine is concerned with applying treatment for a medical or psychiatric problem (including the substance use disorders, one of which is nicotine use disorder) that is a genetic "match" to an individual. Its research and practice have been accelerated in major ways by advances that have been made in pharmacogenomics.

Finally, a percentage of people will probably simply not want to stop smoking. In this regard, considerably more good research with long-term follow-ups of patients is needed, but data suggest that a reduction in smoking may have some health benefits and may even be a step toward quitting smoking entirely for some individuals (Hughes & Carpenter, 2006; Pisinger & Godtfredsen, 2007). Developing a less hazardous cigarette or other ways of delivering nicotine would be ways to ease the serious health consequences of chronic tobacco use. Cigarettes with reduced tar and nicotine dominate today's market, but this is only part of the answer because those who smoke compensate for the reduction to some degree by inhaling more deeply and by smoking more cigarettes. Smokeless tobacco products are a smoke-free but

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

controversial way to reduce the harm of using nicotine. Such an approach qualifies as "harm reduction" (see Contemporary Issue Box 7.3) because, as we noted earlier, use of smokeless tobacco incurs lower risk of cancers developing and likely a much lower risk of developing heart disease. Yet, this approach is controversial because many fear it will not encourage people to stop the use of nicotine entirely

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 7.3

Harm Reduction and Nicotine Dependence

The traditional goal of treatments for cigarette smoking is zero tolerance for nicotine, or abstinence from any use of tobacco products. This is because most individuals who smoke have trouble maintaining a "moderate" level of cigarette consumption and because of the serious health hazards of smoking. However, the increasing availability and acceptability of nicotine replacement products, along with the continued relatively high prevalence of smoking among subgroups in society such as those who suffer from psychiatric disorders or those who are poorer and less educated, have raised the possibility of an alternative to zero tolerance called *harm reduction* (Hughes, 1996; Warner et al., 1997). Harm-reduction approaches view as desirable any behavior change that results in the reduction, if not the elimination, of negative consequences associated with behaviors such as smoking. For those who find staying off nicotine extremely difficult or for those who do not want to, finding a safer way to ingest nicotine than cigarette smoking would be a positive step.

As you might have guessed, the nicotine replacement methods mentioned in this chapter are one way for individuals to ingest nicotine without exposing others or themselves to the toxic compounds in cigarette smoke. Over the years, tobacco companies have pursued the smokeless path, with varying degrees of enthusiasm, in the form of inventing a "smokeless cigarette." Smokeless cigarettes have been designed to provide the nicotine and nondrug features of cigarette smoking without most or any of the toxic smoke. Such products, however, have had limited success at best. In contrast, "vaporized nicotine products" have been popular among both youth and adults, and those who smoke and those who do not. The trend as of this writing is that that popularity continues to rise (Levy et al., 2016). The best-known by far among these products is the "electronic cigarette," which now (February 2017) is available for sale in numerous retail outlets in the United States as well as on websites. Electronic cigarettes have been promoted as safer than traditional tobacco cigarettes, because tobacco is not burned as a vehicle for delivering nicotine to the body by inhalation. Instead, a battery in a holder shaped like a cigarette heats a solution of nicotine in propylene glycol and produces a fine mist that is inhaled for nicotine delivery to the lungs. Unfortunately, although it is agreed that e-cigarettes are safer than traditional tobacco cigarettes, the research evidence for that absolute safety is inconclusive and more and higher-quality research is needed to help to answer the question of the potential harm to health, especially in the longer term, that e-cigarettes pose (McKee & Capewell, 2015).

The tobacco companies also have looked at tobacco products that are not cigarettes as "safer" alternatives to traditional cigarettes. Our earlier review of smokeless tobacco products suggests that they pose a lower health risk than do cigarettes but that they are hardly risk-free. Earlier in this chapter, we cited another smokeless tobacco product that has been prevalent in Sweden for 200 years (snus, which rhymes with "loose"), and that has seen a revival in the last 20 years because of its purported lower risk to health. Snus is moist, ground tobacco that is placed between the gum and the cheek, but it does not require spitting like chew tobacco. Tobacco companies moved to test-market snus in the United States because of its great success as a "harm-reduction" product in Sweden. Unfortunately, again, there are little scientific data about snus; a recent clinical trial suggests that its use is associated with higher risk of pancreatic cancer but not with oral and lung cancers as cigarettes are. Snus also delivers a potent dose of nicotine.

The harm-reduction approach to cigarette smoking is highly controversial among health professionals and other groups concerned with the consequences of cigarette smoking. Harm reduction has implications not only for nicotine use among individuals already dependent on this drug, but also for those who are not yet dependent. What do you see as the overall advantages and disadvantages of the zero-tolerance and harm-reduction approaches to changing behaviors of cigarette smoking?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and likely would result in their return to cigarette smoking because it is a more efficient way to deliver nicotine. Nevertheless, some preliminary evidence suggests such fears may be unfounded (Tilashalski et al., 2005). The main point to take away from this discussion is that creating and testing the effectiveness of new ways to help people to stop or reduce their smoking can only advance the health of the general public.

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast behavioral and pharmacological programs used to treat cigarette smoking.

Summary

- Nicotine occurs naturally in only one source: the tobacco plant. The major commercial tobacco products are cigarettes, cigars, snuff, chewing tobacco, and pipe tobacco.
- Until about 1860, tobacco was widely believed to have medicinal properties. Nicotine's "medical cover" was blown when it was isolated in 1828, and shown to have dependent properties.
- Cigarette smoking is the most popular way to use tobacco.
- The prevalence of smoking among U.S. adults began to decline in 1965, and continued on that trend for the rest of the 20th century. A major reduction in the number of individuals who currently smoke and an increase in the number of those who have ceased smoking seem to be related to the U.S. Surgeon General's 1964 report, and subsequent publications, on the negative health consequences of cigarette smoking.
- Trends in the overall prevalence of smoking vary according to age, gender, racial/ethnic identity, education, and employment status.
- The use of smokeless tobacco products among youth is a concern. The disparity in prevalence between men and women is extremely large.
- Nicotine is a cholinergic agonist that has biphasic (stimulant and depressant) action.
- Nicotine can be absorbed through the oral, buccal, and nasal mucosa; the gastrointestinal tract; and the lungs.
- By inhalation, nicotine in tobacco smoke reaches the brain in 7 seconds. Brain levels thus rise rapidly, but then they fall rapidly because nicotine is quickly distributed to other sites of action. Nicotine is metabolized primarily in the liver and eliminated mostly in urine.
- Functional tolerance to nicotine's effects is acquired quickly. Dispositional tolerance to nicotine also seems to develop.
- Nicotine induces physical dependence. In 1988, the U.S. Office of the Surgeon General issued a report with the conclusion that nicotine has physical dependence liability.
- Nicotine's acute effects involve the CNS and ANS. It tends to have stimulant effects at lower doses but more depressant effects at higher doses.
- Despite its classification as a stimulant, those who use nicotine often perceive it as having calming, relaxing effects.
- Nicotine's suppressant effect on body weight is an important motivation for smoking, especially in women.
- Pharmacological, psychological, and social/environmental factors combine to make nicotine a drug with high dependence liability. The major motivator in continuing tobacco use is nicotine.
- Smoking kills because of the individual's chronic exposure to carbon monoxide, tar, and nicotine in tobacco smoke.
- Cigarettes with reduced tar and nicotine levels are not "healthier" because individuals make up for the reduction either by smoking more cigarettes or by inhaling them more deeply.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Major diseases linked to smoking are heart disease, chronic obstructive lung disease, and cancers of various types.
- In the last three decades,the rate of smoking-related diseases in women were similar to those of men. Some smoking-related health risks are unique to women.
- Because of the negative health consequences of passive smoking, restricting smoking in public places has become the norm in the United States.
- Smoking treatment programs focus on stopping nicotine-withdrawal symptoms, breaking the behavioral or habit part of smoking, and teaching skills to cope with stress without smoking.
- In general, treatment approaches may be classified into two main types: behavioral programs and medication therapies (pharmacotherapies).
- Quitting smoking is one thing; "staying quit" is another.
- A major reason for relapse (returning to pre-treatment levels of smoking after some period of quitting smoking following treatment) is that individuals continue to crave nicotine long after they have stopped smoking.
- Nicotine replacement treatments and other pharmacotherapies for cigarette smoking seem to be most effective when used in combination with behavioral treatments, especially for those who show strong dependence on smoking.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Tobacco was once thought to have major medical value.
   T *From the time of Columbus until about 1860, tobacco was widely thought to be a panacea for medical problems.*
2. Throughout the age ranges, men have higher smoking rates than women do.
   F *Rates are higher for men in the 18- to 25-year-old range and (less so) among those 26 and older. Rates for male and female adolescents in the 12- to 17-year-old range differ little.*
3. The prevalence of smokeless tobacco use among men is about three times that of use among women.
   F *The discrepancy is over 10-fold; men use smokeless tobacco products far more than women do.*
4. Nicotine can be considered both a stimulant and a depressant.
   T *Nicotine is called a biphasic drug because it tends to act as a stimulant at lower doses, but it acts as a depressant at higher doses.*
5. When using commercial tobacco products, people reach the peak blood level of nicotine most quickly by using smokeless tobacco.
   F *The quickest way to reach the peak blood level for a dose of nicotine is by inhalation or smoking.*
6. Though psychological dependence is common, no cases of physical dependence on nicotine have been identified.
   F *Nicotine has been identified clearly as a drug on which individuals can become physically dependent.*
7. Nicotine's calming effects are a main reason for its use.
   T *Even at doses associated with stimulant action in the body, those who use nicotine often perceive it to have calming effects. Such effects are identified as major reasons for continuing to use nicotine.*
8. Nicotine plays a secondary role to learning and social factors in maintaining tobacco use.
   F *Nicotine plays a substantial, and some think a major, role; learning and social factors are important too.*
9. Cigarette smoking is the leading cause of preventable death in the United States.
   T *According to the CDC, cigarette smoking causes nearly 1 in 5 deaths annually in the United States.*
10. Low-tar, low-nicotine cigarettes are less damaging to health than cigarettes that do not have reduced tar and nicotine content.
    F *Although this is theoretically true, in practice, those who smoke tend to increase the*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

intensity of inhaling or the number of cigarettes when they smoke cigarettes of reduced tar and nicotine content. Therefore, exposure to these compounds is similar to what it would be with cigarettes of unreduced content.

11. Despite the media hype, passive smoking actually poses a serious health risk to few Americans.
F *Of the 480,000 deaths attributable to smoking in 2014 according to the CDC, 41,000 (about 8.5%) were due to passive smoking.*

12. The majority of individuals who use behavioral therapies alone to stop smoking will resume smoking within a year.
T *While behavioral therapies can be an effective way to stop smoking, the majority of individuals will resume smoking within a year. Nicotine replacement therapies in combination with behavioral therapy result in the best outcomes.*

Key Terms

emphysema **nicotine poisoning** **relapse**

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Considering that adults in the lower socioeconomic classes have a disproportionately high rate of smoking, what do you think about the equity of the high tax rates that the federal and local governments impose on tobacco products? For example, as of this writing (February 2020), a pack of cigarettes in New York City costs an average of over $17.
2. As you've learned, individuals can quickly develop a physical dependence to nicotine. The effects of chronic tobacco use—including heart disease, chronic obstructive lung disease, and cancer—outweigh any short-term beneficial effects. Why, then, do you think that tobacco use is largely unregulated in much of the world?
3. Based on our knowledge about the effects of secondhand smoke, would a total ban on smoking cigarettes in public places violate the individual's rights and freedoms in the United States?
4. The past 20 years have seen increasing regulation governing the use of tobacco products in the United States. The Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act, signed in 2009, and a later rule gave the Food and Drug Administration the authority to regulate all tobacco products, including cigarettes, chewing tobacco, e-cigarettes, cigars, and hookahs. In 2019, the federal minimum age for sale of tobacco products was raised from 18 to 21. Do you think these steps will help prevent teenagers and young adults from starting to use these products? Why or why not?
5. With the use of tobacco products being identified as a major public health concern, should professional sports organizations (e.g., Major League Baseball) restrict their athletes' use of tobacco products during games and public appearances?

Suggested Readings

Brecher, E. M. (1972). *Licit and illicit drugs*. Consumers Union.

Cotton, P. (1993). Low-tar cigarettes come under fire. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *270*, 1399.

Chen, L. S., Horton, A., & Bierut, L. (2017). Pathways to precision medicine in smoking cessation treatments. *Neuroscience Letters*, *669*, 83–92.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2008). *Treating tobacco use and dependence*. Clinical Practice Guideline series.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

- **8-1** Identify the main categories of products that contain caffeine
- **8-2** Describe the historical uses of caffeine
- **8-3** Analyze the patterns of caffeine use across the world and why obtaining accurate data on caffeine use is difficult
- **8-4** Explain the mechanism of action for caffeine
- **8-5** Describe how caffeine is absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body
- **8-6** Evaluate the evidence that suggests individuals may develop physical dependence to caffeine but not tolerance
- **8-7** Compare and contrast the acute and chronic effects of caffeine
- **8-8** Summarize the risks of caffeinism and accidental caffeine overdose
- **8-9** Discuss the ways in which caffeine is used medically

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

8

Caffeine

Sources of Caffeine

History of Caffeine Use

Prevalence of Caffeine Consumption

Pharmacology of Caffeine

- Mechanism of Action
- Pharmacokinetics

Tolerance and Dependence

- Tolerance
- Caffeine Withdrawal

Acute Effects of Caffeine

- Behavioral and Psychological Effects
- Interactions among Caffeine, Nicotine, and Alcohol
- Acute Toxic Effects of Caffeine

Chronic Effects of Caffeine Use

Therapeutic Uses of Caffeine

Conclusions

- Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. About half the world's population consumes caffeine regularly.

___ 2. There are major subgroup differences in caffeine use in the United States.

___ 3. In dose of caffeine consumed, young children have the highest exposure to caffeine, after adults aged 18 and older.

___ 4. Caffeine is unable to cross the blood-brain barrier.

___ 5. Individuals who smoke tend to metabolize caffeine more slowly than those who do not smoke.

___ 6. So many people use coffee and tea without apparent difficulty that people obviously do not become physically dependent on caffeine.

___ 7. Caffeine's stimulant effects seem to be reinforcing in humans.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

___ 8. There is evidence that people can get intoxicated on caffeine.

___ 9. Caffeine crosses the placenta and poses a danger to the health of a fetus.

___10. Overall, caffeine seems to be a safe drug for everybody.

___11. Caffeine has little medical value.

___12. Caffeine's long-term effects on children are well understood.

Caffeine, theophylline, and theobromine are three chemically related compounds that occur naturally in more than 60 species of plants. These compounds are called the methylxanthines and are classified as alkaloids. An alkaloid is a compound that is of botanical origin, contains nitrogen, and is physiologically active (Levenson & Bick, 1977; Syed, 1976). Because of its overwhelming popularity, we emphasize caffeine in our discussion. This does not mean that the other methylxanthine drugs are of no importance. Like caffeine, theophylline is a mild central nervous system (CNS) stimulant, although it is less active than caffeine. Theobromine is the least active of the three drugs as a CNS stimulant. Popular products that contain caffeine may also contain different amounts of the other methylxanthines. Tea contains theophylline, though in considerably smaller proportion than caffeine. Milk chocolate actually contains a higher proportion of theobromine than caffeine. Table 8.1 gives the caffeine concentrations in coffee, tea, energy drinks, chocolate, and other foods and products.

> *"Coffee is the common man's gold, and like gold, it brings to every man the feeling of luxury and nobility."*
>
> Abd-al-Kadir, *In Praise of Coffee* (1587)

We will consider these issues in our discussion of caffeine:

1. Background information about its sources
2. History of caffeine use
3. Prevalence of use
4. Mechanisms of pharmacological action
5. Tolerance and physical dependence
6. Acute and chronic effects of caffeine use

We will end with an overview of some of the therapeutic uses of caffeine and other major methylxanthine drugs.

8.1 Sources of Caffeine

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-1 Identify the main categories of products that contain caffeine

Most people take their caffeine orally, as is apparent in Table 8.1, which highlights the wide range of caffeine products that people consume regularly.[1] Compounds synthesized to treat some medical problems also contain caffeine, even though

[1]Although caffeine is most commonly consumed orally, a number of caffeine inhalers have emerged in the market in recent years, including AeroLife Energy, Buzzaire, and Eagle Energy Vapor. The AeroLife Energy, for example, is about the size of a lipstick canister and contains 100 mg of caffeine powder, approximately the amount in a cup of coffee.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

caffeine is not always of direct benefit in alleviating the problem symptoms. Table 8.1 does not present another source of caffeine—illicit street drugs (Gilbert, 1984). For example, over-the-counter pain medications such as Anacin and Excedrin contain caffeine and have been used as filler to adulterate street drugs such as heroin and cocaine.

REVIEW

1. Create a chart identifying the main categories of products that contain caffeine and provide the name of a specific product for each category.

TABLE 8.1 Caffeine Concentration in Beverages, Energy Drinks, Foods, and Medications

Source	Caffeine Concentration (mg/oz)	Total Caffeine (mg)
Beverages		
Coffee, brewed (8 oz)	20.4	163
Coffee, drip (8 oz)	18	144
Coffee, instant (8 oz)	7	56
Coffee, espresso (1.5 oz)	51	77
Tea, brewed (8 oz)	6	48
Tea, green (8 oz)	3	24
Coca-Cola Classic (12 oz)	2.9	35
Pepsi-Cola (12 oz)	3.2	38
Mountain Dew (12 oz)	4.5	54
Dr. Pepper (12 oz)	3.4	41
Energy Drinks		
Red Bull (8.3 oz)	9.6	80
Monster (16 oz)	10	160
Rockstar (16 oz)	9.4	151
Full Throttle (16 oz)	10	160
NOS	10	160
Higher-Caffeine Energy Drinks		
Fixx (20 oz)	25	500
Wired X344 (16 oz)	21.5	344
Spike Shooter (8.4 oz)	35.7	300
Cocaine Energy Drink (8.4 oz)	33.3	280
High-Concentration Energy Drinks		
Ammo (1 oz)	171	171
Powershot (1 oz)	100	100
5-Hour Energy (2 oz)	100	200

(*continued*)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 8.1 Caffeine Concentration in Beverages, Energy Drinks, Foods, and Medications (*continued*)

Source	Caffeine Concentration (mg/oz)	Total Caffeine (mg)
Caffeinated Waters		
Java Water	7.5	125
Krank 20	5.9	100
Water Joe	3.8	65
Foods		
Milk chocolate (1 oz)	6	6
Cooking chocolate (1 oz)	35	35
Prescription Medications (1 tablet)		
APCs (aspirin, phenacetin, caffeine)		32
Cafergot		100
Darvon Compound		32
Migral		50
Over-the-Counter Preparations (1 tablet)		
Anacin		32
Aspirin		0
Tylenol		0
Cope, Midol		32
Excedrin		65
Dristan		30
NoDoz		100
NoDoz Maximum Strength		200
Dexatrim		200
Stay Awake		200

Source: Adapted from multiple sources, including MedicineNet.com, the Vaults of Erowid (www.erowid.org), Energy Fiend (www.energyfiend.com), Reissig et al. (2009), and Barceloux (2012).

8.2 History of Caffeine Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-2 Describe the historical uses of caffeine

The plants that contain the methylxanthines have been used to make popular beverages for centuries. Many stories, some mythical, attempt to explain how these beverages were created. For example, coffee supposedly was discovered on the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Arabian Peninsula by a holy man. It seems that goats in a herd had been jumping around at night instead of sleeping, apparently because they had been nibbling on the beans of the coffee plant. The holy man got a brilliant idea that beans from the same plant could help in keeping him awake during his long nights of prayer. It was a small next step to the first cup of coffee (Blum, 1984). Tea, on the other hand, dates back to 2737 B.C. Legend has it that Chinese Emperor Shen Nung had been boiling water when the leaves from a nearby bush fell into the pot, producing the first pot of tea.

Table 8.1 shows that caffeine is found in some of our most popular beverages and foods. In Chapter 2, we noted that, during the 15th century, Europe knew nothing of these caffeine-containing substances. In fact, the only psychoactive substance Europeans knew during that time was alcohol. All this changed with the ventures of the explorers and others from Europe. Explorers found coffee on the Arabian Peninsula and in Turkey and Ethiopia. In China, they found tea. In West Africa, they found the kola nut. In much of Central and South America, they found the cacao plant, which is the source of chocolate. Other sources of teas were discovered in parts of North and South America. Travelers brought their discoveries home to Europe.

Like other drugs, caffeine was not always well received by societies when it was introduced. For example, when early followers of Muhammad tried caffeine to stay awake during their long vigils, religious leaders were not pleased with the innovation. Official punishments and attempts to kill native coffee trees were not enough to stop coffee from becoming popular. Similar negative sanctions against coffee drinking in Europe met with the same failure.

Caffeine, nicotine, and alcohol have been seen as having a greater effect on human civilization than all other nonmedical psychoactive substances combined (Levenson & Bick, 1977). Caffeine stands out among these three drugs because of its ubiquitous use around the world and because it is a "cradle-to-grave drug" (Kenny & Darragh, 1985, p. 278). That is, caffeine is commonly used nonmedically by young children and adults alike, which is true of no other psychoactive substance.

REVIEW

1. Describe the historical use of caffeine within each continent.

8.3 Prevalence of Caffeine Consumption

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-3 Analyze the patterns of caffeine use across the world and why obtaining accurate data on caffeine use is difficult

> *". . . The coffee habit had become so strong, that the people continued, notwithstanding all prohibitions, to drink it in their own houses. . . . [I]t was drunk in particular places, with the doors shut, or in the back rooms of some of the shopkeepers' houses."*
>
> 16th-century text (Greden & Walters, 1992, p. 358)

Good estimates of caffeine consumption around the world are not nearly as available as estimates for other drug use, even though caffeine use is more widespread (Barone & Roberts, 1996). Finding these estimates is difficult for several reasons. For one, due to the fact that people consume caffeine in many different products, they find it hard—say, in a survey—to provide accurate data on all their caffeine use over a given time period. The surveys that have been done are, accordingly, expensive to conduct and are thus limited in numbers of respondents. Collecting good estimates

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of caffeine consumption is also difficult because some products are prepared in ways that can differ the caffeine content. For example, coffee-brewing method affects caffeine content as noted in Table 8.1. The caffeine content is higher for boiled than for percolated coffee (D'Amicis & Viani, 1993).

Stockbroker/MBJ/Alamy stock photo

Coffee is the most popular source of caffeine in the United States.

Despite these problems, estimates of caffeine consumption have been derived, typically based on survey data or on a country's import figures for a given caffeine-containing product. The estimated average consumption of caffeine per capita worldwide is around 70 milligrams (mg) per day (Gilbert, 1984; Sadock & Sadock, 2008). However, countries vary considerably in per capita caffeine consumption and in the sources of that consumption. Table 8.2 shows per capita caffeine consumption estimates for a number of countries. In the United States, for example, people average nearly 170 mg per day of caffeine consumption, with the vast majority of that amount accounted for by coffee consumption. This figure is possibly on the rise: Using a national survey of food intake in the U.S. population, Fulgoni et al. (2015) found a per capita caffeine consumption rate of 186 mg per day. Although the U.S. per capita rate is well over double the worldwide per capita rate, the world's top per capita rates of caffeine consumption consistently are the Scandinavian countries—Finland, Sweden, Denmark, and Norway—along with the Netherlands, which ranks number one at 414 mg per person per day, predominantly via coffee consumption.

Tea is the dominant source of caffeine in the United Kingdom, and the same is true for its close neighbor, Ireland. Kuwait and the United Arab Emirates also rank high on per capita caffeine consumption through their tea consumption.

Looking at per capita caffeine consumption via cocoa, the highest rate is reported by Denmark, at 21 mg per person per day. Switzerland has a very low rate of caffeine consumption through cocoa (approximately 1 mg per person per day).

The contribution of soft drinks to total caffeine consumption is significant: One study showed that, in 1962, one-third of the population said they had consumed soft drinks the day before, but currently, around two-thirds said they had. In the Fulgoni et al. (2015) study, beverages accounted for 98% of the caffeine consumed in the United States, with coffee (64%), tea (16%), and soft drinks (18%) the predominant sources. Although their use has increased over the past decade, energy drinks accounted for less than 1% of caffeine consumption.

Caffeine consumption does not vary much in the United States among different subgroups of the population. One exception is age. Caffeine consumption increases with age, until 65 years and older, when it declines somewhat (Barone & Roberts, 1996; Frary et al., 2005; Fulgoni et al., 2015; Mitchell et al., 2014). However, for "dose" of caffeine consumed, which takes into account body weight (see Chapter 4), children aged 1 to 5 have the highest exposure to caffeine after adults aged 18 and older (Greden & Walters, 1992). Coffee is the major source of caffeine for adults, and soft drinks are the major source for children and adolescents (Frary et al., 2005; Mitchell et al., 2014; see also Contemporary Issue Box 8.1).

In summary, people all over the world consume caffeine. Estimates are that about 90% of the world's population regularly consumes products that contain caffeine, with coffee, tea, and soft drinks being the most common sources (James, 1991; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). Trends in recent years in overall caffeine use are difficult to specify because of the measurement problems we referred to earlier, along with limited attention to the consumption of products such as soft drinks, energy drinks,

> *"Coffee leads men to trifle away their time, scald their chops, and spend their money, all for a little base, black, thick, nasty, bitter, stinking nauseous puddle water."*
>
> The Women's Petition Against Coffee, 1674

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 8.2 General Estimates of Caffeine Use from Around the World

Country	(in mg/person/day) Caffeine from Coffee	Caffeine from Tea	Caffeine from Cocoa	Caffeine from All These Sources
Argentina	43	1	5	49
Australia	202	29	0	232
Brazil	26	1	4	31
Canada	180	18	12	210
Denmark	354	15	21	390
Egypt	5	53	1	58
Finland	322	6	1	329
France	215	8	16	239
Germany	292	9	12	313
India	1	26	0	27
Ireland	81	127	5	213
Kuwait	49	112	13	173
Netherlands	369	38	6	414
Nigeria	1	2	1	4
Norway	379	8	13	400
Paraguay	51	1	3	55
Poland	100	33	8	141
Russian Federation	26	40	7	72
Saudi Arabia	14	13	2	28
South Africa	15	23	1	40
Sweden	388	12	7	407
Switzerland	275	11	1	288
United Arab Emirates	74	87	5	167
United Kingdom	92	96	14	202
United States	143	12	12	168
Venezuela	135	0	4	139

Not included in this table is caffeine consumption from maté, a tealike beverage consumed mainly in several South American countries. It is prepared by steeping dried leaves of the yerba maté plant in hot water. With regard to the listed estimates of caffeine consumption, the following amounts should be added for the following countries: Argentina, 52 mg/person/day; Brazil, 10 mg/person/day; and Paraguay, 101 mg/person/day. Also not included, given the absence of worldwide estimates, is caffeine intake through consumption of energy drinks.

Source: Adapted from Fredholm et al. (1999), p. 85.

caffeinated water, and caffeine-containing herbal supplements. Nevertheless, there is no question that caffeine is the world's most preferred drug.

REVIEW

1. Describe the worldwide patterns of use for these caffeine-containing products: coffee, tea, and cocoa.
2. Discuss factors that contribute to the pattern of caffeine use by age in the United States.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 8.1

Caffeine and Children

Studies show that children all over the world regularly consume pharmacologically active amounts of caffeine. This pattern of use combines with our knowledge about the high degree of caffeine exposure in young children (because of their lower body weights) to raise serious concerns about children's use of caffeine. Despite the potential seriousness of this problem, little is known about caffeine effects in children (Hughes & Hale, 1998; Temple, 2009). What research is available suggests that children are not more or less sensitive than adults to caffeine's action in the body (James, 1991). There have, however, been some recent indications that after puberty, heart rate and blood pressure show differential changes following caffeine consumption associated with gender (Temple et al., 2014).

Children's use of caffeine is a major concern for two reasons: First, caffeine is very popular among young people, as reflected in the surge in children's consumption of "high-energy" (high-caffeine) beverages. Survey data indicate that approximately one-quarter of 12- to 14-year-olds and nearly one-third of 12- to 17-year-olds regularly consume energy drinks (Seifert et al., 2011). Further, evidence for what may be a caffeine withdrawal syndrome has been observed in children as young as 11 to 12 years of age (Goldstein & Wallace, 1977; Seifert et al., 2011). The children's major source of caffeine has traditionally been soft drinks, although the contribution of energy drinks has been increasing. Second, caffeine exposure in children is high compared to that of adults. In addition, little is known about the long-term effects of children's caffeine use. However, there are indications that energy drink consumption among children has been associated with multiple serious adverse events, especially among children with seizures, diabetes, cardiac abnormalities, or mood and behavior disorders (Seifert et al., 2011).

Children are major consumers of caffeine-containing soft drinks and chocolate. Would you require warning or caution labels on caffeine products, as are required for tobacco products and alcoholic beverages? Why or why not?

8.4 Pharmacology of Caffeine

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **8-4** Explain the mechanism of action for caffeine
- **8-5** Describe how caffeine is absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body

In the following sections, we address a pair of topics related to the pharmacology of caffeine: mechanism of action and pharmacokinetics.

Mechanism of Action

Caffeine is believed to exert its effects through several mechanisms, including inhibition of phosphodiesterase, the release of calcium from intracellular stores, and the antagonism of adenosine receptors. The adenosine hypothesis is the most accepted and will be discussed further (Daly & Fredholm, 2004; Fisone et al., 2004; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). Adenosine is a chemical that the body produces; it is an inhibitory neurotransmitter (see Chapter 3). Adenosine receptors are in the central and peripheral nervous systems. Adenosine leads to behavioral sedation, regulation of oxygen delivery to cells, dilation of cerebral and coronary blood vessels, and production of asthma (Julien, 1996). Caffeine and the other methylxanthines occupy adenosine receptors and then block the action of that neurotransmitter.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Ian Allenden/Alamy Stock Photo

Children 1 to 5 years of age have the highest exposure to caffeine by dose, next to adults aged 18 and older.

Pharmacokinetics

With respect to pharmacokinetics, four issues are described: absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion.

Absorption

Caffeine is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract. The drug quickly reaches the brain because it can pass through the blood-brain barrier. The half-life of caffeine in the blood varies widely among people and ranges from about 3 to 7 hours (Barceloux, 2012; Julien, 1998; Lorist & Tops, 2003). Peak levels of caffeine occur 15 to 45 minutes after the drug is taken and sometimes depend on the source (Snel et al., 2004). For example, one study (Marks & Kelly, 1973) involved three healthy men who were given an average of 155 mg of caffeine in the form of Coca-Cola, tea, or coffee. The men's plasma levels of caffeine were then charted for 2 hours. The peak levels of caffeine were higher for tea and coffee and were reached within 30 minutes of ingestion. The peak for Coca-Cola was lower and did not occur for about an hour. After 2 hours, the plasma level of caffeine for the cola was higher than for tea or coffee and was still at a level comparable to its peak. In a later study of 13 individuals who averaged more than 450 mg of caffeine consumption a day, however, no differences in peak caffeine level reached or in time to reach peak level were found among coffee, cola drinks, and caffeine capsules (Liguori et al., 1997).

Distribution

Caffeine is equally distributed in total body water (Barceloux, 2012). Therefore, after consumption, the concentration of caffeine is similar throughout the body. Among pregnant women, caffeine freely crosses the placenta to the fetus (Julien, 1998).

Metabolism and Excretion

The liver is the site for most metabolism of caffeine. The drug is excreted almost entirely by the kidneys—less than 10% in pure form and the rest in metabolites. Very small proportions of caffeine are also excreted in feces, saliva, semen, and breast milk. Of interest is the variance among people in caffeine metabolism and excretion from the body. For example, the rates of these processes are slower in people who have been using caffeine over a shorter period of time (Leonard et al., 1987). Other differences in metabolism and excretion are caused by liver disease, pregnancy, and use of oral contraceptives, all of which slow the metabolism of caffeine. On the other hand, those who smoke cigarettes metabolize caffeine more quickly (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013; Julien, 1998). Other therapeutic drugs interact with caffeine to increase or decrease its metabolism and excretion.

New insights on the metabolism of caffeine are on the horizon, based on knowledge emerging from research on the genetics of caffeine consumption. In conducting a genome-wide association study, Pirastu et al. (2016) found a significant association between coffee consumption and one particular gene (called PDSS2). The gene modulates coffee consumption by regulating the expression of this gene linked to caffeine metabolism. As such, this gene structure may make some people more receptive to caffeine.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Describe the drug experience associated with caffeine use.

   Explain how caffeine affects neural processing.
2. Summarize how caffeine is absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body.

8.5 Tolerance and Dependence

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-6 Evaluate the evidence that suggests individuals may develop physical dependence to caffeine but not tolerance

Caffeine was long considered a strange drug because of its unorthodox potential for inducing tolerance and physical dependence (Gilbert, 1976). Evidence of a distinct caffeine withdrawal syndrome has been available for some time; indeed, an individual's pattern of using caffeine can meet the criteria for drug dependence that we described in Chapter 1. The evidence for tolerance to caffeine is less clear, however. The usual picture for drugs is the reverse: They can induce tolerance without dependence but rarely dependence without tolerance.

Tolerance

The contradictions about tolerance to caffeine that abound in the experimental findings are probably a result of poor research methods, such as not specifying caffeine use patterns in subjects (Curatolo & Robertson, 1983). In general, tolerance probably does develop to caffeine's effects on renal function, sleep, and other physiological functions, such as blood pressure and heart rate (Meredith et al., 2013). On the other hand, little tolerance seems to develop to caffeine's stimulant effects (Hogan et al., 2002; Morelli & Simola, 2011).

Confusion about caffeine tolerance also results from ignoring differences among people in what is an "acceptable" level of caffeine. Differences between those who consume caffeine at high and low levels in the acute effects of a dose of caffeine in children and adults have been attributed to differences in the degree of acquired tolerance. However, some better-controlled studies offer another explanation: One reason people consume heavy or light amounts of caffeine is their individual ability to tolerate caffeine. This interpretation is always an alternative in studies that fail to specify long-term patterns of caffeine consumption in the experimental participants. The best strategy is to measure caffeine use and effects in the same people over a period of time.

Caffeine Withdrawal

The caffeine withdrawal symptoms most consistently reported are headache and fatigue (Juliano & Griffiths, 2001). Other withdrawal symptoms have been documented in studies by Goldstein et al. (1969) and are summarized in reviews by Barceloux (2012); Dews et al. (2002); and Juliano and Griffiths (2004). Their

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

participants reported symptoms of caffeine abstinence that included depression, decreased alertness, less contentment and relaxed mood, decreased activity and energy, greater sleepiness and drowsiness, and increased irritability. These findings have been replicated in experimental studies (Evans & Griffiths, 1999). Furthermore, these experiments show that physical dependence can develop with an exposure of 300 mg of caffeine a day for only 3 consecutive days. Withdrawal symptoms can range from mild to severe and begin within 12 to 24 hours of cessation of caffeine use (Comer et al., 1997; Nehlig, 2004). They may last about a week (Griffiths & Woodson, 1988a; Hughes et al., 1992). A large survey of people who ingest caffeine on a daily basis found that 11% report withdrawal symptoms upon cessation of caffeine use (Dews et al., 1999).

Some recent endorsement of caffeine withdrawal as a clinical phenomenon was the inclusion of caffeine use disorder as a condition warranting further study in the latest edition of the American Psychiatric Association's (APA) *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (2013). The criteria for caffeine withdrawal, beyond prolonged daily use of caffeine, include experiencing at least three of the following symptoms within 24 hours of an abrupt cessation of or reduction in caffeine use: headache; marked fatigue or drowsiness; dysphoric mood, depressed mood, or irritability; difficulty concentrating; and flu-like symptoms (such as nausea, vomiting, or muscle pain/stiffness). Importantly in terms of diagnosis, these signs or symptoms need to be "causing clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning" (APA, 2013).

REVIEW

1. Describe the symptoms associated with caffeine withdrawal.

8.6 Acute Effects of Caffeine

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-7 Compare and contrast the acute and chronic effects of caffeine

Caffeine's primary action is stimulation of CNS activity but, as we saw, caffeine is distributed freely throughout the body. Such distribution is evidenced by caffeine's actions outside the CNS: contraction of striated muscle, including the heart; relaxation of smooth muscle, especially the coronary arteries, uterus, and bronchi; diuretic effects on the kidneys; a stimulating effect on respiration at higher doses; elevation of basal metabolism; and various endocrine and enzymatic effects (Levenson & Bick, 1977; Rall, 1990a). Caffeine's effects on the body's systems provide good evidence for the blockade of adenosine receptors as its mechanism of action because caffeine's effects essentially are opposite to those of adenosine (Leonard et al., 1987; McLellan et al., 2016).

Behavioral and Psychological Effects

In this section, we cover two relevant domains of effects: mood and performance.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Mood

The CNS-stimulation action of caffeine elevates mood. A large amount of research has shown that moderate doses of caffeine are reliably associated with feeling energized, creative, efficient, confident, and alert (Fredholm et al., 1999; Temple, 2009; Ullrich et al., 2015). The acute mood-elevating effects of caffeine account for much of the popularity that coffee and tea have as morning wake-up beverages. It also has been speculated that many people who are afflicted with significant depression "medicate" themselves by using caffeine products; however, caffeine alone is not an effective treatment for depression.

> *"Among the numerous luxuries of the table . . . coffee may be considered as one of the most valuable. It excites cheerfulness without intoxication; and the pleasing flow of spirits which it occasions . . . is never followed by sadness, languor or debility."*
>
> Benjamin Franklin

Performance

Caffeine's effects on human task performance are complicated. Table 8.3 lists some of the major performance effects of caffeine. As you can see, the range of caffeine effects is wide, and many of them are stimulative (also see Smit & Rogers, 2000; Smith, 2002; Smith et al., 2013; Wilhelmus et al., 2017). One of the major ways caffeine improves task performance is by decreasing fatigue and increasing vigilance so that, over time, performance does not drop below what is typical for a person (Institute of Medicine, 2001). Such action is in contrast to pushing performance above what is normal for a person. In addition, the complexity of caffeine's effects is illustrated in the choice reaction time task. Caffeine impairs the decision-making part of the task but improves the motor component. The drug's effects are different even for different components of the same task. The inconsistency in the findings about caffeine effects is probably due in part to the different methods experimenters have used. Also, caffeine's effects depend not only on the drug's pharmacological action but also on the dose of the drug, the setting in which it is used, and the personality of the individual. This is represented in Table 8.3 by findings such as verbal test accuracy (the last entry in the table), which caffeine affects according to the personality of the participant (impulsiveness) and the setting (time of day) (Sawyer et al., 1982). Finally, there is evidence that caffeine enhances athletic performance, including perceived exertion and endurance (Burke, 2008; Ganio et al., 2009; Glade, 2010; Hogervorst et al., 2008; Hudson et al., 2008; Jones, 2008; McLellan et al., 2016; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013).

> *"It makes the body active and alert . . . it banishes tiredness and cleanses bodily fluids and the liver . . . it eases the brain and strengthens the memory. It is especially good for sustaining wakefulness."*
>
> English text, 1660, on the properties of tea (Schivelbusch, 1992, pp. 83–84)

Overall, it seems that caffeine's acute effects at lower doses are what sustain the world's use of beverages such as coffee and tea (Griffiths & Woodson, 1988a; James, 1991). Although caffeine's effects at low doses are not so intense as, say, cocaine's, its reinforcing properties are strong enough to make it the world's most popular drug.

Interactions among Caffeine, Nicotine, and Alcohol

Caffeine, nicotine, and alcohol are the world's most popular drugs, and many people use them in combination (Crocq, 2003; Koslowski et al., 1993; Steptoe & Wardle, 1999). An important question, therefore, is what the interactive effects of these compounds are. It seems, for example, that individuals smoke fewer cigarettes after they drink coffee compared with when they have not had coffee (Hepple & Robson, 1996). This effect is stronger for those who are lighter caffeine consumers. Another effect of nicotine is in the excretion of caffeine from the body, which occurs more than 50% faster in smokers than in nonsmokers

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 8.3 Caffeine's Acute Effects on Various Domains of Human Performance

Performance Variable	Effect of Caffeine
Physical endurance	
Bicycle ergometer	
—Fixed load	Increases
—Progressive load	No effect
Motor skills	
Rapidity and accuracy	Decreases at higher doses; increases at lower doses
Eye–hand coordination	Decreases
Vigilance	
Visual	
—Night driving analogue	Increases
—Target scanning:	
low coffee users	Decreases
high coffee users	No effect
Reaction time	
Simple reaction time	Decreases (speeds up)
Choice reaction time	
—Decision time	Increases (slows down)
—Motor time	Decreases
Verbal tests	
Graduate Record Exam practice test	
—Speed and accuracy:	
extroverts	Increases with higher doses
introverts	First increases and then decreases with higher doses
Time stress accuracy	
—Extroverts	Increases
—Introverts	Decreases
Accuracy	
—Low impulsives	Increases in the a.m., decreases in the p.m.
—High impulsives	Decreases in the a.m., increases in the p.m.

Source: Springer and Plenum Publishing, *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 5, 415–439, 1982; *Caffeine and human behavior: Arousal, anxiety, and performance effects*, D. A. Sawyer, H. L. Julia, and A. C. Turin, © 1982 Plenum Publishing.

(Benowitz et al., 1989; Sawyer et al., 1982). Furthermore, how individuals react to nicotine may be associated with how they react to caffeine and alcohol (Perkins et al., 2001).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 8.2

On the Issue of Energy Drinks

Energy drinks are canned or bottled beverages that contain large doses of caffeine. Other ingredients often include sugar, B vitamins, amino acids (e.g., taurine), and herbal stimulants such as guarana and ginseng. At present, literally hundreds of brands of energy drinks are being distributed worldwide.

The amount of caffeine in energy drinks varies considerably. The top-selling brands (including Red Bull, Monster, Rockstar, Full Throttle, No Fear, Amp, and NOS) have comparable caffeine concentrations (ranging from around 9 mg/oz to 11 mg/oz) (Reissig et al., 2009). However, the amount of caffeine contained in a can or bottle of these brands has more variability because they contain anywhere from 8.3 oz (Red Bull, with 80 mg of total caffeine) to 16 oz (No Fear, with 182 mg of total caffeine). Also being marketed are energy drinks with considerably higher levels of caffeine, ranging in caffeine concentrations of 11.9 mg/oz (in the 23.5 oz Jolt Cola, resulting in 280 mg of total caffeine) to 35.7 mg/oz (in the 8.4 oz Spike Shooter, resulting in 300 mg of total caffeine) (ibid.). An energy drink leader in terms of total caffeine is the 20 oz Fixx (at 500 mg).

For the most part, energy drinks contain considerably higher concentrations of caffeine than coffee or tea (beverages that are typically consumed at a much slower pace than energy drinks), or soft drinks such as Coca-Cola, Pepsi, or even Mountain Dew (which contains 54 mg of caffeine).

Regulation

Given the high amounts of caffeine in energy drinks, it is perhaps surprising that the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has not exerted oversight or regulation, as has been the case in a limited number of other countries. Several countries in the European Union have banned the sale of energy drinks containing caffeine or the stimulants taurine and guarana to individuals under age 18. Australia and New Zealand regulate the amount of caffeine in energy drinks at 320 mg/L. Curiously, by way of contrast, the FDA does monitor caffeine-containing over-the-counter products such as NoDoz (containing 100 mg caffeine per tablet), requiring warning labels despite the total caffeine content being much lower than that contained in the majority of energy drinks. The lack of oversight is also surprising because the health consequences of energy drink consumption (including long-term consequences) are not known. (Keep in mind that those who consume energy drinks include adolescents and children.) Also unknown are the potential impacts of the other ingredients in energy drinks, alone or in conjunction with the caffeine.

Marketing

Energy drinks are predominantly marketed to adolescents and young adults, with claims of enhancing alertness and providing an energy boost. In some cases, energy drinks have been marketed in the context of improving endurance and performance (including athletic performance) and even weight loss. A current marketing focus is on the growing number of hardcore video gamers, suggesting the promise of enhanced focus and endurance. Many such claims appear to be offered without much in the way of substantiation.

A considerable amount of the advertising of energy drinks is geared toward young males, with the suggestion that the beverages will enhance strength, vigor, and virility. Research on energy drink consumption by Dr. Kathleen Miller has provided some interesting insights on this topic. Her research suggests a relationship between drinking energy drinks and "toxic jock behavior," characterized with hypermasculine attitudes and excessive risk taking. Miller (2008) found that those who frequently consume energy drinks (drinking energy drinks 6 or more days a month) were considerably more likely to have smoked cigarettes, misused prescription drugs, or been in a serious physical fight in the past year. Those who frequently consume energy drinks also reported drinking alcohol, having alcohol-related problems, and using marijuana about twice as often as those who do not consume energy drinks. In addition, they were more likely to engage in other risk taking, including unsafe sex, not using a seat belt, participating in extreme sports, and doing something dangerous on a dare. The associations with smoking, drinking, alcohol problems, and illicit prescriptions were found for White students but not Black students. According to Miller, these findings overall suggest that frequent energy drink consumption may serve as a useful screening indicator to identify students at risk for a broader "problem behavior syndrome."

(continued)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 8.2 *(CONTINUED)*

On the Issue of Energy Drinks

Combining Energy Drinks and Alcohol

Mixing energy drinks such as Red Bull with alcohol has become increasingly popular among young people, who often believe that this combination will improve their stamina while partying, or their physical performance more generally. A popular drink today in a number of bars is Red Bull and vodka. This popularity led several alcohol beverage producers to market alcoholic energy drinks, although these companies in the United States have predominantly ceased this practice under public and/or regulatory pressures.

Several studies have been conducted to study the effects of combining alcohol with energy drinks. Oliveira de Souza-Formigoni, an investigator in one of these studies (Ferreira et al., 2006), stated in an interview with *Science Daily* that "[y]oung people believe that Red Bull and other energy drinks avoid the sleepiness caused by alcoholic beverages and increase their capacity to dance all night." In their study, they assessed the effects of ingesting alcohol alone, an energy drink alone, or alcohol and an energy drink (Red Bull) combined. For each participant, sensations of intoxication and measures of motor coordination and visual reaction time were assessed.

Two key findings emerged: First, drinking alcohol and Red Bull together reduced the *perception* of headache, weakness, dry mouth, and motor coordination impairment. Second, Red Bull did not significantly reduce alcohol-related deficits on the measures of motor coordination and visual reaction time.

Similar results have emerged from subsequent research. Howland et al. (2010), for example, observed that the addition of caffeine to alcohol, compared to consuming alcohol alone, did not enhance driving skills, sustained attention, or reaction time. In another study (Marczinski et al., 2011), energy drinks were found to counter only some of the objective and subjective impairing effects of alcohol.

In other research, the combined use of alcohol and caffeine has been found to increase alcohol consumption (O'Brien et al., 2008; Pennay et al., 2015; Thombs et al., 2011; Verster et al., 2015), the rate of alcohol consumption (Marczinski et al., 2017), and desire and motivation for alcohol (Marczinski et al., 2013, 2016; McKetin & Coen, 2014). In addition, the combined use of alcohol and caffeine has been globally linked with risk-tolerant attitudes (Miller, 2008) and problem behaviors, including hazardous drinking, unsafe sex, and aggression and interpersonal violence (Arria et al., 2010; Miller, 2012; Miller et al., 2016; O'Brien et al., 2008).

The take-home message is clear: The combined use of energy drinks and alcohol decreases sensations of sleepiness and tiredness, but it does not reduce the harmful effects of alcohol on motor performance. In fact, the combined use of these beverages might be harmful, as some may believe they are less impaired than they actually are and they may actually wind up drinking more alcohol. Further, the combined use of energy drinks and alcohol appears to actually engender greater alcohol consumption.

One classic study (Lowe, 1988) suggests that everyday forgetfulness has something to do with the state-dependent effects of caffeine, nicotine, and alcohol in combination. In the first experiment, 24 men and women college undergraduates who smoked and drank alcohol were given a moderate dose of vodka and two cigarettes to smoke. They were exposed to a list of 19 items about a route on a map and then had to recall the items in successive tests until they achieved 14 correct items. On the day of their next session, the participants were randomly assigned to one of four drug conditions: alcohol and nicotine, alcohol and nicotine placebo, alcohol placebo and nicotine, or alcohol placebo and nicotine placebo. The participants were then asked to recall as many of the 19 items as they could from their first experimental session. The results

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

showed no recall decrement (between the Day 1 and the Day 2 score) for those who had alcohol and nicotine on both days. However, recall scores decreased significantly for participants in the other three groups. These "dissociative" or state-dependent effects seemed attributable to alcohol and, to a lesser extent, nicotine.

The next experiment by Lowe (1988) was the same as the first except that 16 undergraduates who drink coffee and alcohol participated, and caffeine was substituted for nicotine. The results of this study showed state-dependent effects for alcohol and caffeine. Because the major recall decrements occurred in people who had no caffeine the second day, even if they drank alcohol, it seems the state-dependent effect was mostly due to caffeine.

Acute Toxic Effects of Caffeine

Health professionals have recently given a lot of attention to caffeine intoxication, or caffeinism, as well as accidental caffeine overdose (Hogan et al., 2002). An example of a case where a healthy 32-year-old woman suffered severe consequences after accidentally ingesting 5,000 mg of caffeine in a preworkout supplement is presented below.

> The initial physical examination at triage revealed a Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) of 15, a respiratory rate of 19 breaths/min, 100% oxygen saturation on room air, blood pressure of 112/70 mm Hg, pulse of 80 beats/min and had a normal tympanic temperature. Also, the blood sugar was 147 mg/dL.
>
> After observation, the patient had an episode of presyncope followed by agitation and vomiting. At this point, the patient was pale and sweaty with a GCS of 11 (eye opening: 4; verbal response: 2; motor response: 5), blood pressure of 115/75 mm Hg, tachycardia (160 beats/min) and 99% oxygen saturation on room air. Her pupils were equally round and reactive to light, and no muscle weakness or sensory deficits were found.
>
> The ECG showed a polymorphic broad QRS tachycardia and the arterial blood gas revealed metabolic acidaemia with severe hypokalemia. The dysrhythmia was successfully treated with 5 mg of propranolol intravenous in total. Acid–base and hydroelectrolytic disorders were also corrected.

> *"Caffeine's effect at high doses is like having a chronic anxiety condition. It exaggerates the perception of stress and the body's response to it, and I think could be contributing to the stress we all experience in daily life."*
>
> Dr. James D. Lane, professor of medical psychology, Duke University (*New York Times*, December 12, 2006)

Sean Prior/Wavebreak Media Ltd/Alamy stock photo

Caffeine's enhancing effects on the performance of various cognitive and motor tasks make it a popular drug in the workplace.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

After stabilisation, the patient informed the ED's physician that when she was preparing the preworkout supplement, used the same dosage of the proteic supplement for anhydrous caffeine, instead of 1 dose of 300 mg (6 mg/kg) of anhydrous caffeine, the patient consumed a total of 5000 mg (89 mg/kg), 30 min before going to the ED. (Andrade, A., Sousa, C., Pedro, M., & Fernandes, M. (2018). Dangerous mistake: An accidental caffeine overdose. *BMJ Case Reports.* https://doi.org/10.1136/bcr-2018-224185)

This woman recovered and was discharged after several days in hospital. As with other caffeine effects, however, people differ in how much caffeine they can ingest before they experience symptoms of intoxication. For example, caffeinism has been reported following consumption of as little as 250 mg of caffeine in a day, which is not much more than the average for adults in the United States. Generally, ingesting 600 mg of caffeine a day greatly increases the chances of developing caffeinism (Kenny & Darragh, 1985).

Consuming more than 1,000 mg of caffeine a day increases the risk of experiencing even more severe toxic symptoms, as described in the previous example. Such symptoms include muscle twitching, rambling flow of thought and speech, cardiac arrhythmia, periods of inexhaustibility, and psychomotor agitation (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). Other symptoms that have been reported are ringing in the ears and seeing flashes of light. The lethal dose of caffeine when it is taken orally is about 10 g for adults and 100 mg/kg for children (Leonard et al., 1987). The adult lethal dose is equal to about 75 cups of coffee, 125 cups of tea, 200 colas, or 100 NoDoz tablets. Reports of death due to caffeine overdose are rare. Much more common is people appearing for treatment of acute overexposure to caffeine. In fact, caffeinism may be viewed as a more extreme case of acute overexposure to caffeine (James, 1991). Keep in mind, however, caffeine overexposure occurs most infrequently given the commonality of its use.

8.7 Chronic Effects of Caffeine Use

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-8 Summarize the risks of caffeinism and accidental caffeine overdose

The chronic effects of caffeine have been studied primarily for major medical problems, and the research initially produced some inconsistent findings. For example, a retrospective study (Infante-Rivard et al., 1993) found a positive relationship between reported caffeine intake 1 month before and during pregnancy and loss of the fetus. In another longitudinal study, however, no relationship was found between caffeine consumption during the first 3 months of pregnancy and damage to the fetus, including spontaneous abortion (Mills et al., 1993). Loomans et al. (2012) more recently found that maternal caffeine intake during pregnancy was not associated with a higher risk for the child's behavioral problems or with suboptimal prosocial behavior between ages 5 and 6. Overall, the FDA's position is that moderate doses of caffeine do not have negative effects on reproduction (Hogan et al., 2002), although high levels of caffeine intake among women attempting to become pregnant can be associated with lower rates of conception (Brent et al., 2011; Peck et al., 2010; Temple, 2009).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Research on other medical problems has suggested there is no consistent relationship between caffeine consumption and cancer, myocardial infarction, blood pressure, or cardiovascular disease (Abbott, 1986; Grobbee et al., 1990; Mostofsky et al., 2012; Nkondjock, 2009; Steffan et al., 2012; Temple, 2009; van Dam, 2008). An exception might exist among people with slow caffeine metabolism, based on a report indicating that coffee intake was associated with an increased risk of nonfatal myocardial infarction in this subgroup of coffee drinkers (Cornelis et al., 2006).

Research with postmenopausal women has indicated a positive relationship between the lifetime amount of caffeinated coffee consumed and osteoporosis (Barrett-Connor et al., 1994; Ulbricht et al., 2012). In the Barrett-Connor et al. study, for example, drinking two cups of coffee a day was associated with decreased bone mineral density, a measure of osteoporosis. However, the relationship between coffee and osteoporosis was negated in women who said they drank at least one glass of milk a day during the ages between 20 and 50. More recent research also suggests that the little effect that caffeine consumption might have on bone density can be reversed or counteracted by including small amounts of milk in the diet (Lloyd et al., 2000).

Some studies have shown an association between serum cholesterol levels and caffeine consumption: As one level goes up, the other one also tends to rise. Level of serum cholesterol is related to atherosclerosis. The caffeine–cholesterol research illustrates the complexity of linking chronic drug use to medical problems and is one reason caffeine research in particular has yielded so many inconsistent findings. When researchers consider coffee intake as the source of caffeine, the caffeine–cholesterol relationship seems to depend on how the coffee is brewed. It appears that when coffee is boiled—as is common, for example, in Norway—the caffeine–cholesterol link holds up. The link disappears when the coffee is made by drip filtering (Bak & Grobbee, 1989; Urgert et al., 1996).

Caffeine consumption seems to be associated with other symptoms that are less major but are experienced more commonly. Abbott (1986) cited a survey of 4,558 Australians that concerned caffeine ingestion and the occurrence of indigestion, palpitations, tremor, headache, and insomnia. The more caffeine respondents ingested, the more likely they were to report these symptoms (the average consumption for the sample was 240 mg a day).

In terms of potential health benefits of coffee, a large-scale longitudinal study found that those who frequently drink coffee have a lower risk of dying from a variety of diseases, relative to people who drink little or no coffee (Freedman et al., 2012). For example, the more coffee consumed, the less likely the person was to die from a range of health problems, such as diabetes, heart disease, respiratory disease, stroke, and infections. These findings are consistent with indications from other studies, indicating that coffee consumption may help prevent several chronic diseases, including liver disease, Parkinson's disease, dementia (in a study among women), heart irregularities, and type 2 diabetes mellitus (Barceloux, 2012; Dixit et al., 2016; Driscoll et al., 2016; Higdon & Frei, 2006; Huxley et al., 2009; Liu et al., 2012; Xiao et al., 2014). In one study, Klatsky et al. (2006) found an ingredient in coffee that appears to protect against liver cirrhosis, especially alcoholic cirrhosis. The cause of the apparent protective effect was not clear. There is some speculation that caffeine is playing a central role. However, the protective effect was not found among those who drink tea (although there were fewer who drink tea relative to those who drink coffee). In another domain, no clear evidence exists for a causal relationship between caffeine consumption and peptic ulcer (Council on Scientific Affairs, 1984). Recently, a large study of women found that coffee consumption was not associated with an increased risk of hypertension (in fact, it appeared to be protective among those who consumed the greatest amounts of coffee) (Winkelmayer et al., 2005).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Interestingly, though, the women who consumed caffeine via soft drinks did have an increased risk for hypertension, although how much of this effect is attributable to the caffeine was not clear. In other research, coffee consumption has regularly been found to reduce risk of type 2 diabetes mellitus (Bhupathiraju et al., 2013; Temple, 2009), although caffeine itself does not appear to be the mechanism accounting for this benefit. Finally, there are some indications that caffeine may provide some protections to the development of Alzheimer's disease (Eskelinen et al., 2009; Rosso et al., 2008) and risk of depression (Grosso et al., 2016).

In summary, based on the apparent infrequency of acute caffeine overexposure and research on its chronic effects, caffeine is considered a relatively safe drug. However, because more minor symptoms occur with higher levels of caffeine consumption (but still within the range of typical use patterns, as indicated earlier in the Australian study), it has been recommended that caffeine consumption be moderated. Furthermore, some individuals, such as pregnant women, particularly benefit by keeping their caffeine consumption at a low to moderate level. In addition, there is an ongoing concern over the caffeine intake associated with energy drinks, particularly among children and teenagers. The absence of data on the effects of such intake, especially in the longer term, has led to calls for adding warning labels to energy drinks or even regulating the amount of caffeine they can contain. Another example is people who suffer from certain psychiatric disorders characterized by high levels of anxiety (see Chapter 13). It appears, for instance, that people who have been diagnosed as having generalized anxiety disorder are hypersensitive to the effects of caffeine, and the drug may exacerbate the anxiety symptoms (Bruce et al., 1992).

> *"Sometimes when I had drunk a lot of coffee, and the least little thing would startle me, I noticed quite clearly that I had jumped before I had heard any noise."*
>
> Georg Christoph Lichtenberg (Schivelbusch, 1992, inside front cover)

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast the acute and chronic effects of caffeine.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 8.3

Coffee as the Beverage of Ideals

Many people today believe that coffee helps them sober up after drinking too much alcohol. This belief, actually, is far from new, as it is at least as old as 17th-century Western Europe. At that time, a book on beverages noted that "coffee sobers you up instantaneously, or in any event sobers up those who are not fully intoxicated" (Schivelbusch, 1992, p. 35). Coffee was regarded as an ideal beverage. In the 19th century, the poet and historian Jules Michelet praised coffee because it "heightens purity and lucidity" (ibid.).

Coffee was credited with other attributes during those years in Europe. In 18th-century England, for example, coffee was seen as an alternative to sex. To some people, coffee was a way that erotic arousal could be replaced by stimulation of the mind.

Of course, the ideas that coffee is a sobering agent and a displacer of erotic desires have long since been discredited scientifically, yet the belief of coffee aiding in sobering up persists. These ideas may have originated in the pharmacology of caffeine—a CNS stimulant—and in the cultural and ideological factors that prevailed in Europe from the 17th to the 19th centuries (Schivelbusch, 1992). During that time, more and more emphasis was placed on achievement in an increasingly industrialized society, with which caffeine's pharmacology is highly consistent. Because coffee had been a popular drink anyway, it was an ideal candidate to help foster the ideals of the time and to show disapproval of behaviors thought to be inconsistent with them, such as alcohol use and sex.

Why many continue to view coffee as a sobering agent is open to discussion. Caffeine's CNS stimulant action probably gives people the illusion of coming out of the drowsiness and lethargy that alcohol causes. Yet, alcohol's CNS depressant action remains relatively untouched by caffeine.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

8.8 Therapeutic Uses of Caffeine

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

8-9 Discuss the ways in which caffeine is used medically

Table 8.1 shows that caffeine is also used in a variety of prescription and over-the-counter medications. Caffeine is very much a part of the medications used to treat a range of ailments. In fact, other methylxanthines also have therapeutic value. You can better appreciate this by looking at Table 8.4, which lists the xanthine used to achieve a preferred pharmacological action. The differences among the xanthines in their effects are based on slight differences in their chemical structure. For example, aminophylline, a cardiac and bronchial dilator that contains theophylline, is used to treat both cardiac and bronchial asthma. Caffeine is the most common drug, as it is part of many remedies for headaches and colds. Its mild stimulant properties help to counteract some of the side effects of medications for those ailments (Gilbert, 1976). Caffeine also is in appetite-suppressant medications because of its diuretic effects (Snyder & Sklar, 1984). Caffeine as well has been used in the modulation of severe pain (Baratloo et al., 2016) and in the treatment of Parkinson's disease (Roshan et al., 2016).

REVIEW

1. Describe the diseases or conditions for which medications containing methylxanthine compound have been used in treatment.

8.9 Conclusions

Caffeine is an extremely important drug because of its widespread use. Overall, it also seems to be a relatively safe drug. Despite the many years of research that have been devoted to caffeine, however, we still have a lot to learn about it. Probably the most essential research concerns developing better ways to obtain accurate measures of caffeine consumption. Such advances would help us answer important research questions. For example, we need to know more about the long-term effects of caffeine

TABLE 8.4 Methylxanthine Compounds and Desired Pharmacological Action

Desired Action	Preferred Compound
Cerebral stimulation	Caffeine (coffee)
Coronary dilation	Theophylline (tea)
Diuresis	Theobromine (cocoa)
Respiratory stimulant for premature infants	Caffeine

Note: Products in parentheses are sources of the indicated compound.

Source: From D. M. Graham (1978), Caffeine: Its identity, dietary sources, intake and biological effects, *Nutrition Reviews*, *36*, 101. Used with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

use in children, the development of tolerance to caffeine, and the prevalence of more minor symptoms of higher, but not extreme, levels of caffeine use. Another question is how caffeine affects people in special populations, such as those who are medically or psychiatrically ill.

Finally, as far back as 1982, Sawyer et al. made the excellent point that much of the research on caffeine has been done with healthy volunteers who have consumed only well-specified single doses of caffeine. Little information exists on the cumulative effects on task performance during, say, 1 day of caffeine use, although studies are beginning to address this question (Hindmarch et al., 2000). Such information is important because that is most people's pattern of caffeine use. Similarly, caffeine effects in combination with other commonly used drugs need more attention. Lowe's (1988) findings on state-dependent learning and alcohol, caffeine, and nicotine suggest that significant practical questions can be answered by such research.

Summary

- Caffeine and other methylxanthine drugs occur naturally in more than 60 species of plants. Caffeine is the world's most popular drug, and humans have used it since ancient times. Many everyday products that people consume contain caffeine.
- Overall, coffee is the major source of caffeine, but tea is the dominant source for many countries. In the last 20 years, soft drinks and energy drinks have emerged as other significant sources of caffeine.
- Total caffeine consumption does not seem to vary by characteristics of people, except for age.
- When we factor in body weight, children aged 1 to 5 have the highest exposure to caffeine, after adults aged 18 and older.
- Caffeine's mechanism of action seems to be blocking of adenosine receptor sites.
- Caffeine is rapidly absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract and is distributed throughout the body. Its half-life in the blood ranges from 3 to 7 hours.
- Caffeine is metabolized primarily in the liver and is almost entirely excreted in the urine.
- A clear withdrawal syndrome has been identified for caffeine, and there is evidence for the development of tolerance to some of caffeine's effects.
- The acute effects of caffeine include diuresis, stimulation of the heart and CNS, relaxation of smooth muscles, and stimulation of gastric acid.
- Because many people use caffeine, nicotine, and alcohol in some combination, knowing how each of these drugs interacts with the other two is important.
- Acute caffeine intoxication is called caffeinism. Caffeinism is most likely to occur with a dose of 600 mg or higher. Accidental overdose of caffeine is possible.
- Overall, caffeine is a relatively safe drug, but important research questions remain about long-term caffeine use and health.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. About half the world's population consumes caffeine regularly.
   F *An estimated 90% of the world's population consumes caffeine regularly.*
2. There are major subgroup differences in caffeine use in the United States.
   F *There are few subgroup differences in caffeine consumption, except for age.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3. In dose of caffeine consumed, young children have the highest exposure to caffeine, after adults aged 18 and older.
   T *When body weight is taken into account, children aged 1 to 5 have the highest caffeine exposure after adults.*
4. Caffeine is unable to cross the blood-brain barrier.
   F *After absorption from the gastrointestinal tract, caffeine quickly passes through the blood-brain barrier.*
5. Individuals who smoke tend to metabolize caffeine more slowly than those who do not smoke.
   F *Research indicates that those who smoke metabolize caffeine more quickly than those who do not smoke.*
6. So many people use coffee and tea without apparent difficulty that people obviously do not become physically dependent on caffeine.
   F *Caffeine withdrawal syndrome has been clearly identified.*
7. Caffeine's stimulant effects seem to be reinforcing in humans.
   T *Caffeine's acute effects of mood elevation and overall improvement in task performance seem to be reinforcing to humans.*
8. There is evidence that people can get intoxicated on caffeine.
   T *Acute caffeine intoxication, also called caffeinism, has been well documented. It is most likely to occur when 600 mg or more of caffeine are consumed in a day.*
9. Caffeine crosses the placenta and poses a danger to the health of a fetus.
   F *The latest evidence is that typical doses of caffeine consumption by mothers pose little health risk to the fetus.*
10. Overall, caffeine seems to be a safe drug for everybody.
    F *Although caffeine is a relatively safe drug overall, some individuals are advised to reduce its use. One example is people with anxiety disorders.*
11. Caffeine has little medical value.
    F *Caffeine and the other methylxanthine drugs are in medications used to treat a variety of medical problems.*
12. Caffeine's long-term effects on children are well understood.
    F *Despite the high consumption of caffeine by children, little is known about the chronic effects of their use of this drug. It is a major research area for the future.*

Essays/Thought Questions

1. The FDA monitors the amount of caffeine in over-the-counter drugs such as NoDoz yet does not oversee the amount of caffeine in energy drinks. Given that energy drinks contain considerably higher amounts of caffeine, do you think the FDA should regulate energy drinks? Why or why not?
2. Why might it be difficult to obtain accurate and reliable information on the interactive effects of caffeine, nicotine, and alcohol?

Suggested Readings

Carpenter, M. (2015). *Caffeinated: How our daily habit helps, hurts, and hooks us.* Hudson Street Press.

Coe, S. D., & Coe, M. D. (1996). *The true history of chocolate*. Thames & Hudson.

McLellan, T. M., Caldwell, J. A., & Lieberman, H. R. (2016). A review of caffeine's effects on cognitive, physical and occupational performance. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, *71*, 294–312.

Meredith, S. E., Juliano, L. M., Hughes, J. R., & Griffiths, R. R. (2013). Caffeine use disorder: A comprehensive review and research agenda. *Journal of Caffeine Research*, *3*, 114–130.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

- **9-1** Describe the historical and contemporary patterns of alcohol use, including current patterns of alcohol consumption among college students
- **9-2** Explain the mechanism of action for alcohol
- **9-3** Describe how alcohol is absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body
- **9-4** Describe patterns of dispositional and protracted tolerance and physical dependence to alcohol
- **9-5** Distinguish between the physiological, sensorimotor, and psychological effects of acute alcohol use
- **9-6** Examine the effects that chronic heavy drinking has on the body and brain functioning
- **9-7** Differentiate between the traditional and biopsychosocial approaches to the development of alcohol use disorder

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

9 Alcohol

Alcoholic Beverages
- Fermentation and Distillation
- Expressing the Alcohol Content of a Beverage

History of Alcohol Use

Consumption of Alcohol and Heavy Drinking in the United States
- Per Capita Consumption
- Consumption of Alcohol among College Students

Pharmacology of Alcohol
- Mechanism of Action
- Pharmacokinetics of Alcohol

Tolerance and Dependence
- Tolerance
- Physical Dependence

Therapeutic Uses

Acute Effects of Alcohol
- Physiological Effects
- Sensorimotor Effects
- Alcohol and Driving Ability
- Psychological Effects
- Alcohol and Behavior

Effects of Chronic Heavy Drinking
- Alcohol and Brain Functioning
- Alcohol and the Liver
- Alcohol and Reproductive Functioning
- Fetal Alcohol Syndrome
- Moderate Drinking and Health

The Development of Alcohol Use Disorder
- Traditional Approaches to Etiology
- "Biopsychosocial" Approaches to Etiology
- Summary

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Humans have consumed alcohol since between 6000 B.C. and 5000 B.C.

___ 2. In the United States in 1830, adults' average alcohol consumption was about five drinks a day.

___ 3. The highest rates of heavy drinking, and thus the greatest vulnerability to drinking problems, are in men between the ages of 40 and 45.

___ 4. A pattern of drinking that brings an individual's blood level alcohol concentration to 0.10 g/dl or above is called binge drinking.

___ 5. If not treated properly, alcohol withdrawal syndrome can be fatal.

___ 6. Alcohol is a drug that has no legitimate medical value.

___ 7. If you drink a lot and black out, it means you have lost consciousness.

___ 8. Alcohol causes violent behavior.

___ 9. Alcohol improves sexual performance.

___10. The cognitive deficits that seem to occur in some people as a result of years of heavy drinking are reversible.

___11. The majority of individuals with severe alcohol use disorder eventually develop cirrhosis of the liver.

___12. Resveratrol is an antioxidant found in red wine that may lower the risk of heart disease.

In the preceding chapter, we said alcohol, nicotine, and caffeine are the most popular psychoactive drugs. Of the three, alcohol has been known, manufactured, and used the longest. Most important, this drug has had profound influences on the societies around the world in which it is used. "Alcohol" actually refers to several substances—for example, isopropyl alcohol (rubbing alcohol), methyl alcohol (wood alcohol), and ethanol. Ethanol is the form of alcohol we drink, and the word *alcohol* in this text means ethanol unless otherwise specified.

In this chapter, we will discuss the many facets of alcohol use. Our presentation will cover:

1. The major alcoholic beverages and how they are manufactured.
2. A history of alcohol use across human societies.
3. Contemporary trends of alcohol use in the United States.
4. Mechanisms of pharmacological action.
5. Development of tolerance and physical dependence.
6. Acute and chronic physiological, psychological, and social consequences of alcohol use.

We will end with a discussion of the causes of alcohol use disorder.

9.1 Alcoholic Beverages

Fermentation and Distillation

Alcohol virtually always is drunk in one of the three major classes of alcoholic beverages: beer, wine, and hard liquor (also called distilled spirits). For their manufacture, all these beverages depend on the process of fermentation, and on the further

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

distillation
The process by which the heating of a fermented mixture increases its alcohol content.

Morsa Images/DigitalVision/Getty Images

Fermentation tanks are used to ferment beer and wine.

process of **distillation** for hard liquor. Fermentation begins when sugar is dissolved in water and exposed to air, which creates the perfect environment for living microorganisms called yeasts. In this environment, yeasts multiply rapidly by eating the sugar, which is then converted to ethanol and carbon dioxide by the yeasts' metabolic processes. The carbon dioxide bubbles to the top of the mixture, leaving ethanol. As the yeasts grow and continue to metabolize sugar, the accumulation of ethanol becomes toxic and kills the cells. Most yeast strains can tolerate an alcohol concentration of 10%–15% before being killed. Which kind of beverage results from fermentation depends on what sugar-containing substance is used. When grapes are used, the grape juice ferments to form wine; when grains are used, fermentation produces beer.

"Fermentation may have been a greater discovery than fire."
David Rains Wallace

Distillation was developed to increase the ethanol content of fermented beverages. Distillation first involves heating a fermented mixture. Because alcohol has a lower boiling point than water, the steam emitted through boiling has a greater alcohol content than does the original fermented mixture. The vapor then is condensed through cooling, and the resulting liquid has a greater alcohol content than the original fermented mixture. By repeating this cycle, it is possible to raise the alcohol content of a beverage to progressively higher levels.

Martin Child/Photodisc/Getty Images

A variety of alcoholic beverages is available to interested consumers.

Expressing the Alcohol Content of a Beverage

In the United States, alcohol percentage is denoted by volume. This calculation is straightforward: 16 oz of a beverage that is 50% ethanol contains 8 oz of alcohol. Another way of expressing alcohol content is by weight, which is done, for example, in England.

proof
The proportion of alcohol in a beverage, by volume. Proof typically is used in reference to distilled spirits and equals twice the percentage of alcohol.

The alcohol content of a beverage is also designated by **proof**. Proof is used primarily for distilled spirits and is equal to twice the percentage of alcohol by volume. Accordingly, a beverage that is 43% alcohol by volume is 86 proof. This somewhat indirect way of

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

expressing alcohol content comes from 17th-century England, where it was determined that a mixture that was 57% alcohol by volume, if poured over gunpowder, would cause its ignition in an open flame. The English still refer to their beverages as "over proof" (57% alcohol by volume) or "under proof" (57% alcohol by volume) (Becker et al., 1975).

Table 9.1 is a summary of the major types of alcoholic beverages commercially available. As you can see in Table 9.1, varying the substances that form the base of the beverage and varying the alcohol concentration produce different alcoholic beverages.

TABLE 9.1 Major Kinds of Alcoholic Beverages, How They Are Made, and Their Alcohol Content

Beverage	How Made	Percentage of Alcohol (by volume)
Beer (includes lager, carbohydrate ale, malt, stout)	Lager, 3%–6%, is extracted from barley malt (or rice or corn) by cooling with water. The product is boiled with hops, then cooled and fermented. Types of beer vary in malt, hops, and alcohol content.	Fermentation of others 4–8
Wine		
Red (table wine)	Fermentation of red grapes in skins	Average 12
White (table wine)	Fermentation of skinless grapes	
Champagne	Same as white wine, with carbon dioxide	
Fortified (dessert) wines	Ordinary table wines with alcohol content raised	Up to 20
Distilled spirits		
Brandy	Distilled from any sugar-containing fruit. Brandy was probably first to be produced commercially.	About 40
Whiskeys	Grains brewed with water to form a beer of 5% to 10% alcohol. Beer is distilled and aged in new or used charred oak barrels for 2 to 8 years before blending.	40–50
Bourbon	Corn with rye and malted barley	40
Scotch	Malted barley and corn	40
Irish whiskey	Corn and malted and unmalted barley	40
Rye whiskey	Rye and malted barley	40
Tequila	Fermentation of the blue agave plant once it has been cooked	38–55
Other spirits		
Rum	Distilled from fermented molasses; aged about 3 years	40–75
Gin	Distilled from any fermentable carbohydrate (barley, potato, corn, wheat, rye); flavored by a second distillation with juniper berries	35–50
Vodka	Distilled from potato or almost any other carbohydrate source; kept free of flavors	35–50

Source: Abstracted from C. E. Becker, R. L. Roe, and R. A. Scott (1975), *Alcohol as a Drug*. Medcom Press.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW ACTIVITY

1. Create a chart listing the major kinds of alcoholic beverages and how they are produced.

9.2 History of Alcohol Use

Humans have used alcohol for thousands of years. The first nondistilled alcoholic beverages were made inadvertently by natural fermentation. Rice wine was first produced in the Jiahu region of China around 7000 B.C. and made by fermenting rice, honey, and fruit. The juices obtained from most types of fruit are contaminated with microbes, including yeasts, which constitute the flora on the fruit (Rose, 1977). Alcoholic fermentation results when the environmental temperature is right. Researchers believe the first beers were produced in Egypt between 6000 B.C. and 5000 B.C., and some sources suggest that humans were intentionally producing alcoholic beverages as far back as 10,000 years ago. Traditionally, it has been thought that the first beer production was similar to baking bread. An earthenware vessel filled with barley was placed in the ground until germination occurred. At that point, the barley was crushed, made into dough, and then baked until a crust formed. This cake of dehydrated dough was soaked in water until fermentation was complete. The resulting product of acid beer was called "boozah." However, a study of beer residue in Egyptian tombs dating to 2000 B.C. provides strong evidence that the brewing process of the times was far more sophisticated. The study suggests that the process consisted of blending water and malt to yield a refined liquid (Williams, 1996). Distilled spirits were the last alcoholic beverages to be produced, and the earliest reference to distilled spirits is from China, around 1000 B.C. No records of distilled spirit production and consumption are found from Western Europe until around A.D. 800.

> *"I like alcohol. It is a powerful drug and, God knows, for some people a hellish one, but, if used carefully it can give great pleasure."*
>
> 62-year-old man (Weil & Rosen, 1983, p. 190)

Since the beginning of its use, alcohol has played both positive and negative roles in society. On the one hand, alcoholic beverages have played a role in important societal rituals, such as births, religious ceremonies, marriages, and funerals. Such drinking was viewed as not harmful to individuals and as positive to societies. On the other hand, alcohol seemingly always has been consumed in excess by some, with consequent problems to individuals and to the society in which they lived. The definition of "problem" has varied according to time and culture (Warner, 1997). Nevertheless, such negative social consequences have led religious leaders, prophets, physicians, and philosophers to repeatedly condemn alcohol (Keller, 1979).

The two faces of alcohol were seen clearly when distilled spirits hit Western Europe. Europeans sang the praises of this drug. For example, a French professor in the 13th century dubbed alcohol *aqua vitae*, which means "water of life." The Danes expressed the same sentiment with their *akkevitt*; the Swedes, with *akvavit*. European societies also attributed many of their problems to alcoholic beverages, especially distilled spirits. For instance, the social problems in 18th-century England were represented in works of art such as William Hogarth's *Gin Lane*.

Colonial America adopted alcoholic beverages and many drinking customs from Western Europe. The tavern was the center of town politics, business, trade, and pleasure. Americans drank beer, wine, cider, and distilled spirits in considerable quantities. The practice of drinking was pervasive: Colonial American drinking showed no distinction among time, place, or person. The attitudes toward alcohol consumption were positive, and alcohol was viewed as meeting an array of physical, psychological, and social needs. The importance of alcohol to colonial Americans was also represented in language. In 1737, Benjamin Franklin published *The Drinker's Dictionary*, which included

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

more than 235 terms to describe those who were habitually drunk. Included among these were "Loaded his cart," "Cock ey'd," "Moon-ey'd," "Tipsy," and "He carries too much sail" (Mendelson & Mello, 1985).

With such supporting attitudes and customs, America became known as a country with excessive alcohol consumption. In 1790, adult citizens of the young country annually drank 6 gallons of pure alcohol per capita, and by 1830, per capita alcohol consumption had risen to 7 gallons. That amounts to almost five alcoholic beverage drinks a day for each adult! With this consumption, the ills of heavy drinking became more evident, especially in a society that was moving increasingly toward urbanization and industrialization. Some people began to speak out against the ravages of alcohol, again mostly in reference to distilled spirits. The most influential among these critics, and a pillar of the temperance movement that was to gain strength in the 19th century, was the physician Benjamin Rush. Dr. Rush's 1785 treatise, *An Inquiry into the Effects of Ardent Spirits upon the Human Body and Mind*, delineated the effects of distilled spirits on humans. This also was the basis for the long controversial idea that alcoholism is a disease.

The Trustees of the British Museum/Art Resource, NY

Eighteenth-century Europeans tended to attribute many of their social problems to alcoholic beverages, particularly distilled spirits, as depicted in Hogarth's print *Gin Lane*.

In the 19th century, the United States expanded westward, and with that came the saloon. The word *saloon* comes from the French word *salon*, which refers to a public meeting place and entertainment hall. The saloon did serve a social function for the frontier people, but it quickly moved away from a center of civilized interchange to a reflection of the rural community of the American West (Mendelson & Mello, 1985). The first saloons were not exactly pictures of fine carpentry; as little as a tent and a few barrels might make up a bar. Typical clientele included men who were inclined to exploit other men, women, and nature. These explorers, soldiers, Native Americans, trappers, settlers, and cowboys had few of the attachments to family or community that might have helped to limit excessive drinking. Instead, their drinking in the saloon was characterized by downing large quantities of whiskey for the purpose of engaging in explosive behavior (Keller, 1979). The whiskey was plentiful and usually wretched—consider common names for it such as "extract of scorpions" and "San Juan paralyzer."

The behavior associated with the saloon led to a rebirth of the temperance movement, which had been quieted somewhat by the American Civil War. The saloon was the focal scapegoat of the temperance movement and was blamed for social ills such as thievery, gambling, prostitution, and political corruption. The temperance movement

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division [LC-USZ62-111423]

Susan B. Anthony (1820–1906) was an early and active leader in the temperance movement.

also changed its stand from support of moderate use of nondistilled beverages to total abstinence from alcohol. The captains of industry of the late 19th and early 20th centuries, such as John D. Rockefeller, Andrew Carnegie, and Henry Ford, supported the temperance movement. They believed that abstemious employees would be better employees. These industrial giants also gave money to back their moral support.

As World War I approached, the anti-alcohol drive had gained considerable financial, social, and political power. As mentioned in Chapter 2, this drive led to Prohibition and then to passage of the Volstead Act. The short life of Prohibition in the United States is well known; Prohibition was repealed nationally in 1933. However, the states still had much discretion in regulating the sale and consumption of alcohol. The stew of local laws that has evolved since illustrates the ambivalence in the United States about the use of alcoholic beverages. For example, some laws required the windows of drinking establishments to be curtained, and others forbade it; some laws forbade women to drink standing at the bar, and others granted women the right to drink standing anywhere that a man could. The laws were consistent in their restriction of youths purchasing alcoholic beverages and in the channeling of alcohol tax revenues to local, state, and federal treasuries (Keller, 1979).

Since the 1980s, the general trend in the United States has been toward limiting alcohol's use through changes in social attitudes and tighter governmental controls. While drinking remains a part of many social rituals, many individuals are ambivalent about alcohol use and note the health and social consequences of excessive consumption. The negative consequences of excessive alcohol use are probably more apparent than ever because of activists with access to sophisticated communications techniques, yet they and government regulations are far from successful in stopping or limiting alcohol consumption. This seems to be especially true among people who have severe alcohol use disorder. We are still working to understand the mystery of how alcohol use disorder develops, is maintained, and can be prevented and treated.

REVIEW ACTIVITY

1. Create a time line indicating the worldwide historical use of alcohol.

9.3 Consumption of Alcohol and Heavy Drinking in the United States

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-1 Describe the historical and contemporary patterns of alcohol use, including current patterns of alcohol consumption among college students

In this section, we consider trends in alcohol use in the United States. Because we covered data on the prevalence of alcohol and other drug use in Chapter 1, we limit this discussion to trends we did not review earlier, including the prevalence of specific alcoholic beverages and the prevalence and correlates of heavy drinking.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Per Capita Consumption

The U.S. federal government compiles many statistics on the consumption of alcoholic beverages. One statistic, per capita consumption, gives a good general summary of how much the "average" person in the United States drinks. Before we present this information, you should know that the population is all individuals (both those who consume and those who do not consume alcohol) at least 14 years old. The age of 14 might seem young to some and is undoubtedly below the legal age for purchasing alcoholic beverages. However, this age is used because survey data suggest that many 14-year-olds are drinking beverages that contain alcohol. U.S. Census figures are used to estimate the number of people aged 14 and older for a given year in computing per capita consumption. The "quantity of alcohol" part of the computation is based on beverage sales figures for each of the states or, if those data are not available, on shipments and tax receipts data (combining the three data sources does not affect the conclusions significantly). The quantities of different types of beverages (beer, wine, hard liquor) are translated to amounts (in gallons) of pure alcohol according to standard alcohol equivalence formulas. For example, 12 ounces of regular domestic beer is computed as containing about 0.48 ounce or 0.045 gallon of pure alcohol. With these estimates, quantity of alcohol in gallons is divided by population number to yield per capita alcohol consumption in gallons.

Figure 9.1 provides the total per capita alcohol consumption in the United States from 1935 to 2016. Prior to 1970, the data are based on population age 15 or older; from 1970 to the present the data are based on population age 14 or older. As you can see from Figure 9.1, total alcohol consumption generally increased from 1935 (after the end of Prohibition) into the 1940s. After many years of stable consumption, total alcohol consumption increased from 1965 through 1980. The early 1980s marked the beginning of a decline in consumption that was slightly reversed in the late 1990s (Haughwout & Slater, 2018).

Combining data for all three types of alcoholic beverages masks some important differences, however. A more precise look at the per capita consumption decline in the 1980s to the mid-1990s reveals that it was due largely to a reduction in the use of hard liquor. In fact, the Lakins et al. (2008) report showed that, in 1995, the per capita consumption of alcohol from hard liquor was at its lowest point since 1939. From 1995 to 2006, the consumption of wine and hard liquor increased slightly, and

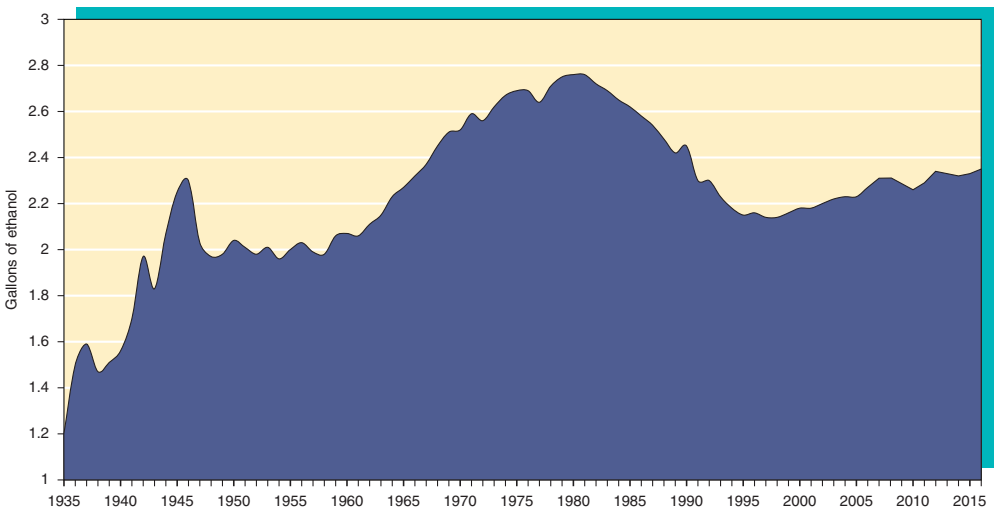


FIGURE 9.1
Per capita consumption of alcohol in gallons in the United States, 1935–2016.

Note: Data from Haughwout, S. P., & Slater, M. E. (2018). Apparent per capita alcohol consumption: National, state, and regional trends, 1977–2016 (National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism Surveillance Report No. 110). National Institutes of Health.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

beer showed a slight decrease. Similar trends regarding the three beverage types were found for 2007 to 2009, with smaller increases for wine and hard liquor (LaVallee & Yi, 2011). Since 2001, there has been a steady increase in per capita consumption of wine and a slight increase in distilled beverages.

The data on per capita alcohol consumption tell us how much "average" individuals who drink alcohol in the United States consume. This statistic alone can be deceptive, however, because the average value masks the large variation in drinking quantities and patterns among Americans. For example, as we saw in Chapter 1, national survey studies have shown consistently that drinking differs according to factors such as age, gender, and racial/ethnic background.

Essential to any discussion of alcohol is the rate of "heavy" drinking. Of course, what is "heavy" is open to wide interpretation and is highly dependent on the setting where the drinking occurs. From a public health point of view, however, what is called "heavy" is drinking that is associated with negative consequences: health problems, accidents, job and family problems, and symptoms of dependence on alcohol (such as an inability to cut down on drinking and memory loss associated with drinking). What seems to be important is the volume consumed on one drinking occasion, even if these occasions do not occur with great frequency (Midanik & Room, 1992).

Table 9.2 is a summary of data collected in the National Survey on Drug Use and Health conducted in 2015. The table presents reported heavy alcohol use—the consumption most highly associated with problems—in the 30 days preceding the interview. In the national survey, "heavy" drinking was defined as five/four drinks on an occasion at least 5 days in the past 30 days for men and women, respectively. The data are highly consistent with earlier surveys and reveal that current heavy drinking is by no means a rarity in the American population aged 12 and older. A total of 6.5% of the national sample reported heavy drinking in the last month in 2015. However, major differences are hidden in that total percentage. Men reported a rate of heavy drinking over twice as high as women reported. Age also was a powerful factor: 10.9% of 18- to 25-year-olds reported heavy drinking (remember the 6.5% overall rate). Again, gender within this age group is critical, as the rate for men was 13.6% and for women 8.2%. Also striking in Table 9.2 are the differences among the racial/ethnic groups for 18- to 25-year-olds. Whites reported a higher rate (14.2%) than did either Blacks (5.7%) or Hispanics (8.0%).

TABLE 9.2 Percentages of Individuals in Different Age, Gender, and Racial/Ethnic Groups Who Reported Heavy Alcohol Use in the Past Month, 2015

	Age			
	12–17	18–25	≥26	Total
Gender				
Male	1.1	13.6	9.1	8.9
Female	0.7	8.2	3.9	4.2
Race/Ethnicity				
White	1.2	14.2	7.3	7.6
Black	0.3	5.7	5.2	4.8
Hispanic	0.7	8.0	4.8	4.8
Total	0.9	10.9	6.4	6.5

Note: "Heavy" alcohol use is five or more drinks per occasion on 5 or more days in the past 30 days. Data are based on the 2015 National Survey on Drug Use and Health conducted by the National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Source: Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality (2016).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Consumption of Alcohol among College Students

A topic that has ongoing attention from the media and national politicians in the United States is alcohol consumption among college undergraduates. Drinking has been such a large part of life at most colleges that many believe there is a campus "culture of alcohol" (National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism [NIAAA], 2002, 2008). That is, on many campuses, a tradition of customs and beliefs regarding alcohol permeates campus social life, and each generation of students passes it on to the next.

The typical college undergraduate is in the young adult age range. Therefore, according to the national survey data, you would expect a majority of college students to drink alcohol, and a large proportion of these students to have days when they drink heavily. That prediction has been confirmed in a series of major surveys of U.S. colleges and universities. Data from the 2018 National Survey on Drug Use and Health indicate that almost 55% of college students aged 18–22 consumed alcohol in the last month, and about 37% reported binge drinking during that period. The National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism defines binge drinking as drinking that brings the blood alcohol concentration (BAC) to 0.08% or higher. This occurs after the consumption of five (for men) or four (for women) alcoholic drinks over approximately 2 hours.

On many college campuses there is a widespread availability of alcohol and inconsistent enforcement of laws prohibiting consumption. There are significant consequences of underage drinking and heavy drinking. Drinking by undergraduate students contributes to over 1,500 student deaths, an estimated 696,000 assaults, and 97,000 sexual assaults or date rapes each year.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 9.1

Ends of the Age Spectrum and Drinking

U.S. national surveys of drinking patterns and practices have paid relatively little attention to older individuals (generally, 65 and older) and no attention to young children. The reason in the case of older individuals probably is that this group has consistently shown a low prevalence of heavy drinking and drinking problems. Young children simply have not been sampled.

Some factors unique to older individuals are now thought to put them at higher risk of negative consequences when they drink. One factor is an age-related decrease in physical tolerance for alcohol so that smaller quantities can have considerable effects on an older person. Another factor is that many older individuals are taking prescribed medications that are synergistic with alcohol, again magnifying the effects of a given quantity of alcohol. The higher risk of alcohol problems among older individuals who do drink is receiving a lot more attention than in previous years because of the increasing number of older people: In 1980, they were 11.2% of the U.S. population, were 13.0% in 2010, and are expected to be 20.4% in 2040. Other research shows a higher rate of alcohol-related hospitalizations among older individuals than once thought (Adams et al., 1993; Rigler, 2000). Accordingly, there is a strong need to learn about the development of drinking patterns and problems among older people, and any special needs for treatment of those individuals who do experience problems.

On the other end of the age range, knowledge of young children's drinking is limited at best. There has been some research on this age group's knowledge about alcohol and attitudes toward its use. For example, children as young as 4 years old can identify alcoholic beverages, and 6-year-olds show some knowledge of the customs surrounding adult drinking. Unfortunately, much less is known about young children's actual alcohol consumption. The reason we know so little is that the extent of children's drinking is difficult to study scientifically—say, by the survey methods that have been used to study adults' drinking. Can you think of some problems you would face if you wanted to research drinking among young children?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Marmaduke St. John/Alamy stock photo

Drinking games, such as beer pong, are popular among college students and promote heavy drinking.

As we have seen in reviewing the findings of other surveys, the average or typical results do not apply to all campuses or to all students. Various studies have found that students who drink the least attend religious schools, commuter schools, and historically Black colleges and universities. The students who drink the most are first-year students, Whites, members of fraternities and sororities, and athletes (NIAAA, 2002). Additionally, those who have discussed the risks of alcohol use with their parent or guardian are more likely to abstain.

In the past several decades, colleges have increased their alcohol prevention efforts. Most of these prevention programs target beliefs about alcohol and try to increase students' awareness of the negative consequences of heavy drinking. In other words, prevention programs try to change the alcohol culture on campuses. Other possible ways to reduce heavy alcohol use involve environmental change. Examples are decreasing alcohol's availability to underage drinkers on campus and in the surrounding community, raising alcohol prices and taxes, introducing responsible beverage service, limiting the number of places where alcohol can be purchased, and changing the hours of service and days of sale (NIAAA, 2008; Wechsler et al., 2002). You might recognize that environmental adjustments such as these go beyond the college campus and can be initiated by the governments of the localities where campuses are situated.

In conclusion, one might believe heavy drinking among college students would draw attention because it predicts students will have alcohol problems after they leave college, but that is not the case. Research has shown that significant percentages of people who do have alcohol problems as adults drank heavily in college, but most people who drink heavily in college do not have later alcohol problems. Rather, heavy drinking among college students gets attention because it is associated with serious consequences for students while they are students—that is, right now.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 9.2

Drinking Games and Alcohol Advertising

Drinking games such as beer pong are notorious for promoting heavy drinking. They also have been around for centuries and are popular among current college students. The association between heavy alcohol consumption on an occasion and the occurrence of negative consequences raises the question of what role beer manufacturers should play in promoting drinking games through advertisement campaigns. In this regard, major beer manufacturers in the United States have entered the business of marketing accessories to drinking games like beer pong. Is such promotion legitimate?

Technically, it is. This marketing strategy is not legally prohibited, and the beer manufacturers argue that they are targeting people who are 21 years of age and older. Moreover, the manufacturers claim that their promotions always encourage "responsible drinking." The counterargument is that, regardless of the manufacturers' intent, their promotions increase the popularity of drinking games among college students and other young adults and, with it, heavy drinking on a given occasion.

Do you think that beer manufacturers should be legally able to promote drinking games? Should the alcohol beverage industry be as restricted in its advertising as the tobacco industry?

REVIEW

1. Discuss factors that contribute to the patterns of alcohol use by age in the United States.
2. Describe events that may be associated with the overall patterns of alcohol use in the United States since the 1930s.
3. Describe the patterns of alcohol use among college students.

9.4 Pharmacology of Alcohol

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-2 Explain the mechanism of action for alcohol

9-3 Describe how alcohol is absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body

Mechanism of Action

Pinpointing a site of action or a single mechanism of alcohol effects is difficult as the drug affects cell membranes, all neurochemical systems, and all endocrine systems (Abel, 1985). Alcohol is a drug that depresses the central nervous system (CNS). Alcohol may exert its effects by dissolving in lipid membranes, which disturbs the normal chemical actions that occur there (Rall, 1990b). That is, alcohol alters the cell membranes' anatomy by entering their internal structure. The result is reduced efficiency of conduction of neural impulses along axons, which reduces the action potential amplitude that reaches the synapse. As a consequence, neurotransmitter release and transmission of impulses across the synapse are inhibited. There is good evidence that alcohol acts on GABA-benzodiazepine receptors, and there is increasing evidence that alcohol enhances serotoninergic and dopaminergic activity (Julien et al., 2011).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Pharmacokinetics of Alcohol

Absorption

"What contemptible scoundrel has stolen the cork to my lunch?"

W. C. Fields

Because it provides calories, alcohol is formally classified as a food. Unlike other foods, however, alcohol does not have to be digested before the body absorbs it. Nevertheless, most of the alcohol that is consumed must pass from the stomach to the small intestine for rapid absorption to occur. This is by far the most common way humans absorb alcohol. If alcohol is vaporized, however, it can be absorbed through the lungs and subcutaneous sites (Ritchie, 1985).

As you saw in Chapter 4, the rate at which a drug is absorbed varies widely among people, depending on individual differences in physiology and situational factors. Alcohol is no exception to this rule. The major factors influencing absorption are those that alter the rate of alcohol's passage from the stomach to the intestines. Individuals can considerably slow absorption by eating while drinking, because the presence of food in the stomach retards absorption. Milk is especially effective for slowing alcohol absorption. Another factor is the rate at which an alcoholic beverage is consumed; faster drinking means faster absorption. Drinks that have a higher concentration of alcohol, such as scotch drunk "neat" (no ice, no mix such as soda or water), are absorbed more quickly than those with a lower concentration, such as a scotch and water. The food substances in beer slow its absorption. Carbonated beverages are absorbed more quickly than noncarbonated ones; this explains why people may feel a quick kick from a glass of champagne on an empty stomach, when they may not get the same effect from drinking a comparable amount of wine. Given these factors, the time between stopping drinking and the peak concentration of alcohol in the blood may range widely, from 30 to 90 minutes (Rall, 1990b).

Some people exhibit a reflexive action of the body that works to prevent the drinking of large quantities of alcohol. The pylorus, which is the muscular valve that separates the stomach from the intestines, shuts when a large amount of alcohol has been ingested. This action is called **pylorospasm** and results in vomiting, thereby preventing whatever is in the stomach from passing to the intestines. This is an important safeguard because only 10% to 20% of the alcohol in the stomach is absorbed (Julien, 2005). This mechanism is a natural defense against an individual becoming a very heavy drinker.

pylorospasm
The shutting of the pylorus valve that occurs in some people when they drink very large quantities of alcohol.

Distribution

After absorption, the blood distributes alcohol to all of the body's tissues. Because alcohol is easily dissolved in water, the proportion of water in a tissue determines the concentration of alcohol in it. Blood is about 70% water and therefore gets a high concentration of alcohol. Muscle and bone contain smaller percentages of water and have correspondingly smaller percentages of alcohol.

Alcohol affects primarily the CNS, especially the brain. The concentration of alcohol in the brain approximates that in the blood because of the brain's large blood supply and because alcohol freely passes through the blood-brain barrier. Alcohol's LD 50 varies as a function of different factors. The average adult would reach alcohol's LD 50 after drinking about 25 standard drinks in an hour or so. Of course, saying this estimate is an average means that many people would die from drinking considerably fewer than 25 drinks in an hour. One **standard drink** may be defined as 0.6 ounce of alcohol, which is about the amount in 1.5 ounces of 80-proof distilled spirits, 12 ounces of 5% alcohol beer, or 5 ounces of table wine (12% alcohol).

standard drink
The alcohol equivalent in a drink of beer, wine, or distilled spirits. A standard drink equals 0.6 ounce of alcohol—about the alcohol content in 12 ounces of beer, 5 ounces of table wine, or ounces of 80-proof distilled spirits.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Because all humans have the same proportions of the different tissues and water, it is possible to estimate the concentration of alcohol in the body from its concentration in the blood. The blood alcohol concentration (BAC), as the name implies, is the amount of alcohol in the bloodstream. It is expressed as a percentage of weight of alcohol per 100 units of blood volume (Sobell & Sobell, 1981). Typically, the ratio is expressed as milligrams (mg) of alcohol per 100 milliliters (ml) of blood. Therefore, one drop of alcohol (about 10 mg) in 1,000 drops of blood (about 100 ml) gives a BAC of 0.01% (100 ml of blood weighs about 100 g). For your reference, the legal level for intoxication in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, and Puerto Rico is 0.08%. The legal level is also 0.08% in all of Canada and England, 0.02% in Norway and Sweden, and 0.05% in Finland. Alcohol's LD 50 is a BAC of between 0.45% and 0.50%, although there have been case reports of people surviving BACs up to a little more than 1.0% (Berild & Hasselbalch, 1981).

You can translate these numbers into an approximation of the number of drinks consumed over time. We emphasize approximation because, as you saw earlier, a person's BAC depends in part on the different factors that influence absorption. However, knowing approximately what your BAC is at a given time can have practical value.

When a healthy 160-pound man consumes a standard drink, his BAC is raised by 0.02% to 0.03% within 45 to 60 minutes of drinking. Factors besides dose of alcohol determine the peak BAC that is reached. Again, the information in Chapter 4 will help you to understand this. Total body mass is a major factor because alcohol is distributed in both muscle and fat. As a result, those who weigh more will have a lower BAC than those who weigh less after drinking the same amount of alcohol. Another factor is how much of a person's body consists of fat and muscle. Alcohol is soluble in fat but is even more soluble in water. Everything being equal, a drink will result in a lower BAC for a leaner person than for someone who has a higher percentage of body fat. This is the reason a woman tends to reach higher BACs from drinking a given amount of alcohol than does a man of the same body weight. Women tend to have a higher percentage of body fat than men do. Also, one study suggests that women have less of the enzyme alcohol dehydrogenase in their stomachs, which prevents them from metabolizing as much alcohol in their stomachs. More alcohol enters a woman's bloodstream and eventually the brain and other organs (Frezza et al., 1990). This finding suggests that, for a man and a woman of equal weight, the same amount of alcohol affects the woman more (this is one reason "binge drinking" is defined as five drinks for men and as four drinks for women).

(Ford) "You'd better be prepared for the jump into hyperspace. It's unpleasantly like being drunk."
(Arthur) "What's so unpleasant about being drunk?"
(Ford) "Ask a glass of water."
The Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy

Individual differences in the rate at which the body metabolizes alcohol are also variables that influence what peak BAC is reached. For these and other reasons, the following formula for computing BAC gives only an approximation. The formula estimates the BAC that would result at a given time in our hypothetical 160-pound man who drank a given number of standard drinks. In the formula, BAC = blood alcohol content, NSD = number of standard drinks, and NHD = number of hours since drinking began:

$$\text{Estimated BAC} = \text{NSD} \times (0.025\%) - \text{NHD} \times (0.015\%)$$

In the formula, NSD is multiplied by 0.025% because that is the midpoint of our estimated range of increase in BAC that results when the 160-pound person has a standard drink. NHD is multiplied by 0.015% because that is the BAC equivalent of the estimated hourly rate that the liver metabolizes alcohol (Rall, 1990b). The metabolic rate is independent of body weight, unlike the rise in BAC for a given amount of alcohol that is consumed.

Based on our approximation formula, a 160-pound man who drinks three 12-ounce regular beers in an hour will have a BAC of about 0.06%. That result would be adjusted up or down depending on the important factor of body weight; many

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

conversion charts like Figure 9.2 are available to make such corrections. Also, as discussed earlier, some adjustment up in the BAC gives a better estimate for women.

The estimation formula reflects that the BAC essentially depends on the dose of alcohol that is consumed and the time that it takes to drink it. Figure 9.3 shows the

FIGURE 9.2
A conversion chart for approximating blood alcohol concentration as a function of number of drinks, time, and body weight

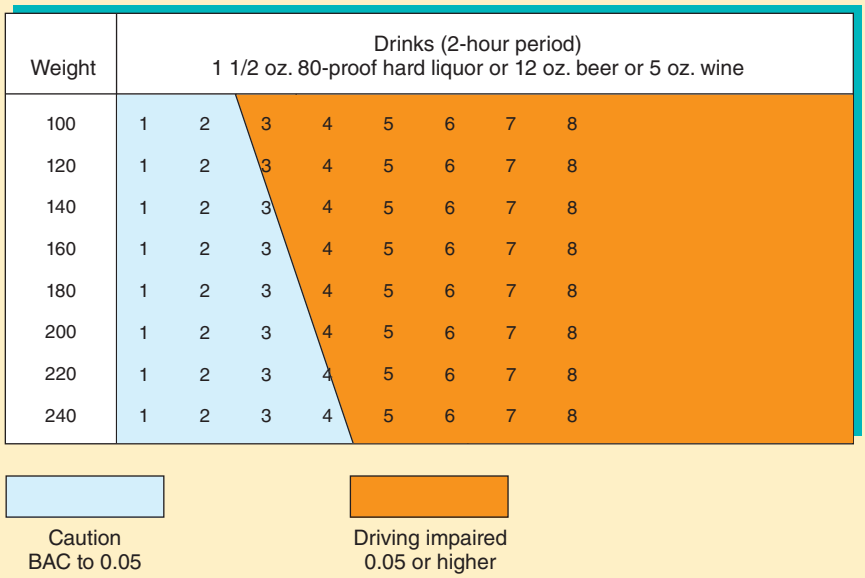
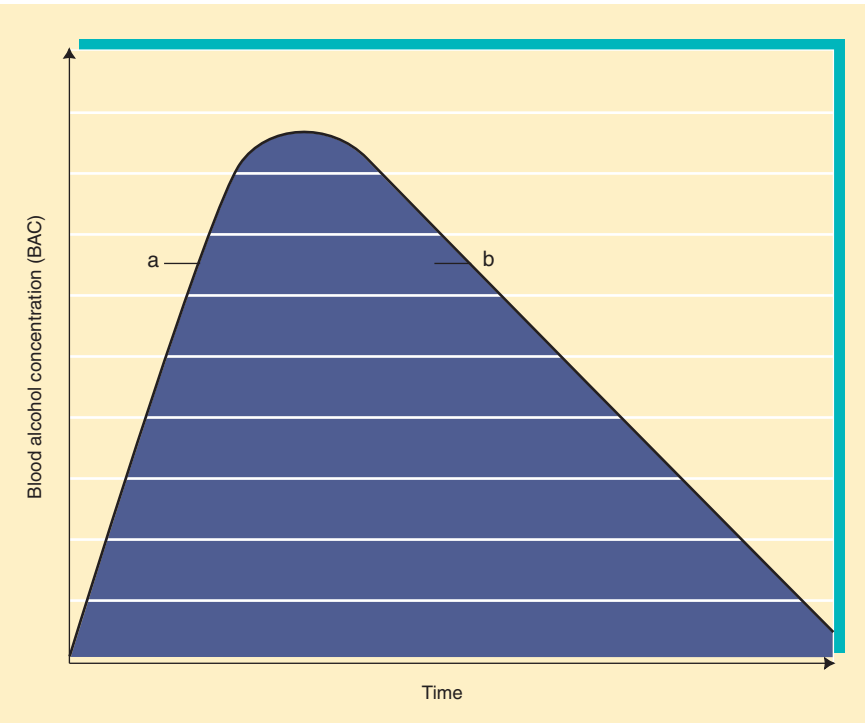

Weight
Drinks (2-hour period)
1 1/2 oz. 80-proof hard liquor or 12 oz. beer or 5 oz. wine
100 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
120 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
140 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
160 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
180 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
200 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
220 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
240 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
Caution
BAC to 0.05
Driving impaired
0.05 or higher
Figures are averages. Alcohol effects may vary with each individual.

FIGURE 9.3
Acute tolerance to alcohol's effects—the effects of alcohol at time a are greater than the effects at time b



Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

BAC–time relationship. The figure illustrates that the BAC rises quickly and then more gradually returns to zero after drinking stops. Therefore, time is an important factor in determining BAC. Time enters the formula independent of the number of standard drinks because of the way the liver metabolizes alcohol—generally, at a constant amount over a given time, regardless of the amount that is consumed.

For medical or legal purposes, BAC is not estimated by formula but as precisely as possible by standardized procedures. Blood and urine samples are taken frequently for medical and medical/legal reasons to measure BAC. For example, blood samples often determine the BACs of drivers killed in motor vehicle accidents. BAC is commonly measured by breath sample because of the known ratio (1:2,100) between the amount of alcohol in the lungs and the amount in the blood. The police departments of many U.S. cities measure BAC by breath analysis. Gas chromatography is used to obtain excellent estimates of BAC, so good they are considered legally admissible evidence. Gas chromatographic methods are expensive, however, and until recently, cost has prohibited the precise measurement of BAC in settings where it would be very useful, such as outpatient alcohol treatment programs. Substantial improvements in electronic technology have made possible breath-testing devices that give good BAC estimates and cost only a few hundred dollars.

Metabolism and Excretion

More than 90% of the alcohol that is absorbed is metabolized by the body, mainly in the liver. (We saw earlier that the stomach also plays a part in metabolizing alcohol.) The small percentage of alcohol that is not metabolized is excreted in pure form through the kidneys and the lungs. When alcohol is metabolized in the liver, it is broken down to acetaldehyde by the enzyme alcohol dehydrogenase. Acetaldehyde eventually is broken down to carbon dioxide and water. At this point, there is a release of energy, or calories (Julien, 1996). The carbon dioxide is excreted from the body through air exchange in the lungs, and the water is excreted in urine. Unlike other foods, such as proteins and carbohydrates, the rate that alcohol is metabolized is independent of the body's need for the calories it could provide or of the amount of alcohol consumed. The rate of alcohol oxidation is constant and averages about 0.35 ounce an hour.

Oxidation is the process by which the energy in foods is released in the form of heat and work. In this respect, alcohol liberates about 75 calories in each half ounce. Therefore, one standard drink of vodka has about 80–85 calories because all the calories in distilled spirits are from alcohol content. However, beverages such as beer provide calories from foods such as proteins and carbohydrates as well as alcohol. A regular 12-ounce, 5% alcohol beer has about 150 calories, and a comparable amount of the commercial light beers has 95 to 135 calories. Light beers have fewer calories primarily because they contain less alcohol.

nikamo/Shutterstock.com

Blood alcohol concentration can be measured by breath analysis, as shown here.

Alcohol is notorious for being unaffected by attempts to hasten its removal from the body. Efforts such as vigorous exercise do nothing to speed up alcohol oxidation, except to the extent that exercise takes time and the individual does not drink while exercising. As noted in Chapter 8, the long-used intoxication "remedy" of black coffee, as a source of caffeine, also does nothing to hasten

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

sobering up. Because caffeine is a stimulant drug, however, an individual may interpret such effects as decreased alcohol intoxication. In fact, little can be done to hasten sobriety except to wait for the liver to do its work in its own constant time. Therefore, if you go to bed on Saturday at 2 a.m. with a BAC of 0.15%, you will still be legally drunk 3 hours later at 5 a.m. (your BAC will be about 0.105%) and you will not be alcohol free until noon.

REVIEW

1. Describe the drug experience associated with alcohol consumption.
2. Explain how alcohol affects the nervous system.
3. Explain how blood alcohol concentration is determined.

9.5 Tolerance and Dependence

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-4 Describe patterns of dispositional and protracted tolerance and physical dependence to alcohol

Tolerance

Regular use of alcohol results in some dispositional tolerance (see Chapter 5 for a detailed discussion of tolerance). Therefore, an individual must consume greater quantities of alcohol to maintain a certain BAC. Dispositional tolerance can be reversed with a period of abstinence from alcohol. Functional tolerance has a greater practical influence than does dispositional tolerance in altering how alcohol affects a person with repeated use. Tolerance to alcohol may be both acute and protracted. Because of acute tolerance, some effects of alcohol at a given BAC tend to be greater when the BAC curve is rising than on the descending limb of the curve. For example, at a BAC of 0.10% as it is ascending, an individual may show considerably impaired performance on tasks related to driving. If the BAC peaks at, say, 0.15% and then hits 0.10% as it is falling, however, an individual's performance on those same driving-related tasks would tend to be improved, although still probably far from its level with no alcohol in the blood. Of course, such improvement would make no difference to the police. A person with a BAC of 0.10% is legally drunk in every state that has per se intoxication laws, regardless of what direction the BAC is heading when it is measured. Acute tolerance is illustrated in Figure 9.3.

As with dispositional tolerance, the development of protracted tolerance requires an individual to drink greater amounts of alcohol to achieve an effect once achieved with less alcohol. Because protracted functional tolerance far outpaces dispositional tolerance, the person becomes more susceptible to serious health and other consequences of heavy alcohol consumption. For example, a person may drink large quantities of alcohol to achieve a mood change that was once reached with much less alcohol. However, the BAC does not behave in the same way. Drinking large quantities of alcohol still results in a high BAC. With higher BACs, the body is more vulnerable to suffering alcohol's toxic effects, which we review shortly. Similarly, those who regularly drink large quantities of alcohol may not feel drunk or even impaired

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

at BACs greater than 0.08%, but they still are defined as legally drunk. Such a designation leaves people liable to arrests for drunk driving and other alcohol-related charges.

As we noted in Chapter 5, there is cross-tolerance between alcohol and other CNS depressant drugs. We also noted how cross-tolerance might cause difficulties for an anesthesiologist preparing a patient for surgery. Sometimes the problem is acute in the emergency room, where surgery must be performed immediately following a serious accident. You will see later how alcohol intoxication is associated with the occurrence of accidents, and as you might expect, the heaviest users (most tolerant) of alcohol are the people who are most likely to have accidents (USDHHS, 1993).

Alcohol also shows cross-dependence with drugs that are CNS depressants. This means that taking one drug can suppress withdrawal symptoms of the other. For example, alcohol and the benzodiazepine drugs such as Valium and Librium show cross-dependence. This phenomenon has proved valuable in managing withdrawal from alcohol in individuals who are physically dependent on it.

Physical Dependence

With chronic heavy drinking, individuals can develop physical dependence on alcohol. When one ceases or reduces alcohol use, particularly after a period of heavy or prolonged consumption, they experience alcohol withdrawal. Some symptoms may be severe. Treatment in these cases typically involves hospitalization.

Alcohol withdrawal syndrome can develop within a few hours or days of alcohol cessation and can include:

- Insomnia
- Autonomic symptoms such as sweating, racing heart
- Hand tremors (“the shakes”)
- Nausea and vomiting
- Psychomotor agitation
- Anxiety
- Seizures
- Hallucinations

To meet the *DSM*-5 criteria for alcohol withdrawal syndrome, an individual must experience a combination of two or more of these symptoms. Additionally, significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of life must also be present.

REVIEW ACTIVITY

1. Describe the symptoms associated with alcohol withdrawal syndrome.

9.6 Therapeutic Uses

Alcohol might have been thought to be the panacea for all of life’s ills, but we now know its medical value is probably outdistanced by its social value (Ritchie, 1985). In fact, there was a hint of this knowledge some time ago based on a remedy for treating colds taken from an old English book: At first inkling of a cold, hang your hat on the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

bedpost, drink from a bottle of good whiskey until two hats appear, and then get into bed and stay there. The therapeutic value of alcohol in this case was in keeping the cold victim in bed.

"Drink no longer water, but use a little wine for thine stomach's sake and thine often infirmities."
The Bible, I Timothy 5:23

Alcohol does have a few true therapeutic uses. For example, it is an ingredient in several legitimate medical products (Jacobs & Fehr, 1987). Because alcohol is an excellent solvent, small amounts are combined with other ingredients in cough syrups and other products taken orally. Furthermore, alcohol is an ingredient in mouthwashes and shaving lotions. If the individuals like them, alcoholic beverages may be recommended in moderate amounts to convalescent or older patients to be taken before meals to stimulate appetite and digestion. Alcohol is also included in compounds created to treat skin problems. Because alcohol cools when it evaporates, ethanol sponges are used to treat fevers. In addition, alcohol is part of mixtures that serve as liniments (Rall, 1990b). Finally, dehydrated alcohol may be injected close to nerves or sympathetic ganglia to relieve chronic pain that may occur, for example, in patients with inoperable cancer (Ritchie, 1985).

REVIEW ACTIVITY

1. Identify the specific ways that alcohol can be used therapeutically.

9.7 Acute Effects of Alcohol

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-5 Distinguish between the physiological, sensorimotor, and psychological effects of acute alcohol use

In this section, we review both the acute and chronic effects of alcohol consumption. We first go over alcohol's many acute physiological, sensory-motor (sensorimotor), and psychological effects. We also discuss several topics of special societal concern related to alcohol's acute effects, including aggression, sexual behavior, and driving.

One point about alcohol's acute effects is that alcohol generally acts on the body as a depressant, and its acute effects are proportional to the magnitude of the BAC. Simply put, as the BAC increases, acute effects increase in number and intensity. However, how humans experience some degree of **intoxication** and behave under different doses of alcohol may be modified by psychological and situational factors as well as alcohol dose and tolerance to this drug. For some behaviors, these nondrug factors may be even more powerful determinants of alcohol's acute effects than drug factors.

intoxication
A transient state of physical and psychological disruption caused by the presence of a toxic substance, such as alcohol, in the CNS.

Physiological Effects

Alcohol taken at low doses has several physiological effects.[1] Alcohol inhibits the secretion of vasopressin, which causes increased urination. The effect happens when the BAC is rising but not when it is falling. Alcohol also reduces the amount of body fat that is oxidized. This acute effect of alcohol accumulates to result in long-term

[1]Much of the discussion of alcohol's acute effects is based on Becker et al. (1975), Jacobs & Fehr (1987), McKim (2000), and Sobell & Sobell (1981).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

increased body fat and weight gain when alcohol is used in addition to normal food intake (Suter et al., 1992). Such weight gain is commonly called a "beer belly." Alcohol is a peripheral dilator and causes the skin to feel warm and turn red. A number of authors have cautioned against using alcoholic beverages to warm up in cold environments. This advice is counterintuitive to many who consume alcohol, who experience the warmth that occurs with peripheral dilation. Alcohol's dilating effect on peripheral blood vessels causes some loss of body heat, however, and such action was thought to ultimately decrease protection against the cold. It turns out the problem is not a serious one, as experimental studies have shown that alcohol does not significantly tilt the balance of the body's temperature regulation in cold environments.

An acute alcohol effect with wide practical application is that it increases gastric secretion, which is one basis for the U.S. cocktail hour. The increase in gastric secretion stimulates the appetite. Unfortunately, alcohol at high doses harms the stomach mucosa and causes gastric distress. Nausea and vomiting may occur at BACs greater than 0.15%. Another physiological effect of alcohol when taken in high doses and when the BAC increases rapidly is a release of corticosteroids, part of the body's general reaction to stress. In this case, the stressor is a high dose of alcohol, which is toxic to the body.

An important acute effect of alcohol is disruption of sleep patterns. Even at lower doses, alcohol suppresses **REM sleep**, which is the stage of the sleep cycle when most dreaming occurs (REM stands for "rapid eye movements," which characterize this stage of sleep). When the dose is low, REM sleep is suppressed only in the first half of the night, but REM time rebounds and increases in the second half. At larger doses of alcohol, REM sleep is suppressed throughout the night.

REM sleep
Acronym for "rapid eye movements," which are associated with dream activity and are one stage in a cycle of sleep.

Alcohol impairs memory. Its acute effects are on short-term memory, and when high BACs are reached rapidly, a **blackout** may occur. Blackouts are an individual's amnesia about events when drinking, even though there was no loss of consciousness. For example, a person who had a lot to drink the night before may wake up and have absolutely no recollection of where they parked the car. Blackouts are thought to result from a failure in the transfer of information in **short-term memory** to **long-term memory**. Animal studies suggest that the mechanism for this effect is alcohol's interference with receptors in the brain that enhance connections among neurons and are fundamental to learning and memory (Tokuda et al., 2011). People also have "grayouts," in which they can partially recall events that occurred in full consciousness during a drinking occasion. Grayouts probably reflect state-dependent learning. Blackouts and grayouts do not happen consistently in the same individuals with a given dose of alcohol, and the factors that specifically determine their occurrence have not been identified.

blackout
Failure to recall events that occurred while drinking even though there is no loss of consciousness.

short-term memory
Memory for recent events; thought to differ from long-term memory in several important ways.

long-term memory
Memory for remote events. According to one theory of memory, information enters long-term memory through short-term memory.

Those who drink likely have had at least one somewhat-delayed consequence of an episode of overindulgence—the hangover. Hangovers begin to appear about 4 to 12 hours after reaching the peak BAC and generally are not considered a pleasant alcohol effect. Symptoms may include headache, dizziness, nausea, vomiting, increased heart rate, fatigue, and thirst (Gauvin et al., 1993). Furthermore, although the BAC is zero, hangovers are associated with a reduced ability to perform the complex skills required to drive a motor vehicle (Franck, 1983). Although people usually do not think of hangovers as a serious negative consequence of overindulging in drinking alcohol beyond not feeling well temporarily, the cumulative effect of hangovers for a society are considerable. For example, the CDC estimated that in 2010 alcohol hangovers cost the U.S. economy $90 billion in lost worker productivity.

Remedies galore, from folk medicine and medical science alike, have been sought to cure the hangover (see Contemporary Issue Box 9.3). Perhaps the one heard most

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

ostill/Shutterstock.Com

Headache is one symptom of a hangover, which is a common consequence of alcohol overindulgence.

often is the "hair of the dog that bit you," and in this case, the dog is alcohol. It is true that alcohol erases its own hangover symptoms. This solution is far from perfect, however, because all that is being accomplished is postponing the inevitable. Of course, a real danger in using alcohol in this way is that it is courting a pattern of frequent, heavy drinking, because alcohol is used to remove an unpleasant effect of drinking in high quantities. Many studies have shown this effect to be highly reinforcing to humans and other animals alike.

Therefore, it seems that the only dependable and safe cure for the hangover is time or, of course, drinking in moderation or not at all. Pittler et al., (2005) confirmed this conclusion, as their review of clinical trials of interventions to treat hangover showed nothing to be nearly as effective as preventing the symptoms from occurring in the first place.

In discussing alcohol's acute effects, we must reemphasize that alcohol interacts synergistically with other CNS depressants. The point is worth repeating because of the dangerous effects of mixing alcohol and barbiturates—a common method of intended and unintended suicides. Mixing alcohol and the benzodiazepines does not have the potential for suicide that alcohol and the barbiturates have, but mixing these can cause serious decrements in the performance of skills essential to survival, such as driving a car or staying awake while driving a car. Similarly, marijuana and alcohol are frequently consumed on the same occasion, and there seem to be synergistic effects of these two drugs on skills related to driving (Advokat et al., 2016). Antihistamines, which are available over the counter, also combine synergistically with alcohol. Another point about combining alcohol with other drugs: Alcohol decreases the effects of certain prescribed medications, such as antibiotics, anticonvulsants, anticoagulants, and **monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors**.

monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors Drugs used to treat depressions that inhibit the activity of the enzyme monoamine oxidase, which degrades the neurotransmitters of norepinephrine and serotonin.

Alcohol causes slight respiratory depression at lower doses, but this effect does not reach dangerous levels in healthy people unless they consume very high doses. Higher doses also are associated with the induction of sleep, stupor, and in extremely

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 9.3

The Hangover's Many "Cures"

Besides the "hair of the dog that bit you," other purported hangover cures have made the circuit among those who drink from around the world for millennia. Here are some of them:

1. Take megadoses of vitamins, so your body will have the strength to ward off the hangover.
2. Eat solyanka (a Russian soup made with pickle juice).
3. Inhale pure oxygen to quicken the body's oxidation of alcohol.
4. Eat a hearty breakfast.
5. Drink sports drinks.
6. Drink a repulsive concoction, so the disgusting taste will help you to forget the hangover.
7. Eat pickled herring (from Germany).
8. Stay in bed and lie still.

Some of these remedies sound as though people desperately suffering from hangovers created them. None of them has a basis in medical science or practice. Hangovers are "cured" in only two ways: time and not getting too intoxicated in the first place.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

high doses, coma. In the overdose range of consumption, cardiovascular depression can occur. Earlier, we noted that a dose of alcohol could be lethal (lethal dose 50, or "LD 50" BAC of 0.45% to 0.50%) due to dysfunction of the more primitive areas of the brain like the medulla that control breathing and heartbeat.

Sensorimotor Effects

At moderate (0.05%) to higher BACs, alcohol has several acute effects on the senses. Vision decreases in acuity, and taste and smell are not so sensitive. Pain sensitivity decreases when the BAC is in the 0.08% to 0.10% range. Simple reaction time begins to slow significantly at a BAC of 0.10%. An example of a simple reaction time task is to press a key as quickly as possible when a single light on a panel shines. In a complex reaction time task, research participants are asked to integrate two or more stimuli and then respond to them as quickly as possible. An example is to press a key when a white and a red light shine but not to press it when only the white light shines. Complex reaction time may be impaired in both speed and accuracy at BACs of 0.05% or even lower.

"Before I'd know it (while drinking), I'd be stumbling around, being loud and jovial, insensitive to pain. I'd feel great at the time, and I'd also know what was in store for me. And the next day I'd be totally out of action, feeling as if I'd been poisoned, which I guess I had. I got really scared one time when I woke up like that and couldn't remember anything of the night before."

37-year-old man describing his drinking during college (Weil & Rosen, 1983, p. 191)

Alcohol strongly affects body sway, which is measured by asking people to stand steady with their eyes closed. The body's deviation from a "steady state" is then recorded. At a BAC of 0.06%, body sway is impaired by about 40%. At a high BAC, we see alcohol's effect on body sway manifested as staggering and, eventually, as an inability to walk independently at all. The sensitivity of body sway to alcohol is the reason for the "walk a straight line" test that police use to decide whether an individual is above the legal BAC limit. Alcohol's influence on body sway is due to its effects on balance controls in the inner ear. This also is why the room may spin when individuals lie down and close their eyes to sleep after a night of heavy drinking.

Alcohol impairs psychomotor skills. In tasks designed to measure these skills, participants are asked to make controlled muscular movements to adjust or position a machine or some mechanism on an experimental apparatus in response to changes in the speed or direction of a moving object (e.g., see Levine et al., 1975, p. 288). A common example is the mechanical or computerized version of the pursuit rotor task, in which participants must keep a stylus on a target that moves circularly on an automated disk.

Psychomotor task performance on the average shows deterioration at BACs of about 0.03% and higher (Levine et al., 1975). These tasks commonly require relatively fine motor dexterity. At high BACs, 0.15% or more, there is clear abnormality in gross motor functions like standing and walking. At these levels, alcohol has impaired the brain centers responsible for motor activity and balance to such a degree that the neural messages are not being sent to the muscles.

Alcohol and Driving Ability

"I'm in NO condition to be driving . . . wait a minute! I shouldn't be listening to myself—I'M DRUNK!"

Homer Simpson

Sensorimotor skills constitute a major part of driving ability. During the early 1980s, public awareness of drinking and driving a motor vehicle increased enormously. Probably most influential in opening the public's eyes and ears about drunk driving were citizens' organizations such as Mothers Against Drunk Driving (MADD) and Students Against Drunk Driving (SADD). These movements contributed to and were strengthened by the more conservative attitudes toward alcohol and drug use that marked the 1980s in the United States. Part of this trend was increased enforcement of stricter legal penalties for driving under the influence (DUI) of alcohol (or other drugs). As one example, the large majority of the United States has administrative

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

license revocation for anyone who fails or refuses to take a BAC test (NIAAA, 2000; U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration [USNHTSA], 1997).

Attention regarding the dangers of alcohol use has focused on motor vehicles, particularly cars, because cars are the vehicles that most people drive, though the danger applies to driving, say, motorcycles and trucks too. There is ample cause for concern. Motor vehicle crashes are the most common nonnatural cause of death in the United States and according to the CDC in 2018 were the leading cause of death overall of people aged 15 to 24. Alcohol is implicated as a causal factor in traffic fatalities, but statistics are not conclusive because we have only correlational studies. The argument for alcohol as a cause is strengthened, however, by data on the relationship between relative risk of involvement in a traffic accident (fatal or not) and BAC. The relative risk of a fatal single-vehicle crash at different BACs is especially striking. At a BAC of 0.02% to 0.03%, such a crash is 1.4 times as likely as it is at a BAC of 0%. At a BAC of 0.05% to 0.09%, it is 11.1 times as likely. At a BAC of 0.10% to 0.14%, it is 48 times as likely, and at BACs of 0.15% and higher, it is 380 times as likely (Zador, 1991).

The case for alcohol as a causal factor in traffic fatalities becomes even more solid with experimental data on how alcohol affects performance on tasks that require psychomotor skills and an integration of sensory information. An example, called a "divided-attention" task, is combining the pursuit rotor and complex reaction time tasks into one experimental task. Participants are required to keep the stylus on target (pursuit rotor) while they are simultaneously responding to the two light stimuli on a panel (complex reaction time). Driving a car requires the same motor control and sensory integration abilities that are necessary to perform such a divided-attention task. Alcohol impairs performance on divided-attention tasks at BACs of 0.05% or lower. In fact, this is one basis of the recommendation of several groups, such as the American College of Emergency Physicians and the American Medical Association, that the legal level of intoxication be uniform across the United States at a BAC of 0.05%. In many states, arrest is still possible at BACs below their respective legal levels of intoxication for "driving while impaired."

> *"In Amarillo, Texas, I participate in a community coalition dedicated to fighting drunken driving and underage drinking. Our motto: All it takes is everyone. Only communitywide efforts around the country can defeat the problem of alcohol abuse."*
>
> Bernadette Teichmann (*USA Today*, August 30, 1993, p. 11A)

Alcohol therefore seems to be a primary factor that raises the risk of involvement in fatal and nonfatal motor vehicle accidents. Other factors interact with alcohol to affect risk, and two of the more important ones are gender and age. Young drivers are disproportionately more likely to be involved in alcohol-related accidents. For example, one study showed that, in 1980, 18-year-olds constituted 2.2% of the driver population and drove 2% of the total number of miles traveled, yet they were involved in 5.5% of the alcohol-related accidents. By comparison, 45- to 54-year-olds drove nine times as many miles as the 18-year-olds but had only one and one-third as many alcohol-related accidents. Young people seem to be at higher risk for motor vehicle accidents across the range of BACs. For example, in the study of fatal single-vehicle crashes by Zador (1991) cited earlier, individuals aged 16 to 20 were more at risk for such accidents at every BAC from 0.02% to 0.15% and higher. Zador's study also showed that the risk for single-vehicle fatal crashes was highest for 16- to 20-year-olds when the BAC was in the lowest range of 0.00% to 0.01%.

Taken together, these data suggest that the higher risk found consistently for young people is due in part to their relative inexperience in both drinking and driving (USDHHS, 1987a). This means driving is not as well learned a skill in younger people and is more likely to be disrupted at a given BAC. Furthermore, younger people tend to show less protracted tolerance in general at a given BAC because of their shorter period of use of alcoholic beverages. These reasons, along with the designation of 21 years as the minimum age for legal purchase and possession of beverages containing alcohol, underlie the enactment of "zero-tolerance" laws in most

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Braden Gunem/Alamy Stock Photo

Motor vehicle accidents are the single most common nonnatural causes of death in the United States.

of the United States. These laws make it illegal for people under age 21 to drive with measurable amounts of alcohol in their bodies (USNHTSA, 1997). Many states have called "measurable" BACs higher than 0.02%.

Young men (18 to 34 years old) seem to be the group most likely to be intoxicated, driving, and in traffic accidents (Chou et al., 2006). This coincides with the consistent finding in surveys that young men are the ones most likely to drink heavily (say, five or more drinks) on an occasion. Data published in 1983 show that 38% of the young male drivers who were involved in fatal accidents had a BAC of 0.10% or higher, compared to 30% for all other age and gender groups (USDHHS, 1987a). Young men are more likely to be legally intoxicated and the drivers in fatal accidents because of their tendency to drink heavily on occasion and because they drive a relatively higher percentage of miles on weekend nights, when all drivers are most likely to be intoxicated. In this regard, one study suggests that young men take more risks when in a group and intoxicated, which could affect their decision to drink and drive in the first place and to be more reckless if they do drive (Sayette et al., 2004). It is notable that an analysis of U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) data from between 1995 and 2007 shows that men aged 19 to 24 continued to have a higher rate of alcohol-involved fatal automobile accidents than women, but that their rate of such accidents declined during that time. The rate for women aged 19 to 24, however, increased, an unwelcome trend. Most of the increase was found to be attributable to individuals whose BACs were 0.15% or higher (Tsai et al., 2010).

In summary, driving while intoxicated (DWI) is a serious problem in the United States. It is also important to say that action taken against DWI in recent years may be paying off. According to the NHTSA, from 1982 to 2015 alcohol-related traffic fatalities fell 51%, and the greatest reduction (80%) was among individuals under 21 years old. This finding is consistent with U.S. national survey data, between 1991 and 1992 and 2001 and 2002, which show a 22% reduction in the rate of having

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

driven after drinking "too much" in the past year (Chou et al., 2006). These changes may be due to several factors, but research has shown that strict DWI laws and the driver's perception that arrest and conviction are likely if they are broken are critical to reducing the DWI problem.

Psychological Effects

"Always do sober what you said you'd do drunk. That will teach you to keep your mouth shut."
Ernest Hemingway

Alcohol combines with other factors to change emotion and mood. Different people report a range of psychological effects at a given BAC, and the same individual may report different effects at a given BAC on different occasions. The influences of nondrug factors, particularly situational and cognitive variables (e.g., expectancies and attitudes), are perhaps most powerful in this domain. The person's mood state before starting to drink also is an important factor.

At lower BACs, individuals report feeling elated and friendly when the BAC is rising, but when it is falling, common feelings are anger and fatigue. Other reports when the BAC is rising have been expansiveness, joviality, relaxation, and self-confidence. The importance of nondrug factors is accented in the finding that during the ascending phase of these same BACs, other subjects have reported feeling hostile, depressed, and withdrawn. When BACs go above 0.10%, individuals commonly become more labile and may change abruptly from friendly to hostile. Often the level of tolerance for frustration is lowered.

Alcohol's effects on thinking and perception are less influenced by nondrug factors and are influenced more by BAC. Alcohol significantly impairs short-term memory at BACs higher than 0.05%. At a BAC of 0.05%, the ability to estimate time is impaired. Individuals seem to overestimate the passage of time at a BAC of 0.05%; they might estimate a time passage of 8 minutes to be 12 minutes. The ability to estimate distance (depth perception) is also disrupted at lower BACs, as are attention and concentration. At higher BACs, these cognitive effects are intensified and are compounded by more disorganized thinking.

Alcohol and Behavior

Among alcohol's effects, those involving interpersonal behavior are of great social interest. As the word implies, *interpersonal* means "between people." The interpersonal behaviors of sex and aggression in combination with alcohol have garnered the greatest interest and concern.

Alcohol and Aggression

Aggression is behavior intended to harm a person who would prefer not to receive such treatment (Bushman & Cooper, 1990). Violence is a type of aggression that is a major social concern. As you saw in Contemporary Issue Box 1.5 in Chapter 1, studies suggest that when people commit violent crimes, they tend to be under the influence of alcohol. Violent crimes include murder or attempted murder, manslaughter, rape or sexual assault, robbery, assault, and others such as kidnapping, purse snatching, hit-and-run driving, and child abuse. The same findings hold for Canada and Western Europe (Collins, 1980). The co-occurrence of alcohol use and violent crime is especially prevalent among men 18 to 30 years old, who have a relatively high rate of both heavy drinking and criminal activity. Another problem of national concern is domestic violence (predominantly males abusing their partners), and alcohol has been estimated to be involved in 25% to 50% of spousal abuse incidents (Livingston, 2011).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock.com

The co-occurrence of alcohol use and violence is especially prevalent among men 18 to 30 years old.

National statistics show associations between alcohol and violence toward others and also violence toward oneself. For example, suicide is one of the three leading causes of death (the other two are homicide and accidental death) among men 15 to 34 years old and one of the 10 leading causes of death among all people 34 to 54 years old. Alcohol consumption is the factor most cited as associated with the occurrence of a successful suicide attempt, including those made by college students (Schaffer et al., 2008).

During the late 1980s, national attention was directed at alcohol and behavior at baseball games and other professional sports events and in fraternities. In both cases, aggressive behavior was the focus, and alcohol was singled out as a major culprit. One example is the fans' rowdy reactions during an April 1988 game at Cincinnati's Riverfront Stadium, when an umpire made a call unfavorable to the home-team Reds. Alcohol was viewed by league officials to be at the heart of the "deterioration" of the situation. This and similar events led many Major League Baseball teams to restrict alcohol sales (primarily beer) and even to have alcohol-free sections in the stands, similar to smoke-free areas in public places. Such restrictions continue to be in effect at virtually all ballparks where professional teams play. Alcohol has also been identified as a major problem in the behavior of members of fraternities on college campuses. The misconduct and violence against property and people that some fraternities are known for seem to be highly correlated with the occurrence of popular frat functions such as beer bashes.

The consistency of the co-occurrence of drinking and violent behavior tempts us to conclude that alcohol causes such behavior. Data such as government statistics are only descriptive and correlational, however, and cannot be the bases of valid causal statements about alcohol and aggression. Nevertheless, the adult drinking public believes that alcohol does indeed cause aggression. A consistent finding in many studies of beliefs about the effects of alcohol is that it increases power and

> *"Drinking makes such fools of people, and people are such fools to begin with, that it's compounding a felony."*
>
> Robert Benchley

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

aggression (Goldman et al., 1999). Perhaps these beliefs underlie officials' statements that alcohol causes disorderly conduct at ballparks and fraternities.

Of course, aggressive behavior is a significant social concern, and it is important to find the reasons for the association between drinking and violent behavior. A traditional explanation is the disinhibition theory, which was first proposed in the early 20th century. This theory holds that alcohol releases behavior normally inhibited by society, such as aggression and sex, as a result of its depressant action on the brain. Essentially the theory suggests that whatever anxieties we have about the social consequences of behavior such as aggression vanish as a result of alcohol's pharmacological action. Thus, people who have been drinking should be more aggressive than people who have not.

Controlled laboratory experiments involving human subjects do not support the disinhibition theory, however. Some epidemiological studies have shown a correlation between alcohol and aggression, but this was not a simple matter of alcohol's pharmacological action, as disinhibition theory predicts (McPherson & Martin, 2010). Rather, alcohol combines with situational factors, such as social pressure and threat of retaliation (Adesso, 1985; Graham et al., 1998), as well as personal factors, such as how angry a person is characteristically (Parrot & Giancola, 2004). Furthermore, expectancies about alcohol and aggression also seem to contribute to aggression, sometimes considerably more than actually drinking alcohol does (Bartholow & Heinz, 2006).

It seems, therefore, that alcohol does not simply cause aggression, despite the beliefs of some public officials and the general population. Instead, aggression is a complex social behavior affected by the characteristics of the aggressor and situational factors, only one of which is alcohol consumption (Exum, 2006). Theories about aggression must accommodate this complexity to be useful.

Alcohol and Sex

For over 500 years, Shakespeare probably has been the author most frequently cited on the acute effects of alcohol on human sexual response. The specific reference is from *Macbeth*, act 2, scene 2: "It [alcohol] provokes and unprovokes; it provokes the desire, but it takes away from the performance." It turns out that the results of experimental studies are in part consistent with Shakespeare's observations.

Alcohol and sexual response in men and women has been a favorite subject of writers for thousands of years. Much of the writing has been like Shakespeare's comments, based on informal personal observations. With regard to male sexual response, the folklore leads to dose-dependent conclusions. Alcohol has been thought to be an aphrodisiac in men at lower doses but an impediment to sexual performance at higher doses. An example is a quote of the Greek poet Euenas, from the 5th century B.C.:

> The best measure of wine is neither much nor very little; For 'tis the cause of either grief or madness.
>
> Then too, 'tis most suited for the bridal chamber and love.
>
> And if it breathe too fiercely, it puts love to flight.
>
> And plunges men in a sleep, neighbor to death. (in Abel, 1985)

"Here's to alcohol: the cause of, and answer to, all of life's problems."
Matt Groening

Efforts have been made to systematically study human sexual response to a dose of alcohol, but it has only been possible to do well-controlled research on this topic in the past several decades. The significant breakthroughs have been the invention of

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the penile strain gauge to measure penile erectile response and the photoplethysmograph to measure vaginal blood volume and pressure. These advances paved the way for experimental study of human sexual response and alcohol.

Experimental studies of men have consistently shown that, at BACs of 0.05% to 0.10%, alcohol pharmacologically retards sexual arousal. When the BAC climbs to more than 0.10%, erection and ejaculatory competence are inhibited or eliminated. These results have been found repeatedly in samples of college students who were not engaged in heavy consumption and in individuals with alcohol use disorder. Alcohol does not stimulate men's libido, especially at moderate or higher BACs.

At lower BACs, alcohol effects are not so dominant. It appears that cognitive factors, such as expectancies about alcohol effects, may work to increase men's libido. Indeed, studies of alcohol expectancies suggest that the drinking public generally believes alcohol enhances sexual experience (Brown et al., 1987). Consistent with this finding, balanced placebo design studies (see Contemporary Issue Box 9.4) suggest that men's sexual arousal is increased when they believe they are drinking a dose of alcohol that brings them to a BAC less than 0.05%. Alcohol itself, however, has no effect on measured arousal at such BACs, which agrees with many other studies of the pharmacology of alcohol (Peugh & Belenko, 2001). Another characteristic of men who drink that seems to affect their sexual arousal at BACs lower than 0.05% is personality. One study showed increased sexual response was especially evident in subjects who thought they were drinking alcohol and who scored high on a measure of guilt about sex (Lang et al., 1980).

A reasonable conclusion about the acute effects of alcohol on male sexual response is that, similar to aggression, the disinhibition theory falls far short of explaining the information that is available. Rather, social and psychological factors seem to be important determinants of sexual response in men at low BACs and often work to increase libido. However, the pharmacology of alcohol begins to dominate at BACs greater than 0.05%, which causes a decrease in arousal and sexual competence.

The folklore about the acute effects of alcohol on sexual behavior in women is that it promotes promiscuity, a belief that even adolescents in the middle school and high school range in the United States report (Young et al., 2007). For example, Chaucer wrote in "The Wife of Bath's Tale" in his *Canterbury Tales*: "After wine, I think mostly of venue for just as it's true that cold engenders hail a liquor mouth must have a liquorous tail. Women have no defense against wine as lechers know from experience."

Previous nonexperimental studies, as well as studies of alcohol expectancies we cited earlier, suggest that alcohol increases sexual arousal in women and that women believe alcohol has that effect. The recent experimental evidence is that, as in men, women's physiological sexual response decreases with increasing alcohol dose. Unlike men, however, women continue to perceive increased sexual arousal and sexual pleasure even as the physiological indices of their response and arousal are declining. It seems that Shakespeare's observation most clearly applies to women, even though he was referring to men. It also is important not to conclude that the disinhibition theory accounts for the data on alcohol effects in women. Despite their perceived increased sexual arousal when they drink, whether women act on such perception depends on characteristics of the drinking setting and what the individual has learned is acceptable sexual behavior in that setting. Therefore, again, a theory about the acute effects of alcohol on women's sexual behavior should incorporate social and psychological factors as well as the pharmacology of alcohol (Sobczak, 2009).

To conclude this section, Table 9.4 provides a summary of the acute effects of alcohol at different BACs. The table succinctly shows how pervasive alcohol's effects are.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 9.4

The Balanced Placebo Design

To control for placebo effects (see Chapter 5), experimental studies of drug effects in humans and other animals usually include a placebo control group. In studies of alcohol effects in humans, control subjects are told they are drinking an alcoholic beverage when, in fact, they are not given one. Instead, they are given a nonalcoholic drink that resembles the alcoholic beverage in every way except alcohol content. Therefore, in the traditional placebo group design, all people in two groups of subjects are told they will drink an alcoholic beverage, but only one group's beverage actually contains alcohol. Studies that use this design have varied in their success of making the alcoholic and placebo beverages indistinguishable on cues such as taste and smell and therefore in the validity of their findings. How do you think failure to make the alcohol and placebo beverages indistinguishable would affect the interpretation of study results?

A significant advance in studying the effects of drugs on human behavior was made several decades ago in what has been named the balanced placebo design (BPD), which is illustrated in Table 9.3. The design has helped to advance knowledge about alcohol's effects on aggression and sex, among other human behaviors. In the BPD, two groups are added to the traditional two-group placebo group design. The participants in each of the two additional groups are told they will not receive a drug; then those in one group get the drug and those in the other group do not. Therefore, comparisons may be made with a group of participants who believe they are not getting and do not get a drug (the sober control group). It is also possible to make comparisons with a group of participants who believe they are not receiving a drug but really do get one. The design offers the advantage of separating a pure drug effect, an "expectancy" (about drug actions) effect, and their combination. Under the best conditions of control, the traditional placebo design provides a comparison of drug plus expectancy and expectancy conditions, which permits conclusions about drug action. In investigations of the effects of lower doses of alcohol, the BPD seems much better suited than the traditional placebo design for studying the complexity of drugs and human behavior.

TABLE 9.3 Balanced Placebo Design

		Beverage Received	
		Alcohol	**Placebo**
Beverage	**Alcohol**	Group 1	Group 2
Told	**Placebo**	Group 3	Group 4

(An outline of the balanced placebo design in studying alcohol effects. The traditional design includes groups 1 and 2 only.)

It is essential to remember, however, that the effects listed for given BACs are what might be observed in "typical" individuals who drink. Alcohol's effects are notorious for their variability among people and in the same person on different drinking occasions. And, as our discussion of alcohol and aggression and sex most clearly illustrated, situational and psychological factors also influence what behaviors occur in people when they drink as well as the effects they perceive alcohol is having on them.

9.8 Effects of Chronic Heavy Drinking

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-6 Examine the effects that chronic heavy drinking has on the body and brain functioning

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 9.4 Typical Acute Effects of Alcohol Associated with Different Ascending Blood Alcohol Concentrations (BACs)

BAC (%)	Effects
0.01–0.02	Slight changes in feeling; sense of warmth and well-being
0.03–0.04	Feelings of relaxation, slight exhilaration, happiness; skin may flush; mild impairment in motor skills
0.05–0.06	Effects become more noticeable; more exaggerated changes in emotion, impaired judgment, and lowered inhibitions; coordination may be altered
0.08–0.09	Reaction time is increased, muscle coordination is impaired; sensory feelings of numbness in cheeks, lips, and extremities; further impairment in judgment; legal level of intoxication is 0.08% in all 50 of the United States, Puerto Rico, and the District of Columbia.
0.10	Deterioration in motor coordination and reaction time; possible staggering and slow speech
0.15	Major impairment in balance and movement; large increase in reaction time; large impairment in judgment and perception
0.20	Difficulty staying awake; substantial reduction of motor and sensory capabilities; slurred speech, double vision, difficulty standing or walking without assistance
0.30	Confusion and stupor; difficulty comprehending what is going on; possible loss of consciousness (passing out)
0.40	Typically unconsciousness; sweatiness and clamminess of the skin; alcohol has become an anesthetic
0.45–0.50	Circulatory and respiratory functions may become totally depressed; LD 50 in humans

Chronic heavy use of alcohol may have numerous physiological and psychological effects. All the effects involve increased dysfunction, and some may be fatal. Some chronic alcohol effects are caused directly by alcohol's toxicity to the body, such as damage to the liver. Other effects are indirectly related to long-term heavy drinking. For example, Wernicke's disease, which involves impaired cognitive functioning, is caused by nutritional deficiencies that tend to occur in people who are dependent on alcohol (Brands et al., 1998).

Chronic heavy drinking is difficult to define precisely. Suffice it to say, many of alcohol's long-term effects take years to become evident, and those who drink heavily vary greatly in their susceptibility to alcohol-related impairments.

A standard for what is heavy, or at least "unsafe," drinking has been proposed. However, long-term drinking of a given quantity of alcohol affects different individuals in different ways, in both number and severity of symptoms. Furthermore, the standard could vary according to what risk (for example, liver disease, pancreatitis, or brain damage) we are concerned about (Bradley et al., 1993). Nevertheless, it is useful to have a guide to what is a "safe" level of alcohol consumption for average individuals who drink. One estimate, provided by the U.S. National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism, is no more than four drinks in one day or no more than 14 drinks a week for men and no more than three drinks in one day or seven drinks a week for women.

Table 9.5 lists the major effects of chronic heavy drinking on body systems. According to a World Health Organization report on the global health effects of alcohol, worldwide its effects are devastating. In 2012, the consumption of alcohol

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 9.5

Accuracy of Self-Reports of Alcohol Consumption

Our review of information on alcohol's acute effects highlights that a lot of research has been done on how much alcohol humans drink, why they drink it, and what effects it has on them. As you might have noticed, many of these studies used the survey method to obtain information about humans' use of alcohol. Surveys on alcohol almost always ask research participants to tell the researcher how much alcohol was consumed over some period of time (a day, a week, a month, a year), occurring at different points back from the survey date (yesterday, last week, last month, last year). The first question that most people ask about such "retrospective self-reports" of drinking is, "How accurate are they?"

This is an excellent question, because a lot of factors may affect the accuracy of self-reports of drinking, the most fundamental of which is the limitations of human memory. However, other factors could affect accuracy, even if memory were perfect. One of these is knowledge about how much an individual is drinking when out in a bar or restaurant. It seems that the way bartenders vary in how they define a "shot" of whiskey or a "glass" of wine has more to do with their personal habits, inclinations, or mood than it does with any measurement system. Bartenders, even experienced ones, however, also seem to be vulnerable to a well-known perceptual illusion. Along these lines, a study by Wansink and van Ittersum (2005) showed that, when instructed to pour a "shot" (defined as 1.5 oz) of whiskey into a glass, bartenders poured more liquid into a tall, narrow glass than they did into a short, wide glass. Nonbartender college students were subject to the same illusion as the experienced bartenders were.

Many other factors besides perceptual illusions could also affect the accuracy of retrospective self-reports. On the other hand, research has identified the conditions that increase the likelihood of accurate self-report data. The ultimate reason why survey studies of alcohol use have advanced knowledge is that scientists have looked to converging evidence within studies (Do the different sources of data that I've collected in this study lead me to the same, reasonable conclusions?) and replication across studies (Do different researchers doing the same study under different conditions get similar results?) as the main criteria for confidence in their results.

caused a total of 5.9% of global deaths. There are considerable differences between the sexes in these rates. For example, in 2012 the rate was 7.6% for men and 4.0% for women. The rates also vary widely by location, ranging across both sexes from 0.5%

TABLE 9.5 Effects of Chronic, Heavy Drinking on Body Systems

System	Effects
Central Nervous	Specific and general impairment in cognitive functioning
Liver	Minor reversible (with abstinence) damage to irreversible, sometimes fatal damage
Cardiovascular	Increased mortality from coronary heart disease and increased risk for cardiovascular diseases in general; alcohol-induced wasting of the heart muscle (alcohol cardiomyopathy)
Endocrine	Effects on the secretion of hormones in different hormone hierarchies, or "axes"—for example, the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis and the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis
Immune	Increased susceptibility to several infectious diseases
Gastrointestinal	Cause of gastritis and increased risk of pancreatitis
Multiple	Increased risk of contracting the following cancers: oral cavity, tongue, pharynx, larynx, esophagus, stomach, liver, lung, pancreas, colon, rectum

Source: The information in this table is based on USDHHS (1987a) and Brands et al. (1998).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

in the eastern Mediterranean countries, to 6.5% in the countries of Europe. The rate for the Americas was 5.6%, second to Europe (Rehm et al., 2009). It is important to note that the estimates that Rehm et al. provided consider or "partial out" the possible beneficial effects that moderate alcohol consumption has on disease and disability, which we discuss later in this chapter.

These global mortality data reflect what Table 9.5 shows, that alcohol can be highly toxic to the human body and can cause extensive damage in a variety of ways. Two prominent body systems that alcohol harms are the brain and the liver. We will look at alcohol's chronic effects on these systems in more detail. Alcohol's chronic effects also extend to human reproductive functioning, which has to do with alcohol's altering effect on the functioning of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal endocrine axis and with fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS).

"All right, brain. You don't like me and I don't like you, but let's just do this and I can get back to killing you with beer."

Homer Simpson

Alcohol and Brain Functioning

The acute effects of alcohol on memory and other cognitive functioning are manifest at moderate BACs and are reversible. However, alcohol—if drunk long enough and heavily enough—affects these same functions in the long term in some people. Such chronic effects vary in severity, evidenced from mildly impaired performance on **neuropsychological tests**, to severe, irreversible brain structural and functional damage shown as severe memory impairment in people who have Korsakoff's syndrome (Charness, 1993; Parsons, 1986).

neuropsychological tests
Formal ways of measuring behavioral functions that may be impaired by brain lesions.

The average individual with more severe alcohol use disorder who has been studied, when abstinent from alcohol or other psychoactive drugs, performs more poorly than nonalcoholic control groups on tests of abstracting, problem solving, memory, learning, and perceptual-motor speed. Reviews of research have shown consistently that such impairments are associated with dependence on alcohol. Other characteristics also influence their vulnerability to alcohol's effects on brain function. A major one is the individual's drinking history. Although the evidence is mixed, in general, the longer a person drinks and the greater the quantity consumed, the greater the impairment in cognitive functioning (NIAAA, 2001).

Fortunately, with long-term abstinence from alcohol, most alcohol-related neuropsychological impairment can be virtually reversed, with only mild deficits left compared with control subjects. This conclusion is based on studies that followed participants' test performance during periods of abstinence lasting from 1 month to 5 years (Fein et al., 2006; Sullivan et al., 2000).The reversibility of cognitive deficits may be due to several factors, including increased cerebral blood flow, better nutrition, the reorganization of brain-cell networks, and some recovery of brain atrophy (NIAAA, 2001).

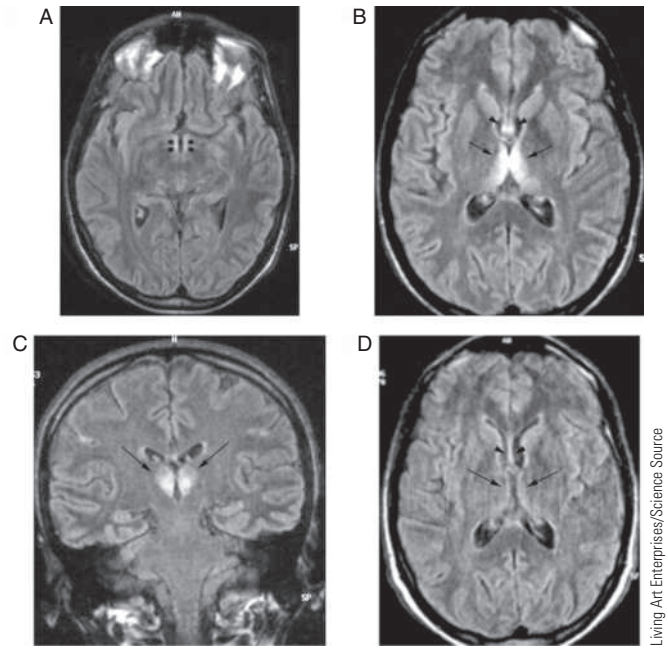
Wernicke–Korsakoff Syndrome

This severe CNS disorder results from the combination of extreme nutritional deficiency, specifically vitamin B_1 or thiamine, and chronic heavy drinking. Basically, the syndrome comprises two diseases.

Wernicke's disease is characterized by confusion, loss of memory, staggering gait, and an inability to focus the eye (USDHHS, 1987a, 1990). In the absence of permanent brain damage, Wernicke's disease is reversible by giving the patient vitamin B_1.

Korsakoff's syndrome may have a nutritional component but is primarily due to alcohol. It is associated with damage to brain structure and most affects memory. The impairments in short-term memory and learning are serious. Because of these

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



Living Art Enterprises/Science Source

Functional MRI study of diencephalic amnesia in Wernicke–Korsakoff syndrome

dysfunctions, there is often considerable confusion and **confabulation**. There is also a lesser degree of impairment in memory for events in longer-term memory. The following case, based on one discussed in the *DSM-III Casebook* (Spitzer et al., 1981, pp. 56–57), is a good illustration of some of the major symptoms of Korsakoff's syndrome:

> The patient was a 40-year-old man who in the interview claimed to be an accountant. He said that he had some business troubles and had come to the hospital to get help. His story was coherent, but there was a lack of consistency and details to it. As regards his hospitalization, the patient said that he had been in for only a few days but a few minutes later he said several weeks. He could not recall his doctor's name.
>
> Formal testing showed that the patient could not recall the names of three objects that he had seen five minutes earlier, or repeat a story that was told to him. However, the patient could perform simple calculations, define words and concepts, and find similarities and differences among objects and concepts. The patient's medical record showed that he had a long history of alcohol dependence and had been living in a nursing home for the last three years until he was admitted to the hospital a week ago. He was admitted after several incidents of his wandering from the nursing home and being returned there by police. (Spitzer et al., 1981, pp. 104–105. From the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*. American Psychiatric Association.)

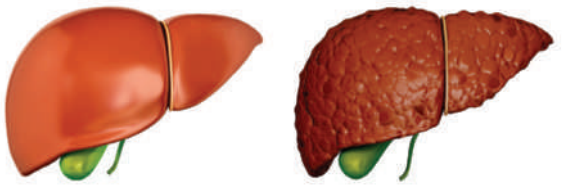
confabulation
A fabrication of events, when asked questions concerning them, because of an inability to recall.

Alcohol and the Liver

As the major metabolic site of alcohol, the liver is highly vulnerable to alcohol's toxic effects. The damage that alcohol can cause to the liver occurs in three ways: fatty liver, alcohol hepatitis, and cirrhosis. Fatty liver is characterized by fat accumulating in the liver and is the earliest, most benign effect of alcohol on the liver. This condition is reversible with abstinence from alcohol, and there is no evidence that it is a precursor of cirrhosis. Alcohol hepatitis is more serious and involves the inflammation and death of liver cells. Often, jaundice occurs because of the accumulation of bile. This condition is reversible with abstinence and medical treatment but can cause death if it is severe enough and not treated. Liver hepatitis can be caused by means other than heavy drinking. Evidence of such drinking must be obtained to diagnose alcohol hepatitis.

The most serious and life-threatening of alcohol's liver assaults is cirrhosis. Alcohol dependence is the leading cause of cirrhosis, which accounted for 2.4% of all deaths worldwide in 2017. Drinking must be prodigious and long term for someone to develop alcohol-related cirrhosis. For example, one survey showed that people with severe alcohol use disorder who developed cirrhosis drank an average of 13 drinks a day for about 20 years! It did not matter what beverage form the alcohol was consumed in. It should be noted that a minority of people with alcohol dependence

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.



Armed Forces Institute of Pathology

A cirrhotic liver (right) is compared with a healthy human liver (left).

develop cirrhosis—between 10% and 20%. Individuals with alcohol use disorder who are diagnosed with cirrhosis often have other liver diseases at the same time, such as alcohol hepatitis (NIAAA, 2000).

For those who do get cirrhosis, the condition is not reversible, and only half are still alive 5 years after receiving the initial diagnosis. Cirrhosis is a chronic inflammatory disease of the liver involving cell death and the formation of scar tissue. Alcohol hepatitis may or may not precede it. Death results from cirrhosis because the liver fails to metabolize various toxins, such as ammonia, and these toxins accumulate in the body.

Alcohol and Reproductive Functioning

Both men and women suffer impaired reproductive functioning as a result of chronic heavy drinking. In men, such drinking affects the male sex hormones, reflexive responses of the nervous system relating to sexual performance, and sperm production. First, men often experience gynecomastia (formation of breasts in men), which is a result of alcohol altering the balance of the female sex hormone (estrogen) and the male sex hormone (testosterone). The shift in balance is due to damage to the liver from alcohol and resorption of estrogens into the blood. A second result of changing the balance in the sex hormones is a loss in sexual desire. Along with a loss in desire is a drop in sexual performance, manifested as ejaculatory incompetence and impotence. These latter effects are due to alcohol's inhibition of reflexive responses in the nervous system. Finally, chronic heavy drinking may result in hypogonadism and eventual sterility. There is also some possibility that sperm production is so impaired that defective offspring could be conceived (Abel, 1985; Peugh & Belenko, 2001).

As with most alcohol effects, we know less about the chronic effects of alcohol on reproductive functioning in women. The scientific information available suggests that alcohol dependence in women is associated with dysfunction of the ovaries, disruption of the luteal phase of fertilization, and amenorrhea (cessation of the menstrual period) (Nolen-Hoeksema, 2004; Sobczak, 2009).

Fetal Alcohol Syndrome

In this section, we discuss a chronic alcohol effect that does not focus on a specific body system or on the individual. Rather, it focuses on the fetus and what alcohol consumption may do if the mother drinks during pregnancy. A characteristic set of symptoms that appear in some newborns of mothers who drink during pregnancy has become known as the fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS). FAS falls into the class of alcohol teratology. **Teratology** is defined in biology as the study of anomalies or deformities.

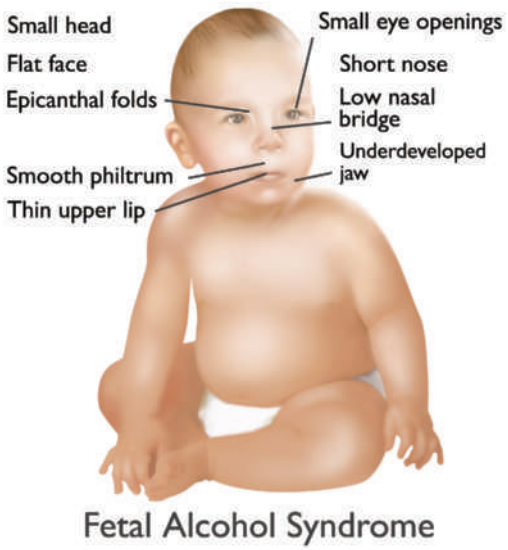
teratology
In biology, the study of monsters, or distortions in growth.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

FAS has been written about since the time of Aristotle but began to receive scientists' attention much more recently. Since 1973, the literature on it has grown geometrically. FAS involves gross physical deformities that were first identified in eight very young children who had severely alcohol-dependent mothers who drank during pregnancy. These deformities were described in a 1973 clinical report, and include the following: small eyes and small eye openings, drooping eyelids, underdeveloped mid face, skin folds across the inner corners of the eyes (which were abnormal in this sample of 11 White children), underdevelopment of the depression above the upper lip, and a small head circumference. Furthermore, abnormal creases in the palm were reported, along with abnormalities in the joints. Some of the children had cardiac defects, benign tumors consisting of dilated blood vessels, and minor ear abnormalities (Jones et al., 1973). A 10-year follow-up of these children showed low-normal to severely impaired intellectual functioning, physical deformities similar to those originally reported, and the development of additional physical problems.

Although estimates vary, FAS occurs in 0.2 to 1.5 of every 1,000 live births (Ismail et al., 2010). As you think about these statistics, remember that there is great individual variability in the effects of prenatal exposure to alcohol on the fetus, and the rate of occurrence of FAS is much lower than the rate of women who use alcohol while they are pregnant. Furthermore, risk for giving birth to a child with FAS depends on multiple factors besides the mother's pattern of alcohol consumption during pregnancy, including mother's age at delivery of the child, gravidity (number of times that the mother has been pregnant) and parity (number of times the mother has given birth to a fetus at least 24 weeks in development), mother's educational attainment, and mother's use of tobacco during pregnancy (May & Gossage, 2011).

The picture is further complicated by FAS prevalence estimates that tend to vary according to several social and environmental factors such as mother's socioeconomic status. However, such variability likely also reflects the complexity in conducting human studies of this serious public health problem. For one reason, it is extremely difficult to get accurate self-reports from pregnant women about their drinking; this seems to be particularly true for women whose drinking is heavier, or who have a drinking problem (Alvik et al., 2005). (Why do you think this is the case?) Because FAS can be detected only after a child is born, postpartum environmental and other factors cloud an interpretation of what part prenatal alcohol exposure played in the resulting FAS. It is sometimes even difficult to determine whether alcohol was the only prenatal substance that may have resulted in FAS. For example, other drug use during pregnancy is possible, and this would be most likely to occur among those who engage in high alcohol consumption (Erenhart, 1991). When other drugs are taken during pregnancy, they may harm the fetus in ways similar to alcohol.



Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo

This is an illustration of a baby with FAS. Mental and physical defects such as a small head and flat face occur.

Everybody wants to know the "safe" level of drinking during pregnancy. As our brief discussion of FAS suggests, no simple answer is available. Actually, it is best to think of FAS as the most severe result of a continuum of effects of prenatal exposure to alcohol (Rasmussen, 2005). Subtle behavioral or cognitive effects may be

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

observed on the other end of the continuum. Each abnormal outcome may have its own yardstick of amount of alcohol exposure and timing of exposure (Jacobson et al., 1993; USDHHS, 1990).

Although a straightforward answer about safe drinking during pregnancy is not available, there is one rule to go by. FAS or milder degrees of abnormality in newborns have not been observed without prenatal exposure to alcohol or other drugs. Therefore, the safest course remains the most conservative: If you are pregnant, do not use alcohol or other drugs (Barr & Streissguth, 2001; Ismail et al., 2010).

This section on the chronic effects of heavy alcohol consumption has highlighted the idea of alcohol as a double-edged sword. On the one side, as we showed you in Chapter 1, the economic costs of alcohol use disorder to the United States and the rest of the world are tremendous and come from many sources. The toll of chronic, heavy alcohol use on the body results in major health care expenses. Furthermore, if you consider some of the social consequences that contribute to the costs, they may become even more real to you. We already discussed how alcohol is implicated in traffic accidents, crime, and violence. Its use also is associated with accidental falls, deaths by drowning, fires and burns, traumatic injuries like broken bones, and family violence (spouse abuse or child abuse, for example) (Gutjahr et al., 2001).

The other edge of the sword is the economic gain afforded by alcohol, not to mention the high regard many people have for it as a social and psychological booster. The alcoholic beverage industry creates and maintains a lot of jobs and contributes a lot of revenue to governments. In 2015, retail sales of alcohol in the United States totaled about $220 billion.

So, perhaps you can see why there seems to be never-ending discussion about how to regulate alcohol, with opinions ranging from reinstating Prohibition to allowing freer use. What arguments on each side can you think of? What policy would you end up with if given the responsibility to write one?

Moderate Drinking and Health

> *"Alcohol, taken in sufficient quantities, may produce all the effects of drunkenness."*
>
> Oscar Wilde

As you can see by now, long-term heavy use of alcohol could seriously damage the body. However, what about long-term abstinence from alcohol and long-term lighter drinking? A number of studies have suggested that those who drink moderately turn out to be the healthiest, followed by those who abstain, and last are those who engage in high alcohol consumption (Sayed & French, 2016). "Health" most often has been measured by risk of cardiovascular disease and mortality.

The surprise here, of course, is that drinking can be healthful, although the medical community has considered this possibility since the 19th century (Doll, 1998). The first question is: What is "moderate"? Generally, moderation with alcohol has been defined in a range of one to three drinks a day, with a tendency for smaller amounts for women than for men (Poli & Visioli, 2015). The evidence suggests that moderate alcohol consumption protects against heart disease because it increases the production of high-density lipoproteins (HDLs), which take damaging cholesterol away from artery walls (Poli & Visioli, 2015). Alcohol also appears to affect other biological indicators of risk of cardiovascular disease (Rimm, 2000).

Most experts have concluded that moderate drinking is associated with lower risk of coronary disease (Lee et al., 2009; Marmot, 2001). Until recently, many people doubted this conclusion, however, because some studies failed to consider factors that correlate with drinking patterns and that also are associated with risk of cardiovascular disease. One of these factors is income. Those who abstain from alcohol

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

FOOD DRINK AND DIET/MARK SYKES/Alamy Stock Photo

The discovery that moderate use of red wine is associated with a lower incidence of heart disease stimulated research on the effects of moderate alcohol use on health.

have tended to show greater vulnerability to cardiovascular disease than those who drink moderately have, as well as be classified at a lower socioeconomic level than those who drink moderately. However, income is negatively related to health. There also has been a question of whether many "light/moderate daily drinkers" exist. Most who drink lightly do not drink every day, and most people who drink every day do not drink lightly. Moreover, a review by Fillmore et al. (2006) suggests that those who abstain from alcohol in these studies may have included many people who recently stopped drinking because they had become ill. On the other hand, recent better-designed correlational studies still have shown an association between moderate alcohol use and cardiovascular health. Furthermore, experiments have demonstrated a reduction in biological indicators of risk of cardiovascular disease following administration of a moderate dose of alcohol (one to three drinks).

In conclusion, it seems that the connection between moderate drinking and cardiac health question still would benefit from additional research. For example, a large longitudinal study from Denmark suggests that the moderate drinking–heart health relationship is evident in men who have 7 to 35 drinks a week, and it is evident in women who have as little as one drink a week (Tolstrup et al., 2006). This is the first study that suggests that whatever the relationship between alcohol use and cardiac health, its mechanism may be different for men and women and may be triggered by different amounts of alcohol between the sexes, with as little as a drink a week for women. However, the weight of the evidence is that moderate alcohol use in general is associated with cardiovascular health.

The French Paradox

The moderate drinking–health hypothesis relates to a research finding that has been called the French paradox, or the co-occurrence of a diet high in saturated fats and a low incidence of coronary heart disease (Frunkel et al., 1993). This biological paradox was first identified among people who live in Touraine, France. Again, we are talking about moderate drinking, and the focus is on red wine; the French consume wine in relatively high amounts. The equivalent of one to two 4-ounce glasses of wine a day is associated with improved health effects (Renaud & deLorgerd, 1992). In fact, some researchers have argued that the apparent relationship between moderate alcohol use and lowered risk of heart disease is specific to wine (Gronbaek et al., 1995), although experimental studies suggest that the effect is due to alcohol and is not specific to wine. A lot of attention is being given to resveratrol, an antioxidant found in red wine, as a main reason for the health benefits of its moderate consumption (Baur & Sinclair, 2006; Brown et al., 2009). Research has linked resveratrol to a lowered risk of inflammation and blood clotting, factors which lower one's risk of heart disease. However, some research studies have found no benefits of resveratrol on preventing heart disease.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In summary, research on the interesting question of whether and why moderate alcohol use is associated with cardiovascular health is needed and will likely continue. It is important to note here that our discussion of "health" has primarily concerned cardiovascular function and does not include other indicators, such as liver function, cancers, or cognitive functioning. In addition, this question needs much more information on what is "moderate consumption" for different subgroups, such as older individuals or individuals with coexisting illness (Karlmangla et al., 2009; Saitz, 2005).

REVIEW ACTIVITY

1. Compare and contrast the acute and chronic effects of alcohol use.

9.9 The Development of Alcohol Use Disorder

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

9-7 Differentiate between the traditional and biopsychosocial approaches to the development of alcohol use disorder

The National Survey on Drug Use and Health data we covered in this chapter and in Chapter 1 showed that well over 60% of Americans drink alcohol and that a minority of them drink heavily. Some of those who drink heavily develop problems with alcohol to different degrees. When they do, the effects on themselves, their families, and their society are devastating. Accordingly, this question has preoccupied many for many years: How does alcohol use disorder develop, or what is its etiology? In this last section, we briefly present approaches taken to address this question and describe the current thinking.

> *"Moderation is the secret of survival."*
>
> Manly Hall

Traditional Approaches to Etiology

Until recently, researchers and clinicians alike usually sought a single-factor explanation of what causes alcohol use disorder. Theories frequently outpaced data available to evaluate them and can be classified as biological, psychological, or sociological.

Biological approaches have waxed and waned in popularity over the years. Such theories hold that a physiological or structural anomaly causes the individual to develop alcohol use disorder. Earlier single-factor biological approaches, which have not received experimental support, have included hypotheses that the source of the structural deficit is metabolic, glandular, due to body chemistry, or due to an allergic condition. Many U.S. treatment providers consider alcohol use disorder a physical disease (see Contemporary Issue Box 9.6). Although the cause of the disease process is not specified, disease model adherents use the process of a physical disease, such as a fever, as an analogy to understand alcohol use disorder. As a result, the disease model is classified as a biological model.

Biological explanations of alcohol use disorder suggest there is a genetic predisposition at least to some "types" of more severe alcohol use disorder (Kendler

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 9.6

Is Alcohol Use Disorder a Disease?

Periodically, controversy flares over whether alcohol use disorder is a disease. *Disease* may be defined broadly, but in the strict medical sense, it refers to a clearly identified physical process that is pathological. A critical feature of the definition is that once a disease is contracted, the afflicted individual has no control, or is not responsible, for the disease running its course. Typically, when alcohol use disorder is called a disease, the traditional medical model of disease is the referent.

Treatment providers and other citizens fought long and hard in the early 20th century to get alcohol dependence acknowledged as a disease in order to take "treatment" of alcohol use disorder out of the legal system and into the medical profession. The campaign has been more than successful. In 1957, the American Medical Association formally recognized alcohol use disorder as a disease, and still does. Other professional organizations that followed include the American Hospital Association, American Academy of Pediatrics, American Dental Association, American College Health Association, American Chiropractic Association, the U.S. Congress, and the U.S. Surgeon General. Public opinion polls consistently have shown that a large majority of Americans say they believe that alcohol use disorder is a disease. Moreover, advances in neuroscience research have bolstered this widespread support with more direct studies of drug action on the brain than were once possible.

The controversy is over whether the symptoms we call alcohol use disorder are not more accurately thought of as a result of behavior that is learned and voluntary rather than as a manifestation of some disease process. The question is based on research and clinical findings over the last several decades that have sparked much discussion in scientific journals (see Chapter 15).

The question is not just an academic one. It has important implications for how people with alcohol use disorder are given treatment, for one thing. In this respect, the dominant position among U.S. treatment professionals, as well as Alcoholics Anonymous, is that alcohol use disorder is a disease. It also has legal ramifications. For example, in a 1988 Supreme Court case, two U.S. military veterans argued unsuccessfully that they should have an extension of the time to take advantage of their benefits because they were "afflicted" with alcoholism within the usual benefit period. The gist of their argument was that, because alcoholism is a disease, they should not be punished for having something they have no control over. The Department of Veterans Affairs instead asserted alcoholism is the result of "willful misconduct."

With this example, what might be some ramifications of adherence to a strict position that alcohol use disorder is the result of a biological disease process?

et al., 1992; Schuckit, 1987). The evidence comes primarily from family, twin, and adoption studies. In summary, family studies show that sons and daughters of parents with more severe alcohol use disorder are four times more likely to develop the disorder themselves, relative to people whose parents are not dependent on alcohol. In addition, studies of twins show a greater likelihood of both members of identical twin pairs having alcohol use disorder ("concordance") than of concordance in fraternal twins. This finding is significant, because identical twins are genetic matches, whereas members of fraternal twin pairs have only 50% of their genes in common. Another finding pertains to adopted children of parents who have severe alcohol use disorder. These studies show that the development of alcohol use disorder in the offspring is far more influenced by having a parent with alcohol use disorder than by the adoptive home environment. This conclusion is especially strong for males. Based on this body of research, the argument for a biological predisposition to alcohol use disorder has gained considerable strength. In this regard, genetic factors may account for up to half of the variance in the etiology of severe alcohol use disorder (Schuckit et al., 2004). Moreover, the mapping of the human genome has made the identification of specific gene candidates far more accessible than it

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

was formerly (Johnson et al., 2006). However, the identification of replicable sets of genes that underlie the heritability of alcohol use disorder so far has been elusive (Olfson & Bierut, 2012).

Psychological explanations of etiology center on identifying specific personality traits that may be linked to alcohol use disorder. No one trait has been shown to predispose individuals to alcohol use disorder. All Five-Factor traits (i.e., openness to experience, conscientiousness, extraversion, agreeableness, neuroticism) have been shown to correspond, with varying degrees of consistency, to alcohol use disorder.

Sociological models of etiology were proposed partly in response to the failure to discover a unique alcoholic personality. The models are supported by findings of cross-cultural differences in drinking patterns (the benchmark citation is MacAndrew & Edgerton, 1969) as well as demographic factors that you have seen are correlated with drinking patterns and problems. Studies that take them into account have shown consistently that sociological factors help to explain the development of alcohol use disorder.

"Alcoholism is a disease that is no more a sign of weakness than is asthma."
NIAAA, 2001

"Biopsychosocial" Approaches to Etiology

Although each type of single-factor explanation has merit, each alone ultimately fails to explain how alcohol use disorder develops. For example, a minority of children of parents with alcohol use disorder develop the disorder themselves. What happens to the rest? A set of psychological characteristics may be associated with developing alcohol use disorder, but those same characteristics could be correlated with other outcomes. Demographic factors are correlated with drinking problems, but the factors themselves are often associated with biological and psychological variables, too. It seems that single-factor researchers design their studies so that one type of factor—say, psychological—is emphasized and other types are underplayed or not represented at all. Indeed, the fact that there are seeds of support for each type of approach, but not strong support for any one alone, suggests that multiple types of factors influence the development of alcohol use disorder. At least among scientists, this is the most current thinking: Alcohol use disorder, as well as drug use disorder, is caused and maintained by a combination of biological, psychological, and sociological factors (see, for example, Maisto et al., 2006). As we discuss further in Chapter 15 on treatment, the three types of factors together in "shorthand" are called *biopsychosocial*.

What this means in practice is that scientists and practitioners alike cannot hope to understand alcohol use disorder unless they consider together all the types of influencing variables. A good example is some of the research done with sons of alcoholics who do not have alcohol use disorder themselves. One finding is from electrophysiological studies of the brain that show preadolescent sons of fathers with alcohol use disorder may have a deficit that is expressed as a lesser ability to focus on stimuli in the environment (Porjesz & Begleiter, 1995). This difference from boys whose parents do not have alcohol use disorder is presumably inherited and cannot be a consequence of the person's own drinking. In theory, such a deficit could increase the risk of developing alcohol dependence because of, say, a decreased ability to discriminate degree of intoxication when drinking moderately. Additionally, discrimination deficits could affect performance on various cognitive tasks and how individuals relate to other

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 9.7

Alcohol and the Japaneses

One of many countries that lend support to sociological/cultural theories of alcohol use is Japan. Dr. Dwight Heath, then a cultural anthropologist at Brown University, noted in a 1984 article that alcohol consumption increased steadily after World War II in Japan, as in many countries. Patterns of drinking also showed some major changes. For example, men who worked together often drank together nightly at loud parties. This contrasted sharply with the more traditional social and religious drinking contexts of the Japanese. The changes triggered predictions of increasing alcohol use disorder, but the expectations never were realized.

A major reason drinking did not have large-scale negative consequences was cultural. In Japan and throughout Asia, moderate alcohol use is valued, and excessive drinking is not. Alcohol still is linked to social and religious rituals, customs that tend to discourage an individual's abuse of alcohol. According to Heath, alcohol use disorder is relatively rare in Asia.

Another reason the Japanese did not develop an epidemic of alcohol problems may be biological. The phenomenon of importance here is the alcohol flush reaction—a physical reaction that occurs with drinking alcohol; it consists of cutaneous flushing and sometimes other symptoms, including palpitations, tachycardia, perspiration, and headache. The reaction occurs primarily in people of Asian descent and rarely in people of other races. It appears to be due to a deficiency in aldehyde isozyme, which leads to a build-up of acetaldehyde when drinking, as alcohol metabolism is disrupted. The acetaldehyde causes the flushing response. The important point is that this response is assumed to be unpleasant to most people and thus may set a biological limit on the amount of alcohol that is drunk on an occasion (Huang, 2014).

Not all Asians show the flushing response, but those who do show it to different degrees (Higuchi et al., 1992). However, this biological reaction, coupled with cultural customs for alcohol use in the Japanese, provides an excellent example of how different types of factors work together to influence alcohol use.

people (Schuckit, 1987). Whether risk actually is translated into alcohol use disorder, however, depends in large part on how the environment (say, the family and school systems) "reacts" to any deficit in discrimination. Another example is a magnetic resonance imaging study of adolescents that Hill et al. (2009) reported. In this study, adolescents who were "high risk" for developing alcohol use disorder, because of the multiple "layer" presence of that disorder in their family histories, showed lower volume of brain orbital frontal cortex (OFC) matter than did adolescents who were "low risk" because they did not have a family history of alcohol use disorders. The OFC is an area of the brain that is associated with emotional processing and impulsivity. Furthermore, the differences in right-brain OFC matter seemed to be due to genetic variation between the high- and low-risk groups.

Saying that multiple factors combine to cause alcohol use disorder is, after all, an extension of a theme we have followed since Chapter 1: Human experience and behavior under the influence of drugs can be understood only by considering multiple types of factors in combination. The research suggests that the same thinking should be applied to understanding alcohol use disorder.

REVIEW

1. Summarize the traditional approaches to explaining alcohol use disorder.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Summary

- Alcohol is virtually always drunk in the form of three major classes of alcoholic beverages: beer, wine, and hard liquor (also called distilled spirits).
- Alcoholic beverages are produced through fermentation and distillation.
- The alcohol content of a beverage may be expressed by volume or by weight.
- The proof of an alcoholic beverage refers to its percentage of alcohol content.
- People have used alcohol for thousands of years, but societies always have viewed alcoholic beverages in positive and negative ways.
- In the United States, per capita alcohol consumption increased from the end of Prohibition into the 1940s. There was another increase from 1960 into the 1970s. In 1980, a decline in consumption began that was slightly reversed in 1990, but that continued to the mid-late 1990s. Since then, there has been a slight increase.
- Social and environmental factors, such as urban versus rural residence, gender, age, and racial/ethnic background, are associated with alcohol consumption rates. The same is true for the prevalence of heavy drinking.
- Alcohol is a drug that depresses the central nervous system (CNS). It may exert its effects by dissolving in lipid membranes.
- The GABA receptors are one locus that likely is a specific neural site of alcohol's action in the body. Identifying a specific receptor mechanism is difficult, however, because alcohol's effects on the body are so diffuse.
- Alcohol is a food primarily absorbed from the small intestine. The rate of alcohol absorption can vary widely according to an individual's physiological and situational factors.
- Following its absorption, alcohol is distributed to all of the body's tissues. Blood gets an especially high concentration of alcohol.
- Alcohol primarily affects the CNS, particularly the brain. The LD 50 for alcohol is a blood alcohol concentration (BAC) of 0.45% to 0.50%.
- BAC is approximated by a simple equation that includes alcohol dose and time. Other factors that influence BAC are percentage of body fat, gender, and rate of alcohol metabolization.
- Breath analysis is a practical, precise way of measuring the BAC.
- The body metabolizes more than 90% of the alcohol it absorbs, primarily in the liver.
- The liver metabolizes alcohol at a constant rate of about 0.35 ounce of alcohol an hour, and little can be done to quicken the pace.
- Alcohol use leads to dispositional tolerance and, more important, to both acute and protracted functional tolerance.
- Chronic heavy use of alcohol can lead to physical dependence on it. The alcohol withdrawal syndrome is a serious medical problem that can result in death if not treated properly.
- Alcohol has few direct medical uses but is an ingredient in several legitimate medical products.
- Alcohol's acute action is evident in a wide variety of physiological, sensorimotor, and behavioral effects. In general, as the BAC increases, acute effects increase in number and intensity. However, how humans experience degree of intoxication and behave under different doses of alcohol are modified by psychological and situational factors as well as alcohol dose and tolerance to this drug.
- Sensorimotor skills, which alcohol impairs, are crucial in driving motor vehicles.
- Alcohol seems to be a major contributor to fatal and nonfatal automobile accidents. Gender and age combine with alcohol to influence risk of involvement in an automobile accident.
- Stemming the problem with driving while intoxicated (DWI) seems to be a matter of sustained attention and action by law enforcement and citizens' action groups. Drivers' perceptions that arrest and conviction are likely consequences of DWI also are important.
- Alcohol's effects on sex and aggression are major topics of social interest and concern. To understand alcohol's association with aggressive behavior, it is necessary to take into account characteristics of the aggressor and situational factors, only one of which is alcohol.
- Alcohol's effects on sexual behavior are similarly complex. It is necessary to know the physiological basis of alcohol's effect on sexual function, as well as situational and psychological factors, to explain its effects on sexual behavior.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- A history of chronic heavy drinking is associated with damage to most of the body's organs and systems. Two of the most prominent ones are the liver and the brain.
- A chronic effect of alcohol use is impaired memory and other cognitive functions. Some of these effects are virtually reversible with abstinence from alcohol. However, when the brain has structural damage, as in Korsakoff's syndrome, the effects are permanent.
- As the major metabolic site of alcohol, the liver is vulnerable to the chronic effect of heavy alcohol use.
- Three liver disorders that often are attributable to drinking are fatty liver, alcohol hepatitis, and cirrhosis. The first two disorders are reversible with abstinence; cirrhosis, is not.
- Chronic heavy drinking is associated with impaired sexual functioning in both men and women.
- A mother's drinking during pregnancy may result in fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS) in a newborn child. FAS consists of gross physical deformities that are identifiable at birth. FAS is associated with continued physical problems as well as below-average intellectual functioning later in childhood.
- The idea that moderate alcohol consumption is associated with lowered risk of cardiovascular disease and mortality has good research support, but this conclusion remains somewhat controversial.
- The development of alcohol use disorder is an unsolved problem. It does seem that "single-cause" theories are inadequate to explain its etiology. Instead, it is necessary to incorporate biological, psychological, and sociological factors.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Humans have consumed alcohol since between 6000 B.C. and 5000 B.C.
   T *Humans indeed have consumed alcohol since between 5,000 and 6,000 years B.C.E. (before the common era)*
2. In the United States in 1830, adults' average alcohol consumption was about five drinks a day.
   T *Americans in the early 19th century were prodigious consumers of alcohol.*
3. The highest rates of heavy drinking, and thus the greatest vulnerability to drinking problems, are in men between the ages of 40 and 45.
   F *The highest rates are in younger men, ages 18 to 25.*
4. A pattern of drinking that brings an individual's blood level alcohol concentration to 0.10 g/dl or above is called binge drinking.
   F *A pattern of drinking that brings an individual's blood level alcohol concentration to 0.08 g/dl or above is called binge drinking. This typically occurs after the consumption of at least five drinks (for men) or four drinks (for women) in a period of less than 2 hours.*
5. If not treated properly, alcohol withdrawal syndrome can be fatal.
   T *Because of the availability of drugs that show cross-dependence with alcohol, medical management of alcohol withdrawal is generally straightforward. Nevertheless, it is a serious medical condition; if not treated properly or at all, alcohol withdrawal can be fatal.*
6. Alcohol is a drug that has no legitimate medical value.
   F *Although alcohol is hardly the elixir people once thought it was, it does have legitimate therapeutic uses, such as in medicinal compounds taken orally or applied externally.*
7. If you drink a lot and black out, it means you have lost consciousness.
   F *Blackouts are the loss of memory for events that occur while under the influence of a drug (in this case, alcohol). An individual who experiences a blackout is fully conscious when nonrecalled events happen.*
8. Alcohol causes violent behavior.
   F *Alcohol is correlated with the occurrence of violent behavior, but cognitive, social, and environmental factors must also be used to explain the alcohol–violence association.*
9. Alcohol improves sexual performance.
   F *Pharmacologically, alcohol impairs sexual performance, particularly when BACs reach 0.05% and higher. However, people may perceive that the use of alcohol is associated with greater sexual arousal and better sexual performance.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

10. The cognitive deficits that seem to occur in some people as a result of years of heavy drinking are reversible.
    T *At least when there is not severe structural damage to the brain, as in Korsakoff's syndrome, many of the cognitive deficits that may occur are reversible with prolonged abstinence from alcohol.*
11. The majority of individuals with severe alcohol use disorder eventually develop cirrhosis of the liver.
    F *Some, but only a minority of about 10% to 20% of chronic heavy drinkers, certainly do develop cirrhosis.*
12. Resveratrol is an antioxidant found in red wine that may lower the risk of heart disease.
    T *The antioxidant resveratrol, found in red wine, may be linked to a lower risk of inflammation and blood clotting, which can lower one's risk of heart disease. However, some research studies have found no benefits of resveratrol on preventing heart disease.*

Key Terms

blackout
confabulation
distillation
intoxication
long-term memory
monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors
neuropsychological tests
proof
pylorospasm
REM sleep
short-term memory
standard drink
teratology

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Many colleges strive to have an "alcohol-free" environment. Do you think this is an effective means of reducing alcohol use, or do you think it actually leads to more consumption of alcohol among students?
2. Why do you think young adults engage in binge drinking? What positive expectations might contribute to an individual's decision to drink heavily?
3. What would be the advantages and disadvantages of creating a definition of "legal intoxication" that considers an individual's protracted functional tolerance to alcohol?
4. Would requiring alcohol warning labels on alcoholic beverage containers be effective in moderating alcohol consumption? Why or why not?
5. In the section on FAS, we discussed that the typical advice given to pregnant women is that the only safe level of alcohol consumption is no consumption at all. However, although the evidence is clear that a mother's heavy consumption is dangerous to the fetus, the effects, if any, of light alcohol consumption on the fetus are far more ambiguous. In view of the current state of knowledge, do you think it is ethical to give blanket, prescriptive-like advice to women to not drink alcohol if they are pregnant? In considering your answer, consult the articles by Gavaghan (2009), Kelly et al. (2009), and Murray et al. (2016).

Suggested Readings

Heath, D. B. (2000). *Drinking occasions: Comparative perspectives on alcohol and culture*. Brunner/Mazel.

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. (2002). *A call to action: Changing the culture of drinking at U.S. colleges*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.
National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism provides educational materials about alcohol use here: http://www.niaaa.nih.gov.

Current websites for the University of Virginia include:

- https://www.studenthealth.virginia.edu/alcohol-tobacco-other-drugs: Includes general content focusing on alcohol and drug education for college students.
- www.peele.net: Stanton Peele website.
- www.madd.org: Mothers Against Drunk Driving website.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

10-1 Discuss the historical patterns of opiate use, including how the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act affects opiate use in the United States

10-2 Evaluate the factors contributing to the current opiate epidemic

10-3 Describe how opiates are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body

10-4 Explain the mechanisms of action for the opiates

10-5 Discuss how opiates are used to treat acute and chronic pain

10-6 Compare and contrast the acute and chronic effects of opiates

10-7 Evaluate the role of physical and environmental factors associated with heroin dependence

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

10 Opiates

History of the Opiates

Early History
Opiate Use in the 19th Century
Opiate Use after the Harrison Act
The Making of an Epidemic
The Opiate Epidemic

Pharmacokinetics

Absorption
Distribution, Metabolism, and Excretion

Mechanisms of Opiate Action

Discovery of Endorphins
What Do Endorphins Do?

Medical Use of Opiate Drugs

Acute Psychological and Physiological Effects of Opiates

Chronic Effects of Opiates

Tolerance
Withdrawal and Dependence
Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Opium comes from the plant *Cannabis sativa*.

___ 2. Morphine is one of the active ingredients in opium.

___ 3. Heroin was first made illegal by the 1965 Drug Abuse Control Amendment.

___ 4. As of December 2020, not more than 100,000 Americans have died from opiate overdose or dependence.

___ 5. Fentanyl and its analog compounds are less potent than pure heroin.

___ 6. The opiates are among the most powerful analgesic drugs.

___ 7. Heroin enhances sexual desire and activity.

___ 8. Heroin dependence is a factor of physical withdrawal symptoms, lifestyle, and social environment.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

___ 9. Heroin withdrawal is much like alcohol withdrawal.

___10. Veterans of the Vietnam War had a high rate of heroin dependence and were unable to kick the habit when they returned to the United States.

___11. The effects of opiates are synergistic with those of alcohol.

___12. The expression "cold turkey" comes from the "goose bumps" seen in those suffering from heroin withdrawal.

As indicated in previous chapters, psychoactive drugs may have potential for improving the human condition, but also have the potential to cause destruction to individuals and society. No group of drugs captures this paradox more dramatically than the class of drugs we call opiates, which includes opium, morphine, heroin, and related compounds. Opiate drugs have been used for centuries to relieve pain and, when introduced to Europe, were hailed by physicians as a godsend. One of the first European physicians to use opium to relieve pain and suffering in his patients, Thomas Sydenham, wrote in 1680: "Among the remedies which it has pleased Almighty God to give man to relieve his sufferings, none is so universal and so efficacious as opium" (Gay & Way, 1972, p. 47). Even today, opiate drugs remain the most potent painkillers available to physicians, yet we now recognize the ability of opiates to produce severe dependence. Heroin is viewed as the prototypical dependence-producing drug, and illegal use and traffic in heroin are major international problems. Thus, many of the general concerns regarding psychoactive drugs emerge in bold relief in a consideration of opiates. An epidemic of dependence on opiate drugs has swept across the United States in recent years, and opiate overdose is a major crisis today. We will first consider the early history of opiate use and then focus on factors that led to the epidemic.

10.1 History of the Opiates

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

10-1 Discuss the historical patterns of opiate use, including how the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act affects opiate use in the United States

10-2 Evaluate the factors contributing to the current opiate epidemic

If you like poppy seed bagels, then you are familiar with the poppy plant, *Papaver somniferum*, that is used to produce opium. The opium poppy is native to the Middle East, in the areas that border the Mediterranean Sea, but it is now cultivated extensively throughout Asia and the Middle East. While poppy seeds contain trace amounts of opium, special procedures must be followed to extract opium from the poppy. The petals fall after the poppy blooms, leaving a round seedpod the size of an egg. If the seedpod is scored lightly with a knife, it secretes a milky white sap. After drying, this sap forms a thick, gummy, brown substance that is called **opium**. A person experiences the effects of opium by consuming the substance orally or by smoking it.

opium
The dried sap produced by the poppy plant.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Mafoto/Dreamstime.com

Opium exudes from incisions of the poppy pod.

analgesia
Pain relief produced without a loss of consciousness.

Early History

The use of crude opium preparations is truly an ancient practice. There is evidence that the Sumerian and Assyrian civilizations cultivated and used opium 6,000 years ago. The ancient Egyptians discovered medical uses for opiates 3,500 years ago, as documented in the "Therapeutic Papyrus of Thebes" (Scott, 1969). The Greek and Roman civilizations also used opium for a variety of medical purposes. The great Greek physician Galen (a.d. 130–201) noted the following uses for opium:

> [Opium] . . . resists poison and venomous bites, cures chronic headache, vertigo, deafness, epilepsy, apoplexy, dimness of sight, loss of voice, asthma, coughs of all kinds, spitting of blood, tightness of breath, colic, the iliac poison, jaundice, hardness of the spleen, stone, urinary complaints, fevers, dropsies, leprosies, the troubles to which women are subject, melancholy and all pestilences. (Scott, 1969, p. 111)

Although this quote reflects the lack of medical knowledge of this time, the analgesic (pain-relieving) aspects of opium were apparent. Certainly, the remarkable **analgesia** (pain relief) of opium must have made it seem helpful for many disease states. Additionally, opiate drugs have special cough-suppressant and antidiarrheal properties, and they are used in modern medicine for these purposes.

The use of opium for medical and recreational purposes became widespread among the peoples of the Middle East. While religious doctrine explicitly prohibited the consumption of alcohol and some other drugs, opiate use was not included. By the 9th century, Arab traders brought xopium to India and China, where the practice of smoking opium developed. Dependence on opium was first recognized as a problem in China as well, with the first edict against opium issued in 1729. However, China already had many individuals dependent upon opium, so the demand remained very high. In spite of the ban on importing opium into China, British ships continued to trade opium grown in India for Chinese tea, and this activity was the basis for the Opium Wars between China and Great Britain in the middle of the 19th century (see Chapter 2).

Opiate Use in the 19th Century

Opium dependence was a serious problem in China by the beginning of the 19th century, but it was not yet seen as such in Europe or the United States. Although opium was readily available in laudanum and various patent medicines, it almost always was in liquid form and taken orally (a practice called opium eating, even though it was really opium drinking) rather than smoked. It was used mostly for medical purposes. Developments during the century brought the dependence-producing properties of opiate drugs to the awareness of Western societies. As noted in Chapter 2, opium preparations were readily available and completely legal in 19th-century Europe and the United States. The pleasurable properties of opium soon led to its widespread use for nonmedical reasons. The pleasures of opium were extolled in a book written by the British poet Thomas De

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Quincey, *Confessions of an English Opium-Eater*, published in 1822. De Quincey's book praised the effects of opium and included several famous quotes, including ". . . thou hast the keys of Paradise, O just, subtle and mighty opium!" (Scott, 1969, p. 52). Westerners were slow to recognize that "eating" opium could prove just as dependence producing as smoking it, but concern about opium became more widespread, as tomes such as De Quincey's fueled its use. By the late 1800s, opium use had spread throughout society, affecting such noted literary and scientific figures as Elizabeth Barrett Browning, Samuel Coleridge, William Halstead, Walter Scott, and Percy Shelley, to name a few.

Pharmacological developments contributed to further use and misuse. In 1803, the German pharmacist F. W. Serturner developed a process that separated morphine from opium. Morphine is the major active chemical in opium and is about 10 times more potent than crude opium. Serturner experimented with morphine and was so impressed with the blissful, dreamlike state it induced that he named the chemical after Morpheus, the Greek god of dreams. Morphine became widely available in the mid-1800s, and with the concomitant development of the hypodermic syringe, injected morphine became a major dependence problem in Europe and the United States. Because of the rapid and potent pain-relieving properties of injectable morphine, it was the treatment of choice during recovery from severe wounds. However, withdrawal from the morphine was often more difficult than recovery from the wound. As noted in Chapter 2, morphine dependence was so common among soldiers on both sides during the Civil War in America that it was often called "soldier's disease."

In 1874, British chemist C. R. Alder Wright published reports of experiments that produced a new chemical compound based on an alteration of morphine: diacetylmorphine. Wright's discovery went unnoticed until 1898, when the great German pharmacologist Heinrich Dreser (who also discovered aspirin; see Chapter 14) rediscovered the compound and noted that it was twice as potent as morphine. Because this new compound was so powerful, it was viewed as a new medical treatment with "heroic" possibilities and was christened **heroin**. Heroin was used immediately as a

heroin
A drug produced by chemically processing morphine. It is more potent than morphine and has become the major opiate drug of harmful use.

Bettmann/Getty Images

Patent medicines of the 19th century frequently contained opiates such as heroin.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

cough suppressant and pain reliever. Not until many years later was it recognized that heroin was even more likely than morphine to produce dependence.

Opiate Use after the Harrison Act

The growing awareness of the danger and pervasiveness of opiate dependence led to a number of legal changes reviewed in detail in Chapter 2. In the United States, these culminated in the 1914 Harrison Narcotics Tax Act. Supporters of the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act viewed it as necessary to uphold a new international agreement to eradicate opium rather than being concerned with dependent properties of opium. The act's purpose was to "provide for the registration of, with collectors of internal revenue, and to impose a special tax upon all persons who produce, import, manufacture, compound, deal in, dispense, sell, distribute, or give away opium or coca leaves, their salts, derivatives, or preparations, and for other purposes." As a result, opium and heroin were smuggled into the country. Prices escalated. The Harrison Narcotics Tax Act marked the beginning of illegal drug use and associated drug-related crimes in the United States. The Harrison Act placed the control of opiate drugs in the hands of physicians; determination of whether an individual had a valid medical need for opiates was exclusively the physician's decision. However, legislative interpretations ruled that a physician must not prescribe opiates unless doses could be shown to be decreasing over time (1915), that opiates must not be prescribed to those dependent on opium (1917), and that heroin must not be prescribed at all (1924) (Kramer, 1972). After the legitimate channels for obtaining drugs were blocked, many who were dependent turned to a growing black market.

The Harrison Act changed drug use in the United States in many fundamental ways. One immediate change was in the demographics of opiate use. Before the Harrison Act, opiate dependence cut across social classes. A wealthy, middle-aged woman was as likely to be dependent on opium as anyone, but she would be using laudanum purchased at her drugstore. When opiates became illegal, they began to be used mainly in large cities where organized crime provided a supply. Heroin quickly emerged as the drug of choice. In addition, those dependent on opium tended more and more to be young, less educated men of lower socioeconomic status (James & Johnson, 1996). However, this stereotype of opiate dependence changed dramatically as the modern epidemic began to develop (see below). Today, use of heroin and other opiate drugs has become widespread across many demographic categories once again.

A huge criminal apparatus for producing and supplying heroin was spawned in the wake of the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act. Historically, most heroin came from poppies grown in Southwest Asia. Even today, Afghanistan produces most of the world's opium (Rosen, 2015—see Contemporary Issue Box 10.1). Most opium grown in Southwest Asia is processed into heroin and transported throughout Asia and to Europe. Mexico has become an important opium producer as well, and most of the heroin entering the United States today comes from poppies grown there (Rosen, 2015).

Street heroin is adulterated or cut many times as it changes hands on the way from the producer to the importer to those who sell to individuals and it may vary enormously in purity. If sophisticated chemical production and refining techniques are used, uncut heroin can be quite pure and appears as a white odorless powder that can be injected, smoked, or taken intranasally (snorted). Crude processing techniques may yield much lower-quality heroin. Heroin is often adulterated (cut) with cheap products such as baking powder, caffeine, quinine, or even talcum powder to increase the dealer's profit. As noted above, much of the heroin imported into the United States comes from Mexico. This is generally in the form of a dark brown or black substance that may be tarlike or hard and is called black tar heroin. Black tar heroin is difficult to dissolve in water and has

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to be melted to be injected. Due to impurities, damage to veins is a particular problem with injecting heroin in this form (Quinones, 2015). Heroin remains a large and important source of illegal revenue, which helps recruit participants in organized crime.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 10.1

Poppies in Afghanistan: The Taliban and the Heroin Trade

While most Americans did not keep up with international news stories concerning Afghanistan until September 11, 2001, those who were concerned with the heroin trade have focused on Afghanistan for decades. Afghanistan has long been a major area of opium production, but the "golden triangle" of Southeast Asia (Burma, Laos, and Thailand) historically dominated opium production. By 1999, though, Afghanistan had become the world leader in opium production despite the ruling Taliban publicly opposing opium use. In 1999, the Taliban representative to the United States, Abdul Hakeem Mujahid, said, "We are against poppy cultivation, narcotics production and drugs, but we cannot fight our own people" (Bartolet & Levine, 2001, p. 85). Even before 9/11, the United States accused the Taliban of profiting from opium and heroin production, and using those profits to fund terrorist activities.

Under pressure from the United Nations, the Taliban announced bans on poppy cultivation in 1997, 1998, and 2000, but there was little evidence of any decreased production. In 2001, though, a ban was put into place that apparently really did reduce poppy production. Cynics have pointed out that the Taliban was simply trying to increase prices by temporarily cutting the supply; whatever the reason, when the Taliban lost control of Afghanistan, the poppy made a comeback. In this war-ravaged and economically depressed nation, growing opium is one of the few ways that farmers can make a living. There is now evidence that the Taliban once again is profiting from opium production. Although both local government and international efforts have focused on the problem, opium production continues to grow, and today Afghanistan supplies nearly 90% of the world's heroin (Chossodovsky, 2017).

Noor Mohammad/AFP/Getty Images

Harvesting opium in Afghanistan.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Corbis

Heroin is often administered via intravenous injection.

Many of those dependent on heroin become involved in criminal activity to support their habit. Initially the cost of using heroin seems low, especially if one uses it infrequently. However, individuals typically begin using the drug more and more frequently. Tolerance develops rapidly to heroin and other opiates, requiring one to take higher doses to achieve the desired effect. Soon the cost of maintaining the growing habit virtually forces one to engage in criminal activities. Here is part of an interview with an individual who was dependent on heroin:

> [Heroin] . . . is the mellowest downer of all. You get none of the side effects of speed and barbs. After you fix, you feel the rush, like an orgasm if it's good dope. Then you float for about four hours; nothing positive, just a normal feeling, nowhere. It's like being half asleep, like watching a movie; nothing gets through to you, you're safe and warm. The big thing is, you don't hurt. You can walk around with rotting teeth and a busted appendix and not feel it. You don't need sex, you don't need food, you don't need people, you don't care. It's like death without permanence, life without pain. For me, the only hard part is keeping in H, paying my connection, man. I know these rich cats who can get good smack and shoot it for years and nothing happens, but me, you know, it's a hustle to stay alive. I run about a $100, $150-a-day habit, so I have to cop twice that much to keep my fence happy. . . . (Luce, 1972, p. 145)

In another testimonial on heroin, the great guitarist, Eric Clapton, describes his fall into dependence this way:

> I assumed I was in some way immune to it and wouldn't get hooked. But addiction doesn't negotiate and it gradually crept up on me like a fog. . . . It was so insidious. It took over my life without my really noticing. (Clapton, 2007)

As you can see, heroin dependence is a hard way to live. Consider the findings of a study that followed 581 individuals over a period of 33 years (Hser et al., 2001). Half of these individuals died during the study period, 50 to 100 times the death rate in the general population of the same age. Of those surviving at the end of the period, 20% were still using heroin (and another 10% refused to be tested) and 14% were in prison. Why is the life span for one dependent upon heroin so short? Those who are dependent are at great risk for disease and death from AIDS, hepatitis, and other diseases spread by sharing contaminated needles. Another important factor is death by overdose. A record number of more than 33,000 deaths were attributed to overdoses of heroin or other opiate drugs in the United States in 2015, a situation that the media describe as an epidemic (see Contemporary Issue Box 10.2). How this epidemic developed is the focus of the next section.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 10.2

The Antidote: Saving Lives with Naloxone

One of the greatest ironies of the epidemic of opiate overdoses recent is that there exists a remarkable drug that can easily prevent death from opiate overdose if administered in time: the opiate antagonist naloxone. Like opiate drugs, naloxone also binds to the opiate receptor site, but once there, naloxone does not produce euphoria, pain relief, or other effects. However, it has a higher affinity for the receptor site than opiate drugs—that is, naloxone outcompetes opiates for access to the receptor. This means that if a person is administered naloxone and then takes an opiate drug, the effects of the opiate will be blocked. More dramatically, if the person has taken a potentially fatal overdose of an opiate drug, naloxone can rapidly reverse all effects of that drug. The individual's respiration will return to normal and they will return to consciousness. If the individual is physically dependent on opiates, naloxone may precipitate withdrawal symptoms!

That naloxone can save lives has been known for many years; the problem is how to administer the antidote in time. Many lives were saved in emergency rooms with naloxone, but as opiate overdose deaths continued to rise, increasingly it has been recommended that all "first responders" (e.g., police, EMTs) be trained to administer naloxone and to keep it available (Goodlow et al., 2014). Some states allow pharmacists to dispense naloxone to individuals who are at high risk or to families and friends of those who are at high risk of overdosing. The pharmacist provides in-person training and information, including recognizing signs of overdose and procedures for administering naloxone. Over 200 such "take-home" naloxone programs exist worldwide and more than 26,000 live-saving reversals have been reported (Madah-Amiri et al., 2017).

Pure Radiance Photo/Shutterstock.com

Many pharmacies sell naloxone injections over-the-counter to prevent drug overdose.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The Making of an Epidemic

Our current epidemic of opiate dependence and overdose began in doctor's offices and medical clinics. There are many medical uses for opiate drugs (see section below), but the most important is to treat pain. Opiate drugs like morphine and codeine continued to be prescribed by physicians after the Harrison Act, but because of awareness of their dependence-producing properties, these drugs were generally used quite sparingly. Their use was generally reserved to situations in which pain was severe and acute (e.g., post-surgery, trauma). Opiates might be administered for a few days to help the patient deal with the worst of the pain but then were discontinued to avoid dependence. Treatment of persistent or chronic pain with opiates was seen as inappropriate because of the risk of dependence. In the 1970s, synthetic opiate drugs such as hydrocodone (Vicodin) and oxycodone (Percodan—see Table 10.1) began to be widely used. By the way, these synthetic painkillers are often called "opioids" to contrast with the naturally occurring opiates, and today the term opioid is widely used to describe both natural and synthetic drugs in this group. In any case, physicians continued to be cautious in prescribing the synthetic drugs as their effects and potential for dependence were understood to be similar to the naturally occurring compounds (Lembke, 2016).

By the late 1990s, things began to change. Between 1999 and 2011, prescriptions for opiate painkillers quadrupled (Lembke, 2016). Several related factors appear to be responsible. First, there was a change in the philosophy of pain treatment such that physicians began to treat pain, even chronic pain, with opiate drugs. This philosophical change was itself driven by the belief that pain patients were unlikely to become dependent on opiates. This change of view was largely based on a single study with few patients (Portenoy & Foley, 1986) that turns out to have been highly misleading. Finally, the promotion of newly developed opiates by the pharmaceutical industry fueled the increase in opiate prescriptions. The poster child for all this was OxyContin.

Purdue Pharma released OxyContin in 1996 with an extensive advertising campaign. The generic drug in OxyContin, oxycodone, was not new. It is a synthetic opiate found in Percodan and other prescription painkillers that had been on the market for decades. The difference is that OxyContin was designed to treat severe and chronic pain, and so it contained a higher dose of oxycodone. Whereas Percodan might contain 5 milligrams of oxycodone and has a relatively short duration of action, OxyContin formulations contained 20 to 160 milligrams of oxycodone in time-release form so that a single pill has a duration of action up to 12 hours. This formulation made OxyContin a highly effective pain reliever, and Purdue's promotional campaigns suggested that misuse liability was low in this form (Lembke, 2016; Quinones, 2015). However, some individuals soon discovered that they could crush the OxyContin tablet to produce a powder they could inject or snort. This practice released all of the oxycodone at once and thus delivered a large dose of opiate immediately. These large doses available in a single tablet are particularly dangerous. OxyContin misuse, dependence, and lethal overdose all began to go up in the early 2000s. In 2001, the DEA announced a national strategy to crack down on OxyContin misuse. Under pressure, Purdue Pharma, which made more than $4 billion on OxyContin sales between 2001 and 2003 (Tolman, 2005), discontinued the high-dose (160 mg) OxyContin pill in 2001, but widespread diversion and misuse of the drug continued.

Ironically, also in 2001, the Joint Commission on the Accreditation of Health Care Organizations made treatment of pain a focus of the medical profession and encouraged prescription of opiates with teaching materials (some developed by

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Purdue Pharma) by suggesting that these drugs were not very dangerous, such as "Some clinicians have inaccurate and exaggerated concerns about addiction, tolerance and risk of death . . ." (Lembke, 2016, p. 66). Physicians increasingly began to feel obligated to prescribe opiate drugs when patients complained of pain, and old guidelines imposing strict limits on dosage and frequency of use were often discarded. So prescriptions for OxyContin and other opiate painkillers (e.g., Vicodin) continued to rise. By the mid-2000s, the death rate due to prescription opiate overdoses was exploding all over the country and it was clear that something had gone wrong. A number of states took the matter to court, and in September 2007, Purdue Pharma was forced to pay $634 million in fines for misrepresenting the misuse liability of OxyContin (Quinones, 2015). Then in 2008, drug overdose deaths, largely due to opiates, passed automobile accidents as the leading cause of death in the United States. It was time to call this an epidemic.

The Opiate Epidemic

Historically, heroin use has been more widespread among males, whereas prescription opiate use is slightly more common among females (Green et al., 2009). Prescription opiate use also appears across all ethnic categories. In a large-scale study, Wu et al. (2008) found that nearly 10% of U.S. adolescents between the ages of 12 and 17 reported illicit use of prescription opiates. There were no differences between African Americans, Hispanics, Asian Americans, and non-Hispanic White populations in frequency of use. Although illicit use of opiates was part of a pattern of use of alcohol and other drugs for some adolescents, fully 25% of the sample reported only using prescription opiate drugs. Risk factors for opiate misuse include a younger age, past or current misuse of other substances, untreated psychiatric disorders, and social or family environments that encourage misuse.

Despite a growing awareness of the problem, the epidemic continues to be deadly. As of December 2020, over 400,000 Americans have died from opiate overdose or dependence. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 230,000 of these deaths were due to prescription opiate use, including OxyContin. The rapid rise in overdose deaths associated with prescription opiates is readily seen in Figure 10.1. One strategy to address the problem was to take steps to make it more difficult to divert and inject prescription opiates. For example, OxyContin was reformulated to prevent injection in 2010 (if crushed, it becomes gluey and cannot be dissolved). This reduced OxyContin injection, but illicit use quickly shifted to another prescription opiate, called Opana (oxymorphone). This drug was designed to fill a similar need to OxyContin, treatment of severe pain using a timed release of relatively high doses of the painkiller. By 2011, though, Opana misuse overtook OxyContin and it too was reformulated. However, misuse continued and in June 2017 the FDA took the unprecedented step of requesting Endo Pharmaceutical remove Opana from the market. Today, there is considerable public concern that opiate drugs are being overprescribed, and the changed medical approach to pain treatment has come under scrutiny and criticism (Lemke, 2016; Madras, 2017). This scrutiny has led to new medical guidelines for the treatment of pain and prescription of opiates, and these will be discussed in the section on medical use of opiates below. In a chronicle of the history of the epidemic, Quinones (2015) noted that at the same time as the crackdown in diversion of prescription opiates, a supply line was bringing cheap Mexican heroin into the United

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

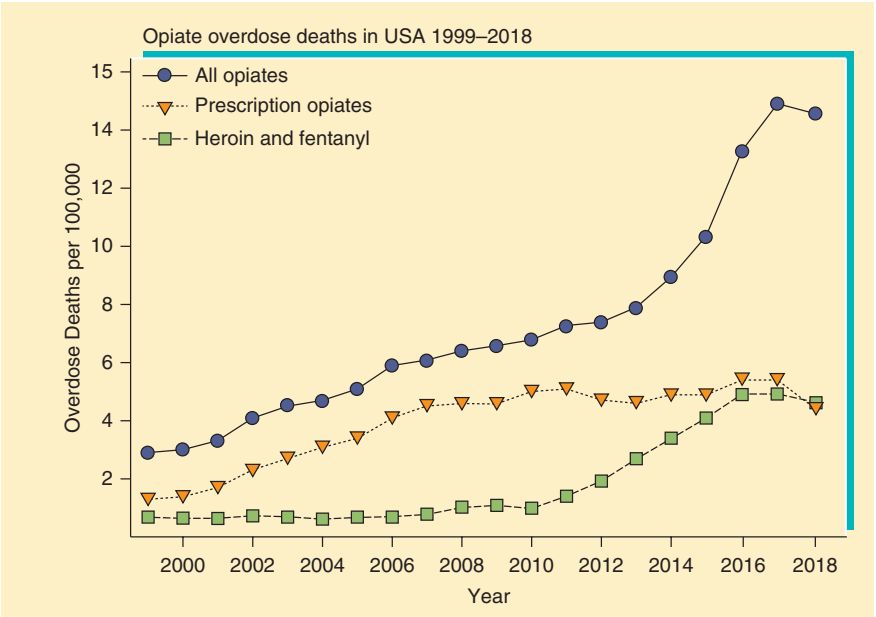


FIGURE 10.1
Overdose deaths in the United States from 1999 to 2018. The green line indicates deaths due to all opioids; other lines present overdose deaths related to heroin, commonly prescribed opioids, and other synthetic opioids Data from the Center on Disease Control and Prevention (CDC Wonder).

States. Many who got hooked on prescription opiate drugs began to switch away from the reformulated compounds to injectable heroin. The increase in heroin use was accompanied by an abrupt increase in heroin overdose deaths starting about 2012 (see Figure 10.1). The heroin overdose death of award-winning actor Philip Seymour Hoffman brought national attention as an example of moving from prescription opiate use to heroin. Figure 10.1 shows overdose deaths caused by heroin along with another emerging opiate problem: the powerful synthetic drug fentanyl and its analogs.

Philip Seymour Hoffman died of a heroin overdose.

Featureflash Photo Agency/Shutterstock.com

Fentanyl is the latest opiate threat. The number of fatal overdoses of fentanyl doubled between 2012 and 2014 and, because heroin is frequently laced with fentanyl, some researchers estimate that as many as 40% of deaths attributed to heroin may actually involve a fentanyl-heroin combination (Frank & Pollack, 2017). Fentanyl is not a new drug. It became available in 1960, at which time it was recognized as the most powerful opiate drug ever developed (Suzuki & El-Haddad, 2017). Fentanyl is about 100 times more potent than morphine, but has a shorter duration of action than most other opiate drugs (see Table 10.1). Its main medical use was in surgical anesthesia, but in more recent years fentanyl formulations have been used in pain treatment. Fentanyl has many chemical analogs, some of which are even stronger. For example, carfentanyl is approximately 100 times more potent than fentanyl (Suzuki & El-Haddad, 2017). So, perhaps it is not surprising that overdose deaths spiked when fentanyl and its analogs began

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to turn up on the street—sometimes sold on their own and sometimes laced with heroin. The death of rock musician Prince from a fentanyl overdose in April 2016 increased awareness of this drug. Just as we have seen with bath salts and synthetic THC, many designer opiate drugs such as U-47700 and fentanyl analogs have become available. Many of these drugs are not scheduled and they are often purchased through the Internet from overseas sources. Although the DEA used its emergency powers to ban U-47700 in 2016, many fentanyl analogs remain legal and provide part of the fuel for the opiate epidemic (Suzuki & Haddad, 2017).

Northfoto/Shutterstock.com

Prince died from a fentanyl overdose.

REVIEW

1. Create a time line indicating the worldwide historical use of opiates.
2. Evaluate the impact of the Harrison Narcotics Tax Act on opiate use in the United States.
3. Discuss factors contributing to the current opioid epidemic.

10.2 Pharmacokinetics

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

10-3 Describe how opiates are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body

Absorption

As noted, opiate drugs may be taken into the body in a variety of ways. Most are readily absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract, although a given dose has a greater effect if it is injected intravenously. Most opiates are also absorbed through the nasal mucosa and lungs. Thus, opium and pure forms of heroin are often smoked, and heroin is frequently taken intranasally. Opiates are also absorbed after intramuscular or subcutaneous administration. Heroin may be injected intravenously ("mainlining") or subcutaneously.

MORA/Everett Collection Inc/Alamy stock photo

Distribution, Metabolism, and Excretion

Once in the bloodstream, opiates are distributed throughout the body and accumulate in the kidneys, lungs, liver, spleen, digestive tract, and muscles, as well as the brain. With some opiates, such as morphine, only a small amount penetrates the blood-brain barrier. In fact, the main difference between morphine and the more potent

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

drug heroin is that heroin is more lipid-soluble and thus more readily penetrates the blood-brain barrier. Once in the brain, heroin is converted to morphine. So heroin is essentially a more effective package for delivering morphine to the brain than is morphine itself.

Most opiate drugs are rapidly metabolized in the liver and excreted by the kidneys. Excretion of opiates is fairly rapid, with 90% excretion within a day after taking the drug. However, traces of morphine may remain in urine for 2 to 4 days after use (Hawks & Chiang, 1986).

REVIEW

1. Create a chart summarizing how opiates are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body.

10.3 Mechanisms of Opiate Action

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

10-4 Explain the mechanisms of action for the opiates

One of the most exciting developments in the neurosciences was the breakthrough in the understanding of the neural mechanisms of action of opiate drugs in the 1970s. Research on this topic led to the discovery of a class of brain chemicals called the endorphins, which function as neurotransmitters. Opioids have been thought to produce their effects by binding to the same receptors as these endogenous endorphins. However, recent research suggests that opioids bind to receptors found inside neurons rather than these surface receptors (Stoeber et al., 2018). If these differences in mechanism of action between therapeutic opioids and endorphins is supported, this may guide the design of novel therapeutics that do not lead to dependence. We will review the events that led to these discoveries and consider how these developments have helped us understand the effects of opiate drugs.

Discovery of Endorphins

naloxone
A short-acting opiate antagonist.

In the 1960s, chemists discovered that making a slight change in the morphine molecule resulted in a chemical that did not produce any of the standard opiate drug effects (pain relief, euphoria) but instead reversed or blocked the effects of morphine and other opiate drugs. This compound is called **naloxone** and may be described as an opiate antagonist. When naloxone is given to a patient who is suffering from an overdose of heroin or morphine, it completely reverses the effects of those drugs. If naloxone is given to someone who then takes heroin, the heroin has no effect. Obviously, naloxone has practical applications in the treatment of opiate overdose (see Contemporary Issue Box 10.2), but it also has theoretical implications. Because naloxone's chemical structure is similar to morphine, researchers thought that the two drugs might be acting at some common brain receptor site and that the naloxone is blocking the morphine's action at that site.

In the early 1970s, two researchers at Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore—Candace Pert and Solomon Snyder—reported they had discovered brain receptors

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Corbis

Acupuncture may relieve pain by releasing endorphins.

that responded selectively to opiate drugs; these were dubbed "opiate receptors" (Pert & Snyder, 1973). The existence of opiate receptors was of great interest as the presence of such receptors must mean that some natural brain chemicals have morphine-like structure and properties. The search was on for the "brain's own opiates," and, in 1975, several such chemicals were discovered (Snyder, 1989). Although several morphine-like substances (e.g., beta-endorphin, enkephalin, and dynorphin) are found in the brain, these complex peptide molecules are referred to collectively as endorphins, a contraction of *endogenous morphine*.

What Do Endorphins Do?

The scientific questions that arose from the discovery of the endorphins have focused on just why the brain is endowed with its own morphine: What do endorphins do? Ongoing research started with the premise that, because opiate drugs apparently mimic endorphin activity by stimulating the opiate or endorphin receptor sites neurons, endorphins might share many properties with opiate drugs, such as pain relief and production of pleasure. One idea is that endorphins are part of a natural pain-relief system. It has been argued that endorphins are released and produce analgesia or pain relief after certain kinds of pain or stress (Goldstein, 2001). This may help explain why, under certain circumstances such as on the battlefield or in athletic events, a person may sustain severe injury but not feel pain, at least for a time. Pain relief produced by acupuncture may be related to endorphin release because naloxone can reverse acupuncture-induced analgesia (Han, 2004). Because the major action of naloxone is to block the endorphin receptors, naloxone-reversible analgesia is strong evidence that the acupuncture needles are triggering the release of endorphins and relieving pain through this system. Other evidence shows that pain relief induced by placebo can activate endorphin receptors in several brain regions (Zubieta & Stohler, 2009). This suggests an endorphinergic basis for at least some cases in which simply "expecting" that you have taken a pain-relieving drug is sufficient to relieve pain. Furthermore, a PET study compared brain activity in individuals who experienced pain relief produced by placebo and by opiate drugs and found similar patterns in the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

brain regions that were activated (Petrovic et al., 2002). So there is good evidence that endorphin systems are involved in some of the brain's natural pain-control mechanisms. Over the years, many other claims have been made about the endorphins, but this literature has conflicting results, and other functions of the endorphins remain unclear.

REVIEW

1. Compare the mechanism of action of endogenous endorphins with opiates.
2. Describe how the drug naloxone is used to treat an opiate overdose.

10.4 Medical Use of Opiate Drugs

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

10-5 Discuss how opiates are used to treat acute and chronic pain

As discussed previously, the major medical use of opiate drugs is for their analgesic or pain-relieving effects. Opiates have been used for this purpose for centuries and remain the most potent and selective pain relievers known to medicine. Unlike the depressant-type anesthetic drugs discussed earlier, opiate analgesics relieve pain without causing unconsciousness. After receiving moderate doses of opiates, patients remain conscious and are able to report painful sensations but do not suffer from the pain.

The other major drugs that possess such analgesic properties are the over-the-counter painkillers: aspirin, acetaminophen, and ibuprofen, but none of these are as effective at relieving pain as the opiates (see Chapter 14). Table 10.1 lists some of the major opiate drugs used as analgesics along with their potency and their duration of action. Recall that *potency* refers to the dose required for a drug to produce a given effect. In Table 10.1, potency is given relative to an effective dose of morphine, which is

TABLE 10.1 Comparison of the Major Opiate Drugs

Generic Name	Brand Name	Potency	Duration of Action (hours)
Morphine		1	4–5
Heroin		2	3–4
Hydrocodone	Vicodin	1	5–7
Hydromorphone	Dilaudid	5	4–5
Codeine		0.1	4–6
Oxycodone	Percodan, OxyContin	1.5	4–5
Methadone	Dolophine	1	12–24
Meperidine	Demerol	0.1	2–4
Fentanyl	Sublimaze	100	1–3

Note: Potency estimates are presented relative to an effective dose of morphine (1).

Source: Based in part on Jaffe and Martin (1990) and Zacny (1995).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

given a value of 1. For example, heroin has a value of 2 in Table 10.1 because heroin is approximately twice as potent as morphine. This means that if 10 milligrams of morphine were required to relieve pain in a given patient, then only 5 milligrams of heroin would be required.

Opiate drugs have other medical uses. Opiates have a constipating effect that can be a problem for those who are dependent but is of value in treating diarrhea. Opiates are still used to treat coughs. The drug most commonly used for this purpose is dextromethorphan, which is a synthetic opiate that has no analgesic or dependent properties but is an effective cough suppressant (Jaffe & Martin, 1990). A final medical use for opiates such as methadone is in the treatment of those dependent on heroin and in maintenance programs designed to help individuals remain free of heroin use (see Chapter 15).

> *". . . heroin was like a warmth that envelops you. It's an automatic warmth that encompasses your whole being as soon as it enters your body."*
>
> Individual dependent on heroin (Goode, 1993)

As noted above, changes in the long-standing medical approach to pain treatment were an important factor leading to the current epidemic of opiate use. These changes included more liberal prescription of opiates for chronic pain conditions, prescription of higher doses, and more potent opiate drugs. With the tremendous increase in opiate use, dependence, and overdose, there have been numerous policy initiatives designed to reduce what is now seen as the overprescribing of opiates. For example, in 2016 the CDC announced new guidelines for treatment of chronic pain with opiate drugs (Dowell et al., 2016). These guidelines address when it is appropriate to initiate such treatment, as well as such issues as which drug and dose should be used, and how long use should be continued. These guidelines were clearly designed to reduce opiate prescription and

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 10.3

Partial Opiate Agonists: New Approaches to Make Prescription Opiates Safer

Opiate drugs remain the most valuable medications available for the relief of severe pain, but we have noted the many problems associated with their use and misuse. New strategies are being developed to help reduce some of these problems that involve the combination of the prescription opiate painkiller with some other drug. One such strategy involves the use of drugs called partial opiate agonists. Full opiate agonists bind to endorphin/opiate receptors and produce strong physiological activity; partial agonists also bind to these same receptors, but produce lower levels of activity. Partial agonists are often still capable of producing analgesia, but generally with lower misuse liability than full agonists (Julien et al., 2011). The main partial agonists in use today are buprenorphine (Suboxone, Subutex), tramadol (Ultram, Ryzolt), and tapentadol (Nucynta). All three of these drugs are approved for the treatment of moderate to severe pain and can be administered orally or via a long-acting, transdermal patch (Guay, 2009; Plosker, 2011; Weiner et al., 2012). Although these compounds do relieve pain, they generally are not as effective in producing analgesia as are full agonists. They are thought to be safer than full agonists, but still do have potential for dependence and misuse, which limits their utility as well (Guay, 2009; Julien et al., 2011).

However, one partial agonist, buprenorphine, is coming to be popular as an alternative to methadone treatment for opiate dependence (see Chapter 15 for more on methadone treatment). Like methadone, buprenorphine can relieve withdrawal symptoms and cravings in those dependent on opioids. However, because it has lower misuse liability than methadone, physicians may prescribe it directly from their office (methadone can only be administered from licensed clinics). A clever formulation of buprenorphine called Suboxone helps reduce the misuse liability. Suboxone is a combination of buprenorphine and the opiate antagonist naloxone. It is designed to be taken sublingually (under the tongue), and the naloxone is inactivated when taken as recommended. But if individuals inject the Suboxone, the naloxone will block the effects of the buprenorphine and one will experience little or no effect. In sum, these partial opiate agonists are providing safer ways of relieving pain and new directions in the treatment of opioid dependence.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

diversion, and it will be interesting to see whether they make an impact. Finally, we should note that in the midst of epidemic opiate use, it is easy to forget that these drugs do relieve a great deal of human suffering. They are of critical importance in the medical treatment of pain and are thus of significant societal value. As Cicero et al. (2005) put it: "Steps need to be taken to reduce prescription drug abuse, but very great care needs to be exercised in the nature of these actions so that legitimate and appropriate use of these drugs in the treatment of pain is not compromised as a result" (p. 662).

REVIEW

1. Evaluate the therapeutic use of opiates, including the advantages and disadvantages associated with their use.
2. Consider alternative ways that chronic pain may be treated.

10.5 Acute Psychological and Physiological Effects of Opiates

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

10-6 Compare and contrast the acute and chronic effects of opiates

Opiate drugs have acute effects in addition to analgesia. Subjective reports of the euphoria produced by opiates mention drowsiness, body warmth, and a heavy feeling of the limbs (Jaffe & Martin, 1990). William S. Burroughs (1953) describes the feeling in his autobiographical novel *Junky*: "Morphine hits the backs of the legs first, then the back of the neck, a spreading wave of relaxation slackening the muscles away from the bones so that you seem to float without outlines, like lying in warm salt water" (p. 7). Both the naturally occurring and synthetic opiates are capable of producing these pleasurable effects in most individuals; however, in laboratory studies, those who misuse opiates appear to more generally report positive effects and liking the effects than those who do not misuse (see Comer & Zacny, 2005, for a review), but the basis for this is unclear. The pleasure experienced under the influence of opiates interferes with aspects of sexual and social behavior: The sex drive is reduced, impotence is often produced in mean, and social interactions are impaired. People who smoke opium or take other opiate drugs often report vivid dreamlike experiences. These are the basis for the expression "pipe dreams." Opiates may also interfere with cognitive function. Animal studies indicate impairments in learning and memory (e.g., Galizio et al., 2003), and research with clients on methadone maintenance suggests that some methadone doses may produce cognitive impairment as well (Mintzer et al., 2005).

The acute physiological effects of opiate drugs resemble those of depressant drugs, with some differences. Like depressants, opiates cause respiratory depression and lowered body temperature (Prus, 2014; see Table 10.2 in this chapter). Nausea and vomiting often occur immediately after taking opiates. Perhaps the most visible sign of opiate drug use is constriction of the pupils. This effect is so pronounced in overdose that "pinpoint pupils" are a diagnostic sign of opiate poisoning. When a high dose of heroin is fatal, the immediate cause is usually respiratory failure. Opiates and depressant drugs potentiate one another (Ho & Allen,

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 10.2 Effects of Administration and Withdrawal of Opiate Drugs

Administration	Withdrawal
Decreased body temperature	Increased body temperature
Decreased blood pressure	Increased blood pressure
Pupil constriction	Pupil dilation
Drying of secretions	Tearing, runny nose
Constipation	Diarrhea
Decreased sex drive, impotence	Spontaneous ejaculation/orgasm
Respiratory depression	Yawning
Analgesia	Pain
Euphoria	Depression/anxiety

1981). This synergy can often be lethal, and many of the most publicized "heroin" overdoses actually involve synergy, such as the death of Janis Joplin in 1970, as reported in *Time*:

> The quart bottle of Southern Comfort (whiskey) that she held aloft onstage was at once a symbol of her load, and her way of lightening it. As she emptied the bottle, she grew happier, more radiant and more freaked out. . . . Last week on a day that superficially at least seemed to be less lonely than most, Janis Joplin died on the lowest and saddest of notes. Returning to her Hollywood motel room after a late-night recording session and some hard drinking with friends at a nearby bar, she apparently filled a hypodermic needle with heroin and shot it into her left arm. The injection killed her. (Brecher, 1972, p. 113)

We now recognize that the alcohol was as responsible for her death as the heroin. Synergy between depressant drugs and prescription opiates is also a dangerous possibility when these drugs are combined. The death of actor Heath Ledger (from a combination of the prescription opiate OxyContin and benzodiazepine depressants) illustrates such synergy.

"I have seen life measured out in eyedroppers of morphine solution. I experienced the agonizing deprivation of junk sickness, and the pleasure of relief when junk-thirsty cells drank from the needle."

William Burroughs (1953)

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast the acute and chronic effects of opiates, including the associated psychological and physiological effects.
2. Describe the symptoms associated with physical dependence and withdrawal from opiates.

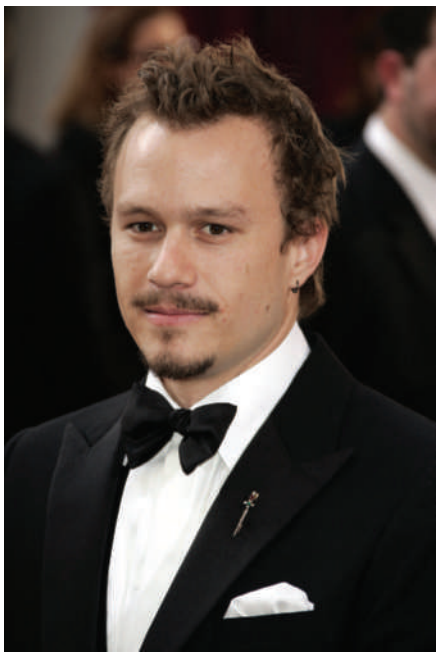
10.6 Chronic Effects of Opiates

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

10-7 Evaluate the role of physical and environmental factors associated with heroin dependence

Many of the problems related to opiate drugs stem from chronic use. The following sections focus on these problems: tolerance, withdrawal, and dependence.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

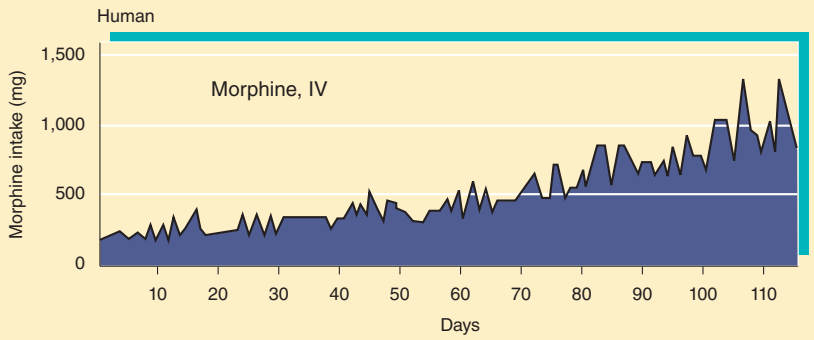


Allstar Picture Library/Alamy stock photo

Heath Ledger died from the synergy produced by a combination of prescription opiates and depressant drugs.

Tolerance

As noted earlier, tolerance develops to opiates, so their effects are generally diminished unless individuals escalate the dose, which often occurs. Figure 10.2 shows the pattern of opiate intake in both a human and a rhesus monkey under conditions of continuous drug availability studied in the laboratory. Each graph shows the drug intake plotted over consecutive days in the experiment. The human data come from an experiment in which a volunteer with a history of extensive drug misuse was studied under laboratory conditions in which the volunteer could regulate how much morphine was administered intravenously daily. Note the gradual increase in dose the participant chooses over time. For the first month, the participant never administered more than 500 milligrams a day. By the fourth month, however, the participant frequently took more than 1,000 milligrams. Also note the bottom panel of Figure 10.2, which reveals a similar pattern of heroin self-administration by monkeys that could obtain intravenous heroin by pressing a lever. Clearly, the emergence of tolerance to the rewarding consequences of opiate drugs is a phenomenon of great generality.



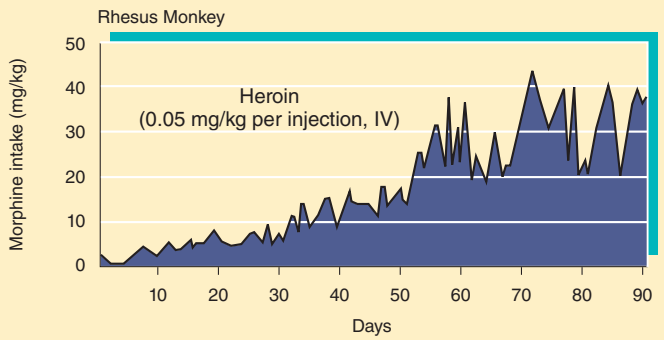


FIGURE 10.2
Patterns of opiate intake in a human and a rhesus monkey under conditions of continuous drug availability

Source: This article was published in J. E. Henningfield, S. E. Lukas, & G. E. Bigelow, Human studies of drugs as reinforcers. In S. R. Goldberg & I. P. Stolerman (Eds.), Behavioral analysis of drug dependence. Copyright Elsevier 1986. Used with permission.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Withdrawal and Dependence

The motives for the continued use of opiates over time may change. Although repeated use is initially motivated by a desire to reexperience the pleasant rush associated with taking the drug, those who are dependent report that continued use of a drug does not make them nearly as high as before. They continue to use the drug to avoid the unpleasant symptoms of abstinence. Thus, the processes that maintain heroin use change from positive to negative reinforcement. The withdrawal symptoms associated with opiate dependence may appear after only 1 to 2 weeks of chronic use of heroin, morphine, or a synthetic opiate drug. The symptoms become more severe with longer-term use of higher doses. Early indications of withdrawal begin 8 to 12 hours after the last dose and include flu-like symptoms such as runny nose, tearing, sweating, irritability, and tremor. As time passes, these symptoms become more severe and others appear, including pupil dilation, anorexia, and piloerection (goose bumps). These symptoms continue to worsen and reach a peak after 48 to 72 hours. At this time, heart rate and blood pressure are elevated, and individuals experience severe flu-like symptoms such as nausea, diarrhea, sneezing, excessive sweating, and pain in the bones. In addition, individuals may show spastic movements of the arms and legs that may appear similar to kicking. This is thought to be the basis for the expression "kicking the habit." Other somewhat bizarre symptoms, which apparently indicate a rebound of one's sexual system, include spontaneous erection and ejaculation in men and orgasm in women. The loss of fluids and failure of one to eat or drink much during withdrawal can leave them physically and emotionally drained and occasionally can be fatal (Jaffe & Martin, 1990).

It is worth noting that a suitable dose of any opiate drug (but not depressant drugs) will reverse the abstinence symptoms and restore a feeling of well-being to one dependent on opiates. Hospital detoxification procedures take advantage of this fact by treating individuals in withdrawal with low doses of a synthetic opiate drug such as methadone. The dose of methadone given is sufficient to reduce the severity of withdrawal symptoms but not enough to produce much of a high. Gradually over a period of several weeks, the dose of methadone is tapered off until individuals finally show no further signs of physical dependence. If physical withdrawal symptoms were the only factors maintaining heroin dependence, detoxification would be a cure. However, after detoxification procedures, an estimated 80%–90% relapse within 2 years after leaving the hospital, and most of these relapses occur during the first 6 months after detoxification (see Chapter 15). Thus, returning to the environment in which they became dependent is most likely to result in relapse, even in the absence of physical withdrawal symptoms.

That heroin (and other drug) dependence depends on more than just physical withdrawal symptoms is illustrated nicely by the heroin dependence epidemic that failed to occur. During the early 1970s, as the Vietnam War was drawing to a close, heroin dependence rates were high among returning American soldiers, with some estimates reaching 21%. These soldiers were required to go through a detoxification before their return to the United States, but given a 90% relapse rate, one would have expected most would return to heroin use at home. Thus, an epidemic of heroin dependence in the United States was expected. Follow-up studies showed that very few soldiers did relapse (less than 15%), however, which illustrates clearly that

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

environmental and psychosocial factors associated with Vietnam were apparently responsible for the development of the dependence. Upon returning to the United States, Vietnam veterans found heroin far less available. That, added to the changes in lifestyle and social environment in the United States, apparently eased the pressures that led to their initial dependence (Robins et al., 1975). The radical change in environment from Vietnam to the United States cannot be duplicated in the typical treatment setting. This is one reason that treating heroin dependence is so difficult, although a number of different types of treatment have been developed. We review them in Chapter 15.

Summary

- Opium is produced from the sap of the poppy plant, and it has been used for medicinal purposes for centuries.
- In the 19th century, the major active agent in opium, morphine, was isolated. More potent than opium, morphine was prized for its analgesic effects but also led to dependence.
- Heroin was developed as an alternative to morphine but soon became misused. Although opiate drugs remained important in medicine, after the passage of the 1914 Harrison Narcotics Tax Act, heroin became a major criminal drug.
- Opiate drug use and opiate overdoses have jumped to epidemic levels over the past 10 years, largely fueled by increases in prescription opiates.
- Opiate drugs act in the brain by binding to endogenous endorphin receptors; endorphins are natural neurotransmitters that are involved in the regulation of pain.
- The major medical use for opiate drugs is in the treatment of severe pain.
- Opiates depress respiration, lower body temperature, and cause capillary constriction. They induce a pleasurable euphoria as well as relieve pain.
- Regular use of opiates results in tolerance and an abstinence syndrome characterized by flu-like symptoms and intense drug craving. Heroin dependence is more complex than simple avoidance of withdrawal symptoms.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Opium comes from the plant *Cannabis sativa*.
   F *Opium comes from the poppy plant Papaver somniferum.*
2. Morphine is one of the active ingredients in opium.
   T *Morphine and codeine are chemicals directly derived from opium.*
3. Heroin was first made illegal by the 1965 Drug Abuse Control Amendment.
   F *All opiates were brought under legal control by the 1914 Harrison Narcotics Tax Act.*
4. As of December 2020, not more than 100,000 Americans have died from opiate overdose or dependence.
   F *Data from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention indicate that over 400,000 Americans have died from opiate overdose or dependence as of December 2020.*
5. Fentanyl and its analog compounds are less potent than pure heroin.
   F *Fentanyl and fentanyl analogs range from ten to hundreds of times more potent than pure heroin. Thus, the risk of overdose is greater.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6. The opiates are among the most powerful analgesic drugs.
   T *The principal medical use for opiates is to relieve pain.*
7. Heroin enhances sexual desire and activity.
   F *Heroin inhibits sexual arousal.*
8. Heroin dependence is a factor of physical withdrawal symptoms, lifestyle, and social environment.
   T *Heroin dependence is complex. Factors of physical withdrawal symptoms, lifestyle, and social environment all interact to influence the development and maintenance of heroin dependence.*
9. Heroin withdrawal is much like alcohol withdrawal.
   F *Opiate withdrawal does not include delirium tremens but rather is characterized by flu and cold symptoms.*
10. Veterans of the Vietnam War had a high rate of heroin dependence and were unable to kick the habit when they returned to the United States.
    F *Most veterans were able to quit using heroin when they returned to their home environment.*
11. The effects of opiates are synergistic with those of alcohol.
    T *Alcohol and other depressant drugs act synergistically with heroin and other opiates, and these combinations are often fatal.*
12. The expression "cold turkey" comes from the "goose bumps" seen in those suffering from heroin withdrawal
    T *The resemblance is thought to be the basis for that expression.*

Key Terms

analgesia
heroin
naloxone
opium

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Overprescribing of opiates and lax oversight of those patients taking them have been blamed for the opioid epidemic. And yet, individuals experiencing severe and chronic pain need to have effective treatments available to them. How might physicians better manage pain in their patients?
2. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration is the regulatory agency that approves and oversees new analgesics. While the pharmaceutical industry bears much of the responsibility for the current opioid epidemic as they aggressively promoted opiates, what mistakes do you think were made by the FDA with regards to approving OxyContin and other opioid medications? What steps should the FDA take to prevent such mistakes in the future?

Suggested Readings

Lembke, A. (2016). *Drug dealer, MD*. Johns Hopkins University Press.

Quinones, S. (2015). *Dreamland: The true tale of America's opiate epidemic*. Bloomsbury Press.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

11-1 Discuss the historical use of cannabis and how the committee reports on marijuana shaped attitudes about its use

11-2 Explain the factors that influence potency of cannabis

11-3 Describe how marijuana is absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body.

11-4 Explain the mechanisms of action for cannabis.

11-5 Evaluate the evidence concerning whether physical or psychological dependence occurs with marijuana use.

11-6 Discuss how marijuana is used in the treatment of specific conditions.

11-7 Evaluate the physiological and psychological effects of acute and long-term use of marijuana.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

11 Marijuana

Historical Overview

Cannabis in the Americas
Committee Reports on Marijuana

Epidemiology

Methods of Use

Active Ingredients

Potency of Cannabis

Pharmacokinetics

Absorption
Distribution, Metabolism, and Excretion

Mechanisms of Action

Research Findings
Tolerance and Dependence

Medical and Psychotherapeutic Uses

History of Therapeutic Use
Current Status of Medical Uses of Marijuana

Physiological Effects

Acute Effects
Longer-Term Effects

Psychological Effects

Behavioral Effects
Cognitive Effects
Emotional Effects
Social and Environmental Effects
Summary

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. The cannabis plant was raised for its psychoactive properties by the settlers at Jamestown and later by George Washington.

___ 2. The Eighteenth Amendment prohibiting the use of alcohol had the paradoxical effect of increasing the prevalence of marijuana use in the United States.

___ 3. Criminal penalties in the United States for the possession and use of marijuana have increased steadily since the 1960s.

___ 4. Women are more likely to be current users of marijuana than men.

___ 5. The marijuana smoked in the United States today is more potent than that smoked 30 years ago.

___ 6. Drug effects following oral ingestion of marijuana last longer than after the drug is smoked.

___ 7. Individuals who frequently use marijuana will show physical dependence.

___ 8. Marijuana has been used effectively to treat the nausea and vomiting often associated with chemotherapy in the treatment of cancer.

___ 9. Marijuana cigarettes contain more tar than tobacco cigarettes.

___10. Marijuana use often causes long-term damage to the cardiovascular system.

___11. One consequence of cannabis intoxication is the impairment of short-term memory.

___12. The most commonly reported emotional effects of cannabis use are suspiciousness and paranoid ideation.

___13. An area of concern regarding marijuana use is that it often causes individuals to be aggressive and violent.

Cannabis sativa, more commonly known as marijuana, is a hemp plant that grows freely throughout the world. For many years hemp was harvested primarily for fiber, which was used to produce rope, clothes, and ship sails. Today, it is most widely known as a potent psychoactive substance. Although cannabis was used for its mind-altering properties for several centuries in other parts of the world, its psychoactive properties were not recognized in the United States until the first third of the 20th century. Then the hemp plant was more often harvested for its psychoactive effects.

The term *marijuana* is thought to be based on the Portuguese word *mariguango*, which translates as "intoxicant." Marijuana comes from dried leaves, flowers, and stems of the plant, whereas hashish comes from the compressed resin of the flowers of the plant. While marijuana and hashish both come from the cannabis plant, they vary in their potency. Tetrahydrocannabinol (THC) is the active chemical of cannabis that affects the nervous system. Hashish is the most potent and concentrated form of cannabis, containing very high levels of THC. Depending upon the preparation, hashish can be as much as three times as potent as marijuana.

In this chapter, we will discuss the following aspects of marijuana:

1. History of marijuana use
2. Epidemiology of current use
3. Pharmacokinetics
4. Mechanisms of pharmacological action
5. Tolerance and physical dependence
6. Medical and therapeutic uses of marijuana

We will end with a discussion of the physical, psychological, and social/environmental effects of marijuana.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Rodehi/Dreamstime.com

The marijuana plant.

11.1 Historical Overview

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

11-1 Discuss the historical use of cannabis and how the committee reports on marijuana shaped attitudes about its use

According to Ernest Abel in his book *Marihuana: The First Twelve Thousand Years* (1980), the earliest known evidence of the use of cannabis occurred more than 10,000 years ago during the Stone Age. Archaeologists at a Taiwanese site discovered pots made of fibers presumed to be from the cannabis plant. The earliest known references to the use of cannabis for its pharmacological properties are attributed to Shen Nung in about 2700 B.C. Shen Nung was a Chinese emperor and pharmacist who shared his knowledge of the medicinal uses of cannabis. It has been speculated that cannabis was used in this period in China for sedating, treating pain and illness, countering the influences of evil spirits, and gaining its general psychoactive effects (Abel, 1980; Nahas, 1973).

Cannabis use gradually spread from China to surrounding Asian countries. Of particular note was its adoption in India, where cannabis was used in religious rites. The *Atharva Veda*, one of the oldest books of Hinduism, includes it as one of the five sacred plants (Aldrich, 1977). This gave cannabis the protection and reverence engendered by cultural or religious acceptance. Not until much later did cannabis use spread to the Middle East and then on to North Africa. During this expansion, hashish was first identified. The use of hashish dates to around the 10th century among those in the Middle East and to the 11th century among North Africans (Abel, 1980).

> *"[The Scythians] have discovered other trees that produce fruit of a peculiar kind, which the inhabitants, when they meet together in companies, and have lit a fire, throw on the fire, as they sit round in a circle; and that by inhaling the fumes of the burning fruit that has been thrown on, they become intoxicated by the odor, just as the Greeks do by wine; and that the more fruit that is thrown on the more intoxicated they become, until they rise up to dance and betake themselves to singing."*
>
> Herodotus, commenting on marijuana use by the Scythians, nomadic people from Central Asia (McKenna, 1992)

Cannabis appears to have been used for its intoxicating effects in these regions of the world for an extended time. The Western world was exposed to cannabis during the 19th century, primarily through descriptions of the hashish experience in medical writings and the popular press. The use of cannabis was introduced to Great Britain primarily by William O'Shaughnessy, an Irish physician. In India, he observed the medical applications of cannabis and described them in his writings. Suggestions regarding the use of cannabis were made in France by Dr. Jacques Moreau, a physician who thought it could be used in the treatment of mental illness (Bloomquist, 1971). Subsequently, the use and effects of cannabis were described in detail in the works of other French authors. Perhaps most notable was Théophile Gautier, a famous and influential poet and essayist, who was introduced to cannabis by Moreau. Gautier graphically described his initiation into *Le Club des Hachichins* (The Hashish Club), which met in Paris in the exclusive Hotel Pimodan in the 1840s. The hashish consumed was contained in a sweetmeat called dawamesc. Gautier's descriptions of the drug effects were graphic (some excerpts from his writings are presented in the Drugs and Culture Box 11.1). His descriptions of the hashish experiences included elements of mystery, intrigue, joy, ecstasy, fear, and terror.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 11.1

Gautier's Experiences at the Hashish Club

As noted in the text, the Frenchman Théophile Gautier wrote in graphic detail of his experiences using hashish in the 1840s. These drug use descriptions are of interest to us today for several reasons. They provide an opportunity for us to observe the similarities in the marijuana experience then and now, at least as described by those who wrote of their experiences. In addition, these descriptions allow us to observe the use of drugs across cultures. Here we present writings from Gautier, describing his experiences with hashish in a club in Paris during the mid-19th century.

The hashish Gautier and his friends used was contained in a sweetmeat (a food rich in sugar, such as candied or crystallized fruit) called dawamesc, which they ate at the Paris hotel that housed *Le Club des Hachichins* (The Hashish Club). The drug-laced sweetmeat was eaten before dinner. After dinner, sitting in a large drawing room, Gautier (1844) described the scene:

> Solitude reigned in the drawing room, which was studded with only a few dubious gleams; all of a sudden, a red flash passed beneath my eyelids, innumerable candles burst into light and I felt bathed in a warm, clear glow. I was indeed in the same place, but it was as different as a sketch is from a painting: everything was larger, richer, more gorgeous. Reality served as a point of departure for the splendors of the hallucination. (Solomon, 1966, p. 126)

This period was followed by a state Gautier labeled "fantasia," after which *al-kief* was experienced:

> I was in that blessed state induced by hashish which the Orientals call al-kief. I could no longer feel my body; the bonds of matter and spirit were severed; I moved by sheer willpower in an unresisting medium.
>
> Thus I imagine the movement of souls in the world of fragrances to which we shall go after death. A bluish haze, an Elysian light, the reflections of an azure grotto, formed an atmosphere in the room through which I vaguely saw the tremblings of hesitant outlines; an atmosphere at once cool and warm, moist and perfumed, enveloping me like bath water in a sort of enervating sweetness. When I tried to move away, the caressing air made a thousand voluptuous waves about me; a delightful languor gripped my senses and threw me back upon the sofa, where I hung, limp as a discarded garment.
>
> Then I understood the pleasure experienced by the spirits and angels, according to their degree of perfection, when they traverse the ethers and the skies, and how eternity might occupy one in Paradise. (Solomon, 1966, pp. 130–131)

Al-kief was replaced by a nightmarish stage in which Gautier felt fear, fury, and aspects of paranoia. Then, finally, around 5 hours after entering the Hashish Club, the drug effects ended:

> The dream was at an end.
>
> The hashisheen went off, each in his own direction, like the officers in *Marlborough Goes to War.*
>
> With light steps, I went down the stairs that had caused me so much anguish, and a few moments later I was in my room, in full reality; the last vapors raised by the hashish had vanished. (Solomon, 1966, p. 135)

Despite what appeared to some as attractive features of cannabis and hashish, the use of this drug did not immediately catch on in Europe. In fact, using cannabis for its psychoactive properties did not become widespread in Europe until the 1960s, when it was reintroduced by, among others, tourists from the United States (Bloomquist, 1971).

Cannabis in the Americas

The presence of cannabis in the Americas dates to 1545, when the Spaniards brought it to Chile. In the North American colonies, the Jamestown settlers in Virginia raised the cannabis plant for fiber in 1611. Not long after, this hemp product was firmly entrenched as a basic staple crop and was cultivated by George Washington, among many others. Cannabis was harvested in New England starting in 1629; it remained a

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Bettmann/Getty Images

French writer Théophile Gautier described in detail his consumption of hashish at *Le Club des Hachichins*.

core U.S. crop until after the Civil War. The center of hemp production was Kentucky, where it was a major crop product for decades.

Despite its widespread presence, the cannabis plant was relatively unknown as a mind-altering substance. There was some recognition of its uses beyond the fiber component, however. Following the lead of European doctors, American physicians used cannabis in the 1800s, as a general, all-purpose medication (Nahas, 1973). The most commonly used preparation was Tilden's Extract of Cannabis Indica, an Indian hemp plant produced in East Bengal. By the 1850s, marijuana was listed in the *United States Pharmacopeia*, a listing of recognized therapeutics; it remained there until 1942. The cannabis extract also was listed in the less select *National Formulary*.

Cannabis was consumed for recreational purposes only to a limited extent during this period, and descriptions of its psychoactive effects were not common. One notable exception was the publication in 1857 of the book *The Hasheesh Eater*. Written by Fitz Hugh Ludlow, this volume details his cannabis-eating experiences over a 4-year period beginning at around age 16. Ludlow lived in the town of Poughkeepsie, north of New York City in the Hudson River Valley. He spent much of his time with a friend named Anderson, an **apothecary**, and often experimented with the varied substances in Anderson's drugstore. One day, Anderson pointed out to Ludlow a new arrival: a marijuana extract from Tilden and Co. Ludlow began experimenting with the substance. At first, he experienced no immediate drug effects, but he described the onset of effects after several hours as follows:

> Ha! what means this sudden thrill? A shock, as of some unimagined vital force, shoots without warning through my entire frame, leaping to my fingers' ends, piercing my brain, startling me till I almost spring from my chair.
>
> I could not doubt it. I was in the power of the hasheesh influence. (Ludlow, 1857/1979, p. 20)

apothecary
A pharmacist.

Ludlow continued his experimenting, graphically describing the varied cannabis effects. For example, in a chapter titled "The Kingdom of the Dream," he noted:

> The moment that I closed my eyes a vision of celestial glory burst upon me. I stood on the silver strand of a translucent, boundless lake, across whose bosom I seemed to have been just transported. A short way up the beach, a temple, modeled like the Parthenon, lifted its spotless and gleaming columns of alabaster sublimely into a rosy air—like the Parthenon, yet as much excelling it as the godlike ideal of architecture must transcend that ideal realized by man. (p. 34)

Ludlow also identified two "laws of the hasheesh operation." The first was that "after the completion of any one fantasia has arrived, there almost invariably succeeds a shifting of the action to some other stage entirely different in its surroundings"

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

(pp. 36–37). The second law was that "after the full storm of a vision of intense sublimity has blown past the hasheesh-eater, his next vision is generally of a quiet, relaxing, and recreating nature" (p. 37).

The 1920s brought a wider use of cannabis. Edward M. Brecher, in the Consumers Union Report on *Licit and Illicit Drugs* (1972), attributed this increase to alcohol prohibition. He wrote, "Not until the Eighteenth Amendment and the Volstead Act of 1920 raised the price of alcoholic beverages and made them less convenient to secure and inferior in quality did substantial commercial trade in marijuana for recreational use spring up" (p. 410). In New York City, for example, a number of marijuana **tea-pads** opened in the early 1920s, generally in a room or apartment. As described by Mayor LaGuardia's Committee on Marihuana (1944),

tea-pads
Historically, places where people gathered to smoke marijuana. The sites could be anything from a rented room to a hotel suite.

> The "tea-pad" is furnished according to the clientele it expects to serve. Usually, each "tea-pad" has comfortable furniture, a radio, Victrola or, as in most instances, a rented nickelodeon. The lighting is more or less uniformly dim, with blue predominating. An incense burner is considered part of the furnishings. The walls are frequently decorated with pictures of nude subjects suggestive of perverted sexual practices. The furnishings, as described, are believed to be essential as a setting for those participating in smoking marihuana. (p. 10)

The committee went on to note:

> The marihuana smoker derives greater satisfaction if he is smoking in the presence of others. His attitude in the "tea-pad" is that of a relaxed individual, free from the anxieties and cares of the realities of life. The "tea-pad" takes on the atmosphere of a very congenial social club. The smoker readily engages in conversation with strangers, discussing freely his pleasant reactions to the drug and philosophizing on subjects pertaining to life in a manner which, at times, appears to be out of keeping with his intellectual level. . . . A boisterous, rowdy atmosphere did not prevail and on the rare occasions when there appeared signs indicative of a belligerent attitude on the part of a smoker, he was ejected or forced to become more tolerant and quiescent. (p. 10)

The origins of the practice of smoking marijuana in this country in the early part of this century are not clear, but most agree that one of the earliest introductions was through Mexican laborers crossing the border into the United States. The greatest extent of use was in New Orleans, also in the early 1920s. In fact, New Orleans was a central dispensing arena for marijuana as late as the 1930s. The marijuana could be sent up the Mississippi River to river ports and then distributed throughout the country.

"Prolonged use of marihuana frequently develops a delirious rage which sometimes leads to high crimes, such as assault and murder. Hence marihuana has been called the 'killer drug.' The habitual use of this narcotic poison always causes a very marked mental deterioration and sometimes produces insanity."

Excerpt from a 1936 pamphlet entitled "Marijuana or Indian Hemp and Its Preparations," distributed by the International Narcotic Education Association

There was little public concern over the use of marijuana during this period, with one notable exception. In 1926, a series of articles was printed in two New Orleans newspapers. They sensationally "exposed" the "menacing" presence of marijuana and attributed a number of crimes and heinous acts to use of the drug. Although many of these lurid reports were ridiculous and fabricated, a Louisiana law mandating a maximum penalty of a $500 fine and/or 6 months imprisonment for conviction of possession or sale of marijuana was passed the next year. This law had little effect on the sale or use of marijuana in New Orleans, however, except for a possible moderate increase in the price of a marijuana cigarette (Brecher, 1972).

Even though marijuana had not threatened to enter the mainstream of American life, additional government and legal action continued into the next decade. Much of this activity was promoted by Harry J. Anslinger, who became director of the Federal Bureau of Narcotics in 1932. Anslinger was convinced that marijuana represented a major threat to the safety and well-being of the country. He successfully encouraged many states to restrict the trafficking and use of marijuana. In 1930, only 16 states had statutes prohibiting the use of marijuana; by 1937, virtually all states had such statutes.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Anslinger's efforts culminated in the 1937 passage of the Marijuana Tax Act. The act did not officially ban marijuana; rather, it acknowledged the medicinal uses of marijuana and permitted the prescription of marijuana following payment of a license fee of $1 per year. Any other possession or sale of marijuana was strictly outlawed. Punishments for violation were a $2,000 fine, 5 years of imprisonment, or both. Anslinger's efforts overall were successful in reducing the legal spread of marijuana; in the following year, only 38 physicians paid the $1 license fee to prescribe marijuana (Brecher, 1972). Furthermore, Anslinger's efforts set the stage for progressively stricter penalties for marijuana sale and possession in the ensuing years. Throughout the 1960s, judges often had the option of sentencing those using or selling marijuana to life imprisonment. A second offense of selling marijuana to a minor in Georgia could be punished by death.

As discussed in Chapter 2, the laws surrounding the possession and use of marijuana are rapidly changing in the United States. Since the 1970s, there has been a gradual movement toward decriminalizing marijuana for personal and medicinal use. As of 2020, 14 states and the District of Columbia have decriminalized marijuana and legalized recreational and medicinal use. Thirty other states allow for medicinal use, but they vary with regards to whether marijuana use is decriminalized. Marijuana possession and use remains fully illegal in six states. Even though states may decriminalize and legalize marijuana possession and use, it remains on the federal Controlled Substances Act (CSA). However, in December 2020 the U.S. House of Representatives voted in favor of removing marijuana from the CSA. If the Senate approves the bill, it would decriminalize cannabis and erase nonviolent federal marijuana convictions.

Committee Reports on Marijuana

Several comprehensive reports on the use of marijuana and its effects have appeared during the past century. One of the earliest was the Indian Hemp Drugs Commission Report released in 1894. The committee preparing the report included four British and three Indian commissioners. A second report was the 1933 Panama Canal Zone Military Investigations, which spanned the years between 1916 and 1929. A third, and one of the most widely known investigations, was the LaGuardia Committee Report published in 1944. Because the conclusions of these three commissions were similar, we focus on the LaGuardia findings.

> *"A person may be a confirmed smoker for a prolonged period, and give up the drug voluntarily without experiencing any craving for it or exhibiting withdrawal symptoms."*
>
> Excerpt from the LaGuardia Committee Report (1944)

Mayor LaGuardia's Committee on Marihuana was created by the New York Academy of Medicine at the request of New York City Mayor Fiorello LaGuardia. The study, second in scope only to the Indian Hemp Drugs Commission, was a truly multidisciplinary report, including coordinated input by physicians, psychologists, pharmacologists, and sociologists. Data were gathered on marijuana use and effects in tea-pads as well as in laboratory settings. The general finding of the study was that marijuana use was not particularly harmful to those using it or to society at large. The report failed to find evidence for the claim that aggression, violence, and belligerence were common consequences of marijuana smoking. This was not intended to suggest, however, that marijuana did not induce psychoactive effects. A number of individual changes were noted, including in more extreme form "mental confusion and excitement of a delirious nature with periods of laughter and of anxiety" (p. 216).

These report findings were consistent with those of commission reports published earlier. Subsequent reports also have mirrored these basic conclusions. These investigations include the 1968 Baroness Wootton Report from Great Britain, the 1972 Report of the Canadian Government's LeDain Commission, and the First Report

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of the National Commission on Marihuana and Drug Abuse (titled *Marihuana: A Signal of Misunderstanding*) in 1972. Subsequent reports in the United States, such as *Marijuana and Health*, the Ninth Report to the U.S. Congress (NIDA, 1982) and *Drug Abuse and Drug Abuse Research* (USDHHS, 1984, the first in a series of several triennial reports to Congress), have likewise not provided markedly discrepant findings, although they were much more cautious in describing nonnegative effects of marijuana use.

Several other reports have been issued in the years since. Two influential documents recommended the approval of smoking marijuana for treating certain categories of medical disorders. The first report was prepared by Britain's House of Lords (1988) and the second by the United States National Academy of Sciences (Joy et al., 1999). The latter report concluded that there was scientific foundation for studying marijuana as a treatment vehicle in such areas as pain relief, control of nausea and vomiting, and appetite stimulation. A more recent report, entitled *Cannabis: Our Position for a Canadian Public Policy* (Senate Special Committee on Illegal Drugs, 2002), provided a series of recommendations. First, they recommended amendments to existing law to allow compassionate medical access to cannabis and its derivatives. Second, they recommended a system through which licensed individuals would produce and sell cannabis. Third, the committee recommended that the government of Canada declare an amnesty for any person convicted of possession of cannabis under current or past legislation.

The most recent report on marijuana, *The Health Effects of Cannabis and Cannabinoids: The Current State of Evidence and Recommendations for Research*, was published in 2017 by the National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine (NAS). This remarkably comprehensive report, based on a review of literally thousands of scientific studies published since 1999, focused on the health impacts of cannabis and cannabis-derived products. It included coverage of therapeutic use of cannabis and cannabinoids, health impacts, and psychosocial effects. Noteworthy was its assertion that there is conclusive evidence that cannabis can be used as a medicine for several medical conditions, including chronic pain in adults, chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, and multiple sclerosis spasticity. We will be drawing from the results of this report throughout the remainder of this chapter.

REVIEW ACTIVITY

1. Evaluate how the committee reports on marijuana influenced marijuana use in the United States.

11.2 Epidemiology

Marijuana is the most widely used illicit drug in the Western world and the third most commonly used recreational drug after alcohol and tobacco (Iversen, 2000; UN Office on Drugs and Crime, 2015). According to the World Health Organization, it also is the illicit substance most widely cultivated, trafficked, and misused. In December 2020 the United Nations reclassified cannabis from one of the world's most dangerous drugs to a less dangerous drug. While this is largely symbolic, the decision could lead to an expansion of marijuana research and medical use.

For a number of years, the United Nations has been compiling annual surveys of worldwide drug use, including cannabis. Reflecting the difficulties and uncertainties associated with developing estimates of the number of people who use drugs (such

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

as the quality of the data gathered and the methodologies used to sample populations), the latest United Nations estimates are presented in ranges, reflecting the lower and upper estimates indicated through the array of surveys available. In their 2015 report (covering 2013), the United Nations estimated that between 128.5 and 232.1 million people between the ages of 15 and 64 had used cannabis in the past year, representing between 2.7% and 4.9% of the world's population (UN Office on Drugs and Crime, 2015).

Looking at specific regions of the world, surveys have found that the highest per capita rate of use in the past year was in Oceania (the countries and territories in the Pacific Ocean, including Australia), where an estimated 10.2% of adults reported past-year use. Past-year prevalence estimates for other regions were 7.6% for Africa, 7.5% for the Americas (including a 12.1% rate for North America), 4.9% for Europe, and 1.9% for Asia. Although the prevalence of cannabis use in Asia (at 1.9%) was lower than the global average, the absolute number of those who use cannabis in Asia, estimated at 56.5 million, was the highest worldwide, due to Asia's large population (UN Office on Drugs and Crime, 2015).

Data gathered as part of the 2019 National Survey on Drug Use and Health (SAMHSA, 2020) reported an estimated 48.2 million Americans had used marijuana in the past year, representing a significant increase from 2019.

Data on lifetime, annual (i.e., use in the past year), and current use over time among Americans aged 12 and older are shown in Figure 11.1. The figure shows that annual and current rates decreased significantly from 1979 to 1988, decreased more gradually for several more years, and were generally stable from around 1993 until the increases noted in 2001 and 2002. Rates were then relatively stable through

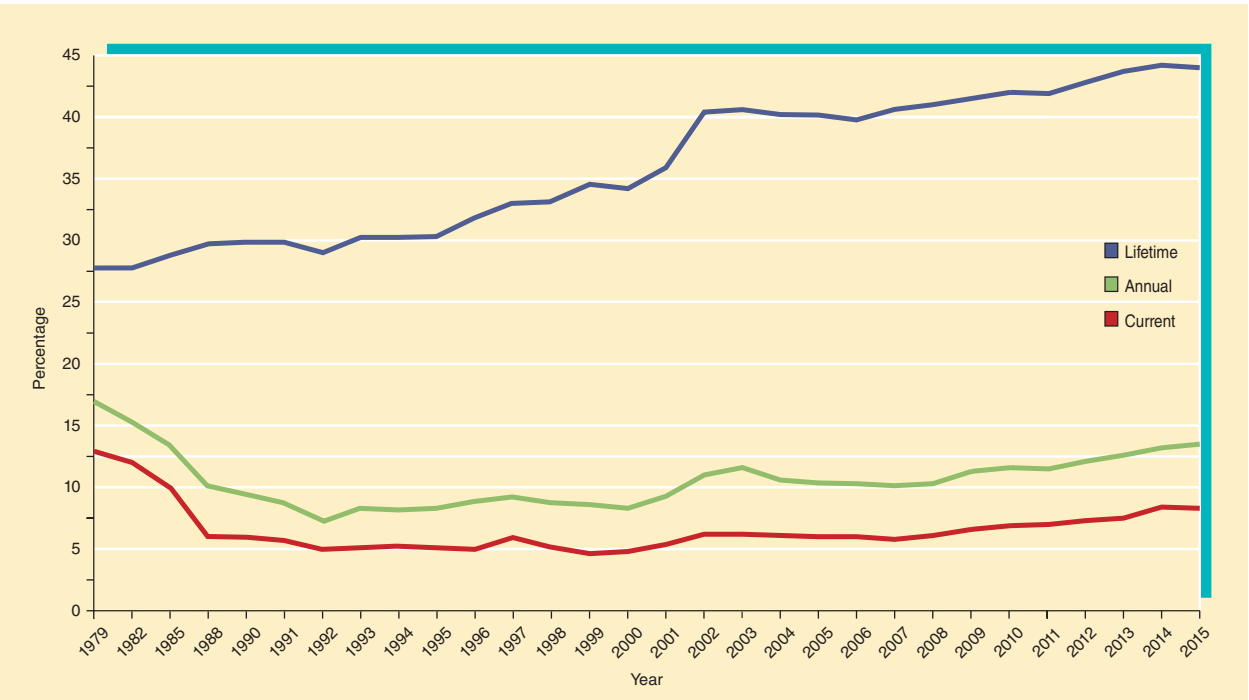


FIGURE 11.1
Trends in the prevalence of lifetime use, annual use, and current use of marijuana or hashish among Americans aged 12 and over (from SAMHSA, 2016)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2011. In the past several years, they have gradually increased slightly. Prevalence rates of lifetime use have been gradually rising since the mid-1990s, with a larger increase apparent from 2000 to 2002. There have been some slight increases in the years since.

Between 2002 and 2014, the prevalence of past-month marijuana use increased among those aged 18 and older, with the greatest increase among those aged 55 and older. Two other patterns are evident. First, rates of current marijuana use were significantly higher in the late 1970s and early 1980s than they are now for those under the age of 35. Second, rates of current use have been consistently higher among those aged 18 to 25 and consistently lower among those over the age of 35. Third, current use among those aged 26 to 34 was consistently higher than for those aged 12 to 17 until the mid-1990s. In the late 1990s, current use was higher among those aged 12 to 17, with current use since 2000 being reasonably comparable.

Three other findings from the 2015 National Survey on Drug Use and Health are noteworthy. First, current use was more likely to be higher among men than women (10.6% vs. 6.2%). Second, past-month marijuana use increased across the majority of racial/ethnic groups, as shown in Figure 11.2.

Overall, marijuana use declined in 1979–1992 and 2001–2006, and increased in 1992–2001 and 2006–2019. The reasons for the periods of decline are not specified but likely are associated with marijuana laws. The legalization of marijuana in the United States started in 1993, when the surgeon general proposed to study marijuana legalization. Since California first legalized medical marijuana use in 1996, more and more states have allowed marijuana for medical and/or recreational use.

The same decreases in marijuana use in the national surveys also appeared—until 1992—in the annual surveys of high school seniors. As you can see in Figure 11.3, the percentages of seniors ever using, using in the past month or year, and using daily for the past month all dropped from around 1979 until 1992. Starting in 1993, however, the data revealed that marijuana was making a comeback, at least among

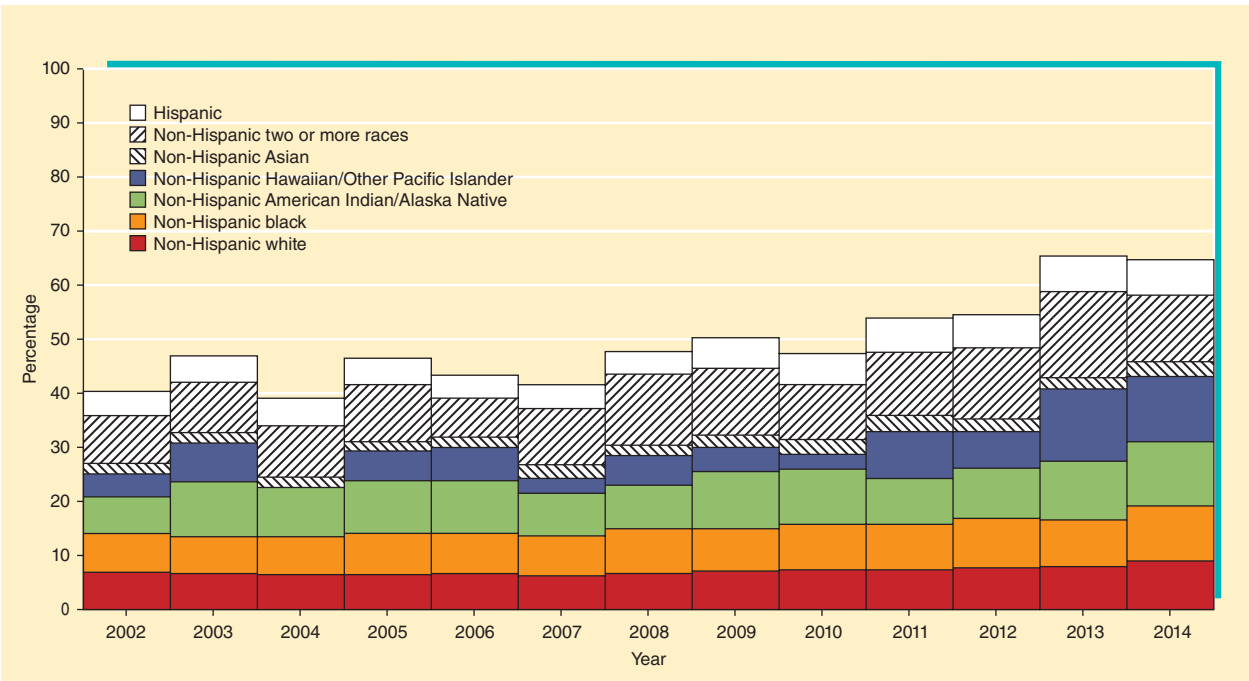


FIGURE 11.2
Trends in past month marijuana use among persons aged 12 and older, by race/ethnicity (from CDC, 2016).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

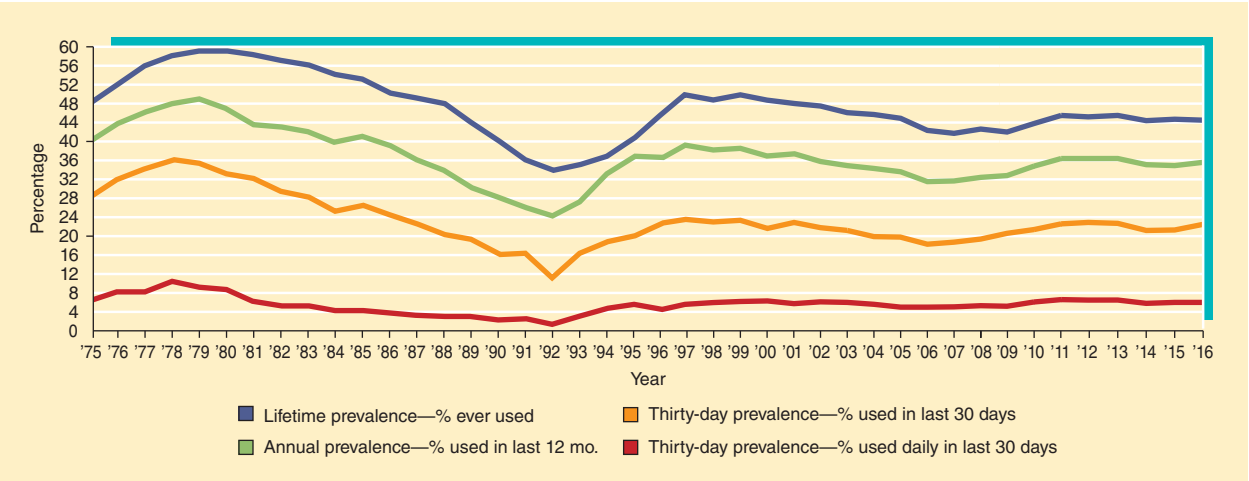


FIGURE 11.3
Trends in the prevalence of marijuana or hashish use among high school seniors (from Johnston et al., 2017)

high school seniors. As shown in Figure 11.3, marijuana use increased significantly in 1993, and continued to rise through 1997. It remained relatively constant throughout the following years. Only modest fluctuations have been recorded since around 2000, despite a broad decrease in the perceived risk associated with marijuana use. Over 80% of the seniors surveyed in recent years reported it would be fairly or very easy to obtain marijuana.

11.3 Methods of Use

Marijuana and hashish have been administered in a number of ways in their use as psychoactive agents. For example, they were ingested in India centuries ago in liquid and food form. People can also experience the psychoactive effects of marijuana by chewing marijuana leaves. However, the most common procedure for ingesting cannabis in the United States has been and remains smoking, typically in cigarette (**joint**) form. Inhalation through cigarettes is also the most efficient method for absorption of cannabis. Other methods of smoking marijuana include water pipes (often called bongs) or blunts (a cigar that is emptied of tobacco and refilled with marijuana). The smoking of blunts has increased in popularity among American urban youth (Ream et al., 2008) and may present some unique health risks, given the combined intake of the marijuana and tobacco (as the cigar wrapper is a tobacco leaf). For example, smoking marijuana in a tobacco leaf appears to increase the risks of marijuana by enhancing carbon monoxide exposure and increasing heart rate, relative to smoking marijuana in joint form (Cooper & Haney, 2009).

joint
A hand-rolled marijuana cigarette.

In recent years, there has been the emergence of two new methods of marijuana consumption. The first entails vaporization and is called "vaping" (Budney et al., 2015). Using this process, similar to that used with e-cigarettes, cannabis material is heated to a temperature at which an aerosolized mixture of water vapor and the active ingredients of cannabis are released and then inhaled. The second recent mode of marijuana consumption is called "dabbing," which entails heating extremely concentrated forms of cannabis (typically hash oil) to high temperatures and inhaling the resulting vapor (Cavazos-Rehg et al., 2016; Loflin & Earleywine, 2014; Stogner &

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 11.2

Is Marijuana a Gateway Drug?

The gateway or "stepping-stone" theory of drug use posits that the use of licit and illicit substances follows a predictable pattern. This theory of stages receives considerable attention during debates on the legalization of marijuana. Opponents of legalization argue that marijuana use is the first step on a path that leads to the use of—and potentially dependence on—drugs such as heroin and cocaine. As it turns out, research by Johnson (1973), Fergusson and Horwood (2000), and others has shown that the vast majority of those who use marijuana do not go on to misuse heroin, cocaine, or other drugs.

Nevertheless, substance use does appear to follow a uniform sequence of drugs. One of the earliest studies (Kandel, 1975) found that, in high school students, alcohol use is likely to precede the use of other substances, including marijuana. This finding was replicated in research conducted at the New York State Research Institute on Addictions (Welte & Barnes, 1985; Windle et al., 1989). High school students (White, Black, and Hispanic), if they use drugs, tend to do so in the same sequence: alcohol, marijuana, and then the so-called hard drugs (such as cocaine, crack, hallucinogens, and heroin). In a later study, Kandel and Yamaguchi (1993) found that individuals using crack almost always had used marijuana earlier. Adler and Kandel (1981) found similar patterns in the sequence of drug use among adolescents in Israel and France.

More recently, researchers at the Center on Addiction and Substance Abuse at Columbia University found that teenagers who experimented with alcohol, cigarettes, and marijuana were more likely than other youths to use cocaine and other "hard drugs." The report noted that 17% of children (aged 12 to 17) who had used marijuana had tried cocaine as well; 5% of those who drank alcohol and 6% of those who smoked cigarettes also had tried cocaine. Similarly, Fergusson and his colleagues (Fergusson & Horwood, 2000; Fergusson et al., 2006) found that marijuana use among New Zealanders was strongly related to the use of other forms of illicit drugs. Use of marijuana almost without exception preceded other illicit drug use, and those more frequently using marijuana (using more than 50 occasions a year) were 140 times more likely to use other illicit drugs than those not using marijuana. Hall and Lynskey (2005) concluded that there was a reasonably strong association between regular and early cannabis use and other illicit drug use.

It is important to keep a few things in mind when interpreting these stepping-stone data. First, and perhaps most important, the majority of people who use marijuana do not go on to use other illicit drugs. Second, people who start using marijuana after previously using alcohol typically do not stop using alcohol. Instead, both substances can be in the person's drug use repertoire. Finally, consider that an alternative to the gateway theory has been proposed. Called the "cross-sensitization theory," it suggests that early exposure to cannabinoids in adolescence decreases the brain's reactivity to dopamine reward centers in adulthood. This may lead to an increased vulnerability for substance misuse later in life. Animal experiments show that THC primes the brain for enhanced responses to other drugs (Panlilio et al., 2013), giving support to this idea.

The studies mentioned have implications for people who work in the areas of prevention and drug policy. As an example (and you probably can imagine others), these studies suggest that people who do not use marijuana for the most part will not use "hard drugs" such as cocaine or heroin. Prevention efforts that focus on not using marijuana potentially will decrease the pool of those who use marijuana and will then use other drugs.

Miller, 2015). Because dabbing typically involves placing a "dab" of the hash oil on the end of a glass or titanium rod that has been heated with a blowtorch, the risk for serious burns is considerable.

REVIEW

1. Create a time line describing characteristics of marijuana use from the 1970s to 2018.
2. Discuss how the different ways that marijuana is used is associated with the drug experience.
3. Identify factors associated with the decriminalization and legalization of marijuana in many states since 1996.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11.4 Active Ingredients

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

11-2 Explain the factors that influence potency of cannabis

The first chemical analysis of cannabis apparently was performed in 1821 (Mechoulam, 1973). Since then, studies have shown cannabis to be a complex plant. More than 400 individual chemical compounds have been identified in the plant. Over 60 of these chemicals, collectively called **cannabinoids**, are unique to the cannabis plant (El Sohly, 2002; El Sohly & Slade, 2005). Continued research will probably identify additional cannabis chemical compounds and cannabinoids.

cannabinoids
The more than 60 chemical compounds present in cannabis. One is delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (better known as THC).

delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol
The principal active cannabinoid in marijuana responsible for the psychoactive effects.

Despite years of study, the principal psychoactive agent in cannabis was not isolated until 1964. This substance has been labeled **delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol** but is more commonly known as D-9-THC, or simply THC. The THC compound was first reported by Gaoni and Mechoulam (1964), two researchers working in Israel. Research since 1964 has shown that the D-9-THC cannabinoid accounts for the vast majority of the known specific pharmacological actions of marijuana. Although THC is the prime psychoactive agent in cannabis, other cannabinoids, such as cannabidiol and cannabinol, can be biologically active and can modify THC effects. However, they tend not to be psychoactive in and of themselves.

Potency of Cannabis

The strength of cannabis varies considerably, and most of the marijuana grown in the United States has a THC content lower than the marijuana grown in overseas countries. Marijuana smoked in the United States today is considerably stronger than that used 3 decades ago (10% to 12% THC is now the average versus around 2% in 1980) (El Sohly et al., 2000, 2016; Iversen, 2000; McLaren et al., 2008). Comparable figures are reported for marijuana smoked in the United Kingdom. Higher THC potency is generally found in "homegrown" cannabis—that is, marijuana grown in large-scale domestic indoor environments (Iversen, 2000). The THC content in sinsemilla (a seedless variety of marijuana) is now in the range of 10% to 20% and sometimes reaches 30% (Pijlman et al., 2005). Similar variations and increasing average potencies have been found as well for hashish. A third form of cannabis is **hash oil**, a concentrated liquid marijuana extract derived from the cannabis plant using solvents. This oil has been available on the streets for a number of years and is more potent than the marijuana leaf material or resin. Estimates are that hash oil can contain as much as 60% THC, although the potency is more generally found to be around 20% (Iversen, 2000).

hash oil
A potent distillate of marijuana or hashish. It first appeared in the United States in 1971 and can contain up to 60% THC.

11.5 Pharmacokinetics

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

11-3 Describe how marijuana is absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body

In the following sections on pharmacokinetics, we first address absorption and then distribution, metabolism, and excretion.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Absorption

The absorption of THC depends primarily on the mode of consumption. The most rapid and efficient absorption of marijuana occurs through smoking. Inhalation results in absorption directly through the lungs, and the onset of the THC action begins within minutes. Assessments of blood plasma reveal that peak concentrations occur 30 to 60 minutes later. The drug effects can be experienced for 2 to 4 hours.

Several factors can influence the amount of THC absorbed through smoking. One important variable, of course, is the potency of the cannabis being smoked. Only about half of the THC available in a marijuana cigarette is in the smoke, and the amount ultimately absorbed into the bloodstream is probably less. Another variable is the amount of time the inhaled smoke is held in the lungs; the longer the smoke is held, the more time for absorption of the THC. The amount of THC in a marijuana cigarette that is actually absorbed by smoking averages around 20%, with the other 80% lost primarily through combustion, sidestream smoke, and incomplete absorption in the lungs (Iversen, 2000).

Oral ingestion of marijuana is much slower and relatively inefficient. The onset of action is longer than when smoked, taking as long as an hour. The marijuana is absorbed primarily through the gastrointestinal tract, and peak plasma levels can be delayed for as long as 2 to 3 hours following ingestion. An important difference from absorption through smoking is that blood containing orally ingested marijuana goes through the liver before going to the brain. The liver processes or clears much of the THC so that lesser amounts have the opportunity to exert action in the brain. The drug effects following oral ingestion can be experienced for longer periods of time, however, generally 4 to 6 hours. The dose needed to create a comparable high when orally ingested is estimated as three times greater than that needed when smoking.

Distribution, Metabolism, and Excretion

Using peak plasma THC levels to assess cannabis effects can be misleading because the psychoactive cannabinoids are highly lipid-soluble; that is, the cannabinoids are lipids, which means they are almost entirely insoluble in water. The cannabinoids instead are a dark, viscous, oil-like substance. Plasma levels of THC decrease rapidly because the THC is deposited in the tissues of various organs, particularly those that contain fatty material. Assessments of organs following cannabis ingestion reveal marked concentrations of THC in the brain, lungs, kidneys, and liver. Thus, even when blood levels of THC are zero, the levels of THC in other organs can be substantial. Also, THC is capable of crossing the placental barrier and reaching the fetus.

As noted, THC is carried through the bloodstream and deposited within various organs. The THC is then metabolized to less active products over time. Although this process occurs primarily in the liver, it can occur in other organs as well. The THC metabolites are excreted slowly through feces and urine. Approximately half of the THC is excreted over several days and the remainder by the end of about a week. However, some metabolites of the THC, a number of which may still be active in the system, can be detected in the body at least 30 days following ingestion of a single dose and in the urine for several weeks following chronic use.

REVIEW

1. Create a chart summarizing how cannabinoids are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body.
2. Explain the factors that are associated with the potency of cannabis.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11.6 Mechanisms of Action

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

11-4 Explain the mechanisms of action for cannabis

In the context of mechanisms of action, we first present relevant research findings, followed by a discussion on tolerance and dependence.

Research Findings

Much of the early research in this area (typically performed with animals) focused on the effects of marijuana on acetylcholine, a chemical neuro transmitter involved in memory. THC in relatively small doses has been shown to decrease the turnover in acetylcholine, particularly in the hippocampus, resulting in a decrease in neurotransmitter activity. Similar inhibitory effects of THC have been observed on a variety of neurotransmitters, including L-glutamate, GABA, noradrenaline, dopamine, and 5-HT (Iversen, 2003). In addition, THC facilitates release of the neurotransmitter serotonin and produces changes in the dopamine system, thus enhancing activation of movement.

A number of important advances have been made on marijuana's drug action. Foremost among these has been research on THC receptors in the brain (Adams & Martin, 1996; Iversen, 2003). Two types of cannabinoid receptors (called CB1 and CB2) have been identified (Devane et al., 1988; Herkenham et al., 1990; Matsuda et al., 1990; Munro et al., 1993). These receptors are uniquely stimulated by THC. CB1 receptors are located predominantly in brain areas that control memory, cognition, the motor system, and mood. CB2 receptors are most prevalent in the immune system.

Research on cannabinoid receptors opened the door to efforts to study pathways in the brain that may be involved in cannabinoid actions and to the search for naturally occurring chemicals in the body (called endogenous chemicals) that normally would interact with the identified receptors. One research team (Devane et al., 1992) identified such a chemical (named "anandamide" from the Sanskrit word for "bliss") that binds to the same receptors on brain cells as do cannabinoids. Researchers are now using the compound anandamide to study how the cannabinoid receptors affect functions such as memory, movement, hunger, and pain, which are affected by marijuana use. Another endogenous chemical identified as interacting with cannabinoid receptors is 2-arachidonoylglycerol, or 2-AG (Pertwee, 2002; Sugiura et al., 2000).

Phanie/Alamy Stock Photo

There has been growing concern over the use of marijuana by young people.

Newer research methods, such as positron emission tomography (PET), which assesses cerebral blood flow, have opened new avenues for exploring marijuana effects. For example, it has been shown that THC increases blood flow in

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

most brain regions in both the cerebral cortex and deeper brain structures (Iversen, 2000; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013; Quickfall & Crockford, 2006). Such blood flow is greatest in the frontal cortex (Matthew et al., 1997), which is critical to "executive" brain functions. Other recent research has focused on identifying and investigating areas of the brain that have greater densities of cannabinoid receptors, such as the cerebral cortex.

Tolerance and Dependence

Tolerance to cannabis has been well documented in animal species (e.g., Agurell et al., 1986; De Vry et al., 2004; Harris et al., 1977). The evidence for tolerance to cannabis in humans is less clear, with many studies indicating tolerance but a number of others not. Some of the discrepancies in the human studies can be attributed to the dose of marijuana and the duration of use being studied. Tolerance is more likely to occur with higher doses used over longer periods of time. Research has typically been done in controlled laboratory settings, where the doses and frequencies of use studied are generally much greater than those reported by individuals who use marijuana in the general population. The mechanisms by which tolerance occurs are still unknown, although a likely candidate is cannabinoid receptor downregulation and desensitization (Oviedo et al., 1993; Sim-Selley, 2003).

There is an ongoing debate as to whether physical dependence can occur in the context of marijuana use. Some have argued that there is no significant withdrawal syndrome identifiable (Compton et al., 1996; Smith, 2002), and certainly no clustering of withdrawal indicators as identified for other substances such as alcohol or heroin. Jones (1980), on the other hand, described several aspects of dependence associated with sustained heavy use of marijuana. These aspects entailed sleep disturbance, nausea, irritability, and restlessness following cessation of marijuana use. It has been more recently posited that these symptoms reflect a reliable and clinically significant withdrawal syndrome (Budney et al., 2004; Levin et al., 2010), although debate

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 11.3

Designer Cannabis

Synthetic marijuana was introduced in Chapter 2, and it is relevant to revisit it in this chapter. Recall in this context that synthetic designer cannabinoids are sprayed onto herbal or plant material and advertised for sale as an herbal preparation. These synthetics are best known under the names of Spice and K2. Other product names include Black Mamba, Bombay Blue, Fake Weed, Bliss, and Blaze. The first synthetic cannabis products (sold as Spice) appeared in Europe in 2004.

These substances, when analyzed, have often been found to contain potent CB1 agonists, so that smoking these plant materials is very likely to mimic a powerful marijuana-like "high" (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013; Seely et al., 2011, 2012). It is most commonly sold as dried leaves in a small bag, generally labeled as incense, potpourri, or an herbal smoking blend. Acute effects reported by those using these designer cannabinoids presented to emergency rooms include elevated heart rate and blood pressure, drowsiness, agitation, vomiting, paranoia, and loss of physical control. In several cases, their use has resulted in various stages of kidney failure. The impact of longer-term use has not yet been specified.

The use of synthetic marijuana has produced considerable concern. According to the 2016 Monitoring the Future annual survey on adolescent drug use, 3.5% of high school seniors had used synthetic marijuana in the past year. However, this is a dramatic decrease from 2012, when the rate was 11.3%. It is likely that the decrease, at least in part, is related to the negative effects associated with synthetic marijuana and to implementation of the 2012 Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

PACIFIC PRESS/Alamy Stock Photo

Public demonstrations are organized regularly around the country in support of the legalization of marijuana for medical and/or recreational purposes. The NYC Cannabis Parade and Rally is New York's longest-running annual pro-cannabis demonstration.

continues as to whether these symptoms are more indicative of a psychological as opposed to physical dependence on marijuana. At present, it appears that aspects of physical dependence, when they occur, are most likely to be associated with sustained heavy use of marijuana. Nevertheless, a diagnostic category of cannabis use disorder is included in the latest edition of the American Psychiatric Association's *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (APA, 2013).

11.7 Medical and Psychotherapeutic Uses

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

11-5 Evaluate the evidence concerning whether physical or psychological dependence occurs with marijuana use

11-6 Discuss how marijuana is used in the treatment of specific conditions

In this section, we first provide a historical overview of therapeutic uses of marijuana. We follow this with discussion on the therapeutic use of marijuana with specific disorders, including nausea and vomiting, cachexia, and glaucoma.

History of Therapeutic Use

Cannabis has a long history of use for medical and health purposes, with the earliest documented use attributed to Shen Nung in the 28th century B.C. As we noted earlier, Shen Nung recommended that his people use cannabis for its medicinal

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

benefits. The earliest physical evidence of marijuana used as a medicine was uncovered recently by Israeli scientists who found residue of marijuana buried with the body of a young woman who apparently died in childbirth 1,600 years ago. They suggested that the marijuana was used to speed the birth process and to ease the associated pain. Indications that cannabis had been used during childbirth had been found earlier in Egyptian papyri and Assyrian tablets (Martin et al., 1993). Evidence of systematic uses of cannabis as a therapeutic agent is not seen until the 1800s. For example, the Paris physician Jacques Moreau used cannabis in the mid-1800s to treat mental illnesses. (Recall that Moreau supplied the cannabis used by Gautier at *Le Club des Hachichins.*) Much greater legitimization of the medical use of marijuana was provided by Dr. William O'Shaughnessy, who, in an 1838 treatise, described the use of cannabis to treat such problems as rheumatism, pain, rabies, convulsions, and cholera.

Cannabis also was used widely in the United States for many complaints. It was recognized as a therapeutic drug well into the 1900s. At that time, cannabis extract was listed for varying periods of time in the *United States Pharmacopeia*, the *National Formulary*, and the United States *Dispensatory.* In the *Dispensatory*, for example, cannabis was recommended for treating neuralgia, gout, rheumatism, rabies, cholera, convulsions, hysteria, mental depression, delirium tremens, and insanity.

Well into the 1930s, cannabis was an ingredient in a variety of over-the-counter medicines, such as remedies for stomach pain and discomfort, restlessness, and coughs (Iversen, 2000). One company marketed cannabis cigarettes for the treatment of asthma. These medicinal uses of cannabis rapidly began to decline, however, for two reasons. The first was the advances made in medicine and specific knowledge about various diseases and their treatments. The second factor was the Marijuana Tax Act of 1937. This legislation markedly decreased prescribed medicinal uses of marijuana.

The therapeutic uses of marijuana today are much more circumscribed. For the most part, synthetic products (such as dronabinol [trade name Marinol] and nabilone [Cesamet]) that chemically resemble the cannabinoids have been used in current treatment efforts because they provide the active elements of THC in a more stable manner (Joy et al., 1999; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013; Sussman et al., 1996). Synthetics also can provide better solubility. Unfortunately, a downside to the synthetics is the absence of the rapid effect experienced when marijuana is smoked. When synthetic THC is taken orally, it is broken down prior to entering the bloodstream and absorption thus is delayed. A recent development with promise is a cannabis oral spray (trade name Sativex), which has been approved in several countries for use as a treatment for neuropathic pain for individuals with multiple sclerosis. Sativex also holds promise for alleviating pain associated with rheumatoid arthritis and may even suppress the disease. Sativex has also shown some promise in animal research for improving memory loss in Alzheimer's disease.

The discovery of the cannabinoid receptor by Devane and his colleagues (described earlier) has important implications for future medical and psychotherapeutic uses of cannabis. The identification of the cannabinoid receptor also has advanced knowledge about the neurobiology of cannabis misuse. Perhaps more importantly in the context of therapeutics, it has opened wide investigation of compounds related to the endogenous cannabinoid system for potential applications with multiple disorders (de Fonseca & Schneider, 2008). For example, a medication based on the cannabinoid CB1 receptor, the antagonist rimonabant, is being used in the treatment

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of complicated obesity. Other medications based on the endogenous cannabinoid system are now in development or under evaluation.

Meanwhile, in the past several decades, we have witnessed sustained efforts to legalize marijuana use for medicinal purposes. Much of the early effort was spurred by an increased use of marijuana by those with HIV who found that marijuana reduces the nausea and vomiting caused by the disease and that it stimulates appetite, thus helping them to regain weight lost during their illness. The passage of propositions in a number of states demonstrates public sympathy for those positions. An offshoot of these efforts has been the establishment of "cannabis clubs" in several major U.S. cities. These organizations purchase marijuana in bulk and provide it (free or at cost) to individuals with AIDS, cancer, and other diseases.

As we have noted previously, there has been a dramatic increase in the last decade in the number of states that allow access to medical marijuana. These changes in access in part are based on actual research showing medical benefits of marijuana in the treatment of several disorders, which we will summarize in the following section.

Current Status of Medical Uses of Marijuana

The 2017 National Academies of Sciences report on the health effects of cannabis and cannabinoids provides the most up-to-date synthesis of the available research on medical marijuana. A summary of the conclusions reached in this report is presented in Table 11.1. The table summarizes the findings in terms of the extent to which the available evidence supports (or does not support) the use of marijuana as a treatment for the disorders studied. As can be seen in Table 11.1, the strongest support, reflecting "conclusive or substantial evidence" for effectiveness, was for three indications: chronic pain in adults, as an antiemetic in the treatment of chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, and for improving multiple sclerosis spasticity symptoms. In addition, there was moderate evidence for the effectiveness of medical marijuana for improving short-term sleep outcomes among individuals with various sleep disturbances. Finally, there was limited evidence for the use of marijuana for increasing appetite and decreasing weight loss associated with HIV/AIDS, improving clinician-measured multiple sclerosis spasticity symptoms, improving symptoms of Tourette syndrome, improving anxiety symptoms (as assessed by a public speaking test) in individuals with social anxiety disorders, and improving symptoms of posttraumatic stress disorder.

The report also identified several conditions for which there were indications medical marijuana would not be helpful. These included: to improve symptoms associated with dementia, to improve intraocular pressure associated with glaucoma, and to reduce depressive symptoms in individuals with chronic pain or multiple sclerosis. Finally, the report identified a number of conditions for which there was no or insufficient evidence to support or refute the potential benefits of medical marijuana. This list included cancers, symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome, epilepsy, spasticity in patients with paralysis due to spinal cord injury, and motor system symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease or the levodopa-induced dyskinesia.

The conclusions on the use of cannabis products in the treatment of various conditions are often based on limited data. It is possible that the marked increase in states permitting the use of marijuana as a treatment intervention or adjunct may facilitate more research on the potential benefits of marijuana not only on the conditions listed

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 11.1 Summary of Research on the Medical Use of Cannabis and Cannabinoids in the Treatment of a Variety of Conditions

There is conclusive or substantial evidence that cannabis or cannabinoids are effective:
- For the treatment of chronic pain in adults
- As antiemetics in the treatment of chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting
- For improving patient-reported multiple sclerosis spasticity symptoms

There is moderate evidence that cannabis or cannabinoids are effective for:
- Improving short-term sleep outcomes in individuals with sleep disturbance associated with obstructive sleep apnea syndrome, fibromyalgia, chronic pain, and multiple sclerosis

There is limited evidence that cannabis or cannabinoids are effective for:
- Increasing appetite and decreasing weight loss associated with HIV/AIDS
- Improving clinician-measured multiple sclerosis spasticity symptoms
- Improving symptoms of Tourette syndrome
- Improving anxiety symptoms, as assessed by a public speaking test, in individuals with social anxiety disorders
- Improving symptoms of posttraumatic stress disorder

There is limited evidence of a statistical association between cannabinoids and:
- Better outcomes (i.e., mortality, disability) after a traumatic brain injury or intracranial hemorrhage

There is limited evidence that cannabis or cannabinoids are ineffective for:
- Improving symptoms associated with dementia
- Improving intraocular pressure associated with glaucoma
- Reducing depressive symptoms in individuals with chronic pain or multiple sclerosis

There is no or insufficient evidence to support or refute the conclusion that cannabis or cannabinoids are an effective treatment for:
- Cancers, including glioma
- Cancer-associated anorexia cachexia syndrome and anorexia nervosa
- Symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome
- Epilepsy
- Spasticity in patients with paralysis due to spinal cord injury
- Symptoms associated with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
- Chorea and certain neuropsychiatric symptoms associated with Huntington's disease
- Motor system symptoms associated with Parkinson's disease or the levodopa-induced dyskinesia
- Dystonia
- Achieving abstinence in the use of addictive substances
- Mental health outcomes in individuals with schizophrenia or schizophreniform psychosis

Note: In many cases, the findings were specific to a particular application of medical marijuana, such as cannabis or cannabinoids.

Source: Adapted from *The Health Effects of Cannabis and Cannabinoids: The Current State of Evidence and Recommendations for Research* (National Academy of Sciences, 2017). Copyright © National Academy of Sciences.

in Table 11.1 but for other conditions as well. One impediment to future research, however, is that a variety of regulatory barriers, including the continuing classification of cannabis as a Schedule I substance, impedes the advancement of research in this area (NAS, 2017). However, as discussed earlier in this chapter, congressional representatives are considering declassifying marijuana as a Schedule I drug. Such reclassification would make scientific research concerning medicinal uses of marijuana much easier.

REVIEW ACTIVITY

1. Create a table listing the following medical conditions: chronic pain, HIV/AIDS, cancer, multiple sclerosis, and glaucoma; then describe the symptoms that can be treated with marijuana for each.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11.8 Physiological Effects

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

11-7 Evaluate the physiological and psychological effects of acute and long-term use of marijuana

Our discussion on physiological effects of marijuana will focus first on acute effects, and then on long-term effects.

Acute Effects

Although cannabis produces physiological effects, most of these actions are different across individuals, not only in strength or intensity of the effect but also in duration. In general, the acute physiological effects of marijuana in a healthy individual are not dramatic. In fact, the LeDain Commission (1972) reported the "short-term physiological effects of a typical cannabis dose on normal persons are generally quite benign, and are apparently of little clinical significance," a finding often reported in subsequent research.

The most commonly experienced effects are cardiovascular. Predominant among these is injection of the conjunctiva, or bloodshot eyes. This effect, a result of vasodilation, is most obvious about an hour after smoking, and it is generally dose related. Although some cite a concomitant dilation of the pupil, research does not support this claim. It appears more likely that the dilation is a consequence of smoking the marijuana in a darkened room. There does, however, tend to be a cannabis-induced sluggish reaction to light.

The second most common cardiovascular effect is an increase in heart rate and pulse rate (Grotenhermen, 2007; Kelly et al., 1993). Both of these effects last for about an hour, and each appears to be dose related. The peak heart rate occurs around 20 minutes after smoking. In addition to these effects, blood pressure tends to become slightly elevated. No evidence indicates that these effects create any permanent damage within the normal cardiovascular system (Institute of Medicine, 1982; Workshop on the Medical Utility of Marijuana, 1997).

Another general effect following cannabis use is a generalized decrease in motor activity. The only real exception to this is the talkative behavior of many following smoking. Some individuals also report drowsiness. Cannabis use also can have a marked effect on sleep stages, tending in part to decrease the total REM sleep achieved. However, this effect typically occurs only with higher doses of cannabis.

Other effects have also been reported, but they tend to be minor or infrequent and often variable from person to person. These other effects include (but are not limited to) dry mouth, thirst, fluctuations in respiration and body temperature, hunger or "the munchies" (peaking 2 to 3 hours after smoking), nausea, and headache or dizziness.

Longer-Term Effects

Data on the longer-term effects of marijuana unfortunately are sparse and difficult to interpret. The research that has been conducted has focused on four central systems: respiratory, cardiovascular, immune, and reproductive.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Respiratory System

There has been only a limited amount of controlled research on the long-term effects of smoking cannabis. Proper lung functioning appears to be altered as a consequence of smoking cannabis, raising the risk of worse respiratory symptoms and more frequent chronic bronchitis episodes (NAS, 2017). However, much of this impairment, such as airway obstruction, typically is reversed following abstinence from smoking. Marijuana cigarettes contain more tar than tobacco cigarettes. Additionally, cannabis tar contains greater amounts of cancerous agents than does tobacco tar (Jones, 1980; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). This is particularly noteworthy because those who smoke marijuana, in an effort to maximize the effects of the drug, inhale deeply and hold the smoke in their lungs. The long-term consequences remain unspecified, although one large-scale epidemiological study found that regular long-term smoking of marijuana does not impair lung functioning (Pletcher et al., 2012), and the recent NAS (2017) report found no relationship between cannabis use and lung cancer. One difficulty in specifying these effects more broadly is that those who smoke cannabis frequently also smoke cigarettes, and separating the effects of the two substances is difficult. Nevertheless, the possibility of lung damage due to marijuana smoking remains.

Cardiovascular System

The vast majority of cardiovascular effects associated with cannabis smoking were described earlier in this section as short term (or acute). No evidence shows that smoking marijuana produces deleterious cardiovascular effects among healthy individuals. The acute effects produced (e.g., increased heart rate) are, however, potentially dangerous among people who have existing cardiovascular problems, such as abnormal heart functioning or atherosclerosis.

Immune System

Although some of the early research on this topic was contradictory, it appears now that cannabis poses no significant long-term threat to the immune system. Thus, although cannabis can act as an immunosuppressant and decrease resistance to some viruses and bacteria, its clinical significance among otherwise healthy individuals remains questionable. The mechanism through which this immune dysfunction occurs has not yet been defined.

Reproductive System

Studies using animals and humans suggest that cannabis does disrupt the reproductive system in both males and females. For example, chronic marijuana use has been associated with decreases in the number of sperm and sperm motility among men (Rossato et al., 2008). The potential effects of these disruptions on fertility are difficult to specify. Frequent use of cannabis by women may produce nonovulatory menstrual cycles, in which menstruation is not preceded by the release of an ovum (Brents, 2016). As in the males, the delayed effects of these disruptions on fertility are not known. In reviews, researchers (Budney, Moore, & Vandrey, 2004; Ehrenkranz & Hembree, 1986; Sadeu et al., 2010; Zimmer & Morgan, 1997) concluded that disruptions in reproductive function are not obvious, although subtle alterations may be operative.

Of more concern are possible teratogenic effects. The active agents present when marijuana is smoked readily cross the placental barrier and expose a fetus to an array of cannabinoids. Although few data are available for humans, it does not appear that major birth malformations result. This does not mean significant effects cannot occur, however. The use of marijuana by pregnant women is associated with increased risk

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Jeffrey Rotman/Alamy Stock Photo

Marijuana dispensaries, such as this one in Portland, Oregon, have been established in a number of locations, state guidelines permitting, for the sale of marijuana for medical and/or recreational uses.

of premature birth, shorter body length, and lower infant birth weight (e.g., Day & Richardson, 1991; Fried, 1986). Another concern is that children born to mothers who used marijuana during pregnancy may be at greater risk of developing certain forms of childhood cancer (Robison et al., 1989; Grufferman et al., 1993). In addition, newborn infants whose mothers used marijuana during pregnancy have been noted to exhibit tremor, startle response, and altered visual responses (Jones, 1980), although the functional impact of these effects has not been determined. Longer-term consequences also have been reported. Children exposed to marijuana prenatally were found to show deficits on a sustained attention task at age 6 (Fried et al., 1992), to be more impulsive, hyperactive, and delinquent at age 10 (Goldschmidt et al., 2000), and to have cognitive deficits, poorer school performance, and increased risk for tobacco and/or marijuana use later in life (Minnes et al., 2011). The prudent advice is to not use cannabis during pregnancy.

Summary of Longer-Term Effects

It appears the majority of effects associated with marijuana use are more acute than chronic and that longer-term effects tend to be reversible with the termination of drug use. Significant exceptions may occur, however. Smoking marijuana may be found to be linked to various respiratory disorders, including cancer. Most of the negative effects found are correlated with higher doses and frequency of use than those described by most of those who smoke cannabis in this country. Nevertheless, these indications are tentative and await confirmation from more systematic and controlled research.

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast the acute and longer-term effects associated with marijuana use.
2. Explain why the drug experience associated with marijuana use may vary from individual to individual.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

11.9 Psychological Effects

Although cannabis can produce the varied effects previously noted, most who use marijuana use the drug to experience its psychological effects, some of which are reported consistently and others more idiosyncratically. The psychological effects that individuals generally experience can be divided into three domains: behavioral, cognitive, and emotional.

Some cannabis effects, especially those associated with the "marijuana high," are learned. This learning process has been described in detail by Becker (1953, 1963). According to Becker, the first step is mechanical, when one learns to inhale the smoke and hold it in the lungs to maximize intake and absorption. The second step is to learn to perceive the effects of the cannabis, which can be physical as well as psychological. The final step described by Becker is learning to label these effects as pleasant. This learning process accounts for the frequent finding that those who are more experienced with using cannabis are more sensitive to cannabis effects than novices are.

Behavioral Effects

The most common behavioral effect is a generalized decrease in psychomotor activity and decrements in some domains of psychomotor performance. These effects appear to be dose related, with more pronounced changes associated with greater amounts of marijuana taken in. The general decrease in motor activity appears to be pervasive, and the state is described as associated with feelings of relaxation and tranquility. The only exception to this effect appears to be speech because marijuana use is associated with rapid or slurred speech, circumstantial talk, and loquaciousness. These speech effects often are observed more in the early smoking phase, followed by the more traditional relaxation.

Although relaxation and a sense of well-being are the usual responses to cannabis, some first experience a stage in which they feel excited and restless. Fairly soon, however, these individuals virtually always experience a transition to the relaxation stage. Furthermore, despite feeling relaxed, individuals sometimes also feel their senses are markedly keener. Many, for example, describe more intense perceptions of touch, vision (especially in perceiving colors), hearing, and smell. The research cited to support these reports is not strong, though. Finally, other research has shown a decreased sensitivity to pain during marijuana intoxication.

Concomitant with the feelings of relaxation and decreased motor activity is a subtle impairment in some areas of psychomotor performance. There appear to be dose-related dysfunctions in motor coordination, signal detection, and the ability to monitor a moving object. The data on reaction time are not conclusive. Taken together, these findings have implications for driving a motor vehicle after using cannabis. Laboratory studies that use a driving simulator have revealed detrimental effects of marijuana on driving skill, and research summarized by Asbridge et al., (2012), Li et al. (2012), and the NAS (2017) indicates a significantly increased risk of a motor vehicle crash when under the influence of cannabis. Some of these impairments may be cognitively mediated in that drivers under the influence of marijuana showed impaired judgment and concentration along with other general driving skills. Others have suggested that some of the detriments in driving skill may be due to decreased vigilance and thus less awareness of peripheral stimuli. Therefore, it appears that cannabis can cause psychomotor impairment and that this impairment becomes more apparent in tasks that require thinking and concentration.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The influence of marijuana on sexual behavior and functioning is not fully understood, but its effects vary considerably from individual to individual. Some report that sexual pleasures are more intense and enjoyable when using marijuana, whereas others describe a disinterest in sex. Those who report increased sexual pleasure when smoking probably are responding to the enhanced sensory sensitivity that frequently accompanies marijuana use. The drug itself produces no known specific physiological response that stimulates sexual drive or performance. Long-term or heavy use of marijuana has been associated with temporary impotence among men and temporary decreases in sex drive among women.

Cognitive Effects

Two primary cognitive consequences of cannabis intoxication have been documented. The first is impaired short-term memory and the second is the perception that time passes more slowly.

The impairment in short-term memory seen following cannabis use can occur with intake of a fairly low dose (Deahl, 1991). The degree of impairment increases rapidly with the complexity of the memory task. This effect has been observed with various types of stimuli, such as word lists and conversational materials. More generally, the evidence indicates that cannabis intake impairs multiple aspects of memory, including the encoding, consolidation, and retrieval of information (Grotenhermen, 2007; Ranganathan & D'Souza, 2006). There is some evidence to suggest that adolescents may be more vulnerable to these cognitive effects of cannabis than adults (Schweinsburg et al., 2008).

The mechanisms of marijuana's effects on memory have not been specified, but Paton and Pertwee (1973) have identified several possibilities. The first cause simply may be that those who use cannabis are not motivated to attend to or to retrieve the material presented. Although this hypothesis is plausible, indications suggest participants in these experiments perceive the tasks administered as a challenge and respond actively to the task demands. A second possibility is that the perceptual changes created by cannabis produce a "curtain of interference" that blocks or hinders intake or retrieval of material. The third hypothesis proposed by Paton and Pertwee (1973) is that marijuana causes a decreased ability to concentrate and attend to the material presented. This mechanism was advocated by Abel (1971) and by DeLong and Levy (1974). These latter researchers have proposed a model of attentional processes as a central key in understanding the cognitive effects of cannabis. Finally, cannabis drug action may interfere with the neurochemical processes that operate in memory and retrieval operations. The exact factor, or set of factors, remains unknown, but it is likely that they operate in concert to affect short-term memory. However, likely mechanisms include cannabis effects on long-term potentiation and long-term depression and the inhibition of neurotransmitter (GABA, glutamate, acetylcholine, dopamine) release.

Altered perception of the passage of time is the second common cognitive effect of cannabis (Chait & Pierri, 1992). This is perhaps best described in statements like "a few minutes seemed to pass like hours." The effect has been noted in both surveys and the experimental literature. However, the time distortion is not as pronounced in the research reports as it is in more subjective self-reports that those who use marijuana provided.

Other cognitive effects of marijuana have been reported but not as consistently as those already described. One effect is decreased ability to attend and concentrate so that those who use marijuana are easily distracted. Many individuals report that

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

cannabis produces racing thoughts and "flight of ideas," in which various (and sometimes seemingly random) ideas "fly" in and out of the mind. Another perception sometimes reported is enhanced creativity. Writers and painters have especially noted this. Finally, some individuals describe occasional feelings of "unreality" (see Hollister et al., 1968) and the attachment of increased meaning to events or objects not previously perceived as important. Most of the effects noted are short-term.

The effects of long-term cannabis use on cognitive functioning have received much less attention. Research in this area has been increasing, although providing a mixed picture so far. Solowij (1998), Crean et al. (2011), and Meier et al. (2012), for example, reported that a longer history of use was associated with greater cognitive impairment, even after stopping marijuana use. Messinis et al. (2006) found that those using marijuana frequently (smoking four or more joints per week) performed worse than those who did not use marijuana on several measures of cognitive functioning, including divided attention (paying attention to more than one task at a time) and verbal fluency. Among those who use marijuana, those who had used marijuana for 10 or more years had more difficulties with their thinking abilities than those who had used marijuana for 5 to 10 years. Other studies comparing the cognitive functioning of individuals varying in the frequency of use (including currently using heavily, formerly using heavily, using infrequently, and not using) not found such a relationship (Lyketsos et al., 1999; Pope et al., 2001). Pope et al. (2001) found that intellectual impairment associated with heavy marijuana use is apparently reversible with abstinence. Although the available research on persistent cognitive effects from long-term marijuana use is equivocal (Crean et al., 2011; Grant et al., 2003; Van Amsterdam et al., 1996), the distinct possibility of enduring neurocognitive deficits associated with longer-term cannabis use certainly remains.

Emotional Effects

Positive emotional changes following cannabis intake are cited frequently as key motivators to smoke marijuana. Alterations in mood can occur, but there is uncertainty regarding the extent to which these are direct drug effects. A host of nonpharmacological factors can contribute to the drug effects experienced (Adesso, 1985; Zinberg, 1984). Chief among these nondrug influences are past experiences with cannabis, attitudes about the drug, expectancies regarding the drug use consequences, and the situational context of drug use. These factors must be considered in conjunction with the dose of THC absorbed to understand the emotional changes attributed to the drug.

The typical emotional response to cannabis is a carefree and relaxed state. This feeling has been described in various ways: euphoric, content, happy, and excited. It frequently includes laughter and loquaciousness and may take on the character of a dreamlike state. Most generally, the response is viewed as pleasant and positive. It appears the intensity of the response is positively correlated with the dose.

It is noteworthy that negative emotional feelings, such as anxiety or dysphoria, are more common than might be expected. Additionally, a variety of somatic consequences have been experienced, including headache, nausea, and muscle tension; less frequently reported are suspiciousness and paranoid ideation. About a third of those using marijuana at least occasionally experience some negative effects; however, the effects can be transitory. Individuals may fluctuate between experiencing these negative feelings and the more positive states described earlier. Also, the negative effects often are reported more by those inexperienced with cannabis.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In recent years, there has been an increased focus on the relationship between cannabis use and various mental health outcomes, such as schizophrenia, anxiety disorders, and depression. A review of the literature on this issue concluded that cannabis use increases one's risk for psychotic behavior outcomes (including schizophrenia), and not just among those who use cannabis heavily (Moore et al., 2007; NAS, 2017). In this regard, they found that those who used marijuana had around a 40% higher chance of developing a psychotic condition later in life, relative to those who did not use marijuana (although the risk is fairly low overall). Further, it appears that a younger age of onset of marijuana use is associated with a younger age of appearance of psychosis-related symptoms (Dragt et al., 2010, 2012). Although the data used to address this issue do not prove that marijuana use increases the risk for psychosis (instead, it could be something else about those who use cannabis, such as their use of other drugs or particular personality traits), the association is still noteworthy. A comparable relationship between cannabis use and anxiety disorders and depressive disorders was not found in the Moore et al. (2007) study. In another report, however, a modest link between cannabis use and the risk for a later episode of depression was found (van Laar et al., 2007). The mechanisms underlying these relationships are not known, although they do not appear to be related to cannabis-induced changes in brain anatomy (DeLisi, 2008; Linszen & van Amelsvoort, 2007). Instead, the positive relationship may reflect the impact of cannabis on the dopaminergic pathway, perhaps especially among genetically vulnerable individuals (Di Forti et al., 2007).

Social and Environmental Effects

Three hypothesized social and environmental consequences of cannabis use have received attention: the role of marijuana in enhancing interpersonal skills, the effect of cannabis on aggression and violence, and the role of marijuana use in what has been called the **amotivational syndrome**.

amotivational syndrome
Loss of effectiveness and reduced capacity to accomplish conventional goals as a result of chronic marijuana use.

Many young individuals who use marijuana have said they use the drug because it enhances their social skills and allows them to be more competent in social situations. Although insufficient data are available to evaluate it fully, this claim has not been supported by the available research. Rather, what seems to occur is that individuals either are more relaxed in the situation and thus perceive less anxiety or interpret their behavior differently while under the influence of marijuana. In any event, marijuana does not seem to significantly enhance competence in social situations.

A long-standing claim regarding cannabis use, dating in the United States to 1920s newspaper articles in New Orleans cited previously, is that marijuana causes individuals to be aggressive and violent. The overwhelming conclusion drawn from data, including surveys, laboratory investigations, and field studies, however, is that cannabis use is not causally related to increased aggression (Institute of Medicine, 1982). When aggression is observed, it probably is more a function of the beliefs and characteristics of the individual (Cherek et al., 1993). In fact, levels of aggression actually decrease following cannabis use.

Perhaps the most controversial social/environmental consequence of cannabis use is the amotivational syndrome. The term was used independently in the late 1960s by McGlothlin and West (1968) and Smith (1968) to describe the clinical observation "that regular marijuana use may contribute to the development of more passive, inward turning, amotivational personality characteristics" (McGlothlin & West, 1968). Based on case reports, the phenomenon was most likely to be seen among younger individuals who were using marijuana daily or heavily. The list of behaviors proposed as part of the syndrome includes apathy, decreased effectiveness, lost ambition, decreased sense of goals, and difficulty in attending and concentrating.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 11.4

AMP: Combining Embalming Fluid and Marijuana

There is seemingly no end to the number of ways in which a drug can be used or misused. Sometimes the effects of a drug are much more pronounced when the drug is taken, for example, intravenously versus orally. Sometimes the way a substance is prepared has an effect on how and what effects are experienced. One dramatic example of changing the preparation of a psychoactive substance is the drug known as AMP in the 1980s and now also called "dank." AMP/dank is marijuana soaked in embalming fluid or formaldehyde (the fluid's main ingredient) and dried before being smoked. Ivan Spector, a physician at Baylor College of Medicine in Texas, first described this in the clinical literature in 1985.

According to Spector, who provided case examples of patients seeking treatment after they smoked AMP, these individuals showed some profound psychiatric effects and impairments. Several of them reported they "immediately felt as if a transparent field has been placed between them and their surroundings." Among the symptoms associated with AMP intoxication are a slowed sense of time, memory impairment, disorientation, paranoid thoughts, anxiety, confusion, disordered thought and difficulties in reality testing, and tremor. Physiological components in the response to AMP intake include elevated blood pressure, hypersalivation, tachycardia, and psychomotor excitement.

It may be instructive to describe one of the cases seen by Spector. A 35-year-old woman, Ms. D., presented for treatment 3 days after smoking AMP. She felt anxious, was tremulous, was salivating excessively and sweating, and had a racing heartbeat. All of this closely followed the actual AMP smoking. Several hours later, she exhibited psychomotor retardation, secluded herself, reported she could not think well, lost all motivation, and described paranoid thoughts. Ms. D. also described hallucinations in which she saw blood on the walls. After 3 days, many of these complaints disappeared, with the exception of the anxiety and tremulousness. She was treated with an antianxiety medication, and the discomfort cleared within several days.

Ms. D's scenario was similar to those of others who used AMP described in the report, and we can offer two conclusions: One is that any given drug can be prepared in ways that markedly influence its effect on an individual. For example, in some areas, the formaldehyde is combined with the drug PCP before soaking the marijuana so as to increase the high. This form of preparation has been referred to as "fry." A second conclusion is that individuals may be in a situation in which the drug they are using is not quite what they thought it was. Some who used AMP reported they were given AMP by friends who told them it was only marijuana.

Although there does not seem to be much question that these characteristics cluster in some who use marijuana, the causal influence of cannabis is not clear (Brick, 1990). Also, there is some debate about just how commonly the syndrome occurs, with some citing it as fairly infrequent (Duncan, 1987). In addition, anthropological investigations of those who use cannabis heavily in other countries generally have not found the presence of the amotivational syndrome (e.g., Carter, 1980; Carter & Doughty, 1976; Comitas, 1976; Duncan, 1987; Page, 1983), and laboratory studies on cannabis use in humans have not supported the hypothesized syndrome (Foltin et al., 1989, 1990). Furthermore, survey studies do not always find the differences between those who do and do not use marijuana that would be expected if marijuana caused this clustering of effects. And, the amotivational syndrome has been seen in youths who do not use marijuana and is often not seen in those who use marijuana daily. Thus, both preexisting personality characteristics and some drug effects together probably account for the clustering labeled the amotivational syndrome, when it occurs.

REVIEW ACTIVITY

1. Create a chart and describe the behavioral, cognitive, emotional, and social/environmental effects of marijuana.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Summary

- The plant *Cannabis sativa* is more commonly known as marijuana. It once was harvested primarily for its fiber but now is most often grown for its psychoactive effects.
- Marijuana is the leafy top portion of the plant, and hashish is made from the resin the plant produces for protection from the sun.
- The use of cannabis for its intoxicating effects appears to have been centered in Asia, the Middle East, and North Africa for an extended period of time before Europe was exposed to these effects in the 19th century.
- Cannabis in the Americas dates to 1545, when the Spaniards brought it to Chile. The cannabis plant was raised in the American colonies for its fiber.
- Several influential reports have appeared on the use of marijuana and its effects, including the 1894 Indian Hemp Drugs Commission Report and the 1944 LaGuardia Committee Report. Such reports have tended to find that marijuana use overall is not particularly harmful to society at large.
- Marijuana is the most frequently used illicit drug in the United States, although its use has decreased over the last decade.
- The most common and efficient procedure for ingesting cannabis is smoking.
- The principal psychoactive agent in cannabis, isolated in 1964, is delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol, more commonly known as D-9-THC or simply THC.
- The potency of cannabis varies widely. Most of the marijuana grown in the United States has a lower THC content than that imported from overseas. The THC potency of marijuana smoked in the United States is typically 10% to 12% (10% to 20% for sinsemilla, a seedless variety of marijuana). Values for hashish and hash oil are higher, with hash oil containing up to 60% THC.
- The onset of THC action occurs within minutes of inhalation, and peak concentrations occur 30 to 60 minutes later. The effects are usually experienced for 2 to 4 hours. Most of the THC metabolites are excreted slowly, approximately half within several days and the remainder by the end of about a week. Some metabolites can be detected in the body for up to and beyond 30 days.
- The main actions of marijuana occur in the brain and result from the drug's effect on neurotransmitters. Although specification of the drug action remains speculative, recent advances include work on THC receptors in the brain.
- Tolerance, when it occurs, is most likely when high doses of cannabis are used over extended periods of time. Dependence on cannabis has been documented, although there is debate as to whether this dependence is more psychological than physical.
- Cannabis has long been used for medicinal and psychotherapeutic purposes. Today, it is most productively used for the treatment of chronic pain in adults, as an antiemetic in the treatment of chemotherapy-induced nausea and vomiting, and for improving symptoms of spasticity in individuals with multiple sclerosis.
- The acute effects of marijuana generally are benign. They include bloodshot eyes, increased heart rate and pulse rate, and decreased motor activity.
- Research on the long-term effects of marijuana is sparse. Some effects associated with long-term marijuana use appear to be reversible with termination of its use. There may be significant exceptions, such as the possible association between marijuana and lung cancer.
- Psychological effects of cannabis include decreased psychomotor activity, happy feelings and relaxation, impaired short-term memory, and altered time perception.
- Marijuana has not been shown to enhance social skills or to induce aggression or violence. The data on cannabis causing an amotivational syndrome are mixed. Both preexisting personality characteristics and drug effects probably account for what has been labeled the amotivational syndrome.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. The cannabis plant was raised for its psychoactive properties by the settlers at Jamestown and later by George Washington.
   F *Although they did cultivate the cannabis plant, it was for the use of its fiber and not for its psychoactive properties.*
2. The Eighteenth Amendment prohibiting the use of alcohol had the paradoxical effect of increasing the prevalence of marijuana use in the United States.
   T *As the price of alcoholic beverages rose and the quality of these products declined during the Prohibition era, commercial trade in marijuana "sprang up."*
3. Criminal penalties in the United States for the possession and use of marijuana have increased steadily since the 1960s.
   F *The penalties have been moderated significantly over this period, including the gradual decriminalization for possession of small amounts of marijuana. Throughout the 1960s, judges had the option of sentencing those who use or sell to life in prison.*
4. Women are more likely to be current users of marijuana than men.
   F *According to the 2015 National Survey on Drug Use and Health, men are more likely to be current users of marijuana than women.*
5. The marijuana smoked in the United States today is more potent than that smoked 30 years ago.
   T *The potency is approximately two to three times greater today.*
6. Drug effects following oral ingestion of marijuana last longer than after the drug is smoked.
   T *Although the onset of action is slower and up to three times as much marijuana is needed to create a comparable high, the drug effects following oral ingestion last 4 to 6 hours compared to 2 to 4 hours when smoked.*
7. Individuals who frequently use marijuana will show physical dependence.
   F *It is unclear whether individuals will develop physical dependence to marijuana. While some argue no significant withdrawal syndrome can be identified, others maintain several aspects of dependence can be associated with sustained heavy use of marijuana*
8. Marijuana has been used effectively to treat nausea and vomiting often associated with chemotherapy in the treatment of cancer.
   T *Cannabis and THC synthetics have often been used for this purpose.*
9. Marijuana cigarettes contain more tar than tobacco cigarettes.
   T *There is more tar in a marijuana cigarette than in a tobacco cigarette. In addition, cannabis tar contains a greater amount of cancerous agents than does tobacco tar.*
10. Marijuana use often causes long-term damage to the cardiovascular system.
    F *Although marijuana use does cause short-term increases in heart rate and pulse rate, no evidence shows that marijuana smoking produces deleterious cardiovascular effects in healthy individuals. The acute effects may be dangerous to individuals who have preexisting cardiovascular problems.*
11. One consequence of cannabis intoxication is the impairment of short-term memory.
    T *This impairment is a common consequence of marijuana use and can occur with intake of a fairly low dose. The degree of impairment increases rapidly with the complexity of the task.*
12. The most commonly reported emotional effects of cannabis use are suspiciousness and paranoid ideation.
    F *The typical emotional response to cannabis is a carefree and relaxed state. Paranoia and suspiciousness are reported less frequently and more often by those inexperienced with using cannabis.*
13. An area of concern regarding marijuana use is that it often causes individuals to be aggressive and violent.
    F *The overwhelming conclusion drawn from available data is that cannabis use is not causally related to increased aggression. In fact, levels of aggression decrease following cannabis use.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Key Terms

amotivational syndrome
apothecary
cannabinoids
delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol
hash oil
joint
tea-pads

Essays/Thought Questions

1. How do you think the patterns of marijuana use will change in response to a majority of states legalizing marijuana for personal or medicinal use? What changes do you anticipate among age, gender, and ethnic/racial groups? What evidence can you use to support your thinking?
2. What do you think might be the critical determinants of a person's decision to use marijuana?
3. If an individual has a prescription for medical use of marijuana, should they be allowed to cultivate their own marijuana? What factors can you identify that support this? What factors can you identify that would lead you to argue against this?

Suggested Readings

Becker, H. S. (1953). Becoming a marihuana user. *American Journal of Sociology, 59*, 235–242.

Booth, M. (2003). *Cannabis: A history.* St. Martin's Press.

Earleywine, M. (2002). *Understanding marijuana: A new look at the scientific evidence.* Oxford University Press.

Ludlow, F. H. (1979). *The hasheesh eater: Being passages from the life of a Pythagorean.* City Lights Books (Original work published 1857).

National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine (NAS). (2017). *The health effects of cannabis and cannabinoids: The current state of evidence and recommendations for research.* The National Academies Press.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

12-1 Discuss the historical use of hallucinogens

12-2 Distinguish how the different classes of hallucinogens affect the nervous system and behavior

12-3 Describe how hallucinogens are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body

12-4 Compare the roles of the individual and environmental factors on the drug experience associated with hallucinogens

12-5 Analyze the evidence concerning whether MDMA causes long-term damage to the brain

12-6 Evaluate the potential clinical applications of hallucinogens and their effectiveness in treating a variety of psychological disorders

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

12 Hallucinogens

Overview

Serotonergic Hallucinogens: LSD and Related Compounds

- Early History
- Recent History
- Mechanisms of Action of LSD-Like Drugs
- Pharmacokinetics of LSD-Like Drugs
- Psychotherapeutic Uses
- Effects of Serotonergic Hallucinogens
- Adverse Effects of Serotonergic Hallucinogens

Methylated Amphetamines

- Overview
- History and Epidemiology
- Effects of Methylated Amphetamines
- Toxicity
- Residual Effects of MDMA
- Psychotherapeutic Uses

Anticholinergic Hallucinogens

Dissociative Anesthetic Hallucinogens

- History
- Pharmacokinetics
- Effects of PCP and Ketamine
- Psychotherapeutic Uses

Salvinorin A (Salvia)

- Summary

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Unlike other classes of drugs, most hallucinogens are derived from synthetic compounds.

___ 2. Hallucinogenic compounds were commonly used throughout Europe and the United States in the early 1900s.

___ 3. The hallucinogenic properties of LSD were discovered by accident.

___ 4. Psilocybin and MDMA are under study for use in psychotherapy.

___ 5. Federal law mandates that anyone using LSD more than five times be declared legally insane.

___ 6. Use of LSD, even once, is likely to cause permanent chromosome damage and subsequent birth defects.

___ 7. Ecstasy (MDMA) produces vivid visual hallucinations.

___ 8. Ecstasy is chemically similar to both hallucinogens and stimulants.

___ 9. Hallucinations experienced under the influence of drugs such as LSD are very similar to those that people with schizophrenia experience.

___10. Phencyclidine (PCP or angel dust), like other hallucinogens, does not cause physical dependence.

___11. Reports of LSD flashbacks are now considered urban myth.

___12. Phencyclidine (PCP or angel dust) was originally used as an animal tranquilizer.

12.1 Overview

Hallucinogens are a class of drugs that alter sensory perception and exert profound effects on mood, thinking processes, and physiological processes. Hallucinogens are fascinating drugs because they alter consciousness in profound and bizarre ways. However, they are also confusing drugs, as the various hallucinogenic drugs act in a variety of ways. Some researchers previously used the term *psychomimetics* to describe them, due to a belief that these drugs mimic the symptoms of disorders such as schizophrenia. During the 1960s, advocates of hallucinogen use referred to them as *psychedelics*, a term coined by one of the early LSD experimenters, Humphry Osmond. Osmond defined *psychedelic* as "mind-expanding or mind-revealing" (Stevens, 1987), but whether LSD or other hallucinogens actually produce these effects is controversial. Thus we avoid using that term.

We are left with the term *hallucinogen*, but even this term is misleading. It does focus attention on hallucinations and other alterations in perception, and indeed most of the drugs in this category (but not all, e.g., methylated amphetamines) generally do produce sensory disturbances or alterations that can be considered hallucinogenic. Hallucinogens alter nearly all aspects of psychological functioning, and the phrase "altered state of consciousness" describes these drugs better than any we have considered.

An additional complexity is that more than 90 different species of plants and many more synthetic agents can produce these kinds of effects (Siegel, 1984).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To aid in understanding the diverse types of hallucinogens, we organize them on the basis of their mechanisms of action and effects into these five subgroups:

- Serotonergic hallucinogens
- Methylated amphetamines
- Anticholinergic hallucinogens
- Dissociative anesthetics
- Salvinorin A

serotonergic hallucinogens
A class of drugs that includes LSD and drugs with similar effects and mechanisms of actions.

mescaline
An LSD-like hallucinogen found in the peyote cactus.

psilocybin ('sī-e-'sī-ben)
An LSD-like hallucinogen found in mushrooms.

The first and historically most important group is referred to as the **serotonergic hallucinogens**. This category includes the synthetic compound lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) and related drugs, such as **mescaline** (from the peyote cactus) and **psilocybin** (from certain mushrooms), along with many other less well-known compounds. These drugs all produce vivid visual hallucinations and a variety of other effects on consciousness. Numerous experiments suggest that, despite differing chemical structures, these drugs also have in common the action of influencing serotonergic transmission in the brain. In fact, drugs in this group all seem to bind to a particular subtype of serotonin receptor referred as the 5-HT_{2A} receptor, and activation of these receptors is thought to be the key factor in producing visual hallucinations (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013).

methylated amphetamines
A class of drugs including MDA and MDMA (Ecstasy).

The second class of hallucinogens includes MDA and MDMA (Ecstasy/Molly), referred to as the **methylated amphetamines**. As the name suggests, these drugs are structurally related to amphetamine (as is mescaline). MDA and MDMA produce alterations in mood and consciousness with little or no sensory change. They do seem to produce unique effects on social behavior, emotionality, and empathy. Like amphetamine and cocaine, these drugs act on dopamine, norepinephrine, and serotonin synapses. Although their effects are most potent on the serotonergic system, they do not bind selectively to the 5-HT_{2A} receptor, and this is thought to be the basis of their difference from the LSD-like hallucinogens (Iversen, 2008; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013).

anticholinergic hallucinogens
A class of drugs including atropine and scopolamine.

A third class of hallucinogens, called the **anticholinergic hallucinogens**, is less familiar to most people and includes drugs such as atropine and scopolamine found in plants such as mandrake, henbane, belladonna, and jimsonweed. These drugs produce a dreamlike trance in individuals from which they awaken with little or no memory of the experience. The drugs in this class are antagonists of a subtype of acetylcholine receptors called muscarinic receptors (Prus, 2014).

dissociative anesthetic
A class of drugs including PCP and ketamine.

A fourth class of hallucinogens includes phencyclidine (PCP or angel dust) and the related compound ketamine. These are often referred to as the **dissociative anesthetics** because of their ability to produce surgical anesthesia while an individual remains at least semiconscious. Dissociative anesthetics are thought to act through a receptor that influences activity of the excitatory amino acid neurotransmitter, glutamate (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013).

salvinorin A
A hallucinogenic chemical found in the plant Salvia Divinorum.

Finally, a somewhat different type of hallucinogen, **salvinorin A** is a chemical found in a plant in the sage family (*Salvia divinorum*) and often referred to as diviner's sage or just salvia. Almost completely unknown until recently, salvia is not currently a federal controlled substance, although some states have banned it. Relatively little is known about salvinorin A, but it appears to act differently on the brain from any of the previously known hallucinogens by affecting specialized opiate receptors known as kappa receptors, and thus we classify it as a kappa hallucinogen (Prus, 2014).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

12.2 Serotonergic Hallucinogens: LSD and Related Compounds

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **12-1** Discuss the historical use of hallucinogens
- **12-2** Distinguish how the different classes of hallucinogens affect the nervous system and behavior
- **12-3** Describe how hallucinogens are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body
- **12-4** Compare the roles of the individual and environmental factors on the drug experience associated with hallucinogens

Table 12.1 lists some of the major drugs that are thought to obtain their hallucinogenic properties by altering serotonin function in the brain. LSD is the prototype hallucinogen of this class, but drugs with effects similar to those of LSD were used long before LSD was synthesized. As you can see in Table 12.1, LSD-like hallucinogens are found in a wide variety of plants. The hallucinogenic properties of these plants were primarily discovered and used by the Indigenous peoples of Central and South America (an exception is ibogaine, which Indigenous peoples of Africa discovered and used). Historians and anthropologists have reconstructed the uses to which these hallucinogenic plants were put, and these are worth some consideration here.

Early History

When the Spanish *conquistadores* began to explore and colonize Mexico and other regions of Central and South America, they encountered civilizations with customs and religious practices unfamiliar to Europeans. Among these practices was the use of hallucinogenic plants in religious ceremonies. One of the earliest documentations was by Fernando Hernandez, the royal physician to the king of Spain (Stewart, 1987).

TABLE 12.1 Serotonergic Hallucinogens

Drug	Botanical Source	Area Found	Other Names
Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD)	Synthetic, but derived from the ergot fungus	Ergot native to Europe	Acid, many others
Ibogaine	Iboga plant: *Tabernanthe iboga*	Africa	—
Psilocybin	Mushrooms of genus *Psilocybe, Conocybe, Panaeolus,* and *Stropharia*	Throughout the world	Teonanacatl
Dimethyltryptamine (DMT)	Virola tree: *Virola calophylla* and other species	South America	Ayahuasca, Yakee, Yopo
Mescaline	Peyote cactus: *Lophophora williamsii*	Mexico and Southwestern U.S.	Peyote
Lysergic acid amide	Morning glory seeds: *Rivea corymbosa, Ipomoea violacea*	Throughout the world	Ololiuqui

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In 1577, he studied the plants the Aztecs used and noted the use of peyote cactus (referred to as peyotl), psilocybe mushrooms (called teonanacatl), and morning glory seeds (called ololiuqui). Although each of these plants contains a different drug, all produce vivid visual hallucinations, and the Aztecs took the visions as oracles that could reveal the future and solve other mysteries, help in decision making, and aid the shaman in healing the sick (see the Drugs and Culture Box 12.1).

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 12.1

Peyote

Peyote may have been the most widespread hallucinogenic drug in the Americas, which is surprising given that the range of the peyote cactus is limited to a relatively small area of northern Mexico and southwestern Texas. The Aztecs used peyote in their rituals, and de Sahagun noted, "Those who eat or drink it see visions either frightful or laughable . . ." (Stewart, 1987, p. 19). Peyote, like ololiuqui and sacred mushrooms, was forbidden to Native Americans by the Spaniards, who regarded its use for religious purposes as blasphemous. Thus, the use of all these agents persisted only "underground," and little is known of them before the 20th century. The peyote religion spread widely during the 18th and 19th centuries, however, to unite most Native Americans in western Mexico and the United States.

The Native Americans in the Southwest gathered peyote by cutting the cactus at the soil line, leaving the root intact. The cactus was sliced and dried into hard "buttons." These buttons could be transported great distances without losing their potency, and indeed they found their way to Native Americans living throughout the West and as far north as Minnesota and Wisconsin. The ritual itself is almost identical regardless of the Indigenous group studied. The all-night ceremony takes place in a large tepee where the participants sit in a circle around a fire, eating peyote buttons and drinking peyote tea. They smoke tobacco in cigarettes or a pipe. The night is spent chanting, singing, praying, and later on discussing and interpreting the peyote-induced visions. Some Native Americans still conduct these ceremonies today, much as they did many centuries ago (Stewart, 1987).

Todd Pierson/Shutterstock.com

Mescaline comes from the peyote cactus, *Lophophora williamsii.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The Aztec and Mayan peoples called the psilocybe mushrooms *teonanacatl*, which means "flesh of the gods," and as one might guess from that name, the mushrooms were viewed as sacred. Mushroom icons found in Mayan ruins dating back to before 1000 B.C. suggest that the use of the sacred mushroom was an ancient practice (Schultes, 1976). One Spanish writer, de Sahagun in the 1500s, described the use of mushrooms by Aztecs as follows:

> These mushrooms caused them to become intoxicated, to see visions and also to be provoked to lust. . . . They ate the mushrooms with honey and when they began to feel excited due to the effect of the mushrooms, the Indians started dancing, while some were singing and others weeping. . . . Some Indians who did not care to sing, sat down in their rooms, remaining there as if to think. Others, however, saw in a vision that they died and thus cried; others saw themselves eaten by a wild beast; others imagined that they were capturing prisoners of war; others that they were rich or that they possessed many slaves; others that they had committed adultery and had their heads crushed for this offense. . . . (Schlieffer, 1973, p. 19)

"Rotating kaleidoscopes . . . kaleidoscopes moving horizontally . . . weeds, lots of yellow weeds multiplying, embellished with colors . . ."

Description of a peyote vision (Siegel, 1992)

This may be the first description of hallucinogenic drug effects that captures the range of experiences different individuals may have after taking the drug. The use of sacred mushrooms persists in parts of Mexico in rituals for healing and divination (Schultes, 1976).

In South America, a number of different hallucinogenic plants traditionally have been used in much the same way as peyote and psilocybin were used farther north. Perhaps the best known is a concoction called ayahuasca or hoasca used by Indigenous peoples of the western Amazon area of Brazil, Colombia, Peru, Ecuador, and Bolivia. Several different plants may be used to produce ayahuasca tea, but generally it includes at least one plant that contains the serotonergic hallucinogen, dimethyltryptamine (DMT). DMT is found in many plants in this region, but the most common sources are various species of the Virola tree (*Virola calophylla* or *V. theiodora*) or an Amazonian bush called Chacruna (*Psychotria viridis*). However, DMT is normally not effective when taken orally because it is broken down by enzymes (monoamine oxidase, MAO) before reaching the brain. Ayahuasca tea usually contains a second plant, usually a woody vine (*Banisteriopsis caapi* or *B. inebrians*) that contains an MAO inhibitor that prevents the breakdown of the DMT and is thought to allow it to reach the brain (Shulgin & Shulgin, 1997). Sometimes Virola bark is ground into powder and taken intranasally as a snuff that is also effective. Ayahuasca produces a brief (1- to 2-hour) experience characterized by intense visual hallucinations and is traditionally used in healing ceremonies, initiation rites, and other rituals. It is said that the plants provide individuals with telepathic powers, but this claim has no scientific support (Schultes, 1976), and in fact,

Mares Lucian/Shutterstock.com

Psilocybin comes from mushrooms such as this *Psilocybe cubensis*.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Dr. Morley Read/Shutterstock.com

Banisteriopsis caapi vine, one of the plants used to make ayahuasca tea.

the effects are similar to those of the other serotonergic hallucinogens. Ayahuasca and DMT have recently become rather controversial because of contemporary usage (see Drugs and Culture Box 12.2).

Recent History

Despite the long history of hallucinogenic drug use, these drugs had virtually no impact on mainstream European or American culture until the 1960s, when hallucinogen use exploded. The history of the "psychedelic movement" began in Basel, Switzerland, where Albert Hofmann, a chemist working in Sandoz Laboratories, discovered LSD in 1938. Hofmann was studying derivatives of ergot, a fungus that infests grain and occasionally caused outbreaks of disease (Saint Anthony's fire) in medieval Europe when infected bread was eaten. Ergot derivatives have medical use in the treatment of migraine headache and to induce uterine contractions during pregnancy, and this accounted for Sandoz's interest. Hofmann eventually synthesized compounds involving lysergic acid, the 25th of which was lysergic acid diethylamide—abbreviated LSD-25 on the bottle. LSD underwent several preliminary animal tests, but it showed no commercially interesting properties and was shelved. It stayed unknown until 1943, when Hofmann decided to reexamine its properties. During a laboratory experiment, Hofmann apparently spilled a small amount of LSD on his hand, where it was absorbed. Thus, Hofmann became the first person to experience the effects of LSD. He described his reaction as follows:

> I was forced to interrupt my work in the laboratory in the middle of the afternoon and proceed home, being affected by a remarkable restlessness, combined with a slight dizziness. At home I lay down and sank into a not unpleasant intoxicated-like condition, characterized by an extremely stimulated imagination. In a dreamlike state, with eyes closed . . . I perceived an uninterrupted stream of fantastic pictures, extraordinary shapes with intense, kaleidoscopic play of colors. (Hofmann, 1980, p. 15)

Hofmann decided the bizarre experience must have been due to contact with LSD, so he decided to test that hypothesis. He reasoned that LSD must be very potent to have produced such effects through an accidental exposure, and he measured out for oral administration 250 micrograms—a minute amount by the standards of drugs known at that time. What Hofmann could not have known is that LSD is *so* potent that this dose was at least twice as potent as the normal effective dose (25 to 125 micrograms).

After taking the drug, Hofmann (1980) noted in his journal: "Beginning dizziness, feeling of anxiety, visual distortions, symptoms of paralysis, desire to laugh" (p. 16).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

At this point, Hofmann was overcome by the drug and could no longer write. He asked his assistant to escort him home, and he later wrote about his LSD trip:

> On the way home, my condition began to assume threatening forms. Everything in my field of vision wavered and was distorted as if seen in a curved mirror. . . . Finally we arrived at home safe and sound, and I was just barely capable of asking my companion to summon our family doctor and request milk from the neighbors . . . as a nonspecific antidote for poisoning.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 12.2

DMT: The Spirit(ual) Molecule

The use of DMT through drinking ayahuasca tea or taking virola snuff is an ancient practice among people indigenous to the Amazon basin. The traditional ayahuasca ceremonies and practices have been studied by anthropologists who have noted that these have multiple purposes. The altered state of consciousness and visual hallucinations are seen as a means of communication with a spirit world and of obtaining divine guidance. Shamans use ayahuasca in healing ceremonies to improve physical health and to exorcise evil spirits (de Rios & Rumrrill, 2008). A modern manifestation of these traditions emerged in the form of a religious group in Brazil in the 1960s called União do Vegetal (UDV). This religion combines features of Christianity with traditional Amazonian beliefs and practices, including ceremonial and spiritual use of ayahuasca. UDV members use ayahuasca legally in Brazil, but when the UDV church came to the United States, it was met with legal challenges because DMT is a Schedule I drug. However, UDV members appealed their right to use DMT for religious purposes, and a 2006 Supreme Court decision found in their favor. Now DMT is becoming more popular in the United States. This is in part because of the increasing availability of synthetic forms of DMT and perhaps also because of publicity generated by new-age media such as the 2010 documentary film *DMT: The Spirit Molecule* and the book of the same title (Strassman, 2000). A relatively new phenomenon is the emergence of "ayahuasca tourism," in which European and U.S. tourists travel to Peru or Brazil on a spiritual quest to participate in ayahuasca sessions with local shamans. However, a tourist industry has developed around this and the sessions are usually conducted not by true shamans but rather by travel agents who have acquired some knowledge of ayahuasca (de Rios & Rumrrill, 2008).

Mark Galizio

Ayahuasca tourism, Peru.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

> My surroundings had now transformed themselves in more terrifying ways. Everything in the room spun around, and assumed grotesque, threatening forms. They were in continuous motion, animated, as if driven by an inner restlessness. The lady next door, whom I scarcely recognized, brought me milk. . . . She was no longer Mrs. R., but rather a malevolent, insidious witch with a colored mask. . . . (pp. 16–17)

Later, as the intensity of the drug effects began to subside, Hofmann reported enjoying the hallucinations and altered thought processes. After he recovered and made his report to Sandoz, many other tests followed.

Sandoz began to distribute LSD to psychologists and psychiatrists for use as an adjunct to psychotherapy. The theory was that the drug would break down the patient's normal ego defenses and thus facilitate the psychotherapy process. Psychiatrists were encouraged to try LSD themselves so they would better understand the subjective experience of schizophrenia. The idea was that LSD was psychotomimetic—that is, it mimicked psychosis.

By the early 1960s, many people had tried LSD, and it was beginning to generate some publicity. Movie star Cary Grant said in an interview that his LSD psychotherapy changed his whole life and brought him true peace of mind. The British author Aldous Huxley, who earlier had tried peyote and written a book about his experiences (Huxley, 1954), promoted LSD and other hallucinogenic drugs as leading to the next step in human evolution. But the most influential of those who used LSD were Harvard psychologist Timothy Leary and writer Ken Kesey.

Leary and his Harvard associate Richard Alpert (who later became known as religious writer Baba Ram Dass) had taken LSD and other hallucinogens and become convinced of their psychological and spiritual value. What began as legitimate experiments, including work on the possible beneficial effects of hallucinogens on prison inmates, began to look suspiciously like LSD parties involving Harvard faculty, students, and an assortment of celebrities and intellectuals. At some point, Leary had stepped out of his role as a scientist and had become the leader of a social and religious movement. Calling himself "High Priest," Leary claimed LSD was a ticket for a trip to spiritual enlightenment. He exhorted an entire generation to "Turn on. Tune in. Drop out" (Stevens, 1987). Leary left Harvard under duress in 1963, but continued to proselytize for LSD and in fact became a media celebrity. Harassment by law enforcement officials continued to increase Leary's eminence, and he became viewed as something of a martyr, winning new converts as a curious nation heard more and more about the wonders of LSD.

On the West Coast, LSD was popularized by Ken Kesey, celebrated author, and his "merry pranksters" of *One Flew Over the Cuckoo's Nest*. As recounted by Wolfe (1969), Kesey's "acid tests" were large parties where hundreds of people were "turned on to LSD" in a single night. LSD began to make an impact on the emerging hippie subculture, particularly through the music of groups like the Grateful Dead, Jefferson Airplane, Jimi Hendrix, and others whose music became known as "acid rock." Eventually, the Beatles became part of the movement, and the surreal images of songs such as "Lucy in the Sky with Diamonds" had the entire Western world talking about LSD.

By the late 1960s, LSD had become the most controversial drug in the world. As many as 2 million people in the United States had tried LSD, but the positive statements about LSD were counterbalanced by increasing negative publicity. LSD was claimed to cause chromosome damage; those who used LSD were said to be likely to have children born with birth defects. It was said to cause insanity, suicide, acts of violence, and homicidal behavior (Stevens, 1987). All of this controversy led to a

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

decline in LSD use in the 1970s and 1980s, but perhaps equally important was a loss of faith in the LSD mystique, the recognition that spiritual enlightenment produced by LSD was a false hope. As Hunter S. Thompson (1971) put it in his chronicle of the era:

> This was the fatal flaw in Tim Leary's trip. He crashed around America selling consciousness expansion without ever giving a thought to the grim meat-hook realities that were lying in wait for all the people who took him too seriously. . . . Not that they didn't deserve it: No doubt they all Got What Was Coming To Them. All those pathetically eager acid freaks thought they could buy Peace and Understanding for three bucks a hit. But their loss and failure is ours, too. What Leary took down with him was the central illusion of a whole life-style that he helped to create . . . a generation of permanent cripples, failed seekers, who never understood the essential old-mystic fallacy of the Acid Culture: the desperate assumption that somebody—or at least some force—is tending that Light at the end of the tunnel. (pp. 178–179)

The use of LSD did not vanish, but it did decline throughout the 1980s. Then LSD use, along with other hallucinogens, increased once again in the 1990s. For example, a national survey of high school seniors showed increases in reported LSD use through the early part of that decade, reaching a peak in 1996, when 8.8% reported having used LSD during the past year. LSD use has declined substantially since then, with only 2% of U.S. high school seniors reporting use of LSD during 2013 (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2016). However, interest in other hallucinogens seems to have grown. The 2016 high school senior survey found a significant increase in overall use of hallucinogens during the past year (up to 4.3%) as well as MDMA use (2.7%). Use of serotonergic hallucinogens is not well documented in the adult population, but interest in drugs like DMT and psilocybin seems to be rising (see Drugs and Culture Box 12.2). So, LSD and related hallucinogens continue to be significant issues.

Mechanisms of Action of LSD-Like Drugs

The mechanisms by which LSD and related drugs are capable of producing—in such small doses—such dramatic effects as visual hallucinations and alterations of consciousness remain enigmatic, but there is increasing consensus that an important feature is the alteration of activity of brain systems mediated by the neurotransmitter serotonin. The first bit of evidence was suggested by the chemical structures of some of the major hallucinogens. LSD, psilocybin, and many of the other drugs listed in Table 12.1 have similar chemical structures that resemble that of the naturally occurring transmitter serotonin. The structural similarity led to the notion that LSD and related compounds might act by mimicking serotonin and thus activate serotonin receptors in the brain. This hypothesis has now received considerable support. Research demonstrates that LSD and the related hallucinogens bind to certain subtypes of serotonin receptors (5-HT_{2A} receptors), and that this effect correlates strongly with the potency of the drug as a hallucinogen (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013; Nichols, 2004).

One problem with this analysis that has puzzled researchers is the structure of mescaline. Mescaline has a chemical structure more similar to amphetamines than to LSD, and affects both noradrenergic and serotonergic systems. Mescaline, like LSD is an agonist at the specialized group of serotonin receptor subtypes called 5-HT^{2A} receptors, providing further support that these receptors play an important role in mediating the visual hallucinations common to all the drugs in this class (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). For this reason, it has often been classified as having a different mechanism

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

from LSD. Unlike amphetamine (and the methylated amphetamines like MDMA, discussed later), however, mescaline produces vivid visual hallucinations virtually identical in form to those of LSD. Further evidence for a common mechanism of action between LSD and mescaline comes from studies on tolerance. Tolerance to all the effects of LSD develops fairly rapidly, and the same is true for mescaline. In addition, there is cross-tolerance between LSD, mescaline, and other drugs of this class (Abraham et al., 1996), suggesting a common mechanism of action.

As we noted in Chapter 3, serotonin is distributed widely in the brain. This may account for the enormously varied effects of LSD-like hallucinogens. Serotonin is thought to play an important role in mood, which is consistent with the powerful emotional effects of these drugs. The precise areas of the brain responsible for the hallucinogenic actions of these drugs remain open to debate, but research with modern neuroimaging techniques is promising. For example, a recent fMRI study in humans (Tagliazucchi et al., 2017) reported that LSD increased connectivity—essentially cross-talk—between brain regions with a high density of 5-HT_{2A} receptors in several regions of the cortex and also the thalamus. This brain activity was correlated with self-reports of seeing "colors and patterns with eyes closed" and "I experienced a dissolving of self . . ." Interestingly, many drugs that affect serotonin do not produce hallucinations (e.g., MDMA, SSRI antidepressants), and thus many questions remain regarding just how serotonergic hallucinogens produce their remarkable effects.

Pharmacokinetics of LSD-Like Drugs

As we have noted, all the hallucinogens that act on serotonin receptors have similar effects. However, these drugs differ widely in potency, duration of action, and other pharmacokinetic variables. LSD is the most potent of the class, with oral doses as small as 25 micrograms producing effects. Street doses range from about 12 to 350 micrograms and are prepared by placing a small amount of LSD solution in a gel (windowpane), in a tablet, or, most commonly, on paper (blotter) with colorful cartoon designs (Dal Cason & Franzosa, 2003). LSD is rapidly absorbed, and subjective effects are usually noted within 20 to 60 minutes after consumption. The drug is distributed throughout the body and readily penetrates the blood-brain barrier. The effects of LSD persist for 8 to 12 hours, and the drug is rapidly metabolized and eliminated from the body. Even the most sensitive techniques can detect LSD or its metabolites in urine for no longer than 72 hours after use (Hawks & Chiang, 1986).

People normally take psilocybin orally by either eating the mushrooms or drinking a brew containing them. It is difficult to specify doses because the amount of psilocybin varies depending on the species of mushroom, among other things. Typically, 5 to 10 grams of mushrooms are taken, which contain 10 to 20 milligrams of psilocybin. Thus, psilocybin is about 1% as potent as LSD. The duration of action is about 4 to 6 hours. As is true of virtually all the serotonergic hallucinogens, tolerance develops to both LSD and psilocybin, and both show cross-tolerance with each other as well as with other members of the class (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1979).

Mescaline is normally taken by consuming peyote buttons. Usually, 5 to 20 buttons are eaten, delivering 200 to 800 milligrams of mescaline. Mescaline is about 1/3,000 as potent as LSD, with 200 milligrams considered an effective dose. Duration of action is about 10 to 14 hours (Strassman, 2005).

Less information is available about the other serotonergic hallucinogens, but most are similar. One noteworthy exception is DMT, which is relatively short acting. Its effects begin within minutes of use but persist for only about 60 minutes (Dal Cason & Franzosa, 2003).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Psychotherapeutic Uses

LSD and the related hallucinogens historically have been thought to have two applications in psychotherapy. The first is the notion that LSD produced a model psychosis and that psychotherapists would benefit from having experiences similar to those of their patients. This idea has been discarded. It is true that hallucinations, unusual affective reactions, and loss of reality contact are characteristics of both schizophrenia and hallucinogenic experiences, but there also are important differences. For example, the hallucinations experienced under the influence of LSD are primarily visual, whereas those of individuals with schizophrenia are usually auditory (Strassman, 2005), so the subjective experiences of one with schizophrenia are certainly not identical to those using a hallucinogen. An intriguing similarity is that chlorpromazine and the other antipsychotics used in the treatment of schizophrenia are effective antagonists of LSD effects. Thus, serotonergic hallucinogens may yet provide clues about the biochemistry of mental disorders (e.g., Marona-Lewicka et al., 2005).

Paradoxically, the other major application of hallucinogens has been their use as an adjunct to psychotherapy. The general idea was that therapists would be able to learn important information when their patients were using LSD and that the patients would be better able to gain insight into their condition because LSD could break down ego defenses. Many extravagant claims were made about the benefits of LSD for mental health and spiritual development in the 1960s, but interest in the use of LSD in psychotherapy declined in the wake of Timothy Leary. Although one important reason for this was the political climate, another was that most

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 12.3

Prescription Hallucinogens? Promising Results for Novel Treatments

In the 1960s, there was great interest in the potential for hallucinogenic drugs to serve as adjuncts to psychotherapy. Most of the studies used LSD and, although the results were seen as promising, there were also numerous adverse reactions (Larsen, 2016). When LSD and related hallucinogens became Schedule I drugs in 1970, research with human participants came to a halt. However, the past 10 years have seen a renaissance in hallucinogen research, but with the emphasis shifted away from LSD and focused on psilocybin, MDMA, and ketamine. Psilocybin and MDMA are both Schedule I drugs, which complicates research, but new protocols have been developed to increase the safety for study participants, which, in turn, has led to approval to proceed (Johnson et al., 2008). The preliminary results, discussed in the text, have been exciting, with positive outcomes for psilocybin in treatment of anxiety, depression, and drug dependence and MDMA for post traumatic stress disorder (Mithoefer et al., 2016). Because ketamine is a Schedule III drug, physicians are already prescribing it as single-dose, fast-acting treatment for depression with promising results.

So are we on the verge of a new era in treatment with hallucinogenic drugs? Several hurdles will have to be jumped before these drugs are approved. One problem is that demonstrations of treatment efficacy require double-blind research, and this is hard to achieve with hallucinogenic drugs as it is pretty easy for participants to detect when they have received the drug. Some researchers have used an active placebo control condition (instead of a sugar pill, the participants in the placebo condition also receive a psychoactive drug) and still obtained positive treatment outcomes (e.g., Oehen et al., 2013), but more work of this kind is needed. Importantly, demonstrations that these drugs can be safely used outside the laboratory setting will have to be accomplished. This may prove easier to do with ketamine, which is already being prescribed in clinics, so ketamine treatment is closer to full approval. These are major hurdles, but there is certainly excitement about the possible benefits of these poorly understood drugs.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

therapists thought the potential risks of LSD outweighed the benefits. However, in recent years, a renewed interest in the therapeutic value of these drugs has surfaced (see Drugs and Culture Box 12.3). Much of this research has come from the Johns Hopkins laboratory group working with psilocybin, which is apparently well tolerated by participants (Griffiths & Grob, 2010; Johnson et al., 2008). For example, Grob et al. (2011) found that a moderate dose of psilocybin administered to patients with advanced-stage cancer reduced their anxiety and depression. There have also been a number of studies that suggest that use of LSD, psilocybin, and other serotonergic hallucinogens are beneficial adjuncts to treatment of nicotine dependence and alcoholism (Bogenschutz & Johnson, 2016; Morgan et al., 2017). The mechanism by which these drugs may enhance psychotherapy is not well understood. Therapy sessions are provided prior to the hallucinogenic experience, and the drug is taken in a highly controlled and carefully monitored environment. Later the therapist engages in extensive processing to help the client interpret and benefit from the drug experience. The insights associated with this processing are thought to be critical to the positive treatment outcomes that have been observed (Johnson et al., 2008; Mithoefer et al., 2016).

Effects of Serotonergic Hallucinogens

The physiological effects of LSD and related hallucinogens are generally similar to those of amphetamine and cocaine; that is, they are sympathomimetic. Thus, the effects include pupil dilation, increased heart rate, blood pressure, and body temperature, and sweating (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1979).

The psychological effects are more difficult to characterize. Experiences with hallucinogens are tremendously variable among individuals and may vary from one experience to the next for a single individual. Common to all the serotonergic hallucinogens are profound changes in visual perception, and there is some consistency in the types of visual changes that occur. Albert Hofmann (1980) summarized the hallucinogens he experienced in a recounting of his first LSD trip:

> Kaleidoscopic fantastic images surged in on me, alternating, variegated, opening, and then closing themselves in circles and spirals, exploding in colored fountains, rearranging and hybridizing themselves in constant flux. It was particularly remarkable how every acoustic perception, such as the sound of a door handle or a passing automobile, became transformed into optical perceptions. Every sound generated a vividly changing image, with its own consistent form and color. (p. 19)

Researchers have noted the spiral explosions and vortex patterns Hofmann described to be among the most common forms in hallucinogenic experiences (Sacks, 2012; Siegel, 1992). They are called form constants because they are reported so frequently, not only in drug-induced states but also in hallucinations experienced by people with medical conditions such as migraine headache and high fever. Siegel noted another form constant, the lattice pattern: a checkerboard pattern that appears in an otherwise plain surface. The experience of sensing a sound stimulus as a visual one that Hofmann described is called **synesthesia**, and others have reported it as well. Other visual effects are flashing lights, increased brightness and saturation of colors, trails or plumes around objects, and the sense of movement in stable objects (e.g., the wall breathes or moves rhythmically). Visual patterns may come to be seen as familiar or unfamiliar images sometimes perceived as in motion (see Sacks [2012] for a review of hallucinations induced by drugs and other causes).

synesthesia
An effect sometimes produced by hallucinogens that is characterized by the perception of a stimulus in a modality other than the one in which it was presented (e.g., a subject may report "seeing" music).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

There is a good bit more to the "trip" than just a light show, however. Other perceptions may be altered. Mood is extremely labile, and bizarre cognitive experiences occur (Stevens, 1987). Some examples of such experiences are described in the Contemporary Issue Box 12.4. Although the descriptions recounted are quite different, they do reveal some similarities. All are characterized by strong affect, although the nature of the emotional state varies. All involve "magical" thinking and, particularly in the last two, events are fraught with cosmic significance. If the visions are terrifying (as in the second quote), the individual may behave in a psychotic manner; this is usually referred to as a bad or bum trip. The insights, enlightenments, and beliefs that occur and seem so significant during the trip often turn out to be trivial or false afterward, but sometimes may be enduring. For example, Griffiths et al. (2011) conducted a study in which volunteers were administered psilocybin in a supportive environment and encouraged to focus their attention on their inner experiences and later to describe them. Over 70% of the participants reported "**mystical-type**" experiences under a moderately high dose. In most cases, the experiences were positive and most participants reported them as having substantial personal and spiritual significance. In a follow-up questionnaire administered 14 months after the psilocybin experience, more than half reported more positive attitudes about life and themselves. Griffiths et al. consider the implications of their finding for future research on the potential therapeutic benefits of psilocybin, but an issue with all of the serotonergic hallucinogens is the risk of adverse effects.

Adverse Effects of Serotonergic Hallucinogens

The serotonergic hallucinogen controversy revolves around their potential to produce a variety of adverse effects. One major concern about LSD use involved the claim that it produced chromosome damage—that those who used the drug, male or female, would stand a high risk of having children born with birth defects. This concern was based on a study that found that LSD produced chromosome breaks in white blood cells artificially cultured in the laboratory. The study raised fears that LSD might also damage human gametes (Cohen & Marmillo, 1967). However, breaking chromosomes in white blood cells in a test tube under high doses of LSD has not been shown to generalize to in vivo conditions. After considerable research into this question, there is no convincing evidence that LSD (or any other serotonergic hallucinogen) increases birth defects in offspring when taken in normal doses (Wiegand et al., 2008). As with most drugs, however, there is risk of fetal damage if taken during pregnancy (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1979).

Other adverse effects of LSD and related hallucinogens are more cause for concern. An important problem has been acute panic or paranoid reactions to the drug. These bad trips can leave individuals in an acute psychotic state during which they may harm themselves or others. The frequency of bad trips is difficult to estimate, but it was high enough in the 1960s to lead to the widespread development of walk-in crisis centers where victims could be brought for reassurance (talking the individual down) and, if necessary, hospital referral. Bad trips appear to be less frequent today, perhaps because more is known about how to prevent them. The psychological state of the individual and the environmental setting are important. For example, one of the few documented LSD suicides took place after a man was administered LSD without his knowledge in an experiment conducted by the CIA in the 1950s (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1979). Being exposed to the drug without foreknowledge is

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 12.4

Descriptions of the Subjective Effects of LSD

Many attempts have been made to describe the effects and experiences produced by LSD. Such accounts are remarkably diverse, often confusing, and sometimes contradictory, yet some features are common. The following are vivid recollections given by well-known individuals who used LSD, illustrating the variety of the experience:

> The heavens above me, a night sky spangled with eyes of flame, dissolved into the most overpowering array of colors I have ever seen or imagined; many of the colors are entirely new—areas of the spectrum which I seem to have hitherto overlooked. The colors do not stand still, but move and flow in every direction; my field of vision is a mosaic of unbelievable complexity. . . . —Daniel Breslaw on LSD (in Sacks, 2012, p. 99)
>
> I was lying on my back on the floor. Then the room itself vanished and I was sinking, sinking, sinking. From far away I heard very faintly the word "death." I sank faster, turning and falling a million light years from the earth. The word got louder and more insistent. It took shape around me, closing me in. "DEATH . . . DEATH . . . DEATH." I thought of the dread in my father's eyes in his final hours. At the last instant before my own death I shouted, "No." Absolute terror, total horror. —[Richard] Lingeman on LSD (in Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1979, p. 112)
>
> Now a series of visions began. The imagery appeared to synchronize with the phonograph music. . . . I envisioned myself at the court of Kubla Khan . . . at a concert being held in an immense auditorium . . . in some futuristic Utopia . . . at Versailles . . . at a statue of Lincoln. . . . I felt myself engulfed in a chaotic, turbulent sea. . . . There were a number of small boats tossing on the raging sea . . . [I was] in one of these vessels. . . . [W]e came upon a gigantic figure standing waist-deep in the churning waters. . . . His facial features were graced by an unforgettable look of compassion, love, and concern. We knew that this was the image of God. We realized that God, too, was caught in the storm. —[Stanley] Krippner on psilocybin (in Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1979, pp. 100–101)

Albisoima/Shutterstock.com

An artist's rendition of the spiral explosion form constant.

apparently frightening and disturbing. Individuals seem to be less likely to have bad trips if they are aware and frequently reminded that they are under the influence of a drug. A calm and comfortable setting and low doses of the hallucinogen are thought to reduce the frequency of bad trips as well. Many recent studies exploring the use of psilocybin as an adjunct to psychotherapy (discussed above) have been able to avoid serious adverse effects (Johnson et al., 2008; Mithoefer et al., 2016), although

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

bad trips may occur even under the best of circumstances (Abraham et al., 1996; Griffiths et al., 2011).

Another problem associated with LSD use is a phenomenon known as the **flashback**. Flashbacks are a reexperience of some aspect of a hallucinogenic trip that may have occurred months or even years before. The nature of the experience usually involves visual disturbances such as flashes of color, trails in the visual field, or fleeting perceptions in the peripheral field of view. Flashbacks are often brought on by stress, fatigue, entering a dark environment, or marijuana use (Abraham et al., 1996). In a review, Halpern and Pope (2003) noted that it is difficult to estimate the frequency of flashbacks. In most cases, it appears that individuals do not find their flashbacks to be problematic, and so, no doubt, many go unreported. In unusual cases, flashbacks can be frequent and severe and may disrupt an individual's life. The diagnosis of hallucinogen persisting perception disorder is applied to such cases. Very rarely, the visual distortions are nearly constant and may reflect permanent loss of serotonergic neurons. Treatment with antipsychotics or benzodiazepines may relieve the symptoms of such cases (Halpern & Pope, 2003; Young, 1997).

flashback
A sudden recurrence of an LSD-like experience.

LSD also has been linked to long-term psychiatric disorders. Perhaps the most publicized and horrifying example is Charles Manson and his "family." The Manson family used LSD heavily, but it is unclear what role, if any, the drug played in the development of their psychopathology and subsequent mass murders. When one is confronted with an individual experiencing psychosis who has used LSD, it is difficult to determine whether LSD caused the psychosis or the person was experiencing psychosis to begin with and LSD made the symptoms more flagrant. To complicate matters further, most who use LSD are diagnosed with psychotic symptoms and have extensive histories with other drugs as well, and the role these other drugs may have played is rarely certain. It generally is agreed that hallucinogens may precipitate or exacerbate psychosis or emotional disturbance in certain vulnerable individuals. LSD has also been linked to chronic psychiatric disorders in rare cases. Then, the controversy focuses on the precise role of LSD and related hallucinogens. Some have argued that LSD may be capable of producing psychosis even in the absence of other predisposing conditions, but the general consensus seems to be that, when chronic psychiatric problems occur following serotonergic hallucinogen use, it generally involves individuals who had already been diagnosed with or have manifested psychotic or prepsychotic symptoms before the drug use (Halpern & Pope, 1999; Wiegand et al., 2008).

REVIEW

1. Create a time line illustrating the historical use of each hallucinogenic drug class.
2. Discuss the influence that specific individuals (including Albert Hofmann and Timothy Leary) had on patterns of recent use of hallucinogens.
3. Create a table listing the major classes of hallucinogens, examples for each class, and their mechanism of action.
4. Create a chart summarizing how drugs from each hallucinogenic class are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body.
5. Describe the patterns of tolerance associated with the different hallucinogens.
6. Discuss the factors that contribute to the hallucinogenic drug experience.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

12.3 Methylated Amphetamines

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

12-5 Analyze the evidence concerning whether MDMA causes long-term damage to the brain

A number of drugs are classified as methylated amphetamines, but we focus here on methylenedioxymethamphetamine—better known as MDMA or Ecstasy.

Overview

MDMA has had a fascinating history. It has gone from being a drug thought to have potential as an adjunct to psychotherapy, to becoming the prototype "club drug," one of the most popular and controversial drugs of misuse, and now, full circle, to a drug receiving serious attention for its potential in psychotherapy. One reason for MDMA's notoriety was its rapid increase in popularity in the late 1990s. Prior to 1996, the annual high school senior survey did not even have a specific category for MDMA; in that year, 4.6% of U.S. high school seniors reported having used it during the past year. That number rose explosively, doubling by 2001, when 9.2% reported using it; after that peak, however, use declined and has leveled off in recent years, reaching a low of 2.7% in the 2016 survey (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2016). One important reason for this decline is the publicity about the many adverse effects of MDMA, including claims that it may produce brain damage and death. Now as better understanding of MDMA has developed, research on potential therapeutic benefits is underway again.

MDMA is one of a group of drugs known as methylated amphetamines because of their chemical structures. Dozens of drugs fall into this category and there are many similar compounds with the phenethylamine structure, and some of the more well-known variations are listed in Table 12.2. These drugs are often categorized with the serotonergic hallucinogens, and indeed their chemical structures resemble that of mescaline. In addition, they influence serotonin transmission and also dopamine and norepinephrine (Morton, 2005). DOM (2,5-dimethoxy-4-methylamphetamine)

TABLE 12.2 Methylated Amphetamines

Chemical Name	Abbreviation	Street Names
2,5-dimethoxy-4-methylamphetamine	DOM	STP
3,4-methylenedioxyamphetamine	MDA	Love drug, mellow drug of America
3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine	MDMA	Ecstasy, XTC, Molly
N-ethyl-3,4-methylenedioxyamphetamine	MDE	Eve
4-bromo-2,5-dimethoxyphenethylamine	2C-B	Nexus
4-iodo-2,5-dimethoxy-N-(2-methoxybenzyl) phenethylamine	2C-I-NBOMe	Smiles

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

not only resembles mescaline in structure but also produces similar effects, including visual hallucinations.

The others (MDA, MDMA, MDE) are more similar to amphetamine in effects (see Chapter 6) and differ from the serotonergic hallucinogens in that they produce few or no visual hallucinations. The effects of MDA and MDMA seem to be primarily a mild euphoria accompanied by openness, feelings of warmth and empathy, and lack of defensiveness. These properties led some psychotherapists to advocate the use of these drugs, particularly MDMA, as an adjunct to therapy. Some scientists classify MDMA with the hallucinogens, others with the amphetamines, and still others consider these drugs as belonging to a unique category because of their psychological effects: entactogens or empathogens (Halberstadt & Nichols, 2010).

History and Epidemiology

Methylated amphetamines were developed in the early 1900s, but attracted little attention until relatively recently. For example, MDMA was patented in 1914, by Merck Pharmaceuticals in Germany, but the drug was not marketed or even much studied until many years later (Iversen, 2008). DOM was first reported on the street in the late 1960s, when its potent hallucinogenic effects and very long duration of action (as long as 24 hours) led to many bad trips. MDA also surfaced on the street about this time, but it had a better reception. It was called "mellow drug of America" because it has fewer perceptual effects than LSD. The use of MDA declined along with LSD in the 1970s, whereas MDMA began to increase in popularity. In 1976, an estimated 10,000 doses of MDMA were used in the United States. In 1985, the Drug Enforcement Agency (DEA) estimated that 30,000 doses were distributed per month in one Texas city alone (Stock, 1986). What accounted for this enormous increase? During this period, there was considerable interest in the potential value of MDA and MDMA in psychotherapy, and publicity about the therapeutic benefits of MDMA made it attractive. It did not hurt public relations for the drug to pick up the nickname "Ecstasy." Indeed, MDMA came to be known as the "love drug" because those who used it reported positive feelings toward others and increased empathy as part of the drug experience.

Until 1985, MDMA was a legal drug. Although MDA was a Schedule I drug, its close relative MDMA had not yet been classified. Thus, dealers preferred the low risks associated with the designer drug Ecstasy. In the face of the explosive rise in MDMA use, coupled with animal research implicating the drug in brain damage, however, the DEA classified MDMA as Schedule I in 1985, on an emergency basis. Amid considerable controversy over whether MDMA had legitimate medical uses, this decision was affirmed in 1986, and MDMA was placed in Schedule I where it remains classified today (Holland, 2001).

Jbouzou/Dreamstime.com

Ecstasy tablets.

MDMA grew in popularity as it became associated with the "club" or "rave" subcultures. Originating in Europe in the late 1980s, the rave

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

movement swept rapidly through the United States, and indeed much of the world, in the 1990s (Holland, 2001). Raves were usually large-scale, all-night dance parties featuring "techno," "house," or "trance" musical styles often accompanied by light shows. Alcohol was rarely associated with raves; rather, the "club drugs" tended to be drugs like MDMA, methamphetamine, Ritalin (see Chapter 6), LSD, and GHB (see Chapter 14). Bright fluorescent clothing and jewelry along with paraphernalia such as pacifiers (to avoid teeth grinding or bruxism, a side effect of MDMA) were common, and the settings varied from empty warehouses, airplane hangars, and open fields to smaller venues such as clubs. While raves declined in the late 1990s, the popularity of electronic dance music and rave parties at dance festivals has resulted in an increase in raves in recent years. By the early 2000s, MDMA was the fastest-growing illicit drug across the United States, Western Europe, and Australia (Inciardi, 2002) and had become known as the prototype of club drugs. Even considering the recent decline in use noted among U.S. high school seniors, MDMA remains a popular recreational drug. The leveling off of MDMA use has been accompanied by an increased interest in closely related synthetic compounds (see Contemporary Issue Box 12.5).

Effects of Methylated Amphetamines

"The rave scene is crazy, fun, dangerous—yet exciting. It's deadly. It's happening. It's all about how you dress and how you dance. It's about standing out and meeting people and just being able to live your youth."

Rave attendee (Cohen, 1998)

The effects of MDMA, MDA, and MDE are similar enough to be discussed together (DOM effects are like those of mescaline or LSD and are not considered further). These drugs are usually taken orally but can be injected or absorbed intranasally (snorted). They are absorbed rapidly, and their duration of action is about 6 to 8 hours. The neural mechanisms of action involve increased release of monoamines, particularly serotonin. MDMA also blocks the reuptake of serotonin and, to a lesser extent, dopamine. Thus, there is an initial overall increase in serotonin and dopamine activity after taking the drug, but this is followed after several hours by a marked decrease in serotonin activity (Iversen, 2008). At effective doses (75 to 150 mg for MDMA, 50 to 150 mg for MDA, 1 to 2 mg for MDE), these drugs produce clear sympathomimetic effects,

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 12.5

Synthetic Hallucinogens: Phenethylamines and More

We have already noted the rise in new synthetic stimulants like mephedrone (Chapter 6) and cannabinoids like "Spice" (Chapter 11). A third group of new synthetic compounds includes a host of hallucinogens with MDMA or LSD-like effects. Many of these are drugs with the phenethylamine structure like 2C-B and 2C-I-NBOMe (see Table 12.2), but a bewildering array of similar compounds have turned up in recent years, often sold over the Internet. A serious issue with these drugs is that very little is known about their effects, including the range of safe doses. A dramatic illustration of this occurred in March 2011, when a group of teenagers in the Minneapolis area attended a rave and took a drug purchased over the Internet called 2C-E (2,5-dimethoxy-4-ethylphenethylamine), or Europa, resulting in a mass overdose. Eleven were hospitalized, some in critical condition, and one died. In the wake of this episode and numerous other overdose deaths in recent years, many of the "2C" phenethylamine compounds, including 2C-E, 2C-C, 2C-D, 2C-I, and 2C-T-2, were explicitly banned by the 2012 Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act (see Chapter 2). But these are just the tip of the iceberg. Alexander Shulgin, the chemist who initially synthesized many of these compounds, lists 179 psychoactive phenethylamine drugs alone (Shulgin & Shulgin, 1991), most of which are not explicitly scheduled (although some may be illegal based on the Analog Act). Which will be the next hot drug available on the Internet?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

including increased heart rate, blood pressure, and pupil dilation. Additional physical effects include muscle tension, teeth grinding (bruxism), increased body temperature, appetite suppression, and insomnia—effects remarkably similar to those of amphetamine (Freedman et al., 2005). The psychological effects claimed for these drugs are euphoria, increased emotional warmth and empathy, lowered defensiveness, and increases in verbal behavior (Iversen, 2008). Hallucinations are uncommon or absent at ordinary doses.

SnapperUK/Alamy stock photo

MDMA (Ecstasy) was the prototypical club drug.

A clinical description of this sort does not capture the allure of MDMA. Remember that both the individual and the setting determine the effects of any drug. For MDMA, the setting often includes the pulsing rhythm of techno music, strobe lights, dancing, and bonding with other individuals. The combination of drug and setting produces effects that individuals sometimes describe as a trance-like state with feelings of peace and unity. Researchers have interviewed hundreds of those who have used MDMA about their experiences, and some excerpts from their descriptions are given in the Drugs and Culture Box 12.6. Because of these desirable effects, some individuals develop a pattern of heavy, binge use. Although MDMA is not associated with dramatic physical withdrawal symptoms, commonly reported aftereffects include drowsiness, muscle pain, depression, paranoia, and anxiety (Hegadoren et al., 1999). These effects typically dissipate within a few days but can be more persistent in some cases.

There has been some debate about whether there are effects of MDMA and other methylated amphetamines that are unique—that is, different from the effects of the chemically related compounds the amphetamines. Several experiments have directly compared the psychological effects of MDMA to amphetamine; Tancer and Johanson (2003) studied young adults under various doses of both drugs. Participants reported stronger reinforcing effects for MDMA than amphetamine at all doses tested, consistently reporting that they liked MDMA better. Otherwise, the profile of MDMA effects was generally quite similar to those of amphetamine, so in the Tancer and Johanson (2003) study, the main difference was a preference for the MDMA drug effect over amphetamine.

MDMA has been described by some as an empathogenic drug because it is said to increase sociability and empathy for others (Berschad et al., 2016). But most stimulant drugs also tend to increase social behavior, so once again, the question is whether MDMA has unique pro-social properties. Several studies suggest that it may. For example, Schmidt et al. (2014) found that participants reported increased feelings of trust, openness, and closeness to others after taking MDMA, but not methylphenidate (Ritalin). De Wit and colleagues at the University of Chicago found that participants on MDMA (but not amphetamine) reported more positive emotional responses to images featuring people but not to images that lacked social content (Wardle et al., 2014; Wardle & de Wit, 2012). Another interesting study from this research group used the cyberball task to assess reactions to social rejection. In this task, participants play a video game in which various players pass around a virtual ball on the computer screen, a "cyberball." The other "players'" actions are in fact programmed by the experimenter and in the social rejection condition, the real participant is excluded from the game because none of the "virtual" players will pass the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 12.6

Voices of Ecstasy

Cohen (1998) and Iversen (2008) have published several descriptions of individuals' experiences while using MDMA. The following are some brief excerpts:

"Ecstasy is more or less a happy speed."

"All I wanted to do was smile. I was so wide awake, and I felt love for everything and everyone."

"Pure energy. Happy energy. I felt tingly all over. It felt good to be touched. Being touched was so intense."

"It made me able to let my guard down and reveal my true self. I did experience mood fluctuations (ups and downs)."

"Everyone was my friend. I don't think that anything could have brought me down. I loved it."

"I had a bad experience. I felt like I was surrounded by water and drowning. It must have been panic."

"Floating, flying, highly sexual. I felt like I was on this really high mountain and I just wanted to stay there."

"It was the most euphoric experience of my life."

ball to the participant. Most participants report feeling excluded, increased negative mood, and lowered self-esteem when they experience the social rejection condition, but these effects were much reduced when under the influence of MDMA. In sum, a number of studies suggest that MDMA has unique effects that enhance emotional and empathetic responding in social situations (see Bershad et al., 2016, for a review).

Toxicity

The use of MDMA has been associated with reports of toxic reactions and deaths. Toxic reactions include dehydration, heatstroke and heat exhaustion, muscle breakdown, kidney failure, stroke, seizures, and heart attacks (Eede et al., 2009; Ghatol & Kazory, 2009). Most toxic reactions to MDMA occur after high doses or multiple doses (stacking) have been ingested, but in some cases, serious reactions and even deaths have occurred after relatively low doses (Hegadoren et al., 1999; Schifano, 2004). The toxic effects of MDMA are often related to elevated body temperature, and the pharmacological effects of the drug may be compounded by intense physical activity of individuals and by the high temperatures of many clubs. Individuals are often advised to drink fluids to avoid dehydration and overheating, but some MDMA emergency cases have involved collapse due to low sodium levels (Baggott et al., 2016). Complicating our ability to evaluate toxic reactions to MDMA is the fact that tablets sold as MDMA on the street often contain other drugs that may also be toxic in some cases. Adulterants are so common in street MDMA that one organization (DanceSafe) maintains a website with pictures of commonly sold MDMA tablets along with the results of their chemical analysis (www.ecstasydata.org). Many different compounds have been revealed in these analyses; among the more common adulterants in samples posted in the first half of 2013 were methylone and methcathinone (bath salts), methamphetamine, caffeine, 2C-I-NBOMe, and methadone. Some of the samples contained fairly high doses of MDMA, but others contained no active chemical at all!

Residual Effects of MDMA

One of the major controversies about MDMA and other methylated amphetamines concerns the possibility that they may produce long-term damage of certain brain structures. The initial report (Ricaurte et al., 1985) showed that, after several administrations of high doses of MDA, rats had a depletion of serotonin apparently caused by the degeneration of serotonergic neuron terminals. Similar results have now been reported

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

for MDMA in several species, including primates, and it appears that the neurotoxic effects can be produced after a single high dose (20 mg/kg) is administered or after several lower doses (5 mg/kg) are administered over consecutive days (Bauman et al., 2007). One criticism of this work is that even the doses considered moderate in these animal studies are higher than doses generally used on the street. This point is somewhat difficult to evaluate in that MDMA tablets vary enormously in the dose contained. In a worldwide survey, Parrott (2004) found that most pills sold as MDMA contained an average of 70 to 100 mg MDMA, which would deliver between 1 and 2 mg/kg to an adult human depending on body weight. This is below the dose range shown to be neurotoxic in nonhumans. However, some tablets contain up to 300 mg (according to information on www.ecstasydata.org), and many individuals take multiple tablets during the course of an evening; two or three tablets could certainly deliver a dose capable of producing neurotoxic effects. Indeed, some individuals report commonly taking 15 or more tablets in a night, and this would likely produce doses well above those shown to produce long-term serotonin deficits in nonhumans (Schifano, 2004). Of course, people may take lower doses of MDMA but take them many times, intermittently, over many years, and we do not yet know what neural consequences may occur following this pattern of use. How rapidly neurons recover from the toxic effects of the drugs is also open to debate, but one study showed effects that persisted for as long as 7 years after drug administration in nonhuman primates (Hatzidimitriou et al., 1999). As noted in Chapter 3, serotonin is a neurotransmitter that modulates sleep, mood, and many other functions, so depletion of serotonin could lead to serious problems. Thus, whether MDMA produces these neurotoxic effects in humans is a critical issue.

As you might imagine, in recent years, many researchers have attempted to determine whether those using MDMA show evidence of brain damage or other residual effects. Numerous studies have used brain-imaging technology such as PET techniques (see Chapter 3) and consistently have found reductions in serotonergic functioning between those who have engaged in heavy use of MDMA and controls; however, there is also evidence that the serotonin system recovers from these effects after a period of abstinence (Selvaraj et al., 2009; Vegting et al., 2016).

Although individuals using MDMA do show evidence of serotonin neurotoxicity, the functional significance of these neural changes has been controversial. Dozens of studies have compared those using MDMA and controls on tests of mood, psychopathology, memory, and attention. In many of these studies, the individuals who engaged in heavy use of MDMA showed more evidence of sleep problems, depressed mood, and memory as well as related cognitive deficits when compared to those who did not use MDMA (see Morton, 2005; Roberts et al., 2016, for reviews). Of course, these studies have many interpretive problems. For example, the accuracy of the drug histories used to form the groups is open to question. As noted, many different drugs are sold as MDMA, and some of these may produce more toxicity than MDMA alone.

It is also difficult to determine from study results whether the differences between those who use MDMA and those who do not use MDMA are actually caused by MDMA. Those using MDMA may differ in many respects from those who do not use MDMA, and these other differences may influence the measured variables. For example, most who use MDMA also use other drugs, and in many studies, the group that uses MDMA differs from the control group with respect to overall drug use—not just MDMA. The potential importance of such a confound has been demonstrated in some recent studies. Parrott et al. (2001) studied 618 individuals who engaged in polydrug use and 150 who did not use drugs in England and Italy. In keeping with the studies reviewed here, they found that those who used MDMA heavily showed more evidence of psychopathology than those who did not use MDMA. However, those who used drugs, but did not report using MDMA, did not differ from those using MDMA in

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

psychopathology, so the role of MDMA use was unclear. These findings have been replicated by Daumann et al. (2004) and in a study that focused on depressive symptoms (Roiser & Sahakian, 2004). In summary, those who use MDMA frequently generally show more psychopathology (particularly depression) than controls who do not report use of illegal drugs. However, when compared to those using multiple drugs or those who use marijuana but not MDMA, these differences tend to disappear.

Similar results have been obtained with respect to cognitive impairments associated with MDMA use. For example, several studies (Croft et al., 2001; Dafters et al., 2004; de Sola et al., 2008) have compared groups of individuals using MDMA (who also reported marijuana use) with groups of participants who reported only marijuana use and with control groups who did not use drugs on various neuropsychological tests. Those using MDMA performed more poorly than controls on tests of attention and memory, but the participants who used marijuana only were equally impaired. These studies suggest that the memory deficits often reported in those using MDMA might have been caused by their coincident use of marijuana. However, other researchers have found that those who used MDMA showed more severe deficits on memory and other cognitive tasks than control participants matched for drug use other than MDMA (Dafters, 2006; Daumann et al., 2005; Halpern et al., 2004), so it remains possible that MDMA use may play a role. In sum, the jury is still out on what long-term effects are associated with MDMA use. Although scientific opinion does not support the "horror scenarios of our kids' brains rotting out by the time they were 30" touted by the media in the 1990s (Iversen, 2008), neither does it support the notion that MDMA is a safe drug (Roberts et al., 2016). However, it is increasingly recognized that low doses of MDMA may be administered under controlled conditions without neurotoxicity (Mueller et al., 2016), which has revived interest in the potential uses of MDMA as an adjunct to psychotherapy.

Psychotherapeutic Uses

The belief that MDMA might enhance communicative ability and empathy and decrease defensiveness led some therapists to advocate the use of these drugs as an adjunct to psychotherapy decades ago. Because MDMA does not produce hallucinations or the dissociative effects of LSD, it was seen as less likely to produce adverse reactions. Although some therapists involved in this work reported that MDMA was beneficial (Naranjo, 2001; Riedlinger & Montagne, 2001), controlled studies were lacking, so little experimental evidence supported the value of MDMA (or any other drugs of this class) in psychotherapy. However, in recent years, researchers have shown a renewed interest in the possibility of MDMA therapy, and small-scale controlled trials have provided some support for the value of using MDMA as an adjunct to psychotherapy in the treatment of posttraumatic stress syndrome (Bouso et al., 2008; Mithoefer et al., 2011, 2013; Oehen et al., 2013). MDMA is used therapeutically by actually conducting therapy sessions while the client is under the influence of the drug. The idea is that the increased openness and ability to talk about events that would ordinarily produce considerable anxiety could enhance the value of therapy sessions for individuals with posttraumatic stress (Mithoefer et al., 2016). Preliminary results of this strategy have been promising. For example, Mithoefer et al. (2011, 2013) found therapeutic benefits in clients using MDMA-assisted therapy that remained 2 years following treatment. Oehen et al. (2013) found similar benefits when clients receiving MDMA-assisted therapy were compared to those receiving an active placebo control. More research is certainly needed to determine safety and efficacy, but there are currently several ongoing Phase 2 studies of MDMA, so these questions may be answered soon.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

12.4 Anticholinergic Hallucinogens

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

12-6 Evaluate the potential clinical applications of hallucinogens and their effectiveness in treating a variety of psychological disorders

Atropine and **scopolamine** are drugs that block acetylcholine receptors in the brain. In low doses, these drugs are used for a variety of medical purposes, and atropine in particular has been in the news recently because it has sometimes been issued to troops in the Middle East when there is risk of nerve gas attack. Deadly nerve gases (sarin and soman) are toxic because they inhibit the enzyme that breaks down acetylcholine, and as an acetylcholine antagonist, atropine is an antidote if administered rapidly after exposure. However, drugs like atropine and scopolamine also can produce hallucinogenic effects. They are found in a number of plants known throughout the world and have a long history of use. The ancient Greeks at the Oracle of Delphi used plants containing scopolamine and atropine. In the Middle Ages, such plants were included in the infamous witches' brews. Plants such as belladonna, also called deadly nightshade (*Atropa belladonna*); mandrake (*Mandragora officinarum*); henbane (*Hyoscyamus niger*) of Europe; jimsonweed (*Datura stramonium*); and other plants of the *Datura* genus from the Americas have been eaten for their hallucinogenic properties (Schultes, 1976). Although these drugs are not widely used for witchcraft today, *Datura* is allegedly one of the ingredients in zombie powder in Haiti (Davis, 1988).

atropine
An anticholinergic hallucinogen found in certain plants.

scopolamine
An anticholinergic hallucinogen found in certain plants.

Anticholinergic hallucinogens produce a variety of physiological effects, including dry mouth, blurred vision, loss of motor control, and increased heart rate and body temperature. These drugs can be fatal, as they cause respiratory failure at doses only slightly higher than the effective dose (Grinspoon & Bakalar, 1979). The psychological experience appears to be a dreamlike trance or stupor. Individuals seem delirious and confused but may be able to describe visions if asked. A unique feature of the drugs of this class is that memory of the drug experience is poor, and individuals may be unable to recall any details of the experience. These drugs are rarely seen on the street today.

One additional plant to be discussed in this section is the fly agaric mushroom (*Amanita muscaria*). Fly agaric contains several different hallucinogenic chemicals, including muscarine, which is a cholinergic agonist, and muscimole, a hallucinogen that may be similar to the LSD-like drugs. Although rarely used today, the mushroom represents one of the earliest forms of hallucinogen use. Fly agaric grows throughout much of Europe and Asia, and it may have been the mysterious "Soma" described in the Hindu *Rig-Veda* more than 2,000 years ago. The *Rig-Veda* describes the rather bizarre practice of recycling the drug effect by drinking the urine of an intoxicated individual. Muscimole is the only hallucinogen known that passes unchanged through the system into the urine (Wasson, 1979). The effects of the mushroom are unique among hallucinogens. Those who use fly agaric typically fall into a stupor for several

REUTERS/Alamy stock photo

Atropine auto-injections are provided to soldiers who are at risk of nerve gas attacks.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

hours during which they experience visions, and later they experience intense euphoria and energy accompanied by visual hallucinations (Wasson, 1979).

12.5 Dissociative Anesthetic Hallucinogens

History

phencyclidine
A dissociative anesthetic.

ketamine
A dissociative anesthetic.

The final class of hallucinogens to be considered is a large group, but only three of its members, **phencyclidine** (PCP, angel dust), and close analogs **ketamine** (special K, vitamin K) and methoxetamine (mexxy), have been used enough to warrant discussion here. PCP was synthesized in 1956 and was tested as an anesthetic because it had pronounced tranquilizing effects. With animals, it produced a general anesthesia that left the animal conscious but not feeling pain, even during surgery. In clinical trials of PCP with humans, however, some patients experienced hyperexcitability, delirium, and visual disturbances. Thus, PCP was largely abandoned for human use, although shorter-acting ketamine is still used as an anesthetic in certain medical conditions. Both drugs have been used as anesthetics and tranquilizers in veterinary medicine (Dal Cason & Franzosa, 2003; Linder, Lerner, et al., 1981).

PCP emerged as a street drug of preference in the 1970s. Sold under a variety of names, including "angel dust," "hog," "horse tranquilizer," and "lovely," it was often taken as sprinkled powder on a cigarette or joint. Although PCP is also effective taken orally and can be injected, smoking remains the most popular route of administration. By the early 1980s, some surveys were finding that more than 20% of U.S. high school students had tried PCP. Because of the high incidence of dangerous side effects, PCP became a notorious drug and its use declined. The high school senior surveys indicated that the number of high school seniors who used PCP through the 1990s was near 3%, and by the 2016 survey, this was down to 1.3% reporting they had tried the drug (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2016).

Although PCP is no longer extensively used in veterinary medicine, ketamine remains quite popular in this regard, and ketamine misuse is an issue as it is often included among the "club" drugs. Most of the ketamine or "special K" that appears on the street today is diverted from veterinary supplies and is seen as a crystalline powder or in solution. It can be snorted, injected, taken orally, or smoked (Jansen, 2004). Lifetime use of ketamine is not reported in the senior survey, but annual use was reported by 1.2% of high school seniors in the 2016 survey (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2016). In one study, Hopfer et al. (2006) reported that over 18% of young clients (18 to 32 years old) in treatment for substance use disorder had used ketamine, making it one of the popular club drugs used in this population. Much less is known about methoxetamine. It is an analog of PCP and ketamine that emerged as one of the new synthetic drugs available on the Internet in recent years. It is more potent and longer acting than PCP and ketamine, so the potential for misuse problems is thought to be high (Corazza et al., 2012). It was banned in some European countries in 2012, but remains unscheduled in the United States at this writing.

Pharmacokinetics

The mechanism of PCP and ketamine action involves antagonism of a subset of receptors called the NMDA receptors for the excitatory amino acid glutamate (Balazs et al., 2006). PCP is absorbed rapidly after smoking or injection, with peak blood concentrations noted 5 to 15 minutes after smoking. In contrast, peak concentrations are reached 2 hours after oral administration. The drug remains in the system

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

unmetabolized for more than 2 days, and PCP is detectable in urine for several weeks after a single use (Hawks & Chiang, 1986).

Effects of PCP and Ketamine

A moderate dose (1 to 10 mg) of the dissociative anesthetics produces feelings of euphoria and numbness resembling alcohol intoxication. Speech may be slurred, and generally there is motor discoordination. Individuals may be catatonic and rigid with a blank stare or may be aggressive and hyperactive. Effects include profuse sweating, increased heart rate and blood pressure, and rapid jerky eye movements called nystagmus (Linder et al., 1981; Young et al., 1987). Individuals often report blurred vision or double vision but rarely visual hallucinations. Rather, there are changes in perception of body image, distortions of the tactile senses, and sometimes dreamlike visions. Consider these descriptions from those who have used PCP:

> It's weirdly hallucinogenic. It makes you go, boy that's steep stairs I have to climb there, that you realized you climb in five minutes you know, and stuff, and it actually feels like you're going to float off the couch and stuff, you know. Your arm is over somewhere. I can remember like crawling down the stairs because the only thing that I trusted was my fingers and my knees. . . .
>
> The most frequent hallucination is that parts of your body are extremely large or extremely small. You can imagine yourself small enough to walk through a keyhole, or you can be lying there and all of a sudden you just hallucinate that your arm is twice the length of your body. (Feldman et al., 1979, p. 133)
>
> My body image was distorted beyond recognition—fantastically elongated pipe-cleaner legs and arms, spindly E.T.-like fingers, and morphing alien-insect head in the mirror. . . . (Jansen, 2004, p. 75)

"In Donna's ketamine eyes the hallway leading to the restroom looked like a tunnel stretching for miles. To make matters more difficult, Donna felt that she was only two feet tall. . . ."
(Siegel, 1992)

These effects, described as being in the "K-hole," normally last 4 to 6 hours but are variable and, particularly after high doses, may persist for days or weeks. Overdoses (more than 20 mg) may result in seizures, prolonged coma, and sometimes death from respiratory failure (Carroll, 1990). Like LSD, anesthetic hallucinogens may produce transient psychotic states or "bad trips." Toxic psychosis produced by PCP and ketamine is often characterized by paranoia and sometimes violence and may persist for several days (Young et al., 1987). Long-term cognitive impairments have also been reported for PCP and ketamine (Morgan et al., 2004). Talking an individual down from a bad trip with these drugs is generally difficult. Physical restraint and intensive medical care are often necessary. Dissociative anesthetics are far more likely than other hallucinogens to produce medical or psychiatric complications (Boutros & Bowers, 1996; Morgan et al., 2004; Young et al., 1987). Indeed, theories of schizophrenia are increasingly emphasizing the role of the glutamate system and the NMDA receptors targeted by PCP and ketamine. Some argue that ketamine intoxication creates symptoms that are similar to schizophrenia and that exposure to high doses of these drugs may provide an animal model for the neuropathology of schizophrenia (Gilmour et al., 2012).

Psychotherapeutic Uses

Given these various adverse effects associated with the dissociative anesthetics, you may be surprised to learn that a form of ketamine, esketamine, was approved by the FDA in 2019 to target treatment-resistant depression. An individual who has treatment-resistant depression has tried at least two different antidepressant therapies but did not see improvement. Esketamine is delivered intranasally in a doctor's office, clinic, or hospital. Esketamine acts rapidly, within a couple of hours. Approximately, half of those treated with esketamine show alleviation of their depressive symptoms. The duration of

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

antidepressant action is relatively brief—typically a few days to a week—but this allows time for other drugs and psychotherapy to begin work. Not surprisingly, there have been some adverse reactions to clinical use of ketamine, but it is becoming a popular treatment despite our limited understanding of its effects (Murrough, 2016; Schak et al., 2016).

REVIEW

1. Examine the research and draw conclusions about the short-term and long-term effects of MDMA on the brain.
2. Create a table listing the potential psychotherapeutic uses of hallucinogens and which drugs may be used in treating specific conditions.

12.6 Salvinorin A (Salvia)

Salvia divinorum is a plant in the sage family that the Mazatec people of southern Mexico have cultivated and used in religious ceremonies for many centuries. Traditionally, salvia was ingested by chewing the leaves or drinking a tea brewed from them. Today, the leaves are often dried and smoked, and concentrated extracts are also available for oral use or smoking. Use of salvia was virtually unheard of 10 years ago in the United States, but use has grown rapidly in recent years. Salvia is not a scheduled drug in the United States, but many states have passed special regulations prohibiting salvia. Salvia was first placed on the annual senior survey in 2009, when 5.7% of students reported using it during their senior year. The most recent survey shows a strong decline in annual use to 1.2% (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2016).

Salvia is generally smoked as it appears to be inactive when taken orally. The hallucinogenic effects of salvia are relatively short-lived (generally less than 30 minutes in duration) but are often intense and produce a trancelike state. The effects include visual hallucinations and other sensory disturbances and impaired motor control. Although this is often reported as pleasant, anxiety and frightening experiences that resemble the bad trips associated with some of the types of hallucinogens reviewed previously can also occur (Rosenbaum et al., 2012). The active chemical in salvia is a compound called salvinorin A. Effective in doses of 100 to 500 micrograms, it is considered to be the most potent of any naturally occurring hallucinogen (Julien et al., 2008). The mechanism of salvinorin A action is also quite unlike any of the hallucinogens reviewed previously, but rather appears to act as an agonist of a subset of opioid receptors called kappa receptors (Butelman et al., 2009). Little is known about the functions of these kappa receptors. They are not the same receptors that produce the pleasurable effects of opiate drugs reviewed in Chapter 10, but they are thought to be involved in regulating pain. There is considerable scientific interest in salvinorin A as it may open the door to learning more about the functions of the kappa receptor system in the brain. In the meantime, very little is known about the possible adverse or long-term effects of salvia use. Given the popularity of the drug, it is currently under review by the DEA, and it would not be surprising to see salvia become a federally scheduled drug in the near future.

Ted Kinsman/Science Source

Salvia divinorum.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Summary

- Hallucinogens are a group of drugs that have the capacity to alter perceptual, cognitive, and emotional states.
- Hallucinogens may be divided into five classes: serotonergic hallucinogens, methylated amphetamines, anticholinergic hallucinogens, dissociative anesthetics, and salvinorin A.
- Serotonergic hallucinogens include drugs such as LSD, psilocybin, mescaline, and DMT. Psilocybin comes from mushrooms of the *Psilocybe* genus, and mescaline from the peyote cactus. These drugs have a long history of use by early Indigenous peoples for religious purposes.
- LSD is a synthetic compound. Its hallucinogenic properties were discovered by the Swiss chemist Albert Hofmann, but it was made popular by counterculture figures such as Timothy Leary and Ken Kesey.
- LSD and the other drugs in this class affect serotonergic neurons. They are sympathomimetic drugs as well.
- The psychological effects of these drugs are diverse but include visual hallucinations, alterations of mood and thought, and dreamlike visions.
- Research is exploring possible therapeutic uses for serotonergic hallucinogens, particularly psilocybin, in treatment of anxiety, depression, and addiction.
- Many adverse effects have been linked to LSD and other drugs in this class, including acute psychotic reactions (bad trips), flashbacks, and long-term psychological deficits.
- Methylated amphetamines include drugs such as MDA and MDMA (Ecstasy). These drugs are sympathomimetic and produce many other effects similar to LSD but generally do not produce visual hallucinations.
- MDMA is being studied as an adjunct to psychotherapy in the treatment of posttraumatic stress disorder.
- Anticholinergic hallucinogens include atropine and scopolamine, which are chemicals found in plants such as the deadly nightshade, mandrake, jimsonweed, and henbane. These drugs produce a semi–sleep state characterized by vivid visions and poor memory of the experience later.
- Phencyclidine (PCP) and ketamine are classified as dissociative anesthetic hallucinogens. They produce a potent intoxication at moderate doses and complete surgical anesthesia at higher doses.
- Ketamine is in use as a novel treatment for depression.
- Salvinorin A is a hallucinogenic chemical found in a species of plant in the sage family (*Salvia divinorum*) and is often referred to as diviner's sage. It is unique among hallucinogens in acting on kappa receptors in the brain.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Unlike other classes of drugs, most hallucinogens are derived from synthetic compounds.
   F *There are more than 90 different species of plants, in addition to many more synthetic agents, that can be used to produce hallucinogenic effects.*
2. Hallucinogenic compounds were commonly used throughout Europe and the United States in the early 1900s.
   F *Although Indigenous peoples of South and Central America used hallucinogens for centuries, these drugs had virtually no impact on mainstream European or American culture until the 1960s.*
3. The hallucinogenic properties of LSD were discovered by accident.
   T *Albert Hofmann of Sandoz Laboratories in Switzerland accidentally discovered the effects of LSD when he spilled some on himself and it was absorbed through his skin.*
4. Psilocybin and MDMA are under study for use in psychotherapy.
   T *Psilocybin is being studied to treat depression and addiction; MDMA is under study for treatment of posttraumatic stress disorder.*
5. Federal law mandates that anyone using LSD more than five times be declared legally insane.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

F *Although there is concern about long-term psychiatric effects of chronic LSD use, no such law exists.*

6. Use of LSD, even once, is likely to cause permanent chromosome damage and subsequent birth defects.
   F *LSD should be avoided during pregnancy but otherwise has not been shown to cause birth defects.*
7. Ecstasy (MDMA) produces vivid visual hallucinations.
   F *Ecstasy rarely produces true hallucinations.*
8. Ecstasy is chemically similar to both hallucinogens and stimulants.
   T *Ecstasy is chemically similar to hallucinogens and stimulants, producing hallucinogenic and sympathomimetic effects, including increased energy, pleasure, and distorted sensory and time perception.*
9. Hallucinations experienced under the influence of drugs such as LSD are very similar to those that people with schizophrenia experience.
   F *The hallucinations experienced under the influence of LSD are primarily visual in nature, whereas those of people with schizophrenia are usually auditory.*
10. Phencyclidine (PCP or angel dust), like other hallucinogens, does not cause physical dependence.
    T *Hallucinogens, including PCP, Ecstasy, and LSD, do not cause physical dependence.*
11. Reports of LSD flashbacks are now considered urban myth.
    F *Those who heavily use LSD sometimes report vivid flashbacks.*
12. Phencyclidine (PCP or angel dust) was originally used as an animal tranquilizer.
    T *It was, and the related compound ketamine is still widely used for nonhuman anesthesia.*

Key Terms

anticholinergic hallucinogens
atropine
dissociative anesthetic
flashback
ketamine
mescaline
methylated amphetamines
phencyclidine
psilocybin (ˈsī-e-ˈsī-ben)
scopolamine
serotonergic hallucinogens
synesthesia

Essays/Thought Questions

1. As reviewed in this chapter, a growing body of research suggests that hallucinogenic drugs may have therapeutic applications. In what ways do you think these potential clinical applications of hallucinogens may be able to shed light on the neurological causes of some psychological disorders?
2. Raves are large dance parties with DJs and oftentimes live performances. The rave culture is a community identified by an ideology that includes peace, respect, and unity. How do you think the drug culture within the rave community influences the raves? What role do drugs play in raves?

Suggested Readings

Iversen, L. (2008). *Speed, Ecstasy, Ritalin: The science of amphetamines*. Oxford University Press.

Sacks, O. (2012). *Hallucinations*. Alfred A. Knopf.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

13-1 Describe the history of psychotherapeutic medications and the significance of chlorpromazine

13-2 Summarize the recent patterns of psychological disorders and the use of psychotherapeutic medications in the United States

13-3 Discuss the four classes of drugs used to treat psychological disorders and the disorders each class treats

13-4 Evaluate whether the effectiveness of antipsychotic medications supports the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia

13-5 Compare and contrast how the types of antianxiety medications exert their effects

13-6 Compare and contrast the mechanism of action for the five classes of antidepressants

13-7 Describe how psychotherapeutic medications are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body

13-8 Evaluate the evidence concerning whether physical or psychological dependence occurs with psychotherapeutic medications

13-9 Summarize the potential benefits and costs for the use of psychotherapeutic medication during pregnancy

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

13

Psychotherapeutic Medications

Historical Overview

The Pre-Chlorpromazine Era
The Age of Chlorpromazine

Epidemiology

Classes of Drugs and Their Actions

Antipsychotics
Antidepressants
Antianxiety Agents
Nonbenzodiazepine Treatment
Mood-Stabilizing Drugs

Psychotherapeutic Drugs and Pregnancy

Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. One of the first successful attempts to treat the symptoms of psychological disorders with psychotherapeutic drugs occurred in the 1840s, when Moreau used cannabis to treat individuals with both depressive and manic symptoms.

___ 2. Since the 1950s, the number of individuals hospitalized for psychiatric conditions has decreased significantly.

___ 3. Almost half of the adults in the United States will meet the criteria for a psychological disorder at some point in their lives.

___ 4. The prevalence of psychotherapeutic medication is twice as high among men as among women.

___ 5. Psychotherapeutic drugs are rarely misused.

___ 6. As with most drugs, the age group least likely to misuse psychotherapeutic drugs is older adults (> age 65 years).

___ 7. Most psychotherapeutic medications are taken orally, allowing for rapid absorption into the bloodstream.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

___ 8. Schizophrenia is one of the most common psychiatric disorders in the United States.

___ 9. Stimulants are often used to treat chronic depression.

___10. Because antidepressants are absorbed rapidly, their effects are often immediate.

___11. Nitrous oxide (laughing gas) is no longer used by the medical profession.

___12. The effects of a moderate dose of a barbiturate drug resemble the effects of alcohol.

___13. Withdrawal from depressant sleeping pills can trigger rebound insomnia.

___14. Withdrawal from barbiturates is similar to alcohol withdrawal.

___15. Benzodiazepines (such as Valium) are one of the most commonly prescribed categories of drugs in the United States.

___16. Benzodiazepines are known on the street as "bennies."

___17. Individuals who have a drink of wine at dinner while also taking a benzodiazepine are at increased risk of harmful additive effects.

___18. The main depressant drugs (barbiturates, benzodiazepines, and alcohol) all act by vastly different physiological mechanisms and affect different areas of the body.

___19. Depressant drugs may show cross-tolerance with cocaine.

___20. Alcohol in combination with other depressant drugs is the leading cause of drug overdose deaths in the United States.

___21. Lithium, a natural alkaline metal, is often used to treat manic episodes.

___22. Psychotherapeutic drugs pose little or no threat to a fetus and may be used safely during pregnancy.

Psychoactive substances have been used to treat psychological disorders for centuries. In fact, many of the substances described in this text, such as alcohol, cannabis, and opium, have been used as treatments for psychological disorders at one time or another. In some cases, the motivation to administer psychopharmacological agents has been simply to subdue those suffering from psychological disorders. More typically today, medications are intended to provide people with some relief and ideally with the opportunity to function better in their environments.

The development, testing, and distribution of psychotherapeutic drugs, as described in Chapter 5, is a major worldwide industry. Fewer than a dozen countries (predominantly the United States, Italy, Japan, Germany, France, the United Kingdom, Brazil, Spain, and Canada) account for approximately 75% of the world's pharmaceutical sales. In the United States alone, well over 250 million prescriptions are processed annually for the lawful use of psychotherapeutics, including, for example, antidepressants, stimulants, and sedative hypnotics.

We open this chapter with an overview of the use of psychotherapeutic drugs. Following a brief historical overview, we discuss some epidemiological features of what are called **psychotherapeutic** drugs. The term *psychotherapeutic* describes those drugs that have a special or unique effect on the mind or mental functioning. (In the field of psychiatry, these psychotherapeutic drugs are often called psychotropics.) We discuss mechanisms of drug action and provide an overview of four major classes

psychotherapeutic
Exerting a special or unique action on psychological functioning.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of psychotherapeutic drugs: antipsychotics, antidepressants, antianxiety agents, and mood-stabilizing drugs. We supplement this material with case examples to give you a feeling for the problems or disorders these drugs are intended to relieve.

13.1 Historical Overview

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

13-1 Describe the history of psychotherapeutic medications and the significance of chlorpromazine

13-2 Summarize the recent patterns of psychological disorders and the use of psychotherapeutic medications in the United States

Collection Philippe Clement/Arterra Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo

Early psychiatric hospitals did not have the advantages of psychotherapeutic drugs to treat patients with psychological disorders. This drawing depicts a patient with a psychological disorder during the early 1800s.

The roots of psychopharmacology are based in the 19th century, when a science of chemistry was developing, and the field grew rapidly during the 20th century. The actual coining of the term *psychopharmacology* in 1920 is attributed to David Macht, an American pharmacist (Caldwell, 1970).

The Pre-Chlorpromazine Era

Nineteenth-century society had very little understanding of psychological disorders. Although there were several compendia of treatments and psychopharmacological agents for such disorders (especially in England, France, and Germany), the proposed remedies were mostly speculative and without scientific support. Many of the approaches used were actually cruel, including bloodletting, hot irons, flogging, revolving chairs, starvation, and sneezing powder (Spiegel & Aebi, 1983). Nevertheless, attempts were made to understand and treat or, in some cases, "cleanse" those with psychological disorders. The efforts of Emil Kraepelin, Philippe Pinel, and J. E. Esquirol were particularly noteworthy. These scientists were involved in the development of a classification system of psychological disorders. They believed that a scientific understanding and categorizing of psychological disorders were prerequisites to the identification of effective treatments.

One of the more systematically studied drugs in this period was cannabis. In the 1840s, the French physician Jacques-Joseph Moreau de Tours was working at a hospital in Paris. He theorized that treatment should "substitute symptoms of mental illness with similar but controllable drug-induced symptoms" (Caldwell, 1978, p. 16). Moreau used cannabis and found gaiety

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and euphoria to be among its effects. He decided to give cannabis to two hospital patients with depression to see whether it would produce similar results in them. These patients did indeed respond to the cannabis, appearing happy and becoming talkative. Moreau also found that **manic** patients given cannabis subsequently calmed down and relaxed. Unfortunately, the effects of the cannabis tended to be temporary.

The first half of the 20th century brought further attempts to use drugs and other therapies to treat psychological disorders. For example, tests were conducted on the effectiveness of giving amphetamines to depressed and **narcoleptic** patients, and carbon dioxide inhalation procedures were used in the treatment of illnesses referred to as psychoses and **neuroses**. Also used in the treatment of psychoses were antihistamines, insulin shock, and **psychosurgery**. Electroshock therapy was used to treat severe depression (a procedure still used today). Finally, in 1949, an Australian physician named John Cade discovered that the alkali metal lithium successfully moderated manic conditions, although concerns about toxic reactions to it prevented its approval for use in the United States until 1970. Lithium remains a mainstay in the treatment of bipolar illnesses today.

Despite many efforts, the collective impact of these advances in the treatment of psychological disorders was modest at best. In fact, the total positive impact of this progress pales in comparison to the successes experienced in the later use of another drug, chlorpromazine. To the extent that psychopharmacology is defined as the use of psychotherapeutic medications to restore and maintain some degree of mental health, its true coming of age was in Paris in 1951.

manic
Relating to mania, a mood disturbance that typically includes hyperactivity, agitation, excessive elation, and pressured speech.

narcoleptic
A state characterized by brief but uncontrollable episodes of sleep.

neuroses
Nonpsychotic emotional disturbance, pain, or discomfort beyond what is appropriate in the conditions of one's life.

psychosurgery
Surgery that entails the cutting of fibers connecting particular parts of the brain or the removal or destruction of areas of brain tissue with the goal of modifying severe behavioral or emotional disturbances.

The Age of Chlorpromazine

Chlorpromazine was synthesized by Paul Charpentier in 1950. Its first use was as a psychotherapeutic medication in general surgery. Chlorpromazine was used as an anesthetic; it decreased patients' anxiety about surgical preparations and prevented shock during surgery. Henri Laborit primarily conducted this work in surgery, and his observation of chlorpromazine's calming effects led him to suggest its potential use in psychiatry. This application was initially tried at Val-de-Grace, a military hospital in Paris. Agitated individuals experiencing psychosis appeared calm following administration of chlorpromazine. In addition, the patients' thoughts appeared to become less chaotic and the patients were less excitable. Notably, the patients did not exhibit any loss of consciousness. Instead, they showed a disinterested and detached demeanor, or what Deniker (1983) has called "the syndrome of psychomotor indifference" (p. 166).

Chlorpromazine has had a profound effect on the field of psychiatry. As described by Caldwell (1978):

> By May 1953, the atmosphere in the disturbed wards of mental hospitals in Paris was transformed: straightjackets, psychohydraulic packs and noise were things of the past! Once more, Paris psychiatrists who long ago unchained the chained, became pioneers in liberating their patients, this time from inner torments too, and with a drug: (chlorpromazine). It accomplished the pharmacologic revolution of psychiatry—then and there. (p. 30)

Word of the successful use of chlorpromazine spread rapidly, and it was adopted throughout Europe, then in the United States and the rest of the world. The effects following introduction of chlorpromazine in the United States were just as dramatic. Since 1955, the number of hospitalized individuals experiencing psychosis in the United States has decreased significantly. In 1955, the figure was 600,000, and today, there are fewer than 150,000 hospitalized individuals, despite an increase in

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the general population. Of course, other factors have contributed to today's lower figure (e.g., the development of other psychotherapeutic drugs and the movement toward deinstitutionalizing individuals), but the starting point was chlorpromazine.

The decades following the introduction of chlorpromazine brought much growth in the field of psychopharmacology. The next major event was the appearance of reserpine in 1954. This drug, similar to chlorpromazine, was originally used in the treatment of another medical disorder (arterial hypertension), and the physicians using the drug noted symptoms of indifference in their patients. Because of this effect, reserpine was given to individuals experiencing psychosis. The drug had positive effects overall, but its action often took several weeks to be apparent (see Deniker, 1983), and patients who took the medication often appeared depressed. Thus, reserpine never achieved the popularity of chlorpromazine.

Other advances in the field were antianxiety (or anxiolytic) medications, such as meprobamate (which also was used as a muscle relaxant), and antidepressant medications, such as monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) and tricyclic antidepressants. Another drug that received renewed attention was LSD. Because of the psychotic-like effects produced by LSD, researchers used it to create a "model psychosis" to study (with limited success, to date) possible etiological factors contributing to psychological disorders. They could also treat the LSD-created symptoms with psychotherapeutic drugs.

In retrospect, the 1950s were a frontier period for psychopharmacology. Much growth was experienced, and advances in the field continued to be made (although none with quite the impact and significance of chlorpromazine, which is widely used today). These advances have had a profound effect on the current treatment of psychological disorders. As noted, psychopharmacology contributed to decreases in the numbers of hospitalized individuals experiencing psychosis. Unfortunately, there have been downsides to this deinstitutionalization. Although psychotherapeutic medications often ameliorate the primary symptoms associated with a disorder, this does not necessarily mean that social coping skills or general "life skills" simultaneously materialize or reappear. Thus, some form of continuing care is often warranted. It had been expected that a variety of outpatient psychiatric services would be available to serve the needs of those discharged with chronic psychological disorders. Because that has not been the case, many individuals once under psychiatric care are now without such services. It also has been argued that this lack of ongoing care contributes to the increased incidence of individuals experiencing homelessness, many of whom suffer from psychiatric illnesses.

REVIEW

1. Take a piece of paper and fold it in half. One on side describe how medications were used to treat psychological disorders before the 1950s; on the other side describe how medications have been used to treat psychological disorders since the 1950s.
2. Summarize the advantages and disadvantages with using medication to treat psychological disorders compared to other treatments such as psychosurgery.

13.2 Epidemiology

Two national surveys are relevant to the development of a picture of the nature and extent of psychological disorders in the United States. The first is the National Survey on Drug Use and Health (SAMHSA, 2019), an annual nationwide survey involving

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

interviews with approximately 70,000 randomly selected individuals aged 12 and older. It provides an indication of the number of adolescents and adults who have in the past year experienced "any mental illness," including a "severe mental illness." A delineation of the form of psychological disorder experienced is not captured in this survey, aside from depression. The second national survey, with a much more in-depth focus on the form of psychological disorder, is provided in the National Comorbidity Survey Replication (NCS-R) (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005; Kessler, Chiu, et al., 2005; Wang, Berglund, et al., 2005; Wang, Lane, et al., 2005), a national household survey of over 9,000 adults (age 18 and older). In terms of disorders, the NCS-R survey focused on anxiety disorders (such as panic and posttraumatic stress disorders), mood disorders (such as major depression and bipolar disorder), and neurodevelopmental disorders (such as attention deficit/hyperactivity disorders). Although both surveys gathered data on substance misuse, the focus here is on the findings pertaining to the psychological disorders noted above. Among the findings were the following:

- One in every four to five adults in the United States (estimates range from 17.9% to 26.2%) suffers from a diagnosable psychological disorder in a given year. Approximately a quarter of these individuals were classified as having had a "serious" psychological disorder, in that it significantly disrupted their ability to function day to day.
- The most prevalent "past-year" psychological disorder classes are anxiety disorders (18%), mood disorders, including depression (10%), and neurodevelopmental disorders (9%).
- Almost half of U.S. adults had met the criteria for a psychological disorder at some point in their lives. Most of these cases were mild, and typically did not require treatment.
- Comorbidity, which refers to the simultaneous occurrence of two or more psychological disorders, was common. In fact, almost half (estimates ranged from 41% to 45%) of the adults with one disorder met the criteria for at least one other disorder (including 18.6% who had a comorbid substance use disorder).
- Fewer than half of those in need receive treatment, and those who do often wait many years before doing so.
- The signs of a psychological disorder appear to be evident early on. Half of the adults who were diagnosed with a psychological disorder showed signs of the disorder by age 14, and three-quarters showed signs by age 24. Unfortunately, few sought help.
- Data for children and adolescents are limited. The National Survey on Drug Use and Health did collect information on symptoms of depression among adolescents and found that 8.8% of adolescents (aged 12–17) had a major depressive episode in the past year. In more than 70% of the cases, the episode included severe impairment.

It should be noted that these prevalence rates may be underestimates of psychological disorders in the United States. First, the sample drawn was household listings and thus did not include individuals who were homeless or institutionalized (such as in nursing homes or psychiatric hospitals). Second, the study did not assess some less common psychiatric disorders, such as schizophrenia and autism.

The symptoms associated with psychological disorders frequently are treated with prescription medications, most commonly prescriptions for an antidepressant or anti-anxiety agent. Antidepressant agents are the second most commonly prescribed class

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of medications in outpatient offices and clinics, following lipid regulators (mainly statin medications). (Antipsychotic medications account for a small fraction of the total number of prescriptions provided.) And considerable relief is reported: National surveys suggest that approximately three-fourths of individuals who receive these medications report some degree of symptomatic relief.

There are important trends among people who use psychotherapeutic medications. First, the prevalence of psychotherapeutic medication use is about twice as high among women as among men. Second, psychotherapeutic drug use increases with age, a trend seen more dramatically among men. Third, greater use of psychotherapeutics is found among those who live alone, those with more education, and those with higher incomes.

Although most psychotherapeutic medications are used as prescribed, the nonprescribed use and misuse of psychotherapeutic drugs are a significant problem. Misuse of prescription drugs can take many forms, ranging from individuals who exceedrecommended dosages to the street sale of pharmaceuticals (Arria & Compton, 2017; Weiss & Greenfield, 1986). People who misuse prescription drugs divert them from legal distribution by stealing from drugstores or pharmaceutical companies, pilfering supplies of hospitals or clinics, and altering or forging prescriptions. Estimates indicate that several hundred millions of the drug dosage units prescribed for psychiatric disorders each year in the United States are diverted to street or other illicit use. The consequences of prescription drug misuse are immense. For example, prescription drug misuse is implicated in significant numbers of injuries, drug-related emergency room cases, and drug-related deaths.

The drugs most often misused in Western cultures are depressants and stimulants. People of all ages have been known to misuse prescription drugs, but older adults are at a higher risk for misuse, due to the prevalence of conditions such as chronic pain, sleep disorders, and anxiety. Older adults (> age 65 years) use approximately one-third of the drugs taken yearly in the United States, while accounting for approximately 15% of the population. It is not uncommon to see older adults misuse prescribed medications in combination with each other, with over-the-counter drugs (see Chapter 14), or with alcohol. (The use of multiple prescription drugs is not always intentional because doctors sometimes provide prescriptions without being aware of other prescription medications their patients are already using.)

Over the years, both legislative and medical association groups have made efforts to monitor and control the availability of and access to prescribed medications. Most legal guidelines are consolidated in the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 (better known as the Controlled Substances Act; see Chapter 2). In particular, this act mandates explicit procedures for distributing and dispensing prescription medications. Most psychotherapeutic medications are under federal control and require a prescription for use.

Several information-gathering networks have been established to monitor the distribution and use (legal and otherwise) of drugs overall, including psychotherapeutic drugs. The largest of these was the Drug Abuse Warning Network (DAWN), which obtained reports from emergency rooms and medical examiners' offices to produce yearly statistics on morbidity and mortality associated with drug use. DAWN ceased data collection in 2011. SAMSHA is currently reestablishing DAWN, keeping valuable aspects of the legacy DAWN while making important changes, such as improving the timeliness of data and providing data at more frequent intervals. SAMSHA began recruiting hospitals in 2019 and will continue until 50 hospitals agree to participate. The new DAWN will function as an early warning or surveillance system.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Before leaving the discussion on prescription drug misuse, we should note that a variety of over-the-counter substances with psychoactive properties are also subject to misuse. Examples are nonprescription hypnotics that contain antihistamines, nonprescription cold and allergy products, laxatives, nonprescription stimulants, and diet pills. These are described in more detail in Chapter 14.

REVIEW

1. Describe to a friend the contemporary important trends associated with the use of psychotherapeutic medications.

13.3 Classes of Drugs and Their Actions

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

13-3 Discuss the four classes of drugs used to treat psychological disorders and the disorders each class treats

13-4 Evaluate whether the effectiveness of antipsychotic medications supports the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia

13-5 Compare and contrast how the types of antianxiety medications exert their effects

13-6 Compare and contrast the mechanism of action for the five classes of antidepressants

13-7 Discuss the side effects associated with specific psychotherapeutic medications to their mechanism of action

Psychotherapeutic drugs, like other drugs, can be classified along a variety of dimensions, such as chemical structure, clinical actions, and sites of action (see Chapter 1). However, the most common classification used in psychiatry, and the one we use, is by therapeutic usage. This classification yields four basic categories:

- Antipsychotics,
- Antidepressants,
- Antianxiety, and
- Mood-stabilizing medications.

In the following sections, we describe representative psychotherapeutics in each of these classifications.

Antipsychotics

As you will recall, the introduction of antipsychotic medications in the 1950s was a major turning point in the treatment of severe psychiatric disorders, especially schizophrenia. Schizophrenia is a term that encompasses an array of thought disorders, including disturbances in areas of functioning such as language, affect, perception,

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and behavior. These disturbances, depending on the type of schizophrenia, may include distortions of reality (such as delusions and hallucinations), profoundly blunted mood, and withdrawn or bizarre behavior. The symptoms that are most likely to respond to antipsychotic medications are agitation, mania, hallucinations, delusions, fury, and accelerated and disorganized thinking processes (Magliozzi & Schaffer, 1988). It is estimated that schizophrenia affects approximately 1% of people over a lifetime, and the rate appears to be slightly higher among men than women (APA, 2000; Brown, 2011). Sometimes an individual has previously or concurrently experienced a significant depressive or manic episode, in which case a diagnosis of schizoaffective disorder might be given to reflect the presence of symptoms of both schizophrenia and a major affective disorder.

agitated depression
Depressed mood accompanied by a state of tension or restlessness. People with agitated depression show excessive motor activity, as they may, for example, be unable to sit still or may pace, wring their hands, or pull at their clothes.

neuroleptics
Tranquilizing drugs used to treat psychoses; a synonym is major tranquilizer.

To a lesser extent, antipsychotics also have been used in the treatment of mania, **agitated depression**, toxic (such as drug-induced) psychoses, emotionally unstable personalities, and psychoses associated with older ages. Antipsychotic medications are also known as **neuroleptics** or major tranquilizers (the latter term is used much less frequently now). The term *neuroleptic* is derived from the Greek word that means "to clamp the neuron" (Snyder & Largent, 1989). Antipsychotics is the term more commonly used in the United States, with neuroleptics used more often in Europe. The terms are used interchangeably in this discussion. Representative antipsychotic medications are listed in Table 13.1. There are two types of antipsychotic medications: phenothiazine and nonphenothiazine. Phenothiazine antipsychotics are known as typical antipsychotics and while the exact mechanism of action is unclear, they are believed to work by blocking the action of dopamine in the brain. Nonphenothiazine antipsychotics are also known as atypical or second-generation antipsychotics. Again, the exact mechanism of action is unclear but these medications modulate the action of dopamine and serotonin, but also induce neural plasticity and synaptic remodeling.

> *"Sometimes people are taking away parts of my body and putting them back. Sometimes I think they are going to kill me."*
>
> 22-year-old individual living with schizophrenia describing his thoughts and feelings (*Time Magazine*, July 6, 1992)

The basic—but oversimplified—notion regarding antipsychotic medications is that they primarily affect the reticular activating system, the limbic system, and the hypothalamus. The effects on the reticular activating system generally moderate spontaneous activity and decrease the patient's reactivity to stimuli. The action within the limbic system serves to moderate or blunt emotional arousal. These actions are thought to produce the drug's dramatic effects on schizophrenic or agitated behavioral patterns. The effects on the hypothalamus help modulate metabolism, alertness, and muscle tone. Because of these effects, antipsychotics are the major approach to the drug treatment of schizophrenia. The following is a case example of **paranoid schizophrenia**:

paranoid schizophrenia
A type of schizophrenia distinguished by systematic delusions or auditory hallucinations related to one theme.

> Mr. Simpson is a single, unemployed, 44-year-old white man brought to the emergency room by the police for striking an elderly woman in his apartment building. His chief complaint is, "That damn bitch. She and the rest of them deserved more than that for what they put me through."
>
> The patient has been continuously ill since age 22. During his first year of law school, he gradually became more and more convinced that his classmates were making fun of him. He noticed that they would snort and sneeze whenever he entered the classroom. When a girl he was dating broke off the relationship with him, he believed that she had been "replaced" by a look-alike. He called the police and asked for their help to solve the "kidnapping." His academic performance in school declined dramatically, and he was asked to leave and seek psychiatric care.
>
> Mr. Simpson got a job as an investment counselor at a bank, which he held for seven months. However, he was getting an increasing number of distracting "signals" from

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 13.1 Representative Antipsychotic Medications

Generic Name	Trade Name
Phenothiazines	
Chlorpromazine	Thorazine
Prochlorperazine	Compazine
Trifluoperazine	Stelazine
Fluphenazine	Prolixin
Thioridazine	Mellaril
Pimozide	Orap
Perphenazine	Trilafon
Promazine	Prazine
Mesoridazine	Serentil
Trifluprom azine	Psyquil
Nonphenothiazines	
Haloperidol	Haldol
Thiothixene	Navane
Loxapine	Loxitane
Clozapine	Clozaril
Molindone	Moban
Quetiapine	Seroquel
Risperidone	Risperdal
Olanzapine	Zyprexa
Ziprasidone	Zeldox
Sertindole	Serlect
Aripiprazole	Abilify
Amisulpride	Solian
Paliperidone	Invega
Zotepine	Nipolept
Ziprasidone	Geodon
Iloperidone	Fanapt
Asenapine	Saphris
Lurasidone	Latuda

coworkers, and he became more and more suspicious and withdrawn. It was at this time that he first reported hearing voices. He was eventually fired and soon thereafter was hospitalized for the first time, at age 24. He has not worked since.

Mr. Simpson has been hospitalized 12 times, the longest stay being 8 months. However, in the past 5 years he has been hospitalized only once, for 3 weeks. During the hospitalizations he has received various antipsychotic drugs. Although outpatient medication has been prescribed, he usually stops taking it shortly after leaving the hospital. Aside from twice-yearly lunch meetings with his uncle and his contacts with mental health workers, he is isolated socially. He lives on his own and manages his own financial affairs, including a modest inheritance. He reads the *Wall Street Journal* daily. He cooks and cleans for himself.

Mr. Simpson maintains that his apartment is the center of a large communication system that involves all three major television networks, his neighbors, and apparently hundreds of "actors" in his neighborhood. There are secret cameras in his apartment that carefully monitor all his activities. When he is watching TV, many of his minor actions (e.g., going to the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

bathroom) are soon directly commented on by the announcer. Whenever he goes outside, the "actors" have all been warned to keep him under surveillance. Everyone on the street watches him. His neighbors operate two different "machines"; one is responsible for all of his voices, except the "joker." He is not certain who controls this voice, which "visits" him only occasionally and is very funny. The other voices, which he hears many times each day, are generated by this machine, which he sometimes thinks is directly run by the neighbor whom he attacked. For example, when he is going over his investments, these "harassing" voices constantly tell him which stocks to buy. The other machine he calls "the dream machine." This machine puts erotic dreams into his head, usually of "black women."

Mr. Simpson describes other unusual experiences. For example, he recently went to a shoe store 30 miles from his house in the hope of getting some shoes that wouldn't be "altered." However, he soon found out that, like the rest of the shoes he buys, special nails had been put into the bottom of the shoes to annoy him. He was amazed that his decision concerning which shoe store to go to must have been known to his "harassers" before he himself knew it, so that they had time to get the altered shoes made up especially for him. He realizes that great effort and "millions of dollars" are involved in keeping him under surveillance. He sometimes thinks this is all part of a large experiment to discover the secret of his "superior intelligence." (Reprinted with permission from the *DSM-IV-TR Casebook: A Learning Companion to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fourth Edition, Text Revision [Copyright © 2002]. American Psychiatric Association.)

Although several theories address the action of antipsychotics, the dopamine hypothesis is generally accepted. This theory is based on the observation of amphetamine-induced psychosis, which serves as a pharmacological model of schizophrenic behavior. The symptoms evidenced in this model of psychosis are readily ameliorated through the use of neuroleptic drugs. Furthermore, it appears that most amphetamine-induced psychotic behavior is mediated through increased release of dopamine in the brain. Thus, the dopamine theory has two core components: (1) Psychosis is induced by increased levels of dopaminergic activity, and (2) most antipsychotic drugs block postsynaptic dopamine receptors (Baldessarini, 1985; Bishara & Taylor, 2008; Gardner et al., 2005; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). Unfortunately, it is not certain what leads to this dopaminergic overactivity in the first place.

It is believed that although typical and atypical neuroleptics block norepinephrine, serotonin, and acetylcholine, their primary action is as central dopamine antagonists (Galenberg, 1991; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). That is, these drugs block central dopamine receptors, particularly the D2 subtype, and thus inhibit dopaminergic neurotransmission in the brain. The postsynaptic receptor blockade in the limbic system is thought to reduce the schizophrenic symptoms.

Although antipsychotic medications have produced many positive effects in the treatment of psychological disorders, their use comes with significant side effects. Antipsychotics also affect the **extrapyramidal** tract by blocking postsynaptic receptors in the basal ganglia, and these actions produce some of the most profound side effects associated with antipsychotics. Chief among the acute side effects are motor disturbances, which, taken together, give the appearance of a Parkinsonian syndrome. People who have Parkinson's disease are characterized by tremor, blank rigidity, gait and posture changes, and excessive salivation. Extrapyramidal symptoms are the most apparent motor disturbances, primarily **dyskinesia** (disordered movements) and **akinesia** (slowness of movement and underactivity). These are experienced acutely by at least 50% of individuals who take antipsychotics (Bhana et al., 2001; Chakos et al., 1992; Mackay, 1982). The side effects of antipsychotics tend to be dose related: Stronger side effects are associated with higher doses of the antipsychotic medication.

extrapyramidal
Outside the pyramidal tracts, with origin in the basal ganglia. These cell bodies are involved with starting, stopping, and smoothing out movements.

dyskinesia
Disordered movements.

akinesia
Slowness of movement and underactivity.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The most common side effect associated with the long-term use of antipsychotics is another extrapyramidal complication known as **tardive dyskinesia**. Tardive dyskinesia, which typically can be seen after 2 years or more of antipsychotic drug use, is characterized most often by repetitive involuntary movements of the mouth and tongue (often in the form of lip smacking), trunk, and extremities. Most cases of tardive dyskinesia are preceded by the Parkinson-like symptoms described earlier. Tardive dyskinesia occurs among up to one-third of treated individuals (Fait et al., 2002; Gitlin, 1990), and many if not most of the tardive dyskinesia symptoms are permanent. The incidence rates for tardive dyskinesia markedly increase with age and with years of use of antipsychotic medications. The effects are seen more among women than men. Efforts to control or eliminate these effects include reducing the dose of the drug, which sometimes reduces the side effect and still provides some relief from the psychotic symptoms; administering medications designed to treat the side effects symptomatically (e.g., benztropine [trade name Cogentin] or trihexyphenidyl [Artane]); and instituting what are called "drug holidays," during which individuals are off medication to have a physiological break from the use of the drug.

tardive dyskinesia
An extrapyramidal complication characterized by involuntary movements of the mouth and tongue, trunk, and extremities; a side effect of long-term (2 or more years) use of antipsychotic drugs.

Although great strides have been made in the pharmacological treatment of schizophrenia and related disorders, concerted efforts in this area are continuing. One focus is on developing neuroleptics that provide symptom relief but act through different mechanisms. The hope is to avoid or minimize the side effects (especially tardive dyskinesia) of current antipsychotic medications. A second emphasis is on developing neuroleptics that not only diminish the obvious symptoms such as hallucinations but also alleviate some less visible symptoms, such as emotional withdrawal. One excellent example in this regard is clozapine (trade name Clozaril), used in the treatment of psychotic and schizophrenic disorders. Clozapine was the first of the nonphenothiazine or atypical antipsychotics (Bonham & Abbott, 2008). Most of the subsequent antipsychotics in this class seek to emulate the pharmacological properties believed to be responsible for clozapine's particular clinical profile (Grunder et al., 2009). The major attractive feature of clozapine is that it has yielded antipsychotic efficacy among individuals who have not responded to other antipsychotics, such as haloperidol. In addition, clozapine appears to produce a minimum of acute extrapyramidal side effects and is a rare antipsychotic that does not appear to produce tardive dyskinesia. Like all medications, however, clozapine has side effects. The most significant concern with clozapine is the occasional side effect of agranulocytosis, a destructive condition in which the bone marrow stops producing white blood cells, thus opening the door to infection. If undetected, agranulocytosis results in death, so close monitoring of the patient is required. Close monitoring of heart functioning is also needed, especially early in the course of treatment, based on recent reports of fatal myocarditis, an inflammation of the heart lining. Although initially not available to large numbers of clients because of the high costs of the drug and the associated blood-test monitoring, the subsequent availability of generics of clozapine is allowing more individuals to benefit from the use of this medication.

Another area of recent attention has been evaluation of the relative effectiveness of antipsychotic medications. The general clinical experience is that no one antipsychotic medication is the "magic pill" for all individuals with schizophrenia. Instead, treatment providers have sometimes needed to shift individuals from one medication to another until finding the medication that works best for each individual. In one study, for example, five medications (olanzapine [trade name Zyprexa], perphenazine [Trilafon], quetiapine [Seroquel], risperidone [Risperdal], and ziprasidone [Zeldox]) used to treat schizophrenia were compared (Lieberman et al., 2005). It was found that all five medications blunted the symptoms of schizophrenia, but that nearly 75%

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 13.1

The Right to Refuse Psychotherapeutic Medications

As you are aware, countries and cultures vary considerably in the extent to which they tolerate freedom of speech and other forms of behavioral expression. Not surprisingly, this often predicts the extent to which individuals with psychological disorders (however defined) have any say in how they are treated. In some cultures, the response to behaviors viewed as "different" or "mentally ill" is to subdue people through incarceration, restraints, drugs, or some combination of these interventions. In other cultures, treatment might include a more collaborative approach in which individuals discuss their problems with a counselor or work with a psychiatrist in trying different drugs to see how they work.

The United States has a long constitutional history of endorsing the rights of individuals. But how far should this privilege extend? For example, should a person who is voluntarily or involuntarily admitted to a psychiatric facility have the opportunity to refuse psychotherapeutic drugs? For many years, people hospitalized for psychiatric treatment had little if any say in whether drugs would be administered, based in part on the assumption that they had no expertise in the area of psychotherapeutic medications and that being hospitalized to begin with suggested impaired functioning and thus the inability to make decisions.

This issue has been addressed in court cases over the years. In one case, seven Boston State Hospital patients filed suit to stop the (nonemergency) administration of medications without their informed consent. Relatedly, these individuals claimed the right to refuse medication. The psychiatrists faced a dilemma. On the one hand, they knew by experience that certain drugs were able to significantly relieve emotional distress. On the other hand, some of these drugs had unpleasant side effects and individuals understandably might want to avoid these. The court decided in favor of the individuals. It ruled that, whether voluntarily or involuntarily admitted to a hospital, individuals should be presumed competent to accept or refuse psychotherapeutic medications. The court added that when an individual was not deemed competent, a court-appointed guardian needed to make the decision whether to use medications.

Is this the final word? No, probably not. New cases arise and can yield different rulings. However, the practical implication of the Boston State Hospital case may not arise very often for the simple reason that those hospitalized for psychological disorders do not frequently raise the issue of refusing their medications.

of individuals stopped taking the drugs they were on because of discomfort or specific side effects. One of the drugs—olanzapine (Zyprexa)—appeared to help more individuals control symptoms for a longer period of time, although with a higher risk of side effects that in turn increased risk of diabetes.

Finally, it should be noted before closing that other pharmacological treatments for schizophrenia and related disorders continue to be evaluated and distributed for use in clinical settings. Among the newer is risperidone (trade name Risperdal), which provides many of the benefits associated with clozapine without the agranulocytosis risk. Unfortunately, risperidone appears to present an increased risk of diabetes (as indicated in the aforementioned Lieberman et al., 2005, study). Further, individuals taking risperidone (along with quetiapine, olanzapine, and clozapine) may have an increased risk of sudden death from cardiac arrhythmias and other cardiac causes than those not taking these medications (Ray et al., 2009). A second promising treatment is aripiprazole (Abilify), which seeks to stabilize the dopamine system. Both medications have shown very positive outcomes and many fewer and less severe side effects. Finally, another opening frontier in the advance of antipsychotics medications revolves around glutamate (as opposed to the more traditional focus on dopamine). Glutamate is central to brain processes involving perception, memory, and learning.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Antidepressants

Depression is among the most common psychiatric disorders in the United States. Approximately 20% of the U.S. population will experience a depressive episode in their lifetimes (Kessler, Berglund, et al., 2005; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013), and approximately 10% will do so in a given year. Depressions vary in severity, duration, and frequency of occurrence; the most common symptoms that contribute to what has been characterized as a depressive syndrome (as opposed to cases where a person might feel sad or blue) include dysphoric mood, loss of interest, disturbances in appetite and weight, sleep disturbance, fatigue, withdrawal, thoughts of suicide, and difficulties in concentration. Depressions frequently are classified as either **endogenous**, in which symptoms tend to be chronic and associated with genetic factors, or **exogenous**, in which symptoms are thought to be in response to some situation or event (Cooperrider, 1988). The average age for the onset of a first depressive episode traditionally has been in the late 30s or early 40s, although depressions are being seen more frequently among younger people and even among children under the age of 6 (Luby et al., 2009). The length of a depressive episode is also variable, although periods of 6 months are common. Depression is diagnosed much more frequently among women than among men (Ebmeier et al., 2006). Around 50% of the people who experience a major depressive episode do not have a recurrence of the illness (Coryell & Winokur, 1982).

endogenous
Developed from within. When applied to depression, the term means that depressive symptoms seem to be due to genetic factors.

exogenous
Developed from without. When applied to depression, the term means that depressive symptoms seem to be in reaction to a particular situation or event.

The following case, excerpted from Spitzer et al. (2002), is an example of major depression rated as moderately severe:

> Connie, a 33-year-old homemaker and mother of a 4-year-old son, Robert, is referred by her general practitioner to a psychiatric outpatient program because of her complaint that she has been depressed and unable to concentrate ever since she separated from her husband 3 months previously.
>
> Connie left her husband, Donald, after a five-year marriage. Violent arguments between them, during which Connie was beaten by her husband, had occurred for the last four years of their marriage, beginning when she became pregnant with Robert. There were daily arguments during which Donald hit her hard enough to leave bruises on her face and arms. During their final argument, about Connie's buying an expensive tricycle for Robert, her husband had held a loaded gun to Robert's head and threatened to shoot him if she didn't agree to return the tricycle to the store. Connie obtained a court order of protection that prevented Donald from having any contact with her or their son. She took Robert to her parents' apartment, where they are still living.
>
> Connie is an only child, and a high school and secretarial school graduate. She worked as an executive secretary for six years before her marriage and for the first two years thereafter, until Robert's birth. Before her marriage Connie had her own apartment. She was close to her parents, visiting them weekly and speaking to them a couple of times a week. Connie had many friends whom she also saw regularly. She still had several friends from her high school years. In high school, she had been

Wavebreak Media/Alamy Stock Photo

Common symptoms of depression are dysphoric mood, loss of interest, sleep disturbance, withdrawal, and difficulties in concentration.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

a popular cheerleader and a good student. In the office where she had worked as a secretary, she was in charge of organizing office holiday parties and money collections for employee gifts. She had no personal history of depression, and there was no family history of violence, mental illness, or substance abuse. Her parents had been happily married for 25 years.

Connie met Donald at work, where he was an accountant. They married after a three-month courtship, during which time Connie observed Donald using cocaine twice at parties. When she expressed concern, he reassured her that he was only "trying it to be sociable" and denied any regular use.

Donald, a college graduate, is the oldest of three siblings. His father drank a pint of bourbon each night and often beat Donald's mother. Donald's two younger brothers both have histories of substance abuse.

During their first year of marriage, Donald became increasingly irritable and critical of Connie. He began to request that Connie stop calling and seeing her friends after work and refused to allow them or his in-laws to visit their apartment. Connie convinced Donald to try marital therapy, but he refused to continue after the initial two sessions.

Despite her misgivings about Donald's behavior toward her, Connie decided to become pregnant. During the seventh month of the pregnancy, she developed thrombophlebitis and had to stay home in bed. Donald began complaining that their apartment was not clean enough and that Connie was not able to shop for groceries. He never helped Connie with the housework. He refused to allow his mother-in-law to come to the apartment to help. One morning when he couldn't find a clean shirt, he became angry and yelled at Connie. When she suggested that he pick some up from the laundry, he began hitting her with his fists. She left him and went to live with her parents for a week. He expressed remorse for hitting her and agreed to resume marital therapy.

At her parents' and Donald's urging, Connie returned to her apartment. No further violence occurred until after Robert's birth. At that time, Donald began using cocaine every weekend and often became violent when he was high.

In the three months since she left Donald, Connie has become increasingly depressed. Her appetite has been poor, and she has lost 10 pounds. She cries a lot and often wakes up at 5 a.m. and is unable to get back to sleep. Ever since she left Donald, he has been calling her at her parents' home and begging her to return to him. One week before her psychiatric evaluation, Connie's parents took her to their general practitioner. Her physical examination was normal, and he referred her for psychiatric treatment.

When seen by a psychiatrist in the outpatient clinic, Connie is pale and thin, dressed in worn-out jeans and dark blue sweater. Her haircut is unstylish, and she appears older than she is. She speaks slowly, describing her depressed mood and lack of energy. She says that her only pleasure is in being with her son. She is able to take care of him physically, but feels guilty because her preoccupation with her own bad feelings prevents her from being able to play with him. She now has no social contacts other than with her parents and her son. She feels worthless and blames herself for her marital problems, saying that if she had been a better wife, maybe Donald would have been able to give up the cocaine. When asked why she stayed with him so long, she explains that her family disapproved of divorce and kept telling her that she should try harder to make her marriage a success. She also thought about what her life would be like trying to take care of her son while working full-time and didn't think she could make it. (Reprinted with permission from the *DSM-IV-TR Casebook: A Learning Companion to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fourth Edition, Text Revision [Copyright © 2002]. American Psychiatric Association.)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Although stimulants once were used as a treatment for depression, their effectiveness was limited, especially among people with severe depressions. Today, stimulants are rarely used for depression. Instead, several classes of antidepressant medications are prescribed, each acting in a manner different from stimulants, which produce a euphoria that does not generally occur with antidepressants (Cooperrider, 1988). There are currently five major classes of antidepressants:

- **Tricyclic antidepressants.** Tricyclic antidepressants are so named because of their chemical structure, which consists of three interconnected rings of atoms.
- **MAOIs.** Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) were one of the first class of antidepressants to be developed. As the name suggests, these drugs work by inhibiting the action of monoamine oxidase, resulting in more monoamine neurotransmitters available in the brain.
- **Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs).** SSRIs are a newer class of antidepressants that work by blocking the reuptake of serotonin. SSRIs are associated with fewer side effects for many individuals.
- **Serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs).** SNRIs work in a similar way as SSRIs, but they inhibit the reuptake of both serotonin and norepinephrine.
- **Atypical antidepressants.** Newer antidepressant medications such as bupropion and Symbyax do not fit into any of the above classes. These medications work in a variety of ways, affecting serotonin, norepinephrine, and dopamine.

Representative antidepressant medications in these five categories are listed in Table 13.2.

> *"After a few weeks on Prozac, I realized my outlook on life was brighter. Since taking it, my friendships have blossomed, I've developed a couple of friendships at work that I never had before. I didn't know that I could look at life without seeing all the bad."*
>
> 33-year-old professional woman describing the effects of Prozac (*Washington Post Health*, August 28, 1990)

Both the tricyclics and MAOIs were available in the late 1950s. As with other psychotherapeutic medications, their potential antidepressant effects were discovered serendipitously. The tricyclics initially were being investigated as antipsychotic agents, whereas the MAOIs initially were used in the treatment of tuberculosis. In both cases, investigators noted antidepressant effects—for example, some tuberculosis patients treated with an MAOI showed an energized state.

Before discussing the cyclics and MAOIs in more detail, we need to present the postulated biochemical hypotheses for depression. One theory posits that depression results from a deficiency in biogenic amines, specifically catecholamines and serotonin, which act as central nervous system neurotransmitters (see Chapter 3). According to the catecholamine hypothesis, depression results from a deficiency in catecholamines (particularly norepinephrine) at varied neuron receptor sites in the brain. Several antidepressant drugs are believed to block the reuptake of norepinephrine from the synaptic cleft. Thus, the result is a greater concentration of norepinephrine in the synaptic cleft, alleviating the hypothesized neurotransmitter deficiency. This process is thought to occur in the amygdala and reticular formation areas of the brain.

The catecholamine theory is derived in large part from observations of the effects of the antipsychotic agent reserpine, discussed earlier in the historical overview. Individuals given reserpine often exhibit a depressed appearance. Furthermore, reserpine was found to deplete brain concentrations of norepinephrine. Thus, there was the suggestion that such depletions were causally related to depression.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 13.2 Representative Antidepressant Medications

Generic Name	Trade Name
Tricyclic antidepressants	
Amitriptyline	Elavil
Clomipramine	Anafranil
Imipramine	Tofranil
MAOIs	
Phenelzine	Nardil
Tranylcypromine	Parnate
Isocarboxazid	Marplan
SSRIs	
Citalopram	Celexa
Escitalopram	Lexapro
Fluoxetine	Prozac
Paroxetine	Paxil
SNRIs	
Duloxetine	Cymbalta
Venlafaxine	Effexor
Atypical antidepressants	
Bupropion	Wellbutrin
Trazodone	Oleptro

Note: The most frequently prescribed antidepressant drugs include citalopram (Celexa), fluoxetine (Prozac), and paroxetine (Paxil).

The serotonin hypothesis, the other central theory of antidepressant action, postulates that depression is the result of a deficiency of the neurotransmitter serotonin in the brain stem (Galenberg & Schoonover, 1991; Kalus et al., 1989). People who are depressed may have reduced levels of serotonin and chemicals involved in its metabolism in their cerebrospinal fluid.

Although the tricyclics, SSRIs, and SNRIs block the uptake of amines, MAOIs prevent the breakdown of neurotransmitters (Cohen, 1997; Cooperrider, 1988; Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). The enzyme monoamine oxidase metabolizes a variety of neurotransmitters, including norepinephrine and serotonin. MAOIs inhibit this degradation process and thus enhance the availability of the transmitter within the neuron. Thus, the actions of the tricyclics, SSRIs, SNRIs, and MAOIs each are consistent with the hypothesis that decreased brain catecholamine activity causes depression and that these antidepressants (using different mechanisms) reverse this process by increasing catecholamine activity in the brain.

Taken together, the tricyclics, SSRIs, SNRIs, and MAOIs each appear to enhance the functional activity of one or more neurotransmitters, but our understanding of the mechanisms remains clouded. One finding that contributes to our lack of understanding is that the effects noted occur within hours, although the therapeutic antidepressant action can take days or weeks for an individual to experience.

Although current theories about the actions of antidepressants are best viewed as tentative, subsequent work on the neurobiology of depression has provided some exciting new insights. A link has been known to exist between depression (and also chronic stress and anxiety) and atrophy and cell loss in the hippocampus. Research by several researchers (e.g., Duman, 2004; Duman et al., 2001; Malberg et al., 2000;

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Santarelli et al., 2003) has demonstrated that antidepressant treatment increases neurogenesis, or new cell growth, in the hippocampus. This neurogenesis may block or reverse the effects of depression on hippocampal neurons. Further, the new cell growth appears to take several weeks to occur, and this may account for the fact that antidepressant medications typically take several weeks to exert their action. The findings suggest that increased cell proliferation and increased neuronal numbers may be mechanisms by which antidepressant treatment overcomes the atrophy and loss of hippocampal neurons associated with depression.

Photo Researchers/Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo

Cymbalta is among the most commonly prescribed antidepressant medications.

Antidepressants are taken orally and absorbed readily through the gastrointestinal tract (Fait et al., 2002). Following absorption, relatively high concentrations of the drugs develop in the brain especially but also in other organs. Then the antidepressant pharmacokinetics resemble those of the antipsychotics, especially chlorpromazine (Baldessarini, 1985). More is known of the absorption and distribution of tricyclics, SSRIs, and SNRIs than of the MAOIs, in part because of the difficulty in isolating MAOI metabolites (Tyrer, 1982). Metabolism for each occurs primarily in the liver, with most excreted through the urine.

Despite the rapid absorption of antidepressant medications, one disadvantage in their use (noted previously) is that clinical action frequently takes 2 to 3 weeks to be apparent in the individuals' functioning. Unfortunately, individuals experience most of the undesired side effects of antidepressants during this initial period of use, and many terminate their use because they experience the side effects in the absence of rapid symptom relief. The most common side effects of the tricyclics are drowsiness; a variety of anticholinergic effects such as dry mouth, constipation, and difficulty in urinating; blurred vision; orthostasis (dizziness upon standing up); decreased libido; weight gain; and tachycardia (Andrews & Nemeroff, 1994). In addition, use of some of the newer SSRI antidepressant medications may be associated with a greater risk of bone breaks (Richards et al., 2007) and, among older women, an increased rate of bone loss at the hip (Diem et al., 2007). The most common side effects of the MAOIs are drowsiness, dry mouth, dizziness, weight gain, insomnia, constipation, and fatigue. In addition, MAOI use is associated with two other unwanted effects. The first is temporary low blood pressure when changing position (such as from sitting to standing), and the second is impaired sexual functioning. Men may experience impotence and difficulty in ejaculating, and women may report orgasmic inhibition. The use of MAOIs also requires dietary restrictions. Most significant among these is avoiding substances that contain tyramine, such as most cheeses and some alcoholic beverages (especially Chianti wine). MAOIs and tyramine interact to cause potentially severe hypertensive reactions. Finally, a concern in the use of antidepressants is their potential for lethal use. Overdosing on tricyclics, SSRIs, or SNRIs can result in coma, respiratory difficulties, and a variety of cardiac problems. Accordingly, individuals' potential for suicide has to be assessed before most of the cyclics are prescribed. MAOIs do not produce intoxicating effects, and overdosing on them is not common.

> *"What we're going to find out about the brain is mind-boggling. Every time a new drug is found another disease disappears, and makes one very curious about what other diseases have a biological basis."*
>
> Drug therapist Dr. Paul Wender (*Newsweek*, March 26, 1990)

An area of recent concern regarding some antidepressants, primarily SSRIs, is the possibility of suicide, especially among children. This concern prompted the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to issue a warning that people taking antidepressants

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

can become suicidal and should be closely monitored, especially when individuals start using an antidepressant or when the dose is increased or decreased. The FDA urged the manufacturers of 10 popular antidepressants (trade names Prozac, Zoloft, Wellbutrin, Zyban, Paxil, Celexa, Effexor, Serzone, Luvox, and Remeron) to issue revised warning labels for the medications identifying these concerns. These concerns also led Great Britain to markedly increase restrictions on the prescribing of antidepressants for children. In 2003, the British Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency declared Celexa, Effexor, Lexapro, Luvox, Paxil (called Seroxat in Britain), and Zoloft as too risky for children under age 18. Physicians, and also individuals and their parent or guardian, will need to incorporate these considerations into decisions on whether and which antidepressants to use, and on balancing the risks of using antidepressants against leaving the illness untreated pharmacologically.

The therapeutic effects of antidepressants for many individuals are impressive once the lag time has passed. This is particularly the case with more severe cases of depression (Fournier et al., 2010). Tricyclics, SSRIs, and SNRIs in particular markedly alleviate depressive symptoms. MAOIs also have strong supportive treatment effectiveness rates when compared with placebos, although the positive outcomes are not as dramatic. Also, MAOIs, when compared directly with other antidepressants, tend to be less effective. This has led to a tendency, in the United States at least, for tricyclics, SSRIs, and SNRIs along with the atypical antidepressants identified in Table 13.2 to be the treatment of choice for most depressions, with MAOIs used when these do not produce desired results.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 13.2

Antidepressant Medications: Drug versus Placebo Effects

An issue often discussed in the context of psychotherapeutic medications is whether receiving a medication provides more relief than receiving a placebo (an individual receives an inactive pill but believes it is an active medication). Part of the reason for comparing those who receive the active medication with those who receive a placebo is to account for the therapeutic effects associated with receiving a medication, such as the expectation of improvement, independent of the medication's active ingredients.

In a review of many studies comparing the effects of antidepressant medications with placebo, Kirsch and Sapirstein (1999) concluded that only about 25% of the "response" to medication treatment was due to the pharmacological effect of the medication. Fully 50% of the effect was due to the psychological impact of administering the medication (the placebo effect). The remaining 25% of the treatment response was attributed to "nonspecific factors," such as the therapeutic relationship between the doctor and the individual. According to Dr. Sapirstein, "People benefiting from drugs are benefiting because they think that taking the antidepressant medicine is working. If we take these results and say that improvement is due to what the patients think, then how people think and its effect on how they feel are more powerful than the chemical substance."

In a subsequent report, Dr. Andrew Leuchter and his colleagues (Leuchter et al., 2002) demonstrated that placebo medications can actually induce changes in brain functioning for individuals with major depression. These alterations are different from the brain changes caused by antidepressant medications. Those who responded to the placebo showed increased activity in the prefrontal cortex of the brain, whereas those who responded to the medication showed suppressed activity in that area. According to the authors of this study, the finding raises questions about two commonly held beliefs. The first is that administration of an inert pill appears to be an active treatment rather than no treatment, as previously thought. And second, the placebo response is not equivalent to an active drug response because the two groups' brain physiology was altered differently. They caution, though, that their data do not indicate a causal link between brain changes and the effects of a placebo or medication. Further research is needed to assess causal links and longer-term outcomes for these two groups of individuals.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Despite advances, antidepressant medications do not provide relief for all (Moncrieff & Kirsch, 2005), and research continues on the development of more effective medications as well as alternatives to medication (including the use of electroconvulsive therapy, or ECT, in the most severe cases of depression that do not respond to medication). For example, and as discussed in Chapter 12, one medication receiving recent attention for some forms of depression is ketamine. Several small-scale studies suggested that ketamine may provide a relatively rapid decrease in depressive symptoms among individuals who do not respond to other treatment approaches. In 2019, the FDA approved the use of a form of ketamine to target treatment-resistant depression. Another medication receiving attention is L-acetylcarnitine, which acts on glutamate receptors. It has been shown in some small preliminary reports to provide rapid antidepressant effects with few side effects (Nasca et al., 2013). Nondrug therapies, aside from psychotherapy, include herbs (such as St. John's wort, see Contemporary Issue Box 13.3), dietary supplements, light therapy (daily exposure to a box providing artificial light), and exercise. Another recent development is transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS), a noninvasive procedure that activates the brain's emotive centers. This may be especially helpful for those with treatment-resistant depression (Mathew, 2008).

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 13.3

Herb Treatment for Depression?

This chapter deals overall with psychotherapeutic medications for psychological disorders, but that does not mean alternative interventions do not exist. One example is the herb St. John's wort (sometimes spelled St. Johns wort). The word *wort* means plant, and this particular yellow-flowered plant carries the Latin name *Hypericum perforatum*. Also called goatweed, hypericum, and Klamath weed, St. John's wort grows wild in the western United States and throughout Europe. Its peak blooming period is late June, around the time of the traditional birthday of John the Baptist (June 24), thus the name of the plant.

St. John's wort is thought to have been used many centuries ago as protection from evil spirits and later for colds, tuberculosis, and worms, among other ailments. Much more recently—over the past 2 decades—it has been used extensively throughout Europe as an herbal treatment for mild to moderate depression. It has its greatest popularity in Germany, where it is a leading treatment for depression and is prescribed by doctors more frequently than Prozac—by a ratio estimated at 15–20:1. The medication is available in liquid, capsule, and dried form. The plant extracts contain a variety of chemical compounds, and it is not clear just which active agents are contributing to the observed effects of the herb.

A number of studies have suggested St. John's wort as a viable treatment for depression. In one study of more than 3,000 individuals with mild to moderate depression, over three-quarters showed improvement after 4 weeks of using the herb. In another study, those who received St. John's wort showed significantly more improvement than those who received a placebo. Taken together, the research in support of St. John's wort in the treatment of mild to moderate forms of depression is reasonably strong (Barnes, 2009; Lawvere & Mahoney, 2005; Sarris, 2013); research on its effectiveness in the treatment of major depression is less consistent (Hypericum Depression Trial Study Group, 2002; Linde et al., 2008; Shelton et al., 2001).

Clinical researchers are continuing their efforts to understand better how St. John's wort works and how it will fare in more direct tests comparing it with more traditional psychotherapeutic treatments for depression. In the meantime, those who use St. John's wort need to be aware of recent research showing that the herb can cause decreases in the blood levels of a variety of prescription drugs. It is believed that St. John's wort influences drug metabolism by increasing the production of a liver enzyme that speeds elimination of many common drugs, including oral contraceptives and medications for elevated levels of cholesterol. In addition, Smith (2004) found that St. John's wort may compromise the effectiveness of an anticancer drug (imatinib mesylate [trade name Gleevec]) used in the treatment of chronic leukemia.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Antianxiety Agents

barbiturates
Depressant drugs formerly used as sleeping pills; currently used in anesthesia and treatment for epilepsy.

anxiolytic
Anxiety-reducing.

sedative-hypnotic effects
The calming and sleep-inducing effects of some drugs.

Before describing anxiety and today's approaches to its treatment, we provide some background and historical perspective on depressant drugs more generally. We should note, first of all, that although alcohol is the prototype depressant drug (see Chapter 9), many other drugs can depress the CNS and behavior. These include a variety of different chemical agents but especially the **barbiturates**, the benzodiazepines, nonbarbiturate sedatives, and the general anesthetics (see Tables 13.3 and 13.4). These drugs are often classified according to their most common medical uses, but such a classification can be misleading. On the one hand, benzodiazepines such as diazepam (trade name Valium) and chlordiazepoxide (Librium) are often labeled as **anxiolytic** (antianxiety) drugs. Although moderate doses of these compounds do indeed relieve anxiety and are widely used for this purpose, in larger doses, benzodiazepines produce **sedative-hypnotic effects** (i.e., they induce sleep) and are now prescribed widely as sleeping pills. Barbiturates, on the other hand, often are called sleeping pills and can certainly be effective in this regard. In lower doses, barbiturates are also anxiolytic, and if the dose is high enough, these and other depressants can produce surgical anesthesia. All depressant drugs (including alcohol) can relieve anxiety at low-dose levels, produce intoxication at moderate levels, induce sedation and sleep at still higher levels, produce **general anesthesia** at very high-dose levels, and eventually lead to coma and death (see Figure 13.1). Due to differing potency, duration of action, and safety, some depressants are used for specific purposes more often than others (e.g., nitrous oxide is used almost exclusively for anesthesia). The benzodiazepines are currently the most important class of drugs for treating anxiety and sleeping disorders.

general anesthesia
The reduction of pain by rendering the subject unconscious.

TABLE 13.3 Representative Depressant Drugs

Generic Name	Brand Name	Slang Name
Hypnotics		
Barbiturates		
Pentobarbital	Nembutal	Yellow jackets, Nembies
Secobarbital	Seconal	Reds
Amobarbital	Amytal	Blues, Amys, Blue Angels
Phenobarbital	Luminal	
Methohexital	Brevital	
Thiopental	Pentothal	
Aprobarbital	Alurate	
Mephobarbital	Mebaral	
Chloral hydrate		
Methaqualone	Quaaludes	Ludes
Ethchlorvynol	Placidyl	
Zolpidem	Ambien	
General anesthetics		
Halothane	Fluothane	
Propofol	Diprivan	
Nitrous oxide		

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 13.4 Representative Antianxiety Agents

Generic Name	Trade Name
Benzodiazepines	
Chlordiazepoxide	Librium
Diazepam	Valium
Flurazepam	Dalmane
Alprazolam	Xanax
Lorazepam	Ativan
Oxazepam	Serax
Temazepam	Restoril
Clorazepate	Tranxene
Triazolam	Halcion
Flunitrazepam	Rohypnol
Midazolam	Versed
Estazolam	ProSom
Clonazepam	Klonopin
Prazepam	Centrax
Halazepam	Paxipam
Nonbarbiturates, nonbenzodiazepines	
Meprobamate	Equanil
Hydroxyzine	Vistaril, Atarax
Ethinamate	Valmid
Buspirone	BuSpar

Note: The most frequently prescribed antianxiety drugs include alprazolam (Xanax), lorazepam (Ativan), clonazepam (Klonopin), and diazepam (Valium).

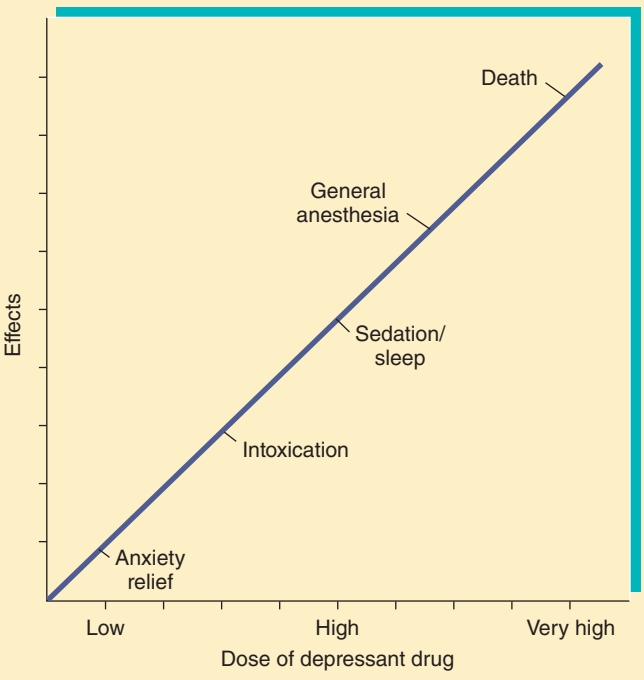


FIGURE 13.1
Effects per dose of a depressant drug

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Early History

Perhaps the first depressant compound other than alcohol to be used was the gas nitrous oxide, discovered by Joseph Priestley and synthesized by Humphry Davy in 1776. These English scientists were the first to note that inhalation of nitrous oxide produced a short period of intoxication similar to drunkenness. Because the euphoric state that nitrous oxide produces often results in laughter and giggling, it came to be known as laughing gas (Brecher, 1972). Although Davy and others experimented with the gas for recreational purposes, its use in medicine was long delayed by one of the most famous stories in the history of medicine.

The story begins in 1845, in Hartford, Connecticut, where a young dentist named Horace Wells attended an exhibition of the effects of laughing gas. People paid admission to sniff nitrous oxide or just to watch others. One of the individuals apparently tripped and was badly cut during the exhibition, and Wells noticed that he seemed to feel no pain despite the severe injury. As a dentist, Wells immediately realized the possible uses of such a drug. Dentistry and other surgeries were immensely painful during this era that lacked anesthetic agents. Wells then experimented with nitrous oxide and discovered that teeth could be pulled without pain. After proclaiming his discovery, Wells was invited to demonstrate his procedure at the Massachusetts General Hospital in Boston. There, before a prestigious group of physicians, Wells placed a patient under anesthesia. Wells had not studied the drug well enough to establish dosages reliably, however, and the patient awakened during surgery screaming in pain. Wells was laughed out of the amphitheater by the skeptical scientists, and the use of nitrous oxide as an anesthesia was set back many years. Today, nitrous oxide is widely used in dentistry and some types of surgery.

The next era in the history of depressants also involved the search for an effective anesthetic. William Morton was a Boston dentist and medical student who was familiar with Wells's blunder, but Morton learned of another drug that he believed might be a better choice as an anesthetic: ether. Ether is a highly flammable liquid that vaporizes at room temperature. When the fumes are inhaled, they produce a state of intoxication. After conducting some initial experiments with ether, Morton asked permission to demonstrate its use as a general anesthetic. In 1846, just a year after Wells's failure, Morton gave his demonstration at Massachusetts General Hospital. A large crowd gathered to observe and possibly to laugh at the brash young student who claimed to have developed a method for eliminating surgical pain. Smith et al. (1980) describe the events:

> Everyone was ready and waiting, including the strong men to hold down the struggling patient, but Morton did not appear. Fifteen minutes passed, and the surgeon, becoming impatient, took his scalpel and turning to the gallery said, "As Dr. Morton has not arrived I presume he is otherwise engaged." While the audience smiled and the patient cringed, the surgeon turned to make his incision. Just then Morton entered . . . [the surgeon] said, "Well, sir, your patient is ready." Surrounded by a silent and unsympathetic audience, Morton went quietly to work. After a few minutes of ether inhalation, the patient was unconscious, whereupon Morton looked up and said, "Dr. Warren, your patient is ready." The operation was begun. The patient showed no sign of pain, yet he was alive and breathing. The strong men were not needed. When the operation was completed, Dr. Warren turned to the astonished audience and made the famous statement, "Gentlemen, this is no humbug." (pp. 258–259)

Morton had just given the first public demonstration of surgical anesthesia and had revolutionized the practice of surgery. The use of ether as an anesthetic quickly became widespread, and it is still used today occasionally along with newer anesthetics such as halothane, related gases, and barbiturates.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Barbiturates

A number of depressant drugs were introduced in the 19th century, including chloroform, chloral hydrate, and paraldehyde, but the next truly significant development was the introduction of the barbiturates in 1862. The first barbiturate was developed in that year in the Bayer laboratories in Munich, Germany. Barbiturate compounds are synthesized using, among other things, chemicals found in urine, and some say Bayer gave the drugs their name to honor a woman named Barbara who provided the urine samples (Barbara's urates?). Others claim the name was to honor St. Barbara, and there are other stories as well (Perrine, 1996). We may never know, but regardless of how they were named, the class of depressant drugs called barbiturates now includes more than 2,000 different compounds (although only about 50 are currently available in the United States). Because so many barbiturates have been developed, custom dictates that both generic and brand names of these drugs end with the suffix "-al." A few representative barbiturates are listed in Table 13.3.

The effects of these various barbiturates are generally similar, differing primarily in potency and duration of action. Thus, pentobarbital and secobarbital are considered potent and short acting (duration of action 2–4 hours), amobarbital is intermediate (6–8 hours), and phenobarbital longer acting (8–10 hours). Barbiturates, like benzodiazepines, are thought to act by influencing inhibitory neurotransmission, a mechanism of action we discuss later in this chapter. In general, barbiturates that have a rapid onset and short duration of action are used as anesthetics today (e.g., pentobarbital), whereas those with slower onset and longer duration of action are preferred for the treatment of epilepsy (phenobarbital).

Barbiturates were introduced into general medical practice in 1903, when barbital was marketed under the brand name Veronal. They soon became popular as a treatment for anxiety and as the first "sleeping pills" (Brecher, 1972). Use of barbiturates continued to increase until the 1960s but has declined markedly in the years since. Several reasons account for the rise and fall of barbiturate use. Of the various

Bettmann/Getty Images

William Morton successfully used ether inhalation to render a patient unconscious in the first public demonstration of surgical anesthesia.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Trinity Mirror/Mirrorpix/Alamy Stock Photo

The toxicology results carried out on the blood of singer Michael Jackson showed that he died of an overdose of propofol (trade name Diprivan), a powerful sedative/anesthetic sometimes prescribed for insomnia. On the day Jackson died, his doctor had also given Jackson diazepam (Valium), lorazepam (Ativan), and midazolam (Versed).

afflictions people experienced in the 20th century and currently, sleeping disorders and anxiety problems are among the most common. Thus, any drug that offers relief from anxiety or promises sleep to insomniacs has potential for tremendous popularity and commercial success. The barbiturates do have the capacity to induce sleep and to relieve anxiety, and this accounts for their ascendance. However, consumers and physicians did not at first know a number of the problems associated with barbiturate use (discussed next). These led to the decline of barbiturate use in the past several decades.

All the barbiturates possess the properties of CNS depressants. Thus, in moderate doses, they produce a drunken euphoric state. Similar to alcohol, barbiturates may produce a loss of motor coordination, a staggering gait, and slurred speech. Loss of emotional control and behavioral disinhibition are also characteristic effects. Sedation and sleep are produced by increased doses, and higher doses produce surgical anesthesia. Physiological effects include respiratory depression, which is responsible for most of the overdose deaths associated with barbiturates. In addition, some depression of heart rate, blood pressure, and gastrointestinal activity is noted at higher doses.

As noted, the barbiturates once were used extensively as sedative-hypnotic drugs, but except for certain specialized uses, they now have been replaced by the safer benzodiazepines. Short-acting barbiturates are still used to produce anesthesia. Other current uses include emergency treatment of convulsions and prevention of seizures in people with certain types of epilepsy (Perrine, 1996).

One major reason for the movement away from the medical use of barbiturates involves tolerance and dependence. Tolerance develops fairly rapidly to many effects of the barbiturates. Whereas a given dose may be effective at inducing sleep for a while, an individual soon may require a higher dose to sleep if the drug is used regularly. If doses escalate too much and regular use persists, individuals will experience an abstinence syndrome when they attempt to withdraw from barbiturates. The symptoms of the barbiturate withdrawal syndrome are similar to those of alcohol—shakes, perspiration, confusion, and full-blown delirium tremens (DTs) in some cases (see Chapter 9)—but convulsions and seizures are more likely to occur in barbiturate withdrawal; they are seen in 5% to 20% of the cases (Schuckit, 1995). As with alcohol, the severity of barbiturate withdrawal depends upon the extent of use. Mild symptoms such as **rebound insomnia** (discussed next) and anxiety may occur after a brief use of barbiturates, whereas life-threatening convulsions occur only after heavier use.

rebound insomnia
Inability to sleep produced as a withdrawal symptom associated with some depressant drugs.

Many people became dependent on barbiturates even though the drugs were used only under medical supervision. Suppose someone is in crisis—say, after the death of a spouse or other loved one. A physician may prescribe a sleeping pill to help the person rest during the crisis. After a few weeks, the individual may feel emotionally ready to sleep without the drug—and indeed may be. But the first night the person attempts to sleep without the barbiturate, the person may have a great deal of trouble because of rebound insomnia, one of the features of barbiturate withdrawal (Mendelson, 1980). That is, after the chronic use of barbiturates, abstinence produces insomnia even in someone who was untroubled with insomnia previously.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

A related problem involves the type of sleep experienced while under the influence of barbiturates and after heavy use of sleeping pills. Barbiturates do induce sleep, but like alcohol, they reduce the amount of time spent in the rapid eye movement or REM stage of sleep. This may account in part for the "hungover" feeling some people report after sleeping with the aid of a drug. Although they get enough hours of sleep, it may not be "high-quality" sleep. Further, when individuals try to sleep without a pill after taking drugs for several nights, they may experience **REM rebound**; that is, they spend more time than normal in REM. Often accompanying REM rebound are vivid dreams and nightmares with nocturnal awakening.

REM rebound
An increase in the rapid eye movement or REM stage of sleep when withdrawing from drugs that suppress REM time.

So even if the tired people are able to sleep without drugs during barbiturate withdrawal, they may awaken early in the morning and not be able to get back to sleep. Other factors may be involved, but it is clear that once dependence on sleeping pills has developed, considerable time must pass before normal sleep patterns return (Mendelson, 1980). All of these factors make it easy to understand why dependence on drugs such as barbiturates for sleeping so often develops. Dependence certainly limits the usefulness of these and other depressants as a treatment of sleep disorders.

> *"You can get drunk on them [benzodiazepines and other minor tranquilizers]; you can become addicted to them; and you can suffer delirium tremens when they are withdrawn."*
>
> (Brecher, 1972)

An additional problem with barbiturates is the risk of fatal drug overdose. The lethal dose of many barbiturates is fairly low compared to the effective dose in inducing sleep, and accidental overdoses have been a problem. This is particularly evident when barbiturates are taken in combination with alcohol or other depressant drugs, because these drugs potentiate one another (Schuckit, 1995). Barbiturates often were prescribed to people suffering from depression because sleeping disorders are a common symptom of clinical depression. Because there is a risk that severely depressed individuals may attempt suicide, having a prescription for barbiturates could make them more likely to succeed in their attempt.

Barbiturates (particularly the short-acting barbiturates) produce a euphoric state similar to alcohol intoxication. In fact, a recent laboratory study compared the behavioral and subjective effects of alcohol with those of the barbiturate pentobarbital and concluded that they were virtually identical, with the exception that the barbiturate was somewhat more sedating and more likely to be misused than alcohol (Mintzer et al., 1997). As a result, barbiturates became significant recreational drugs on the street during the 1950s and 1960s. An estimated 5 billion doses of barbiturates entered the illicit market in 1969 alone (Brecher, 1972). Clearly, barbiturates were causing some major societal problems, and the quest was on for safer drugs to relieve anxiety and induce sleep.

Quaaludes and Other Nonbarbiturate Sedatives

Several nonbarbiturate sedatives were introduced in the 1950s and 1960s, as possible alternatives in the treatment of anxiety and sleep disorders. Meprobamate (trade name Equanil), ethchlorvynol (Placidyl), and glutethimide (Doriden) have all been used in this way, but each seemed to possess the same undesirable properties as the barbiturates. One important candidate as an alternative to barbiturates was methaqualone, first marketed under the brand names Quaalude and Sopor in 1965. Although some thought methaqualone would be much safer because it was not a barbiturate, this did not prove to be true. It quickly became evident that methaqualone was toxic at high doses, especially when taken in combination with alcohol. In addition, dependence develops rapidly to methaqualone, with abstinence symptoms similar to those produced by alcohol and barbiturates. Thus, medical enthusiasm for methaqualone was quickly dampened. Because it produces a pronounced state of "drunkenness" and developed a reputation as a sexual enhancer, however, methaqualone became

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

a major street drug in the 1970s, and was sometimes known as "disco biscuits" or "ludes." Very little research is available about the true effects of methaqualone on sexuality. Anecdotal data are mixed: Some report a disinhibition that they find enhances sexual experience, but others report it interferes with sexual behavior (Abel, 1985). Actually, given the similarity in pharmacology between methaqualone and other depressants such as alcohol, it would be surprising if there were any major differences in the way these drugs affect sexual behavior (see Chapter 9).

The problems of misuse with methaqualone and other nonbarbiturate sedatives far outweigh their medical benefits, and currently these drugs are rarely used for the management of sleep problems or anxiety. In fact, methaqualone has become a Schedule I drug and is no longer produced for medical use. A major reason these drugs and the barbiturates have lost favor is the widespread acceptance of the benzodiazepines as the treatment of choice in these disorders.

The Problem of Anxiety

At this point, it makes sense to define anxiety and to provide some background and perspective on its treatment today. (A list of the most commonly prescribed antianxiety drugs is provided in Table 13.4.) Anxiety is frequently experienced as some or all of the following domains of symptoms: (1) motor tension (e.g., shakiness, muscle tension, restlessness); (2) autonomic hyperactivity (sweating, pounding heart, stomach tightness, flushing); (3) apprehensive expectation (anxiety, fear, rumination); and (4) vigilance (impatience, hyperattentiveness, insomnia). Approximately 30% of adults in the United States will meet the criteria for an anxiety disorder at some point in their lives (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013), and 18% will meet the criteria in any given year. Clinicians frequently speak of two types of anxiety. The first is a trait or characterological anxiety, in that people seem to experience their anxiety practically all the time. The second is a more transient state, called situational anxiety, wherein the anxiety is much greater at some times than at others, when the person may not even feel anxious at all. A related type of anxiety is panic attacks, which are recurrent and unpredictable periods of intense fear and a feeling of impending doom (ibid.). These attacks frequently include sweating, palpitations, dizziness, and difficulty in breathing. A case illustration of panic attacks from Spitzer et al. (2002) follows:

> Mindy Markowitz is an attractive, stylishly dressed 25-year-old art director for a trade magazine who comes to an anxiety clinic after reading about the clinic program in the newspaper. She is seeking treatment for "panic attacks" that have occurred with increasing frequency over the past year, often two or three times a day. These attacks begin with a sudden intense wave of "horrible fear" that seems to come out of nowhere, sometimes during the day, sometimes waking her from sleep. She begins to tremble, is nauseated, sweats profusely, feels as though she is choking, and fears that she will lose control and do something crazy, like run screaming into the street.
>
> Mindy remembers first having attacks like this when she was in high school. She was dating a boy her parents disapproved of and had to do a lot of "sneaking around" to avoid confrontations with them. At the same time, she was under a lot of pressure as the principal designer of her high school yearbook and was applying to Ivy League colleges. She remembers that her first panic attack occurred just after the yearbook went to press and she was accepted by Harvard, Yale, and Brown. The attacks lasted only a few minutes, and she would just "sit through them." She was worried enough to mention them to her mother; but because she was otherwise perfectly healthy, she did not seek treatment.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Mindy has had panic attacks intermittently over the eight years since her first attack, sometimes not for many months, but sometimes, as now, several times a day. There have been extreme variations in the intensity of the attacks, some being so severe and debilitating that she has had to take a day off from work.

Mindy has always functioned extremely well in school, at work, and in her social life, apart from her panic attacks and a brief period of depression at age 19 when she broke up with a boyfriend. She is a lively, friendly person who is respected by her friends and colleagues both for her intelligence and creativity and for her ability to mediate disputes.

Mindy has never limited her activities, even during the times that she was having frequent, severe attacks, although she might stay home from work for a day because she was exhausted from multiple attacks. She has never associated the attacks with particular places. She says, for example, that she is as likely to have an attack at home in her own bed as on the subway, so there is no point in avoiding the subway. Whether she has an attack on the subway, in a supermarket, or at home by herself, she says, "I just tough it out." (Reprinted with permission from the *DSM-IV-TR Casebook: A Learning Companion to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fourth Edition, Text Revision [Copyright © 2002]. American Psychiatric Association.)

Before the 20th century, the common palliative for anxiety symptoms was drinking alcohol, perhaps the oldest known means of sedation. For much of the last century, into the 1950s, anxiety was treated primarily with bromide salts (which were available without prescription) and barbiturates. By the 1930s, scientists were discovering that the use of the bromides had many dangerous side effects (Feldman et al., 1997). Barbiturates, such as phenobarbital, were used then more frequently

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 13.4

Internet Pharmacies: Rx for Disaster?

Prescription drugs have become easier than ever to obtain, thanks to the proliferation of Internet-based pharmacies. Internet pharmacies provide convenience, particularly for individuals living in remote areas for whom getting to a pharmacy is time-consuming and difficult. Additionally, Internet pharmacies may be able to provide medications at a lower cost. However, there are risks associated with online pharmacies. In many cases, people may obtain drugs without speaking to a doctor and/or without having a prescription.

Many view the marketing of prescription drugs over the Internet as a dangerous trend. They cite concerns about three different types of online providers. First, and of greatest concern, are sites that sell products like GHB, a "date rape" drug. Second are sites, predominantly foreign, that sell misbranded, counterfeit, or out-of-date drugs. And third are sites that sell drugs to individuals who do not hold a prescription obtained through a qualified health professional.

The near boundaryless nature of the Internet has made it difficult for regulators trying to get a handle on Internet drug sales. At minimum, the sheer number of online pharmacies in operation overwhelms regulators. They are hoping that ongoing efforts to craft Internet licensing criteria will provide much-needed relief. In addition, a host of legislative efforts are underway. One example is the Ryan Haight Online Pharmacy Consumer Protection Act of 2008, which addresses the purchase or dispensing of controlled substances via the Internet. The act is named for a teenager whose death resulted in part from the ease with which he obtained a narcotic drug over the Internet without a valid prescription. The act amends the Controlled Substances Act to prohibit the delivery, distribution, or dispensing of a controlled substance over the Internet without a valid prescription. The act also requires that a face-to-face physician contact occur prior to the issuance of a prescription for a controlled substance.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

as an anxiolytic agent. As noted earlier, however, it gradually became clear that these drugs were physical dependence inducing because individuals developed tolerance and exhibited a severe withdrawal reaction when drug use ceased. As a result, efforts were directed at developing an anxiolytic medication that would effectively treat the anxiety but not be physical dependence inducing. The first in the desired group of nonbarbiturate sedatives was meprobamate, but again, it was found that a severe withdrawal syndrome was associated with discontinuing its use after some period of time on the drug. The world was still looking for a safer anxiolytic.

Benzodiazepines

benzodiazepines
Currently the most widely prescribed anxiolytic drugs.

In the late 1950s, scientists at Roche Laboratories synthesized a new group of compounds known as the **benzodiazepines**. Animal tests with these drugs showed sedative, anticonvulsant, and muscle-relaxant effects similar to those of the barbiturates. An additional feature was that they produced a "taming" effect in monkeys. Even more intriguing, these drugs showed very low toxicity: The lethal dose is sufficiently high that it is difficult to attain. The first of the benzodiazepines, chlordiazepoxide (trade name Librium), was first marketed in 1960, closely followed by the introduction of its more potent cousin, diazepam (Valium) in 1963 (Sternbach, 1983). These two drugs quickly came to dominate the market as treatments for anxiety and insomnia. By the 1970s, they were among the best-selling drugs in the United States, with 100 million prescriptions written for benzodiazepines in 1975 alone (Harvey, 1980). More recently, because of widespread concern about dependence and other side effects, the use of these drugs is down, but they are still frequently prescribed.

> *"Valium is . . . a leveler. It evens things out silently, quietly. No rush. No thrill. No charge."*
> (Cited in Gordon, 1979)

Depressant drugs share many traits. Alcohol, barbiturates, nonbarbiturate sedatives, and of course benzodiazepines all have similar effects when equated for dose. In addition, cross-tolerance occurs between these drugs, and they potentiate one another. Cross-dependence also occurs because an appropriate dose of any depressant can be used to reduce the withdrawal symptoms produced by any other. In fact, benzodiazepines are commonly used to withdraw individuals off alcohol. Thus, substantial evidence indicates a common mechanism of action for depressant drugs (Julien, 2001).

By the 1970s, evidence had begun to accumulate that GABA, the brain's major inhibitory neurotransmitter, might provide the common link (Costa et al., 1975; Ticku et al., 1983). The problem was that no direct evidence was found that any of the depressant drugs bound to the GABA receptor site. Then, in 1977, two independent laboratories reported the discovery of binding sites for benzodiazepines (Möhler & Okada, 1977; Squires & Braestrup, 1977), and it was subsequently shown that, although specific to benzodiazepines, these receptors are part of what is now called the GABA/benzodiazepine receptor complex (Feldman et al., 1997). Apparently, the normal neural inhibition produced by GABA is greatly enhanced when there is activity at the benzodiazepine receptor. Benzodiazepines act by enhancing neural inhibition in the GABA system.

When taken orally, benzodiazepines generally are absorbed slowly and have a long duration of action. Considerable variability exists in duration of action, however, which accounts for the different uses for and effects of the different benzodiazepines. Table 13.5 shows the half-lives for some of the widely used benzodiazepines (the time required for half of the drug to be metabolized). The longer-acting benzodiazepines such as Valium are considered most useful when it is desirable to maintain an individual at a constant level of drug over an extended period—for example, when an individual is suffering from an anxiety reaction. The short- and

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

intermediate-duration benzodiazepines are more useful for treating insomnia when it is desirable to have the drug effects wear off by morning.

A number of reasons exist for the commercial success of the benzodiazepines. First, they are effective at relieving anxiety and inducing sleep. In fact, benzodiazepines are sometimes claimed to be uniquely effective as anxiolytic agents. It is true they relieve anxiety in animal studies and in humans at doses that do not produce motor impairment (ataxia) or pronounced sedation. In animals, anxiolytic action is tested by determining the ability of a drug to increase rates of a punishment response (see Chapter 5). Animals, typically rats, are trained to press a lever to produce food or water reinforcement. Then, during some periods, lever pressing is punished by electric shock; during other periods, no shock is delivered. Normally, rats will show decreased rates of lever pressing in the punishment component. When benzodiazepines are given to animals trained with such procedures, the rates of lever pressing in the punishment component go up almost to baseline levels at doses that do not affect the unpunished component. The clinical efficacy of various benzodiazepines measured in humans is correlated closely with these antipunishment actions, and for this reason, the facilitation of a punishment response is viewed as an excellent animal model of human anxiety. In fact, novel anxiolytic drugs have been discovered on the basis of antipunishment effects on this animal model. Although other depressant drugs also show antipunishment effects, none is as selective in this regard as benzodiazepines. This is one reason for considering benzodiazepines as possessing some unique anxiolytic actions.

The potent anxiolytic actions of benzodiazepines occur at doses that produce fewer serious side effects than barbiturates. Although drowsiness may occur when taking benzodiazepines, it is less of a problem than with other depressant drugs. Because the lethal dose is so high, suicide and accidental overdose are far less of a risk with benzodiazepines than with other depressant drugs. Benzodiazepines do interact to potentiate alcohol and other depressant drugs, however, and fatal overdoses are not uncommon with such drug combinations. So benzodiazepines, though not nearly so toxic as depressants such as barbiturates or methaqualone, are not without overdose risk.

"You can get roaring drunk on 'barbs.'"
(Brecher, 1972)

In addition to use in anxiety disorders, benzodiazepines are often prescribed for insomnia. These drugs are effective at reducing both the amount of time required to fall asleep and the amount of awake time in cases where the person wakes up after the initial sleep onset. As we noted for the barbiturates, though, benzodiazepines also

TABLE 13.5 Kinetic Classification of Representative Benzodiazepines

Type	Half-Life (hours)
Long half-life	
Flurazepam (Dalmane)	75
Diazepam (Valium)	50
Intermediate half-life	
Alprazolam (Xanax)	15
Lorazepam (Ativan)	15
Short half-life	
Triazolam (Halcion)	4
Midazolam (Versed)	1

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

change the pattern of sleep. Benzodiazepines suppress the amount of REM sleep and change the EEG patterns observed during non-REM sleep. Unlike barbiturates, the short- or intermediate-duration benzodiazepines—sleeping pills such as the popular and controversial triazolam (trade name Halcion) or temazepam (Restoril)—do not often produce "hangover" or day-after effects. Rebound insomnia is a problem with all of the benzodiazepines but to a lesser extent than it was with the barbiturates (Parrino & Terzano, 1996). Finally, other side effects have been reported, particularly depression and paranoia with Halcion.

Finally, benzodiazepines are frequently used to medically manage withdrawal from alcohol. Because alcohol shows cross-dependence with benzodiazepines and other depressants, tapering off from alcohol use is made easier through the use of benzodiazepines. The general practice, often referred to as detoxification, involves providing an initial dose of the benzodiazepine that is sufficient to suppress potentially dangerous alcohol withdrawal symptoms. Then, over a period of weeks, the dose is gradually reduced. There is great concern that an individual with a history of alcohol problems may simply substitute benzodiazepine misuse for alcohol, so the goal of most detoxification programs is to taper the client off benzodiazepines as rapidly as possible.

Tolerance develops to benzodiazepines, and there is cross-tolerance between them and other depressants. Tolerance to benzodiazepines develops slowly, however, and fairly high doses are needed for tolerance to develop. There is some controversy about the frequency of withdrawal symptoms following benzodiazepine use. It has been argued that withdrawal occurs only at very high doses, but more recent studies find withdrawal affects between 5% and 35% of those who have taken benzodiazepines for 1 month or longer (Miller & Greenblatt, 1996). When withdrawal syndromes do occur, they are similar to those associated with alcohol and barbiturates but generally not so severe. Abstinence symptoms may not appear for several days or even more than a week and may persist for up to 4 weeks. The main symptoms are rebound insomnia, anxiety, tremors, sweating, and occasionally more serious problems such as seizures (Schuckit, 1995). One of the problems in interpreting benzodiazepine withdrawal is differentiating abstinence symptoms from the symptoms the drug was suppressing. For example, a great deal of controversy about Valium was stirred by the autobiographical book and movie *I'm Dancing as Fast as I Can* by Barbara Gordon (1979). Gordon was a successful professional whose psychiatrist was maintaining her on very high doses of Valium. When she decided to quit Valium, her physician told her to simply stop taking the drug rather than tapering off. This was certainly a poor decision. Gordon describes her withdrawal symptoms vividly:

> By early afternoon I began to feel a creeping sense of anxiety. But it was different from my usual bouts of terror. It felt like little jolts of electricity, as if charged pins and needles were shooting through my body. My breathing became rapid and I began to perspire . . . .
>
> My scalp started to burn as if I had hot coals under my hair. Then I began to experience funny little twitches, spasms, a jerk of a leg, a flying arm, tiny tremors that soon turned into convulsions. (p. 51)

Gordon was unable to leave her own house, much less work. Her relationships with her lover and other friends deteriorated, and eventually she required hospitalization for several months. Nevertheless, her symptoms persisted even beyond this time. The book is a moving description of anxiety disorder, though perhaps not a very typical description of Valium withdrawal. As we noted, although some withdrawal symptoms are very persistent (Modell, 1997), it is difficult to differentiate long-lasting withdrawal from the reemergence of previous anxiety symptoms. Thus,

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Barbara Gordon's experience may illustrate a case where the severity of her symptoms was revealed only when the drug, which had masked them, was removed.

The issues of misuse of and dependence on benzodiazepines have been controversial. Benzodiazepines do turn up on the street but far less frequently than barbiturates or Quaaludes did in their day. In general, the potential for misuse of benzodiazepines is considered to be fairly moderate in comparison with most other depressants (Cappell et al., 1986). There are still reports of misuse and dependence, and they appear to be most common in individuals who misuse other drugs (King, 1994). The risk of misuse is higher for people who have a history of drug or alcohol problems than for those without such a history. For example, one laboratory study compared the effects of alprazolam (trade name Xanax) in a group of men with alcohol use disorder who had abstained from alcohol for up to 72 hours with a group of men without alcohol use disorder. The pharmacokinetics (absorption and metabolism) of the drug did not differ in the two groups, but those with alcohol use disorder reported that they "liked" the effects of the drug more. "Liking" the drug was measured on a questionnaire that correlates with drug misuse liability (Ciraulo et al., 1988). Griffiths et al. (1980) also have investigated benzodiazepine self-administration in human volunteers who have histories of sedative misuse. In double-blind laboratory studies, these researchers have shown that humans will self-administer benzodiazepines and prefer them to placebo but, like nonhumans, prefer barbiturates (Griffiths et al., 1980). When different benzodiazepines were compared, the more potent drugs with a rapid onset of action, such as Valium and Xanax, were preferred to the less potent compounds with slower onset of action, such as oxazepam (Griffiths, McLeod, Bigelow, Liebson, & Roache, 1984; Griffiths, McLeod, Bigelow, Liebson, Roache, & Nowowieski, 1984; Mumford et al., 1995). This observation may explain the recent rash of reports of misuse of the potent benzodiazepine Rohypnol (flunitrazepam), or "roofies" as they are referred to on the street (see Contemporary Issue Box 13.5).

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 13.5

Roofies: Another Wave of Sedative Misuse

Benzodiazepines are generally thought to possess relatively modest potential for misuse, but alarms rang quickly when a drug called "roofies," "rope," or "roach" appeared on the street. This drug was flunitrazepam, a benzodiazepine marketed as a sleeping pill in Europe and Latin America (but not in the United States) under the brand name Rohypnol. Flunitrazepam is a short-acting benzodiazepine that appears to be more potent than other drugs in this class in producing intoxication, sedation, and behavioral disruption (Farre et al., 1996). The effects of roofies are basically the same as those of the other benzodiazepines discussed (Woods & Winger, 1997), but because the drug is more potent, it may be more likely to be misused and produce adverse effects.

Of particular concern is the link between roofies and memory loss or blackouts. This effect has resulted in roofies' association with date rape. Cases have surfaced that involved perpetrators slipping the drug into one's drink without their knowledge and, after the drug "knocked them out," raping them. Prosecution of these cases can be difficult because the individuals are often unable to remember much about the crime. In addition, there is concern about the potential of roofies to produce dependence and dangerous drug interactions. A synergistic combination of flunitrazepam and alcohol put rock star Kurt Cobain into a coma just a month before he died by suicide. At this writing, flunitrazepam remains a Schedule IV drug, like most other benzodiazepines, but its status is under continuing review. In the meantime, remember to never leave your drink unattended.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 13.6

Depressant Drugs and Potentiation

All the depressant drugs reviewed to this point tend to potentiate one another; that is, the effects of the drugs when combined are greater than would be expected from the individual doses considered alone. Potentiation is among the most dangerous aspects of drug use. The vast majority of deaths from drug overdose are due not to overdose of a single drug but rather to smaller doses of more than one drug taken in lethal combination. Alcohol, barbiturates, nonbarbiturate sedatives (Quaaludes, meprobamate), and benzodiazepines all interact to produce additive effects. They interact with heroin and other opiate drugs to produce additive effects as well. Many deaths attributed to heroin overdose actually involve heroin taken in combination with alcohol or other depressant drugs, and the largest number of deaths from drug overdose in the United States every year involve alcohol taken in combination with other depressants, according to the National Institute on Drug Abuse. Such a combination of depressants killed Elvis Presley, and it kills thousands of others every year.

Another problem with additive effects involves cases in which lower doses are consumed. Consider a young woman who is given a prescription for Valium to help her weather a family crisis. Suppose after taking her Valium, she goes out with some friends for dinner and has a couple of beers. Perhaps she could tolerate this much alcohol without impairment under normal conditions, but by drinking in combination with the Valium, she may find herself quite intoxicated. If she attempts to drive home after such a drug combination, the loss of motor coordination may prove fatal. Combinations of alcohol with another depressant are thought to be responsible for many highway deaths above and beyond those caused by alcohol alone (O'Hanlon & De Gier, 1986). **Never combine depressant drugs with alcohol or one another**.

AF archive/Alamy Stock Photo

Elvis Presley died from a combination of depressant drugs.

Tolerance, dependence, and misuse are associated with the benzodiazepines, but the problems produced are far milder than those connected with other depressant drugs. Over the years, however, a number of other problems associated with benzodiazepine use have emerged. As with other depressants, the significant side effects of benzodiazepines are drowsiness and motor impairment. Although even these side effects are rare with benzodiazepines alone (Cappell et al., 1986), they may become particularly problematic when benzodiazepines are taken, as they often are, in combination with alcohol or other depressant drugs (see Contemporary Issue Box 13.6).

anterograde amnesia Loss or limitation of the ability to form new memories.

A more recently recognized problem is that benzodiazepines may interfere with the storage of memories, a phenomenon called **anterograde amnesia**. Thus, when individuals are awakened by a phone call from sleep induced by benzodiazepines, they may fail to remember the phone conversation. The drug may be present in sufficient dose the next morning so that individuals forget what they had for breakfast or what was read in the morning paper. These are examples of benzodiazepine-induced amnesia, and evidence is mounting that it is a common problem, particularly with some of the

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

popular benzodiazepines such as triazolam (trade name Halcion) and alprazolam (Xanax) (Perrine, 1996; Salzman, 1992). This type of effect is not unique to benzodiazepines. After all, alcohol is known to produce the more dramatic memory loss of the blackout (see Chapter 9). Barbiturates and methaqualone also produce blackouts, which suggests that some type of memory deficit may be characteristic of any depressant drug.

Nonbenzodiazepine Treatment

Because of the problems reviewed in the preceding sections, considerable interest has focused on the development of alternative drugs for the treatment of anxiety problems and sleep disorders. One example is a drug called zolpidem (trade name Ambien). Zolpidem's chemical structure is different from the benzodiazepine drugs, but it is still thought to act as an agonist of the same "benzodiazepine" receptors. Thus, zolpidem produces more or less the same array of depressant drug effects that are associated with the benzodiazepines. However, zolpidem is effective at inducing sleep at doses that interfere very little with the "natural" sleep structure. That is, zolpidem induces sleep with less suppression of the REM stage than benzodiazepines, and it appears less likely to produce "hangover" effects or rebound insomnia (Parrino & Terzano, 1996). As a result, Ambien has become one of the most widely prescribed drugs for the treatment of insomnia. However, Ambien is associated with numerous side effects, including hallucinations, sleep walking, and amnesia (Rush & Griffiths, 1996).

Another nonbenzodiazepine anxiolytic drug is buspirone (trade name BuSpar). Buspirone's chemical structure and activities are very different from any of the traditional depressant drugs. It appears to affect the serotonin neurotransmitter system, not the GABA/benzodiazepine receptor complex. Perhaps because of its different mechanism of action, buspirone has been shown to be effective in the treatment of anxiety with fewer side effects than the alternatives. For example, no withdrawal symptoms have been reported following chronic use of buspirone, and it is considered to have no significant misuse potential. Animals will not self-administer buspirone, and humans report no intoxication or euphoria after using it (Rush & Griffiths, 1997; Tunnicliff et al., 1991). Little sedation or motor impairment is seen during buspirone treatment, and it interacts less with alcohol than other depressant drugs (Rush & Griffiths, 1997). Simply put, buspirone seems to relieve anxiety without producing many of the undesirable effects of the other anxiolytic drugs. One difference is that buspirone's anxiolytic effects are delayed: It often requires 3 to 4 weeks of treatment before benefits appear. In contrast, the benzodiazepines are immediate. Also, buspirone appears less effective in the treatment of panic disorder and does not relieve insomnia (Coplan et al., 1995). Despite these limitations, buspirone is a valuable alternative for the treatment of anxiety and raises the hope that developments in psychopharmacology may lead to safer treatments for psychological problems.

Beyond these issues, it should be noted that antidepressant medications also are used in the treatment of anxiety disorders. Tricyclic antidepressants and SSRIs both have been used in the treatment of such anxiety disorders as panic disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, and posttraumatic stress disorder.

Mood-Stabilizing Drugs

The most specific treatment for bipolar and related disorders is lithium. Mania is a state with pronounced elevations in mood and increased activity. Symptoms of a manic episode typically include elation, increased talkativeness, flights of ideas or racing thoughts, grandiosity, decreased need for sleep, and excessive involvement in behaviors that can produce negative consequences (such as buying sprees or sexual indiscretions).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Although these symptoms seem to describe someone who is "happy-go-lucky" or "pleasantly high," their occurrence and severity generally are profound and significantly disrupt the person's functioning. For people with this disorder, the first manic episode generally occurs in the 20s or 30s, although there are exceptions in both directions. The natural course of an untreated manic episode is generally a couple of months.

Manic episodes are usually a component of what is called bipolar disorder; these individuals often experience periodic episodes of depression as well. The following case (Spitzer et al., 2002) illustrates the manic component of bipolar disorder. It is an example of the development of manic symptoms late in life:

> A wealthy 72-year-old widow is referred by her children against her will, as they think she has become "senile" since the death of her husband 6 months previously. After the initial bereavement, which was not severe, the patient had resumed an active social life and become a volunteer at local hospitals. The family encouraged this, but over the past 3 months have become concerned about her going to bars with some of the hospital staff. The referral was precipitated by her announcing her engagement to a 25-year-old male nurse, to whom she planned to turn over her house and a large amount of money. The patient's three sons, by threat and intimidation, have made her accompany them to this psychiatric evaluation. While one of her sons is talking to the psychiatrist, the patient is heard accusing the other two of trying to commit her so they can get their hands on her money.
>
> Initially in the interview the patient is extremely angry at her sons and the psychiatrist, insisting that they don't understand that for the first time in her life she is doing something for herself, not for her father, her husband, or her children. She then suddenly drapes herself over the couch and asks the psychiatrist if she is attractive enough to capture a 25-year-old man. She proceeds to elaborate on her fiancé's physique and sexual abilities and describes her life as exciting and fulfilling for the first time. She is overtalkative and repeatedly refuses to allow the psychiatrist to interrupt her with questions. She says that she goes out nightly with her fiancé to clubs and bars and that although she does not drink, she thoroughly enjoys the atmosphere. They often go on to an after-hours place and end up breakfasting, going to bed, and making love. After only 3 or 4 hours' sleep, she gets up, feeling refreshed, and then goes shopping. She spends about $700 a week on herself and gives her fiancé about $500 a week, all of which she can easily afford.
>
> The patient agrees that her behavior is unusual for someone of her age and social position, but states she has always been conventional and now is the time to change, before it is too late. She refuses to participate in formal testing, saying, "I'm not going to do any stupid tests to see if I am sane." She has no obvious memory impairment and is correctly oriented in all areas. According to the family, she has no previous history of emotional disturbance. (Reprinted with permission from the *DSM-IV-TR Casebook: A Learning Companion to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fourth Edition, Text Revision [Copyright © 2002]. American Psychiatric Association.)

"At this point in my existence I cannot imagine leading a normal life without both taking Lithium and having had the benefits of psychotherapy. Lithium prevents my seductive but disastrous highs, diminishes my depressions, clears out the wool and webbing from my disordered thinking, slows me down, gentles me out, keeps me from ruining my career and relationships, keeps me out of a hospital, alive, and makes psychotherapy possible."

Kay Redfield Jamison, *An Unquiet Mind* (1995, pp. 88–89)

Lithium is an alkaline metal readily available throughout nature and is found in the form of silicate in such rocks as petalite, lepidolite, and spodumene (Tyrer & Shaw, 1982). The only active lithium mine in operation in the United States is in Silver Peak, Nevada. Lithium's mood-stabilizing properties were discovered in the 1940s. An Australian physician, John Cade, was giving research animals lithium in an attempt to decrease uric acid–induced kidney damage. In the course of his work, he observed a calming effect on the animals and speculated that lithium might be useful in humans as a mood attenuator (Baldessarini, 1985; Sack & DeFraites, 1977). Cade administered lithium to a sample of individuals experiencing manic episodes and observed positive responses. Subsequent research eventually led to the approval of lithium for clinical

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

use in the United States in 1970, although it was in clinical use in Europe several years earlier. Although lithium may have some value in treating other psychiatric disorders (such as depression, some schizophrenias, alcoholism, impulsive-aggressive behaviors, and movement disorders), it is approved in the United States only for the treatment of manic episodes and prophylactically to prevent the recurrence of manic episodes. There is strong evidence that lithium is effective with these two indications. Lithium probably is, incidentally, the only drug in psychiatry for which there is effective prophylaxis against disease recurrence (Fieve, 1976; Sack & DeFraites, 1977).

Bipolar disorder is a complex condition that is not fully understood, but it is more than a simple over- or underactivity of neurotransmitters. Research suggests involvement of numerous systems, including the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis, mitochondrial dysfunctions, chronic neuroinflammation, impaired neurogenesis, and neurotransmitter systems of monoamines and glutamate (Sigitova et al., 2017). Lithium works, in part, by modulating the transmission of dopamine, glutamate, and GABA. Lithium use is also associated with neuroprotective effects in several brain regions, including the anterior cingulate cortex, hippocampus, and amygdala. Importantly, lithium serves to normalize the mood of individuals experiencing manic episodes, not just offset mania through sedation.

The most common preparations of lithium salts are carbonates (lithium carbonate, or Li_2CO_3), which are prepared in tablet form. In terms of pharmacokinetics, lithium, which is taken orally, is absorbed completely from the gastrointestinal tract (primarily the small intestine) and distributed throughout the system. The lithium is distributed in the body water and is not metabolized. Excretion occurs almost entirely by the kidneys, with between 90% and 95% eliminated through urine.

Despite its success in the treatment of manic episodes, cautions must be taken into account prior to and during lithium use. Several of these considerations pertain to lithium's therapeutic index, or safety margin. In this regard, the difference between the therapeutic and toxic levels is small. When the therapeutic range is exceeded, at least several of the following symptoms might be observed: drowsiness, blurred vision, ataxia, confusion, cardiac irregularities, and even seizures and coma. Some deaths have been reported. Thus, lithium use requires close medical supervision. Also, pretreatment medical workups are specifically geared toward ruling out cardiovascular problems or renal disease. Cardiac problems are a concern because toxic effects can cause cardiac irregularities, which could then exacerbate preexisting cardiovascular problems. Renal functioning must be satisfactory so that the lithium is efficiently excreted. If it is not, lithium will accumulate in the body. Finally, several side effects are associated with lithium use, including gastrointestinal problems such as nausea, diarrhea, fine hand tremor, urinary frequency, and dry mouth. These side effects often decrease within a period of weeks, however.

Although lithium remains the major drug used in the treatment of bipolar and related disorders, other drugs are available when the individual does not tolerate lithium or when they do not respond to the lithium. The most frequently used alternative is carbamazepine (trade name Tegretol), better recognized as an antiepileptic drug. Chemically related to the tricyclic antidepressants, carbamazepine has been shown to be effective with individuals who have rapid-cycling manic-depressive episodes. Other alternatives to lithium that are available are clonazepam (trade name Klonopin), topiramate (Topamax), tiagabine (Gabitril), and valproic acid (Depakote), another anticonvulsant drug. There also has been recent interest in the use of several of the atypical antipsychotic medications because of their mood-stabilizing properties (in particular olanzapine [Zyprexa], aripiprazole [Abilify], and quetiapine [Seroquel]) (Alda et al., 2009).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Create a table with three columns labeled class of drug, mechanism of action, and therapeutic uses. Then fill in the table, being sure to provide examples of specific drugs for each class.
2. Explain the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia and how antipsychotic medications relieve some of the symptoms associated with this disorder.
3. Explain the different types of antianxiety medications, and the advantages and disadvantages associated with each.
4. Prepare a document reviewing the advantages and disadvantages associated with the use of the five classes of antidepressant medications.
5. Create a chart summarizing how psychotherapeutic drugs are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body.
6. Summarize whether tolerance or dependence occurs with the use of psychotherapeutic medications.
7. Discuss why potentiation is a concern with depressant medications.

13.4 Psychotherapeutic Drugs and Pregnancy

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

13-7 Describe how psychotherapeutic medications are absorbed, distributed, metabolized, and excreted from the body

13-8 Evaluate the evidence concerning whether physical or psychological dependence occurs with psychotherapeutic medications

13-9 Summarize the potential benefits and costs for the use of psychotherapeutic medication during pregnancy

teratogenic
Producing abnormalities in the fetus.

The use of psychotherapeutic medications during pregnancy has been a difficult and challenging issue for pregnant individuals and their physicians alike. The central concerns are potential **teratogenic** risks, the risk of perinatal (the period shortly before and after birth) syndromes or neonatal toxicity, and the risk for negative long-term effects on childhood development (Sivertz & Kostaras, 2005). Much of the dilemma is a consequence of limited available research to draw upon in making such decisions. This has led to widely divergent opinions, ranging from the conclusion that no psychotropic medication should be considered sufficiently safe to the conclusion that psychotropic drugs as a group are relatively safe to take during pregnancy.

Although the research evidence remains incomplete, preliminary efforts have been taken to summarize the indications associated with a range of psychiatric medications (ACOG Committee, 2009; Gentile, 2010; McKean, 2013; Pedersen et al., 2010). Most psychotropic medications have been classified as "risk cannot be ruled out." A very limited number of medications within the categories of anxiolytics, antidepressants, and antipsychotics were classified as "no evidence of risk," providing some relative guidance for decision making. The groups of medications in which

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the greatest apparent potential risks were evident were anxiolytics (particularly the benzodiazepines) and mood-stabilizing medications (lithium carbonate, valproic acid, and carbamazepine).

Ultimately, the decision to use psychotherapeutic medications during pregnancy (or in the postpartum period in the context of lactation) requires a weighing of the risks and benefits to both the parent and the fetus or newborn (Galbally et al., 2011, 2014; Oyebode et al., 2012; Sivertz & Kostaras, 2005). If it is concluded that psychotropic treatment should be initiated or continued during pregnancy, the evidence-based data, as currently available and growing, may be helpful in the selection of specific medications (Einarson & Boskovic, 2009; Galbally et al., 2014).

REVIEW

1. Evaluate the advantages and disadvantages of using psychotherapeutic medications during pregnancy.

Summary

- Psychotherapeutic medications are prescribed in hopes of providing some relief for people with psychological disorders, and ideally the opportunity to function better in their environments.
- Early efforts to deal with psychological disorders included a variety of speculative approaches, many of which were cruel. These included bloodletting, hot irons, flogging, and starvation.
- Later on, in the mid-1800s, cannabis was studied as a treatment for depression and manic episodes.
- During the first half of the 1900s, amphetamines were used in the treatment of depression and narcolepsy, and carbon dioxide in the treatment of various conditions.
- In 1949, the Australian physician John Cade discovered the benefits of lithium in the treatment of manic episodes, and lithium remains a mainstay in the treatment of bipolar disorders.
- The greatest advance in psychopharmacology was the use, starting around 1950, of the drug chlorpromazine as an antipsychotic medication. A host of other drugs were introduced in the years following, including antianxiety medications and antidepressant medications.
- About one of every four to five adults in the United States experiences some form of psychological disorder (excluding substance use disorders) in any given year. Most have symptoms associated with anxiety or depression.
- Psychotherapeutic drug use is more likely among women, older people, people living alone, the more educated, and those with higher incomes.
- The illicit use of prescription medications is a serious problem. Prescription drugs are a factor in a large number of drug-related emergency room cases and drug-related deaths.
- Psychotherapeutic drugs can affect the neurotransmitter/receptor system. The prominent processes are binding directly to the receptor site, serving as a receptor agonist or antagonist; causing the release of more neurotransmitters; blocking the reuptake of neurotransmitters back into the presynaptic neuron; changing the number of receptor sites or the sensitivity of the receptors; altering the metabolism of the neurotransmitter; and altering the enzymatic degradation of the neurotransmitter.
- Like other drugs, psychotherapeutic drugs can be classified in different ways. The most common way is by therapeutic use, and the four major categories are antipsychotics, antidepressants, antianxiety agents, and mood-stabilizing drugs.
- Antipsychotic medications, also known as neuroleptics or major tranquilizers, are used to treat schizophrenia and other disorders, such as mania, agitated depression, toxic psychoses, emotionally unstable personalities, and psychoses associated with older age. These medications primarily affect the reticular activating system, the limbic system, and the hypothalamus.
- The dopamine hypothesis is the most accepted explanation of the action of antipsychotic medications. Two core elements of the dopamine hypothesis are that increased levels of dopaminergic activity induce psychoses, and most antipsychotic drugs block postsynaptic dopamine receptors.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Tardive dyskinesia is a major side effect of long-term use of antipsychotic drugs. It is characterized by repetitive, involuntary movements of the mouth and tongue, trunk, and extremities.
- Depression is one of the most common psychiatric disorders in the United States. Depression often is classified as one of two major types: endogenous or exogenous.
- Five major classes of antidepressant medications now are prescribed. In the United States, SSRIs, SNRIs, and tricyclics are prescribed more frequently than MAOIs.
- Treatment of depression with antidepressant medication follows from the biochemical hypothesis of the disorder. The hypothesis is that depression results from a deficiency in two biogenic amines—catecholamines and serotonin—that act as CNS neurotransmitters.
- All depressant drugs (including alcohol) produce similar effects. At low doses, they relieve anxiety; at moderate doses, they induce sleep; and at higher doses, they produce general anesthesia and eventually coma and death.
- The first depressants discovered were drugs used for general anesthesia, such as nitrous oxide and ether. Modern surgery would not be possible without this development.
- The development of the barbiturate drugs led to the use of depressants as sleeping pills and as treatment of anxiety symptoms and epilepsy.
- The use of barbiturates was limited when adverse effects were discovered. These include rapid development of tolerance, severe withdrawal symptoms, high risk of overdose, and high misuse potential.
- A number of barbiturate-like compounds have been developed (such as methaqualone, or Quaaludes), but they have the same undesirable effects as the barbiturates.
- The discovery of benzodiazepines revolutionized the medical use of depressant drugs because they relieve anxiety with fewer side effects than previous depressants.
- Benzodiazepines and other depressant drugs are believed to act at the GABA receptor site in the central nervous system.
- The anxiolytic effects of benzodiazepines are more selective than those of other depressants because they relieve anxiety at doses that produce minimal sedation and motor impairment.
- Although less problematic than barbiturates, benzodiazepines may produce tolerance and dependence, and withdrawal symptoms may occur.
- Lithium is the major drug used to treat bipolar disorders. Lithium is the only psychotherapeutic drug that is an effective prophylaxis against disease recurrence.
- Lithium has several effects on the brain. It modulates the transmission of dopamine, glutamate, and GABA; lithium also has neuroprotective effects in several brain regions.
- The decision to use psychotherapeutic medications during pregnancy is a difficult one, reflecting an array of potential risks and benefits to the parent and the fetus. Certain anxiolytic, antidepressant, and antipsychotic medications have relatively lower risk profiles, providing some guidance for such decision making.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. One of the first successful attempts to treat the symptoms of psychological disorders with psychotherapeutic drugs occurred in the 1840s, when Moreau used cannabis to treat individuals with both depressive and manic symptoms.
   T *Individuals with depression who were treated with cannabis became more talkative and happy, whereas individuals with manic symptoms calmed down and relaxed. Unfortunately, these effects were temporary.*
2. Since the 1950s, the number of individuals hospitalized for psychiatric conditions has decreased significantly.
   T *The introduction of chlorpromazine was the starting point of this trend. Other contributing factors include the development of other psychotherapeutic drugs and the movement toward deinstitutionalization.*
3. Almost half of the adults in the United States will meet the criteria for a psychological disorder at some point in their lives.
   T *Most of these cases, though, are mild, not severe, and typically do not require treatment.*
4. The prevalence of psychotherapeutic medication is twice as high among men as among women.
   F *The use of psychotherapeutic medication is twice as high among women as among men.*
5. Psychotherapeutic drugs are rarely misused.
   F *The nonprescribed use and misuse of psychotherapeutic drugs are a significant problem.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6. As with most drugs, the age group least likely to misuse psychotherapeutic drugs is older adults (> age 65 years).
   F *Older adults are the age group most likely to misuse psychotherapeutic drugs.*
7. Most psychotherapeutic medications are taken orally, allowing for rapid absorption into the bloodstream.
   F *Most psychotherapeutic medications are taken orally. However, absorption occurs in the gastrointestinal tract followed by modification in the liver before being absorbed into the bloodstream.*
8. Schizophrenia is one of the most common psychiatric disorders in the United States.
   F *Schizophrenia affects only about 1% of the population.*
9. Stimulants are often used to treat chronic depression.
   F *Although stimulants were once used as a treatment for depression, their effectiveness is limited. Antidepressant medications are generally used to treat depression.*
10. Because antidepressants are absorbed rapidly, their effects are often immediate.
    F *Despite the rapid absorption, the effects of antidepressant medications take 2 to 3 weeks to become apparent.*
11. Nitrous oxide (laughing gas) is no longer used by the medical profession.
    F *Nitrous oxide is still widely used in dentistry and some types of surgery.*
12. Individuals who have a drink of wine at dinner while also taking a benzodiazepine are at increased risk of harmful additive effects.
    T *Potentiation, or the additive effects of drugs, is a dangerous consequence of consuming more than one depressant drug.*
13. Withdrawal from depressant sleeping pills can trigger rebound insomnia.
    T *Insomnia and REM sleep rebound occur after barbiturates or benzodiazepines are used to induce sleep.*
14. Withdrawal from barbiturates is similar to alcohol withdrawal.
    T *Delirium tremens-like effects characterize withdrawal from all depressants.*
15. Benzodiazepines (such as Valium) are one of the most commonly prescribed categories of drugs in the United States.
    T *A recent survey revealed that four different benzodiazepines (Valium, Dalmane, Ativan, and Tranxene) are among the most commonly prescribed drugs in the United States.*
16. Benzodiazepines are known on the street as "bennies."
    F *"Bennies" are a type of amphetamine, whereas benzodiazepines are considered a depressant. Also, although benzodiazepines do turn up on the street, their prevalence is less widespread than other depressant drugs.*
17. Overdose of benzodiazepines was the cause of the suicide death of Marilyn Monroe.
    F *Benzodiazepines have a very high LD50. Highly toxic barbiturates were the fatal drugs for Marilyn Monroe.*
18. The main depressant drugs (barbiturates, benzodiazepines, and alcohol) all act by vastly different physiological mechanisms and affect different areas of the body.
    F *Substantial evidence indicates a common mechanism of action for depressant drugs. GABA is one of the primary inhibitory neurotransmitters of the brain, and many depressants are thought to act through this system.*
19. Depressant drugs may show cross-tolerance with cocaine.
    F *Depressant drugs show cross-tolerance with other depressant drugs, such as barbiturates or alcohol.*
20. Alcohol in combination with other depressant drugs is the leading cause of drug overdose deaths in the United States.
    T *Alcohol and other depressant drugs produce strong potentiation.*
21. Lithium, a natural alkaline metal, is often used to treat manic episodes.
    T *Although lithium may have some value in treating other disorders, its use in the United States is approved only for treatment of manic episodes.*
22. Psychotherapeutic drugs pose little or no threat to the fetus and may be used safely during pregnancy.
    F *There is a considerable range in the relative risks associated with the parent's use of psychotherapeutic medications while pregnant. Most psychotherapeutic medications have been classified at least as "risk cannot be ruled out." A few have been classified as "no evidence of risk," providing some guidance to decision making on this issue.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Key Terms

agitated depression
akinesia
anterograde amnesia
anxiolytic
barbiturates
benzodiazepines
dyskinesia
endogenous
exogenous
extrapyramidal
general anesthesia
manic
narcoleptic
neuroleptics
neuroses
paranoid schizophrenia
psychosurgery
psychotherapeutic
rebound insomnia
REM rebound
sedative-hypnotic effects
tardive dyskinesia
teratogenic

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Herbal remedies, such as St. John's wort, are widely used by individuals as supplemental health agents. The FDA does not regulate the manufacture of or access to such supplements, even though these drugs may have harmful interactions with prescription medications. What steps should pharmacists take to aid in protecting individuals from potential adverse effects of these supplements?
2. Lithium is a naturally occurring element found in groundwater, with varying levels across the United States. While the amounts of lithium in groundwater are quite low, evidence is accumulating that there are benefits associated with having comparatively higher amounts of lithium in the drinking water. A long-term Japanese study reported suicide rates are inversely correlated with lithium content in the drinking water. Some scientists and public health officials have recommended that miniscule amounts of lithium be added to drinking water, to aid in suicide prevention. What do you think are the advantages and disadvantages associated with this idea?

Suggested Readings

Barnhill, J. W. (2013). *DSM-5 clinical cases*. American Psychiatric Press.

Gordon, B. (1979). *I'm dancing as fast as I can*. Bantam Books.

Griffith, H. W. (2015). *Complete guide to prescription and non-prescription drugs: 2016–2017*. Tarcher-Perigee.

Russo, E. (2001). *Handbook of psychotropic herbs: A scientific analysis of herbal remedies for psychiatric conditions*. Haworth Herbal Press.

Styron, W. (1992). *Darkness visible: A memoir of madness*. Vintage Books.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

14-1 Compare and contrast how the various hormonal contraceptive methods work to prevent pregnancy

14-2 Summarize the concerns with anabolic steroid use in professional athletes and young adults

14-3 Explain the criteria the FDA uses when determining if a drug can be sold over the counter

14-4 Compare the psychoactive effects of over-the-counter analgesics, cold and allergy medications, and stimulants and sedatives

14-5 Evaluate the evidence as to whether herbal supplements, hormones, and dietary supplements are safe and effective

14-6 Critique the impact the 1994 Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act has had on how individuals use and misuse supplements

14-7 Identify the classes of inhalants and products in each class that are misused

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

14

Other Prescription and Over-the-Counter Drugs

Overview

Prescription Drugs

- Birth Control Drugs
- Anabolic Steroids

Over-the-Counter Drugs

- FDA Classification
- Analgesics
- Cold and Allergy Medications
- Over-the-Counter Stimulants and Sedatives

Herbal Products, Hormones, and Dietary Supplements

- Areca (Betel)
- DHEA
- Ephedra/Ma Huang
- Ginkgo Biloba
- Kava
- Kratom
- Melatonin
- S-Adenosyl-Methionine
- St. John's Wort
- Valerian
- Gamma Hydroxybutyrate

Inhalants

Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Birth control pills contain synthetic forms of one or both of the female sex hormones.

___ 2. One of the risks associated with the use of birth control pills is an increased chance of lung cancer.

___ 3. Anabolic steroids are synthetic forms of testosterone.

___ 4. Medical professionals prescribe anabolic steroids to treat hormonal issues such as delayed puberty.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

___ 5. Acne, baldness, and liver damage are all side effects associated with steroid use.

___ 6. Over-the-counter (OTC) drugs must meet GRAS and GRAE standards.

___ 7. Aspirin relieves pain through action on the endorphins, in much the same way that the pain-relieving effects of opiates are produced.

___ 8. Many over-the-counter diet pills contain low doses of amphetamines.

___ 9. Antitussive agents are used to suppress coughing.

___10. Antihistamines are common ingredients in over-the-counter cold remedies.

___11. GHB is a naturally occurring brain chemical.

___12. Caffeine is a common ingredient in over-the-counter stimulant preparations.

14.1 Overview

We have covered the major traditional classes of psychoactive drugs in the previous chapters. There are additional drugs we need to consider, drugs that do not fit neatly into these earlier traditional classes. In this chapter, we will discuss:

- Two additional prescription drugs that have psychoactive properties: *birth control pills* and *anabolic steroids*.
- Over-the-counter medications that have psychoactive properties and are regulated by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), including analgesics, cold and allergy medications, diet pills, and sleep aids.
- Herbal products, hormones, and dietary supplements that have psychoactive properties but are not regulated by the FDA.
- Inhalants, legal chemicals that produce volatile fumes with psychoactive effects.

14.2 Prescription Drugs

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-1 Compare and contrast how the various hormonal contraceptive methods work to prevent pregnancy

14-2 Summarize the concerns with anabolic steroid use in professional athletes and young adults

Birth Control Drugs

The first birth control pill became available in the early 1960s, and since that time, numerous formulations of "the pill" have been developed. Many women use the pill for birth control or for treating conditions such as endometriosis. During 2015–2017, almost 65% of women aged 15–49 in the United States used a form of contraception, with 12.6% using oral contraceptives.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

combination pill
Birth control pill that contains synthetic forms of both female sex hormones: progesterone and estrogen.

progesterone (prō-'jes-tə-'rōn)
One of the female sex hormones involved in the regulation of ovulation and the menstrual cycle.

estrogen ('es-trə-jən)
One of the female sex hormones involved in the regulation of ovulation and the menstrual cycle.

progestin-only pill
Birth control pill (sometimes called the minipill) that contains only progestin, a synthetic progesterone.

There are two types of birth control pills: combination pills and progestin-only pills. **Combination pills** contain synthetic forms of **progesterone** and **estrogen**. There are several types of combination pills, including monophasic pills, multiphasic pills, and extended-cycle pills. *Monophasic pills* are used in 1-month cycles. The active pills contain the same dose of hormones. Inactive pills are taken during the last week of the cycle. *Multiphasic pills* are also used in 1-month cycles but provide different levels of progesterone and estrogen during the cycle. Inactive pills are taken during the last week of the cycle. *Extended-cycle pills* typically are used in 13-week cycles. Active pills are taken for 12 weeks, and inactive pills are taken during the last week of the cycle. All combination pills work by suppressing ovulation (release of a mature egg from the ovary).

Progestin-only pills, also called the minipill, contain progesterone but no estrogen. Progestin-only pills are appropriate for women who cannot taken estrogen for health or other reasons (described further below). All pills in the cycle are active; there are no inactive pills. Progestin-only pills work in several ways. They cause thinning of the endometrium, which makes it harder for an egg to implant. They also cause thickening of the cervical mucus. Progestin-only pills may also prevent ovulation.

How do birth control pills prevent ovulation? Basically, they work by "tricking" a woman's brain into responding as if she were already pregnant. When a woman is pregnant, she no longer ovulates. The hypothalamus and pituitary gland are responsible for regulating ovulation. When circulating levels of estrogen and progesterone are high (as in the case of pregnancy or use of the birth control pill), these structures do not release the hormones that are necessary to prepare the ovaries to release an egg, and thus ovulation is prevented.

To keep circulating levels of estrogen and progesterone continually high enough to inhibit ovulation, the woman must faithfully remember to take a birth control pill every day at approximately the same time of day. If she misses a pill, she must take it as soon as possible. If she misses more than one pill, her levels of circulating estrogen and progesterone may have dropped sufficiently low to allow ovulation to occur. Used properly, birth control pills are one of the most reliable forms of birth control available, with a failure rate of 0.3% (when used perfectly) to 9% (with typical use), much lower than most alternatives (CDC, 2017; Hyde & DeLamater, 2017) (see Table 14.1 and Contemporary Issue Box 14.1). The pill has some advantages over other contraception methods as well. Because it does not require taking

TABLE 14.1 Comparison of Contraceptive Methods

Method	Failure Rate with Perfect/Typical Use (%)
Vasectomy	0.2/0.2
Patch	0.3/9
Ring	0.3/9
Combination birth control pill	0.3/9
IUD	0.2/0.8
Condom	2/18
Diaphragm plus spermicide	6/12
Withdrawal	4/22
Rhythm, body temperature	5/24
Chance	85
Abstinence	?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 14.1

What Kind of Birth Control Is Best?

Perhaps the question most individuals have when reading about the pill is whether it is the best method of contraception. It is impossible to evaluate the pill without considering the other available methods. Table 14.1 lists the failure rates for various methods of birth control in typical individuals both when application is "perfect" and for "typical" use. The difference between these methods often amounts to error in their proper use. Failure is minimized with surgical procedures such as vasectomy, but in addition to the possible complications of surgery, the procedure may be irreversible. Thus, surgical procedures are uncommon among younger individuals. Notice that the hormonal treatments (the pill, the ring, the patch) are the most effective techniques not requiring surgery. Their main drawbacks are the side effects noted in the text. The intrauterine device (IUD) is also highly effective and is a very popular method, but the IUD also can produce side effects. The most common are irregular bleeding and pelvic pain. More serious complications are less common but may include greater risk of pelvic inflammatory disease, uterine perforation, and complications if pregnancy should occur when the IUD is in place. Women also use a variety of "barrier" techniques, including the diaphragm and the contraceptive sponge. These devices block the cervical opening and, when used with a spermicide, produce acceptable failure rates. A disadvantage of these methods is the repeated insertion and removal of the device, which some women find problematic.

Condoms may be a preferred method of birth control as they do not involve hormonal manipulations and provide protection from sexually transmitted diseases. Unless used properly (and reliably), however, condoms have a high failure rate, as Table 14.1 shows. As you will also note in Table 14.1, techniques such as withdrawal and rhythm have a common side effect: pregnancy! Then, of course, there is abstinence . . . .

precautions just before or after intercourse, it permits more spontaneity in sexual activity than other approaches. A disadvantage of the pill compared to condoms, of course, is that the pill does not prevent the spread of sexually transmitted disease. In addition, the pill has a number of side effects.

One of the more serious concerns is the increased risk of blood clots in those who take the combination pill. Blood clots can produce strokes or heart attacks, and indeed women older than 40 show an increased risk of heart attack when they take the combination pill. This risk is greatly increased if the woman is also a cigarette smoker. Mood changes, including irritability and depression, are often reported by women on the pill (Hyde & Delamater, 2017).

As we noted, a major limitation in the effectiveness of the pill is that individuals must remember to take it every day. Newer developments in birth control provide longer-lasting methods of delivering estrogen and progestin that require less frequent administration by those taking it. One example is the vaginal ring, a doughnut-shaped device that is placed in the vagina where it slowly releases progestin, estrogen, or both. The vaginal ring functions much like the pill in preventing ovulation. The ring is kept in place for three weeks and is then removed for the fourth week to permit menstrual flow. A more recent development is the contraceptive patch. This is a thin strip of plastic material that attaches to the skin like a bandage. The side that makes contact with the skin releases the same hormones as the pill and the ring, in appropriate doses over a one-week period. The woman replaces a patch every seven days for three weeks and then goes for seven days without a patch. The obvious advantage of both the ring and the patch is that a woman does not need to remember to take daily pills throughout the month. An option for women who have had

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

unprotected intercourse is to take emergency contraception (e.g., Plan B). Generally, emergency contraceptives deliver high doses of progestin and are most effective if taken within 72 hours after intercourse, with some effectiveness continuing for up to 5 days after intercourse. Emergency contraception may work by preventing ovulation, fertilization, or implantation. Emergency contraceptive pills are not effective if a woman is already pregnant. Thus, these pills will not produce an abortion. The FDA judged the use of Plan B emergency contraception pills to be safe and effective and recommended that Plan B be made available over the counter. The rationale behind this recommendation was that the drug is most effective when taken within a day of unprotected intercourse; thus, the delay required in arranging an appointment with a physician to receive a prescription for Plan B is problematic. However, this became a politically charged issue because some fear making the drug available over the counter sends a permissive message about sexuality. After considerable controversy, in 2006, the FDA announced a compromise decision: Plan B was approved as an over-the-counter option for women aged 18 and older, but it remained available only by prescription for young women aged 17 and younger. But the controversy continued. In 2011, the FDA recommended that a newer version of the pill, Plan B One-Step, be made available over the counter without age restrictions. Health and Human Services Secretary Kathleen Sebelius overruled this recommendation, but by 2013, the age limit was dropped to 15 years and in May 2013, a federal court of appeals decision ordered that the drug be made available without age restrictions of any kind. Even more controversial is the progesterone antagonist mifepristone (RU-486). If this drug is taken during the first 49 days of pregnancy, it causes the embryo to be aborted. Because it induces abortion, mifepristone has generated considerable protest, but it is in widespread use in Europe and is now approved for use in the United States (Hyde & DeLamater, 2017).

When considering contraception controversies and in particular the potential side effects of birth control pills and other methods of contraception, one must keep things in perspective. Although risks are associated with use of the pill, they are lower than the risks involved in pregnancy and delivery.

Anabolic Steroids

A number of different drugs are used to enhance athletic performance. Some performance-enhancing drugs (PEDs) are in the stimulant class and were discussed in Chapter 6. Anabolic steroids are PEDs with a different mechanism of action that will be considered here.

Background

On a sunny day in September 1988 in Seoul, Korea, the world of sports was changed forever. Ben Johnson ran the 100 m dash in 9.79 seconds to win the Olympic gold medal and break the world record. Johnson had become the world's fastest human—of all time. Then, just 2 days later, after traces of the **anabolic steroid** stanozolol were found in Johnson's urine sample, he was stripped of his record and his medal and left the games in disgrace. The reverberations in the sports world are still being felt; perhaps more significantly, Johnson's scandal opened the eyes of the public to the problem of steroid misuse.

anabolic steroids
Tissue-building drugs that produce masculinizing effects as well.

Anabolic steroids are synthetic drugs that resemble the male sex hormone **testosterone**. In addition to its role in determining male sexual characteristics such as facial and chest hair (androgenic or masculinizing effects), testosterone helps build body tissues and repair damaged tissue. Such bodily construction processes are called

testosterone
The male sex hormone. Anabolic steroids are basically synthetic versions of testosterone.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

anabolic effects. People can also obtain anabolic effects by taking synthetic testosterone for certain medical conditions, such as delayed puberty, or for improved athletic performance or bodybuilding. The clinical uses of anabolic steroids include treatments for testosterone deficiency, some types of anemia, breast cancer, osteoporosis, and arthritis. Anabolic steroids are often obtained illicitly, however, and are used for bodybuilding or otherwise enhancing athletic performance.

Anabolic steroids were first developed in Nazi Germany in the 1930s, allegedly to help create an army of supermen (Marshall, 1988). The first known use of anabolic steroids in athletics is reported to have been by Russian weight lifters and some female athletes in the early 1950s. By the 1968 Olympics, steroids were in widespread use. Consider this testimony given by Harold Connolly, Olympic gold medalist in the hammer throw, before a Senate committee:

> It was not unusual in 1968 to see athletes with their own medical kits, practically a doctor's bag in which they would have syringes and all their various drugs . . . . I know any number of athletes on the 1968 Olympic team who had so much scar tissue and so many puncture holes on their backsides that it was difficult to find a fresh spot to give them a new shot. (Hecht, 1985, p. 270)

Not until 1976 did the International Olympic Committee rule that athletes could not use steroids. Urine testing was used to enforce this policy. Since that time, a great many athletes have tested positive and have been banned from the games, but the Ben Johnson case was certainly the most notorious. The 2016 Rio Olympic Games were marred by the disqualification before the games began of over 100 Russian track-and-field athletes who were involved in a state-sponsored program that provided them anabolic steroids. A controversy developed over the many other Russian athletes, particularly swimmers, who apparently participated in the doping program but did not test positive and were permitted to compete. Two athletes (Russian boxer Misha Aloian and Romanian weight lifter Gabriel Sincraian) were stripped of medals after testing positive for steroids. Steroid use by professional athletes, particularly Major League Baseball players, continues to be controversial as well (see Contemporary Issue Box 14.2).

"So I can't say, 'Don't do it,' not when the guy next to you is as big as a house and he's going to take your job and make the money."

—Former Major League Baseball player Ken Caminiti about steroids

Concern about steroids also increased as it became evident that their use had become widespread not just among elite athletes but also for cosmetic purposes by those who simply wanted to enhance their physical appearance. Apparently "getting big" has become so important that many young people are willing to risk using steroids to achieve the larger muscles and better definition they believe are associated with these drugs.

Possession of steroids without a prescription has been illegal since 1990, when the Anabolic Steroid Control Act was passed, making these drugs Schedule III controlled substances. There was some evidence of decline in the use of steroids after the act passed. The reported use of steroids by high school seniors was 3% in 1989, dropped to 2.9% in 1990, and was less than 2.5% throughout the decade of the 1990s, with a low of 1.9% in 1996. Usage was back up to 4% in 2002 but has steadily declined since then to a rate of 1.0% in 2016, the lowest usage since the survey began to include steroids (Johnston et al., 2013; National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2016).

Rates of steroid use may be substantially higher than this among older adults, particularly those who are weight lifters or bodybuilders, but as with any illicit drug, it is difficult to assess the actual prevalence. Rates obtained through mandatory drug testing by the NCAA, NFL, and Olympic committees have generally found less than 3% positive tests, but these data appear at odds with the reports of journalistic and governmental investigations as well as survey data (McCloskey & Bailes, 2005; Yesalis et al., 2000). The problem is that individuals can circumvent the drug tests.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 14.2

BALCO, Bonds, and Baseball

In June 2003, a track coach named Trevor Graham came into possession of an unknown drug that was being distributed by BALCO, a San Francisco outfit that provided training programs and "supplements" to many of the country's elite athletes. Graham gave the U.S. Anti-Doping Agency a syringe of the drug, which turned out to be a designer steroid, tetrahydrogestrinone (THG), that was undetectable by any of the standard drug-testing screens at the time. The 2003 and 2004 federal grand jury and Senate investigations of BALCO and its chief executive, Victor Conte, then launched what some have called "the biggest doping scandal in sports history" (McCloskey & Bailes, 2005, p. 61). Many of the nation's top athletes were named as BALCO clients and linked with use of THG, other steroids, and a host of other performance-enhancing drugs. These included many track-and-field athletes, among them gold medalist Marion Jones and football players like Bill Romanowski, but the sport most affected by the BALCO investigations was Major League Baseball. Top stars like Mark McGwire, Rafael Palmeiro, and Jason Giambi were all linked to steroid use, but the spotlight really focused on Barry Bonds.

Andy Lyons/Staff/Getty Images

Bonds shattered baseball's record for most home runs in a season (previously held by McGwire) with 73 in 2001, and in 2007, broke Hank Aaron's career record of 755. Faced with unassailable evidence that he received steroids from BALCO, Bonds admitted taking both the "clear," a liquid absorbed under the tongue, and the "cream," which was applied directly to the muscles. Both the cream and the clear were undetectable designer steroids, but Bonds denied knowing they were steroids. However, two journalists (Fainaru-Wada & Williams, 2006) provided evidence that Bonds had full knowledge of his program for use of steroids and other performing-enhancing drugs, and in 2011, Bonds was convicted of felony obstruction of justice. In 2008, Major League Baseball implemented a new steroid-testing policy with escalating penalties for positive tests. Since then numerous players have received suspensions for performance-enhancing drugs including stars like Alex Rodriguez and Ryan Braun in 2013; Jenrri Mejia was banned for life after testing positive for steroids for the third time in 2016. So perhaps baseball will finally put an end to what many call "the steroid era."

When testing occurs only at particular competitive events, such as the Olympics, individuals can avoid a positive test by discontinuing use for a time prior to testing. Random testing is more difficult to beat, but low doses, designer steroids, use of natural compounds such as testosterone and human growth hormone (HGH), and use of masking drugs are all strategies that may be effective.

So, actual use of anabolic steroids may be higher than our estimates indicate. But how high? The BALCO investigations and the claims of two former baseball stars (Ken Caminiti and Jose Canseco) that 50% to 85% of all Major League Baseball players use steroids launched a major scandal, but the accuracy of such allegations cannot be verified. In any case, the focused attention on steroid use in the past decade has

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

led to considerable research, and we are beginning to get a better idea of just how steroids work and what side effects may follow their use.

Actions of Anabolic Steroids

The anabolic steroids include danazol, methyltestosterone, ethylestrenol, methandrostenolone, nandrolone, oxandrolone, oxymetholone, stanozolol, and tetrahydrogestrinone (brand names include Anadrol, Anavar, Danocrine, Dianabol, Metandren, and Winstrol). Although some may be taken orally or topically, others must be injected to be effective (see Table 14.2). The metabolism and elimination of steroids are variable. Steroids can be detected reliably in urine for 4 to 14 days after use, but there are reports of positive urine tests as long as 13 months after the use of nandrolone (Marshall, 1988).

A related compound, androstenedione, is a precursor to testosterone and was marketed over the counter as an alternative to the illegal steroids to enhance strength and performance. Mark McGwire made "Andro" famous when he admitted to using it during his record-breaking home run streak in 1998. Because androstenedione was associated with many of the side effects of anabolic steroids, the FDA made it an illegal substance in 2004.

One ironic feature of the widespread use of steroids by athletes is that medical researchers have had great difficulty determining whether they really enhance performance. It is clear that male testes at puberty increase testosterone output to result in the increased muscle mass and strength characteristic of males at that age. However, this does not necessarily mean that supplemental testosterone will cause further gains in a typical male. Many studies of the effects of anabolic steroids on weight gain, strength, and performance have been conducted. Although most of these have shown improvement in individuals who took steroids, some have not. Overall, the consensus in the scientific community is that steroids do produce gains in size and strength (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013).

Side Effects of Anabolic Steroids

Physical side effects are associated with anabolic steroid use. Perhaps the most commonly reported are acne, balding, and reduced sexual desire. Men often experience atrophy of the testes and a related decline in sperm count and enlargement of the breasts. It seems ironic that many men who take steroids have to take special drugs to prevent breast growth! These effects are usually reversible. Women may

TABLE 14.2 Anabolic Steroids

Drug	Trade Name	Route of Administration
Danazol	Danocrine	Oral
Ethylestrenol	Maxibolin	Oral
Methandrostenolone	Dianabol	Oral
Methyltestosterone	Metandren	Oral
Oxandrolone	Anavar	Oral
Stanozolol	Winstrol	Oral
Nandrolone	Androlone, Durabolin, Nandrolin	Injection
Methandriol	Anabol, Durabolic, Methabolic, Steribolic	Injection

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

experience pronounced masculinizing effects from steroid use, and many of these effects are irreversible. They include growth of facial and chest hair, baldness, deepening of the voice, breast shrinkage, clitoral enlargement, and menstrual irregularities (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). Another cause for concern is that steroid use often changes cholesterol levels that may increase the risk of heart disease. Damage to liver function is also common and can include an increased risk of liver cancer (Langenbucher et al., 2008). The late NFL All-Pro Lyle Alzado attributed his inoperable brain cancer to heavy steroid use. Whether steroids play a causal role in this and other types of cancer is controversial, however (Friedl, 2000b). Additional problems, such as premature bone fusion causing stunted growth, can occur when children and adolescents use steroids. Alteration of normal pubertal development is also a risk in young people.

In addition to the physical side effects of steroids, there are psychological effects. Most report a mild euphoria when they use steroids, and increased energy levels also are noted. Less desirable are reports of increased irritability and aggressiveness, sometimes leading to violent behavior. Mood swings and even psychotic reactions have been reported. Pope and Katz (1988) reported on a study of 41 bodybuilders and football players who had used steroids. Nine (22%) of the individuals experienced emotional disturbance, and five (12%) developed psychotic reactions during their steroid regimens. One individual deliberately drove a car into a tree at 40 mph. Another described becoming irritated at a driver in front of him who had left his blinker on. At the first stoplight, he jumped out of his car and punched out the other car's windshield! Of course, these case studies do not establish that steroids alone were responsible for these effects, but several double-blind studies have also reported increased aggression and mood swings in subjects who received steroids, albeit with less dramatic outcomes than those described here (see Kanayama et al., 2008, for a review). Those who use anabolic steroids also had higher-than-expected rates of violent death (Petersson et al., 2006). As well, steroid use has been associated with withdrawal symptoms and dependence in as many as 30% of those using steroids in some studies (Kanayama et al., 2009).

Csakisti/Dreamstime.com

PAUL JONES/Staff/AFP/Getty Images

Do they or don't they? Only their pharmacist knows for sure.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Athletes will continue to use steroids as long as they believe their competition is using them. Better testing methods are needed, but perhaps more important would be *regular* tests. Many current procedures allow athletes to discontinue the drugs prior to an important event to avoid a positive urine test. Regular random tests are more likely to reduce cheating. But what of the thousands of individuals who are not Olympic-calibre athletes who are taking steroids to improve their performance at the high school or college level or just to "get big"?

Steroids can cause major problems, and many drug education programs do not even discuss them. Clearly, there is a need to make the public aware of the potential dangers of steroid misuse.

> *"Steroids make the athlete more aggressive and in some sports that is seen as an advantage."*
>
> Al Oerter, four-time Olympic gold medalist in discus

REVIEW

1. Create a chart outlining the similarities and differences between combination pills and progestin-only pills.
2. Explain how the various hormonal contraceptive methods (birth control pills, vaginal ring, contraceptive patch, Plan B) work.

   Describe the risks associated with hormonal contraception.
3. Explain the physical and psychological side effects of anabolic steroids.

14.3 Over-the-Counter Drugs

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-3 Explain the criteria the FDA uses when determining if a drug can be sold over the counter

14-4 Compare the psychoactive effects of over-the-counter analgesics, cold and allergy medications, and stimulants and sedatives

The FDA divides drugs into two categories: those that require a prescription from a physician to purchase (such as the psychiatric drugs discussed in Chapter 13 and the birth control pills and anabolic steroids described previously) and those considered safe enough to dispense without a prescription. The latter are often called over-the-counter (OTC) drugs.

FDA Classification

The 1962 Kefauver-Harris Amendment charged the FDA with regulating and reviewing OTC drugs—no small task when you consider more than 300,000 products were on the market! Rather than focusing on specific brands, the FDA has organized the ingredients found in these products and divided them into the categories listed in Table 14.3. As you can see, OTC drugs treat a wide range of ailments. The FDA created panels to study the ingredients and to evaluate them on two major criteria: safety and efficacy. The panel's final reports were presented in 1985. Then, those drugs authorized as OTC drugs must meet the standard of "generally recognized as safe" (GRAS) and "generally recognized as effective" (GRAE). Drugs that do not meet these criteria are removed from OTC products. Note, however, that *safety* and

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 14.3 FDA Classification of OTC Drugs

1. Antacids	13. Analgesics
2. Antidiarrheal products	14. Antitussives
3. Sunscreens	15. Eye products
4. Dandruff products	16. Dental products
5. Bronchodilators	17. Emetics
6. Stimulants	18. Antiperspirants
7. Cold remedies	19. Antimicrobials
8. Skin preparations	20. Hemorrhoidal products
9. Laxatives	21. Sedatives and sleep aids
10. Antiemetics	22. Allergy drugs
11. Vitamin and mineral products	23. Contraceptive products
12. Oral hygiene products	24. Weight-control products

efficacy are relative terms. Some OTC drugs can be hazardous, and some are of very limited efficacy.

In addition to reviewing the ingredients of OTC drugs, FDA panels review prescription drugs and, if they are found to be relatively safe and effective, may recommend that they be made available without prescription. The pain reliever ibuprofen and some antihistamines, such as diphenhydramine and loratadine (Claritin), are examples of drugs previously available only by prescription that have now been approved as OTC drugs.

Of the 24 categories of drugs listed in Table 14.3, we focus on those that have psychoactive properties: analgesics, cold and allergy medications, and stimulants and sedatives.

Analgesics

In Chapter 10, we discussed the use of opiate drugs in the treatment of pain. But the use of opiates for pain relief is usually reserved for severe cases. Many effective painkillers are available over the counter, and aspirin is the most widely known and used.

acetylsalicylic acid (ə-ˈse -tᵊl-ˈsa-l-ˈsi-lə) Chemical name for aspirin.

Acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin) is closely related to a chemical found in the bark of the willow and other trees (salicylic acid). The ancient Greeks and Native Americans used willow bark in the treatment of painful conditions and fever. Salicylic acid was isolated and used as a pain reliever in Europe, but it causes severe stomach distress. Not until the late 19th century did the Bayer Company of Germany synthesize acetylsalicylic acid and name it *aspirin*. Aspirin has come to be one of the most important drugs in medicine. It is marketed under the brand names Anacin, Bufferin, and Excedrin, to name just a few, and between 10,000 and 20,000 tons of aspirin are consumed in the United States every year (Julien et al., 2011).

Aspirin is analgesic (produces pain relief without unconsciousness), antipyretic (reduces fever), and anti-inflammatory (reduces swelling). It is thought to work by means of a mechanism quite different from opiate analgesia. Aspirin (and other OTC painkillers) act by blocking the production and release of **prostaglandins**, chemicals released by the body at peripheral sites of pain. These chemicals are thought to enhance certain kinds of pain—dull pain and aches, such as headache—and to produce inflammation. Indeed, aspirin is not very effective at treating sharp pains or

prostaglandins (ˈpräs-tə-ˈglan-dən) Naturally occurring chemicals blocked by aspirin and related analgesics.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Fred Goldstein/Dreamstime.com

Over-the-counter drugs are considered safe enough to dispense without prescription.

stomach pain. It is, however, very effective with muscle aches, headaches, and soreness due to inflammation such as arthritis (Grogan, 1987).

Aspirin has some adverse effects. It frequently causes stomach irritation and bleeding and is contraindicated in people who have stomach problems. Aspirin may be related to a rare and dangerous disease called Reye's syndrome. Reye's syndrome occurs only in children treated with aspirin for flu or chicken pox and involves severe vomiting, disorientation, and sometimes coma, brain damage, or death. Thus, aspirin should be avoided by children who have these diseases. Aspirin is also an anticoagulant and may prolong bleeding under certain circumstances. However, this same mechanism may be useful in the prevention of strokes and heart attacks (Advokat et al., 2014).

An effective analgesic drug useful for people with stomach problems is **acetaminophen**. This drug, marketed under brand names such as Tylenol, reduces fever and produces analgesic effects but does not cause stomach irritation. Acetaminophen is not a potent anti-inflammatory drug, however, and may cause liver problems in high doses. Acetaminophen-related overdoses are fairly common and account for over 56,000 emergency room visits and nearly 500 deaths every year. A recent FDA advisory committee noted that many of these occur because people take multiple products containing acetaminophen without knowing it, often in products that combine acetaminophen with another painkiller. The advisory committee report suggests that the recommended adult dose should be lowered (from 1,000 mg to 650 mg) and that the maximum daily dose be decreased as well (FDA, 2009).

acetaminophen
(ə-ˈsē-tə-ˈmi-nə-fən)
Aspirin-like analgesic.

Other widely used OTC painkillers are **ibuprofen** and **naproxen**. Ibuprofen was exclusively a prescription drug (Motrin) until 1984, when the FDA approved it for OTC use. Now it is marketed under brand names such as Advil and Motrin and has captured a large share of the OTC painkiller market. Naproxen is marketed under the brand names of Naprosyn and Aleve and was approved as an OTC drug in 1994. These drugs have analgesic and anti-inflammatory effects that are similar to aspirin but are generally better tolerated. Like other OTC pain relievers, however, ibuprofen and naproxen can produce side effects, including stomach irritation and liver and

ibuprofen
('ī-byú-ˈprō-fən)
Aspirin-like analgesic.

naproxen
(nə-ˈprok-sən)
Aspirin-like analgesic.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

kidney damage in high doses (Advokat et al., 2014), and recent studies found that increased risk of heart failure in older individuals was associated with use of these and related pain relievers (Arfè et al., 2016).

Cold and Allergy Medications

The common cold is common enough that its sufferers in the United States spend $1.3 billion on OTC cold remedies every year. OTC cold and allergy medications contain a variety of different ingredients, including analgesics such as aspirin or acetaminophen, which are of value in reducing aches, pain, and fever. In addition, many OTC cold preparations contain a decongestant such as **pseudoephedrine** (Sudafed). Because pseudoephedrine is one ingredient used to produce illicit methamphetamine, such products are now sold behind the pharmacy counter, though without a prescription (see Chapter 6). Cold remedies also may include expectorants, which help to break up phlegm so that it may be coughed up. **Guaifenesin** is the most common expectorant. **Antitussive** agents actually suppress coughing and are often included in cold and cough formulations. One popular antitussive ingredient in many cough formulations is a powerful psychoactive drug, dextromethorphan. Dextromethorphan is an antagonist of the NMDA receptor, an effect it shares with ketamine and PCP (see Chapter 12). Like these dissociative anesthetics, dextromethorphan in sufficiently high doses can produce hallucinogenic effects but can also be quite toxic, with side effects including psychotic reactions (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). Of course, the dose of dextromethorphan received when taking cough medicine as recommended on the label does not produce such effects, but dextromethorphan has become a drug of misuse (Wilson et al., 2011), and those who use it recreationally may consume a full bottle or more of cough syrup to reach a hallucinogenic dose. An additional problem posed by this high-level use is that it can lead not only to overdose of dextromethorphan but also exposes individuals to excessive doses of the other ingredients in cough syrup, which may also produce adverse reactions (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013).

pseudoephedrine (ˈsü-dōi-ˈfed-rən)
An effective decongestant.

guaifenesin (gwī-ˈfen-ə-sin)
An over-the-counter expectorant.

antitussives
Cough-suppressant drugs.

Other common ingredients in OTC cold and allergy preparations are **antihistamines**. These compounds actually are more effective in the treatment of hay fever and related allergic reactions. Many allergic symptoms are caused by the release of a naturally occurring chemical called histamine. As the name suggests, antihistamines act by blocking histamine. Commonly used antihistamines include diphenhydramine, chlorpheniramine maleate, and loratadine (Claritin). Several side effects limit the usefulness of antihistamines, however. Drowsiness and fatigue are probably the most significant. It can be hard to stay awake after taking antihistamines, and in fact, diphenhydramine is the major ingredient in most OTC sleeping aids. Other side effects include thickening of mucus secretions, blurred vision, dizziness, dry mouth and nose, and sweating (Grogan, 1987).

antihistamines
Common over-the-counter drugs with decongestant effects.

Over-the-Counter Stimulants and Sedatives

The main ingredient in OTC stimulants is caffeine. Phenylpropanolamine (PPA) was a common ingredient in such preparations until 2000, when the FDA withdrew OTC approval because it was found to increase the risk of stroke. Popular brands of OTC stimulants include pills such as NoDoz and energy drinks such as Red Bull and Monster. They certainly will induce mild central nervous system stimulation, but most contain about as much caffeine as one to three cups of coffee, so those who use stimulants should expect about that effect. Information on the side effects of caffeine was presented in Chapter 8.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As noted previously, the major ingredient in OTC sleeping aids is an antihistamine, diphenhydramine. Because fatigue is a common side effect of antihistamines, they sometimes can help people who are suffering from insomnia. However, other side effects associated with antihistamines (for instance, dry mouth, dizziness, and nausea) may limit their use as sleeping aids. In addition, the problems associated with using prescription sleeping pills may apply to these drugs, too, as discussed in Chapter 13.

REVIEW

1. Explain the terms GRAS and GRAE, and how the FDA uses these criteria when evaluating over-the-counter drugs.
2. Create a table listing various examples of analgesics, cold and allergy medications, and stimulants and sedatives. Then, identify the main chemical compounds and indicate the mechanism of action for each.

14.4 Herbal Products, Hormones, and Dietary Supplements

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-5 Evaluate the evidence as to whether herbal supplements, hormones, and dietary supplements are safe and effective

14-6 Critique the impact the 1994 Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act has had on how individuals use and misuse supplements

In 1994, the Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act was passed. This act reduced the authority of the FDA to regulate herbal and other biological products that often contain psychoactive drugs. The change has opened up a Pandora's box of herbal remedies and products that are marketed quite freely in health food shops, grocery stores, and even drug stores. The new law changed the definition of a dietary supplement to extend beyond vitamins and to include herbs, amino acid preparations, and even some hormones. As such, herbal and other chemical preparations labeled as dietary supplements are exempt from regulations that require testing for safety and efficacy. Now, as long as the packaging for the supplement makes no specific claims with respect to treating a disease, the supplement is not considered a drug, and a

Carolyn A. McKeone/Science Source

Herbal/natural health supplements.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

company may market it freely (Spinella, 2001). So the label on a dietary supplement may read "improves mood" or "calms the spirit" but not "relieves depression" or "treats anxiety."

The "health supplement" industry has burgeoned, and several controversies are now brewing. One view is that because such products are obtained directly from natural sources, they are somehow safer and more in harmony with nature than other medicines (Tyler, 2000). Many of the drugs we have already considered are also obtained directly from plants, however, including the likes of cocaine, mescaline, morphine, nicotine, and scopolamine. Clearly, a chemical found in natural plant material is not guaranteed to be risk-free. Supporters of the 1994 act argue that valuable remedies are now more readily available to people at low prices. They point, in particular, to success stories like St. John's wort (hypericum), an herbal therapy for depression. Hypericum extract from St. John's wort has been demonstrated in some studies to be effective in the treatment of depression, with few side effects. But most herbal preparations have not been well studied, so in many cases, there is little evidence of effectiveness. Even more problematic, in many cases, little is known about possible dangers that might be associated with an herb. Those who use herbal supplements should recognize that the FDA has not evaluated herbal preparations with respect to the GRAS and GRAE standards that are required for OTC drugs. An herbal preparation that produces serious side effects may remain on the market until enough evidence accumulates to remove it. As a case in point, consider the story of gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), which was marketed legally as a supplement until medical complications and misuse led to Schedule I status (see later discussion). Literally hundreds of supplements are available in the United States today. We review a few of the more important psychoactive preparations here.

Areca (Betel)

Areca catechu is a palm tree cultivated in Southeast Asia, India, and Africa. The nuts of this palm, often referred to as betel nuts, are chewed by more than 200 million people to produce a mildly stimulating effect. So, areca is one of the world's most popular drugs. Chewing areca or betel is a practice similar to chewing tobacco in the United States, and, like nicotine, the active chemical in areca, arecoline, affects the neurotransmitter acetylcholine. Individuals appear to develop a nicotine-like dependence on areca. Heavy use stains the mouth and lips red and damages the mouth and teeth, but individuals are often unable to quit chewing despite these problems (Spinella, 2001).

DHEA

Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) is a hormone naturally secreted by the adrenal glands. It is offered as a miracle drug in health food stores with claims that it prevents heart disease, cancer, obesity, and diabetes. It is said to be an "antiaging" hormone as well. The bad news is that virtually no evidence supports any of these claims, although the hormone may have some mood-enhancing effects. DHEA is a precursor of testosterone in the body, and many DHEA effects may be related to the androgenic effects noted earlier in this chapter. So, although DHEA may not prevent aging, it may produce some of the side effects noted earlier for anabolic steroids (Advokat et al., 2014).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Ephedra/Ma Huang

A number of plant species from the genus *Ephedra* have been used for their stimulant effects for many years. *Ephedra sinica* is native to Asia and is frequently sold under its Chinese name, *ma huang*. Another species, *E. nevadensis*, grows in the American West and is known as Mormon tea. The main psychoactive compound in ephedra is ephedrine. Ephedrine is a potent stimulant with effects much like those reviewed in Chapter 6. It is sympathomimetic and produces behavioral effects similar to those of other stimulants (Karch, 2000). Until 2004, ephedrine products were marketed through stores or by mail order to increase energy, prevent drowsiness, suppress appetite, and, in high-dose formulations, as an "herbal" alternative to Ecstasy (see Chapter 12). These products contained a wide variety of plant products and drugs, including caffeine, theophylline, pseudoephedrine, and ephedrine. Many side effects and some deaths due to heart attack and stroke were associated with ephedra products, particularly those with high doses of ephedrine (Spinella, 2001). The February 2003 death of Baltimore Orioles pitcher Steve Bechler—which was linked to his use of ephedra—prompted an expedited FDA review of ephedra preparations, and in April 2004, the FDA banned products containing ephedrine from over-the-counter sales.

Mark Galizio

Kava Market in Suva, Fiji.

Ginkgo Biloba

Extracts from the leaves of the ginkgo tree have been touted as a "smart drug," a drug that enhances memory and concentration. Can ginkgo biloba extract slow or prevent age-related memory problems, such as those seen in individuals with Alzheimer's disease or mild cognitive impairment? Several small studies reported modest improvement in cognitive function for older adults with dementia. However, larger follow-up studies have not been able to confirm that ginkgo biloba extract is effective in reducing cognitive impairment in those with Alzheimer's disease. Furthermore, ginkgo biloba extract does not slow cognitive decline in adults with normal cognition.

Kava

The kava plant (*Piper methysticum*) is cultivated on South Pacific islands, where it has been used for religious and cultural ceremonies for hundreds of years.

Roger Ressmeyer/Corbis/VCG/Getty Images

A man in Yakel village chews a mouthful of kava root.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The roots of the plant are crushed and generally prepared in a tea. Even today in small villages in Fiji, it is expected that a visitor will bring a gift of kava, and a group welcoming ceremony that centers on preparing and consuming the kava tea is traditional. Kava appears to produce a sedating or relaxing effect similar to alcohol or other depressant drugs, and the supplement preparations sold in the United States imply that it can relieve stress and anxiety. Kava is becoming increasingly popular in the United States. Kava bars have sprung up around the country, and kava is advertised and sold on the Internet as a legal high (Dennehy et al., 2005). Like the classic depressant drugs, the active compounds in kava, a group of chemicals called kavalactones, appear to enhance the actions of the neurotransmitter GABA. Several controlled studies of kava preparations or kavalactones have supported the claims that kava produces relaxing or anxiolytic effects (Malsch & Kieser, 2001). Few side effects have been documented, but kava can produce an alcohol-like intoxication in higher doses, and misuse problems have been reported in the South Pacific. Side effects from kava may include drowsiness and blurred vision, and there have also been reports of liver toxicity. These have been problematic enough that kava has been banned in some countries (e.g., Canada, France, Germany), although it remains legal in the United States (Brown & Cohen, 2015).

Kratom

Mytragina speciosa is a tree native to Southeast Asia called kratom in Thailand and Byak in Malaysia. In both countries, consumption of kratom has a long history. Drinking a tea prepared from kratom leaves or chewing the leaves provides a low dose that is perceived to have stimulant properties. Higher doses, generally prepared as a concentrated powder or liquid extract, are used for sedative effects and to relieve pain (Bergen-Cico & MacClurg, 2016). Kratom was relatively unknown in the United States until recently when it began to show up on Internet sites and head shops (Adkins et al., 2011). Although kratom is now illegal in Malaysia and Thailand, largely due to concerns about addiction, it is not scheduled in the United States. However, as use of kratom increased over the past few years, its legal status created a storm of controversy. Kratom produces pain relief through opiate-like mechanisms, and this, combined with reports of dependence from Asia, led the DEA , in August 2016, to announce that it would temporarily reclassify kratom as a Schedule I drug. During a period of review and public commentary on this proposal, there was a public outcry that opposed making kratom illegal. Scientists, bipartisan congressional representatives, and advocacy groups such as the Botanical Educational Alliance argued that kratom was not as harmful as the DEA claimed, and that it is useful in managing pain and other conditions. Furthermore, they argued kratom was safer than prescription opioids. Classifying kratom as a Schedule I drug would make it difficult to investigate its properties, thereby stifling research into alternatives to prescription opioids. The reaction was so strong that the DEA withdrew its notice of intent to reclassify kratom in October 2016.

What are the issues concerning kratom? First, it should be noted that there has been very little research on kratom. We do know that it is a plant with a very complex chemistry. There are over 25 different chemicals in kratom that are biologically active, but most research has focused on mitragynine. The opiate-like effects of kratom are thought to be based on mitragynine and related compounds that bind to opiate receptors in the brain (Adkins et al., 2011). Because of this action of mitragynine, kratom can relieve pain, produce a euphoric state, and even

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

relieve opiate withdrawal symptoms. However, as with the opiate drugs discussed in Chapter 10, there is risk of dependence, and kratom itself is associated with tolerance and withdrawal symptoms (Bergen-Cico & MacClurg, 2016). More research is needed to determine whether kratom or some of its constituent compounds may have special medical benefits or whether it is just another opiate drug with all the associated problems.

Melatonin

Melatonin is a naturally occurring hormone produced by the pineal gland. It is thought to regulate biological rhythms and sleep. Numerous brands of synthetic and natural melatonin (from animal pineal gland) are available in stores, and they are recommended to individualas (falsely) to treat everything from heart disease to cancer. A number of controlled studies suggest that melatonin is superior to placebo as a sleeping pill and in preventing "jet lag." Melatonin can reduce the time it takes for people to fall asleep and can lengthen sleep time (Zhdanova & Friedman, 2002). However, it has a short half-life that limits its effectiveness in many cases. Longer-acting melatonin preparations are now available that may be more useful in the treatment of primary insomnia (Meyer & Quenzer, 2013). There are some side effects including irritability, altered menstrual cycles, and vasoconstriction that may reduce blood flow to the brain and heart. Still, melatonin and its analogs do not seem to be associated with dependence, and thus may be a viable alternative to the standard tranquilizers used to treat insomnia (see Chapter 13).

S-Adenosyl-Methionine

S-adenosyl-methionine (SAM or SAMe) is a compound found naturally in the body that is marketed as a supplement with the formal claim that it promotes "emotional well-being." There is some evidence showing that it is superior to placebo as a treatment for depression, but many of these studies used high doses that may create problems with side effects (Brown & Cohen, 2015).

St. John's Wort

St. John's wort (*Hypericum perforatum*) is often held up as the poster child of the herbal alternatives movement because of its antidepressant effects. It is a perennial plant that has been cultivated in Europe for centuries. Extracts of hypericum contain a wide variety of active chemicals, including hypericin and pseudohypericin. Whether St. John's wort is really a significant antidepressant remains controversial. Some studies have found hypericum to be superior to placebo, but others have found no effects or even that patients treated with St. John's wort showed less improvement than those on placebo. Hypericum may produce side effects as well, including photosensitivity and lethargy, and it may alter the metabolization of numerous other drugs with potential for dangerous interactions, thus making St. John's wort of dubious safety (see Advokat et al., 2014, for a review).

Valerian

Valerian originated in Europe and Asia, where it has been used for more than 1,000 years for a variety of purposes but primarily to treat insomnia and anxiety. Valerian

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

preparations, derived from the root of the plant, contain active chemicals that collectively appear to enhance inhibitory neurotransmission through the GABA system. Research on valerian has been mixed, with several reports supporting the claim that it reduces sleep latency and improves sleep quality, but many others finding it no better than placebo (Brown & Cohen, 2015).

Gamma Hydroxybutyrate

Gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB) is a substance found in the brain that is thought to be a natural neurotransmitter or neurohormone. Its effects are generally those of depressant drugs. It is structurally related to GABA and, like many depressant drugs discussed already, influences GABA transmission. There are also specific brain receptors for GHB that may confer unique properties to GHB, but little is known about their function (Maitre et al., 2000).

GHB has an odd and interesting history. It was originally used as an anesthetic in Europe, but in the United States, it was marketed as a supplement for an odd combination of claimed benefits—to enhance athletic performance and sexual activity and to induce sleep. GHB became a widely misused drug in the 1990s and was linked with so many problems that it was declared a Schedule I drug in 2000. Although GHB is no longer legally available in the United States, it is still widely used. It is frequently smuggled into the country, and because it is easy to synthesize, much GHB is "home brewed."

Often considered among the "club drugs," GHB is usually taken orally in a salty-tasting liquid solution. Those who take it report that the drug produces a euphoric intoxication; however, GHB is a potent depressant, and unconsciousness and coma have been frequently reported. Generally, these symptoms resolve within a few hours, but a number of deaths have been linked to GHB (Galloway et al., 2000). GHB toxicity and coma appear more likely when it is taken in combination with alcohol or other drugs (Liechti et al., 2006). This is consistent with findings from animal research that GHB is synergistic with alcohol and other depressants (Beardsley et al., 1996). Also in keeping with the pattern of effects of most depressant drugs, tolerance and dependence to GHB have been reported. GHB is one of several drugs (e.g., Rohypnol or roofies) that have been used to commit "date rape" by rendering an individual unconscious (Galloway et al., 2000).

James Marshall/Getty Images

A teenager uses inhalant drugs.

Oddly enough, GHB has been approved for medical use in the treatment of a form of narcolepsy. Narcolepsy is a rare condition (it affects about 120,000 people in the United States) in which individuals suddenly and uncontrollably fall asleep. Perhaps one-third of individuals with narcolepsy also have cataplexy, a sudden loss of muscular control. Cataplexy results in collapse and, because it occurs without warning, is a very debilitating condition. GHB taken in the evening before sleep appears to markedly reduce these symptoms. In July 2002, FDA approval was given to a form of GHB to be marketed for this purpose under the brand name

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Xyrem. Xyrem is designated as a Schedule III controlled substance for medical use, but in another odd twist, the FDA announced that it would continue to consider the illicit use of GHB to be subject to Schedule I penalties (FDA, 2002). This unusual move is designed to keep GHB tightly regulated, yet allow it to be available to the very small population of individuals with narcolepsy who need it.

So, the strange story of GHB continues. The neurotransmitter was first used as an anesthetic, then moved on to become an unregulated dietary supplement, then was placed under the most stringent possible regulation as a Schedule I drug, and at present seems to be both a Schedule I drug and an approved Schedule III medical drug.

REVIEW

1. Argue why supplements should have greater regulation by the FDA. Then, argue why the current regulatory oversight on supplements is sufficient and appropriate.
2. Summarize the psychoactive effects of four different herbal products or dietary supplements.

14.5 Inhalants

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

14-7 Identify the classes of inhalants and products in each class that are misused

Inhalants include many different compounds related more by their method of administration than by their pharmacology. Some categories of inhalants, such as the medical anesthetics (halothane and nitrous oxide), are true depressant drugs, but inhalants also include a variety of products with widely varying pharmacologies, including glue, paint, butane gas, correction fluid, and many others (see Table 14.4 for a more detailed list). Perhaps the only thing all these products really have in common is the ability to produce a dizzy euphoria upon inhalation.

Inhalants are among the most widely misused drugs, particularly among younger individuals. For example, in a 2016 survey, 7.7% of eighth graders reported that they had used inhalants. Although fewer 12th graders reported inhalant use (5.0%), the use of inhalants, called "huffing" or "bagging," is clearly one of the major forms of dangerous drug use among young people today (National Institute on Drug Abuse, 2016).

Because of the bewildering variety of substances associated with inhalant misuse, it is difficult to characterize the hazards completely. A number of deaths have been due to cardiovascular collapse or suffocation related to the inhalation of butane, toluene, and gasoline (Cairney et al., 2002). Chronic use of inhalants has been linked to a variety of medical problems, including psychotic behavior, movement disorders, liver and kidney toxicity, and damage to the brain's cortex and cerebellum (Cairney et al., 2005; Ridenour et al., 2007).

The nitrite inhalants—amyl, butyl, and isopropyl nitrite (see Table 14.4)—are a group of inhalant drugs that deserve special mention. Amyl nitrite dilates coronary arteries when inhaled and was once prescribed to individuals suffering from angina in the form of ampules that were crushed or popped before inhalation—hence the slang names "poppers" and "snappers." Nitrites also dilate cerebral blood vessels to

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 14.4 Common Inhalants and the Chemicals They Contain

Inhalant Class	Product	Chemicals
Adhesives	Airplane glue	Toluene, Ethyl acetate
Aerosols	Spray paint	Butane, Propane, Fluorocarbons
	Hair spray	Butane, Propane
	Fabric spray	Butane, Trichloroethane
Anesthetics	Nitrous oxide	
	Halothane	
Cleaning agents	Spot remover	Xylene, Chlorohydrocarbons
	Degreaser	Tetrachloroethylene
Solvents	Nail polish remover	Acetone
	Paint thinner	Petroleum distillates
	Correction fluid	Trichloroethylene
	Gasoline	
Gases	Fuel gas	Butane, Isopropane
	Lighter fluid	Butane
Food products	Whipped cream	Nitrous oxide
	Whippets	Nitrous oxide
Nitrites	Locker Room	Isoamyl, Butyl, or Isopropyl
	Rush, poppers	Nitrite

Source: Based on Sharp (1992).

produce a brief period of euphoria and dizziness. Nitrites have been widely used for recreational purposes. Those who use poppers during sexual activity report prolonged and intense orgasm. A number of side effects have been noted from these drugs, including headache, tachycardia, eye problems, and rare sudden deaths (Rosenberg & Sharp, 1992).

The effects of inhaling nitrous oxide (laughing gas) involve a short-lived state of intoxication described by most as a pleasant euphoria that is, as the drug's nickname implies, often accompanied by giggling and giddy laughter. However, in controlled studies, not all individuals enjoyed the effects of nitrous oxide, which they reported as confusion, feeling high, and stimulation but paradoxically also depression (Walker & Zacny, 2005).

Adverse effects reported from nitrous oxide use have included nausea, vomiting, and headache. In addition, heavy chronic use has occasionally been reported to resemble the sort of dependence that develops with other depressant drugs. With heavy use come more severe problems, including numbness of the extremities and permanent peripheral nerve damage. There have also been some reports of death by asphyxiation after using large amounts in a poorly ventilated space (ibid.).

REVIEW

1. Explain why inhalants are among the most widely used misused drugs.
2. Create a chart outlining the various classes of inhalants and the main chemicals they contain.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Summary

- The combination birth control pill contains synthetic versions of the two female sex hormones: estrogen and progesterone.
- Although highly effective at reducing the risk of pregnancy, birth control pills are linked to such side effects as increased risk of heart attack and stroke.
- Anabolic steroids are generally synthetic versions of the male sex hormone testosterone and are used to promote the development of muscle mass and to enhance athletic performance.
- Side effects associated with anabolic steroids include masculinizing effects in women, liver damage, acne, hair loss, and emotional disturbance.
- Three major analgesic drugs are available without prescription: aspirin, acetaminophen, and ibuprofen.
- Aspirin relieves pain, reduces fever, and is anti-inflammatory. Its side effects include stomach irritation and bleeding. The effects of ibuprofen are similar.
- Acetaminophen is a potent analgesic drug, but it lacks the anti-inflammatory effects of aspirin. It is also less likely to cause stomach irritation.
- Other ingredients of nonprescription cold and allergy medications include pseudoephedrine, guaifenesin, dextromethorphan, and antihistamines.
- The antihistamine compound diphenhydramine is the major ingredient in nonprescription sleeping pills.
- Many herbal drugs, amino acids, and hormones are marketed as dietary supplements. They include areca, DHEA, ephedra, ginkgo biloba, kava, kratom, melatonin, SAMe, St. John's wort, and valerian.
- GHB is a naturally occurring neurotransmitter that has the properties of a depressant drug. It began as a supplement but is now tightly regulated due to misuse problems.
- Inhalants are a large group of volatile compounds that can alter consciousness when taken into the lungs. Many of them are organic solvents that can damage the brain.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Birth control pills contain synthetic forms of one or both of the female sex hormones.
   T *Combination birth control pills contain synthetic estrogen and progesterone; the progestin pill contains only synthetic progesterone.*
2. One of the risks associated with the use of birth control pills is an increased chance of lung cancer.
   F *An increased risk of blood clots is associated with the use of birth control pills.*
3. Anabolic steroids are synthetic forms of testosterone.
   T *Anabolic steroids mimic the action of the male sex hormone.*
4. Medical professionals prescribe anabolic steroids to treat hormonal issues such as delayed puberty.
   T *Doctors prescribe anabolic steroids to treat delayed puberty and other conditions that cause the body to produce very low levels of testosterone.*
5. Acne, baldness, and liver damage are all side effects associated with steroid use.
   T *There are other potential side effects as well.*
6. Over-the-counter (OTC) drugs must meet GRAS and GRAE standards.
   T *The FDA evaluates OTC products as to whether they are "generally recognized as safe" (GRAS) and "generally recognized as effective" (GRAE). OTC products must meet these criteria to be sold.*
7. Aspirin relieves pain through action on the endorphins, in much the same way that the pain-relieving effects of opiates are produced.
   F *The pain-relieving effects of aspirin are produced by blocking prostaglandin release.*
8. Many over-the-counter diet pills contain low doses of amphetamines.
   F *Many diet pills contain caffeine. Amphetamines are Schedule II drugs and may not be sold without a prescription.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

9. Antitussive agents are used to suppress coughing.
   T *Antitussives are used to suppress coughing.*
10. Antihistamines are common ingredients in over-the-counter cold remedies.
    T *Antihistamines relieve nasal congestion and related symptoms.*
11. GHB is a naturally occurring brain chemical.
    T *GHB is found in the brain, where it is thought to be a neurotransmitter.*
12. Caffeine is a common ingredient in over-the-counter stimulant preparations.
    T *Caffeine is commonly used.*

Key Terms

acetaminophen (ə-ˈsēˉ-tə-ˈmi-nə-fən)
acetylsalicylic acid (ə-ˈsē-tᵊl-ˈsa-l-ˈsi-lə)
anabolic steroids
antihistamines
antitussives
combination pill
estrogen (ˈes-trə-jən)
guaifenesin (gwīˉ-ˈfen-ə-sin)
ibuprofen (ˈīˉ-byuˑ-ˈproˉ-fən)
naproxen (nə-ˈprok-sən)
progesterone (proˉ -ˈjes-tə-ˈroˉ n)
progestin-only pill
prostaglandins (ˈpräs-tə-ˈglan-dən)
pseudoephedrine (ˈsü-doˉ-i-ˈfed-rən)
testosterone

Essays/Thought Questions

1. In 2009, the International Association of Athletics Federations (IAAF), the international governing body for track and field, introduced the Athletes Biological Passport (ABP) program as a way to test for illegal doping. The ABP monitors specific biological variables over time, including steroid concentrations in urine. What factors do you think should determine which athletes are tested? How frequently should an athlete be tested?
2. While herbal supplements must follow good manufacturing practices, they are not approved by the FDA for treating conditions or disease. What factors do you think one should consider when deciding whether to use an herbal supplement?

Suggested Readings

Braun, L., & Cohen, M. (2015). *Herbs and natural supplements: An evidence-based guide* (5th ed., Vol. 2). Elsevier Australia.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

15-1 Discuss why it is difficult for psychologists to demonstrate the effectiveness of spontaneous remission

15-2 Evaluate the effectiveness of self-help groups and professional treatment for the treatment of substance use disorders

15-3 Compare and contrast the five model categories of substance use disorder with the biopsychosocial model

15-4 Describe the importance of assessment in professional treatment for substance use disorders

15-5 Summarize the use of pharmacological treatment for substance use disorders

15-6 Evaluate the effect of economic factors on the accessibility of alcohol and drug treatment programs

15-7 Describe how the models of causes of substance use disorders have influenced treatment approaches

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

15

Treatment of Substance Use Disorders

Motivation to Change
Change without Formal Treatment
Self-Help Groups
- Alcoholics Anonymous
- Other Self-Help Groups

Models of Substance Use Disorders
- Five Model Categories
- Biopsychosocial Model

Professional Treatment: Assessment and Goals
- Abstinence or Moderation?
- Harm Reduction

Alcohol Treatment Settings and Services
- Types of Settings and Services
- Pharmacological Treatment
- Effectiveness of Alcohol Treatment
- Nonpharmacological Professional Treatment
- Self-Help Treatment
- Effectiveness of Pharmacological Treatments

Other Drug Treatment Settings and Services
- Treatment of Nonopiate Drug Use Disorder
- Pharmacotherapy of Other Drug Use Disorders
- Effectiveness of Drug Treatment
- Nonpharmacological Professional Treatment
- Self-Help Treatment
- Pharmacological Treatments
- Promising Treatment Techniques

Special Topics in Alcohol and Drug Treatment
- Treatment of Polysubstance Misuse
- Treatment of Dual-Diagnosis Patients
- Relapse

Models of Causes and Treatment Methods
Economic Factors in Alcohol and Drug Treatment
The Stepped-Care Approach
- Summary

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. The process of changing a problem behavior seems to be different for everyone.

___ 2. Treatment is needed to change patterns of alcohol and drug misuse or dependence.

___ 3. Alcoholics Anonymous is a religious society that requires one to adopt Western religious beliefs.

___ 4. It is generally agreed that substance use disorders are caused by psychological disorders.

___ 5. Assessment typically is thought to be essential to good treatment.

___ 6. The only goal of any importance in alcohol and drug treatment is the reduction of substance use.

___ 7. Abstinence from alcohol is a mandatory goal of alcohol treatment.

___ 8. Methadone maintenance seems to be an effective treatment for more severe heroin use disorder.

___ 9. Today, there are good reasons for rigid boundaries between what we call alcohol treatment and drug treatment.

___10. Treating patients who have co-occurring substance use and another psychiatric disorder is straightforward.

___11. Relapse is such a long-standing problem in alcohol and drug treatment that we can do little about it.

___12. Professional treatment for substance use disorders is freely available to anyone who wants it.

Now that we have covered the most commonly used psychoactive substances, we are ready to address the question: What treatments are available for those whose use becomes misuse or dependence? **Treatment** refers to planned activities designed to change some pattern of behavior(s) of individuals or their families. In this chapter, we will discuss psychological/behavioral treatments and pharmacological treatments that are used to aid people in changing their patterns of substance use.

treatment
Planned activities designed to change some pattern of behavior(s) of individuals or their families.

> *"I always wanted to have a life. In treatment, I discovered that drug use had cost me my life."*
>
> Anonymous

Because the information about treatment is large in both volume and variety, it is useful to have a model to guide us through this chapter. Figure 15.1 is a model of what might occur during the course of treatment, from the time an alcohol or drug problem is recognized to the outcome, or the result that is attributed to treatment. In this case, the essential outcome of interest is change in alcohol or other drug use patterns.

You should read Figure 15.1 from left to right. For any treatment to happen, a problem must first be recognized. That recognition may come from the individual, or it may come first from other sources (family, friends, legal system, employer) in the individual's environment. Even with external feedback about a problem, individuals still may not be convinced that they actually do have a problem and need to change. This complex decision point typically is described by terms such as a person's *motivation* to change or *commitment* to change. With problem recognition, if change is initiated, it typically happens in one of three ways. People may decide to change their substance use without any kind of help. In Chapter 7, you saw that some who used to smoke stopped without help. The same applies to people with alcohol or other

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

spontaneous remission Resolution of a problem without the help of formal treatment.

drug problems, though as with smoking, it may take a few tries to do so (Sobell et al., 1993). This phenomenon has been called **spontaneous remission**. Another option that individuals may choose is self-help groups, such as Alcoholics Anonymous. And a third possibility is that individuals go into some kind of professional treatment. Frequently, individuals may combine self-help group attendance with professional treatment activities.

If individuals initiate professional treatment, some type of assessment of their problems usually occurs first. Assessment leads to the specification of treatment goals, which contribute to placement in a specific treatment setting or activity. The content and structure of treatments are influenced by models and theories of substance use disorders, reflected by the broken line in Figure 15.1.

The result, or outcome, of these change options is of primary interest. Outcomes can take a variety of forms, especially over a long period of time. Following treatment for alcohol and other drug use, individuals may relapse after some time of substance use reduction or resolution. If that happens, the person returns to any of the preceding points in Figure 15.1, including back to the step of considering whether they have a commitment to change.

With this framework, we can begin our presentation on treatment of the substance use disorders. Like Figure 15.1, we start with a discussion of problem recognition and motivation to change.

15.1 Motivation to Change

"One way or another, with professional help or without, with friendly advice from uncle or neighbor or without it, with constant nagging from wife or husband or without it, the individual . . . makes a decision [to change]."

J. Orford, 1980 (Orford, 1985, p. 272)

Motivation refers to the wants or needs that direct behavior toward a goal. Motivation to change has been considered essential if individuals have any hope that treatment of a behavioral or psychological problem will be effective. In the context of substance use disorders, motivation to change is discussed often and sometimes heatedly. For example, it frequently is asserted that the major barrier to change is a person's denial of a problem with alcohol or drugs. Denial may persist even with evidence of a problem that is blatant to everybody but the person who has the problem.

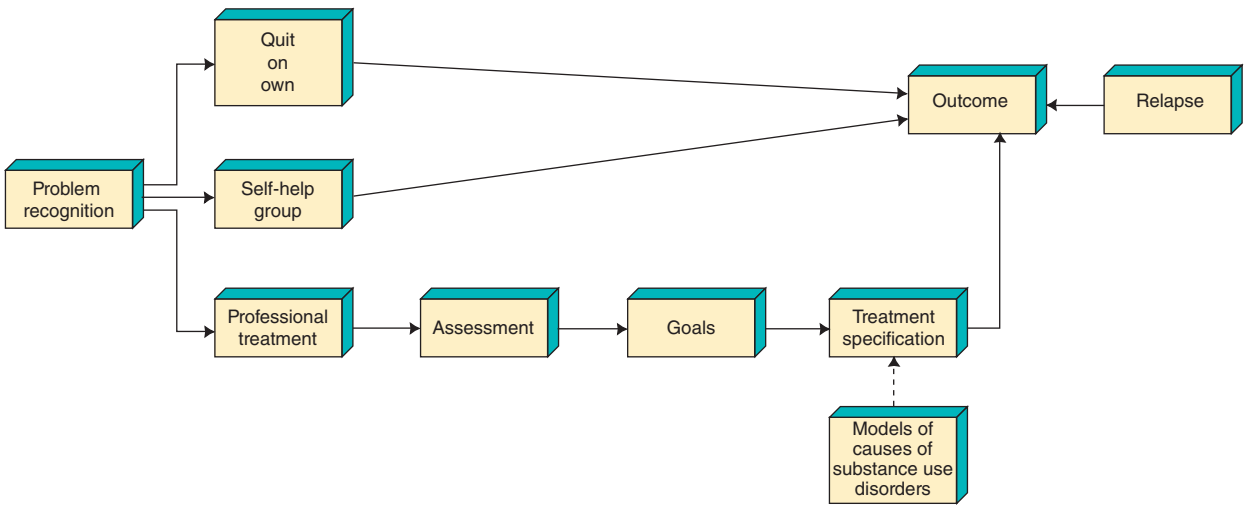


FIGURE 15.1
A model of events that occur in the course of treatment of substance use disorders

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Despite all the discussion of motivation, it has not been as fruitful as we might expect in helping us to understand change in behavior such as alcohol and drug use. Part of the problem is the many different ways to define a motivation to change and to measure it when conducting research or in clinical practice. One solution to this problem that has proved productive in research on substance misuse and dependence is to look at "readiness" (or commitment) to change instead of grappling with the abstract idea of motivation. There have been several attempts to do this, but the one that has the greatest influence is the stages of change model (Prochaska et al., 1992). This model is thought to apply regardless of whether one changes on their own or uses outside resources. The model has five stages: precontemplation, contemplation, preparation, action, and maintenance. A person may cycle through the stages to various points several times before reaching problem resolution. You can connect this idea to what we said both about individuals "quitting" smoking or drinking several times before it seems permanent and about the difficult problem of relapse.

People in the precontemplation stage do not consider their behavior to be a problem, or they may be in denial about the severity of their substance misuse. It appears that progression in the change cycle requires acknowledgment of the given behavior and its negative consequences, and an accurate evaluation of change possibilities and how they might occur (e.g., with or without professional treatment). People in the contemplation stage vacillate between the pros and cons of their problem behavior and between the pros and cons of making changes in it. So, they are deciding whether to change, but they have taken no steps to do so. People in the preparation stage are on the edge of taking action to change and may have made an attempt in the recent past. To progress, a commitment to take action and to set goals is needed. Individuals in the action stage already are engaged in explicit activities to change. Maintenance, the last stage, involves the continued use of behavior-change activities. The maintenance stage is the most challenging after some time has passed, as the person may become complacent and stop following their treatment plan. If a person relapses it does not mean the treatment has failed. As we have discussed, a return to drug use can be part of the process. People are thought to progress through each of these stages in the process of change. The rate of progression and the amount of recycling differ from person to person and from problem to problem for a given person, but going through the stages applies generally. We should add here that identification of a person's stage is problem specific. For example, a person's stage of change for their drinking may not be indicative of that person's stage of change for smoking.

"We must use the carrot and stick of the criminal justice system to demand that drug-dependent offenders become involved in treatment."

Lee Brown, director of the U.S. Office of National Drug Control Policy (*The Alcoholism Report*, 1993, p. 6)

What this all means for us is that the stage of change helps us to identify a person's perception of the problem and readiness to change it. These factors may help us to determine the timing and content of treatment, or whether self-help groups or professional treatment are needed at all (Connors et al., 2013). Moreover, the stage may tell us what needs to be done to move the change process forward. For example, although coming to one's own conclusion that change is needed is the most effective foundation of long-term changes, external (to the individual) pushes to change (e.g., from a spouse or employer) may help the person to progress from the precontemplation stage to a later stage that is characterized by a more internally based desire to change (Ryan et al., 1995).

"Overcoming my addictions is the hardest thing I've ever done. I am still working on it. You have to want to learn it. It is a lot of change. You have to want to do it."

An individual recovering from heroin use

With problem recognition and a source of motivation to change, the next step is a decision about how change will occur. In turn, we consider problem resolution on one's own, the use of self-help groups, and the use of professional treatment services.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

15.2 Change without Formal Treatment

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

15-1 Discuss why it is difficult for psychologists to demonstrate the effectiveness of spontaneous remission

"The one thing I could never do is go to a formal rehab; for me to have to ask somebody else to help with a self-made problem, I would rather drink myself to death."

Individual who resolved his alcohol problem on his own (Tuchfeld, 1981, p. 631)

We do not have sufficient space to discuss the research on spontaneous remission of substance use disorders, but suffice it to say that it happens. In fact, it is generally agreed that more people with such problems resolve them on their own than by using self-help groups or professional treatment. How such changes are initiated is of interest and has been studied most extensively with alcohol use disorder. Sobell et al. (1993) reported what still is the best study methodologically of this question. Most of the people these researchers studied (57%) said their change resulted from weighing the benefits and costs of continuing their current alcohol use pattern. When the disadvantages seemed to grow in number and importance, change occurred. Notice how similar this is to what people in the contemplation stage are thought to do. Another 29% of the study participants reported that change was immediate, and they either could not recall what triggered the change or said it was a major event, such as a serious alcohol-related health problem.

It is worth saying more about the 29% of Sobell et al.'s (1993) research participants who reported that change was immediate. This group is poorly represented in current ideas and theories about behavior change and its maintenance. Yet, as the Sobell et al. study suggests, immediate change is far from rare; we see this theme in fiction (Charles Dickens's Scrooge) and often in our own experiences or those of family members and friends. In 2001, William Miller and Janet C'de Baca published a book called *Quantum Change* about sudden-change experiences. The book describes the "quantum change" experiences of people from all walks of life and what happened to them in the years afterward. Miller and C'de Baca offer some ideas and questions to stimulate the scientific study of how sudden change occurs, in the hope of beginning to close an important gap in our knowledge of behavior change.

"I think it helps living amongst other recovering addicts because you find yourself talking about your problems and getting advice on different issues and you are not alone."

Research participant in a study of a mutual help residential recovery program reported by Alvarez et al. (2009)

The most important point to take from this brief discussion is that spontaneous remission occurs and apparently occurs often. How often has not been determined, and to specify the prevalence would be extremely costly and complex. Nevertheless, even with our limited knowledge of it, the phenomenon of change without treatment has taught us a lot about change processes in general, including change that occurs with the use of treatment resources. Many individuals with a diagnosis of substance use disorder do eventually seek help from treatment resources (Kessler et al., 2001). We turn next to one of those resources: self-help groups.

15.3 Self-Help Groups

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

15-2 Evaluate the effectiveness of self-help groups and professional treatment for the treatment of substance use disorders

Peer self-help groups (another commonly used name is mutual help groups) are a major part of the treatment of substance use disorders. According to Emrick

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

et al., (1977), members of peer self-help groups perform therapeutic functions without professional credentials. A member of a peer self-help group might have training pertinent to conducting therapy, but such credentials are not used in performing group functions. Members of these groups all have some identified problem that is the focus of the group's therapeutic activity. The term *peer self-help* distinguishes these groups from those in which therapeutic agents (e.g., the group leader) are not identified as having the same problems as the clients. Therefore, through the peer self-help group, participants both give and receive help with their problems.

Although the peer self-help movement does not use professionally defined methods to help participants with their problems, professionals are not shunned. In fact, the professional community is welcome to join the peer self-help group in achieving common goals of helping people alleviate their problems (see, for example, Alcoholics Anonymous, 1972). Professionals and the self-help group have complementary functions. In practice, professionals who work in the treatment of substance use disorder often use relevant self-help groups (such as Alcoholics Anonymous for alcohol use disorder and Narcotics Anonymous for other drug use disorder) in a professionally run rehabilitation program and as part of aftercare planning. Indeed, many alcohol and drug treatment programs are organized around principles of peer self-help groups.

In discussing treatment of the substance use disorders, we must review peer self-help groups because of their popularity and influence. Peer self-help also has been a popular treatment of choice for other behaviors involving misuse: Weight Watchers and OAC (Obesity Action Coalition) for treatment of obesity, Smokers Anonymous for treatment of cigarette smoking, and Gamblers Anonymous for treatment of pathological gambling. According to National Survey on Drug Use and Health data, in 2015 a total of 846,000 individuals aged 12 or older received treatment for alcohol use disorder in a self-help group, and 884,000 individuals received treatment for an illicit drug use disorder. Those numbers represent the highest percentages (62.6% and 57.4%, respectively) among the treatment locations that were used (note that an individual could cite more than one location).

Alcoholics Anonymous

In this section, we briefly describe the peer self-help movement organized for helping individuals identified as having a severe alcohol use disorder—Alcoholics Anonymous (AA). Because of space limitations, we cannot describe in detail one of the major self-help groups for the treatment of drug problems, called Narcotics Anonymous (NA). NA is analogous to AA, however, and what we know about AA can be applied readily to NA.

Emrick et al., (1977) called AA the prototype self-help group because it is the oldest, established in 1935. It has been the basis for the development of other self-help movements for treatments in other problem areas. The AA movement began when two individuals, Dr. Bob and Bill W., helped each other to maintain sobriety. From Ohio, they spread their idea that people with alcohol use disorder need to help each other. Today, AA is an international organization. A few alcohol self-help groups, such as Alateen and Al-Anon, have been derived from AA. Alateen's purpose is to help teenagers who have a parent with alcohol use disorder; Al-Anon generally is aimed at spouses and others close to those with alcohol use disorder.

The bases of the AA "program" are self-help recovery through following the Twelve Steps and group participation. The core of AA is the model of recovery outlined in the Twelve Steps, which are listed in Table 15.1. In the first step, AA

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 15.1 The Twelve Steps of Alcoholics Anonymous

1. We admitted we were powerless over alcohol—that our lives had become unmanageable.
2. Came to believe that a Power greater than ourselves could restore us to sanity.
3. Made a decision to turn our will and our lives over to the care of God as we understood Him.
4. Made a searching and fearless moral inventory of ourselves.
5. Admitted to God, to ourselves, and to another human being the exact nature of our wrongs.
6. Were entirely ready to have God remove all these defects of character.
7. Humbly asked Him to remove our shortcomings.
8. Made a list of all persons we had harmed, and became willing to make amends to them all.
9. Made direct amends to such people wherever possible, except when to do so would injure them or others.
10. Continued to take personal inventory and when we were wrong promptly admitted it.
11. Sought through prayer and meditation to improve our conscious contact with God as we understood Him, praying only for knowledge of His will for us and the power to carry that out.
12. Having had a spiritual awakening as the result of these steps, we tried to carry this message to other alcoholics, and to practice these principles in all our affairs.

Note: The Twelve Steps are reprinted with permission of Alcoholics Anonymous World Services, Inc. ("AAWS"). Permission to reprint the Twelve Steps does not mean that AAWS has reviewed or approved the contents of this publication, or that AAWS necessarily agrees with the views expressed herein. AA is a program of recovery from alcohol misuse only—use of the Twelve Steps in connection with programs and activities that are patterned after AA, but which address other problems, or in any other non-AA context, does not imply otherwise.

absolutely dismisses the notion that people with alcohol use disorder can control their drinking or can ever reach that position. The beginning of recovery occurs when those with alcohol use disorder admit to themselves as being powerless over alcohol, that without alcohol a return to health is possible, and that with it, the downward spiral to self-destruction continues. One cause of controversy is the frequent reference to God in the Twelve Steps. An immediate reaction to this is that AA is only for those with alcohol use disorder who accept Western religious beliefs. However, AA takes pains to accent the phrase "God as we understood Him," which means people may interpret "God" or "Higher Power" as they wish. The importance of referring to a Supreme Being is to emphasize that people with alcohol use disorder have lost control over alcohol and their lives and must enlist the assistance of a greater power in recovery. A final point is that the Twelve Steps recovery program is oriented toward action, both in self-examination and change and in behavior toward others.

"I am the black sheep of the family. I came to Alcoholics Anonymous and found the rest of the herd."

Quote from an AA meeting participant

recovery
In the addictions field, changes back to health in physical, psychological, spiritual, and social functioning. It is often believed that recovery is a lifetime process that requires total abstinence from alcohol and nonprescribed drugs.

The Twelve Steps are a guide designed for people to follow largely by themselves on the road to **recovery**. In addition to the bases of the steps, there are other parts to the AA program. One of these is group participation. Two major types are discussion meetings and speakers' meetings. In a discussion meeting, the chairperson of the group tells their personal history of alcohol misuse and recovery from it, and then

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the meeting is opened for members' discussion of alcohol misuse and related matters. In a speakers' meeting, a couple of members recite their personal histories of alcohol misuse and recovery. In open speakers' meetings, anyone who is interested may attend; closed meetings are only for those with alcohol use disorder.

> *"I didn't want to go to A.A. I had lost a lot of friends to A.A.!"*
>
> Quote from an AA meeting participant

One purpose of group meetings is to aid recovery through peer identification and learning from the experience of others. Building social relationships that do not revolve around alcohol represents an entirely new social life. The importance of forming sober social relationships may be seen in various AA functions such as "Sober Anniversaries" (the first day of a member's current episode of continuous sobriety) and "Sober Dances" (dances without alcohol or drugs).

Other major activities in the AA program are "Twelfth Stepping" and sponsorship. Twelfth Stepping refers to the twelfth of the Twelve Steps, which involves members reaching out to others with alcohol use disorder in a time of need. A member may help those actively misusing alcohol begin the AA program or help current AA members return to sobriety after they have begun drinking again. Sponsorship is similar to Twelfth Stepping, but there are important differences. First, sponsorship involves a stable one-to-one relationship between a member with more sobriety (the sponsor) and one with less (the sponsee). Another important difference is that the sponsor helps the sponsee in ways such as taking the newer member's "inventory" (looking at what is behind a person's behavior) when asked, guiding an individual to AA literature, such as the *Big Book* and *Twelve Steps and Twelve Traditions*, and explaining the AA program to family and others close to the sponsee. The sponsor–sponsee relationship is more varied and more enduring than that involved in Twelfth Stepping. AA members view both types of activities as essential to their continued sobriety.

What has been described for AA is directly applicable to Narcotics Anonymous (NA). NA's organization and program of recovery are derived directly from AA's, including the use of the Steps to Recovery Program, group meetings, and the

David Harry Stewart/Stone/Getty Images

Attendance at Alcoholics Anonymous meetings is the most popular self-help method for changing drinking behaviors in the United States.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

sponsor–sponsee relationship. As the name implies, NA evolved to help people misusing opiate drugs, usually heroin. However, people who identify their primary problem as misuse of drugs of any type other than alcohol use NA instead of AA.

"God grant me the serenity to accept the things I cannot change, the courage to change the things I can, and the wisdom to know the difference."

"The Serenity Prayer," a guidepost to living along with the Twelve Steps, in AA and other twelve-step programs

In summary, the AA program of recovery has been the cornerstone of a self-help movement that has been of value to many and that is reaching increasing numbers of people. It is worth mentioning again that both AA and NA may be, and are, used alone as programs of treatment, but many members of these organizations began treatment or concurrently are receiving treatment from professional sources.

Other Self-Help Groups

We have spent so much space on AA and similar programs because they are by far the most prevalent and influential self-help treatments for alcohol and drug use disorders. Perhaps stimulated by AA's success, other types of self-help groups for alcohol and drug problems have been organized. One important example is Women for Sobriety (WFS), which began in 1975 (Women for Sobriety, 1985). WFS groups are now available throughout the United States and in other countries as well (go to www.womenforsobriety.org).

WFS agrees with AA that alcohol and drug use disorders are progressive illnesses. Complete abstinence from these substances is required to arrest the illnesses, but they cannot be cured. Also similar to AA, WFS members meet in groups (weekly) that a moderator leads. The WFS "program" that is the core topic of the discussion groups consists of 13 statements about spiritual and emotional change and growth.

It may not be clear why WFS required a new name, because it seems like a slight variant of AA. The reason is that the focus of WFS is the special psychological and social needs and concerns that women face in achieving and maintaining sobriety. However, AA in general does not share this focus. WFS suggests that its program may be used alone to maintain sobriety, in conjunction with professional services, or in conjunction with AA.

A self-help group that claims to be based on methods that are scientifically validated is Self-Management and Recovery Training (SMART) (Rajacic, 1997; see www.smartrecovery.org). SMART groups usually have 4 to 12 members and are led by a "coordinator," someone who has maintained sobriety for an appreciable amount of time and who believes in SMART principles. Coordinators also may be individuals who have never experienced problems related to their alcohol or drug use (Fletcher, 2001). SMART groups are conducted to make people aware in four key areas: (1) motives for using alcohol and other drugs and for stopping such use, (2) beliefs that can help or be irrational and hinder a person's attempt to stop drinking, (3) emotions, and (4) behavior. SMART helps people combat irrational beliefs that are obstacles in quitting substance use, after Albert Ellis's system of psychotherapy called rational emotive behavior therapy. Then SMART helps people cope with feelings such as fear and anger without drinking or using other drugs. Work on thoughts and feelings must be followed by changes in behavior for success in addressing an alcohol problem. Behavior change is said to occur by engaging in activities that are enjoyable that do not involve substance use.

"Accept your backsliding as common—as something that happens to many people who at first improve emotionally and then fall back."

How to Deal with Back Slide, SMART recovery

The last self-help group we discuss is SOS, which stands for Secular Organizations for Sobriety or, as an alternative, Save Our Selves. This self-help support group began in 1986, as an alternative to AA. As in SMART, the SOS alternative has no emphasis on spirituality or higher powers in staying sober. Instead, individuals are viewed as being in charge of making rational decisions about their use of alcohol and drugs. SOS now has about 20,000 members worldwide, primarily in the United States and Europe (www.sossobriety.org).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Like AA, SOS uses peer support group meetings as the vehicle for staying sober. Groups generally have 10 to 12 members and meet weekly for an hour to an hour and a half, but other procedures are possible, as the parent organization is flexible regarding the schedule and format of individual support group meetings. These meetings have a rotating leader, who is a group member. Groups are free, but members may make donations to sustain the group financially.

The core principle of SOS is that sobriety—abstinence from alcohol and drugs—is maintained "one day at a time," an expression well known to AA members. The "Sobriety Priority" program is the philosophy that underlies SOS, with these major points: (1) acknowledgment of one's substance use disorder as a disease and a habit; (2) acceptance of one's problem; and (3) placement of sobriety as the number one priority, separate from other problems or concerns in life. These three points may be viewed as analogous to AA's Twelve Steps. In SOS, groups are seen as safe places where members can discuss their concerns and ways that they stay sober. No limit is placed on how long people may stay in a group or on the number of meetings they attend.

Self-help groups are an extremely important resource that people use to change their patterns of alcohol or other drug use. Self-help groups may be used alone or in conjunction with professional treatment services, which is our next topic. Before we go into our discussion of what happens in such treatment, however, it is important for you to know something about the ideas (models and theories) behind it. You have seen in our review of self-help groups how beliefs about the causes of substance use disorders greatly influenced the content of the self-help group and what participation in it involved. The same is true for professional treatments.

15.4 Models of Substance Use Disorders

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

15-3 Compare and contrast the five model categories of substance use disorder with the biopsychosocial model

In Chapter 9, we discussed at length how many different models and theories have been championed to explain the causes of alcohol use disorder. These conceptual views have spanned biological, psychological, and social/environmental domains of variables; tended to be heavy on one of the three variable domains and light or silent on the other two; and often explained something about the development of alcohol dependence, but not everything (Miller & Hester, 1995).

> *"Society and its agencies have always had a consistent response, in that in the same breath they are able to say the homeless alcoholic is 'sad, mad, and bad.'"*
>
> Timothy Cook, 1975 (Orford, 1985, p. 292)

To make learning about these models and theories easier, we have organized them into five major categories (with specific variations within the categories): moral model, American disease model, biological model, social learning model, and sociocultural model. Each model has implications for designing treatment of substance use disorders. Our discussion is based heavily on chapters by Miller and Hester (1989, 2002).

Five Model Categories

The first category is the moral model, in which individuals are seen as personally responsible for problems they may incur from their use of drugs and alcohol. That

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

is, the development of a substance use disorder is seen as the product of a series of personal decisions or choices to use those substances in a way that is harmful. This perspective implies that choices other than to use alcohol and drugs were available to the person but were not taken. Depending on the variation of the model, treatment consists of either spiritual or legal intervention.

The American disease model is especially important because of its widespread prevalence and prominence in the United States. It is also the foundation of Alcoholics Anonymous and other self-help groups. In the American disease model (it is called American because it is not nearly so popular in other countries), dependence on alcohol and drugs is viewed as the product of a progressive, irreversible disease. The disease is described as a merging of physical, psychological, and spiritual causes. The treatment that follows from the disease model is to identify people who have the disease, confront them with it, help them to accept that they have it, and persuade them to abstain from alcohol and other drugs.

In the biological model, dependence on alcohol or other drugs is viewed as the result of genetic or physiological processes. Theories about how the pharmacological action of drugs themselves in the brain can lead to dependence also fall under the biological umbrella. The treatment most clearly implied from biological models is to advise biologically at-risk people of their risk for developing a disorder, and perhaps to counsel those who are at risk to avoid alcohol and other drugs altogether.

Social learning theory is the position that alcohol and drug use disorders are the result of complex learning from an interaction of individuals within their environments. Situations and psychological processes are most important. For example, harmful substance use patterns may develop from direct experiences in using alcohol and drugs, from modeling the behavior of other individuals when they drink or use drugs in a harmful way, from false beliefs about the powers of alcohol and drugs in helping to get through difficult times, or from a failure to learn ways to cope with stress without alcohol or drug use. Treatment follows straightforwardly from this conception: Arrange the person's environment so that nonharmful use (including abstinence) of psychoactive substances is reinforced and harmful use is not, or is punished (Higgins et al., 1991); display individuals ("models") engaging in desirable, legally sanctioned drug use patterns (use of psychoactive drugs other than for medical purposes never is viewed positively by the greater society); teach facts about the actions of alcohol and drugs on the body and how humans experience their effects; and teach ways to cope with stress that do not involve substance use.

According to the sociocultural model, subcultures and societies shape alcohol and drug use patterns and consequences. Examples are norms and rules that a subculture has for alcohol use (such as when it is appropriate, as at adult dinner parties, and when it is not, as at work) and laws about substance use (such as what drugs are legal and what drugs are not). The treatment that follows from this perspective involves interventions that affect large groups of people or society in general. For example, taxing sales of alcoholic beverages is an effort in part to control their availability and accessibility. Another example of a sociocultural intervention is the classification of drugs by "schedule" status (see Chapter 2).

> *"I had to accept that I was an alcoholic, that was the main thing. I think you've got to. But I try not to say that I'm an alcoholic. I prefer to say that it's a disease I've got."*
>
> Paul Gascoigne

You can see that the five major models and theories of substance use disorder reflect a wide array of perspectives. You also might notice that, in general, the models do not overlap much. A summary of the five models and their implications for treatment is presented in Table 15.2.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 15.2 The Five Major Models of the Causes of Substance Use Disorders and Their Implications for Treatment

Model	Cause(s)	Treatment
Moral	The making of personal choices to use alcohol and drugs in a harmful way, when other choices could have been made	Punish legally or intervene spiritually.
American disease	Progressive, irreversible diseases that are the products of a mix of physical, psychological, and spiritual causes	Identify those with the disease, confront them with it, and persuade them to abstain from drugs and alcohol.
Biological	Genetic or physiological processes	Advise people at risk for problems of their risk status and counsel them to avoid alcohol and drugs.
Social learning	Complex learning based on the interaction of the individuals with their environments	Arrange the environment to reinforce nonabuse of substances; do not reinforce, or punish, abuse; provide models of appropriate substance use; debunk myths about alcohol and drugs; teach nondrug alternatives for coping with stress.
Sociocultural	Practices and rules of subcultures and societies	Intervene in ways that affect large groups or society in general (e.g., drug use laws and alcohol taxes).

Source: From R. K. Hester and W. R. Miller (1995), *Handbook of Alcoholism Treatment Approaches: Effective Alternatives*, 2nd ed. Published by Allyn and Bacon. Copyright ©1995 by Pearson Education. Reprinted by the permission of the publisher.

Biopsychosocial Model

If no one model or theory of causes of substance use disorders proves adequate, as is the case, then there must be some way of proceeding with treatment design. We could be atheoretical in our efforts, but that approach tends not to be too productive. Instead, we can combine the disciplines (biological/medical–psychological–social/environmental) into one perspective. As you saw in Chapter 9, the term biopsychosocial reflects an attempt to simultaneously take into account three major variable domains that are known to influence human health and behavior. You will recognize again that this combined perspective follows from the theme of the drug experience and its determinants that we have articulated and developed since the first chapter of this text.

It is no secret that taking a biopsychosocial perspective of the causes of the substance use disorders leads us to a new level of complexity. But drugs and human behavior is a complex subject that requires complex analysis for its understanding. Because of its complexity and recency, the biopsychosocial viewpoint is just that, a viewpoint, at this time—it is not precise or developed enough to be called a theory. Our premise is that this perspective has been providing and will continue to provide a guide for the kind of research that will find explanations of the causes of substance use disorders.

REVIEW

1. Draw a flowchart illustrating the model for events that occur during the course of treatment for substance use disorders.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

15.5 Professional Treatment: Assessment and Goals

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

15-4 Describe the importance of assessment in professional treatment for substance use disorders

"In therapy, I see myself in the mirror differently."

Ricky Williams

When individuals go to professionals for help to change their substance use, a process of assessment and treatment goal setting is typically initiated. Models of etiology influence this part of the treatment experience as they do the treatment content. We also should note that discussing assessment and goals here is not meant to imply they are not relevant for self-change or self-help groups. Although no systematic, formally structured assessment occurs in those contexts, there has been some type of appraisal, however unsystematic or subtle, that a problem exists. Furthermore, goals are set that define the desired end of the change process. Again, such goals may not be explicitly documented or articulated, but they direct change. Note how this general concept of the need to set goals to direct change is incorporated in the stages of change model.

An overarching assumption in professional settings is that good assessment underlies good treatment. When we say *assessment* in this context, we mean the use of mostly formal (e.g., standard psychological tests) but sometimes informal (e.g., casual observation of a patient's behavior on a treatment unit) procedures to measure some aspect of a person's functioning. Assessment of people who appear for drug and alcohol treatment may include several different procedures.

Measuring qualities or characteristics of a person to design treatment means that treatment is tailored to the person. This is the same as matching the treatment to the individual. Matching concerns decisions about what treatment choices are preferred for different individuals to produce the best results. Along these lines, a major task of assessment and matching is to help define or specify treatment goals. Treatment goals refer to the purposes or aims of a treatment, which in general are to "get better." However, that is too general to be of much use in guiding a treatment. We can be more specific. For example, in drug and alcohol treatment, everybody agrees that the person's use of drugs and alcohol must change. In the United States, that typically means a change to complete abstinence from these substances, although we will see that there has been some controversy over whether all people require a goal of total abstinence from alcohol.

There may be goals of alcohol and drug treatment besides a person's substance use. It may be important for changes to occur in an individual's family, work, and social functioning. This is because in virtually all people who appear for substance use disorder treatment, their use of alcohol or other drugs has affected other parts of their lives. Those changes in turn may affect a person's use of alcohol and drugs. It is important to see that the influences of substance use on different areas of life, and the reverse, are consistent with a biopsychosocial model. Substance use may be affected by multiple and varied factors, and the use of alcohol or other drugs may have multiple and varied consequences. These consequences may in turn affect future substance use.

"Wouldn't stick to goals if they were forced on me; you have to make up your own mind."

Patient involved in "guided self-change" treatment (Sobell & Sobell, 1993, p. 159)

How these multiple influences work in the development, maintenance, and change in substance use tends to differ for each person. As a result, a person's goals for

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

treatment must be tailored to that person's specific, unique circumstances in order to maximize treatment benefits. Professionals working in drug and alcohol treatment call this "individualizing" treatment goals, and you might recognize this idea as similar to current interest in the concept and application of patient-treatment "matching" and "**precision medicine**."

precision medicine Medical care designed to enhance therapeutic effectiveness for specific groups of patients, particularly by using genetic data or genetic "profiling."

Abstinence or Moderation?

Before we leave the topic of treatment goals, it is important to discuss a specific question about goals relating to alcohol use. Traditionally, and still predominantly in the United States and Canada, the assumption is that the goal of treatment for alcohol use disorder is abstinence from alcohol (and recreational use of other drugs). This applies to self-help treatments as well as to professional treatment services; indeed, AA and other self-help groups are adamant that abstinence is essential to a person's long-term improved functioning. However, a number of reports in the literature both on self-change and on treatment have stated that individuals identified as having alcohol use disorder can modify their alcohol use to a stable, moderate level.

These findings have created and still create heated controversy. The controversy stems from the disease model of alcohol use disorder, which implies that lifelong abstinence is the only safe course toward its amelioration. However, the need for abstinence typically is not questioned in the treatment of other drug problems. It is likely that abstinence from nonprescribed or illicit use of other drugs is the only acceptable goal, because the drugs are illegal, and society has a strong reaction against illicit drug use.

The question of moderation as a drinking goal is of more than academic importance. Knowledge about different drinking outcomes would increase our understanding of the causes and course of alcohol use disorder and improve the results of our treatment efforts through better individualization of treatment goals. We do know that moderate drinking outcomes happen, but knowledge beyond that is sketchier. It seems to make the most sense to frame this question the same way we framed treatment goals in general: They should reflect the individual's specific, unique circumstances.

Research does help somewhat in telling us what are the best "circumstances" for a goal of moderate drinking. Overall, it seems that less severe alcohol dependence (in *DSM*-IV terms, or in terms of physical dependence on alcohol), an individual's belief that moderate drinking is possible, younger age, employment, and psychological and social stability provide the "backdrop" for the feasibility of a moderate drinking outcome (Rosenberg, 1993). Some of these factors are not static (such as beliefs about moderate drinking), however, and it would be essential to monitor them closely over time to make sustained moderate drinking most likely.

"Complete abstinence is easier than perfect moderation."
St. Augustine

Moderate drinking outcomes will continue to stimulate debate and research for years to come. The best result of this activity would be a better understanding of the course of alcohol use disorder and the creation of better treatment service delivery. This result is assuming greater practical importance as programs that support moderate drinking outcome goals become more common and accessible. For example, the Internet has announcements and descriptions of moderate drinking programs in the United States; see, for example, www.moderatedrinking.com. It is also important to note that, with recent legalization of marijuana in some U.S. states, the same considerations about moderate use goals that have been debated

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and researched regarding alcohol apply to marijuana use in the treatment of individuals in those settings.

Harm Reduction

In our discussion of the treatment of cigarette smoking in Chapter 7, we introduced the idea of *harm reduction*. To remind you of the definition, harm reduction refers to an emphasis on reducing the negative consequences of using a substance rather than on reducing the quantity or frequency of its consumption. In practice, harm reduction programs may encourage lighter consumption, but the focus is on reducing the harmful consequences that may ensue from substance use (Single, 1995). Common examples of applying the harm reduction idea to substance use among the general public are using a designated driver when social occasions involve alcohol consumption and training bartenders to recognize signs of intoxication in their patrons and to stop serving them alcohol accordingly.

> *"We're all allowed to deal with the issue of drinking the way each of us wants to. If a guy wants to reduce his drinking, so let him try; AA stands for unconditional abstinence only; but with us, everyone makes his own program. I do recommend abstinence for all of those who have reached an advanced stage of alcoholism. That way you certainly get away with less distress and damage."*
>
> Member of the Tampere A-Guild, a Finnish self-help organization (Alasuutari, 1992, p. 130)

Harm reduction is an idea that originally was applied in the treatment of those using illicit drugs. For example, offering people clean syringes to avoid the transmission of HIV or other viruses follows directly from a harm reduction approach. This idea also is relevant to alcohol treatment and stands in contrast to zero-tolerance or abstinence-only approaches. Harm reduction in some cases offers advantages over an abstinence-only goal. For instance, a harm reduction approach may be valuable in encouraging college students or other young adults to consider modifying the circumstances or quantity of their alcohol consumption, whereas an abstinence-only approach would be far less likely to have that result (Baer et al., 2001). Similarly, harm reduction approaches are useful for bringing into treatment those with substance use disorder who claim they do not want to stop using drugs entirely but who may be interested in reducing the problems that their drug use causes them.

As in the application of the harm reduction model to the treatment of cigarette smoking, there is considerable resistance in the United States to widespread application of the model to the treatment of the substance use disorders. As you might have guessed, the resistance is based at least in part in the reluctance to "condone" the use of alcohol or other drugs, even in individuals who show no signs of physical dependence on them. It is essential to recognize that the harm reduction model neither condones nor censures substance use. Rather, it takes the pragmatic view that some individuals in a society will use alcohol or other drugs, and the most important goal for these individuals and the society they live in is to reduce the frequency and severity of any negative consequences that may follow from such use.

After assessment and specification of treatment goals, the next step in professional treatment is to make the best use of that information to place individuals in the best treatment environment to meet their needs. Two levels of such matching may be considered: the treatment setting and the services that are delivered within a setting. We turn now to review both of these, first for alcohol treatment and then for other drug treatment. We also comment on how effective alcohol and drug treatments are. When we say drug treatment, we mean treatment for drugs of misuse, such as the opiates, stimulants, and depressant drugs. Nicotine is not covered in this chapter, because we discussed the treatment of nicotine dependence in Chapter 7.

REVIEW

1. Identify three factors that could motivate an individual to address their patterns of substance misuse.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

15.6 Alcohol Treatment Settings and Services

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

15-5 Summarize the use of pharmacological treatment for substance use disorders

15-6 Evaluate the effect of economic factors on the accessibility of alcohol and drug treatment programs

Types of Settings and Services

The settings and services of treatment for alcohol use disorder could be classified in a number of ways. We use the classification that Armor et al., published in their well-known 1976 Rand Corporation study of alcohol misuse treatment in the United States. The settings that Armor et al. described are still widely used (Galanter et al., 2015).

Armor et al., (1976, p. 102) identified the general treatment settings of hospital setting, intermediate setting, and outpatient setting. Within each of these settings, specific treatment services are offered. Inpatients in the hospital setting live there for the duration of their treatment, and their care is similar to that given to people hospitalized for physical problems. For example, nurses play a large role in treatment, and much weight is given to the medical aspects of alcohol use disorder. On the other hand, many of the specific alcohol rehabilitation methods followed in hospital-based programs are **psychological treatment** in origin. The emphasis of these nonmedical treatment methods is on learning about the self and the environment in which we live, how they alter the development of patterns and consequences of alcohol use, and how people can change both their self and their environment to produce desired changes in their patterns of substance use. (Similar treatment methods are followed in inpatient "freestanding" alcohol programs. These programs do not operate within the hospital setting and typically are "for profit"; that is, they need to make a profit to stay in business.) Partial hospital care occurs in the hospital setting, but the patient[1] is not in the setting for 24 hours a day. Typically, treatment programs of this type are designed for 4- to 8-hour schedules, usually in the daytime or evening. The last type of service in the hospital setting is detoxification, mainly involving the medical management of alcohol withdrawal symptoms. Care mostly consists of the management of medications given to treat withdrawal, although counseling is available, especially referral to additional treatment services.

psychological treatment
Treatment geared to changing emotions, thoughts, or behavior without the use of medications or other physical or biological means.

Within the intermediate treatment setting are halfway house services. Halfway houses usually are designed as **milieu treatment** settings. (In milieu treatment, the organization and structure of a setting are designed to be therapeutic.) These settings are the patients' residence during treatment. Other treatment services usually available include **counseling**, **psychotherapy**, and a strong orientation toward the use of self-help groups, usually Alcoholics Anonymous (AA).

milieu treatment
Treatment in which the organization and structure of a setting are designed to change behavior.

counseling
In alcohol and drug treatment, counselors are specially trained professionals who perform a variety of treatment activities, including assessment, education, and individual, marital, and family counseling.

psychotherapy
Typically, conversation between a specially trained individual (therapist) and another person (or family) that is intended to change patterns of behavior, thoughts, or feelings in that person (or family).

[1]In the treatment of psychiatric disorders, including substance use disorders, professionals are inconsistent in their use of the words *patient* and *client* to refer to individuals who present themselves for treatment. Underlying this disagreement are beliefs about the utility of a medical model as a guide to understanding the psychiatric disorders. In addition, often what term is chosen depends on the setting of treatment. For example, individuals in hospital inpatient settings are more likely to be referred to as patients, as compared with people who receive treatment in outpatient clinics. In this chapter, we use the terms *patient* and *client* as synonyms to refer to individuals who are in formal treatment for their alcohol or drug problems.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The outpatient setting is perhaps the most idiosyncratic of the three that Armor et al. (1976) described. Two general distinctions of treatment services are made: individual and group. In individual treatment, patients work with a professional in a one-to-one relationship. Similarly, "individual" couples or families may work with a professional in a planned course of treatment. Hester and Delaney (1997) described an outpatient program that was designed for individuals whose drinking is relatively heavy (compared to population norms) but who are not dependent on alcohol. The intervention is called Behavioral Self-Control Program for Windows (BSCPWIN) and involves delivery of a drinking moderation program over eight weekly sessions by interaction with a personal computer program. This individual treatment program is based on both social learning theory and motivational enhancement principles; it differs from the typical outpatient program in its use of a personal computer to deliver the intervention and the consequent use of minimal therapist time. Because therapist time is greatly reduced, the potential for reducing treatment costs is considerable.

Hester and Delaney's (1997) work is an early example of how outpatient alcohol treatment (and other drug treatment, though markedly less so than for alcohol treatment) is becoming more and more idiosyncratic as computer technology becomes more advanced. Prominent in this regard is the growing number of outpatient treatments being evaluated that present the content of the intervention on the Internet and mobile devices (Cunningham, 2009; Marsch, 2011). (Note that technology also has influenced the treatment of nicotine addiction; see Dallery & Raiff, 2011.) These methods have the potential of being acceptable to people who, for various reasons, are not receptive to face-to-face, in-person (with a counselor or therapist) treatment. Furthermore, they have the potential of reducing the costs of delivering treatment considerably as well as reaching a much larger potential client base (e.g., by greatly increasing treatment access for people in rural areas). Finally, it is also important to recognize that technology-based interventions can be and often are used in conjunction with traditional delivery (i.e., face-to-face) of treatment of alcohol use disorder.

"I'm a recovering alcoholic so I should be home."
Kenny Hickey

Group outpatient treatment usually involves five to 10 individuals meeting together in regular sessions led by a professional. Much of what helps group members to change theoretically stems from the way they interact with each other and form relationships. The leader's job is to guide this process and to keep group members on productive tracks of discussion. Groups often are organized around specific themes, which govern the types of people who join each group and what they discuss. Examples of themes are adults whose parents had alcohol use disorder and ways to prevent a recurrence (relapse) of alcohol use disorder once an individual is in "remission" or in "recovery." Other groups are general and have only the theme of maintaining abstinence from substance use. Interestingly, in this context, some Internet-based interventions also involve a "support network," not unlike a therapy group, that may or may not have a network moderator or "leader" (Cunningham et al., 2011).

Individual and group treatments may be conducted by workers with different types of training in mental health treatment. They may be "paraprofessionals," working in direct patient care and not possessing a formal degree, and they may be professionals, who are physicians (typically psychiatrists), clinical psychologists, social workers, clinical nurse specialists, and certified alcohol (or other drug) counselors. In fact, people in any of the professional disciplines also may earn certification as alcohol and drug counselors.

Outpatient care also varies in intensity; that is, some patients may have program contact only monthly or less often, with little structure in schedule, and other outpatient programs may be similar to what we described for the partial hospital setting. When such programs are not in the hospital, they typically are called day (or evening) treatment programs.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

It is somewhat artificial to assign the settings for treatment of alcohol (and, for that matter, drug) use disorder to discrete categories, because a treatment episode for many people involves participation in more than one treatment setting. A common course of treatment includes detoxification from alcohol and later referral to an inpatient or outpatient treatment program. Or, individuals may begin treatment by completing an inpatient intensive rehabilitation program and then engage in outpatient treatment as part of an **aftercare** plan. Other combinations are possible, each suited to individual needs. At the end of this chapter, we discuss how trends in health insurance coverage have led to a major shift to the outpatient setting for treatment of alcohol use disorders, in contrast to earlier emphasis on inpatient treatment.

aftercare
In alcohol and drug treatment, therapeutic activities following the completion of a formal treatment program.

Categories of treatment settings and services can give only an outline of the actual treatment activities that occur in alcohol programs. It is difficult to characterize alcohol programs except in the broadest terms. What is called individual or group counseling or psychotherapy may refer to many specific activities. The activities can occur in any of the treatment settings described, with some settings having greater latitude than others. For example, the smallest range of treatment activities take place in settings devoted primarily to detoxification. In contrast, outpatient or inpatient treatment programs can include many different activities that are called treatment, including medical care to a limited degree and pharmacotherapy.

Pharmacological Treatment

Although our discussion of alcohol treatment has emphasized nonmedical interventions, drugs are commonly used in the treatment of alcohol use disorder. This practice is known as *pharmacotherapy*. In discussing pharmacotherapy, we distinguish between detoxification and postdetoxification treatment. Detoxification of people who are physically dependent on alcohol often involves the use of drugs in the medical management of withdrawal, although there are drug-free approaches to detoxification. These latter approaches, as noted in Chapter 9, are called "social detoxification," in which a person's withdrawal is monitored by professional staff in a treatment setting, but no drugs are administered, if at all possible. There is little controversy about using drugs in managing acute withdrawal (Mayo-Smith, 1997), but there are some disagreements over the use of chemicals in treatment activities subsequent to detoxification.

The first type of pharmacotherapy for alcohol use disorder uses compounds that alter the metabolism of alcohol if it is consumed. Peachey and Annis (1985) reviewed these compounds, which they called the alcohol-sensitizing drugs. The most popular of these are **disulfiram** (trade name Antabuse) and carbimide (Temposil). Antabuse has been in use in the United States since 1948. Temposil, on the other hand, is not available in the United States and is used less frequently overall than Antabuse (NIAAA, 2000). Use of both agents in treatment is based on similar assumptions regarding the psychological effects of their chemical action.

disulfiram
A drug that interferes with the metabolism of alcohol so that people soon feel very ill if they drink while on a regimen of disulfiram. The drug may be used as part of a treatment program for alcohol dependence.

The chemical action of alcohol-sensitizing drugs results in an increase of acetaldehyde in the blood level after alcohol consumption (see Chapter 9 on the metabolizing of alcohol). The consequence of the increased acetaldehyde depends on how much alcohol is drunk. For people on therapeutic doses of disulfiram or carbimide, one or two drinks will produce flushing, tachycardia (excessively rapid heartbeat, usually a pulse rate of over 100 beats per minute), tachypnea (excessively rapid respiration), sensations of warmth, heart palpitations, and shortness of breath. These effects usually last about 30 minutes and are not life threatening. If larger quantities of alcohol are consumed, however, the reaction may include intense palpitations, dyspnea (difficult

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

or labored breathing), nausea, vomiting, and headache, all of which may last more than 90 minutes. In some people, this more severe reaction has induced shock, loss of consciousness, or death due to myocardial infarction (Peachey & Annis, 1985, p. 202).

The unpleasant effects of drinking while on a regimen of the alcohol-sensitizing drugs are the reason such drugs are used in treatment. The assumption is that fear of experiencing the unpleasant effects will deter people from drinking and will build a learned aversion to alcohol. If a person on disulfiram or carbimide tests out the effects of drinking, the same learned aversion will proceed more rapidly because of the addition of experiencing direct, as well as imagined, negative consequences. The learned aversion to alcohol underlies eventual avoidance of it. When alcohol-sensitizing drugs are used, they are applied as part of a rehabilitative program that is concerned with the physical, psychological, and social problems that tend to accompany heavy drinking.

A second type of pharmacotherapy for alcohol use disorder is based in biological theories of etiology, which as we saw earlier focus on abnormalities or changes in brain chemistry as causes or consequences of substance use disorder. Such theories imply that a correction of the abnormal brain chemistry is essential to alleviating the substance use problem. From a broader perspective, including a biological component to treatment is entirely compatible with the biopsychosocial approach to drug use and its modification that this text takes. Pharmacological agents also may be applied as part of programs that are not derived from any particular model of alcohol use disorder, simply if it is believed that such agents are effective (Brewer, 1996).

In recent years, the major advances that have been made in understanding the biological bases of substance misuse have resulted in the development and evaluation of pharmacotherapies for alcohol use disorders. Table 15.3 shows the drugs that have current FDA approval in the United States for the treatment of alcohol use disorders. You can see that the pharmacological agents have diverse biological actions, and some of the drugs are thought to act on the brain in different ways. Besides the FDA-approved compounds highlighted in Table 15.3, drugs currently showing promise in clinical trials for treatment of alcohol use disorder include topiramate, baclofen, ondansetron, olanzepine, and quetiapine (Mooney & McCance-Katz, 2016; Swift & Leggio, 2009).

Effectiveness of Alcohol Treatment

After reading about a variety of settings and methods that fall into the category of alcohol treatment, you are probably wondering about the effectiveness of alcohol treatment. When we talk about treatment effectiveness, we refer to the relationship between participating in some treatment and achieving some treatment goal.

TABLE 15.3 FDA-Approved Pharmacotherapies for Alcohol Use Disorders

Pharmacotherapy	Hypothesized Action
Naltrexone (oral, and injectable extended release)	Works as an opiate antagonist
Acamprosate	Indirect partial agonist of the NMDA receptor and antagonist of metabotropic glutamate receptors
Disulfiram (Antabuse)	Interferes with the metabolism of alcohol

Source: Based on Koob et al., (2009); Lingford-Hughes et al., (2004); NIAAA (2000); Swift and Leggio (2009).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Therefore, treatment effectiveness concerns whether and how treatment participation causes different outcomes. Evaluation of the effectiveness of treatment is called **treatment outcome research**.

treatment outcome research
Research designed to show a causal relationship between undergoing a treatment and some physical, psychological, or social change.

In this section, we do not cover detoxification services because they are not considered rehabilitation. Rather, they should be viewed as effective in managing safe alcohol withdrawal but not in providing rehabilitation beyond that. When we discuss the effectiveness of treatment aimed at rehabilitation, we must take into account the rate of spontaneous remission of alcohol use disorder (a synonymous term commonly used in the literature is *natural recovery*). As you might guess, to show that a treatment is worth its cost requires a demonstration that it helps significantly beyond the rate of spontaneous remission. This reasoning is sound, but it is extremely difficult to determine the rates of spontaneous remission. People who resolve their problems without treatment are the ones with whom clinicians and researchers are least likely to have contact. Professionals instead tend to see people who are referred to a formal treatment setting. We noted earlier in this chapter that making a credible effort to determine the prevalence of spontaneous remission of alcohol use disorder would be complex and costly.

Despite this problem, estimates of spontaneous remission have been made for alcohol use disorder, mostly through studies of people who entered a formal treatment program but dropped out of it prematurely and could say they received "no treatment." Another method to estimate spontaneous remission involves rates of improvement in "no treatment" or similar control groups in treatment outcome studies. The estimates of spontaneous remission of alcohol problems that have been made vary with the definition of remission, the comparison groups used, and the length of the interval during which functioning is measured. Miller and Hester (1980) suggested that the spontaneous remission (abstinence or improvement in drinking patterns) in 1 year for individuals not treated for their alcohol use disorder is 19%, and Emrick (1975) calculated 13% for abstinence and 28% for abstinence plus "improved." "Improved" in this case means drinking is not as severe in amount or frequency compared to before treatment, but the person is not always abstinent. Overall, a period of research interest in the topic in the late 1990s to early 2000s on individuals who had experienced "natural recovery" from their alcohol or other drug problems yielded data suggesting that it occurs often, just as we observed for nicotine dependence (Sobell et al., 2001).

"People often say that motivation doesn't last. Neither does bathing. That's why we recommend it daily."

Zig Ziglar

Nonpharmacological Professional Treatment

As you can tell from this discussion about spontaneous remission and treatment outcome, the main criterion considered is drinking behavior, even though earlier you saw that other criteria could be used. Questions about the effectiveness of nonpharmacological professional treatment have been studied for many years. We can offer some general conclusions about the effectiveness of nonpharmacological treatments. A long-standing finding is that no single alcohol treatment type or setting is consistently better than others, but staying in any kind of treatment increases the chances of long-term improvement, even with rates of spontaneous remission taken into account (McKay et al., 1991; NIAAA, 1993).

Some may find little positive in this overall conclusion about the effectiveness of alcohol treatment, but these findings should not be taken lightly. Studies have shown that the amount of money saved in, say, health care and business expenses as a result of improvements in people undergoing treatment is greater than the amount of money the treatment costs. Similarly, research that insurance companies completed

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

suggests that those who misuse substances (and their families) use significantly fewer health care services after treatment than before. This shows the benefits of alcohol treatment in financial terms. Of course, the more important, but more difficult to measure, gains in human welfare are considerable.

The downside of our conclusion about alcohol treatment effectiveness is that it does not leave us with much of a guideline about placing a person in a specific treatment based on our assessment and the person's goals for change. Alcohol treatment research has advanced to emphasize patient–treatment matching (see our related comment on individualizing treatment and precision medicine earlier this chapter in our discussion of treatment goals). Although our knowledge about matching and alcohol treatment is still not extensive or particularly sophisticated, there is some clinically informative research on matching patients to treatment settings and services (Carroll & Kiluk, 2016; Finney et al., 2007). For example, inpatient or residential treatment settings may be best reserved for individuals whose alcohol use disorder is more severe, or who have other drug problems, or who have less social stability (e.g., are not employed, not married, not living in a permanent residence), or who have psychiatric disorders. For other individuals, outpatient treatment likely will do just as well as inpatient and at far less cost. Another example is that psychotherapy works best if patients' conceptual level (defined by preference for rules, dependence on authority, and abstractness of thinking) is matched to their therapist's (McKay et al., 1991). Finally, a major study of patient–treatment matching suggests that the severity of patients' psychiatric disorders should be taken into account in assigning individuals to treatments implemented in the outpatient setting (Project MATCH Research Group, 1997).

It seems that the accumulation of findings such as these would help to take alcohol treatment to a level of more efficient service delivery. McCrady and Langenbucher (1996) substantiated this conclusion and reaffirmed it in a later review of the American Psychiatric Association's practice guidelines for the treatment of substance use disorders (McCrady & Ziedonis, 2001; McGovern & Carroll, 2003). These findings were corroborated in the Finney et al., (2007) review. McCrady and Langenbucher and Finney et al. identified several specific nonpharmacological treatments for alcohol use disorder that have been shown to be effective in well-done evaluations. The treatments that have been identified are listed and are briefly described in Table 15.4. You can see that most of the treatments listed in the table are based broadly on social learning principles. Motivational enhancement therapy also uses principles of social learning theory (also called social cognitive theory) but combines them with psychotherapy methods designed to help clients arrive at their own conclusions about the need to change rather than the therapist imposing change on clients. These promising treatment techniques and approaches would seem to be the best candidates for outcome research on patient–treatment matching. Twelve-Step facilitation is designed to do what the name of the treatment sounds as if it does, to help patients engage in twelve-step groups such as AA. For example, sessions (individual or group) might be held to educate people about the twelve-step change program (i.e., the Twelve Steps) and to be more relaxed speaking in front of groups about their experience of alcohol use disorder. We turn next to the related topic of the effectiveness of self-help treatment.

Self-Help Treatment

What we have said so far about treatment effectiveness was pertinent to professional services. Because of its importance, self-help group treatment also should be evaluated. Much of the research on this question concerns AA, and we focus on that organization.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 15.1

Brief Interventions for Alcohol Problems

Traditional ideas about alcohol treatment have been challenged by increased awareness and discussion of "brief" interventions for alcohol problems. What is called brief is relative to traditional alcohol treatment. Brief interventions average one to three sessions, and each session lasts up to 45 minutes, but much less time is often spent in a session. Traditional alcohol outpatient, face-to-face individual treatment typically is designed to have considerably more sessions that usually last about an hour. Brief interventions have been applied in several different settings, including college campuses and the general medical care setting, and they may be delivered in-person, provider to patient, face-to-face, or to the patient by some electronic medium such as a smartphone or a computer via the Internet.

The general medical setting is such a prominent base for delivery of alcohol brief interventions, because patients in that setting tend to have higher rates than the general population of unidentified alcohol problems of varying degrees of severity due to the correlation between heavy alcohol use and physical problems. Accordingly, if some type of intervention could be done in these settings to thwart the development of more severe alcohol problems, then there is the potential to save society billions of dollars. Fleming et al.'s (1997) study in the United States, replicating earlier findings of studies conducted in Europe, that a physician-delivered brief intervention for alcohol problems detected in primary medical care settings can be effective, attracted a lot of attention among health care professionals. Since then, other studies also have shown that brief interventions are effective for treating alcohol problems (NIAAA, 1999, 2005). Furthermore, the success of brief interventions in treating alcohol problems has led more recently to evaluations of their effectiveness in treating people, including adolescents, who have problems with other drugs (Humeniuk et al., 2011; Mitchell et al., 2013), but to date the evidence base still is limited.

Brief interventions can be as simple as feedback about the consequences of heavy alcohol use for a person (e.g., "You have some liver problems, and we can trace it to your drinking") or advice to cut down or stop drinking. They are based on the idea that alcohol problems exist on a continuum of severity and that interventions can occur at any point along that continuum. The research has shown that, for the most part, brief interventions have been used with people who have mild to moderate alcohol problems; they are effective compared to "treatment as usual" (what would normally happen in a given clinic to address a patient's alcohol use) in reducing alcohol consumption to below "risk" levels. Who is most helped by brief interventions and why they work are current important clinical and research questions.

The findings about brief interventions have great practical implications for alcohol treatment providers and for saving society a lot of money and suffering. They also have implications for theories of the causes of alcohol problems. For example, what do you think disease or biological model adherents might say about brief interventions?

From a strict perspective of research design and principles of making causal inferences about relations among variables based on research data, there is no clear evidence that AA is effective. The main reason for the difficulty is the AA emphasis on the anonymity of its members. The principle of anonymity is a major part of the "Twelve Traditions" of AA, which are a set of principles or guidelines adopted in 1950 for the operations of AA (Leach & Norris, 1977). The twelfth tradition, anonymity, "is the spiritual foundation of our traditions, ever reminding us to place principles before personalities." This tradition is strictly adhered to in AA groups and makes the conduct of experimental tests (in this context, called randomized clinical trials) of the effectiveness of AA difficult, because such tests often require identification of those receiving treatment.

Nevertheless, in the last 3 decades, observational studies in increasing quantity and quality have been published that have advanced knowledge about the kinds of outcomes that AA involvement is associated with and how those outcomes might come about (Kelly & Yeterian, 2015). A recent comprehensive analysis of 35 published

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 15.4 Effective Nonmedical Treatments for Alcohol Use Disorder

Treatment	Brief Description
Motivational enhancement	Use of verbal psychotherapy, including feedback about the connection between alcohol use and negative consequences, to encourage individuals to "move forward" in the stages of changing their alcohol use patterns
Classical conditioning-based treatments	Application of principles of classical conditioning (see Chapter 5) either (1) to condition a negative reaction to alcohol cues such as sight, taste, or smell, or (2) to extinguish or eliminate urges to use alcohol in the presence of cues related to it
Twelve-step facilitation treatment	Application of methods designed to help individuals engage in twelve-step treatment such as Alcoholics Anonymous
Conjoint treatments	Involvement of significant others (e.g., spouse or other family members) in a therapy approach that follows social learning principles (see Table 15.2)
Social learning-based treatments	Application of social learning principles to reduce or eliminate alcohol consumption; specific treatments include relapse prevention (discussed later in this chapter), community reinforcement, and social skills training (SST)—teaching individuals to use nonalcohol ways of coping with interpersonal situations

Source: Based on McCrady and Langenbucher (1996) and Finney et al. (2007).

studies concluded that AA was almost always more effective than psychotherapy in helping people achieve abstinence. These findings held regardless of age and gender. The studies included in the review were conducted across five countries, further demonstrating the generalizability of this successful approach (Kelly et al., 2020).

The reasons for people's success in AA likely are not dissimilar from processes that are thought to explain the effects of professional treatments, such as ways to cope with stress, beliefs that one can cope effectively in different situations without alcohol, and commitment to abstinence from alcohol (Kelly & Yeterian, 2015; Morgenstern et al., 1997). Furthermore, AA involvement provides a critical opportunity of offering a social network that encourages abstinence from alcohol and can share tips to refrain from drinking.

While AA may be the most effective treatment for alcohol use disorder, research has shown AA seems to help some people but not all (Humphreys et al., 2004). For example, AA seems to attract and to be most appealing to individuals whose alcohol use is more severe. Therefore, making blanket referrals to AA as part of a treatment plan, which is common, may not seem warranted. With the growth of groups such as SMART and SOS, other self-help options are available. Of course, we do not currently have clear evidence about the effectiveness of participation in these alternative groups. It is essential that matching research be aimed at discovering which individuals fit best with which self-help group participation.

In conclusion, although there have been no well-done clinical trials that test AA's effects on outcomes, in recent decades observational studies of high quality suggest strongly that AA involvement as part of or following professional treatment, or by itself, is associated with improvement in patterns of alcohol consumption in adults with alcohol use disorder. Future research with focus on the processes underlying these findings, as well as the role of self-help groups that may be viable alternatives to

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

AA for some individuals, would advance our knowledge about AA and its use in clinical practice. The effort seems a high priority, given AA's potential to be an effective part of people's effort to change their alcohol use that is accessible and free of charge.

Effectiveness of Pharmacological Treatments

With the exception of disulfiram, pharmacotherapies for alcohol use disorders have been developed relatively recently, but the amount of research that has been devoted to discovering effective pharmacotherapies for alcohol and other drug use disorders has grown almost exponentially in the last 2 decades. It should be noted that it is generally accepted that all pharmacotherapies should be accompanied by psychological and social treatments if they are to have longer-term effectiveness (O'Brien, 1996). (Can you relate this to the nicotine replacement therapies discussed in Chapter 7?) The first pharmacotherapy to consider is disulfiram. When disulfiram became available, it was thought to be the long-sought answer to alcohol treatment. Unfortunately, the results of many studies show that disulfiram has fallen far short of this mark. One problem in interpreting the research on disulfiram is that often it has not been done well. The clinical trials on disulfiram that have been well controlled show modest effects on number of drinking days, but they also have yielded inconsistent findings (Garbutt et al., 1999).

One factor to keep in mind when evaluating disulfiram is that its effects may be enhanced considerably if its use is combined with a behavioral program that in part consists of supervised administration of the disulfiram (e.g., by the patient's spouse) to the patient (Hughes & Cook, 1997). This apparently addresses a major practical problem with using disulfiram clinically: It typically requires daily administration of the prescribed dose, and patients tend to show poor compliance with such a regimen. Disulfiram implants have been tried as another way to solve the compliance problem, but their effectiveness has not been shown clearly, and the bioavailability of the implanted disulfiram has not been demonstrated in clinical trials. Additional well-controlled studies of supervised disulfiram therapy would allow us to specify the conditions under which its administration is most likely to enhance outcomes.

As noted earlier, the FDA approved the use of oral naltrexone (in 1994; injectable, time-release naltrexone in 2006) for the treatment of alcohol use disorder. This approval was based largely on the results of two relatively small-scale clinical studies showing that naltrexone helped to reduce the craving for alcohol and the severity of any relapses to alcohol use that occurred after a period of abstinence (O'Malley et al., 1992; Volpicelli et al., 1992). As a result, the evaluation of naltrexone in the treatment of alcohol use disorder has been an active research topic since the mid-1990s.

Kranzler and Van Kirk (2001) reviewed controlled clinical trials of naltrexone that have been conducted and compared its effects to placebo on outcomes such as percentage of days drinking alcohol and percentage of patients who "relapsed" (we discuss relapse later in this chapter). Their review showed only modest effects of naltrexone as well as inconsistency among the studies in their findings on naltrexone's effectiveness. Therefore, the promise that naltrexone showed in earlier research has been reduced somewhat by the results of later studies. On the other hand, we have learned more about what factors enhance naltrexone's effectiveness. For example, not surprisingly, compliance with taking the medication is extremely important for naltrexone, and for that reason, the FDA approved a sustained-release, injectable version of the medication in 2006. In addition, patients who report a greater degree of craving for alcohol and who have a family history of alcohol use disorder tend to

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

do better with naltrexone treatment (Swift & Leggio, 2009). Moreover, the growing research area of pharmacogenetics has revealed that individuals with the genetic **polymorphism** in the mu-opioid receptor are more responsive to naltrexone's effects on alcohol use than those without the polymorphism (Ross & Peselow, 2009).

polymorphism
The occurrence of something (in this case, a gene) in different forms among members of a population.

Kranzler and Van Kirk's (2001) review, as well as later reviews (Swift & Leggio, 2009), reveal modest results for acamprosate. As we noted earlier, this medication has received FDA approval for use in the United States and is used and studied widely in the rest of the world. Like with naltrexone, the studies of acamprosate to date show modest effectiveness overall and inconsistency in findings from different studies. Interestingly, acamprosate has shown to be most effective in clinical trials conducted in Europe but has shown far more modest effects in trials conducted in the United States. The reason(s) for this discrepancy are yet to be specified, although one possibility is differences in characteristics of patients participating in the clinical trials conducted in Europe and the United States (Mooney & McCance-Katz, 2016).

All trials testing the efficacy or effectiveness of naltrexone and acamprosate have involved their use in conjunction with some type of behavioral counseling or therapy. The question of which medication—acamprosate or naltrexone—is the more effective when used with some kind of nondrug therapy may have occurred to you. A major study that was conducted in 11 academic treatment settings in the United States and included almost 1,400 adult patients diagnosed with alcohol dependence was designed to address just this question (Anton et al., 2006). The findings were complex, and we will just briefly describe those relevant to the general question of which drug therapy was the more efficacious when used in combination with either or both of two types of behavioral treatment ("medical management" and cognitive-behavior therapy). In this regard, patients taking naltrexone who had either medical management alone or medical management and cognitive-behavior therapy had outcomes that were superior to patients who received medical management only and placebo. On the other hand, patients receiving acamprosate with any combination of behavioral treatments did no better than patients receiving the same behavioral treatments and placebo. It is also notable that patients who received cognitive-behavior therapy and medical management and placebo (a nondrug treatment) did as well as the groups taking naltrexone with medical management only or with medical management and cognitive-behavior therapy.

In summary, the research on pharmacotherapy for alcohol use disorders is still considered to be in its early stages. However, we have already increased our knowledge on this topic considerably and have learned that the questions are complex. Future research needs not only to identify promising medications but also to determine more precisely how they work and what characterizes individuals who benefit most from different medications (notice the similarity of this conclusion to the concept of matching patients to treatment and precision medicine). In addition, because alcohol affects multiple neurotransmitters, simultaneous use of more than one medication may be needed to help some people.

REVIEW

1. Describe the reasons a person may decide to stop using alcohol or drugs on their own, rather than seeking out a self-help group or a professional.
2. Debate the position that an individual with alcohol use disorder must give up alcohol completely.
3. Argue the position that an individual with a substance use disorder can use substances in moderation.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

15.7 Other Drug Treatment Settings and Services

A wide array of treatment services is available for those who are identified as having drug (other than alcohol) use disorder. Allison and Hubbard (1985) noted:

> Treatment programs may involve outpatient, residential, or day treatment and may take place in a hospital, clinic, mental health center, prison, or group home environment. Treatment may be drug-free or use chemical aids. Counseling, job training, physical health care, and a variety of other services may or may not be part of the treatment program. The staff may be highly trained professionals or the program may be of the self-help type. (p. 1322)

The traditional classification of drug use disorder treatments includes detoxification, methadone maintenance, residential, and outpatient. Our discussion of other drug treatment will make clear that this classification combines treatment setting with treatment services. Like alcohol treatment, the primary goal of detoxification is a medically managed withdrawal from physical dependence on drugs. Managing detoxification often involves the use of medications but could be drug-free. As with alcohol withdrawal treatment, detoxification services may include some counseling directed in part at guiding the patient to additional treatment services.

A major modality of drug treatment is the therapeutic community (TC). Traditionally, drug TCs were run mostly by individuals who had recovered from a substance use disorder, who worked as peer counselors and administrators. In more recent years, however, TC staff members have included more health professionals (De Leon, 1995). There is heavy reliance on self-help groups. The traditional TC is a structured, 18-month to 2-year duration program, and clients gain more responsibilities and independence as they progress through the program by meeting specified requirements. In traditional TCs, the emphasis is on group counseling and therapy, which may be confrontational. The essential agent of social and psychological change in TCs is purported to be the community itself (ibid.). Earlier in this chapter, we referred to this idea as milieu treatment. Currently, the TC model has been adapted to suit a range of drug (and alcohol) treatment settings, structures, and durations (De Leon, 2015).

The final drug misuse treatment modality is outpatient. The outpatient setting may or may not have a policy prohibiting pharmacotherapies. Outpatient drug treatment is the most varied of the treatment types and includes a wide range of programs and services. According to the NSDUH survey that we cited in several previous chapters of this text, a large majority of the people aged 12 or older who received illicit drug treatment in a professional service setting in 2015 did so in an outpatient setting, either in a mental health center (43.1%) or alcohol/drug rehabilitation facility (71.2%).

Treatment of Nonopiate Drug Use Disorder

In general, the classification of drug use disorder treatment is rooted in services that have been available for the treatment of heroin (opiate) use disorder. In this regard, the great expansion in drug use disorder treatment services over the last several decades was largely due to public alarm in the 1960s over increasingly widespread use and harmful use of heroin, with its highly visible and well-publicized negative social effects. (Can you relate this history to current public health concerns about heroin and synthetic opioid use?) For example, a sharp increase in violent crime in some

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

urban areas, such as the late 1980s experience with crack use, was attributed to heroin use. In recent years, however, there has been an increase in the number of individuals appearing for drug use disorder treatment who primarily use drugs other than alcohol or the opiates. The NSDUH 2015 survey showed that the four drugs other than alcohol for which individuals aged 12 or older were most frequently in current treatment for, or for which they received their last treatment, were pain relievers (most frequent), marijuana, heroin, and cocaine, respectively. (Note that alcohol remains the drug for which people in the United States most use professional treatment services.)

Like those who misuse heroin and alcohol, individuals who experience problems associated with nonopiate drug use may appear in treatment settings other than those designed specifically to treat substance use disorders. These include hospital emergency rooms, physicians' offices, and general psychiatric treatment settings. As noted earlier, they currently also appear in therapeutic community settings. In general, little is known about any unique problems and characteristics of those who misuse nonopiate drugs that might be important for their treatment.

Pharmacotherapy of Other Drug Use Disorders

Lingford-Hughes et al. (2004), Litten and Allen (1999), McLellan et al. (2000), and Swift and Leggio (2009) summarized the major pharmacotherapies available for the treatment of drug use disorders other than alcohol. Pharmacotherapies have received FDA approval only for the treatment of opioid and nicotine dependence; we discussed the latter in Chapter 7, and therefore do not review them again here. Table 15.5 presents a list of the pharmacotherapies that have FDA approval for the treatment of opioid dependence (in *DSM*-5 terms, more severe opioid use disorder).

Methadone maintenance is the pharmacotherapy for drug use disorders other than alcohol that has received the most attention—probably more than any other drug treatment, for that matter—from researchers and the popular press. The attention centers on the conflict in treating dependence on a chemical substance (heroin, an opiate) with an opiate agonist (methadone). Proponents of this approach say that if the desire for heroin is prevented by methadone, then one who misuses heroin will be more likely to break out of the destructive lifestyle associated with drug use disorder and engage in rehabilitation, leading to a socially acceptable and productive way of living. The major opposition to methadone treatment is that it perpetuates individuals' dependence on an opiate drug. Interestingly, evidence against this fear has come from a study conducted with those who misused heroin in Canada who failed in methadone treatment, but who were successful in treating their substance use disorder if they were treated with heroin, in prescription form (Oviedo-Joekes et al., 2009). Although this approach to treating people with severe heroin dependence has been used for years in Europe, it had not been tried in North America because of the great resistance to using heroin to treat heroin dependence (recall from Chapter 7 how some felt once about using nicotine to treat nicotine dependence).

TABLE 15.5 FDA-Approved Pharmacotherapies for Opioid Dependence

Methadone	Long-acting opioid
Levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM)	Opiate agonist or partial agonist
Buprenorphine—oral, and injectable extended release	Partial agonist at different opioid receptors
Naltrexone (naloxone)	Opiate antagonist

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 15.2

Factors Influencing the Expansion of Drug Treatment

Political and social forces currently contribute to the demand for drug treatment, just as these same forces pushed the growth of treatment of individuals dependent on heroin in the 1960s. These trends reaffirm the importance of social and political factors in how U.S. society deals with alcohol and other drug use.

In 1986, the surge in demand for drug treatment, particularly in the residential or inpatient setting, arose from two major sources: crack and AIDS. These worked in a political climate that was strongly in favor of eradicating drugs and drug misuse.

As you saw in Chapter 6, crack is the inexpensive form of cocaine that produces rapid dependence. People who start using it are quickly hooked on it, and in the mid-1980s, people from a wide range of social classes developed a dependence on crack. The variety of people affected, along with social consequences such as large increases in drug-related criminal activity and flagrant selling of crack in public places, lighted the public's torch for getting those who misuse crack off the streets and into treatment. Further, the media devoted much time to the crack epidemic, just as they have to other diseases or medical problems in the past.

The AIDS epidemic sent those who misuse drugs, particularly individuals who take their drugs intravenously, to treatment programs to help them stop their drug use. The reason: fear of catching the deadly disease of AIDS through the use of contaminated needles. The fear of AIDS sent people looking for treatment when it is unlikely they otherwise would have done so. Again, the media attention to AIDS and the general public alarm and fears about AIDS supported the increased demands for more accessible drug treatment.

Currently, we see these same kind of factors operating because of the public's alarm due to overdoses from use of heroin and synthetic opiate drugs that have drawn a lot of attention in the media. In addition, media reports have covered cases of individuals from all walks of life. There is wide public support as a result for making drug treatment available and accessible to all those who need it.

These three examples show how political and social forces, and not just an actual increase in drug use or in the valuing of a drug-free society, affect the demand for drug and alcohol treatment.

Methadone maintenance treatment typically involves administration of a daily, prescribed dose of methadone to block a person's cravings for heroin. Usually, methadone maintenance programs are outpatient so that individuals may pursue activities that build a socially productive life. Furthermore, many programs (and state or federal regulations) require patients to receive, typically, mental health or social support counseling while enrolled in methadone maintenance. Patients are also required to adhere to a formal set of rules for continued participation in methadone treatment.

As you might have guessed, one problem with the use of methadone is its potential for misuse, that is, people may use their methadone in nonprescribed ways just as they used heroin. Methadone programs have tried to handle this problem by requiring patients to swallow the methadone dose on the program premises while the medical staff observes. In fact, one measure of progress in this program is whether the individuals come to the clinic less often than daily to get the methadone dose. As progress is made, people may earn the privilege of taking two to several days' worth of methadone home at a time. Another way to handle the problem of compliance is to administer **levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM)**, which is similar in pharmacological action to methadone but has longer-lasting effects. The advantage of a longer-lasting methadone substitute is that patients are more likely to comply with the regimen for taking the drug.

levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM)
A drug used in treating heroin dependence that is similar in action to methadone but has longer-lasting effects.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Robert Goldstein/Science Source

Methadone maintenance remains a controversial treatment for heroin use disorder.

Methadone maintenance involves replacing one opiate, say, heroin, with another, methadone. Another pharmacotherapy for heroin use involves blockade of opiate receptors by the use of naltrexone, which we discussed in the section on alcohol treatment. Naltrexone or its shorter-acting analog drug, naloxone, is used most commonly with patients who have been maintained for long periods on methadone and then choose to become drug-free. (Currently, naloxone also receives a lot of attention because of its use in reversing a would-be fatal opiate drug overdose.) The naltrexone may help these patients bridge the gap between methadone maintenance and a drug-free life. Naltrexone works, theoretically, because the misused opiate cannot achieve its effect in the brain (also see the discussion earlier in this chapter on the use of naltrexone in the treatment of alcohol dependence). The result is that the individual loses a major reason for using the opiate—its psychoactive effects. Along these same lines, buprenorphine, a mixed opiate agonist–antagonist, blocks the effects of heroin and has FDA approval for use in treatment of opiate drug dependence.

Effectiveness of Drug Treatment

The history of research on the effectiveness of drug treatment is not nearly as long as that for alcohol, but a number of good studies have appeared in the last few decades. Our summary of what is known about drug treatment effectiveness, like that of alcohol treatment, excludes detoxification.

The literature on drug treatment effectiveness has profited from the completion of several large, multisite (i.e., different programs), multimodal (i.e., different settings, such as outpatient and methadone maintenance) studies (Ball et al., 1988; DeLeon, 1984; Hubbard et al., 1989) and reviews of treatment research (Institute of Medicine, 1990b). Findings from the most recent large-scale, multisite drug treatment evaluation, called the Drug Abuse Treatment Outcome Study (DATOS) (Fletcher et al., 1997), provided data that were largely consistent with the results of earlier research. Compared to the literature on alcohol, less attention is given in the drug treatment evaluation literature to individual treatment techniques or services. Instead, research tends to focus on the treatment settings, as we have organized them in this chapter.

Nonpharmacological Professional Treatment

Table 15.6 presents major conclusions about the effectiveness of therapeutic community and outpatient drug treatment. Note that conclusions about treatment are based on drug use as well as on correlated events such as social productivity and

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

criminal behavior. The research on drug treatment reflects society's interest not only in whether a person has stopped illicit drug use but also in whether social disruption and disorder have stopped. Table 15.6 shows that, overall, two of the three major drug settings (the other is methadone maintenance) seem to be associated with improved functioning, if the person stays in treatment. Unfortunately, dropping out of drug treatment is a chronic problem that is difficult to solve. One of methadone maintenance's great advantages in this regard is that it is correlated with better treatment retention. Similarly, even though more good research is needed on this topic, it seems that if people stay in drug treatment, it is cost-effective (Franey & Ashton, 2002; Popovici & French, 2013). That is, society gets more back from the reduced drug use and the social and financial productivity that are associated with treatment than it pays to deliver the treatment services. These long-standing findings on the effectiveness of nonpharmacological drug treatment still hold today (USDHHS, 2016).

The overall summary of nonpharmacological drug treatment effectiveness is encouraging, but we should add there is considerable individual variation in patient outcomes. The big gap in this treatment literature pertains to patient–treatment matching research, or to developing and testing procedures of "individualizing" treatment to maximize patient benefits. Although several excellent studies done some time ago have matched patients to drug treatments (e.g., McLellan et al., 1983), more research guided by the matching question would advance drug treatment (Franey & Ashton, 2002).

Self-Help Treatment

Kaskutas's (2009) review of the literature of the effectiveness of AA did cover some studies of individuals attending self-help groups for other drug use such as Narcotics Anonymous. Therefore, what we said earlier about AA's effectiveness based on the review by Kaskutas tentatively could be applied to other drug self-help treatment. Like AA, drug self-help groups are popular, and their effectiveness is an important research question. Also similar to alcohol treatment, involvement in self-help groups following an episode of drug treatment is associated with improved outcomes (Fiorentine, 1997).

TABLE 15.6 Effectiveness of Therapeutic Community and Outpatient Drug Treatment

Setting	Conclusions
Therapeutic community	Drug use and criminal behavior end while in residence; associated with a more productive life following discharge if length of stay in residence was sufficient (at least several months) High treatment attrition rates Treatment is cost-effective
Outpatient treatment	Associated with improved functioning compared to no treatment or detoxification only Benefits of treatment greater with longer involvement in treatment Treatment is cost-effective for people who stay in treatment longer than 6 months

Source: Adapted from Institute of Medicine (1990b).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Pharmacological Treatments

As we showed earlier, for treatment of drug use besides alcohol and nicotine, the FDA has issued approval for agents used in pharmacotherapy of opiate addiction only. The first and most important of these agents is methadone. The Institute of Medicine (1990b), which was the source of the information in Table 15.6, also covered methadone. Its review of the literature through the 1980s on methadone's effectiveness showed positive findings. First, methadone treatment is associated with reduced drug use and criminal behavior compared to no treatment, detoxification alone, or methadone treatment terminators. Second, methadone, as we noted earlier, is effective in bringing reluctant addicts into treatment and keeping them there. Third, methadone is a cost-effective treatment of opioid dependence. These conclusions, which are based on clinical research done over almost 3 decades, have been supported and extended in more recent studies (Leshner, 1999; McLellan et al., 2000; Vocci et al., 2005).

"The advantages of ethnically oriented programs appear not so much that something particularly efficacious happens in treatment, but rather the attraction to treatment is greater when one can join peers in a familiar setting."

Joseph Westermeyer, professor of psychiatry (Institute of Medicine, 1990a, p. 372)

The other pharmacotherapies for opioid dependence listed in Table 15.5 also have fared well in clinical trials. LAAM's effectiveness convinced the FDA in 1993 to approve it as a treatment for heroin dependence, although LAAM is not used often today because of problems with side effects on the heart (Swift & Leggio, 2009). Buprenorphine also has been shown to be effective in several clinical trials with those who misuse heroin (Litten & Allen, 1999). Therefore, the data show that the clinician has the option of prescribing three opiate agonist or partial agonist drugs in the treatment of opioid dependence, according to the clinician's or the client's preferences.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 15.3

"Special Populations" and Alcohol and Drug Treatment

In Chapter 1, we examined substance use prevalence by gender and racial/ethnic subgroups. The idea behind doing this is that any subgroup differences in prevalence likely are due to biological or, more prominently, social and cultural factors that distinguish the subgroups. This same idea can be applied to assessment and treatment, although research on "special populations" (i.e., subgroups) has lagged far behind other treatment research. For example, much of this chapter's content is based on research and clinical experiences with adults because a lot more information is available on adults compared to adolescents. Nevertheless, treatment research on special populations is important because subgroup differences can influence assessment and diagnosis, treatment accessibility and content, and treatment retention.

To cite several examples, studies show that, for adolescents, assessment of social factors in substance use, such as patterns of use and attitudes about use that peers have, is critical. Similarly, social skills training to resist peer pressure to use substances may be an emphasis in treatment. For older adults, sensitive assessment and diagnostic practices incorporate knowledge about the interaction of alcohol and prescribed medications, and the interaction of alcohol with the aging body. In women, substance use problems tend to develop and increase in severity faster than they do in men and tend to be more strongly related to psychological and familial variables. Failure to use this information precludes sensitive diagnosis and effective treatment. For all defined subgroups, learned aspects of substance use underlie beliefs and expectations about its effects and attitudes toward its use in different situations. Without sensitivity to these group differences, assessment and treatment are not adequate.

Special population differences could be viewed as corollaries of the idea that individualizing substance use disorders treatment enhances the benefits that people get from it. How? What models of the etiology of the substance use disorders seem most flexible to you in incorporating gender, developmental (age), and racial/ethnic differences?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The final drug for the treatment of opioid dependence is antagonist therapy with naltrexone. Although earlier clinical trials suggested that this drug is effective, clinicians do not use it often. One problem is that those with substance use disorders tend not to prefer this drug initially in their treatment, perhaps because naltrexone does not have mild psychoactive effects as, for example, methadone does. Naltrexone therefore has found greater application among those with substance use disorders who are highly motivated to change their drug use and those making the transition from methadone to drug-free maintenance (see the discussion earlier in this chapter).

Promising Treatment Techniques

In one sense, designating treatments as pharmacological or nonpharmacological misrepresents clinical practice because, especially in recent years, treatment for illicit drug use often combines pharmacological and psychosocial therapies. In fact, as we have noted several times, rarely is a medication prescribed without some sort of psychological or social therapy addition, although the latter treatments may be used without the adjunct of medication. Notably, several of the psychosocial therapies

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 15.4

Treatment Research and Clinical Practice

Through the first half of the 20th century, treatment of substance use disorders was not informed by scientific research designed to identify the most effective treatment methods. Simply put, up to the 1960s, few treatment research studies in the substance use disorders area met high standards of scientific rigor so that we could have confidence in the validity of their findings. As a result, consumers had to take on faith anyone's claims that a given treatment method worked. But the picture began to change in the 1970s, and today we are fortunate to have a considerable amount of high-quality treatment research on substance use disorders. This means that alcohol and drug treatment that most people receive today is "evidence-based." Right?

Unfortunately, wrong. Although research findings have had some influence on what happens in the clinical practice of alcohol and drug treatment, it is not as much influence as one might hope for or even expect. That is because it has become apparent to many that it is one thing to have built an impressive foundation of knowledge, but it is another thing to consistently apply that knowledge to enhance the quality of care that patients receive. Therefore, knowledge *dissemination* and *implementation*, and in the treatment area, *translation*, poses its own set of formidable challenges.

In this regard, we have learned in recent years that barriers of different types must often be overcome if knowledge is to be applied consistently, that is, if evidence-based methods of assessment and treatment are to become the standard of care in a given setting. These barriers may exist on multiple levels and could include factors related to the provider of the services (the clinician), to the patient who is to be the recipient of the services, or to the system in which treatment is delivered. For example, if a new treatment method is found through clinical trials (the same model of testing that the FDA requires in the evaluation of new drugs, as we reviewed in Chapter 5) to be effective, then clinicians must learn the new methods, become skilled in their use, and perhaps abandon familiar and comfortable ways of doing things. Or, patients may resist the new service or treatment method because it is different from what they have heard others claim works best. The system itself may resist going against long-held beliefs about treatment or simply may not provide the resources needed to support its clinicians in learning and mastering the delivery of a new treatment method.

The new awareness of the knowledge–practice gap in alcohol and drug treatment has resulted in studies that concern ways of overcoming the barriers to dissemination and implementation of treatment research. Can you think of some methods directed at clinicians, their patients, or the treatment system to shrink the knowledge–practice gap that could be tested?

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

listed in Table 15.4 regarding the treatment of alcohol use disorder have a good evidence base for the treatment of other drug use disorders, as reviewed in the U.S. surgeon general's report on addiction (USDHHS, 2016). These therapies include motivational enhancement treatment, twelve-step facilitation therapy, social learning theory-based therapies (such as cognitive-behavior therapy, community reinforcement, contingency contracting, and classical conditioning-based treatments such as cue exposure), and conjoint treatments.

15.8 Special Topics in Alcohol and Drug Treatment

In this section, we discuss three topics that we think are important and that apply to both alcohol and drug treatment. The first is treatment of people who use more than one drug, referred to as polysubstance use. We then briefly review the treatment of dual-diagnosis patients and especially how such treatment involves the use of psychotropic medication. The last topic is relapse (see Figure 15.1), which has challenged alcohol and drug treatment providers for many years.

Treatment of Polysubstance Misuse

In the traditional way of viewing treatment, people who have an alcohol use disorder do not have trouble with or misuse other drugs. Similarly, the traditional view gives the impression that people who have a drug use disorder have no patterns of harmful alcohol use. However, it has been known for some time (Sokolow et al., 1981) that people who present for treatment of an identified alcohol or other drug use disorder often use other substances as well, sometimes at levels or in patterns that are associated with problems for them.

Studies of multiple substance use have important implications for treatment (Rosenthal et al., 2016). Treatment programs sometimes have a tendency to focus on alcohol treatment or drug treatment, which have major differences in practice. However, if treatment programs concentrate on only alcohol use, for example, then the misuse of other drugs may result in poorer, shorter-lasting **treatment effects** than if the person's substance use patterns were treated in a more unified way. In addition, people seeking alcohol or drug treatment who have identified multiple substance use disorders may have more severe social, legal, and psychiatric difficulties than those in treatment who have a single identified drug use disorder (Carroll et al., 1977; Rosenthal et al., 2016). Beginning treatment with more severe problems predicts poorer functioning following treatment. Therefore, failing to address patterns of multiple substance use could mean inadequate treatment planning.

treatment effects
The results of experiencing a treatment, usually measured in different areas of functioning, such as substance use, family functioning, and vocational functioning.

Multiple substance use relates to more general questions about treatment. One of these is the need to view substance use as part of a person's total pattern of behavior to achieve an understanding of drug and alcohol use. Those who take this approach suggest that effective treatment can be planned only if connections are made among all of a person's different problems. Such a conceptualization can be the basis of providing patients with an overall "big picture" view of their treatment plan. At the same time, that plan may include addressing use of particular substances singly. For example, methadone maintenance may be initiated for treatment of heroin use disorder, but that intervention would not affect that same person's use of cocaine. First choice for treatment of cocaine use disorder would be an evidence-based psychosocial

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

intervention, as there is no evidence-based medication to treat cocaine use disorder (Rosenthal et al., 2016). In summary, individuals who present for substance use disorder treatment who use multiple substances and sometimes each in a way that it meets *DSM*-5 use disorder criteria tend to present with more severe problems than those whose treatment can center on use of one substance. Understanding the more complex pattern of multiple substance use and designing treatment plans accordingly is fundamental to furthering lasting changes toward reduction in or cessation of substance use and accompanying improvement in life functioning.

Treatment of Dual-Diagnosis Patients

An important topic for alcohol and drug treatment providers is patients who have major psychiatric disorders to go along with their substance use disorders. Such patients have been called dual-diagnosis patients, or patients with co-occurring substance use and other psychiatric disorders. These patients, as you might imagine, typically have more complex and extensive treatment needs than do patients without major psychiatric disorders and tend to do more poorly in and following treatment (Silverman et al., 2016).

A range of psychiatric disorders may co-occur with a substance use disorder. These psychiatric disorders include anxiety disorders, major depression, and bipolar disorder, especially among individuals who have alcohol use disorder. Other examples include attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder and schizophrenia. A relationship also exists between alcohol or drug use disorders characterized by a high degree of anxiety and the **personality disorders**, particularly antisocial personality disorder (commonly called **sociopathy**). Treatment of patients with co-occurring disorders often includes both psychopharmacological and psychosocial (including self-help programs) components, and most frequently both. Various approaches have been taken in treatment, with the most current thinking that an integrated approach is most effective. This means that treatment of both classes of disorders occurs in one setting by the same treatment team (Silverman et al., 2016).

personality disorders
Long-standing patterns of behavior that frequently create distress for individuals due to their personal or social consequences; usually recognizable from adolescence or earlier.

sociopathy
Personality disorder characterized by a lack of concern for social obligations or rules, a lack of feelings for others, and a tendency toward violence.

Relapse

Any discussion of alcohol and drug treatment is incomplete without including relapse. Defining and measuring relapse are not as simple as you might think, but in concept, it means the reappearance of some problem after a period of its remission. With physical diseases such as cancer, which is where the term *relapse* comes from, its measurement is more straightforward.

You have seen that arriving at a definition of alcohol and drug problems that has general consensus is no easy matter, however. This difficulty carries through to defining relapse, as reflected by the different operational definitions that have been used in research on this topic.

In spite of these complexities in definition, relapse has been studied extensively by those who study substance misuse and dependence. You might remember that we mentioned the problem of relapse in Chapter 7, when we discussed the treatment of smoking. Alcohol and drug treatment providers have grappled with the problem of relapse for much longer than several decades, and today, many people refer to alcohol and other drug misuse and dependence as "chronic relapsing conditions" (McLellan et al., 2000). The classic paper by Hunt et al. (1971) illustrates this point. Their review of the literature at that time showed that about 70% of individuals treated for alcohol, tobacco, or heroin misuse in abstinence-oriented programs had returned to

". . . craving is like a wave—it rises to a peak, then falls. . . . Marlatt advises watching your urge, noting its peak and 'surfing' it, rather than allowing it to wipe you out."

Maia Szalavitz, referring to the late G. Alan Marlatt, PhD, alcohol researcher. https://healthland.time.com/2011/03/15/appreciation-g-alan-marlatt-brought-compassion-to-addiction-treatment/

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

using their primary substance by the time they were out of treatment for 3 months. Today, the recurrence of a substance use disorder for which the person was treated and in remission remains a major clinical concern, and much treatment research is directed at discovering ways to help individuals maintain the changes they might make as a result of completing treatment.

The research on relapse and the substance use disorders has generated several models and theories, summarized in Table 15.7. As you can see, the six models and theories make few distinctions among different drugs in the mechanisms of relapse. Another point is the emphasis on relapse precipitants, or the events immediately preceding the relapse. Events more removed from the immediate relapse environment are given less attention. Examples of these are the social support a person has for nonproblem substance use, the period of time a person has been unemployed, and the level of tension among members of a family. Finally, the models and theories can be divided into two general categories: psychological and biological. The psychological theories emphasize cognitions, whereas the biological theories emphasize learned motivation to use drugs and cravings.

TABLE 15.7 Major Models and Theories of Relapse

Model/Theory	Mechanism(s) of Relapse
Cognitive-behavioral model (Marlatt & Gordon, 1985; Marlatt & Witkiewitz, 2005)	Interaction between "high risk" (for substance use) and the individual's self-efficacy to cope with those situations without substance use determines relapse. Expectations about the utility of drugs and alcohol in a situation also are important.
Person–situation interaction model (Litman, 1986)	Relapse is determined by an interaction among three factors: situations that the individual perceives as threatening ("high risk"), availability of an adequate repertoire of coping strategies, and the individual's perception of the effectiveness of available coping strategies.
Self-efficacy and outcome expectancies (Annis, 1986; Rollnick & Heather, 1982)	Initial substance use occurs from the mislabeling of negative affect and negative physical states as craving. After the first substance use, expectations of control over such use decrease along with self-efficacy. This process leads to a more severe relapse.
Opponent process (Solomon, 1980)	Through conditioning, formerly neutral internal and external stimuli become connected with various "A" and "B" states. Reexposure or reexperiencing these states may increase the individual's motivation to use drugs following a period of abstinence.
Craving and loss of control (Ludwig & Wikler, 1974)	Internal and external stimuli associated with drug withdrawal are labeled as craving. Drugs are sought as a way to relieve craving.
Urges and cravings (Tiffany, 1990, 1992; Wise, 1988)	Drug use and drug urges and cravings have occurred often enough to be "automatic cognitive processes." In those abstaining from substance misuse, these processes can be triggered by various internal and external stimuli. Relapse may occur if an adequate "action plan" not to use drugs, a nonautomatic cognitive process, is impeded or not used. Wise (1988) adds that use of one drug may trigger urges to use another as a result of action in the brain.

Source: Adapted in part from Connors et al. (1996).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

At this point, no one theory of relapse has emerged as superior to the others, so it makes sense to look across the theories to discern what may be the important ingredients of relapse. First are the internal (e.g., mood) and external (e.g., substance use setting) stimulus conditions that precede relapse. Cravings to use drugs also are important. Two types of expectancies may be relevant to relapse. The first is a person's beliefs about the effects of a drug in a given situation, and the second is a person's self-efficacy, which is an individual's estimation that they can successfully enact a behavior in a given situation. Finally, a person's coping responses or skills may be important in relapse.

Research and theory about relapse have generated treatment applications, known as relapse prevention methods (Marlatt et al., 2009; Marlatt & Witkiewitz, 2005). Relapse prevention methods first have focused on assessing "high-risk" situations, or those situations associated with heavy or problem-related use of alcohol or drugs in the past. High-risk situations may be negative moods such as anxiety or depression, positive moods, the presence of people an individual used to drink with, or some combination of internal and external precipitants. After high-risk situations have been identified, the next step is to look at the person's ways to cope with the situation without resorting to undesired levels of substance use, and the person's self-efficacy to do so. Coupled with this is an examination of the person's beliefs about how alcohol or drug use would help in different situations. For example, people may believe that drinking at a party would help them to talk with the other people present. Assessment of these elements then determines what might be done in treatment: teaching alternative coping skills to substance use (e.g., using communication skills instead of alcohol to help a person enjoy a party), improving self-efficacy, or educating the person about the actual effects of alcohol and drugs. In practice, all of these elements are typically covered, and there is a correlation among them. For example, teaching people coping skills may elevate their self-efficacy about using that skill.

> *"Patient living alone, no job, complained of feeling bored and useless; could see no reason why he should not take a drink."*
> *"Patient reported that everything was going so well for him that he wanted to celebrate by having a drink."*
>
> Reasons two patients gave for their alcohol use relapses following treatment (Marlatt & Gordon, 1985, p. 74)

You can see that much of what is done in relapse prevention work follows from psychological models of relapse. The major method from the biological models is cue exposure. This method essentially involves presenting (exposing) the person with cues (e.g., a bottle of a favorite brand of whiskey or drug use paraphernalia like a syringe) that might elicit cravings to use a substance, without allowing its actual use. With repeated exposure that is not followed by consumption of the substance in question, the cravings theoretically reduce in number and intensity. So, as a person's repeated association of these "stimulus conditions" with drug use resulted in the stimuli eliciting a strong desire to use drugs or alcohol, repeated pairing of the stimuli with nonuse of substances will decrease the power of the stimuli to elicit cravings.

The work on relapse has stimulated substantial advances in alcohol and drug treatment (Carroll, 1996, 2015). However, it also brings up an important point about relapse research and prevention, and about treatment more generally. What has been given less attention in theories of relapse is more serious study of conditions in the "broader backdrop" of relapse, such as the person's social environment (family functioning, job satisfaction) or general level

Blue Jean Images/Alamy Stock Photo

Settings such as taverns that are associated with a person's heavy use of alcohol in the past may pose a risk of that person relapsing or drinking heavily after a period of abstinence from or moderate use of alcohol.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 15.5

Telehealth, Substance Use Disorder Treatment, and Continuing Care

The problem of relapse following treatment of the substance use disorders led to an emphasis on "continuing care" following an episode of treatment for a substance use disorder. In the United States, traditionally this primarily meant that, following their completion of an inpatient rehabilitation program, patients continued their engagement in some lesser intensity or structured setting. Depending on the individual, this could have meant in a halfway house or regular outpatient alcohol and drug treatment, for example. Twelve-step group involvement, often begun during the initial rehabilitation effort, typically was deemed an important part of the continuing care treatment plan.

In the United States, because of major changes in the health care environment that also greatly affected substance use disorders treatment services, continuing care treatment plans now have wide variability and may be as varied as the individuals for whom they are designed. Nevertheless, continuing care is currently viewed as no less critical to enhancing the chances of longer-term recovery from the substance use disorders. In this context, telehealth has increased the potential utility of continuing care efforts considerably. Telehealth is the use of technology, such as electronic medical records, smartphones, and web-based applications, to support the delivery of health care, health-related education, and other health-related services and functions (USDHHS, 2016). In treatment of the substance use disorders, telehealth applications has been used as a complement to traditional, in-person therapist-delivered treatment or as a stand-alone treatment. The same use of telehealth applications has been part of continuing care treatment plans.

Telehealth applications designed as initial rehabilitation efforts to date often have been electronic adaptations of traditional in-person delivered established treatments, such as cognitive-behavior therapy. In the context of continuing care, this may also be the case, such as an adaptation of a relapse prevention program. However, telehealth methods in continuing care also have been used as ways to help patients to reduce risk in their "natural environments" of a return to undesired levels of substance use in real time in an interactive way, by the use of text messaging for example.

The evidence base for the application of telehealth methods in substance use disorders treatment continuing care still is limited. However, currently there are a number of clinical trials in progress that address this question. If such research shows the utility of telehealth applications in continuing care, then they will help to reduce the rate of substance use disorders relapse significantly for more patients than is possible by traditional methods and at lower cost.

of stress (recent job change, recent divorce). Immediate relapse precipitants obviously are important, but so are these more remote factors. In particular, how more distal, "background" factors combine with more proximal factors to affect patterns of relapse and remission over time seems critical. In fact, we know this from research on the long-term effects of alcohol and drug treatment, which seems highly relevant to relapse. Perhaps it would help to understand this more easily if you do not think of alcohol or drug treatment as a specific entity that "acts on" a person to produce some lasting outcome. Instead, treatment is one event in the life of people who are trying to change the way they use alcohol or drugs. Furthermore, individuals and what is identified as treatment interact in a social context that strongly contributes to the course of change. Fortunately, more recent extensions of models of relapse, such as those of Witkiewitz and Marlatt (2004), have attempted to integrate immediate and more distal relapse determinants.

REVIEW

1. Create a table to compare the accessibility and effectiveness of self-help groups and professional treatment for substance use disorders.
2. Describe the advantages and disadvantages associated with virtual therapy to treat substance use disorders.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

15.9 Models of Causes and Treatment Methods

So far we have presented a lot of information about alcohol and drug treatment, although space limitations prevented us from going into great detail. You may have noticed the influence of each of the models of causes that we reviewed at the beginning of this chapter. We can cite several instances. Placing substance use disorder treatment programs in the hospital setting—a common practice—is broadly based in a disease model of thought. Indeed, the great achievement that came years ago with wide acceptance of the disease model was to take the treatment of alcohol and drug use disorder out of the legal system (moral model) and into the hands of physicians and medical settings—an apparently more useful means of rehabilitating people with substance use disorder.

Another example is Alcoholics Anonymous, rooted in both the disease and moral models. Pharmacological treatments, such as methadone maintenance, are most clearly linked to the biological model. Within most treatment settings, psychological and social interventions are consistent with the social learning and sociocultural models. The most explicit example of this merging of models is the community reinforcement approach (Budney & Higgins, 1998; Higgins et al., 1991; Hunt & Azrin, 1973), which centers on modifying the person's environment to reinforce nonmisuse of substances and not to reinforce substance misuse.

We can trace individual parts of alcohol and drug treatment to a particular model of etiology, but virtually all treatment programs combine practices that are derived from two or more of the causes models. This is the result in part of the many clinical, social, political, and economic forces that influence substance use disorder treatment programs and that affect their evolution. Another force is the current scientifically based thought that the substance use disorders are multifaceted problems, so treatment must relate to the person's biological, psychological, and social makeup. This thinking is implemented in the collection of activities that constitute many treatment programs.

So far, we have discussed treatment freely—that is, free from concerns about how available or accessible it is. We conclude this chapter by discussing this all-important question, especially as it pertains to economic forces and alcohol and drug treatment.

> *"The treatment setting of prime significance for recovery from alcohol (and other drug problems) is not a hospital, a clinic, a doctor's or minister's office, a social agency or a jail, or any other specialized institution or place. The prime setting of significance is the social, interpersonal setting of—daily life. And, equally important, it is that setting through time."*
>
> Selden Bacon, 1973 (Orford, 1985, p. 246)

REVIEW

1. Create a table to relate the models of causes of substance use disorders to treatment approaches.

15.10 Economic Factors in Alcohol and Drug Treatment

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

15-6 Evaluate the effect of economic factors on the accessibility of alcohol and drug treatment programs

A topic that has been of great controversy and consequence in the United States is the influence of health insurance coverage on whether a person gets treatment and,

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

if so, what kind (Holder & Blose, 1991). A brief history of the role of finances and insurance will help you to appreciate the current controversy (Rawson, 1990–1991).

In the early 1970s, alcohol and drug treatment was not considered in the mainstream of psychiatry, clinical psychology, and social work. By 1990, however, alcohol and drug treatment was a central concern. The change was due mostly to cocaine, AIDS, and adjustments in health care financing.

In the middle to late 1970s, interest in drug treatment had been quelled considerably because the heroin scare of the 1960s and early 1970s had quieted down. At the same time, 28-day inpatient programs became the standard alcohol treatment because of agreements among care providers, typically hospitals and health insurance companies. These 28-day programs proliferated during the 1980s, with legislation passed in many states that required insurers to cover alcohol and drug treatment. The cost to the insurance company was high; the price of completing an inpatient program varied, but it was always in the thousands of dollars. The term *chemical dependence treatment* was spawned in the 1980s, because the 28-day programs were also accommodating large numbers of individuals who misused drugs other than alcohol, especially cocaine. Treatment availability and accessibility (with an expanding economy) were rising rapidly. Another force in the treatment expansion was a social-political climate that encouraged people with alcohol and drug problems to get into treatment.

Therefore, by the late 1980s, treatment was accessible in an unprecedented way, at least for those who had health insurance or independent wealth. Typically, this trend is viewed as good, but a counterforce was operating. With increased expansion of and expectations for alcohol and drug treatment, employers' health insurance premiums were rising quickly. Quietly at first in the stronger economy of the mid-1980s, then loudly as the economy recessed, came "managed" mental health and alcohol and drug treatment services. Managed care is a movement based on the goal of controlling the costs of health care, including alcohol and drug treatment. The term cost-effectiveness became popular: Is the benefit of a treatment worth what it costs?

Cost consciousness has led to a far more restricted use of inpatient alcohol and drug treatments, at least those that health insurers pay for. When inpatient stays are covered, they are often much shorter than 28 days. Instead, outpatient treatment is the insurer's preference. This policy is based on research that suggests that, on average, inpatient treatment is no more effective than the much cheaper outpatient treatment (Miller & Hester, 1986).

It seems that the trend begun in the late 1980s to less inpatient and more outpatient care is here to stay. Many treatment providers, however, are concerned that this prescription for care is based too much on money and not enough on proven differences (or lack thereof) in treatment benefits. Some treatment providers ask: What does a lack of difference in benefits tell us overall? What is outpatient treatment anyway? (We saw earlier in this chapter that what constitutes outpatient alcohol and drug treatment is highly variable.) Is the finding of no difference true for everybody? When is the more structured, more intense inpatient treatment indicated, and when is it not?

These and similar questions became more salient for alcohol treatment in the report of a study by Walsh et al. (1991). A total of 227 individuals who were newly identified as misusing alcohol were randomly assigned to one of three treatments through their employee assistance program (thus all these people had jobs) with employment benefits. The treatments were compulsory inpatient treatment, compulsory AA attendance, and choice of treatment option. Two years after treatment, the three groups did not differ in measures of job performance. However, a major

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

finding was that, overall, the cost of treatment for the compulsory inpatient group was only 10% more than it was for the AA and choice groups (remember that AA is free in that any financial contribution is voluntary). The small cost difference was particularly true for study participants who had used cocaine in the 6 months before they began treatment. The overall cost results occurred because the choice and AA groups had a much higher inpatient treatment admission rate during the 2-year follow-up period than did the group that initially received compulsory inpatient care. One implication of the small cost difference that was confirmed during the follow-up assessments was that, at least for some of the time after treatment, the compulsory inpatient group used less alcohol and drugs than did the other two groups.

Maryna Pleshkun/Shutterstock.com

As in other areas of health care, economics is a driving force in the treatment of the substance use disorders.

In summary, finances and insurance have played a major role in the accessibility of alcohol and drug treatment and in what treatment options are available. The role of insurance in the access to and the structure (e.g., treatment setting and duration) of alcohol and drug treatment changed considerably with the passage of the Affordable Care Act (ACA) in the United States in 2010 and its full enactment by 2014. By 2017, over 20 million more U.S. citizens who did not have health insurance before the ACA was passed had access to it. Moreover, the ACA lists substance use disorders as one of 10 essential health benefits. Both more people having health insurance overall and the designation of the substance use disorders as an essential benefit was predicted to mean that millions more people in the United States would have access to alcohol and other drug treatment than ever had it before. This has proved to be the case (Saloner, 2017).

15.11 The Stepped-Care Approach

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

15-7 Describe how the models of causes of substance use disorders have influenced treatment approaches

Our discussion in this chapter has focused on changes in patterns of alcohol and drug use and how they happen. Several main points have emerged from the discussion. Change may occur in many different ways and may or may not involve the use of professional treatment resources. Treatment itself consists of several different ways to help people reach different goals that relate to how they function in different parts of their lives, and it occurs in several different settings. Some treatment approaches or techniques have a stronger scientific base to support

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

their effectiveness than do others. Therefore, people follow numerous pathways to change; some pathways involving professional treatment have more scientific support than others, and some seem better suited to the needs and goals of any given person. Finally, we have learned that, when we discuss professional treatment in the United States, what is accessible to individuals primarily depended on their personal income and insurance coverage until the passage of the Affordable Care Act. At least in the United States, economics has been a major factor driving the pronounced trend toward briefer and less intense treatments conducted in outpatient settings.

This summary reflects major recent changes in alcohol and drug treatment services in the United States. Until the middle to late 1980s, professional alcohol and drug treatment was delivered with a "one-size-fits-all" approach. As we said earlier, insurance companies typically covered an episode of 28-day inpatient treatment with few questions asked. That era is over, but what is next? Is there a general approach to follow that offers the most effective and efficient treatment to people at any given time that they seek it? When individuals seek professional treatment, one model to follow in finding the services needed is called the "stepped-care approach," which has been an effective heuristic in guiding the treatment of other health-related disorders, such as hypertension (Sobell & Sobell, 2000).

According to Sobell and Sobell (2000, pp. 573–574), in the stepped-care approach, the selection of any treatment is guided by three principles: (1) Treatment should be individualized with regard to the client's needs and problems; (2) the treatment selected should be consistent with the current knowledge about effectiveness; and (3) the treatment that is chosen should be the least restrictive (considering the physical effects of treatment on the client and the client's lifestyle and resources). A consequence of the third principle is that more intensive treatments are reserved for more severe problems.

These three principles apply to the selection of both initial treatment and subsequent treatments. What happens after the initial treatment is selected and begun is based on monitoring the clients' progress toward achieving their goals. If clients show improvement, then a treatment may be continued, decreased in frequency or intensity, or stopped. If there is no change or the clients show a decreased level of functioning, then a treatment may be changed in frequency or intensity, or a new treatment may be tried. Decisions about treatment are based mainly on clients' performances relevant to their treatment goals.

The stepped-care approach seems simple in principle but may be complex in application. To use this approach in real clinical settings, several questions have to be considered. Are any scientifically supported treatments available for an individual's needs at a given time? Will an individual accept the treatment indicated by the stepped-care approach? What is "improvement"? When is behavior "stable"?

Despite these and other difficult questions, the stepped-care approach fits well with our current knowledge about change in patterns of alcohol and drug use and about the economics of treatment delivery. Stepped care fits what we know because it fosters a scientifically based, individualized delivery of effective treatment in the most efficient, least restrictive, and least expensive way. Indeed, major forces in addiction treatment, represented by the model of "addiction treatment matching" of the American Society of Addiction Medicine (Gastfriend, 2003) and the substance use disorder treatment guidelines of the U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Health Care System, take a stepped-care approach. Importantly, the stepped-care approach is entirely consistent with the approach to treatment of substance use disorders that guided relevant stipulations of the Affordable Care Act (Humphreys & McLellan, 2010).

Summary

- Readiness or commitment to change is an important consideration in treatment. One model of this process is the stages of change model.
- As with nicotine dependence, people with substance use disorders change these problem behaviors on their own quite frequently. This is known as spontaneous remission of the substance use patterns.
- The self-help groups Alcoholics Anonymous and Narcotics Anonymous are major resources in helping people who have alcohol and drug use disorders, respectively.
- Other self-help groups, presented as alternatives to AA, also are becoming more popular. Two examples are SMART and Secular Organizations for Sobriety (SOS).
- The model of etiology of alcohol and drug use disorder that a treatment is based on affects its design. We review five models in this chapter: moral, American disease, biological, social learning, and sociocultural.
- The biopsychosocial model of etiology addresses the inadequacy of single-factor models by combining the major types of factors that seem to influence the development of alcohol and drug use disorders.
- Treatments have aims or goals. In alcohol and drug treatment, goals typically follow from a thorough assessment and refer to a person's use of alcohol and drugs and to other areas of life functioning.
- It has been standard practice to specify abstinence from alcohol or other drugs as the major outcome goal for a treatment. However, some argue that moderate, nonproblem use of alcohol (and where legally relevant, marijuana) is a reasonable outcome goal for some patients.
- Alcohol treatment can be classified broadly into three categories of settings: hospital, intermediate, and outpatient. Within each setting, a wide variety of services may be offered.
- FDA-approved pharmacological treatment of alcohol use disorder includes medication to manage withdrawal from alcohol, alcohol-sensitizing drugs, drugs that alter the reinforcing properties of alcohol, and drugs that manage alcohol craving.
- Overall, no one treatment for alcohol use disorder seems to be superior to others, but staying in treatment is associated with better outcomes. Individual treatments may be more effective if they are matched to patients' characteristics.
- It has proved difficult to conduct controlled outcome research on self-help groups. What research has been done suggests that AA helps some people but not everybody.
- Settings of drug treatment have traditionally been defined by treatment of heroin misuse, but those who misuse other drugs now also appear in most of these settings. Traditionally, drug treatment settings include detoxification, methadone maintenance, residential, and outpatient. As with alcohol treatment, a wide variety of treatment services may be offered in a given setting.
- FDA-approved pharmacotherapy of dependence on opiate drugs includes managing drug withdrawal, replacing one opiate (e.g., heroin) with another one that is less addictive (methadone), and using antagonist drugs (e.g., naltrexone for opioids).
- Research shows that staying in residential or non-methadone outpatient drug treatment is associated with reduced substance use and a more socially productive lifestyle. Drug treatment research would benefit from more studies of patient–treatment matching.
- Drug and alcohol treatment providers have found that a large percentage of their patients misuse multiple substances. This has caused a change in

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the thinking that drug and alcohol treatment are independent efforts. Rather, there is wide recognition of the need for settings that accommodate those who use multiple substances and for understanding common aspects of the behaviors involving misuse.

- There has been a major increase in recognition that individuals who show up for alcohol or drug treatment may have major psychiatric disorders. One approach to treating these individuals uses psychotropic medications.
- The challenging problem of relapse has received a lot of research attention in the last several decades. This work has resulted in treatment applications called relapse prevention.
- Financial factors, especially health insurance coverage, have had great influence on the type and accessibility of alcohol and drug treatment. In the United States, the Affordable Care Act has greatly increased access to substance use disorders treatment for millions of U.S. citizens.
- Stepped care is one approach to professional treatment selection that integrates current knowledge about alcohol and drug treatment effectiveness and the conditions under which it is delivered.

Answers to ***"What Do You Think?"***

1. The process of changing a problem behavior seems to be different for everyone.
   F *According to one model, called the stages of change, self-change and change resulting from treatment can be characterized by progression through discrete steps or stages.*
2. Treatment is needed to change patterns of alcohol and drug misuse or dependence.
   F *Research shows that spontaneous remission of the substance use disorders occurs, and it seems to be the most common way that change in problem substance use occurs.*
3. Alcoholics Anonymous is a religious society that requires one to adopt Western religious beliefs.
   F *Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) does not have a religious affiliation. However, AA emphasizes people with alcohol use disorder have lost control over alcohol and need the assistance of a greater power in recovery.*
4. It is generally agreed that substance use disorders are caused by psychological disorders.
   F *Psychological theories are one explanation of the etiology of substance use disorders, but there also are biological and sociocultural theories. A theory that incorporates all three approaches seems to have the best chance of providing an adequate explanation of etiology.*
5. Assessment typically is thought to be essential to good treatment.
   T *It is virtually universal in professional treatment contexts that assessment of the individual precedes any formally defined treatment activities.*
6. The only goal of any importance in alcohol and drug treatment is the reduction of substance use.
   F *Substance use goals indeed are important, but goals that relate to other areas of life functioning, such as psychological or occupational, also are important.*
7. Abstinence from alcohol is a mandatory goal of alcohol treatment.
   F *Although the predominant assumption in U.S. and Canadian treatment programs is that abstinence is mandatory, there is evidence that certain individuals can modify their drinking patterns to stable, moderate, nonproblem use.*
8. Methadone maintenance seems to be an effective treatment for more severe heroin use disorder.
   T *A lot of research has shown that staying in methadone treatment results in reduced opiate use and other related problem behaviors such as criminal activity.*
9. Today, there are good reasons for rigid boundaries between what we call alcohol treatment and drug treatment.
   F *With the large percentage of individuals presenting for treatment who misuse more than one substance, the reasons for segregating at least some settings of alcohol and drug treatment are not compelling.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

10. Treating patients who have co-occurring substance use and another psychiatric disorder is straightforward.
    F *Individuals with dual diagnoses have complex and extensive treatment needs.*
11. Relapse is such a long-standing problem in alcohol and drug treatment that we can do little about it.
    F *Relapse is a long-standing problem, but as a result of research and theory over the last several decades, methods to prevent relapse have been developed and are in use.*
12. Professional treatment for substance use disorders is freely available to anyone who wants it.
    F *Until now in the United States, major economic barriers came between treatment and some of the people who needed and wanted it. The Affordable Care Act has reduced that concern considerably.*

Key Terms

aftercare
counseling
disulfiram
levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM)
milieu treatment
personality disorders
polymorphism
precision medicine
psychological treatment
psychotherapy
recovery
sociopathy
spontaneous remission
treatment
treatment effects
treatment outcome research

Essays/Thought Questions

1. Several studies have shown that alcohol misuse, including binge drinking, and other substance misuse increased during the 2020 pandemic. At the same time, many treatment centers had to close down or limit in-person counseling. Some centers adopted virtual counseling, restructured their programming, or eliminated visits from family. What do you think are the negative and positive outcomes from the sudden shift to virtual care?
2. What do you think are some of the reasons that self-help groups might aid some people in their efforts to change their alcohol or other drug use?
3. What would you tell a friend who is seeking your guidance in identifying a treatment program for their substance use disorder? What factors would you tell them are important to take into account when making such a decision?
4. If no one treatment for alcohol or other drug use disorders has been found to be effective for everyone, do the available formal treatments for these disorders have any value?

Suggested Readings

Fletcher, A. M. (2001). *Sober for good*. Houghton Mifflin Co.

Leshner, A. I. (1999). Science-based views of drug addiction and its treatment. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 282*, 1314–1318.

Miller, W. R., & C'de Baca, J. (2001). *Quantum change*. Guilford Press.

Rogers, E. M. (2003). *Diffusion of information* (5th ed.). Free Press.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter, you will be able to…

16-1 Compare and contrast primary, secondary, and tertiary prevention of substance misuse

16-2 Discuss why societal efforts have largely focused on treatment of substance misuse rather than prevention of substance misuse

16-3 Describe the three models of prevention of substance misuse

16-4 Analyze each of the three models of prevention in terms of their effectiveness in contributing to the prevention of substance misuse

16-5 Explain the broad domains of the National Institute on Drug Abuse's prevention principles

16-6 Summarize current trends in prevention activities

16-7 Evaluate the current topics in prevention as to the likelihood of their effectiveness in reducing substance misuse

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CHAPTER

16

Prevention of Substance Misuse

Defining Prevention

Models of Prevention

- Sociocultural Model
- Distribution of Consumption Model
- Proscriptive Model

Principles of Drug Misuse Prevention

Current Topics in Prevention

- Education and Mass Media Efforts
- Affect-Oriented Programs
- Alternative Behaviors and Resistance-Skills Training
- Temperament-Based Interventions
- Worksite Programs
- Programs for College Students

Closing Comments on Prevention

- Summary

What Do You Think? True or False?

Answers are given at the end of the chapter.

___ 1. Primary prevention includes interventions to treat people who are beyond the early stages of substance misuse or dependence.

___ 2. One strength of the sociocultural model of prevention is its emphasis on reducing the physical problems associated with alcohol consumption.

___ 3. Raising the price of alcohol relative to disposable income and limiting the hours of operation for bars are examples of prevention strategies based on the distribution of consumption model.

___ 4. The proscriptive model of prevention, which involves prohibiting the availability of drugs and promoting abstention from use, has proven to be the most effective of the three major models of prevention.

___ 5. Warning labels on alcoholic beverages note the risks associated with binge drinking.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

___ 6. Research evidence indicates that mass media prevention strategies do not result in significant changes in patterns of alcohol or drug use.

___ 7. The primary goal of affect-oriented prevention programs is to increase the individual's knowledge base regarding drugs and alcohol.

___ 8. Research evidence has documented the effectiveness of DARE, the most popular school-based drug prevention program.

___ 9. The focus of most workplace prevention programs is primary prevention.

___10. Workplace prevention programs help to avoid losses of employee productivity due to substance misuse.

___11. The idea of holding people who serve alcohol responsible for the patrons' behavior if they become intoxicated is a recent development in drinking moderation strategies.

The preceding chapters included a great amount of information on alcohol and drugs, their actions, and their use and misuse. The previous chapter concerned the treatment of problems associated with substance use. This brings us to our final chapter, which focuses on the prevention of substance use problems.

It may seem curious that we discuss preventing drug misuse in the last and not the first chapter of this text. After all, you might say, if the focus of society and government were on prevention, might material on drug misuse be unnecessary? Unfortunately, professionals and funding sources historically have not made prevention a high priority. The reasons for this are not certain, but two possibilities stand out. First is that past prevention efforts have tended to yield only modest influences in changing patterns of drug use. Second is that current, ongoing substance misuse is dramatically visible and thus receives a more rapid response in personnel and financial resources. Whether this approach is shortsighted is a question that is often and strongly debated.

Although prevention continues to receive less attention and fewer resources than treatment, the profile of prevention has been higher over the past 2 decades than perhaps ever before. There are several reasons for this. One is the continuing influence, from decades past, of the contribution of substance use to the spread of AIDS. Individuals who use intravenous drugs are one of the largest groups to have contracted AIDS in the United States and in Europe. Furthermore, being under the influence of alcohol or other drugs in some cases may lead individuals to engage in unsafe sexual practices, increasing the risk of HIV transmission. More recently, there has been a greater prioritizing of prevention in light of the changing policies on marijuana availability. As a result, federal, state, and private foundation resources have been increasingly used to fund projects designed to prevent substance use.

Most people agree that prevention efforts should—indeed, must—be an important component of any comprehensive approach to addressing the problem of substance misuse. In this chapter, we first provide an overview of definitions of prevention. The major models of prevention and their implications are then discussed. We also provide examples of several types of prevention projects and their outcomes. The chapter closes with some comments on the prospects for future work in prevention.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

16.1 Defining Prevention

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-1 Compare and contrast primary, secondary, and tertiary prevention of substance misuse

16-2 Discuss why societal efforts have largely focused on treatment of substance misuse rather than prevention of substance misuse

Prevention in this context pertains broadly to the avoidance or alleviation of problems associated with substance use. This relatively straightforward definition opens the door to a variety of potential goals for prevention efforts. For example, the goal of prevention efforts aimed at illegal drug use is generally to stop its occurrence. An alternative or additional goal of such activities might be to minimize the effects of any illegal drug use that does occur (a harm reduction approach; see Drugs and Culture Box 16.5). Then the approaches chosen for implementation probably would be different. Therefore, when we speak of prevention, it is important to identify what is being prevented, whether it is onset of use, continued use, negative effects on society, health problems, or something else.

primary prevention Attempts to avoid substance use or misuse before it has a chance to occur.

Prevention of substance misuse has traditionally been divided into three types of intervention. The first is **primary prevention**, which pertains to the avoidance of substance misuse before it has a chance to occur. One goal of primary prevention is to preclude the initial use of a substance. If an individual never begins to use a drug, then they will never engage in substance misuse. This thinking in part underlies the "Just Say No" advertising effort used to encourage young people to turn down invitations to use drugs. Another goal of primary prevention for some substances is the development of responsible attitudes and substance use behaviors, such as responsible drinking behaviors. A number of posters and public service announcements on television have emphasized, for example, the need not to drive after drinking or not to let friends drive while intoxicated.

secondary prevention Interventions designed to prevent substance use problems just as the early signs of misuse begin to appear.

tertiary prevention Treatment interventions with people well beyond the early stages of substance misuse or dependence.

Secondary prevention refers to interventions applied when substance use problems already have begun to appear. This type of prevention is analogous to early treatment in that interventions are used when problems are first surfacing. Secondary prevention is frequently used in the legal response to substance misuse. For example, people arrested for driving under the influence of alcohol often are referred to alcohol education courses designed to decrease the likelihood of the people drinking and driving again. Similarly, in some parts of the country, educational programs are used with those first arrested for drug possession. In each case, the emphasis is on nipping the problem in the bud, as it first appears. Central to such efforts, of course, is the early identification of these drug problems.

> *"It's easier to stop a moving bus than to stop doing drugs. Don't start and you won't have to stop."*
>
> Poster displayed in buses, subways, and bus shelters by the Partnership for a Drug-Free Greater New York

The third form of prevention, called **tertiary prevention**, includes interventions used in treating people who are beyond the early stages of substance misuse or dependence. The goals of tertiary prevention are essentially to terminate use of the substance and thus avoid further deterioration in the person's functioning. Tertiary prevention and substance misuse treatment (see Chapter 15) are comparable activities, and prevention efforts are more appropriately viewed as being either primary or secondary in nature. In the remainder of this chapter, we accordingly emphasize primary and secondary prevention activities.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Create a table and list the characteristics of primary, secondary, and tertiary prevention.
2. Give an example of a program that would be considered to be primary, secondary, and tertiary prevention.

16.2 Models of Prevention

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-3 Describe the three models of prevention of substance misuse

16-4 Analyze each of the three models of prevention in terms of their effectiveness in contributing to the prevention of substance misuse

Over years of much debate and some research, three major prevention models have evolved: the sociocultural model, the distribution of consumption model, and the proscriptive model. In reading about these models, you will notice that the philosophy underlying each model has diverse implications for what approaches are recommended to prevent substance use problems.

Sociocultural Model

The sociocultural, or social science, framework to understanding prevention posits that social norms directly influence the use and misuse of psychoactive substances. This model has been used primarily in efforts to prevent alcohol misuse, although the model also has implications for the prevention of other substance misuse, which we describe later in this section. When applied to drinking behavior, the model consists of three basic components (Blane, 1976):

1. An emphasis on the culture's normative structure
2. A need to integrate drinking into socially meaningful activities
3. A focus on providing for the gradual socialization of drinking behavior

As you can see, prevention efforts derived from this model strive to influence the entire climate of drinking within the culture.

One of the strongest proponents of the sociocultural model is Rupert Wilkinson (1970), who argues that alcohol use can be affected by planned policy measures. Wilkinson notes identifiable patterns of alcohol consumption that correspond to low rates of problematic drinking, and he thinks these patterns can be used as guides for ingraining altered drinking patterns in the culture.

In his 1970 seminal work, which remains applicable today, Wilkinson identified five proposals for modifying drinking patterns culturally. First is the need to have within the culture a low level of emotionalism about drinking and at the same time a lack of ambivalence about alcohol use. Emotionalism surrounding drinking, according to Wilkinson, merely creates tension and produces an environment in which discussion and change in drinking behavior cannot occur. A more measured and nonreactive approach will have the added benefit of reducing societal ambivalence about drinking and thus provide more clarity about drinking norms.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

SOPA Images/LightRocket/Getty Images

Posters are widely used to communicate messages about the dangers of alcohol and drug misuse. Sometimes these posters deal with specific drugs. This poster, for example, focuses on the misuse of prescription drugs.

A second proposal of Wilkinson's sociocultural model is that there must be a distinction between drinking per se and unacceptable drinking. The notion here is that acceptable drinking and unacceptable drinking both should be clearly defined. Unfortunately, arriving at such definitions is not easy.

Wilkinson's third point is that after identifying what unacceptable drinking is, there should be firm taboos on its occurrence.

A fourth and central proposal is that drinking should be integrated into a broader social context; that is, alcohol consumption should not be the focus of activity at any given gathering but instead should be adjunctive to other activities.

Finally, Wilkinson proposes that society should allow the serving of alcohol only when food is also available. The belief here is that when food is available, alcohol consumption will not necessarily be the sole focus of activity. Furthermore, food slows the body's absorption of alcohol and potentially reduces the rate of unacceptable drinking.

Taken together, these proposals designate acceptable and unacceptable forms of drinking and thus clearly identify desired patterns of responsible drinking. These patterns of drinking then should be integrated into routine family and other social activities. It is noteworthy that the goal of the sociocultural approach is not the cessation of drinking but rather changes in social norms regarding drinking. Therefore, the approach is not a prohibitionist strategy, and some have argued that a fault of the sociocultural approach is that it may encourage drinking.

A major criticism of the sociocultural model is that it may not be widely applicable. Many countries have diverse cultures and subcultures, and customs and values that fit one of them may not be amenable to or accepted by another. A second criticism is that the sociocultural approach, while emphasizing moderate consumption, fails to account for the value and pleasure many people attach to heavier drinking. A third concern with the model is that it assumes attitudinal changes in the culture will result in the desired behavioral changes. There is no specification of the mechanisms by which that change will occur, however, and past research has provided no strong indication that attitudinal

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

change leads to behavioral change. Finally, it is argued that the sociocultural model does not adequately consider physical problems associated with alcohol consumption (e.g., cancers and liver and stomach ailments). In fact, some think that use of the sociocultural model may result in a greater prevalence of such physical problems, even if social problems are eliminated, simply by virtue of the widespread use of alcohol (Blane, 1976; Nirenberg & Miller, 1984; Skirrow & Sawka, 1987).

DRUG DEALERS DON'T CARE...
DO YOU?
DRUGS WRECK YOUNG LIVES...
Make a stand and help keep drugs off our streets. Call Crimestoppers anonymously now.
0800 555 111
CRIMESTOPPERS
0800 555 111

geogphotos/Alamy stock photo

This United Kingdom billboard is part of a prevention campaign to warn teenagers about the dangers of drug use and of interacting with drug dealers.

Despite these concerns, the sociocultural model remains an influential and frequently used strategy. When it is applied, the strategy has a broad scope. Examples of its applications include the advertising and education approaches to the problem of driving after drinking. The sociocultural model has been applied predominantly in the context of alcohol use problems, but it also has been a cornerstone to many prevention efforts geared toward problems associated with other drug use. As noted earlier, an example is the "Just Say No" campaign, which encourages people nationwide, but particularly young people, to refuse offers or temptations to use drugs. Another example is the advertising efforts of the Partnership for Drug-Free Kids. The partnership's campaign, which recently has focused on opioid misuse, vaping, marijuana, MDMA, and other drugs, seeks to decrease the social acceptance of drug use among young people by alerting individuals those who use or potentially use to the risks of using drugs. Most of its communications are presented on television and in magazines and newspapers. To date, the effectiveness of these programs has not been documented. Furthermore, the Partnership for Drug-Free Kids has been criticized for previously accepting donations from tobacco and alcohol companies. While the organization continues to receive funds from pharmaceutical companies, they do so as they believe "pharmaceutical companies need to be part of the solution." The organization stresses they remain independent in their work and has ceased accepting funds from those pharmaceutical companies who were defendants in the Ohio multidistrict litigation trial concerning the opioid crisis. The only major difference between using the sociocultural model with drugs as opposed to alcohol is that the former application focuses on inculcating in society a norm of no use, as opposed to responsible use.

Distribution of Consumption Model

The second major model of prevention is the distribution of consumption approach. This model has been studied predominantly in the context of prevention or reduction of alcohol problems, although efforts have been directed at extending it to other drugs (Skirrow & Sawka, 1987). The model is based on research showing a fairly consistent statistical distribution of alcohol consumption across cultures. The pioneering work in the development of the model was conducted by the French mathematician Sully Ledermann in the 1950s.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"There is still a misguided notion that people can experiment with drugs with impunity. But we can't predict who will go on to develop dependence, and neither can the individual. It's essential that we get a consistent message across to young people that experimentation has its great risks."

Dr. Charles Schuster, National Institute on Drug Abuse Addiction Research Center (*The Journal*, October 1993)

The distribution of consumption model has three central propositions (Rush & Gliksman, 1986; Schmidt & Popham, 1978). The first is that the proportion of those using alcohol heavily in a given population is positively correlated with the mean level of alcohol consumption in that population. That is, the number of those who drink heavily in a society increases with the society's per capita consumption. Given this relationship, it is predicted that a decrease in average alcohol consumption within a given culture will be accompanied by a corresponding decrease in the proportion of those using alcohol heavily.

The second proposition of the distribution of consumption model is that heavy alcohol consumption increases the probability of negative alcohol-related consequences, such as mental/emotional, physical, and social problems. If the population's mean consumption increases, and thus raises the number of those who drink heavily, a corresponding increase in these negative consequences is anticipated.

Finally, the model's third proposition is that societies should attempt to reduce the negative consequences of alcohol consumption by restricting the availability of alcohol. It is assumed that restricting alcohol availability, especially but not exclusively through procedures designed to raise the price of alcohol relative to disposable income, will lower per capita consumption and, correspondingly, the consequences associated with alcohol misuse. Other approaches are limiting the hours that bars and taverns can be open, controlling retail sales of alcohol, and raising the minimum drinking age.

Although it is a well-regarded approach to prevention, the distribution of consumption model has its limitations (Room & Livingston, 2017). Some think the model is purely descriptive and does not provide any insights into the reasons why people drink or how a person's drinking environment may contribute to drinking behavior. Skog (1985) has addressed this problem in more detail and noted that sociocultural variables such as the drinking environment actually can be incorporated into the distribution of consumption model. Whitehead (1975) has gone further in his discussion of the ways in which the sociocultural and distribution of consumption models might be used together.

Of more concern to critics is that "normal" drinkers in a population may react differently than "heavy" drinkers to efforts to reduce or restructure alcohol availability (Nirenberg & Miller, 1984). Again, the concern is that sociocultural and psychological variables are not included in the distribution of consumption model. For example, differences between those who drink moderately and those misusing alcohol may be crucial in predicting drinking behavior, with those misusing alcohol perhaps being less likely to respond to price increases and other policies designed to decrease per capita consumption. Also, there may be a point at which these policies on restructuring alcohol use have no benefit. If, for example, the price of alcohol rises too much, the result may be an increase in bootlegging and home production of alcohol and in the mystique surrounding alcohol use (Skirrow & Sawka, 1987). As you can see, the task of reducing per capita consumption is complex.

HUGHES Herve/Hemis / Alamy stock photo

The road sign shown above is from a series designed by and geared toward Australian Aborigines to provide caution about the dangers of alcohol and other substances. Placed at the entrance of a Native Australian reserve, it indicates that alcohol is forbidden. The term *grog* originally was used to describe a rum beverage diluted with water, but it is now used more generally to reference an alcoholic beverage.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Proscriptive Model

This third prevention model is the most basic in principle. It takes a moral stance in addressing substance use problems. The guiding theme is that if there is no use of the substance, then there can be no problem. If a person does use the substance, that use is not seen as a societal problem but instead as a product of a person's character flaw. The goals of the proscriptive model are prohibition of availability and abstention from use (Skirrow & Sawka, 1987).

The proscriptive model has been applied to both alcohol and other drug use. The most important application to alcohol use was Prohibition in the United States from 1920 to 1933. The model has been applied more consistently in the context of drug use, however. For decades, there has been a strong proscriptive approach to drug use, generally focused on marijuana and heroin and more recently on cocaine. The proscriptive model in the 1930s and 1940s was most evident in films and newspaper and magazine articles aimed at mass audiences. Sensationalized stories about marijuana-induced crime sprees were commonly found in newspapers, and similar themes are evident in films from that era, such as *Reefer Madness, Assassin of Youth*, and *Marihuana: Weed with Roots in Hell*. Then, as now, the key to such campaigns has been that "good" people do not use drugs (ibid.).

Although the proscriptive model remains popular with some, it has not made any significant contribution to the prevention of substance misuse problems. It is well known that Prohibition was less than successful in alleviating problems associated with alcohol use, and other substance use problems have also continued. Perhaps the major difficulty with the model is that it is too simple to tackle a complex problem.

Bettmann/Getty Images

An example of the application of the proscriptive model of prevention in the United States was Prohibition (1920–1933). Public reaction to Prohibition was mixed. In this picture, taken in the 1920s, a group of women stand outside a house with signs inviting others to join their anti-Prohibition club.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 16.1

The Amethyst Initiative: Lowering the Legal Drinking Age to Decrease Alcohol Problems?

The Amethyst Initiative, launched in 2008, represents a movement by over 100 college presidents across the country to foster "an informed and dispassionate debate" (The Amethyst Initiative, www.theamethystinitiative.org) on lowering the drinking age from 21 to 18 years of age as a strategy for reducing binge drinking on college campuses. The initiative also invites "new ideas about the best ways to prepare young adults to make responsible decisions about alcohol." (The word *amethyst*, by the way, is derived from the ancient Greek words meaning "not" [a-] and "intoxicated" [methustos]. According to legend, amethysts protected their owners from drunkenness.)

The foundation of the Amethyst Initiative is the argument that the minimum drinking age of 21, established in the mid-1980s by the National Minimum Drinking Age Act, has not served to decrease drinking- or alcohol-related problems among college students. According to their statement, the following were offered as premises:

> A culture of dangerous, clandestine "binge-drinking"—often conducted off-campus—has developed.
>
> Alcohol education that mandates abstinence as the only legal option has not resulted in significant constructive behavioral change among our students.
>
> Adults under 21 are deemed capable of voting, signing contracts, serving on juries, and enlisting in the military but are told they are not mature enough to have a beer.
>
> By choosing to use fake IDs, students make ethical compromises that erode respect for the law. (The Amethyst Initiative, www.theamethystinitiative.org)

A number of organizations and individuals are strongly opposed to the Amethyst Initiative, including Mothers Against Drunk Driving (MADD), the Governors Highway Safety Association, and several university presidents. The primary point they argue is that lowering the drinking age will result in greater alcohol consumption, more alcohol-related injuries, and more alcohol-related fatalities among those aged between 18 and 21.

There is no question, of course, that binge drinking on college campuses is a significant public health concern, and there should be focused debate on strategies for decreasing binge drinking. The specific proposal to lower the drinking age from 21 to 18 is understandably controversial. In pondering this issue, consider the following questions and issues.

First, raising the drinking age from 18 to 21 has been associated with significant decreases in alcohol-related motor vehicle accidents and fatalities in this age group (Fell et al., 2009; Wagenaar & Toomey, 2002). It is likely that lowering the drinking age from 21 to 18 will be associated with an increase in such accidents and fatalities. Relevant to this prediction, a study from New Zealand found that alcohol-related crashes rose 12% among 18- to 19-year-olds and 14% among 15- to 17-year-olds when the drinking age was lowered to 18 (Kypri et al., 2006).

Second, it is not clear that lowering the drinking age will decrease binge drinking among college students. In fact, there is the possibility that binge drinking will increase. For example, one potential scenario is that the rate of binge drinking remains unchanged among those who already drink. At the same time, those currently between 18 and 20 who are not binge drinking might show an initiation of drinking, and of binge drinking, as a function of alcohol consumption becoming legal for their age group.

Third, it is likely that many college students who engage in binge drinking arrived at college with a previously established pattern of binge drinking. Changing the drinking age will not impact those individuals, who would have established this pattern prior to age 18.

Fourth, the debate would need to consider the impact of lowering the minimum drinking age on youth under the age of 18. A minimum drinking age of 18 would mean that high school seniors, who typically turn 18 during their senior year, would be able to purchase and consume alcohol (and illegally purchase it for younger high school students). This could have the unintended effect of facilitating alcohol consumption by younger adolescents. This has implications for the development of alcohol dependence, as research indicates that individuals who begin drinking prior to the age of 15 are four times more likely to meet the criteria for alcohol dependence at some point in their lives than are those who initiate drinking at an older age (Grant & Dawson, 1998).

Taken together, there should be strong encouragement of debate on strategies that have the potential for reducing binge drinking (and more generally facilitating responsible drinking decisions). It is not clear that lowering the drinking age will reduce binge drinking. Further, lowering the drinking age very clearly will result in an increase in alcohol-related motor vehicle accidents and fatalities and overall alcohol consumption in the 18- to 20-year-old age group (DeJong & Blanchette, 2014; Fell et al., 2016).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REVIEW

1. Compare and contrast the three models of prevention: sociocultural, distribution of consumption, and proscriptive.
2. Summarize the criticisms of each model of prevention.

16.3 Principles of Drug Misuse Prevention

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-5 Explain the broad domains of the National Institute on Drug Abuse's prevention principles

The National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA) has developed a series of "prevention principles" relevant to the implementation of prevention programs for children and adolescents. The 16 principles, which are outlined in Table 16.1, were based on numerous research studies on the origins of drug misuse behaviors and the common elements found in effective prevention programs. NIDA issued these principles for parents, educators, and community leaders to use in their thinking, planning, selection, and delivery of drug misuse prevention programs.

As can be seen in Table 16.1, the principles fall under several broad domains. The first domain focuses on risk factors and protective factors, the second on the planning of prevention programs (including family programs, school-based programs, or broader community programs), and the third on the actual delivery of prevention programs.

TABLE 16.1 Prevention Principles

Risk Factors and Protective Factors	
Principle 1:	Prevention programs should enhance protective factors and reverse or reduce risk factors.
Principle 2:	Prevention programs should address all forms of drug abuse, alone or in combination, including the underage use of legal drugs (e.g., tobacco or alcohol); the use of illegal drugs (e.g., marijuana or heroin); and the inappropriate use of legally obtained substances (e.g., inhalants), prescription medications, or over-the-counter drugs.
Principle 3:	Prevention programs should address the type of drug abuse problems in the local community, target modifiable risk factors, and strengthen identified protective factors.
Principle 4:	Prevention programs should be tailored to address risks specific to population or audience characteristics, such as age, gender, and ethnicity, to improve program effectiveness.
Prevention Planning	
Family Programs	
Principle 5:	Family-based prevention programs should enhance family bonding and relationships and include parenting skills; practice in developing, discussing, and enforcing family policies on substance abuse; and training in drug education and information.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

School Programs

Principle 6:	Prevention programs can be designed to intervene as early as *preschool* to address risk factors for drug abuse, such as aggressive behavior, poor social skills, and academic difficulties.
Principle 7:	Prevention programs for *elementary school children* should target improving academic and social-emotional learning to address risk factors for drug abuse, such as early aggression, academic failure, and school dropout. Education should focus on the following skills: self-control, emotional awareness, communication, social problem solving, and academic support, especially in reading.
Principle 8:	Prevention programs for *middle or junior high and high school students* should increase academic and social competence with the following skills: study habits and academic support, communication, peer relationships, self-efficacy and assertiveness, drug-resistance skills, reinforcement of anti-drug attitudes, and strengthening of personal commitments against drug abuse.

Community Programs

Principle 9:	Prevention programs aimed at general populations at key transition points, such as the transition to middle school, can produce beneficial effects even among high-risk families and children. Such interventions do not single out risk populations and therefore reduce labeling and promote bonding to school and community.
Principle 10:	Community prevention programs that combine two or more effective programs, such as family-based and school-based programs, can be more effective than a single program alone.
Principle 11:	Community prevention programs reaching populations in multiple settings—for example, schools, clubs, faith-based organizations, and the media—are most effective when they present consistent, community-wide messages in each setting.

Prevention Program Delivery

Principle 12:	When communities adapt programs to match their needs, community norms, or differing cultural requirements, they should retain core elements of the original research-based intervention, which include: structure (how the program is organized and constructed); *content* (the information, skills, and strategies of the program); and *delivery* (how the program is adapted, implemented, and evaluated).
Principle 13:	Prevention programs should be long term with repeated interventions (e.g., booster programs) to reinforce the original prevention goals. Research shows that the benefits from middle school prevention programs diminish without follow-up programs in high school.
Principle 14:	Prevention programs should include teacher training on good classroom management practices, such as rewarding appropriate student behavior. Such techniques help foster students' positive behavior, achievement, academic motivation, and school bonding.
Principle 15:	Prevention programs are most effective when they employ interactive techniques, such as peer discussion groups and parent role-playing, that allow for active involvement in learning about drug abuse and reinforcing skills.
Principle 16:	Research-based prevention programs can be cost-effective. Similar to earlier research, recent research shows that each dollar invested in prevention will bring about a savings of up to $10 in treatment for alcohol or other substance abuse.

Source: NIDA (2020).

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The release of these prevention principles has been described as a landmark event in prevention science (Bukoski, 2003). In this regard, the principles summarized in practical terms what years of scientific study reveals about the nature of substance use and misuse and how to prevent it. As such, these principles have been influential in the development and implementation of a variety of prevention interventions.

REVIEW

1. Create a table and list the five broad domains of the National Institute on Drug Abuse's prevention principles. Then, summarize the principles within each domain.

16.4 Current Topics in Prevention

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

16-6 Summarize current trends in prevention activities

16-7 Evaluate the current topics in prevention as to the likelihood of their effectiveness in reducing substance misuse

Prevention efforts are being implemented on a number of fronts, and in this section, we provide an overview of several contemporary topics and programs in primary and secondary prevention. (Notice that most of these prevention activities are derived predominantly from the sociocultural model.) We preface this section by highlighting the most noteworthy trends in prevention activities today:

- Increasing focus on having family (especially parental) involvement in prevention programs.
- Including attention to resistance-skills development, specifically strategies to use in avoiding pressures to use drugs.
- Developing programs in conjunction with more broad-based community-wide strategies—for example, a school-based intervention presented in conjunction with messages communicated through mass media outlets.
- Focusing on selective programs for individuals who are at increased risk of drug use and misuse.
- Focusing attention on the "gateway" drugs. Almost all programs emphasize abstinence from all illegal substances, but some programs focus on not initiating the use of tobacco, alcohol, and marijuana in particular. These are viewed as "gateway" drugs, in that their use typically precedes the use of the so-called harder drugs such as cocaine, heroin, and LSD.
- Increasing attention to programs designed to minimize risk or negative consequences associated with any substance use that does occur. These risk-reduction programs do not sanction drug use but instead seek to minimize the negatives associated with such use for the individual and for society.
- Decreasing advertising geared toward (or readily accessible to) children and teenagers. Associated with this are efforts to reduce the positive portrayal of substance use (including smoking) in television shows and movies.

You will observe these trends in many of the programs described next.

> *"Drug users must be seen as human beings and not as criminals."*
>
> Dr. Pat Erickson, criminologist with the Toronto Addiction Research Foundation (*The Journal*, October 1993)

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Education and Mass Media Efforts

mass media
Communications designed for widespread distribution, such as advertisements, films, and printed materials.

By far the most common and pervasive approaches to substance misuse prevention have been education and **mass media** efforts. Traditionally, these programs have been aimed at adolescents and young adults, two of the more visible groups at risk for substance misuse. More recently, efforts have been made to extend these interventions to children.

The school system has been touted as an ideal setting for providing educational materials on substance use and misuse. Indeed, most states now require education about alcohol and other drugs in the school curricula. These programs have been shown to have small but beneficial effects, with a slight reduction in individuals beginning to use substances. However, these programs tend not to impact those who already are using substances.

What happens when alcohol and drug education courses are implemented? The results have been mixed. The general outcome is that students presented with educational materials do increase their knowledge about the topics covered; however, there has not been much indication that patterns of substance use change (Bangert-Drowns, 1988; Botvin, 1999; Botvin & Griffin, 2003; Cellucci, 1984; Larimer & Cronce, 2007; Tobler, 1986). Indeed, in some cases (see Kinder et al., 1980; Stuart, 1974), students who were exposed to the education program were actually found in the short run to escalate their drug use! These findings should be viewed with caution until more systematic research on education programs has been conducted, especially research on the long-term effects of these interventions. Tentatively, though, increased knowledge about alcohol and other drugs does not necessarily translate into modifications in their use.

One factor that may contribute to these discouraging results is the age at which youths are exposed to the intervention. As a result of data indicating that young children have already begun to form ideas about intoxication, drinking behavior, and alcohol effects (Dunn & Goldman, 1996; Jahoda & Cramond, 1972; Zucker et al., 1996), more attention is being placed on educational materials geared toward children in early elementary school. Presenting materials for that level of development may be more successful than trying to modify beliefs at a later age when they are more firmly established. An example is research on smoking beliefs and behavior. Chen and Winder (1986) wanted to determine the best time to apply a smoking intervention program. They surveyed more than 500 sixth, ninth, and 12th graders in a Massachusetts school system. The results showed that students are likely to respond best to a smoking education program in the sixth grade for several reasons. One is that fewer sixth graders (6.5%) described themselves as occasionally or regularly smoking than did ninth graders (21%) or 12th graders (32%). Sixth graders also reported much less peer pressure to smoke than the ninth or 12th graders, less knowledge about smoking and its effects, and less familiarity with their parents' attitudes about smoking. In addition, there were indications that many of the sixth graders surveyed were planning to smoke within the next 5 years. Consequently, aiming an education program at sixth grade students appears to hold the most promise for engendering attitudes against personal smoking.

A related trend in the area of prevention education, starting in the 1980s, has been the use of parents serving as teachers of their children. According to DuPont (1980), a former director of the National Institute on Drug Abuse, "It is ironic that after a decade of parent put-downs that we are today rediscovering that parents, who were written off as ignorant and meddlesome at best and as 'the problem' at worst, are now 'the solution' to drug problems" (p. 2). This statement might be overstating the point, but it does appear that parents can be an important—perhaps crucial—element in prevention activities. Much of this growing emphasis on parents during

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the last decade derives from the view that substance use is a family concern. These parent-focused programs seek to enhance family communication about alcohol and other drugs, to have parents model or foster either abstinence or responsible use of accepted substances (generally alcohol), and to encourage abstinence from other substances (Botvin & Botvin, 1992; Kimmel, 1976; Prinz, 2015; Spoth et al., 2015). One such program, called "The Power of Positive Parenting," includes a curriculum designed to make parents aware of the profound influence their behavior has on their children's behavior (Richmond, 1977). Children, especially in their preschool years, turn primarily to their parents when looking for models of appropriate behavior. The program aims to make parents aware of the ways they influence their children's beliefs about drugs and to help them determine what constitutes "responsible modeling" of, for example, drinking behavior. More recently, parents have been enlisted as agents in prevention efforts designed for incoming college freshmen. In one application, parents of incoming freshmen were provided with materials on talking to their teenage children about alcohol (Ichiyama et al., 2009). The parents implemented the intervention during the summer preceding their child's departure for college. The results showed that this parent-based intervention was associated with a decrease in the likelihood of transition into having a status of being one who drinks during the freshman academic year and, among women, a slower growth in drinking over the freshman year.

Broader educational efforts have been implemented using mass media technology. *Mass media* in this context refers to the widespread distribution of public service announcements (PSAs) using such vehicles as television, radio, billboards, newspaper and magazine advertisements, text messaging, and the Internet. Because mass media campaigns often involve frequent presentations of a relatively brief message (e.g., a 15-second television spot), developers of these campaigns generally create a slogan that unites the material in the various spots. Slogans of some recent campaigns are ""Talk. They Hear You." for vaping, "Game Plan (Keep Your Body Healthy)" for steroids, and "Friends Don't Let Friends Drive Drunk" for alcohol. Many of the campaigns regarding alcohol misuse in recent years have focused on decreasing the incidence of driving under the influence.

Although research on mass media campaigns has not yielded a clear picture of their effects, the programs do succeed in raising knowledge levels and increasing awareness about the use of drugs (Blane, 1988; Botvin & Botvin, 1992; Gorman, 1995; Nixon et al., 2008; Palmgreen & Donohew, 2003). Of particular note is the finding that campaigns on driving while intoxicated consistently change the knowledge level (e.g., knowing the legal definition of intoxication). As with other prevention approaches, attitude change has been found less consistently. There is no evidence, however, that general patterns of alcohol or drug use change significantly as a function of these mass media strategies. These approaches will more likely be successful if they are directed at particular substance-using groups. One example is the Montana Meth Project, designed to reduce first-time teen methamphetamine use through PSA, public policy, and community outreach. Providing research-based information concerning the risks of meth use backed by increased

Peter Horree / Alamy stock photo

Billboards and road signs are often used as part of mass media prevention efforts. This traffic sign in South Africa reminds motorists to avoid drinking and driving.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

enforcement and treatment availability has resulted in a dramatic decrease in meth use. In the 15 years of the project's existence, teenager meth use decreased by 73% and adult meth use decreased by 72%.

Taken together, education and mass media approaches continue to command the majority of resources available for prevention. Their benefits appear to be primarily in the areas of knowledge and, to a lesser extent, attitude change. Their effectiveness is likely to increase as they tailor the campaign messages and efforts to target these campaigns to particular populations of those who use drugs. And, of course, more work is needed to increase the likelihood that these approaches will result in actual changes in substance use.

Affect-Oriented Programs

values clarification A common component of affect-oriented prevention programs; typically involves exploration of one's own needs and beliefs regarding drugs.

Many prevention programs, and particularly those geared toward youths, incorporate what is called an "affective" component. This affective feature typically involves **values clarification** and decision making. Values clarification activities include self-exploration, life values assessment, and strategies for fulfilling needs that are part of those values (Hewitt, 1982). These programs provide students with general strategies for making

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 16.2

Warning Labels on Alcoholic Beverages

A form of education/mass media intervention directed at preventing alcohol-related problems is the placement of warnings at alcohol sales outlets and on alcoholic beverage containers. The idea behind the strategy is analogous to the reason labels are placed on cigarette packages.

For years, efforts to pass legislation to require alcohol warning labels had been unsuccessful, despite the endorsement of approximately a hundred health and public interest groups. However, such legislation became law in 1989. A bill passed by Congress now requires this warning on all alcohol beverage containers:

> Government Warning: (1) According to the Surgeon General, women should not drink alcoholic beverages during pregnancy because of the risk of birth defects. (2) Consumption of alcoholic beverages impairs your ability to drive a car or operate machinery and may cause health problems.

Research on warning labels suggests that there are high levels of public support for such labeling (Thomson et al., 2012) and that consumers notice the labels (Mazis et al., 1991; Scammon et al., 1991). There has been little evidence that the labels have an effect on actual drinking behavior, however (Al-hamdani, 2014; Hilton, 1993; Kersbergen & Field, 2017; MacKinnon, 1995; Thomas et al., 2014). It has been proposed that efforts be taken to evaluate the potential usefulness of warning labels in conjunction with other targeted prevention endeavors, such as specific television advertisements.

Alcoholic beverage producers are less than supportive of warning labels. They argue that the information on the labels is common knowledge and unlikely to produce changes in behavior. More basic, however, to their reservations is the issue of product liability. Some producers fear the use of the labels will open the door to lawsuits for previous use of alcohol. On the other hand, argue proponents of the labeling, not placing the labels now, at a time when research supports the warnings, may result in even more lawsuits later.

The passage of the national labeling legislation goes beyond policies that already had been in place on a smaller scale in several cities. Since 1983, New York City, Philadelphia, Washington, DC, and Columbus, Ohio, among others, have passed city ordinances requiring posting of a sign where alcohol is sold indicating the relationship between drinking during pregnancy and the incidence of birth defects. Not all alcohol producers are against warning labels. For many years before the requirement of warning labels, Walter Stephen Taylor, a winemaker at Bully Hill Vineyards in upstate New York, placed warning labels on his products. He also testified at congressional hearings in favor of such labeling.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

life choices and for applying these techniques to situations that involve alcohol or other drugs. The overall goal of the affect-oriented material is to have participants be aware of their own feelings and attitudes regarding drugs, so they can deal effectively with drug use situations according to their individual value structures.

The logic behind the use of an affective component is that thoughts, feelings, attitudes, and values regarding alcohol and drugs can be just as important in drug use situations as knowledge, and perhaps more so. As yet, we do not know the extent to which affect-oriented programs are beneficial. Unfortunately, indications to date suggest that such approaches do not have an impact on drug use behavior (Botvin, 1999; Botvin & Griffin, 2003; Larimer & Cronce, 2007). As with educational programs, there has not been much well-designed research on the effects of affect-oriented interventions. The research that has been conducted does suggest, though, that such interventions help to clarify personal views on substance use. Popular in the 1970s and 1980s, these programs are used less frequently today, although some components of the affect-oriented programs have been incorporated in modified forms into contemporary programs.

Alternative Behaviors and Resistance-Skills Training

In recent years, there has been a significant growth in prevention programs that focus on developing alternatives to drug use or on developing skills to recognize and resist drug use pressures. In developing alternatives to drug use, the objective is to provide people with the opportunity to engage in various productive activities (e.g., sports, vocational training, hobbies) that have the same or more appeal than drug use. Although this strategy makes sense in theory, evaluations of these programs have not revealed any particular benefits in terms of substance use behavior (Botvin & Botvin, 1992; Botvin & Griffin, 2003).

Resistance-skills training interventions, on the other hand, have shown more promise. As described by Flay (1985), these interventions often include some combination of the following informational and skill-building strategies:

- Developing problem-solving and decision-making skills
- Developing cognitive skills for resisting interpersonal and media-based (e.g., pro-drinking or pro-smoking) drug use messages
- Increasing self-awareness and self-esteem
- Learning nondrug use skills for dealing with anxiety and stress
- Enhancing interpersonal skills such as the ability to initiate a conversation
- Developing assertiveness skills such as the ability to express displeasure and anger and to communicate needs
- Understanding the relationship between drug use and health concerns

Typically in these programs, participants learn to be aware of social influences that lead to drug use and to use skills to resist these influences. For example, participants are exposed to strategies for refusing drugs when peers offer them. Often the programs include peers and peer leaders or coleaders. In summarizing the evaluation of resistance-skills training, Botvin and colleagues (Botvin, 1999; Botvin & Botvin, 1992; Botvin & Griffin, 2003, 2015) note some positive indications for several substances, including alcohol, marijuana, and especially cigarette smoking.

The most widely used resistance-oriented program in use today is DARE (Drug Abuse Resistance Education). The DARE curriculum, historically targeted at fifth- and sixth-grade students before they enter junior high school, has been modified

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"We talk about high-risk youth and families in the U.S., but I do not know of any continent that is not threatened by drug and alcohol abuse or misuse or any country not affected. We have youth at risk on a worldwide basis, families at risk on a worldwide basis. We have communities and institutions at risk on a worldwide basis, and we have nations at risk."

Dr. Benson Bateman, president of Human Resources Development Institute (*The Journal*, May 1993)

for use with a wider range of students. The program is based on the assumption that students must be educated to recognize the dangers of substance use and to resist subtle as well as direct pressures to use drugs. Accordingly, the program is designed to train students to recognize and resist peer and other influences to experiment with drugs. The curriculum includes 15 to 20 modules, each led by a law enforcement officer and lasting 45 to 60 minutes. Modules focus on topics such as refusal skills, risk assessment, decision making, interpersonal and communication skills, critical thinking, and alternatives to substance use. Despite its widespread use, the DARE program has not fared well in research evaluations (see review by Botvin & Griffin, 2003). In response, the DARE organization has sought to modify the program to include components that may be more successful in curtailing drug use among students exposed to the program (see Contemporary Issue Box 16.3), although not with apparent success (Caputi & McLellan, 2017).

Temperament-Based Interventions

Emerging from research in Europe, Australia, and Canada is a promising school-based brief intervention program called Preventure. The program builds upon studies indicating that a child's temperament drives their risk for subsequently developing a drug dependence problem. The program focuses on four traits uniquely associated with such risk: sensation seeking, impulsiveness, anxiety sensitivity, and hopelessness. The Preventure program provides personality-specific coping skills training to youth with these personality risk factors before the onset of alcohol and other drug use behaviors. The premise underlying this approach is that being better able to manage one's personality trait vulnerability will reduce the likelihood of using alcohol or

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 16.3

Dare We Question DARE?

Over three-quarters of the school systems in the United States have embraced the Drug Abuse Resistance Education (DARE) program, making it by far the most popular program in the nation. It has been endorsed by school officials, law enforcement agencies, and parents alike.

But is DARE getting the job done? Evaluations of the program over the past 2 decades suggest probably not. The first strong indication appeared in 1994, when Ennett et al. published their summary of several DARE evaluation studies. Their conclusion: "DARE's short-term effectiveness for reducing or preventing drug use behaviors is small." Subsequent reports have provided a similar indication (Botvin & Griffin, 2003; Caputi & McLellan, 2017; West & O'Neal, 2004). In a 1999 study by Lynam et al., at a 10-year follow-up, it was found that students who had participated in DARE while in sixth grade did not have more successful outcomes than students not exposed to DARE. Further, in a review of psychological treatments that potentially can cause harm, DARE was included because of some indications that participants may actually increase their intake of alcohol and perhaps other drugs as well (Lilienfeld, 2007).

If DARE is not the answer to helping students resist drugs, what is? The verdict there is still out, although encouraging results are emerging from evaluations of a program called LifeSkills Training (LST). The LST program, developed by Gilbert Botvin of Weill Cornell Medical College, focuses on building students' drug-resistance abilities by helping them cope better with life's pressures. It keys on skills for being independent, gaining personal control, communicating effectively, relieving anxiety, overcoming shyness, and developing healthy friendships. The program has been found to curtail students' use of a variety of substances, including alcohol, cigarettes, and marijuana (e.g., Spoth et al., 2008).

It remains to be seen whether the current enthusiasm for DARE begins to wane and whether the program ultimately is markedly revamped or replaced by programs that have research support.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

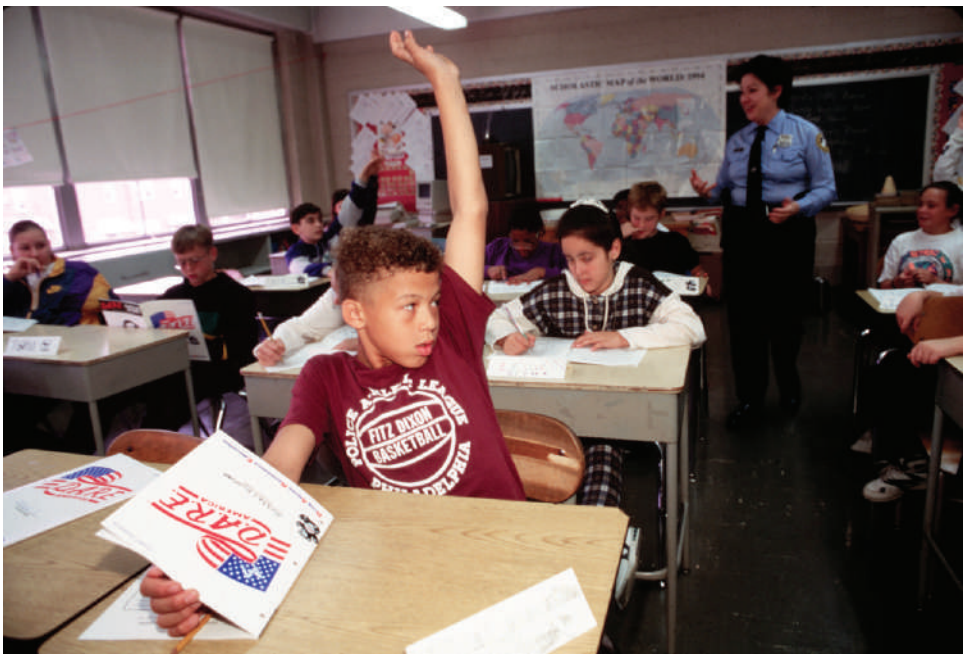
other substances to cope. When used in school settings, the intervention is administered in two 90-minute group sessions.

The research on Preventure has been positive. The intervention has been shown to decrease emotional and behavioral problems unique to the targeted risk traits and to prevent the onset or escalation of alcohol and/or drug use over follow-up periods as long as 24 to 36 months (Castellanos & Conrod, 2006; Conrod, 2016; Conrod et al., 2010, 2013; Newton et al., 2016). Taken together, the Preventure program has considerable potential for addressing alcohol and other drug use behaviors as well as other mental health outcomes.

Worksite Programs

Substance use problems among employees can be costly for employers in lost production, accidents, absenteeism, and thefts to support drug use. Indeed, the total cost to the U.S. economy attributable to substance misuse is estimated to be more than $400 billion a year, with approximately half due to alcohol misuse and the other half to other substance misuse (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2016). It has made sense to many employers to provide for early identification and intervention when an employee begins to show impairments due to drug use. Although part of the employer's motivation may be humanitarian, a central incentive is frequently to avoid losses in company productivity. The majority of the Fortune 500 companies and many smaller companies as well are using worksite programs.

Worksite prevention programs have several potential advantages. One is their service to adults who are still functioning relatively well. As Nathan (1984) notes, these people still have their jobs and are more likely to be physically, psychologically, and economically healthy compared to those who have already lost jobs because of their substance misuse. Thus, they may be in a better position to respond to prevention



Robert Fried/Alamy Stock Photo

The best-known resistance-oriented program in drug use prevention is DARE (Drug Abuse Resistance Education). The program, traditionally targeted at fifth- and sixth-grade students, has been modified for use with a wider range of students.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

opportunities. Other advantages, according to Nathan (1984), are that company employees are a captive audience, so it is easier to direct prevention-related messages to them. Employees do not have to travel outside the company to see or hear these messages. Finally, an employer implementing a program that benefits employees may improve employee morale, thus improving work performance.

One disadvantage to employers of worksite programs is the cost. Despite the possible payoff of enhanced employee functioning and reduced health care costs, some company executives are skeptical of the effectiveness of prevention programs or do not think program benefits outweigh program costs. Another problem is employees' concerns about confidentiality. Employees may hesitate to identify themselves as having problems with alcohol or other drugs for fear of being dismissed. A worksite prevention and intervention program is unlikely to be effective without stringent guidelines to protect the confidentiality of those the program is intended to help.

Prevention and intervention efforts, when they do occur, can take several forms. Primary prevention might include the use of posters and mailings that provide educational materials on drug problems. Some companies have used films and outside speakers to increase awareness of these problems. These strategies, which generally heighten awareness of substance use and its effects, are also intended to set the stage for employees who are misusing alcohol or drugs to decide to start treatment. This treatment phase represents a second tier of the prevention effort. It can take several forms. Frequently, the employee meets with an onsite counselor, who typically operates through what has been called an employee assistance program, or EAP. The counselor either works with the employee on the substance use problem in that setting or arranges for the employee to participate in an outside treatment setting (e.g., inpatient treatment or sessions with an outside counselor). Either separately or as part of one of these two treatment options, the counselor could encourage the employee to begin attending self-help groups, such as Alcoholics Anonymous or Cocaine Anonymous.

Although worksite programs have become increasingly prevalent in industrial settings (Lewis, 1991), their effectiveness is rarely evaluated. In addition, most current programs focus on secondary rather than primary prevention—that is, identifying those misusing alcohol or drugs and arranging for treatment. Only rarely is prevention a high priority within EAP programs or in the workplace more generally (Cook, 2003). When initiated, program approaches that appear to have particular potential include briefer interventions, interventions provided within a broader health and lifestyle program, psychosocial skills training, and peer referral (Webb et al., 2009).

Programs for College Students

Misuse of alcohol—whether chronic or sporadic—has long been a problem on college campuses. Studies on collegiate drinking practices have consistently documented a higher prevalence of alcohol use than in the general population and an apparent increase in the number of alcohol-related problems over the course of the past 20 years. Problems associated with student drinking include relationship difficulties, driving under the influence, involvement in arguments or fights, vandalism and other property destruction, and lowered grades. All who drink are candidates to experience alcohol-related problems. Estimates are that 32% of college students drink heavily, defined as having five or more drinks in a row in the past 2 weeks (Johnston et al., 2016). A "snapshot" of the *annual* consequences of college student drinking was recently developed by the Task Force of the National Advisory Council on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism and is presented in Table 16.2. It provides an overview of the staggering consequences of alcohol misuse among college students.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

TABLE 16.2 Consequences of Harmful and Underage College Drinking

Drinking affects college students, their families, and college communities at large. Researchers estimate that each year:

Death: About 1,519 college students between the ages of 18 and 24 die from alcohol-related unintentional injuries, including motor-vehicle crashes.

Assault: About 696,000 students between the ages of 18 and 24 are assaulted by another student who has been drinking.

Sexual Assault: About 97,000 students between the ages of 18 and 24 report experiencing alcohol-related sexual assault or date rape.

Academic Problems: About one in four college students report academic consequences from drinking, including missing class, falling behind in class, doing poorly on exams or papers, and receiving lower grades overall. In a national survey of college students, those who binge drink and consumed alcohol at least three times per week were roughly six times more likely than those who drank but never binged to perform poorly on a test or project as a result of drinking (40% vs. 7%) and five times more likely to have missed a class (64% vs. 12%).

Alcohol Use Disorder (AUD): About 9% of full-time college students meet the criteria for past-year AUD.

Other Consequences: These include suicide attempts, health problems, injuries, unsafe sex, and driving under the influence of alcohol, as well as vandalism, property damage, and involvement with the police.

Source: College Drinking Prevention, National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism.

CONTEMPORARY ISSUE BOX 16.4

Server Interventions

Holding people who serve alcohol to patrons or guests responsible for the patrons' behavior if they become intoxicated is not a new idea. Its roots are in what are referred to as dram shop (an old English term for "taverns") laws. These laws, which in various forms are active and being upheld in courts today, have two implications. The first is that servers of alcohol, whether a bartender or the host of a private dinner party, can in some circumstances be held liable for the actions of intoxicated patrons or guests. The second implication, important in the context of prevention, is that servers and hosts can contribute to preventing alcohol-related problems through their decisions not to serve alcohol to people who are intoxicated. Indeed, the goal of model legislation for a uniform dram shop law is the prevention of alcohol-related injuries, deaths, and other damages (Mosher & Colman, 1986).

This model legislation has been enacted in a number of states and introduced in many others. Part of the legislation identifies practices that businesses and hosts may be able to use in preventing or limiting their liability in serving alcohol, such as encouraging patrons or guests not to become intoxicated if they consume alcohol, providing nonalcoholic beverages and food, and promoting the use of safe transportation alternatives to preclude those who are intoxicated from driving home. These guidelines are derived from a sociocultural framework of drug misuse in that they seek to prevent alcohol-related problems by modifying the context of the drinking to encourage safer drinking practices.

One important outcome of the dram shop legislation is that a variety of education and training programs have been developed to help alcohol servers and hosts detect intoxication and stop serving alcohol to people who appear intoxicated. There are indications that these programs can have positive effects (see Geller et al., 1987; Gliksman et al., 1993), but there are obstacles to their implementation, especially in business situations. For example, one frustrating experience occurred in working with alcohol servers in Atlantic City gambling casinos (Nathan, 1984; Nathan & Niaura, 1987). Nathan and his colleagues were asked to provide information on how to detect intoxication among patrons and how to stop serving them drinks (most of which were served free to the patrons if they were at a gambling table). Although servers did acquire these skills, the program eventually broke down because casino owners did not want their servers to cut off intoxicated patrons who were still gambling. Thus, servers were in a true bind. According to Nathan and Niaura (1987), servers would refuse drinks to intoxicated patrons and avoid legal liability, but at the same time, they might antagonize their employer if the patrons stopped gambling!

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In addition to reviewing the available studies on college student drinking, the task force identified three primary constituencies that need to be addressed to change the culture of drinking on college campuses. The first is college students as individuals, including those at risk and those who are alcohol-dependent. The second is the student population as a whole. Finally, the third constituency identified is the college and the surrounding community. It was argued that the needs of each of these constituencies require assessment and attention in the development and implementation of prevention programs on college campuses.

Colleges have taken or are taking a variety of steps to address drinking among their students. Many of these are designed to change social norms regarding drinking among college students. According to Perkins (2002), students generally view their peers as more permissive in their personal attitudes toward drinking than is actually the case. Similarly, students view their peers as consuming alcohol more frequently and more heavily than is the norm. The concern surrounding these exaggerated perceptions of one's peers is that students may feel pressure or license to conform to these incorrect expectations of their peers, and thus drink heavier and/or more frequently.

Applying what has been termed a "social norms approach," many campuses have begun to disseminate information about actual drinking norms (Perkins, 2002, 2007). The dissemination is as wide as possible to maximize the prospects for reaching as many students as possible. Examples include publicizing the actual norms in orientation programs, student newspapers and websites, lectures, radio stations, and campus flyers and posters. The results from evaluations of such efforts have been very promising (Moreira et al., 2009). Perkins (2002) reported that campuses with programs that have persistently communicated accurate norms about students' alcohol use have witnessed significant decreases in high-risk drinking, although the approach is not without its critics (Wechsler et al., 2003).

A second approach to tackling the problem of drinking among college students is exemplified in the work of Dr. Alan Marlatt and his colleagues at the University of Washington (Baer et al., 1994; Kivlahan et al., 1990). In contrast to the campus-wide dissemination of information on real drinking norms, their focus has been on working with students (individually or in small groups) to develop skills that can be used to avoid the problematic use of alcohol. In this regard, their program includes four central components: (1) training in blood alcohol level monitoring to acquire knowledge about specific alcohol effects, (2) developing coping skills to use in situations associated with risky or heavy drinking, (3) modifying expectations regarding alcohol use and alcohol effects, and (4) developing stress-management and other life-management skills.

Results from the University of Washington program have been impressive and encouraging. For example, from before to after the 8-week program, students in the skills-training program showed decreases on three measures of alcohol consumption: number of drinks per week, peak blood alcohol level reached per week, and hours per week with a blood alcohol level exceeding 0.055% (recall that a level of 0.08% is considered legally intoxicated in most of the United States). These decreases were not observed in other students who only participated in an assessment phase or only attended an alcohol education class that emphasized alcohol effects. Most important, the changes observed among the students who received the skills-training program were still evident 12 months after the intervention (Baer et al., 1994).

The University of Washington researchers have consolidated their intervention efforts into a widely applied program called BASICS (Brief Alcohol Screening and Intervention for College Students; Dimeff et al., 1999). The intervention is aimed at college students who drink heavily and have experienced or are at risk for alcohol-related problems. The brief, two-session program is designed to help students make

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DRUGS AND CULTURE BOX 16.5

Harm-Reduction Social Policies

Countries vary widely in their social policies regarding substance use. You have read elsewhere in this book about the "war on drugs" and "zero-tolerance" policies in the United States. This stance is in striking contrast to another social policy strategy—called harm reduction or harm minimization—being implemented in some other countries, particularly the United Kingdom and the Netherlands. Harm-reduction policies focus on decreasing the negative consequences of drug use for individuals and the community, even if they endorse continued but safer drug use in the interim. According to Diane Riley at the Canadian Centre on Substance Abuse, "Harm reduction establishes a hierarchy of goals, with the more immediate and realistic ones to be achieved as first steps toward risk-free use or abstinence. It is a pragmatic approach, which recognizes that abstinence may be neither a realistic nor a desired goal for some, especially in the short term." Riley described two examples of harm-reduction policies. The first was in Merseyside in Great Britain. Health clinics collaborated with pharmacists and police officials to establish a "comprehensive approach [to drug misuse] involving prescription of drugs, provision of clean syringes and helping rather than criminalizing drug users." Among the reported benefits of the Merseyside collaboration were low incidence of HIV in those who use drugs, continued employment for many who misuse drugs, and a decrease in thefts and robberies.

A second example is from Amsterdam, which sought to reduce drug use harm by providing medical and social services to people who were continuing to use drugs. Among the strategies used were decreased police attention to marijuana possession and use and mobile methadone distribution stations. Prison terms apply only to dealers of hard drugs. An appreciation of the potential benefits of a harm-reduction orientation has been shown in its use in school-based interventions to reduce harm associated with alcohol use (McBride et al., 2004) and smoking (Hamilton et al., 2005). In both cases, the use of a harm-reduction approach was superior to standard education/abstinence-based programs.

The policy of harm reduction has not been fully embraced in the United States (see Marlatt, 1998; Marlatt et al., 1993), but some such strategies are being implemented. First was the introduction of methadone maintenance programs throughout the country in the 1960s. These programs were implemented in part to reduce crime rates among those using heroin. A second strategy, more recently implemented, is needle exchange programs designed to reduce the risk of HIV transmission among those misusing drugs. Both of these strategies have had their vocal opponents, however. There has been serious opposition to needle exchange programs, despite research indicating that those using drugs intravenously who participate in such programs do not show an increase in the number of injections and that there has been no associated increase in the frequency of dependence. Nevertheless, a broad-based harm-reduction approach to the problems of drug use in the United States is gradually emerging in step with a growing application of such approaches globally (Harm Reduction International, 2012).

better alcohol use decisions. Using a harm-reduction philosophy, BASICS aims to motivate students to reduce risky behavior rather than to focus on a specific drinking goal such as abstinence or reduced drinking.

REVIEW

1. Design a public service announcement concerning reducing substance use for mass media distribution (Internet, radio, or television).
2. Identify several strategies for alternative behaviors and resistance-skills training used in current prevention programs.

16.5 Closing Comments on Prevention

Prevention of alcohol and drug misuse is a topic that almost everyone acknowledges as being central to any coherent response to alcohol and drug problems in

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the United States. Unfortunately, the area has been allocated few resources, at least in comparison to the monies spent annually on the treatment of alcohol and drug misuse. Although past efforts at prevention, especially education and mass media approaches, have increased relevant knowledge, they have had much less effect on alcohol and drug use. Especially critical in future research on prevention will be the design and evaluation of programs for specific cultural subgroups, the creation of programs geared toward the specific developmental levels of children and teenagers, parental involvement programs, and programs aimed at providing alternatives to alcohol and drug use. Full exploration of these possibilities requires more resources from state and federal agencies than have been available so far.

Summary

- Most people agree that prevention efforts should be an important component of any comprehensive approach to substance misuse, but professionals and funding sources have not made prevention efforts a high priority.
- Prevention has traditionally been divided into three types of intervention: primary, secondary, and tertiary.
- Primary prevention refers to efforts that focus on avoiding substance use or misuse before it occurs.
- Secondary prevention involves early interventions designed to address substance misuse just as problems are beginning to appear.
- Tertiary prevention, which is actually more treatment than prevention, includes intervention used to treat people beyond the early stages of substance misuse.
- The sociocultural model of prevention, probably the dominant approach in the United States, posits that social norms directly influence substance use. Prevention efforts derived from this model try to influence the entire climate of drinking within a culture.
- Another major prevention model is the distribution of consumption approach, which posits (1) that the proportion of those drinking heavily in a culture is positively related to the mean level of alcohol consumption, (2) that heavier alcohol consumption increases the probability of alcohol problems, and (3) that societies should attempt to reduce the negative consequences of drinking by reducing alcohol consumption across the culture.
- A third model of prevention is the proscriptive approach, which focuses on prohibiting the availability of substances and emphasizes abstention from drug use.
- The most common substance misuse prevention interventions have been education and the use of mass media. Most states now require alcohol and drug education in school curricula.
- Alcohol and drug education courses generally have been shown to increase knowledge levels but have not been so successful in changing substance use patterns.
- In recent years, there has been an increasing use of parents in prevention programs, especially in programs that focus on children.
- Mass media campaigns appear to succeed in raising levels of knowledge and awareness about drugs. Changes in attitudes and actual drug use behavior have not been found so consistently.
- Prevention programs with a resistance-training approach have received much attention in recent years. These programs focus on training young people to recognize and resist pressures to use drugs.
- A recent development in school-based prevention has been brief interventions that target personality traits associated with elevated risk for later alcohol and other drug use behaviors.
- Prevention programs are sometimes located at worksites, where the goal is to identify those who misuse drugs and to intervene when drug problems interfere with job performance. These programs, when established, generally concentrate more on secondary than on primary prevention.
- A variety of prevention programs, generally aimed at alcohol use, have been established on college campuses.
- The full potential of prevention interventions has not yet been tested. But before this potential can be assessed, more resources from state and federal agencies are needed.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Answers to "What Do You Think?"

1. Primary prevention includes interventions to treat people who are beyond the early stages of substance misuse or dependence.
   F *Primary prevention refers to the avoidance of substance misuse before it has the chance to occur. Tertiary prevention is the treatment of individuals already engaged in substance misuse.*
2. One strength of the sociocultural model of prevention is its emphasis on reducing the physical problems associated with alcohol consumption.
   F *This model has been criticized for not adequately taking these problems into account. Some believe that using the sociocultural model may result in a greater prevalence of such problems.*
3. Raising the price of alcohol relative to disposable income and limiting the hours of operation for bars are examples of prevention strategies based on the distribution of consumption model.
   T *This model posits that the proportion of those drinking heavily in a given population increases with the mean level of alcohol consumption in that population. Therefore, methods to lower per capita consumption should lead to a decrease in the prevalence of those who drink heavily.*
4. The proscriptive model of prevention, which involves prohibiting the availability of drugs and promoting abstention from use, has proven to be the most effective of the three major models of prevention.
   F *This model has not made any significant contribution to the prevention of substance misuse. One example of this approach was Prohibition, which was less than successful in alleviating problems associated with alcohol use.*
5. Warning labels on alcoholic beverages note the risks associated with binge drinking.
   F *Warning labels on alcoholic beverages note the risk of drinking during pregnancy, that drinking impairs the ability to drive a car or operate heavy machinery, and drinking may cause health problems.*
6. Research evidence indicates that mass media prevention strategies do not result in significant changes in patterns of alcohol or drug use.
   T *Although evidence suggests that these programs do succeed in raising knowledge levels and increasing awareness about the use of drugs, there is no evidence that changes in patterns of use are occurring.*
7. The primary goal of affect-oriented prevention programs is to increase the individual's knowledge base regarding drugs and alcohol.
   F *The goal of affect-oriented programs is to help participants be aware of their own feelings and attitudes regarding drugs so they can deal effectively with drug use situations according to their individual value structures.*
8. Research evidence has documented the effectiveness of DARE, the most popular school-based drug prevention program.
   F *Evaluations of DARE actually have not provided evidence that the program has had much impact on drug use behaviors.*
9. The focus of most workplace prevention programs is primary prevention.
   F *Most current programs focus on secondary rather than primary prevention. Prevention efforts are typically grafted onto treatment programs.*
10. Workplace prevention programs help to avoid losses of employee productivity due to substance misuse.
    T *Employers may provide workplace prevention programs to avoid losses in company productivity*
11. The idea of holding people who serve alcohol responsible for the patrons' behavior if they become intoxicated is a recent development in drinking moderation strategies.
    F *This idea has its roots in what are referred to as dram shop (old English for "tavern") laws. Various forms of these laws have been enacted in several states and are being considered in many others.*

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Key Terms

mass media
primary prevention
secondary prevention
tertiary prevention
values clarification

Essays/Thought Questions

1. If you were to design a prevention program to reduce substance use and misuse among young adults in your town, what elements would you include? In what ways do you think your program would be successful? What advantages would your program have over current programs?
2. Preventive health care focuses on protecting, promoting, and maintaining health and well-being and has been embraced by the medical community. However, professionals and funding sources have not made prevention a high priority. What would you say to funding agencies to increase their awareness about the importance of prevention programs to reduce substance use and misuse?
3. The Amethyst Initiative is intended to foster discussion on lowering the drinking age, among other approaches, to decrease alcohol-related problems among college students. Considering the arguments and implications on both sides of the issue, where do you stand and why?

Suggested Readings

Caputi, T. L., & McLellan, A. T. (2017). Truth and D.A.R.E.: Is D.A.R.E.'s new Keepin' it REAL curriculum suitable for American nationwide implementation? *Drugs: Education, Prevention, and Policy, 24*, 49–57.

Conrod, P. J. (2016). Personality-targeted interventions for substance use and misuse. *Current Addiction Reports, 3*, 426–436.

DeJong, W., & Blanchette, J. (2014). Case closed: Research evidence on the positive public health impact of the age 21 minimum legal drinking age in the United States. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs, Supplement 17*, 108–115.

Larimer, M. E., & Cronce, J. M. (2007). Identification, prevention, and treatment revisited: Individual-focused college drinking prevention strategies 1999–2006. *Addictive Behaviors, 32*, 2439–2468.

National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). (2003). *Preventing drug abuse among children and adolescents: A research-based guide for parents, educators, and community leaders* (2nd ed.).

Web Resources

Go to MindTap® for digital study tools and resources that complement this text and help you be more successful in your course and career. There's an interactive eBook, skill-building activities, quizzes to help you prepare for tests, apps, and more—all in one place. If your instructor *didn't* assign MindTap, you can find out more about it at Cengage.com.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

GLOSSARY

absorbed When drugs have entered the bloodstream.
acetaminophen (ə-'sē-tə-'mi-nə-fən) Aspirin-like analgesic.
acetylcholine (ə -'se-təl-'kō-lēn) A neurotransmitter linked with cognitive processes and memory that is found both in the brain and in the parasympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system.
acetylsalicylic acid (ə-'se -təl-'sa-l-'si-lə) Chemical name for aspirin.
action potential The electrical impulse along the axon that occurs when a neuron fires.
acute tolerance A type of functional tolerance that occurs within a course of action of a single drug dose.
addiction In reference to drugs, overwhelming involvement with using a drug, getting an adequate supply of it, and having a strong tendency to resume use of it after stopping for a period.
aftercare In alcohol and drug treatment, therapeutic activities following the completion of a formal treatment program.
agitated depression Depressed mood accompanied by a state of tension or restlessness. People with agitated depression show excessive motor activity, as they may, for example, be unable to sit still or may pace, wring their hands, or pull at their clothes.
agonist ('a-gə-nist) A substance that occupies a neural receptor and causes some change in the conductance of the neuron.
akinesia Slowness of movement and underactivity.
Alzheimer's disease ('älts-'hı¯-mərz) One of the most common forms of dementia involves a progressive loss of memory and other cognitive functions.
amotivational syndrome Loss of effectiveness and reduced capacity to accomplish conventional goals as a result of chronic marijuana use.
amphetamines Central nervous system stimulants that act like naturally occurring adrenaline.
anabolic steroids Tissue-building drugs that produce masculinizing effects as well.
analgesia Pain relief produced without a loss of consciousness.
anandamide A lipid neurotransmitter mimicked by marijuana.
anorectic effects Causing one to lose appetite; suppression of eating.
antagonism The diminished or reduced effect of a drug when another drug is present.
antagonist A substance that occupies a neural receptor and blocks normal synaptic transmission.
anterograde amnesia Loss or limitation of the ability to form new memories.
anticholinergic hallucinogens A class of drugs including atropine and scopolamine.
antihistamines Common over-the-counter drugs with decongestant effects.
antitussives Cough-suppressant drugs.
anxiolytic Anxiety-reducing.
apothecary A pharmacist.
as a function of A term expressing correlation. In graphs of functional relationships between two variables, changes in one variable (e.g., drug effect) associated with changes in another (drug dose) are represented.
atropine An anticholinergic hallucinogen found in certain plants.
attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder A disorder with features such as a greater-thannormal amount of activity, restlessness, difficulty concentrating or sustaining attention, and impulsivity.
autonomic nervous system (ANS) Part of the PNS; has two branches: sympathetic and parasympathetic.
avoirdupois Something sold or measured by weight based on 1 pound equaling 16 ounces.
axon ('ak-'sän) A long cylindrical extension of the cell body of the neuron; conducts an electrical charge from the cell body to the axon terminals.
axon terminals (or terminal buttons) Enlarged buttonlike structures at the ends of axon branches.

barbiturates Depressant drugs formerly used as sleeping pills; currently used in anesthesia and treatment for epilepsy.
basal ganglia ('bā-ə-'gaŋ -glē-ə) Forebrain structures important for motor control; they include the caudate nucleus, the putamen, and the globus pallidus.
bath salts A psychoactive "designer drug" that is synthesized from various amphetamine-like chemicals and can be inhaled, swallowed, smoked, or injected.
behavioral pharmacology The specialty area of psychopharmacology that concentrates on drug use as a learned behavior.
behavioral tolerance Adjustment of behavior through experience in using a drug to compensate for its intoxicating effects.
benzodiazepines Currently the most widely prescribed anxiolytic drugs.
beta-blockers Drugs that block beta-adrenergic receptors of the sympathetic system and thus act to relieve high blood pressure.
bioavailability The portion of the original drug dose that reaches its site of action or that reaches a fluid in the body that gives it access to its site of action.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

blackout Failure to recall events that occurred while drinking even though there is no loss of consciousness.
blood-brain barrier The system that "filters" the blood before it can enter the brain.
brand name The commercial name given to a drug by its manufacturer.

cannabinoids The more than 60 chemical compounds present in cannabis. One is delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (better known as THC).
Cannabis sativa The Indian hemp plant popularly known as marijuana; its resin, flowering tops, leaves, and stem contain the plant's psychoactive substances.
causal relationship A relationship between variables in which changes in a second variable are due directly to changes in a first variable.
central nervous system (CNS) The brain and the spinal cord.
cerebellum ('ser- ə-'be-ləm) Hindbrain structure important in motor control and coordination.
chemical name The name given to a drug that represents its chemical structure.
combination pill Birth control pill that contains synthetic forms of both female sex hormones: progesterone and estrogen.
computerized axial tomography (CT) Technique that produces a three-dimensional X-ray image of the brain.
confabulation A fabrication of events, when asked questions concerning them, because of an inability to recall.
conflict paradigm A research procedure that concerns the effects on a behavior of a drug that has a history of both reinforcement and punishment.
control group The reference or comparison group in an experiment. The control group does not receive the experimental manipulation or intervention whose effect is being tested.
control In research, to be able to account for variables that may affect the results of a study.
counselling In alcohol and drug treatment, counselors are specially trained professionals who perform a variety of treatment activities, including assessment, education, and individual, marital, and family counseling.
cortex The outermost and largest part of the human brain.
crack A freebase cocaine produced by mixing cocaine salt with baking soda and water. The solution is then heated, resulting in brittle sheets of cocaine that are "cracked" into small smokable chunks or "rocks."
craving A term that has been variously defined in reference to drug use; typically a strong or intense desire to use a drug.
cross-tolerance Tolerance to a drug or drugs never taken that results from protracted tolerance to another drug or drugs.

delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol The principal active cannabinoid in marijuana responsible for the psychoactive effects.
dendrites ('den-'drīts) Spiny branchlike structures that extend from the cell body of a neuron, typically contain numerous receptor sites, and are thus important in neural transmission.
diffusibility A more diffusible substance is more easily entered into or "receptive" of another.
dispositional tolerance An increase in the rate of metabolizing a drug as a result of its regular use.
dissociative anesthetic A class of drugs including PCP and ketamine.
dissolved When a drug changes from solid to liquid by mixing it with a liquid.
distillation The process by which the heating of a fermented mixture increases its alcohol content.
distribution The transport of drugs by the blood to their site(s) of action in the body.
disulfiram A drug that interferes with the metabolism of alcohol so that people soon feel very ill if they drink while on a regimen of disulfiram. The drug may be used as part of a treatment program for alcohol dependence.
dopamine ('dō-pə-'mēn) A neurotransmitter in the brain that is involved with movement and reward.
drug abuse Any use of drugs that causes physical, psychological, legal, or social harm to the individual user or to others affected by the drug user's behavior.
drug Broadly defined as any substance with the potential to treat or cure disease, or enhance physical or mental welfare; any chemical agent that alters the biochemical physiological processes of tissues or organisms; psychoactive drugs, for which there is nonmedical use in addition to any medical use.
drug discrimination study A research procedure that primarily concerns the differentiation of drug effects.
drug dosage Measure of the quantity of drug consumed.
drug effects The action of a drug on the body. Drug effects are measured in different ways.
drug expectancy A person's anticipation of or belief about what they will experience upon taking a drug.
drug potency The minimum effective dose of a drug.
dyskinesia Disordered movements.

effective dose The dose at which a given percentage of individuals show a particular effect of a drug.
efficacy The most intense, or peak, level of a drug effect.
electroencephalography (EEG) Technique used to measure electrical activity in the brain.
emphysema Disease of the lung characterized by abnormal dilution of its air spaces and distension of its walls. Frequently, heart action is impaired.
endogenous Developed from within. When applied to depression, the term means that depressive symptoms seem to be due to genetic factors.
endorphins (en-'do·r-f ənz) Neurotransmitters in the brain that are mimicked by opiate drugs.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

enzyme breakdown One process by which neurotransmitters are inactivated. Chemicals called enzymes interact with the transmitter molecule and change its structure so that it no longer is capable of occupying receptor sites.
estrogen (‘es-trə-jən) One of the female sex hormones involved in the regulation of ovulation and the menstrual cycle.
exogenous Developed from without. When applied to depression, the term means that depressive symptoms seem to be in reaction to a particular situation or event.
extrapyramidal Outside the pyramidal tracts, with origin in the basal ganglia. These cell bodies are involved with starting, stopping, and smoothing out movements.

feedback In this context, in a series of events, what happens in a later event alters events that preceded it.
fermentation A combustive process in which yeasts interact with the sugars in plants such as grapes, grains, and fruits to produce an enzyme that converts the sugar into alcohol.
flashback A sudden recurrence of an LSD-like experience.
forebrain The largest part of the human brain; includes the cerebral cortex, thalamus, hypothalamus, and limbic system.
formication syndrome Symptoms of itching and feeling as if insects were crawling under skin, caused by cocaine and amphetamine.
freebase When a substance is separated, or “freed,” from its salt base. The separated form of the substance is thus called “freebase.”
functional tolerance Decreased behavioral effects of a drug as a result of its regular use.

GABA Short for gamma aminobutyric acid; the most abundant inhibitory neurotransmitter in the brain.
general anesthesia The reduction of pain by rendering the subject unconscious.
generalizable Applicability of a research finding from one setting or group of research participants to others.
generic name The general name given to a drug that is shorter (and easier for most people to say) than its chemical name.
glutamate An excitatory amino acid neurotransmitter.
grain As a measure, a unit of weight equal to 0.0648 gram.
group design A type of experimental design in which groups (as compared to individual cases) of subjects are compared to establish experimental findings.
guaifenesin (gwī-‘fen-ə-sin) An over-the-counter expectorant.

half-life The amount of time that must pass for the amount of drug in the body to be reduced by half.
hash oil A potent distillate of marijuana or hashish. It first appeared in the United States in 1971 and can contain up to 60% THC.
hashish A drug produced from the resin that covers the flowers of the cannabis hemp plant. The resin generally contains a greater concentration of the drug’s psychoactive properties.
heroin A drug produced by chemically processing morphine. It is more potent than morphine and has become the major opiate drug of harmful use.
hindbrain The lower part of the brain, including the medulla, pons, and cerebellum.
hippocampus (‘hi-pə-’kam-pəs) A structure of the limbic system thought to be important in the formation of memories.
homeostasis A state of equilibrium or balance. Systems at homeostasis are stable; when homeostasis is disrupted, the system operates to restore it.
hypothalamus (‘hī-pō-tha-lə-məs) Forebrain structure that regulates eating, drinking, and other basic biological drives.

ibuprofen (‘ī-byů-’prō-fən) Aspirin-like analgesic.
inferior colliculi (ko-’lik-yū-lī) Midbrain structures that control sound localization.
initial sensitivity The effect of a drug on someone using it for the first time.
interact When the effects of one drug are modified by the presence of another drug.
intoxication A transient state of physical and psychological disruption caused by the presence of a toxic substance, such as alcohol, in the CNS.
ionotropic receptors Receptors that are coupled to ion channels and affect the neuron by causing those channels to open.

joint A hand-rolled marijuana cigarette.

ketamine A dissociative anesthetic

L-dopa (‘el-’dō-pə) A chemical precursor of dopamine used in the treatment of Parkinson’s disease.
lethal dose The dose of a drug at which a given percentage of individuals die within a specified time.
levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM) A drug used in treating heroin dependence that is similar in action to methadone but has longer-lasting effects.
limbic system Forebrain structures including the amygdala and hippocampus.
long-term memory Memory for remote events. According to one theory of memory, information enters long-term memory through short-term memory.

magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) Technique that creates a high-resolution, three-dimensional image of the brain.
manic Relating to mania, a mood disturbance that typically includes hyperactivity, agitation, excessive elation, and pressured speech.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

mass media Communications designed for widespread distribution, such as advertisements, films, and printed materials.
medulla oblongata (mə-'də-lə-'ä-blˈoh-gä-tə) The lowest hindbrain structure of the brain; important in the regulation of breathing, heart rate, and other basic life functions.
mescaline An LSD-like hallucinogen found in the peyote cactus.
mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway Pathway that is rewarding when stimulated.
metabolism The process by which the body breaks down matter into more simple components and waste.
metabotropic receptors Receptors that act through a second messenger system.
methylated amphetamines A class of drugs including MDA and MDMA (Ecstasy).
midbrain Part of the brain that includes the inferior and superior colliculi and the substantia nigra.
milieu treatment Treatment in which the organization and structure of a setting are designed to change behavior.
monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors Drugs used to treat depressions that inhibit the activity of the enzyme monoamine oxidase, which degrades the neurotransmitters of norepinephrine and serotonin.
monoamines ('mä-nō-ə-'mēns) A class of chemicals characterized by a single amine group; includes the neurotransmitters: norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin.
morphine A derivative of opium best known as a potent pain-relieving medication.
myelin ('mī-e-len) A fatty white substance that covers the axons of some neurons.

naloxone A short-acting opiate antagonist.
naproxen (nə-'prok-sən) Aspirin-like analgesic.
narcoleptic A state characterized by brief but uncontrollable episodes of sleep.
narcotic A central nervous system depressant that contains sedative and pain-relieving compounds.
neuroleptics Tranquilizing drugs used to treat psychoses; a synonym is major tranquilizer.
neuromuscular junction Junction between neuron and muscle fibers where release of acetylcholine by neurons causes muscles to contract.
neurons ('nü-'räns) Individual nerve cells that are basic building blocks of the nervous system.
neuropsychological tests Formal ways of measuring behavioral functions that may be impaired by brain lesions.
neuroses Nonpsychotic emotional disturbance, pain, or discomfort beyond what is appropriate in the conditions of one's life.
neurotransmitters Chemical substances stored in the axon terminals that are released into the synapse when the neuron fires. Neurotransmitters then influence activity in postsynaptic neurons.
nicotine poisoning A consequence of nicotine overdose characterized by palpitations, dizziness, sweating, nausea, or vomiting.
norepinephrine ('noˈr-'e-pə-'ne-frən) A neurotransmitter in the brain that is also involved in activity of the sympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system.

opium poppy A plant cultivated for centuries, primarily in Eurasia, for opium—a narcotic that acts as a central nervous system depressant.
opium The dried sap produced by the poppy plant.
over-the-counter drugs Drugs that can be obtained legally without a medical prescription.

paradoxical Contrary to what is expected. A paradoxical drug effect is opposite in direction to what is expected based on the drug's chemical structure.
paranoid schizophrenia A type of schizophrenia distinguished by systematic delusions or auditory hallucinations related to one theme.
parasympathetic branch Branch of the ANS that is responsible for lowering heart rate and blood pressure.
Parkinson's disease A disease that involves a progressive deterioration of motor control.
patent medicines Products that were sold, most often in the 19th century, as medicines that would cure a host of illnesses and diseases.
peripheral nervous system (PNS) Sensory nerves, motor nerves, and the autonomic nervous system.
peyote (pā -'ō -tē) A cactus plant, the top of which (a "button") is dried and ingested for its hallucinogenic properties.
personality disorders Long-standing patterns of behavior that frequently create distress for individuals due to their personal or social consequences; usually recognizable from adolescence or earlier.
pharmacodynamics The branch of pharmacology that concerns the biochemical and physiological effects of drugs and their mechanisms of action.
pharmacokinetics Pharmacokinetics refers to the study of "what the body does to the drug" and includes the main processes of absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion (known as the acronym ADME).
pharmacology The scientific study of drugs concerned with how drugs act on biological systems and how the body responds to the drug.
phencyclidine A dissociative anesthetic.
placebo control A type of control originating in drug research. Placebo subjects have the same makeup and are treated exactly like a group of subjects who receive a drug, except that placebo subjects receive a chemically inactive substance.
placebo In pharmacology, a chemically inactive substance.
polydrug use A person's regular use of more than one drug.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

polymorphism The occurrence of something (in this case, a gene) in different forms among members of a population.
pons (‘pänz) Hindbrain structure important in the control of sleep and wakefulness.
positron-emission tomography (PET) Technique used to measure activity in selected brain regions.
precision medicine Medical care designed to enhance therapeutic effectiveness for specific groups of patients, particularly by using genetic data or genetic “profiling.”
prevalence The general occurrence of an event, usually expressed in terms of percentage of some population. Another common statistic in survey studies is incidence, or the number of first-time occurrences of an event during some time period.
primary prevention Attempts to avoid substance use or misuse before it has a chance to occur.
progesterone (prō -’jes-tə-’rōn) One of the female sex hormones involved in the regulation of ovulation and the menstrual cycle.
progestin-only pill Birth control pill (sometimes called the minipill) that contains only progestin, a synthetic progesterone.
prohibition The legislative forbidding of the sale of a substance, as in the alcohol prohibition era in the United States, 1920–1933.
proof The proportion of alcohol in a beverage, by volume. Proof typically is used in reference to distilled spirits and equals twice the percentage of alcohol.
prostaglandins (‘präs-tə-’glan-dən) Naturally occurring chemicals blocked by aspirin and related analgesics.
protracted tolerance A type of functional tolerance that occurs over the course of two or more drug administrations.
pseudoephedrine (‘sü-dōi-’fed-rən) An effective decongestant.
psilocybin (‘sī-e-’sī-ben) An LSD-like hallucinogen found in mushrooms.
psychoactive Pertaining to effects on mood, thinking, and behavior.
psychological dependence The emotional state of craving a drug either for its positive effect or to avoid negative effects associated with its abuse.
psychological treatment Treatment geared to changing emotions, thoughts, or behavior without the use of medications or other physical or biological means.
psychological set An individual’s knowledge, attitudes, expectations, and other thoughts about an object or event, such as a drug.
psychology The scientific study of behavior and mental processes.
psychopharmacology The subarea of pharmacology that concerns the effects of drugs on behavior.
psychosis A severe mental disorder whose symptoms include disorganized thinking and bizarre behavior.
psychosurgery Surgery that entails the cutting of fibers connecting particular parts of the brain or the removal or destruction of areas of brain tissue with the goal of modifying severe behavioral or emotional disturbances.
psychotherapy Typically, conversation between a specially trained individual (therapist) and another person (or family) that is intended to change patterns of behavior, thoughts, or feelings in that person (or family).
psychotherapeutic Exerting a special or unique action on psychological functioning.
punisher A consequence of a behavior that suppresses or decreases its future likelihood.
pylorospasm The shutting of the pylorus valve that occurs in some people when they drink very large quantities of alcohol.

qualitative The kind, as opposed to quantity, of effect.

rebound insomnia Inability to sleep produced as a withdrawal symptom associated with some depressant drugs.
receptor sites Specialized structures located on dendrites and cell bodies for neurons that are activated by neurotransmitters.
recovery In the addictions field, changes back to health in physical, psychological, spiritual, and social functioning. It is often believed that recovery is a lifetime process that requires total abstinence from alcohol and nonprescribed drugs.
reinforce A consequence of a behavior that increases its future likelihood.
relapse A term from physical disease; return to a previous state of illness from one of health. As applied to smoking, it means one resumes smoking after having abstained for some amount of time.
REM rebound An increase in the rapid eye movement or REM stage of sleep when withdrawing from drugs that suppress REM time.
REM sleep Acronym for “rapid eye movements,” which are associated with dream activity and are one stage in a cycle of sleep.
reticular activating system Pathway running through the medulla and pons that regulates alertness and arousal.
reuptake One process by which neurotransmitters are inactivated. Neurotransmitter molecules are taken back up into the axon terminal that released them.
reverse tolerance Increased sensitivity to a drug with repeated use of it.
route of drug administration The way that drugs enter the body.

salvinorin A A hallucinogenic chemical found in the plant Salvia Divinorum. scopolamine An anticholinergic hallucinogen found in certain plants.
secondary prevention Interventions designed to prevent substance use problems just as the early signs of misuse begin to appear.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

sedative-hypnotic effects The calming and sleep-inducing effects of some drugs.
self-administration study A study that involves testing whether research participants will "give themselves" a drug.
serotonergic hallucinogens A class of drugs that includes LSD and drugs with similar effects and mechanisms of actions.
serotonin (ˈsir-ə-tō-nən) A neurotransmitter in the brain that is involved with sleep and mood.
short-term memory Memory for recent events; thought to differ from long-term memory in several important ways.
side effects Effects of a drug other than those of central interest; used most often in reference to the other-than-therapeutic effects of medications, such as the side effect of drowsiness for antihistamines. Note that what are considered a drug's side effects depend on what specifically the drug is being used for.
slope The steepness or rise of a curve.
sociopathy Personality disorder characterized by a lack of concern for social obligations or rules, a lack of feelings for others, and a tendency toward violence.
solubility The ease with which a compound can be dissolved or entered into a solution.
solvent A substance, usually a liquid or gas, that contains one or more intoxicating components; examples are glue, gasoline, and nonstick–frying pan sprays.
speakeasy A slang expression used to describe a saloon operating without a license; popularly used during Prohibition.
spontaneous remission Resolution of a problem without the help of formal treatment.
standard drink The alcohol equivalent in a drink of beer, wine, or distilled spirits. A standard drink equals 0.6 ounce of alcohol—about the alcohol content in 12 ounces of beer, 5 ounces of table wine, or 1.5 ounce of 80- to 100-proof whiskey.
state-dependent learning When learning under the influence of a drug is best recalled when one is in the same "state."
stimulant psychosis Paranoid delusions and disorientation resembling the symptoms of paranoid schizophrenia, caused by prolonged use or overdose of cocaine and/or amphetamine.
substantia nigra (səb-ˈstan(t)-shē-ə-ˈnī-grə) Literally "black substance," this basal ganglia structure is darkly pigmented and produces dopamine. Damage to this area produces Parkinson's disease.
superior colliculi Midbrain structures that control visual localization.
suspended When a drug's particles are dispersed in solution but not dissolved in it.
sympathetic branch Branch of the ANS that is activated during emotional arousal and is responsible for such physiological changes as increased heart and respiratory rate, increased blood pressure, and pupil dilation.
sympathomimetic Drugs such as cocaine and amphetamines that produce the physiological effects of sympathetic activity.
synapse (ˈsi-ˈnaps) The junction between neurons.
syndrome In medicine, a number of symptoms that occur together and characterize a specific illness or disease.
synergism Any enhancing drug interaction.
synesthesia An effect sometimes produced by hallucinogens that is characterized by the perception of a stimulus in a modality other than the one in which it was presented (e.g., a subject may report "seeing" music).
synthetic marijuana A psychoactive "designer drug" comprised of natural plants that are sprayed with synthetic chemicals that mimic the effects of cannabis when consumed.

tardive dyskinesia An extrapyramidal complication characterized by involuntary movements of the mouth and tongue, trunk, and extremities; a side effect of long-term (2 or more years) use of antipsychotic drugs.
tea-pads Historically, places where people gathered to smoke marijuana. The sites could be anything from a rented room to a hotel suite.
teratogenic Producing abnormalities in the fetus.
teratology In biology, the study of monsters, or distortions in growth.
tertiary prevention Treatment interventions with people well beyond the early stages of substance misuse or dependence.
testosterone The male sex hormone. Anabolic steroids are basically synthetic versions of testosterone.
thalamus (ˈtha-lə-məs) Forebrain structure that organizes sensory input.
therapeutic index A measure of a drug's safety in medical care; it is computed as a ratio: LD 50/ED 50.
tolerance Generally, increased amounts of a drug needed to achieve intoxication, or a diminished drug effect with continued use of the same amount of a drug.
treatment Planned activities designed to change some pattern of behavior(s) of individuals or their families.
treatment outcome research Research designed to show a causal relationship between undergoing a treatment and some physical, psychological, or social change.
treatment effects The results of experiencing a treatment, usually measured in different areas of functioning, such as substance use, family functioning, and vocational functioning.

values clarification A common component of affect-oriented prevention programs; typically involves exploration of one's own needs and beliefs regarding drugs.
vesicles (ˈve-si-kəls) Tiny sacs in axon terminals that store neurotransmitters.

withdrawal A definable illness that occurs with a cessation or decrease in use of a drug.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

REFERENCES

Aaron, P., & Musto, D. (1981). Temperance and prohibition in America: A historical overview. In M. H. Moore & D. R. Gerstein (Eds.), *Alcohol and public policy* (pp. 127–181). Washington, DC: Academy Press.

Abbott, P. J. (1986). Caffeine: A toxicological overview. *The Medical Journal of Australia*, *145*, 518–521.

Abel, E. L. (1971). Marihuana and memory: Acquisition or retrieval? *Science*, *173*, 1038–1040.

Abel, E. L. (1980). *Marijuana: The first twelve thousand years*. New York: Plenum Press.

Abel, E. L. (1985). *Psychoactive drugs and sex*. New York: Plenum Press.

Abraham, H. D., Aldridge, A. M., & Gogia, P. (1996). The psychopharmacology of hallucinogens. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, *14*, 285–298.

Abrams, D. B., & Wilson, G. T. (1986). Habit disorders: Alcohol and tobacco dependence. In A. J. Frances & R. E. Hales (Eds.), *American Psychiatric Association annual review* (Vol. 5, pp. 606–626). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.

Adams, I. B., & Martin, B. R. (1996). Cannabis: Pharmacology and toxicology in animals and humans. *Addiction*, *91*, 1585–1614.

Adams, W. L., Yuan, Z., Barboriak, J. J., & Rimm, A. A. (1993). Alcohol-related hospitalizations of elderly people. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *270*, 1222–1225.

Adesso, V. J. (1985). Cognitive factors in alcohol and drug use. In M. Galizio & S. A. Maisto (Eds.), *Determinants of substance abuse* (pp. 179–208). New York: Plenum Press.

Adkins, J. E., Boyer, E. W., & McCurdy, C. R. (2011). *Mitragyna speciosa:* A psychoactive tree from Southeast Asia with opioid activity. *Current Topics in Medicinal Chemistry*, *11*, 1165–1175.

Adler, I., & Kandel, D. (1981). Cross-cultural perspectives on developmental stages in adolescent drug use. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *42*, 701–715.

Advokat, C. D., Comaty, J. E., & Julien, R. M. (2014). *Julien's primer of drug action* (13th ed.). New York: Worth Publishers.

Agurell, S., Halldin, M., Lindgren, J. R., Ohlsson, A., Widman, M., Gillespie, H., & Hollister, L. (1986). Pharmacokinetics and metabolism of tetrahydrocannabinol and other cannabinoids with emphasis on man. *Pharmacological Reviews*, *38*, 21–43.

Alasuutari, P. (1992). *A cultural theory of alcoholism*. Albany: State University of New York Press.

Alcoholics Anonymous. (1972). *If you are a professional, A. A. wants to work with you*. New York: Alcoholics Anonymous World Services.

Alcoholics Anonymous. (1983). *Questions and answers on sponsorship*. New York: Alcoholics Anonymous World Services.

Alda, M., Hajek, T., Calkin, C., & O'Donovan, C. (2009). Treatment of bipolar disorder: New perspectives. *Annals of Medicine*, *41*, 186–196.

Aldrich, M. R. (1977). Tantric cannabis use in India. *Journal of Psychedelic Drugs*, *9*, 227–233.

Alexander, M. (2011). *The New Jim Crow*. New York, NY: New Press.

Al-hamdani, M. (2014). The case for stringent alcohol warning labels: Lessons from the tobacco control experience. *Journal of Public Health Policy*, *35*, 65–74.

Allen, R. M. (2009). Tolerance, sensitization, and physical dependence. In L. M. Cohen, F. L. Collins, A. M. Jr., Young, D. E. McChargue, T. R. Leffingwell, & K. L. Cook (Eds.), *Pharmacology and treatment of substance abuse* (pp. 63–84). New York: Routledge.

Allison, M., & Hubbard, R. L. (1985). Drug abuse treatment process: A review of the literature. *International Journal of the Addictions*, *20*, 1321–1345.

Alvik, A., Haldorsen, T., & Lindermann, R. (2005). Consistency of reported alcohol use by pregnant women: Anonymous versus confidential questionnaires with item response differences. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *29*, 1444–1449.

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Committee on Practice Bulletins (ACOG Committee). (2008). *Use of psychiatric medications during pregnancy and lactation*. Washington, DC: American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists.

American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed., text rev.). Washington, DC: Author.

American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Practice guidelines for the treatment of psychiatric disorders*. Washington, DC: Author.

American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.

Anderson, T. L., & Levy, J. A. (2003). Marginality among older injectors in today's illicit drug culture: Assessing the impact of aging. *Addiction*, *98*, 761–770.

Andrain-McGovern, J., Tercyak, K. P., Shields, A. E., Bush, A., Espinel, C. F., & Leman, C. (2003). Which adolescents are most receptive to tobacco industry marketing? Implications for counter advertising campaigns. *Health Communication*, *15*, 490–513.

Andrews, J. M., & Nemeroff, C. B. (1994). Contemporary management of depression. *American Journal of Medicine*, *97* (Supplement 6A), 24S–32S.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Annis, H. M. (1986). A relapse prevention model for treatment of alcoholics. In W. R. Miller & N. Heather (Eds.), *Treating addictive behaviors* (pp. 407–433). New York: Plenum Press.

Anthonisen, N. R., Skeans, M. A., Wise, R. A., Manfreda, J., Kanner, R. E., & Connett, R. E., for the Lung Health Study Research Group. (2005). The effects of a smoking cessation intervention on 14.5-year mortality. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, *142*, 233–239.

Anton, R. F., O'Malley, S. S., Ciraulo, D. A., Cisler, R. A., Couper, D., Donovan, D. M., … Zweben, A., (2006). Combined pharmacotherapies and behavioral interventions for alcohol dependence. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *295*, 2003–2017.

Arango, V., & Mann, J. J. (2009). Abnormalities of brain structure and function in mood disorders. In D. S. Charney & E. J. Nestler (Eds.), *Neurobiology of mental illness* (3rd ed., pp. 515–529). New York: Oxford University Press.

Arfè, A., Scotti, L., Varas-Lorenzo, C., Nicotra, F., Zambon, A., Kollhorst, B., … Schade, R. (2016). Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and risk of heart failure in four European countries: Nested case-control study. *British Medical Journal*, *354*, 4857.

Armor, D. J., Polich, J. M., & Stambul, H. B. (1976). *Alcoholism and treatment*. Report prepared for the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (R-1739-NIAAA). Santa Monica, CA: Rand Corporation.

Arria, A. M., Caldeira, K. M., Kasperski, S. J., O'Grady, K. E., Vincent, K. B., Griffiths, R. R., & Wish, E. D. (2010). Increased alcohol consumption, nonmedical prescription drug use, and illicit drug use are associated with energy drink consumption among college students. *Journal of Addiction Medicine*, *4*, 74–80.

Arria, A. M., & Compton, W. M. (2017). Complexities in understanding and addressing the serious public health issues related to the nonmedical use of prescription drugs. *Addictive Behaviors*, *65*, 215–217.

Asbridge, M., Hayden, J. A., & Cartwright, J. L. (2012). Acute cannabis consumption and motor vehicle collision risk: Systematic review of observational studies and meta-analysis. *British Medical Journal*, *344*, e536.

Ashley, R. (1975). *Cocaine: Its history, uses, and effects*. New York: Warner.

Ashok, A. H., Mizuno, Y., Volkow, N. D., & Howes, O. D. (2017). Association of stimulant use with dopaminergic alterations in users of cocaine, amphetamine, or methamphetamine: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA Psychiatry*. Published online March 15, 2017. doi:10.1001/jamapsychiatry.2017.0135

Austin, S. B., & Gortmaker, S. L. (2001). Dieting and smoking initiation in early adolescent girls and boys: A prospective study. *American Journal of Public Health*, *91*, 446–450.

Australian Drug Law Reform Foundation. (1996). *Drug love: The questioning of our current drug law*. Canberra: Author.

Baer, J. S., Kivlahan, D. R., Blume, A. W., McKnight, P., & Marlatt, G. A. (2001). Brief intervention for heavy drinking college students: 4-Year follow-up and natural history. *American Journal of Public Health*, *91*, 1310–1316.

Baer, J. S., Kivlahan, D. R., Fromme, K., & Marlatt, G. A. (1994). Secondary prevention of alcohol abuse with college student populations: A skills-training approach. In G. Howard & P. E. Nathan (Eds.), *Alcohol use and misuse by young adults* (pp. 83–108). Notre Dame, IN: Notre Dame University Press.

Baggott, M. J., Garrison, K. J., Coyle, J. R., Galloway, G. P., Barnes, A. J., Huestis, M. A., & Mendelson, J. E. (2016). MDMA impairs response to water intake in healthy volunteers. *Advances in Pharmacological Sciences*, http://dx.doi.org/10.1155/2016/2175896

Bak, A. A., & Grobbee, D. E. (1989). The effect on serum cholesterol levels of coffee brewed by filtering or boiling. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *321*, 1432–1437.

Balazs, R., Bridges, R. J., & Cotman, C. W. (2006). *Excitatory amino acid transmission in health and disease*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

Baldessarini, R. J. (1985). *Chemotherapy in psychiatry: Principles and practice* (rev. ed.). Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Ball, J. C., Meyers, C. P., & Friedman, S. R. (1988). Reducing the risk of AIDS through methadone maintenance treatment. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, *29*, 214–226.

Bangert-Drowns, R. L. (1988). The effects of school-based substance abuse education: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Drug Education*, *18*, 243–264.

Baratloo, A., Rouhipour, A., Forouzanfar, M. M., Safari, S., Amiri, M., & Negida, A. (2016). The role of caffeine in pain management: A brief literature review. *Anaesthesiology and Pain Management*, *6*, e33193.

Barceloux, D. G. (2012). *Medical toxicology of drug abuse: Synthesized chemicals and psychoactive plants*. New York: Wiley.

Barkley, R. A. (2001). Foreword. In L. L. Weyandt (Ed.), *An ADHD primer* (pp. ix–x). Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

Barnes, J. (2009). St. John's wort. *Journal of Primary Health Care*, *1*, 65.

Barone, J. J., & Roberts, H. R. (1996). Caffeine consumption. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, *34*, 119–129.

Barr, H. M., & Streissguth, A. P. (2001). Identifying maternal self-reported alcohol use associated with fetal alcohol spectrum disorders. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *25*, 283–287.

Barrett, R. J. (1985). Behavioral approaches to individual differences in substance abuse. In M. Galizio & S. A. Maisto (Eds.), *Determinants of substance abuse: Biological, psychological, and environmental factors* (pp. 125–175). New York: Plenum Press.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Barrett-Connor, E., Chang, J. C., & Edelstein, S. L. (1994). Coffee-associated osteoporosis offset by daily milk consumption. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *271*, 280–283.

Bartholow, B. D., & Heinz, A. (2006). Alcohol and aggression without consumption. *Psychological Science*, *17*, 30–37.

Bartolet, J., & Levine, S. (2001). The holy men of heroin. In H. T. Wilson (Ed.), *Drugs, society and behavior* (pp. 85–86). Guilford, CT: McGraw-Hill/Dushkin.

Bauman, M. H., Wang, X., & Rothman, R. B. (2007). 3,4-Methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA) neurotoxicity in rats: A reappraisal of past and present findings. *Psychopharmacology*, *189*, 407–424.

Baur, J. A., & Sinclair, D. A. (2006). Therapeutic potential of resveratrol: The in vivo evidence. *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery*, *5*, 493–506.

Beardsley, P. M., Balster, R. L., & Harris, L. S. (1996). Evaluation of the discriminative stimulus and reinforcing effects of gammahydroxybutyrate (GHB). *Psychopharmacology*, *127*, 315–322.

Becker, C. E., Roe, R. L., & Scott, R. A. (1975). *Alcohol as a drug*. New York: Medcom Press.

Becker, H. S. (1953). Becoming a marihuana user. *American Journal of Sociology*, *59*, 235–242.

Becker, H. S. (1963). *Outsiders: Studies in the sociology of deviance*. New York: Free Press.

Belluzzi, J. D., Lee, A. G., Oliff, H. S., & Leslie, F. M. (2004). Age-dependent effects of nicotine on locomotor activity and conditioned place preference in rats. *Psychopharmacology*, *174*, 389–395.

Benet, L. Z., Mitchell, J. R., & Sheiner, L. B. (1990a). General principles. In A. G. Gilman, T. W. Rall, A. S. Nies, & P. Taylor (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis for therapeutics* (8th ed., pp. 1–2). New York: Pergamon Press.

Benet, L. Z., Mitchell, J. R., & Sheiner, L. B. (1990b). Pharmacokinetics: The dynamics of drug absorption, distribution, and elimination. In A. G. Gilman, T. W. Rall, A. S. Nies, & P. Taylor (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (8th ed., pp. 3–32). New York: Pergamon Press.

Benowitz, N. L., Hall, S. M., & Modin, G. (1989). Persistent increase in caffeine concentrations in people who stop smoking. *British Medical Journal*, *298*, 1075–1076.

Benowitz, N. L., Porchet, H., Sheiner, L., & Jacob, P. (1988). Nicotine absorption and cardiovascular effects with smokeless tobacco use: Comparison with cigarettes and nicotine gum. *Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, *44*, 23–28.

Bergen-Cico, D., & MacClurg, K. (2016). Kratom (*Mitragyna speciosa*) use, addiction potential and legal status. In V. R. Preedy (Ed.), *Neuropathology of drug addictions and substance misuse*. New York, NY: Academic Press.

Berger, B., Porta, N., Foata, F., Grathwohl, D., Delley, M., Moine, D., & Sprenger, N. (2020). Linking human milk oligosaccharides, infant fecal community types, and later risk to require antibiotics. *mBio*, *11*(2), e03196-19. doi:10.1128/mBio.03196-19

Berild, D., & Hasselbalch, H. (1981). Survival after a blood alcohol of 1127 mg/dl. *Lancet*, *2* (8242), 363.

Bershad, A. K., Miller, M. A., Baggott, M. J., & de Wit, H. (2016). The effects of MDMA on socio-emotional processing: Does MDMA differ from other stimulants? *Journal of Psychopharmacology*, *30*, 1248–1258.

Bhana, N., Foster, R. H., Olney, R., & Plosker, G. L. (2001). Olanzapine: An updated review of its use in the management of schizophrenia. *Drugs*, *61*, 111–161.

Bhugra, D., & Bhul, K. (2010). Ethnic and cultural factors in psychopharmacology. In R. Bhattacharya, S. Cross, & D. Bhugra (Eds.), *Clinical topics in cultural psychiatry* (pp. 272–283). London: Royal College of Psychiatrists.

Bhupathiraju, S. N., Pan, A., Malik, V. S., Manson, J. E., Willett, W. C., van Dam, R. M., & Hu, F. B. (2013). Caffeinated and caffeine-free beverages and risk of type 2 diabetes. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, *97*, 155–166.

Bickel, W. K., & DeGrandpre, R. J. (1995). Price and alternatives: Suggestions for drug policy from psychology. *International Journal of Drug Policy*, *6*, 93–105.

Bickel, W. K., DeGrandpre, R. J., & Higgins, S. T. (1995). The behavioral economics of concurrent drug reinforcers: A review and reanalysis of drug self-administration research. *Psychopharmacology*, *118*, 250–259.

Bickel, W. K., Snider, S. E., Quisenberry, A. J., Stein, J. S., & Hanlon, C. A. (2016). Competing neurobehavioral decision systems theory of cocaine addiction: From mechanisms to therapeutic opportunities. *Progress in Brain Research*, *223*, 269–293.

Bina, C. (1998). Drug testing 101: Detecting tainted samples. *Corrections Today*, *60*, 122–128.

Bishara, D., & Taylor, D. (2008). Upcoming agents for the treatment of schizophrenia. *Drugs*, *68*, 2269–2292.

Blane, H. T. (1976). Education and the prevention of alcoholism. In B. Kissin & H. Begleiter (Eds.), *The biology of alcoholism: Vol. 4. Social aspects of alcoholism* (pp. 519–578). New York: Plenum Press.

Blane, H. T. (1988). Research on mass communications and alcohol. *Contemporary Drug Problems*, *15*, 7–20.

Bloomquist, E. R. (1971). *Marijuana: The second trip* (rev. ed.). Beverly Hills, CA: Glencoe Press.

Blum, K. (1984). *Handbook of abusable drugs*. New York: Gardner Press.

Bofetta, P., Hecht, S., Gray, N., Gupta, P., & Staif, K. (2008). Smokeless tobacco and cancer. *Lancet Oncology*, *9*, 667–675.

Bogenschutz, M. P., & Johnson, M. W. (2016). Classic hallucinogens in the treatment of addictions. *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry*, *64*, 250–258.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Bolin, B. L., Alcorn III, J. L., Reynolds, A. R., Lile, J. A., & Rush, C. R. (2016). Human drug discrimination: A primer and methodological review. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *24*, 214–228.

Bonham, C., & Abbott, C. (2008). Are second generation antipsychotics a distinct class? *Journal of Psychiatric Practice*, *14*, 225–231.

Borelli, B., Spring, B., Niaura, R., Hitsman, B., & Papandonatos, G. (2001). Influences of gender and weight gain on short-term relapse to smoking in a cessation trial. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *69*, 511–515.

Botvin, G. J. (1999). Adolescent drug abuse prevention: Current findings and future directions. In M. D. Glantz & C. R. Hartel (Eds.), *Drug abuse: Origins and interventions* (pp. 285–308). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Botvin, G. J., & Botvin, E. M. (1992). School-based and community-based prevention approaches. In J. H. Lowinson, P. Ruiz, & R. B. Millman (Eds.), *Substance abuse: A comprehensive textbook* (2nd ed., pp. 910–927). Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins.

Botvin, G. J., & Griffin, K. W. (2003). Drug abuse prevention curricula in schools. In Z. Sloboda & W. J. Bukoski (Eds.), *Handbook of drug abuse prevention: Theory, science, and practice* (pp. 45–74). New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers.

Botvin, G. J., & Griffin, K. W. (2015). Life skills training: A competence enhancement approach to tobacco, alcohol, and drug abuse prevention. In L. M. Scheier (Ed.), *Handbook of adolescent drug use prevention: Research, intervention strategies, and practice* (pp. 177–196). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Bouso, J. C., Boblin, R., Farre, M., Alcazar, M. A., & Gomez-Jarabo, G. (2008). MDMA-assisted psychotherapy using low doses in a small sample of women with chronic posttraumatic stress disorder. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *40*, 225–236.

Boutros, N. N., & Bowers, M. B. (1996). Chronic substance-induced psychotic disorders: State of the literature. *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences*, *8*, 262–269.

Boys, A., Marsden, J., & Strang, J. (2001). Understanding reasons for drug use amongst young people: A functional perspective. *Health Education Research*, *16*, 457–469.

Bozarth, M. A. (Ed.). (1987). *Methods of assessing the reinforcing properties of drugs.* New York: Springer-Verlag.

Bozarth, M. A., & Wise, R. A. (1985). Toxicity associated with long-term intravenous heroin and cocaine self-administration in the rat. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *254*, 81–83.

Bradley, K. A., Donovan, D. M., & Larson, E. B. (1993). How much is too much? Advising patients about safe levels of alcohol consumption. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, *153*, 2734–2740.

Bramson, H., DesJarlais, D. C., Arasteh, K., Nugent, A., Guardino, V., Feelemeyer, J., & Hodel, D. (2015). State laws, syringe exchange, and HIV among persons who inject drugs in the United States: History and effectiveness. *Journal of Public Health Policy*, *36*, 212–230.

Brandon, T. H., Juliano, L. M., & Copeland, A. L. (1999). Expectancies for tobacco smoking. In I. Kirsch (Ed.), *How expectancies shape experience* (pp. 263–300). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Brands, B., Sproule, B., & Marshman, J. (Eds.). (1998). *Drugs and drug abuse* (3rd ed.). Toronto: Addiction Research Foundation.

Brecher, E. M. (1972). *Licit and illicit drugs.* Boston: Little, Brown.

Brecher, E. M. (1986). Drug laws and drug law enforcement: A review and evaluation based on 111 years of experience. *Drugs and Society*, *1*, 1–27.

Breggin, P. R. (2001). Questioning the treatment for ADHD. *Science*, *291*, 595.

Brents, L. K. (2016). Marijuana, the endocannabinoid system and the female reproductive system. *Yale Journal of Biology and Medicine*, *89*, 175–191.

Breslau, N., & Peterson, E. L. (1996). Smoking cessation in young adults: Age at initiation of cigarette smoking and other suspected influences. *American Journal of Public Health*, *86*, 214–220.

Brevet-Aeby, C., Brunelin, J., Iceta, S., Padovan, C., & Poulet, E. (2016). Prefrontal cortex and impulsivity: Interest of noninvasive brain stimulation. *Neuroscience & Biobehavioral Reviews*, *71*, 112–134.

Brewer, C. (1996). On the specific effectiveness and under-valuing of pharmacological treatments for addiction: A comparison of methadone, naltrexone and disulfiram with psychosocial interventions. *Addiction Research*, *3*, 297–313.

Brick, J. (1990). *Marijuana.* New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers University Center of Alcohol Studies.

Brody, A. L., Mandelkern, M. A., Cosyello, M. R., Abrams, A. L., Scheibal, D., Farahi, J., ... Mukhin, A. G. (2008). Brain nicotinic acetylcholine receptor occupancy: Effect of smoking a denicotinized cigarette. *The International Journal of Neuropsychopharmacology*, doi:10.1017/S146114570800922X

Brody, A. L., Mandelkern, M. A., London, E. D., Olmstead, R. E., Farahi, J., Scheibal, D., ... Mukhin, A. G. (2006). Cigarette smoking saturates brain a^4b^2 nicotinic acetylcholine receptors. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *63*, 907–915.

Brown, A. S. (2011). The environment and susceptibility to schizophrenia. *Progress in Neurobiology*, *93*, 23–48.

Brown, B. A., Christiansen, B. A., & Goldman, M. S. (1987). The Alcohol Expectancy Questionnaire: An instrument for the assessment of adolescent and adult alcohol expectancies. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *48*, 483–491.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Brown, L., & Cohen, M. (2015). *Herbs and natural supplements: An evidence-based guide* (Vol. 2, 5th ed.) Sydney: Elsevier Australia.

Brown, L., Kroon, P. A., Das, D. K., Samarjit, D., Tosaki, A., Chan, V., ... Feick, P. (2009). The biological responses to resveratrol and other polyphenols from alcoholic beverages. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *33*, 1–11.

Brown, R. T., Amler, R. W., Freeman, W. S., Perrin, J. M., Stein, M. T., Feldman, H. M., ... Wolraich, M. L. (2005). Treatment of attention-deficit disorder: Overview of the evidence. *Pediatrics*, *115*, 749–757.

Bruce, M., Scott, N., Shine, P., & Lader, M. (1992). Angiogenic effect of caffeine in patients with anxiety disorders. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *49*, 867–869.

Budney, A. J., & Higgins, S. T. (1998, April). *A community reinforcement approach to treating cocaine addiction*. NIDA publication No. 98–4309.

Budney, A. J., Hughes, J. R., Moore, B. A., & Vandrey, R. (2004). Review of the validity and significance of cannabis withdrawal syndrome. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, *161*, 1967–1977.

Budney, A. J., Moore, B. A., & Vandrey, R. (2004). Health consequences of marijuana use. In J. Brick (Ed.), *Handbook of the medical consequences of alcohol and drug abuse* (pp. 171–217). New York: The Haworth Press.

Budney, A. J., Sargent, J. D., & Lee, D. C. (2015). Vaping cannabis (marijuana): Parellel concerns to e-cigs? *Addiction*, *110*, 1699–1704.

Bukoski, W. J. (2003). The emerging science of drug abuse prevention. In Z. Sloboda & W. J. Bukoski (Eds.), *Handbook of drug abuse prevention: Theory, science, and practice* (pp. 3–24). New York: Kluwer Academic/ Plenum Publishers.

Burke, L. M. (2008). Caffeine and sports performance. *Applied Physiology, Nutrition, and Metabolism*, *33*, 1319–1334.

Burroughs, W. S. (1953). *Junky*. Middlesex, England: Penguin Books.

Bushman, B. J., & Cooper, H. M. (1990). Effects of alcohol on human aggression: An integrative research review. *Psychological Bulletin*, *107*, 341–354.

Butelman, E. R., Prisinzano, T. E., Deng, H., Rus, S., & Kreek, M. J. (2009). *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, *328*, 588–597.

Byck, R. (Ed.). (1974). *Cocaine papers by Sigmund Freud*. New York: Stonehill Publishing Company.

Cairney, S., Maruff, P., Burns, C., & Currie, B. (2002). The neurobehavioral consequences of petrol (gasoline) sniffing. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, *26*, 81–89.

Cairney, S., Maruff, P., Burns, C. B., Currie, J., & Currie, B. J. (2005). Neurological and cognitive recovery following abstinence from petrol sniffing. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, *30*, 1019–1027.

Caldwell, A. E. (1970). *Origins of psychopharmacology—From CPZ to LSD*. Springfield, IL: Charles Thomas.

Caldwell, A. E. (1978). History of psychopharmacology. In W. G. Clark & J. del Guidice (Eds.), *Principles of psychopharmacology* (2nd ed., pp. 9–30). New York: Academic Press.

Cameron, K., Kolanos, R., Verkariya, R., De Felice, L., & Glennon, R. A. (2013). Mephedrone and methylenedioxypyrovalerone (MDPV), major constituents of "bath salts," produce opposite effects at the human dopamine receptor. *Psychopharmacology*, 227, 493–499.

Campaign for Tobacco-Free Kids (2010). *Light and low tar fact sheets*. Washington, DC: Author.

Campaign for Tobacco-Free Kids (2016). *Electronic cigarettes: Use among adults and youth*. Washington, DC: Author.

Canadian Cancer Society (October, 2016). *Cigarette package health warnings: International status report* (5th ed.). Toronto, Ontario: Author.

Cappell, H. D., Sellers, E. M., & Busto, U. (1986). Benzodiazepines as drugs of abuse and dependence. In H. D. Cappell, F. B. Glaser, Y. Israel, H. Kalant, W. Schmidt, E. M. Sellers, & R. C. Smart (Eds.), *Research advances in alcohol and drug problems* (Vol. 9, pp. 53–126). New York: Plenum Press.

Caputi, T. L., & McLellan, A. T. (2017). Truth and D.A.R.E.: Is D.A.R.E.'s new Keepin' it REAL curriculum suitable for American nationwide implementation? *Drugs: Education, Prevention and Policy*, *24*, 49–57.

Carlin, A. S., Bakker, C. B., Halpern, L., & Post, R. D. (1972). Social facilitation of marijuana intoxication: Impact of social set and pharmacological activity. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, *80*, 132–140.

Carlson, N. R. (2001). *Physiology of behavior* (7th ed.). Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

Carroll, J. F. X., Malloy, T. E., & Kenrick, F. M. (1977). Drug abuse by alcoholics and problem drinkers: A literature review and evaluation. *American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse*, *4*, 317–341.

Carroll, K. M. (1996). Relapse prevention as a psychosocial treatment: A review of controlled clinical trials. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *4*, 46–54.

Carroll, K. M. (2015). Cognitive behavioral therapies. In *Textbook of substance abuse treatment* (5th ed., pp. 385–396). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Carroll, K. M., & Kiluk, B. D. (2016). Matching and differential therapies. In A. H. Mack, K. T. Brady, S. I. Miller, & R. J. Frances (Eds.), *Clinical textbook of addictive disorders* (4th ed., pp. 531–547). New York: The Guilford Press.

Carroll, K. M., Sinha, R., Nich, C., Babuscio, T., & Rounsaville, B. (2002). Contingency management to enhance naltrexone treatment of opioid dependence: A randomized clinical trial of reinforcement magnitude. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *10*, 54–63.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Carroll, M. E. (1990). PCP and hallucinogens. *Advances in Alcohol and Substance Abuse*, *9*, 167–190.

Carter, W. E. (1980). *Cannabis in Costa Rica*. Philadelphia: Institute for the Study of Human Issues.

Carter, W. E., & Doughty, P. L. (1976). Social and cultural aspects of cannabis use in Costa Rica. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, *282*, 2–16.

Castellanos, N., & Conrod, P. J. (2006). Brief interventions targeting personality risk factors for adolescent substance misuse reduce depression, panic and risk taking behaviours. *Journal of Mental Health*, *15*, 645–658.

Cavazos-Rehg, P. A., Sowles, S. J., Krauss, M. J., Agbonavbare, V., Grucza, R., & Bierut, L. (2016). A content analysis of tweets about high-potency marijuana. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *166*, 100–108.

CBS Miami. (2012). Medical examiner: Causeway Cannibal not high on bath salts. http://miami.cbslocal.com/2012/06/27/medical-examiner-causeway-cannibal-not-high-on-bath-salts/

Cellucci, T. (1984). The prevention of alcohol problems: Conceptual and methodological issues. In P. M. Miller & T. D. Nirenberg (Eds.), *Prevention of alcohol abuse* (pp. 15–53). New York: Plenum Press.

Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality (2016). *2015 National Survey on Drug Use and Health: Detailed tables*. Rockville, MD: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (1993). Mortality trends for selected smoking-related and breast cancer in the United States, 1950–1990. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *42*, 857, 863–866.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2017). Quitting smoking among adults—United States 2000–2015. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *65*, 1457–1464.

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2017). *Effectiveness of family planning methods*. https://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/contraception/

Cepada-Benito, A., Reynoso, J. T., & Erath, S. (2004). Meta-analysis of the efficacy of nicotine replacement therapy for smoking cessation: Differences between men and women. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *72*, 712–722.

Chai, G., Governale, L., McMahon, A. W., Trinidat, J. P., Staffa, J., & Murphy, D. (2012). Trends of outpatient prescription drug utilization in U.S. children, 2002–2010. *Pediatrics*, *130*, 23–31.

Chait, L. D., & Pierri, J. (1992). Effects of smoked marijuana on human performance: A critical review. In L. Murphy & A. Bartke (Eds.), *Marijuana/cannabinoids: Neurobiology and neurophysiology* (pp. 387–423). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Chakos, M. H., Mayerhoff, D. I., Loebel, A. D., Alvir, J. M., & Lieberman, J. A. (1992). Incidence and correlates of acute extrapyramidal symptoms in first episode of schizophrenia. *Psychopharmacology Bulletin*, *28*, 81–86.

Charlton, A. (2004). Medicinal uses of tobacco in history. *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine*, *97*(6), 292–296. doi.org/10.1177/014107680409700614

Charness, M. E. (1993). Brain lesions in alcoholics. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *17*, 2–11.

Chen, L.-S., Horton, A., & Bierut, L. (2017). Pathways to precision medicine in smoking cessation treatments. *Neuroscience Letters*.

Chen, T. T. L., & Winder, A. E. (1986). When is the critical moment to provide smoking education at schools? *Journal of Drug Education*, *16*, 121–134.

Cherek, D. R., Roache, J. D., Egli, M., Davis, C., Spiga, R., & Cowan, K. (1993). Acute effects of marijuana smoking on aggressive, escape, and point-maintained responding of male drug users. *Psychopharmacology*, *111*, 163–168.

Chossodovsky, M. (2017). The spoils of war: Afghanistan's multi-billion dollar opium trade. *Global Research*. http://www.globalresearch.ca/the-spoils-of-war-afghanistan-s-multibillion-dollar-heroin-trade/91.

Chou, S. P., Grant, B. F., Dawson, D. A., Stinson, F. S., Saha, T., & Pickering, R. P. (2006). Twelve-month prevalence and changes in drinking after driving. *Alcohol Research and Health*, *29*, 143–151.

Cicero, T. J. (1980). Alcohol self-administration, tolerance, and withdrawal in humans and animals: Theoretical and methodological issues. In H. Rigter & J. Crabbe, Jr. (Eds.), *Alcohol tolerance and dependence* (pp. 1–50). Amsterdam: Elsevier/North-Holland Biomedical Press.

Cicero, T. J., Inciardi, J. A., & Munoz, A. (2005). Trends in abuse of OxyContin and other opioid analgesics in the United States: 2002–2004. *Journal of Pain*, *6*, 662–672.

Ciraulo, D. A., Barnhill, J. G., Greenblatt, D. J., Shader, R. I., Ciraulo, A. M., Tarmey, M. F., ..., M. I., ... Foti, M. E. (1988). Abuse liability and clinical pharmacokinetics of alprazolam in alcoholic men. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, *49*, 333–337.

Clapton, E. (2007). *Clapton: The autobiography*. New York: Random House.

Clark, W. G., Brater, D. C., & Johnson, A. R. (Eds.). (1988). *Goth's medical pharmacology* (12th ed.). St. Louis: C. V. Mosby.

Clinger, O. W., & Johnson, N. A. (1951). Purposeful inhalation of gasoline vapors. *Psychiatric Quarterly*, *25*, 557–567.

Cohen, L. J. (1997). Rational drug use in the treatment of depression. *Pharmacotherapy*, *17*, 45–61.

Cohen, M. M., & Marmillo, M. J. (1967). Chromosome damage in human leukocytes induced by lysergic acid diethylamide. *Science*, *155*, 1417–1419.

Cohen, R. S. (1998). *The love drug: Dancing to the beat of ecstasy*. Binghamton, NY: Haworth Press.

Cohen, S. (1981). *The substance abuse problems*. Binghamton, NY: Haworth Press.

Colder, C. R., Mehta, P., Balanda, K., Campbell, R. T., Mayhew, K. P., Stanton, W. R., ... Flay, B. R. (2001). Identifying

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

trajectories of adolescent smoking: An application of latent growth mixture modeling. *Health Psychology*, *20*, 127–135.

Coleman, J. J. (2016). Reducing illicit methamphetamine labs: Is precursor control the answer? *Journal of Drug Policy Analysis*, *9*, 31–54.

Collins, J. J., Jr. (Ed.). (1980). *Alcohol use and criminal behavior: An empirical, theoretical, and methodological overview*. New York: Guilford Press.

Comer, S. D., Haney, M., Foltin, R. W., & Fischman, M. W. (1997). Effects of caffeine withdrawal on humans living in a residential laboratory. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *5*, 399–403.

Comer, S. M., & Zacny, J. P. (2005). Subjective effects of opioids. In M. Earlywine (Ed.), *Mind-altering drugs: The science of subjective experience* (pp. 217–239). London: Oxford Press.

Comitas, L. (1976). Cannabis and work in Jamaica: A refutation of the amotivational syndrome. *Annals of New York Academy of Sciences*, *282*, 24–32.

Compton, D. R., Harris, L. S., Lichtman, A. H., & Martin, B. R. (1996). Marijuana. In C. R. Schuster & M. J. Kuhar (Eds.), *Pharmacological aspects of drug dependence: Toward an integrated neurobehavioral approach* (pp. 83–158). New York: Springer-Verlag.

Connecticut Clearing House. (2001). *Qs and As on drug testing*. Plainville, CT: Author.

Connors, G. J., DiClemente, C. C., Velasquez, M. M., & Donovan, D. M. (2013). *Substance abuse treatment and the stages of change: Selecting and planning interventions* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.

Connors, G. J., Maisto, S. A., & Donovan, D. M. (1996). Conceptualization of relapse: A summary of psychological and psychobiological models. *Addiction*, *91*(Suppl.), S5–S14.

Conrod, P. J. (2016). Personality-targeted interventions for substance use and misuse. *Current Addiction Reports*, *3*, 426–436.

Conrod, P. J., Castellanos, N., & Strang, J. (2010). Brief, personality-targeted coping skills interventions prolong survival as a non-drug user over a two-year period during adolescence. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *67*, 85–93.

Conrod, P. J., O'Leary, M., Newton, N., Topper, L., Castellanos-Ryan, N., Mackie, C., & Girard, A. (2013). Effectiveness of a selective, personality-targeted prevention program for adolescent alcohol use and misuse. *JAMA Psychiatry*, *70*, 334–342.

Cook, R. F. (2003). Drug abuse prevention in the workplace. In Z. Sloboda & W. J. Bukoski (Eds.), *Handbook of drug abuse prevention: Theory, science, and practice* (pp. 157–172). New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers.

Cooper, Z. D., & Haney, M. (2009). Comparison of subjective, pharmacokinetic, and physiological effects of marijuana smoked as joints and blunts. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *103*, 107–113.

Cooperrider, C. (1988). Antidepressants. In G. W. Lawson & C. A. Cooperrider (Eds.), *Clinical psychopharmacology* (pp. 91–108). Rockville, MD: Aspen Publishers.

Coplan, J. D., Wolk, S. I., & Klein, D. F. (1995). Anxiety and the serotonin 1A receptor. In F. E. Bloom & D. J. Kupfer (Eds.), *Psychopharmacology: The fourth generation of progress* (pp. 1301–1310). New York: Raven Press.

Corazza, O., Shifano, F., Simonato, P., Fergus, S., Assi, S., Stair, J., ... Scherbaum, N. (2012). The phenomenon of new drugs on the internet: The case of ketamine derivative: Methoxetamine. *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental*, *27*, 145–149.

Cornelis, M. C., El-Sohemy, A., Kabagambe, E. K., & Campos, H. (2006). Coffee, CYP1A2 genotype, and risk of myocardial infarction. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *295*, 1135–1141.

Coryell, W., & Winokur, G. (1982). Course and outcome. In E. S. Paykel (Ed.), *Handbook of affective disorders*. New York: Guilford Press.

Costa, E., Guidotti, A., & Mao, C. C. (1975). Evidence for involvement of GABA in the action of benzodiazepines. Studies on rat cerebellum. In E. Costa & P. Greengard (Eds.), *Mechanism of action of benzodiazepines* (pp. 113–130). New York: Raven Press.

Costello, E. J., & Angold, A. (2010). Developmental transitions to psychopathology: Are there prodromes to substance use disorders? *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, *51*, 526–532.

Cotton, P. (1993). Low tar cigarettes come under fire. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *270*, 1399.

Coultas, D. B., Stidley, C. A., & Samet, J. M. (1993). Cigarette yields of tar and nicotine and markers of exposure to tobacco smoke. *American Review of Respiratory Disease*, *148*, 435–440.

Council on Scientific Affairs. (1984). Caffeine labeling. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *252*, 803–806.

Cox, E. R., Halloran, D. R., Homan, S. M., Welliver, S., & Mager, D. E. (2008). Trends in the prevalence of chronic medication use in children: 2002–2005. *Pediatrics*, *122*, 1053–1061.

Crean, R. D., Crane, N. A., & Mason, B. J. (2011). An evidence-based review of acute and long-term effects of cannabis use on executive cognitive functions. *Journal of Addiction Medicine*, *5*, 1–8.

Crocq, M.-A. (2003). Alcohol, nicotine, caffeine, and mental disorders. *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience*, *5*, 175–185.

Croft, R. J., Mackay, A. J., Mills, A. T. D., & Gruzelier, J. G. H. (2001). The relative contributions of ecstasy and cannabis to cognitive impairment. *Psychopharmacology*, *153*, 373–379.

Crowley, T. J. (1981). The reinforcers for drug abuse: Why people take drugs. In H. Shaffer & M. E. Burglass (Eds.), *Classic contributions in the addictions* (pp. 367–381). New York: Brunner/Mazel.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Cunningham, J. A. (2009). Internet evidence-based treatments. In P. M. Miller (Ed.), *Evidence-based addiction treatment* (pp. 379–398). Boston: Elsevier.

Cunningham, J. A., Kypri, K., & McCambridge, J. (2011). The use of emerging technologies in alcohol treatment. *Alcohol Research and Health*, *33*, 320–326.

Cunningham, J. K., & Liu, L. M. (2005). Impacts of federal precursor chemical regulations on methamphetamine arrests. *Addiction*, *100*, 479–488.

Curatolo, P. W., & Robertson, D. (1983). The health consequences of caffeine. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, *98*, 641–653.

Curry, S. J., Wagner, E. H., & Grothaus, L. C. (1990). Intrinsic and extrinsic motivation for smoking cessation. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *58*, 310–316.

Dackis, C. A., & Gold, M. S. (1985). New concepts in cocaine addiction: The dopamine depletion hypothesis. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, *9*, 469–477.

Dafters, R. I. (2006). Chronic ecstasy (MDMA) use is associated with deficits in task-switching but not inhibition or memory updating executive functions. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *83*, 181–184.

Dafters, R. I., Hoshi, R., & Talbot, A. C. (2004). Contribution of cannabis and MDMA ("ecstasy") to cognitive changes in long-term polydrug users. *Psychopharmacology*, *173*, 405–410.

Dakwar, E. (2016). The death and rebirth of hallucinogens. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *165*, 293–297.

Dal Cason, T. A., & Franzosa, E. S. (2003). Occurrences and forms of the hallucinogens. In R. Laing (Ed.), *Hallucinogens: A forensic drug handbook* (pp. 37–66). London: Academic Press.

Dallery, J., & Raiff, B. R. (2011). Contingency management in the 21st century: Technological innovations to promote smoking cessation. *Substance Use and Misuse*, *46*, 10–22.

Daly, J. W., & Fredholm, B. B. (2004). Mechanisms of action of caffeine on the nervous system. In A. Nehlig (Ed.), *Coffee, tea, chocolate, and the brain* (pp. 1–11). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Damasio, A. R. (1994). *Descartes' error: Emotion, reason and the human brain*. New York: Avon Books.

D'Amicis, A., & Viani, R. (1993). The consumption of coffee. In S. Garattini (Ed.), *Caffeine, coffee, and health* (pp. 1–16). New York: Raven Press.

Daniels, K., Mosher, W. D., & Jones, J. (2013). Contraceptive methods women have ever used: United States, 1982–2010. *National Health Statistics Reports*, *62*, Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics.

Das, S., Tonelli, M., & Ziedonis, D. (2016). Update on smoking cessation: E-cigarettes, emerging tobacco products trends, and new technology-based interventions. *Current Psychiatry Reports*, *18*, 51–65.

Daumann, J., Fischermann, T., Heekeren, K., Henke, K., Thron, A., & Gouzoulis-Mayfrank, E. (2005). Memory-related hippocampal dysfunction in poly-drug ecstasy (3,4-methylenedioxymethamphatamine) users. *Psychopharmacology*, *180*, 607–611.

Daumann, J., Hensen, G., Thimm, B., Rezk, M., Till, B., & Gouzoulis-Mayfrank, E. (2004). Self-reported psychopathological symptoms in recreational ecstasy (MDMA) users are mainly associated with regular cannabis use: Further evidence from a combined cross-sectional/longitudinal investigation. *Psychopharmacology*, *173*, 398–404.

Davis, J. M., & Schlemmer, R. F. (1980). The amphetamine psychosis. In J. Caldwell & S. J. Mule (Eds.), *Amphetamines and related stimulants: Chemical, biological, clinical, and sociological aspects* (pp. 161–174). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Davis, W. (1988). *Passage of darkness: The ethnobiology of the Haitian zombie*. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press.

Day, N. L., & Richardson, G. A. (1991). Prenatal marijuana use: Epidemiology, methodological issues, and infant outcome. *Chemical Dependency and Pregnancy*, *18*, 77–91.

Deahl, M. (1991). Cannabis and memory loss. *British Journal of Addiction*, *86*, 249–252.

DeFonseca, F. R., & Schneider, M. (2008). The endogenous cannabinoid system and drug addiction: 20 Years after the discovery of the CBI receptor. *Addiction Biology*, *13*, 143–146.

Degenhardt, L., Chiu, W.-T., Sampson, N., Kessler, R. C., Anthony, J. C., Angermeyer, M., (2008). Toward a global view of alcohol, cannabis, and cocaine use: Findings from the WHO World Mental Health Surveys. *PLoS Medicine*, *5*, e141.

DeGrandpre, R. J., Bickle, W. K., Hughes, J. R., & Higgins, S. T. (1992). Behavioral economics of drug self-administration, III. A reanalysis of the nicotine regulation hypothesis. *Psychopharmacology*, *108*, 1–10.

DeJong, W., & Blanchette, J. (2014). Case closed: Research evidence on the positive public health impact of the age 21 minimum legal drinking age in the United States. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs*, *75*(Suppl. 17), 108–115.

DeLeon, G. (1984). *The therapeutic community: Study of effectiveness*. NIDA Treatment Research Monograph 84. Rockville, MD: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

DeLeon, G. (1995). Therapeutic communities for addictions: A theoretical framework. *International Journal of the Addictions*, *30*, 1603–1645.

DeLeon, G. (2015). Therapeutic communities. In M. Galanter, H. D. Kleber, & K. T. Brady (Eds.), *Textbook of substance abuse treatment* (5th ed., pp. 511–530). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

DeLisi, L. E. (2008). The effect of cannabis on the brain: Can it cause brain anomalies that lead to increased risk for schizophrenia? *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, *21*, 140–150.

DeLong, F. L., & Levy, B. I. (1974). A model of attention describing the cognitive effects of marijuana. In L. L. Miller (Ed.), *Marijuana: Effects on human behavior* (pp. 103–120). New York: Academic Press.

Deniker, P. (1983). Discovery of the clinical use of neuroleptics. In M. J. Parnham & J. Bruinvels (Eds.), *Discoveries in pharmacology: Vol. 1. Psycho- and neuropharmacology* (pp. 163–180). New York: Elsevier.

Denissenko, M. F., Pao, A., Tang, M., & Pfeiffer, G. P. (1996). Preferential formation of benzo[*a*]pyrene adducts at lung cancer mutational hotspots in *P53*. *Science*, *274*, 430–432.

Dennehy, C. E., Tsourounis, C., & Miller, A. E. (2005). Evaluation of herbal dietary supplements marketed on the Internet for recreational use. *Annals of Pharmacotherapy*, *39*, 1634–1639.

de Rios, M. D., & Rumrrill, R. (2008). *A hallucinogenic tea, laced with controversy*. Westport, CT: Praeger Press.

de Sola, S., Tarancon, T., Pena-Casanova, J., Espadaler, J. M., Langohr, K., Poudevida, S., ... de la Torre, R. (2008). Auditory event-related potentials (P3) and cognitive performance in recreational ecstasy polydrug users: Evidence from a 12-month longitudinal study. *Psychopharmacology*, *200*, 425–437.

Deutsch, A. Y., & Roth, R. H. (2009). Neurochemical systems in the central nervous system. In D. S. Charney & E. J. Nestler (Eds.), *Neurobiology of mental illness* (3rd ed., pp. 12–28). New York: Oxford University Press.

Devane, W. A., Dysarz, F. A., Johnson, R., Melvin, L. S., & Howlett, A. C. (1988). Determination and characterization of a cannabinoid receptor in the rat brain. *Molecular Pharmacology*, *34*, 605–613.

Devane, W. A., Hanus, L., Breuer, A., Pertwee, R. G., Stevenson, L. A., Griffin, G., ... Mechoulam, R. (1992). Isolation and structure of a brain constituent that binds to the cannabinoid receptor. *Science*, *258*, 1946–1949.

De Vry, J., Jentzsch, K. R., Kuhl, E., & Eckel, G. (2004). Behavioral effects of cannabinoids show differential sensitivity to cannabinoid receptor blockade and tolerance development. *Behavioral Pharmacology*, *15*, 1–15.

Dews, P. B., Curtis, G. L., Hanford, K. J., & O'Brien, C. P. (1999). The frequency of caffeine withdrawal in a population-based survey and in a controlled, blinded experiment. *Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, *39*, 1221–1232.

Dews, P. B., O'Brien, C. P., & Bergman, J. (2002). Caffeine: Behavioral effects of withdrawal and related issues. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, *40*, 1257–1261.

Diem, S. J., Blackwell, T. L., Stone, K. L., Yaffe, K., Haney, E. M., Bliziotes, M. M., & Ensrud, K. E. (2007). Use of antidepressants and rates of hip bone loss in older women: The study of osteoporotic fractures. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, *167*, 1240–1245.

Di Forti, M., Morrison, P. D., Butt, A., & Murray, R. M. (2007). Cannabis use and psychiatric and cognitive disorders: The chicken or the egg? *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, *20*, 228–234.

Dimeff, L. A., Baer, J. S., Kivlahan, D. R., & Marlatt, G. A. (1999). *Brief Alcohol Screening and Intervention for College Students (BASICS): A harm reduction approach*. New York: Guilford Press.

Dixit, S., Stein, P. K., Dewland, T. A., Dukes, J. W., Vittinghoff, E., Heckbert, S. R., & Marcus, G. M. (2016). Consumption of caffeinated products and cardiac ectopy. *Journal of the American Heart Association*, *5*, e002503.

Dolan, K., Rouen, D., & Kimber, J. (2004). An overview of the use of urine, hair, sweat, and saliva to detect drug use. *Drug and Alcohol Reviews*, *23*, 213–217.

Doll, R. (1998). The benefit of alcohol in moderation. *Drug and Alcohol Review*, *17*, 353–363.

Dowell, D., Haegerich, T. M., & Chou, R. (2016). CDC Guideline for Prescribing Opioids for Chronic Pain—United States, 2016. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, *65*, 1–49. doi:http://dx.doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.rr6501e1

Dragt, S., Nieman, D. H., Becker, H. E., can de Fliert, R., Dingemans, P. M., de Haan, L., ... Linszen, D. H. (2010). Age of onset of cannabis use is associated with age of onset of high-risk symptoms for psychosis. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*, *55*, 165–171.

Dragt, S., Nieman, D. H., Schultze-Lutter, F., can der Meer, F., Becker, H., de Haan, L., ... Linszen, D. H., on behalf of the EPOS Group. (2012). Cannabis use and age at onset of symptoms in subjects at clinical high risk for psychosis. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, *125*, 45–53.

Driscoll, I., Shumaker, S. A., Snively, B. M., Margolis, K. L., Manson, J. E., Vitolins, ... Espeland, M. A. (2016). Relationships between caffeine intake and risk for probable dementia or global cognitive impairment: The Women's Health Initiative Memory Study. *Journals of Gerontology: Medical Sciences*, *71*, 1596–1602.

Droomers, M., Schrijvers, C. T. M., & Mackenbach, J. P. (2002). Why do lower educated people continue smoking? Explanations from the longitudinal GLOBE study. *Health Psychology*, *21*, 263–272.

Drug Abuse Warning Network. (1996). Retrieved from www.samhsa.gov

Duman, R. S. (2004). Depression: A case of neuronal life and death? *Biological Psychiatry*, *56*, 140–145.

Duman, R. S., Nakagawa, S., & Malberg, J. (2001). Regulation of adult neurogenesis by antidepressant treatment. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, *25*, 836–844.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Duncan, D. F. (1987). Lifetime prevalence of "amotivational syndrome" among users and nonusers of hashish. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *1*, 114–119.

Dunn, M. E., & Goldman, M. S. (1996). Empirical modeling of an alcohol expectancy network in elementary-school children as a function of grade. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *4*, 209–217.

DuPont, R. L. (1980). The future of primary prevention: Parent power. *Journal of Drug Education*, *10*, 1–5.

DuPont, R. L., & Selavka, C. M. (2015). Testing to identify recent drug use. In M. Galanter, H. D. Kleber, & K. T. Brady (Eds.), *Textbook of substance abuse treatment* (pp. 741–755). Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Earleywine, M. (2002). *Understanding marijuana: A new look at the scientific evidence*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Earleywine, M. (2016). *Substance use problems* (2nd ed.). Boston, MA: Hogrefe Publishing Corporation.

Ebmeier, K. P., Donaghey, C., & Steele, J. D. (2006). Recent developments and current controversies in depression. *The Lancet*, *367*, 153–167.

Edwards, D. D. (1986). Nicotine: A drug of choice? *Science News*, *129*, 44–45.

Eede, H. V., Montenij, L. J., Touw, D. J., & Norris, E. M. (2012). Rhabdomyolysis in MDMA intoxication: A rapid and underestimated killer. *Journal of Emergency Medicine*, 42, 655–658.

Efron, S. (2005, June 29). Drug war fails to dent U.S. supply. *Los Angeles Times*.

Ehrenkranz, J. R. L., & Hembree, W. C. (1986). Effects of marijuana on male reproductive function. *Psychiatric Annals*, *16*, 243–248.

Einarson, A., & Boskovic, R. (2009). Use and safety of antipsychotic drugs during pregnancy. *Journal of Psychiatric Practice*, *15*, 183–192.

Eissenberg, T., & Shihadeh, A. (2009). Waterpipe tobacco and cigarette smoking: Direct comparison of toxicant exposure. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *37*, 518–523.

Eissenberg, T., Ward, K. D., Smith-Simone, S., & Maziak, W. (2008). Waterpipe tobacco smoking on a U.S. college campus: Prevalence and correlates. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *42*, 526–529.

El Sohly, M. A. (2002). Chemical constituents of cannabis. In F. Grotenhermen & E. Russo (Eds.), *Cannabis and cannabinoids: Pharmacology, toxicology and therapeutic potential* (pp. 27–36). London: Haworth Press.

El Sohly, M. A., Mehmedic, Z., Foster, S., Gon, C., Chandra, S., & Church, J. C. (2016). Changes in cannabis potency over the last 2 decades (1995–2014): Analysis of current data in the United States. *Biological Psychiatry*, *79*, 613–619.

El Sohly, M. A., Ross, S. A., Mehmedic, Z., Arafat, R., Yi, B., & Banahan, B. F. (2000). Potency trends of delta(9)-THC and other cannabinoids in confiscated marijuana from 1980–1997. *Journal of Forensic Sciences*, *45*, 24–30.

El Sohly, M. A., & Slade, D. (2005). Chemical constituents of marijuana: The complex mixture of natural cannabinoids. *Life Sciences*, *78*, 539–548.

Emrick, C. D. (1975). A review of the psychologically oriented treatment of alcoholism, II. The relative effectiveness of different treatment approaches and the effectiveness of treatment vs. no treatment. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *36*, 88–108.

Emrick, C. D. (1989). Alcoholics Anonymous: Membership characteristics and effectiveness as treatment. In M. Galanter (Ed.), *Recent developments in alcoholism* (Vol. 7, pp. 37–53). New York: Plenum Press.

Emrick, C. D., Lassen, C. L., & Edwards, M. T. (1977). Nonprofessional peers as therapeutic agents. In A. S. Gurman & A. M. Razin (Eds.), *Effective psychotherapy: A handbook of research* (pp. 120–161). New York: Pergamon Press.

Emrick, C. D., Tonigan, J. S., Montgomery, H., & Little, L. (1993). Alcoholics Anonymous: What is currently known? In B. S. McCrady & W. R. Miller (Eds.), *Research on Alcoholics Anonymous: Opportunities and alternatives* (pp. 41–76). New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers Center of Alcohol Studies.

Endo, O., Matsumoto, M., Inaba, Y., Sugita, K., Nakajima, D., Goto, S., ... Susuki, G. (2009). Nicotine, tar, and mutagenicity of mainstream smoke generated by machine smoking with International Organization for Standardization and Health Canada Intense regimens of major Japanese cigarette brands. *Journal of Health Science*, *55*, 421–427.

Ennett, S. T., Tobler, N. S., Ringwalt, C. L., & Flewelling, R. L. (1994). How effective is drug abuse resistance education? A meta-analysis of Project DARE outcome. *American Journal of Public Health*, *84*, 1394–1401.

Erenhart, C. B. (1991). Clinical correlations between ethanol intake and fetal alcohol syndrome. In M. Galanter (Ed.), *Recent developments in alcoholism* (Vol. 9, pp. 127–150). New York: Plenum Press.

Ernster, V. L. (1993). Women and smoking. *American Journal of Public Health*, *83*, 1202–1203.

Eskelinen, M. H., Ngandu, T., Tuomilehto, J., Soininen, H., & Kivipelto, M. (2009). Midlife coffee and tea drinking and the risk of late-life dementia: A population-based CAIDE study. *Journal of Alzheimer's Disease*, *16*, 85–91.

Evans, A. M., & Griffiths, R. R. (1999). Caffeine withdrawal: A parametric analysis of caffeine dosing conditions. *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, *289*, 285–294.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Exum, M. L. (2006). Alcohol and aggression: An integration of findings from experimental studies. *Journal of Criminal Justice*, *34*, 131–145.

Fainaru-Wada, M., & Williams, L. (2006). *Game of shadows.* New York: Gotham Books.

Fait, M. L., Wise, M. G., Jachna, J. S., Lane, R. D., & Gelenberg, A. J. (2002). Psychopharmacology. In M. Wise & J. R. Rundell (Eds.), *Textbook of consultation-liaison psychiatry* (2nd ed., pp. 939–987). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Fallon, J. H., Keator, D., Mbgori, J., & Potkin, S. G. (2004). Hostility differentiates the brain metabolic effects of nicotine. *Cognitive Brain Research*, *18*, 142–148.

Farre, M., Teran, M., & Cami, J. (1996). A comparison of the acute behavioral effects of flunitrazepam and triazolam in healthy volunteers. *Psychopharmacology*, *125*, 1–12.

Federal Trade Commission. (2001). *"Tar," nicotine, and carbon monoxide of the smoke of 1294 varieties of domestic cigarettes for the year 1998*. Washington, DC: Author.

Fein, G., Torres, J., Price, L. J., & Sclafani, V. D. (2006). Cognitive performance in long-term abstinent alcoholic individuals. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *30*, 1538–1544.

Feldman, H. W., Agar, M. H., & Beschner, G. M. (1979). *Angel dust.* Lexington, MA: Lexington Books.

Feldman, R. S., Meyer, J. S., & Quenzer, L. F. (1997). *Principles of neuropsychopharmacology.* Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates.

Fell, J. C., Fisher, D. A., Voas, R. B., Blackman, K., & Tippetts, A. S. (2009). The impact of underage drinking laws on alcohol-related fatal crashes of young drivers. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *33*, 1208–1219.

Fell, J. C., Scherer, M., Thomas, S., & Voas, R. B. (2016). Assessing the impact of twenty underage drinking laws. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs*, *77*, 249–260.

Fergusson, D. M., Boden, J. M., & Horwood, L. J. (2006). Cannabis use and other illicit drug use: Testing the cannabis gateway hypothesis. *Addiction*, *101*, 556–569.

Fergusson, D. M., & Horwood, L. J. (2000). Does cannabis use encourage other forms of illicit drug use? *Addiction*, *95*, 505–520.

Ferreira, S. E., Tulio de Mello, M., Pompeia, S., & Oliveira de Souza-Formigoni, M. L. (2006). Effects of energy drink ingestion on alcohol intoxication. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *30*, 598–605.

Fieve, R. R. (1976). Therapeutic uses of lithium and rubidium. In L. L. Simpson (Ed.), *Drug treatment of mental disorders* (pp. 193–208). New York: Raven Press.

Fillmore, K. M., Kerr, W. C., Stockwell, T., Chikritzhs, T., & Bostrom, A. (2006). Moderate alcohol use and reduced mortality risk: Systematic error in prospective studies. *Addiction Research and Theory*, *14*, 101–132.

Fillmore, M. T., & Vogel-Sprott, M. (1996). Evidence that expectancies mediate behavioral impairment under alcohol. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *57*, 598–603.

Finney, J. W., Wilbourne, P. L., & Moos, R. H. (2007). Psychosocial treatment for substance use disorders. In P. E. Nathan & J. M. Gorman (Eds.), *A guide to treatment that works* (3rd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.

Finniss, D. G., Kaptchuk, T., Miller, F., & Benedetti, F. (2010). Biological, clinical, and ethical advances of placebo effects. *The Lancet*, *375*, 686–695.

Fiorentine, R. (1997). After drug treatment: Are 12-step programs effective in maintaining abstinence? *American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse*, *25*, 93–116.

Fiori, M. G., Keller, P. A., & Curry, S. J. (2007). Health system changes to facilitate the delivery of tobacco dependence treatment. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *33*, S349–S356.

Fischman, M. W. (1984). The behavioral pharmacology of cocaine in humans. In J. Grabowski (Ed.), *Cocaine: Pharmacology, effects and treatment of abuse*. Research Monograph 50. Washington, DC: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Fisher, L. M. (1992, October 6). New drugs by process of elimination. *The New York Times*, pp. D1, D13.

Fisone, G., Borgkvist, A., & Usiello, A. (2004). Caffeine as a psychomotor stimulant: Mechanism of action. *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences*, *61*, 857–872.

Flay, B. R. (1985). What we know about the social influences to smoking prevention: Review and recommendations. In C. Bell & R. Battjes (Eds.), *Prevention research: Deterring drug abuse among children and adolescents* (pp. 67–112). Rockville, MD: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Fleming, M. F., Barry, K. L., Manwell, L. B., Johnson, K., & London, R. (1997). Brief physician advice for problem alcohol drinkers. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *277*, 1039–1045.

Fletcher, A. M. (2001). *Sober for good*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin.

Fletcher, B. W., Tims, F. M., & Brown, B. S. (1997). Drug Abuse Treatment Outcome Study (DATOS): Treatment evaluation research in the United States. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *11*, 216–229.

Floegel, A., Pischon, T., Bergmann, M. M., Teucher, B., Kaaks, R., & Boeing, H. (2012). Coffee consumption and risk of chronic disease in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC)—Germany study. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, *95*, 901–908.

Foltin, R. W., & Fischman, M. W. (1992). The cardiovascular and subjective effects of intravenous cocaine and morphine combinations in humans. *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, *261*, 623–632.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Foltin, R. W., & Fischman, M. W. (1993). Self-administration of smoked cocaine by humans. In L. Harris (Ed.), *Problems of drug dependence, 1992.* Research Monograph 132 (p. 63). Washington, DC: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Foltin, R. W., Fischman, M. W., Brady, J. V., Bernstein, D. J., Capriotti, R. M., Nellis, M. J., ... Kelly, T. H. (1990). Motivational effects of smoked marijuana: Behavioral contingencies and low-probability activities. *Journal of the Experimental Analysis of Behavior*, *53*, 5–19.

Foltin, R. W., Fischman, M. W., Brady, J. V., Kelly, T. H., Bernstein, D. J., & Nellis, M. J. (1989). Motivational effects of smoked marijuana: Behavioral contingencies and high-probability recreational activities. *Pharmacology, Biochemistry, and Behavior*, *34*, 871–877.

Food and Drug Administration (FDA). (2002, July 17). FDA approves Xyrem for cataplexy attacks in patients with narcolepsy. *FDA Talk Paper*.

Fournier, J. C., DeRubeis, R. J., Hollon, S. D., Dimidjian, S., Amsterdam, J. D., Shelton, R. C., & Fawcett, J. (2010). Antidepressant drug effects and depression severity: A patient-level meta-analysis. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *303*, 47–53.

Franck, P. H. (1983). "If you drink, don't drive" motto now applies to hangovers as well. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *250*, 1657–1658.

Franey, C., & Ashton, M. (2002). The grand design lessons from DATOS. *Drug and Alcohol Findings*, *7*, 4–19.

Frank, R. G., & Pollack, H. A. (2017). Addressing the fentanyl threat to public health. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *376*, 605–607.

Frary, C. D., Johnson, R. K., & Wang, M. Q. (2005). Food sources and intakes of caffeine in the diets of persons in the United States. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, *105*, 110–113.

Fredholm, B. B., Battig, K., Holmen, J., Nehlig, A., & Zvartau, E. E. (1999). Actions of caffeine in the brain with special reference to factors that contribute to its widespread use. *Pharmacological Reviews*, *51*, 83–133.

Freedman, N. D., Park, Y., Abnet, C. C., Hollenbeck, A. R., & Sinha, R. (2012). Association of coffee drinking with total and cause-specific mortality. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *366*, 1891–1904.

Freedman, R. R., Johanson, C., & Tancer, M. E. (2005). Thermoregulatory effects of 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA) in humans. *Psychopharmacology*, *183*, 248–256.

French, M. T., & McGeary, K. A. (1997). Estimating the cost of substance abuse treatment. *Health Economics Letters*, *6*, 1–6.

Frezza, M., di Padova, C., Pozzato, G., Terpin, M., Baraona, E., & Lieber, C. S. (1990). High blood alcohol levels in women: The role of decreased gastric alcohol dehydrogenase activity and first pass metabolism. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *322*, 95–99.

Fried, P. A. (1986). Marijuana and human pregnancy. In I. J. Chasnoff (Ed.), *Drug use in pregnancy: Mother and child* (pp. 64–74). Lancaster, PA: MTP Press.

Fried, P. A., Watkinson, B., & Gray, R. (1992). A follow-up study of attentional behavior in 6-year-old children exposed prenatally to marijuana, cigarettes, and alcohol. *Neurotoxicology and Teratology*, *14*, 299–311.

Friedl, K. E. (2000). Effects of anabolic steroid use on physical health. In C. E. Yesalis (Ed.), *Anabolic steroids in sport and exercise* (2nd ed., pp. 175–224). Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics Press.

Frunkel, E. N., Kanner, J., German, J. B., Parks, E., & Kinsella, J. E. (1993). Inhibition of oxidation of human low-density lipoprotein by phenolic substances in red wine. *Lancet*, *341*, 454–457.

Frye, C. G., Wardle, M. C., Norman, G. J., & de Wit, H. (2014). MDMA decreases the effects of simulated social rejection. *Pharmacology Biochemistry and Behavior*, *117*, 1–6.

Fulgoni, V. L., Keast, D. R., & Lieberman, H. R. (2015). Trends in intake and sources of caffeine in the diets of US adults: 2001–2010. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, *101*, 1081–1087.

Galanter, M., Kleber, H. D., & Brady, K. T. (Eds.) (2015). *Textbook of substance abuse treatment* (5th ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Galbally, M., Snellen, M., & Lewis, A. J. (2011). A review of the use of psychotropic medication in pregnancy. *Current Opinions in Obstetrics and Gynecology*, *23*, 408–414.

Galbally, M., Snellen, M., & Lewis, A. J. (2014). *Psychopharmacology and pregnancy: Treatment efficacy, risks, and guidelines*. New York: Springer.

Galenberg, A. J. (1991). Psychoses. In A. J. Galenberg, E. L. Bussuk, & S. C. Schoonover (Eds.), *The practitioner's guide to psychoactive drugs* (3rd ed., pp. 125–178). New York: Plenum Medical Book Company.

Galenberg, A. J., & Schoonover, S. C. (1991). Depression. In A. J. Galenberg, E. L. Bussuk, & S. C. Schoonover (Eds.), *The practitioner's guide to psychoactive drugs* (3rd ed., pp. 23–89). New York: Plenum Medical Book Company.

Galizio, M., Keith, J. R., Mansfield, W., & Pitts, R. C. (2003). Repeated spatial acquisition: Effects of NMDA antagonists and morphine. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *11*, 79–90.

Galizio, M., & Maisto, S. A. (Eds.). (1985). *Determinants of substance abuse*. New York: Plenum Press.

Galloway, G. P., Frederick-Osborne, S. L., Seymour, R., Contini, S. E., & Smith, D. E. (2000). Abuse and therapeutic potential of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid. *Alcohol*, *20*, 263–269.

Ganesan, A., Coote, M. L., & Barakat, K. (2017). Molecular dynamics-driven drug discovery: Leaping forward with confidence. *Drug Discovery Today, 22*(2), 249–269.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Ganio, M. S., Klau, J. F., Casa, D. J., Armstrong, L. E., & Maresh, C. M. (2009). Effect of caffeine on sport-specific endurance performance: A systematic review. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*, *23*, 315–324.

Gaoni, Y., & Mechoulam, R. (1964). Isolation, structure, and partial synthesis of an active constituent of hashish. *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, *86*, 1646–1647.

Garbutt, J. C., West, S. L., Carey, T. S., Lohr, K. N., & Crews, F. T. (1999). Pharmacological treatment of alcohol dependence: A review of the evidence. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *281*, 1318–1325.

Gardner, D. M., Baldessarini, R. J., & Waraich, P. (2005). Modern antipsychotic drugs: A critical overview. *CMAJ*, *172*, 1703–1711.

Gastfriend, D. R. (Ed.). (2003). *Addiction treatment matching*. New York: Haworth Medical Press.

Gathuru, I. M., Tarter, R. E., & Klein-Fedyshin, M. (2015). Review of hookah tobacco smoking among college students: Policy implications and research recommendation. *American Journal of Drug and Alcohol Abuse*, *41*, 272–280.

Gautier, T. (1844/1966). *Le club des hachichins*. In D. Solomon (Ed.), *The marijuana papers* (pp. 121–135). New York: Bobbs-Merrill.

Gauvin, D. V., Cheng, E. Y., & Holloway, F. A. (1993). Biobehavioral correlates. In M. Gallanter (Ed.), *Recent developments in alcoholism* (Vol. 11, pp. 281–304). New York: Plenum Press.

Gavaghan, C. (2009). "You can't handle the truth"; Medical paternalism and prenatal alcohol use. *Journal of Medical Ethics*, *35*, 300–303.

Gay, G. R., & Way, E. L. (1972). Pharmacology of the opiate narcotics. In D. E. Smith & G. R. Way (Eds.), *It's so good, don't even try it once* (pp. 32–44). Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.

Gaziano, J. M., Buring, J. E., Breslow, J. L., Goldhaber, S. Z., Rosner, B., VanDenburgh, M., … Hennekens, C. H. (1993). Moderate alcohol intake, increased levels of high-density lipoprotein and its subfractions, and decreased risk of myocardial infarction. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *329*, 1829–1834.

Geller, E. S., Russ, N. W., & Delphos, W. A. (1987). Does server intervention training make a difference? *Alcohol Health and Research World*, *11*, 64–69.

Gentile, S. (2010). Antipsychotic therapy during early and late pregnancy: A systematic review. *Schizophrenia Bulletin*, *36*, 518–544.

Gershman, J. A., & Fass, A. D. (2012). Synthetic cathinones (bath salts): Legal and health care challenges. *Pharmacy and Therapeutics*, *37*, 571–595.

Ghatol, A., & Kazory, A. (2009). Ecstasy-associated acute severe hyponatremia and cerebral edema: A role for osmotic diuresis? *Journal of Emergency Medicine*, June 3 [epub ahead of print].

Gilbert, R. M. (1976). Caffeine as a drug of abuse. In R. J. Gibbins, Y. Israel, H. Kalant, R. E. Popham, W. Schmidt, & R. G. Smart (Eds.), *Research advances in alcohol and drug problems* (Vol. 3, pp. 49–176). New York: John Wiley.

Gilbert, R. M. (1984). Caffeine consumption. *Progress in Clinical Biological Research*, *158*, 185–213.

Gilmour, G., Dix, S., Fellini, L., Gastambide, F., Plath, N., Steckler, T., … Tricklebank, M. (2012). NMDA receptors, cognition and schizophrenia: Testing the validity of the NMDA receptor hypofunction hypothesis. *Neuropharmacology*, *62*, 1401–1412.

Gitlin, M. J. (1990). *The psychotherapist's guide to psychopharmacology*. New York: Free Press.

Glade, M. J. (2010). Caffeine—Not just a stimulant. *Nutrition*, *26*, 932–938.

Glantz, S. A., & Parmley, W. W. (1991). Passive smoking and heart disease. *Circulation*, *83*, 1–12.

Gliksman, L., McKenzie, D., Single, E., Douglas, R., Brunet, S., & Moffatt, K. (1993). The role of alcohol providers in prevention: An evaluation of a server intervention programme. *Addiction*, *88*, 1195–1203.

Golan, D. (2005, Summer 2005 Special Edition). Building better medicines. *Newsweek*, pp. 37–39.

Goldman, A. (1971). *Ladies and gentlemen, Lenny Bruce!* New York: Random House.

Goldman, M. S., Darkes, J., & Del Boca, F. K. (1999). Expectancy mediation of biopsychosocial risk for alcohol use and alcoholism. In I. Kirsch (Ed.), *How expectancies shape experience* (pp. 263–300). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Goldschmidt, L., Day, N. L., & Richardson, G. A. (2000). Effects of prenatal marijuana exposure on child behavior problems at age 10. *Neurotoxicology and Teratology*, *22*, 325–336.

Goldstein, A. (2001). *Addiction: From biology to social policy* (2nd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.

Goldstein, A., & Wallace, M. E. (1997). Caffeine dependence in school children? *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *5*, 388–392.

Goldstein, A. S., Kaizer, S., & Whitby, O. (1969). Psychotropic effects of caffeine in man. IV. Quantitative and qualitative differences associated with habituation to coffee. *Clinical and Pharmacological Therapeutics*, *10*, 489–497.

Goode, E. (1972). *Drugs in American society*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf.

Goode, E. (1993). *Drugs in American society* (4th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Goodlow, J. M., Dailey, M. W. & Heightman, A. J. (2014). Should naloxone be available to all first responders? *Journal of Emergency Medical Services*, *39*, http://www.jems.com/articles/print/volume-39/issue-8/features/should-naloxone-be-available-all-first-r.html

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Gordon, B. (1979). *I'm dancing as fast as I can*. New York: Bantam Books.

Gorman, D. M. (1995). The changing role of mass media in preventing excessive alcohol use. *Drugs: Education, Prevention, and Policy*, *2*, 77–84.

Gould, E., Reeves, A. J., Graziano, M. S., & Gross, C. G. (1999). Neurogenesis in the neocortex of adult primates. *Science*, *286*, 548–552.

Government Printing Office (GPO). (1972). *Drug abuse: Games without winners*. Washington, DC: Author.

Graham, D. M. (1978). Caffeine: Its identity, dietary sources, intake and biological effects. *Nutrition Reviews*, *36*, 97–102.

Graham, K., Leonard, K. E., Room, R., Wild, C., Pihl, R. O., Boiss, C., ... Single, E. (1998). Current directions in research on understanding and preventing intoxicated aggression. *Addiction*, *93*, 659–676.

Grant, B. F., & Dawson, D. A. (1998). Age of onset of drug use and its association with DSM-IV drug abuse and dependence: Results from the National Longitudinal Alcohol Epidemiologic Survey. *Journal of Substance Abuse*, *10*, 163–173.

Grant, I., Gonzalez, R., Carey, C. L., Natarajan, L., & Wolfson, T. (2003). Non-acute (residual) neurocognitive effects of cannabis use: A meta-analytic study. *Journal of the International Neuropsychological Society*, *9*, 679–689.

Grant, S. G. (2005). Qualitatively and quantitatively similar effects of active and passive maternal tobacco smoke exposure on in utero mutagenesis at the HPRT locus. *BMC Pediatrics*. doi:10.1186/1471-2431-5-20

Greden, J. F. (1974). Anxiety or caffeinism: A diagnostic dilemma. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *131*, 1089–1092.

Greden, J. F., & Walters, A. (1992). Caffeine. In J. H. Lowinson, P. Ruiz, & R. B. Millman (Eds.), *Substance abuse: A comprehensive textbook* (2nd ed., pp. 357–370). Baltimore, MD: Williams & Wilkins.

Greeley, J., & Oei, T. (1999). Alcohol and tension reduction. In K. E. Leonard & H. T. Blane (Eds.), *Psychological theories of drinking and alcoholism* (2nd ed., pp. 14–53). New York: Guilford Press.

Grenado, N., Ares-Santos, S., & Moratalla, R. (2013). Methamphetamine and Parkinson's disease. *Parkinson's Disease*, Article ID 308052, http://dx.doi.org/10.1155/2013/308052

Griffiths, R. R., Bigelow, G. E., Liebson, I., & Kaliszak, J. E. (1980). Drug preference in humans: Double-blind choice comparison of pentobarbital, diazepam, and placebo. *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, *215*, 649–661.

Griffiths, R. R., & Grob, C. S. (2010). Hallucinogens as medicine. *Scientific American*, *303*, 77–79.

Griffiths, R. R., Johnson, M. W., Richards, W. A., Richards, B. D., McCann, U., & Jesse, R. (2011). Psilocybin occasioned mystical-type experiences: Immediate and persisting dose-related effects. *Psychopharmacology*, *218*, 649–665.

Griffiths, R. R., McLeod, E. R., Bigelow, G. E., Liebson, I. A., & Roache, J. D. (1984). Relative abuse liability of diazepam and oxazepam: Behavior and subjective dose effects. *Psychopharmacology*, *84*, 147–154.

Griffiths, R. R., McLeod, E. R., Bigelow, G. E., Liebson, I. A., Roache, J. D., & Nowowieski, P. (1984). Comparison of diazepam and oxazepam: Preference, liking and extent of abuse. *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, *229*, 501–508.

Griffiths, R. R., & Woodson, P. P. (1988a). Caffeine physical dependence: A review of human and animal laboratory studies. *Psychopharmacology*, *94*, 437–451.

Griffiths, R. R., & Woodson, D. P. (1988b). Reinforcing properties of caffeine: Studies in human and laboratory animals. *Pharmacology, Biochemistry, and Behavior*, *28*, 419–427.

Grinspoon, L., & Bakalar, J. B. (1976). *Cocaine: A drug and its social evolution*. New York: Harper Books.

Grinspoon, L., & Bakalar, J. B. (1979). *Psychedelic drugs reconsidered*. New York: Basic Books.

Gritz, E. R., Ksir, C., & McCarthy, W. J. (1985). Smokeless tobacco use in the United States: Present and future trends. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, *7*, 24–27.

Grob, C. S., Danforth, A. L., Chopra, G. S., Hagerty, M., McKay, C. R., Halberstadt, A. L., & Greer, G. R. (2011). Pilot study of psilocybin treatment for anxiety in patients with advanced-stage cancer. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *68*, 71–78.

Grobbee, D., Rimm, E., Giovannucci, E., Colditz, G., Stampfer, M., & Willett, W. (1990). Coffee, caffeine, and cardiovascular disease in men. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *323*, 1026–1032.

Grogan, F. J. (1987). *The pharmacist's prescription*. New York: Rawson Associates.

Gronbaek, M., Deis, A., Sorensen, T. I. A., Becker, U., Schnohr, P., & Jensen, G. (1995). Mortality associated with moderate intake of wine, beer, or spirits. *British Medical Journal*, *310*, 1165–1169.

Grosso, G., Micek, A., Castellano, S., Pajak, A., & Galvano, F. (2016). Coffee, tea, caffeine, and risk of depression: A systematic review and dose-response meta-analysis of observational studies. *Molecular Nutrition and Food Research*, *60*, 223–234.

Grotenhermen, F. (2007). The toxicology of cannabis and cannabis prohibition. *Chemistry & Biodiversity*, *4*, 1744–1769.

Grufferman, S., Schwartz, A. G., Ruymann, F. B., & Maurer, H. M. (1993). Parent's use of cocaine and marijuana and increased risk of rhabdomyosarcoma in their children. *Cancer Causes Control*, *4*, 217–224.

Grunder, G., Hippius, H., & Carlsson, A. (2009). The "atypicality" of antipsychotics: A concept re-examined and re-defined. *Nature Reviews*, *8*, 197–202.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Guay, D. R. (2009). Is tapentadol an advance on tramadol? *Consulting Pharmacology*, *24*, 833–840.

Gutjahr, E., Gmel, G., & Rehm, J. (2001). Relation between average alcohol consumption and disease: An overview. *Addiction Research*, *7*, 117–127.

Halberstadt, A. L., & Nichols, D. E. (2010). Serotonin and serotonin receptors in hallucinogen action. *Handbook of the Behavioral Neurobiology of Serotonin*, *21*, 621–636.

Halkitis, P. N. (2009). *Methamphetamine addiction: Biological foundations, psychological factors, and social consequences.* Washington, DC American Psychological Association Press.

Hall, K. M., Irwin, M. M., Bowman, K. A., Frankenberger, W., & Jewett, D. C. (2005). Illicit use of prescribed stimulant medication among college students. *Journal of American College Health*, *53*, 167–174.

Hall, W. D., & Lynskey, M. (2005). Is cannabis a gateway drug? Testing hypotheses about the relationship between cannabis use and the use of other illicit drugs. *Drug and Alcohol Review*, *24*, 39–48.

Halpern, J. H., & Pope, H. G. (1999). Do hallucinogens cause residual neuropsychological toxicity? *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *53*, 247–256.

Halpern, J. H., & Pope, H. G. (2003). Hallucinogen persisting perception disorder: What do we know after 50 years? *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *69*, 109–119.

Halpern, J. H., Pope, H. G., Sherwood, A. R., Barry, S., Hudson, J. I., & Yurgelin-Todd, D. (2004). Residual neuropsychological effects of illicit 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine (MDMA) in individuals with minimal exposure to other drugs. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *75*, 135–147.

Halpern, J. H., Sherwood, A. R., Hudson, J. I., Gruber, S., Kozin, D., & Pope, H. G. Jr. (2011). Residual neurocognitive features of long-term ecstasy users with minimal exposure to other drugs. *Addiction*, *106*, 777–786.

Hamilton, G., Cross, D., Resnicow, K., & Hall, M. (2005). A school-based harm minimization smoking intervention trial: Outcome results. *Addiction*, *100*, 689–700.

Hammerness, P., Petty, C., Faraone, S. V., & Biederman, J. (2017). Do stimulants reduce the risk for alcohol and substance use in youth with ADHD? A secondary analysis of a prospective, 24-month open-label study of osmotic-release methylphenidate. *Journal of Attention Disorders*, *21*, 71–77.

Han, J. S. (2004). Acupuncture and endorphins. *Neuroscience Letters*, *361*, 258–261.

Harm Reduction International. (2012). *The global state of harm reduction 2012: Towards an integrated response.* London: Harm Reduction International.

Harris, G. (2004, December 6). At FDA, strong drug ties and less monitoring. *The New York Times*, pp. A1, A20.

Harris, G. (2007, June 11). Potentially incompatible goals at the FDA. *The New York Times.* https://www.nytimes.com/2007/06/11/washington/11fda.html

Harris, L. S., Dewey, W. L., & Razdan, R. K. (1977). Cannabis: Its chemistry, pharmacology, and toxicology. In W. R. Martin (Ed.), *Drug addiction II: Amphetamine, psychotogen, and marihuana dependence* (pp. 371–429). New York: Springer-Verlag.

Hart, C. L., Gunderson, E. W., Perez, A., Kirkpatrick, M. G., Thurmond, A., Comer, S. D., & Foltin, R. W. (2008). Acute physiological and behavioral effects of intranasal methamphetamine in humans. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, *33*, 1847–1855.

Harvey, S. C. (1980). Hypnotics and sedatives. In A. G. Gilman, L. S. Goodman, & A. Gilman (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (6th ed., pp. 339–379). London: Macmillan.

Hatzidimitriou, G., McCann, U. D., & Ricaurte, G. A. (1999). Altered serotonin innervation patterns in the forebrain of monkeys treated with (1/2)-3, 4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine seven years previously: Factors influencing abnormal recovery. *Journal of Neuroscience*, *19*, 5096–5107.

Haughwout, S. P., & Slater, M. E. (2018, April). NIH Surveillance Report #110. Apparent Per Capita Alcohol Consumption: National, State, and Regional Trends, 1977–2016. National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism.

Hawks, R. L., & Chiang, C. N. (1986). *Urine testing for drugs of abuse.* Research Monograph 73. Washington, DC: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Hecht, A. (1985). *Addictive behavior: Drug and alcohol abuse.* Englewood, CO: Morton Publishing.

Hegadoren, K. M., Baker, G. B., & Bourin, M. (1999). 3,4-Methylenedioxy analogues of amphetamine: Defining the risks to humans. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, *23*, 539–553.

Heishman, S. J., Kleykamp, B. A., & Singleton, E. G. (2010). Metaanalysis of the acute effects of nicotine and smoking on human performance. *Psychopharmacology*, *210*, 453–469.

Henningfield, J. E., Lukas, S. E., & Bigelow, G. E. (1986). Human studies of drugs as reinforcers. In S. R. Goldberg & I. P. Stolerman (Eds.), *Behavioral analysis of drug dependence* (pp. 69–122). New York: Academic Press.

Henningfield, J. E., Santora, P. S., & Stillman, F. A. (2005). Exploitation by design—Could tobacco industry documents guide more effective smoking prevention and cessation in women? *Addiction*, *100*, 715–716.

Hepple, J., & Robson, P. (1996). The effect of caffeine on cue exposure responses in ex-smokers. *Addiction*, *91*, 269–273.

Herkenham, M., Lynn, A. B., Little, M. D., Johnson, M. R., Melvin, L. S., deCosta, B. R., ... Rice, K. C. (1990). Cannabinoid receptor localization in the brain. *National Academy of Science*, *87*, 1932–1936.

Hester, R. K., & Delaney, H. D. (1997). Behavioral self-control program for Windows: Results of a controlled clinical trial. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *65*, 683–693.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Hewitt, L. E. (1982). Current status of alcohol education programs for youth. In *Special Population Issues*, Alcohol and Health Monograph 4 (pp. 227–260). Rockville, MD: National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism.

Higdon, J. V., & Frei, B. (2006). Coffee and health: A review of recent human research. *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition*, *46*, 101–123.

Higgins, S. T., Delaney, D. D., Budney, A. J., Bickel, W. K., Hughes, J. R., Foerg, F., ... Fenwick, J. W. (1991). A behavioral approach to achieving initial cocaine abstinence. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *148*, 1218–1224.

Higgins, S. T., Heil, S. H., & Sigmon, S. C. (2013). Voucher-based contingency management in the treatment of substance use disorders. In G. J. Madden (Ed.), *APA handbook of behavior analysis: Vol. 2. Translating research into practice*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Higgins, S. T., & Stitzer, M. L. (1988). Time allocation in a concurrent schedule of social interaction and monetary reinforcement: Effects of *d*-amphetamine. *Pharmacology, Biochemistry, and Behavior*, *31*, 227–231.

Higuchi, S., Parrish, K. M., Dufour, M. C., Towle, L., & Harford, T. C. (1992). The relationship between three types of the flushing response and DSM-III alcohol abuse in Japanese. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *53*, 553–560.

Hill, S. Y., Wang, S., Kostelnik, B., Carter, H., Holmes, B., McDermott, M., ... Keshavan, M. S. (2009). Disruption of orbitofrontal cortex laterality in offspring from multiplex alcohol dependence families. *Biological Psychiatry*, *65*, 129–136.

Hilton, M. E. (1993). An overview of recent findings on alcohol beverage warning labels. *Journal of Public Policy Marketing*, *12*, 1–9.

Hindmarch, I., Rigney, U., Stanley, N., Quinlan, P., Rycroft, J., & Lane, J. (2000). A naturalistic investigation of the effects of daylong consumption of tea, coffee, and water on alertness, sleep onset, and sleep quality. *Psychopharmacology*, *149*, 203–216.

Ho, A. K. S., & Allen, J. P. (1981). Alcohol and the opiate receptor: Interactions with the endogenous opiates. *Advances in Alcohol & Substance Abuse*, *1*, 53–75.

Hofmann, A. (1980). *LSD: My problem child*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Hofmann, F. G. (1975). *A handbook on drug and alcohol abuse*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Hogan, E. H., Hornick, B. A., & Bouchoux, A. (2002). Communicating the message: Clarifying the controversies about caffeine. *Nutrition Today*, *37*, 28–36.

Hogervorst, E., Bandelow, S., Schmitt, J., Jentjens, R., Oliveira, M., Allgrove, J., ... Gleeson, M. (2008). Caffeine improves physical and cognitive performance during exhaustive exercise. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, *40*, 1841–1851.

Holder, H. D., & Blose, J. D. (1991). Typical patterns and cost of alcoholism treatment across a variety of populations and providers. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *15*, 190–195.

Holland, J. (2001). The history of MDMA. In J. Holland (Ed.), *Ecstasy: The complete guide*. Rochester, VT: Park Street Press.

Hollis, J. F., Polen, M. R., Whitlock, E. P., Lichtenstein, E., Mullooly, J. P., Velicer, W. F., ... Redding, C. A. (2005). Teen Reach: Outcomes from a randomized, controlled trial of a tobacco reduction program for teens seen in primary medical care. *Pediatrics*, *115*, 981–989.

Hollister, L. E., Richards, R. K., & Gillespie, H. K. (1968). Comparison of tetrahydrocannabinol and synhexyl in man. *Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, *9*, 783–791.

Hopfer, C., Mendelson, B., Van Leeuwen, J. M., Kelly, S., & Hooks, S. (2006). Club drug use among youths in treatment for substance abuse. *American Journal on Addictions*, *15*, 94–99.

House of Lords Select Committee on Science and Technology. (1988). *Cannabis: The scientific and medical evidence* (HL Paper 151). London: HMSO.

Howland, J., Rohsenow, D. J., Arnedt, T., Bliss, C. A., Hunt, S. K., Calise, T. V., ... Gottlieb, D. J. (2010). The acute effects of caffeinated versus non-caffeinated alcoholic beverage on driving performance and attention/reaction time. *Addiction*, *106*, 335–341.

Hrobjartsson, A., & Gotzsche, P. C. (2001). Is the placebo powerless? An analysis of clinical trials comparing placebo with no treatment. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *344*, 1594–1603.

Hser, Y-I., Hoffman, V., Grella, C. E., & Anglin, M. D. (2001). A 33-year follow-up of narcotics addicts. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *58*, 503–508.

Huang, Y. (2014). Alcohol consumption among Asian Americans in the U.S.: A systematic review. *Global Journal of Medicine and Public Health*, *3*.

Hubbard, R. L., Marsden, M. E., Rachal, J. V., Harwood, H. J., Cavanaugh, E. R., & Ginzburg, H. M. (1989). *Drug abuse treatment: A national study of effectiveness*. Chapel Hill: University of North Carolina Press.

Hudson, G. M., Green, J. M., Bishop, P. A., & Richardson, M. T. (2008). Effects of caffeine and aspirin on light resistance training performance, perceived exertion, and pain perception. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research*, *22*, 1950–1957.

Hughes, C. E., Pitts, R. C., & Branch, M. N. (1996). Cocaine and food deprivation: Effects on food-reinforced fixed ratio performance in pigeons. *Journal of the Experimental Analysis of Behavior*, *65*, 145–158.

Hughes, J. C., & Cook, C. H. (1997). The efficacy of disulfiram: A review of outcome studies. *Addiction*, *92*, 381–395.

Hughes, J. R. (1996). The future of smoking cessation therapy in the United States. *Addiction*, *91*, 1797–1802.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Hughes, J. R., & Carpenter, M. J. (2006). Does smoking reduction increase future cessation and decrease disease risk? A qualitative review. *Nicotine and Tobacco Research*, *6*, 739–749.

Hughes, J. R., Grist, S. W., & Pechacek, T. F. (1987). Prevalence of tobacco dependence and withdrawal. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *144*, 205–208.

Hughes, J. R., & Hale, K. L. (1998). Behavioral effects of caffeine and other methylxanthines on children. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *6*, 87–95.

Hughes, J. R., Oliveto, A. H., Helzer, J. E., Higgins, S. T., & Bickel, W. K. (1992). Should caffeine abuse, dependence or withdrawal be added to DSM-IV or ICD-10? *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *149*, 33–40.

Hull, J. G., & Bond, C. F. (1986). Social and behavioral consequences of alcohol consumption: A meta analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, *99*, 347–360.

Humeniuk, R., Ali, R., Babor, T., Souza-Formigoni, M. L. O., de Lacerda, R. B., Ling, W., ... Vendetti, J. (2011). A randomized controlled trial of a brief intervention for illicit drugs linked to the Alcohol, Smoking, and Substance Involvement Screening Test (ASSIST) in clients recruited from primary health-care settings in four countries. *Addiction*, *107*, 957–966.

Humphreys, K., & McLellan, A. T. (2010). Brief intervention, treatment, and recovery support services for Americans who have substance use disorders: An overview of policy in the Obama administration. *Psychological Services*, *7*, 275–284.

Humphreys, K., Wing, S., McCarty, D., Chappel, J., Gallant, L., Haberle, B., ... Weiss, R. (2004). Self-help organizations for alcohol and drug problems: Toward evidence-based practice and policy. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *26*, 151–158.

Hunt, G. M., & Azrin, N. H. (1973). A community reinforcement approach to alcoholism. *Behavior Research and Therapy*, *11*, 91–104.

Hunt, W. A., Barnett, L. W., & Branch, L. G. (1971). Relapse rates in addiction programs. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, *27*, 455–456.

Huskinson, S. L., Naylor, J. E., Townsend, E. A., Rowlett, J. K., Blough, B. E., & Freeman, K. B. (2017). Self-administration and behavioral economics of second-generation synthetic cathinones in male rats. *Psychopharmacology*, *234*, 589–598.

Huxley, A. (1954). *The doors of perception*. New York: Harper.

Huxley, R., Lee, C. M. Y., Barzi, F., Timmermeister, L., Czernichow, S., Perkovic, V., ... Woodward, M. (2009). Coffee, decaffeinated coffee, and tea consumption in relation to incident Type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, *169*, 2053–2063.

Hyde, J. S., & DeLamater, J. D. (2017). *Understanding human sexuality* (13th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Hypericum Depression Trial Study Group. (2002). Effect of *Hypericum perforatum* (St. John's Wort) in major depressive disorder: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *287*, 1807–1814.

Ichiyama, M. A., Fairlie, A. M., Wood, M. D., Turrisi, R., Francies, D. P., Ray, A. E., & Stanger, L. A. (2009). A randomized trial of a parent-based intervention on drinking behavior among incoming college freshmen. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol and Drugs*, (Suppl. 16), 67–76. doi:10.15288/jsads.2009.s16.67

Infante-Rivard, C., Fernandez, A., Gauthier, R., David, M., & Rivard, G. E. (1993). Fetal loss associated with caffeine intake before and during pregnancy. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *270*, 2940–2943.

Institute of Medicine. (1982). *Marijuana and health*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Institute of Medicine. (1990a). *Broadening the base of treatment for alcohol problems*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Institute of Medicine. (1990b). *Treating drug problems* (Vol. 1). Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Institute of Medicine. (2001). *Caffeine for the sustainment of mental task performance: Formulations for military operations*. Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences.

Ismail, S., Buckley, S., Budacki, R., Jabbar, A., & Gallicano, G. I. (2010). Screening, diagnosing, and prevention of fetal alcohol syndrome: Is this syndrome treatable? *Developmental Neuroscience*, *32*, 91–100.

Iversen, L. L. (2000). *The science of marijuana*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Iversen, L. L. (2003). Cannabis and the brain. *Brain*, *126*, 1252–1270.

Iversen, L. L. (2008). *Speed, ecstasy, ritalin: The science of amphetamines*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Iversen, L. L., Iversen, S. D., Bloom, F. E., & Roth, R. H. (2009). *Introduction to neuropsychopharmacology*. New York: Oxford Press.

Jacobs, B. L. (2004). Depression: The brain finally gets into the act. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, *13*, 103–106.

Jacobs, M. R., & Fehr, K. O. (1987). *Drugs and drug abuse: A reference text* (2nd ed.). Toronto: Addiction Research Foundation.

Jacobson, J. L., Jacobson, S. W., Sokol, R. J., Martier, S. S., Ager, J. W., & Kaplan-Estrin, G. (1993). Teratogenic effects of alcohol on infant development. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *17*, 174–183.

Jaffe, J. H. (1990). Drug addiction and drug abuse. In A. G. Gilman, T. W. Rall, A. S. Nies, & P. Taylor (Eds.), *The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (8th ed., pp. 522–573). New York: Pergamon Press.

Jaffe, J. H., & Martin, W. R. (1990). Opioid analgesics and antagonists. In A. G. Gilman, T. W. Rall, A. S. Nies, & P. Taylor (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (8th ed., pp. 485–521). New York: Pergamon Press.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Jaffee, W. B., Trucco, E., Teter, C., Levy, S., & Weiss, R. D. (2008). Ensuring validity in urine testing. *Psychiatric Services*, *59*, 140–142.

Jahoda, G., & Cramond, J. (1972). *Children and alcohol.* London: HMSO.

James, J. E. (1991). *Caffeine and health.* New York: Academic Press.

James, W. H., & Johnson, S. L. (1996). *Doin' drugs: Patterns of African American addiction*. Austin: University of Texas Press.

Jansen, K. (2004). *Ketamine: Dreams and realities.* Sarasota, FL: Multidisciplinary Association for Psychedelic Studies.

Jefferson, D. J. (2005, August). America's most dangerous drug. *Newsweek*, *146*(6), 40–48.

Jha, P., Ramasundarahettige, C., Landsman, V., Rostron, B., Thun, M., Anderson, R. N., McAfee, T., & Peto, R. (2013). 21st-Century hazards of smoking and benefits of cessation in the United States. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *368*, 341–350.

Johanson, C. E. (1992). Biochemical mechanisms and pharmacological principles of drug action. In J. Grabowski & G. R. VandenBos (Eds.), *Master lecture series. Psychopharmacology: Basic mechanisms and applied interventions* (pp. 11–58). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Johanson, C. E., & Uhlenhuth, E. H. (1978). Drug self-administration in humans. In N. A. Krasnegor (Ed.), *Self-administration of abused substances: Methods for study.* NIDA Research Monograph 20 (pp. 68–87). Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.

Johnson, B. D. (1973). *Marihuana users and drug subcultures.* New York: John Wiley.

Johnson, C., Drgon, T., Liu, O. R., Walther, D., Edenberg, H., Rice, J., ... Uhl, G. R. (2006). Pooled association genome scanning for alcohol dependence using 104,268 SNPs: Validation and use to identify alcoholism vulnerability loci in unrelated individuals from the collaborative study on the genetics of alcoholism. *American Journal of Medical Genetics. Part B, Neuropsychiatric Genetics*, *141B*, 844–853.

Johnson, M. W., Richards, W. A., & Griffiths, R. R. (2008). Human hallucinogen research: Guidelines for safety. *Journal of Psychopharmacology*, *22*, 603–620.

Johnston, L. D., O'Malley, P. M., Bachman, J. G., Schulenberg, J. E., & Miech, R. A. (2016). *Monitoring the Future national survey results on drug use, 1975–2015: Vol. 2. College students and adults ages 19–55.* Ann Arbor: Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan.

Johnston, L. D., O'Malley, P. M., Miech, R. A., Bachman, J. G., & Schulenberg, J. E. (2017). *Monitoring the Future national survey results on drug use, 1975–2016: Overview, key findings on adolescent drug use.* Ann Arbor: Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan.

Jones, C. M., Baldwin, G. T., & Compton. W. M. (2017). Recent increases in cocaine-related overdose deaths and the role of opioids. *American Journal of Public Health*, *107*, 430–432.

Jones, G. (2008). Caffeine and other sympathomimetic stimulants: Modes of action and effects on sports performance. *Essays in Biochemistry*, *44*, 109–123.

Jones, K. L., Smith, D. W., Ulleland, C. N., & Streissguth, P. (1973). Pattern of malformation in offspring of chronic alcoholic mothers. *Lancet*, (7815), 1267–1271.

Jones, R. T. (1980). Human effects: An overview. In R. C. Peterson (Ed.), *Marijuana research findings: 1980* (pp. 54–80). Rockville, MD: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Jones, R. T. (1987a). The psychopharmacology of cocaine. In A. M. Washton & M. S. Gold (Eds.), *Cocaine: A clinician's handbook* (pp. 55–72). New York: Guilford Press.

Jones, R. T. (1987b). Tobacco dependence. In H. Y. Meltzer (Ed.), *Psychopharmacology: The third generation of progress* (pp. 1589–1595). New York: Raven Press.

Joy, J. E., Watson, S. J., & Benson, J. A. (1999). *Marijuana and medicine: Assessing the science base.* Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Juliano, L. M., & Brandon, T. H. (2002). Effects of nicotine dose, instructional set, and outcome expectancies on the subjective effects of smoking in the presence of a stressor. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, *111*, 88–97.

Juliano, L. M., & Griffiths, R. R. (2001). Is caffeine a drug of dependence? *Psychiatric Times*, 18.

Juliano, L. M., & Griffiths, R. R. (2004). A critical review of caffeine withdrawal: Empirical validation of symptoms and signs, incidence, severity, and associated features. *Psychopharmacology*, *176*, 1–29.

Julien, R. M. (1996). *A primer of drug action* (7th ed.). New York: W. H. Freeman.

Julien, R. M. (1998). *A primer of drug action* (8th ed.). New York: W. H. Freeman.

Julien, R. M. (2001). *A primer of drug action* (9th ed.). New York: W. H. Freeman.

Julien, R. M. (2005). *A primer of drug action* (10th ed.). New York: Worth Publishers.

Julien, R. M., Advokat, C. D., & Comaty (2008). *Primer of drug action* (11th ed.). New York: Worth Publishers.

Jung, J. (2001). *Psychology of alcohol and other drugs: A research perspective.* Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage Publications.

Kalant, H., LeBlanc, A. E., & Gibbins, R. J. (1971). Tolerance to, and dependence on, some nonopiate psychotropic drugs. *Pharmacological Reviews*, *23*, 135–191.

Kalat, J. W. (2009). *Biological psychology* (10th ed.). Belmont, CA: Wadsworth.

Kalat, J. W. (2013). *Biological psychology* (11th ed.). Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, Cengage Learning.

Kalow, W. (2012). Ethnic differences in drug metabolism. Clinical Pharmacokinetics, *7*, 373–400.

Kalus, O., Asnis, G. M., & van Praag, H. M. (1989). The role of serotonin in depression. *Psychiatric Annals*, *19*, 348–353.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Kanayama, G., Hudson, J. I., & Pope, H. G. (2008). Long-term psychiatric and medical consequences of anabolic-androgenic steroid abuse: A looming public health concern? *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *98*, 1–12.

Kanayama, G., Hudson, J. I., & Pope, H. G. (2009). Features of men with anabolic-androgenic steroid dependence: A comparison with nondependent AAS users and with AAS nonusers. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *102*, 130–137.

Kandel, D. (1975). Stages in adolescent involvement in drug use. *Science*, *190*, 912–914.

Kandel, D., & Yamaguchi, K. (1993). From beer to crack: Developmental patterns of drug involvement. *American Journal of Public Health*, *83*, 851–855.

Kapoun, J. (1998). Teaching undergrads Web evaluation: A guide for library instruction. *College and Research Library News*, *59*, 522–523.

Karch, S. B. (2000). Ma huang and the ephedra alkaloids. In M. J. Cupp (Ed.), *Toxicology and clinical pharmacology of herbal products* (pp. 11–30). Totowa, NJ: Humana Press.

Karlmangla, A. S., Sarkisian, C. A., Kado, D. M., Dedes, H., Liao, D. H., Kim, S., ... Moore, A. A. (2009). Light to moderate alcohol consumption and disability: Variable benefits by health status. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, *169*, 96–104.

Kaskutas, L. A. (2009). Alcoholics Anonymous effectiveness: Faith meets science. *Journal of Addictive Diseases*, *28*, 145–157.

Kawachi, I., Colditz, G. A., Speizer, F. E., Manson, J. E., Stampfer, M. J., Willett, W. C., ... Hennekens, C. H. (1997). A prospective study of passive smoking and coronary heart disease. *Circulation*, *95*, 2374–2379.

Keh-Ming, L., Smith, M., & Ortiz, V. (2001). Culture and psychopharmacology. *Cultural Psychiatry: International Perspectives*, *24*, 523–538.

Keller, M. (1979). A historical overview of alcohol and alcoholism. *Cancer Research*, *39*, 2822–2829.

Kelly, J. F., & Yeterian, J. D. (2015). Outcomes research on twelve-step programs. In M. Galanter, H. D. Kleber, & K. T. Brady (Eds.), *Textbook of substance abuse treatment* (5th ed., pp. 579–593). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Kelly, T. H., Foltin, R. W., & Fischman, M. W. (1993). Effects of smoked marijuana on heart rate, drug ratings and task performance by humans. *Behavioural Pharmacology*, *4*, 167–178.

Kelly, Y., Sacker, A., Gray, R., Kelly, J., Wolke, D., & Quigley, M. A. (2009). Light drinking in pregnancy, a risk for behavioral problems and cognitive deficits at 3 years of age? *International Journal of Epidemiology*, *38*, 129–140.

Kendler, K. S., Heath, A. C., Neale, M. C., Kessler, R. C., & Eaves, L. J. (1992). A population-based twin study of alcoholism in women. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *268*, 1877–1882.

Kennedy, J. (1985). *Coca exotica*. Cranbury, NJ: Associated University Presses.

Kenny, M., & Darragh, A. (1985). Central effects of caffeine in man. In S. D. Iversen (Ed.), *Psychopharmacology: Recent advances and future prospects* (pp. 278–288). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Kersbergen, I., & Field, M. (2017). Alcohol consumers' attention to warning labels and brand information on alcohol packaging: Findings from cross-sectional and experimental studies. *BMC Public Health*, *17*, 123.

Kesselheim, A. S., Misono, A. S., Lee, J. L., Stedman, M. R., Brookhart, M. A., Choudhry, N. K., & Shrank, W. H. (2008). Clinical equivalence of generic and brand-name drugs used in cardiovascular disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *300*, 2514–2526.

Kessler, R. C., Aguilar-Gaxiola, S., Bergland, P., Caraveo-Anduaga, J. J., DeWit, D. J., Greenf ield, S. F., ... Vega, W. A. (2001). Patterns and predictors of treatment seeking after the onset of a substance use disorder. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *58*, 1065–1071.

Kessler, R. C., Berglund, P., Demler, O., Jin, R., & Walters, E. E. (2005). Lifetime prevalence and age-of-onset distributions of DSM-IV disorders in the national comorbidity survey replication. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *62*, 593–602.

Kessler, R. C., Chiu, W. T., Demler, O., & Walters, E. E. (2005). Prevalence, severity, and comorbidity of 12-month DSM-IV disorders in the national comorbidity survey replication. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *62*, 617–627.

Kimmel, C. K. (1976). A prevention program with punch: The national PTA's Alcohol Education Project. *Journal of School Health*, *46*, 208–210.

Kinder, B. N., Pape, N. E., & Walfish, S. (1980). Drug and alcohol education programs: A review of outcome studies. *International Journal of the Addictions*, *15*, 1035–1054.

King, M. B. (1994). Long-term benzodiazepine users—A mixed bag. *Addiction*, *89*, 1367–1370.

Kirsch, I., & Sapirstein, G. (1999). Listening to Prozac but hearing placebo: A meta-analysis of antidepressant medications. In I. Kirsch (Ed.), *How expectancies shape experience* (pp. 303–320). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Kirsch, M. M. (1986). *Designer drugs*. Minneapolis: Comp-Care Publications.

Kishimoto, T., Chawla, J. M., Hagi, K., Zarate, C. A., Kane, J. M., Bauer, M., & Correll, C. U. (2016). Single-dose infusion ketamine and non-ketamine N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonists for unipolar and bipolar depression: A meta-analysis of efficacy, safety and time trajectories. *Psychological Medicine*, *46*, 1459–1472.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Kivlahan, D. R., Marlatt, G. A., Fromme, K., Coppel, D. B., & Williams, E. (1990). Secondary prevention with college drinkers: Evaluation of an alcohol skills training program. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *58*, 805–810.

Klatsky, A. L., Morton, C., Udaltsova, N., & Friedman, G. D. (2006). Coffee, cirrhosis, and transaminase enzymes. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, *166*, 1190–1195.

Kober, H., Lacadie, C. M., Wexler, B. E., Malison, R. T., Sinha, R., & Potenza, M. N. (2016). Brain activity during cocaine craving and gambling urges: An fMRI study. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, *41*, 628–637.

Kollins, S. H., & Rush, C. R. (2002). Sensitization to the cardiovascular but not subject-rated effects of oral cocaine in humans. *Biological Psychiatry*, *51*, 143–150.

Koob, G. F., Arends, M. A., & Le Moal, M. (2014). *Drugs, addiction and the brain*. Waltham, MA: Academic Press.

Koob, G. F., Lloyd, G., & Mason, B. J. (2009). Development of pharmacotherapies for drug addiction: A Rosetta Stone approach. *Nature Reviews. Drug Discovery*, *8*, 500–515.

Koslowski, L. T., Henningfield, R. M., Keenan, R. M., Lei, H., Leigh, G., Jelinek, L. C., ... Haertzen, C. A. (1993). Patterns of alcohol, cigarette, and caffeine and other drug use in two drug-abusing populations. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *10*, 171–179.

Kramer, J. C. (1972). A brief history of heroin addiction in America. In D. E. Smith & G. R. Gay (Eds.), *It's so good, don't even try it once* (pp. 12–31). Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.

Kranzler, H. R., & Van Kirk, J. (2001). Efficacy of naltrexone and acamprosate for alcoholism treatment: A meta-analysis. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *25*, 1335–1341.

Krogh, D. (1991). *Smoking: The artificial passion*. New York: W. H. Freeman.

Kypri, K., Voas, R. B., Langley, J. D., Stephenson, S. C. R., Begg, D. J., Tippetts, A. S., & Davie, G. S. (2006). Minimum purchasing age for alcohol and traffic crash injuries among 15- to 19-year-olds in New Zealand. *American Journal of Public Health*, *96*, 126–131.

LaCroix, A. Z., Lang, J., Scherr, P., Wallace, R. B., Cornoni-Huntley, J., Berkman, L., ... Hennekens, C. H. (1991). Smoking and mortality among older men and women in three communities. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *324*, 1619–1625.

Lamber, A. (1920). Underlying causes of the narcotic habit. *Modern Medicine*, *2*.

Lang, A. R., Searles, J., Lauerman, R., & Adesso, V. (1980). Expectancy, alcohol, and sex guilt as determinants of interest in and reaction to sexual stimuli. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, *60*, 285–293.

Langenbucher, J., Hildebrandt, T., & Carr, S. J. (2008). Medical consequences of anabolic steroids. In J. Brick (Ed.), *Handbook of the medical consequences of alcohol and drug abuse* (pp. 385–421). New York: Haworth Press.

Larimer, M. E., & Cronce, J. M. (2007). Identification, prevention, and treatment revisited: Individual-focused college drinking prevention strategies 1999–2006. *Addictive Behaviors*, *32*, 2439–2468.

Larsen, J. K., (2016). Neurotoxicity and LSD treatment: A follow-up study of 151 patients in Denmark. *History of Psychiatry*, *27*, 172–189.

Laties, V. G., & Weiss, B. (1981). The amphetamine margin in sports. *Federation Proceedings*, *40*, 2689–2692.

Latimer, D., & Goldberg, J. (1981). *Flowers in the blood: The story of opium*. New York: Franklin Watts.

LaVallee, R. A., Kim, T., & Yi, H. (2014). Apparent per capita alcohol consumption: National, state, and regional trends, 1977–2012. *National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism Surveillance Report #98*. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health.

Lawvere, S., & Mahoney, M. C. (2005). St. John's wort. *American Family Physician*, *72*, 2249–2254.

Leach, B., & Norris, J. L. (1977). Factors in the development of Alcoholics Anonymous (AA). In B. Kissin & H. Begleiter (Eds.), *The biology of alcoholism* (Vol. 5, pp. 441–544). New York: Plenum Press.

Leavitt, F. (1982). *Drugs and behavior* (2nd ed.). New York: John Wiley.

LeDain Commission. (1972). *A report of the Commission of Inquiry into the Non-medical Use of Drugs*. Ottawa: Information Canada.

Le Foll, B., & Goldberg, S. R. (2006). Nicotine as a typical drug of abuse in experimental animals and humans. *Psychopharmacology*, *184*, 367–381.

Lee, C.-Y., Chen, X., Romanelli, R. J., & Segal, J. B. (2016). Forces influencing generic drug development in the United States: A narrative review. *Journal of Pharmaceutical Policy and Practive*, *9*, 26.

Lee, S. J., Sudore, R. L., Williams, B. A., Lindquist, K., Chen, H. L., & Covinsky, K. E. (2009). Functional limitations, socioeconomic status, and all-cause mortality in moderate alcohol drinkers. *Journal of the American Geriatric Society*, *57*, 955–962.

Lehner, K. R., & Baumann, M. H. (2013). Psychoactive "bath salts": Compounds, mechanisms and toxicities. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, *38*, 242–244.

Lembke, A. (2016). *Drug dealer, MD*. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press.

Lender, M. E., & Martin, J. K. (1982). *Drinking in America*. New York: Free Press.

Leonard, T. K., Watson, R. R., & Mohs, M. E. (1987). The effects of caffeine in various body systems: A review. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, *87*, 1048–1053.

Leonardi-Bee, J., Britton, J., & Venn, A. (2011). Secondhand smoke and adverse fetal outcomes in nonsmoking pregnant women: A meta-analysis. *Pediatrics*, *127*, 734–741.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Leonardi-Bee, J., Nderi, M., & Britton, J. (2016). Smoking in movies and smoking initiation in adolescents: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Addiction*, *111*, 1750–1763.

Lerner, M., & Wigal, T. (2008). Long-term safety of stimulant medications used to treat children with ADHD. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing*, *46*, 38–48.

Leshner, A. I. (1999). Science-based views of drug addiction and its treatment. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *282*, 1314–1318.

Leuchter, A. F., Cook, I. A., Witte, E. A., Morgan, M., & Abrams, M. (2002). Changes in brain function of depressed subjects during treatment with placebo. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *159*, 122–129.

Levenson, H. S., & Bick, E. C. (1977). Psychopharmacology of caffeine. In M. E. Jarvic (Ed.), *Psychopharmacology in the practice of medicine* (pp. 451–463). New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts.

Levin, K. H., Copersino, M. L., Heishman, S. J., Liu, F., Kelly, D. L., Boggs, D. L., & Gorelick, D. A. (2010). Cannabis withdrawal symptoms in non-treatment-seeking adult cannabis smokers. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *111*, 120–127.

Levine, J. M., Kramer, G. G., & Levine, E. N. (1975). Effects of alcohol on human performance: An integration of research findings based on an abilities classification. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, *89*, 644–653.

Levy, D. T., Cummings, K. M., Vilanti, A. C., Niaura, R., Abrams, D. B., Fong, G. T., & Borland, R. (2016). A framework for evaluating the public health impact of e-cigarettes and other vaporized nicotine products. *Addiction*, *112*, 8–17.

Lewin, L. (1964). *Phantastica—Narcotic and stimulating drugs: Their use and abuse*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul.

Lewis, J. A. (1991). Alcohol abuse prevention in industrial settings. In B. Forster & J. C. Salloway (Eds.), *Preventions and treatments of alcohol and drug abuse* (pp. 137–152). Lewiston, NY: Edwin Mellen Press.

Li, M.-C., Brady, J. E., DiMaggio, C. J., Lusardi, A. R., Tzong, K. Y., & Li, G. (2012). Marijuana use and motor vehicle crashes. *Epidemiological Reviews*, *34*, 65–72.

Lichtenstein, E. (1982). The smoking problem: A behavioral perspective. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *50*, 804–819.

Lieberman, J. A., Stroup, T. S., McEvoy, J. P., Swartz, M. S., Rosenheck, R. A., Perkins, D. O., ... Hsiao, J. K., for the Clinical Antipsychotic Trials of Intervention Effectiveness (CATIE) Investigators. (2005). Effectiveness of antipsychotic drugs in patients with chronic schizophrenia. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *353*, 1209–1223.

Liechti, M. E., Kunz, I., Greminger, P., Speich, R., & Kupferschmidt, H. (2006). Clinical features of gamma-hydroxybutyrate and gamma-butyrolactone toxicity and concomitant drug and alcohol use. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *8*, 323–326.

Liguori, A., Hughes, J. R., & Grass, J. A. (1997). Absorption and subjective effects of caffeine from coffee, cola, and capsules. *Pharmacology, Biochemistry, and Behavior*, *58*, 721–726.

Lillenfeld, S. O. (2007). Psychological treatments that cause harm. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, *2*, 53–70.

Lin, K. M., & Poland, R. E. (1995). Ethnicity, culture and psychopharmacology. In F. E. Bloom & D. J. Kupfer (Eds.), *Psychopharmacology: The fourth generation of progress* (pp. 1907–1917). New York: American College of Neuropsychopharmacology.

Linde, K., Berner, M. M., & Kriston, L. (2008). St. John's wort for major depression. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, Issue 4.

Linder, R. L., Lerner, S. E., & Burns, R. S. (1981). *PCP: The devil's dust*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth.

Lingford-Hughes, A. R., Welch, S., & Nutt, D. J. (2004). Evidence-based guidelines for the pharmacological management of substance misuse, addiction, and co-morbidity: Recommendations from the British Association for Psychopharmacology. *Journal of Psychopharmacology*, *18*, 293–335.

Linszen, D., & van Amelsvoort, T. (2007). Cannabis and psychosis: An update on course and biological plausible mechanisms. *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, *20*, 116–120.

Litman, G. K. (1986). Alcoholism survival: The prevention of relapse. In W. R. Miller & N. Heather (Eds.), *Treating addictive behaviors* (pp. 391–405). New York: Plenum Press.

Litten, R. Z., & Allen, J. P. (1999). Medications for alcohol, illicit drug, and tobacco dependence: An update of research findings. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *16*, 105–112.

Liu, R., Guo, X., Park, Y., Huang, X., Sinha, R., Freedman, N. D., ... Chen, H. (2012). Caffeine intake, smoking, and risk of Parkinson disease in men and women. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, *175*, 1200–1207.

Livingston, M. (2011). A longitudinal analysis of alcohol outlet density and domestic violence. *Addiction*, *106*, 919–925.

Lloyd, T., Johnson-Rollings, N., Eggli, D. F., Kieselhorst, K., Mauger, E. A., & Cusatis, D. C. (2000). Bone status among postmenopausal women with different habitual caffeine intakes: A longitudinal investigation. *Journal of the American College of Nutrition*, *19*, 256–261.

Loflin, M., & Earleywine, M. (2014). A new method of cannabis ingestion: The dangers of dabs? *Addictive Behaviors*, *39*, 1430–1433.

Loomans, E. M., Hofland, L., van der Stelt, O., van der Wal, M. F., Koot, H. M., van der Bergh, B. R., & Vrijkotte, G. M. (2013). Caffeine intake during

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

pregnancy and risk of problem behavior in 5- to 6-year-old children. *Pediatrics*, *130*, 1–9.

Lorist, M. M., & Tops, M. (2003). Caffeine, fatigue, and cognition. *Brain and Cognition*, *53*, 82–94.

Lovasi, G. S., Roux, A. V. D., Hoffman, E. A., Kawut, S. M., Jacobs, S. M., Jr., & Barr, R. G. (2010). Association of environmental tobacco smoke exposure in childhood with early emphysema in adulthood among nonsmokers. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, *171*, 54–62.

Lowe, G. (1988). State-dependent retrieval effects with social drugs. *British Journal of Addiction*, *83*, 99–103.

Luby, J. L., Si, X., Belden, A. C., Tandom, M., & Spitznagel, E. (2009). Preschool depression: Homotypic continuity and course over 24 months. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *66*, 897–905.

Lucassen, P. J., Oomen, C. A., Schouten, M., Encinas, J. M., Fitzsimons, C. P., & Canales, J. J. (2016). Adult neurogenesis, chronic stress and depression. In J. J. Canales (Ed.), *Adult neurogenesis in the hippocampus: Health, psychopathology, and brain disease* (pp. 177–206). Amsterdam: Academic Press.

Luce, J. (1972). End of the road: A case study. In D. E. Smith & G. R. Gay (Eds.), *It's so good, don't even try it once* (pp. 143–147). Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.

Ludlow, F. H. (1857/1979). *The hasheesh eater, being passages from the life of a Pythagorean*. San Francisco: City Lights Books.

Ludwig, A. M., & Wikler, A. (1974). "Craving" and relapse to drink. *Quarterly Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *35*, 108–130.

Lyketsos, C. G., Garrett, E., Liang, K. Y., & Anthony, J. C. (1999). Cannabis use and cognitive decline in persons under 65 years of age. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, *149*, 794–800.

Lynam, D. R., Milich, R., Zimmerman, R., Novak, S. P., Logan, T. K., Martin, C., ... Clayton, R. (1999). Project DARE: No effects at 10-year follow-up. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *67*, 590–593.

MacAndrew, C., & Edgerton, R. B. (1969). *Drunken comportment*. Chicago: Aldine.

Mackay, A. V. P. (1982). Antischizophrenic drugs. In P. J. Tyrer (Ed.), *Drugs in psychiatric practice*. London: Butterworths.

MacKinnon, D. P. (1995). Review of the effects of the alcohol warning label. In R. R. Watson (Ed.), *Drug and alcohol abuse reviews: Vol. 7. Alcohol, cocaine, and accidents* (pp. 131–161). Totowa, NJ: Humana Press.

MacLean, S., Cameron, J., Harney, A., & Lee, N. K. (2012). Psychosocial therapeutic interventions for volatile substance use: A review. *Addiction*, *107*, 278–288.

MacNeil, J., & Pauly, B. (2011). Needle exchange as a safe haven in an unsafe world. *Drug and Alcohol Review*, *30*, 26–32.

Madah-Amiri, D., Clausen, T., & Lobmaier, P. (2017). Rapid widespread distribution of intranasal naloxone for overdose prevention. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *173*, 17–23.

Madras, B. (2017). The surge of opiate use, addiction and overdoses: Responsibility and responses of the US health care system. *JAMA Psychiatry*, *74*, 441–442.

Magliozzi, J. R., & Schaffer, C. B. (1988). Psychosis. In J. P. Tupin, R. I. Shader, & D. S. Harnett (Eds.), *Handbook of clinical psychopharmacology* (2nd ed., pp. 1–48). Northvale, NJ: Jason Aronson.

Maitre, M., Andriamampandry, C., Kemmel, V., Schmidt, C., Hode, Y., Hechler, V., ... Gobaille, S. (2000). Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid as a signaling molecule in brain. *Alcohol*, *20*, 277–283.

Malberg, J. E., Eisch, A. J., Nestler, E. J., & Duman, R. S. (2000). Chronic antidepressant treatment increases neurogenesis in adult rat hippocampus. *Journal of Neuroscience*, *20*, 9104–9110.

Malsch, U., & Kieser, M. (2001). Efficacy of kava-kava in the treatment of nonpsychotic anxiety following pretreatment with benzodiazepines. *Psychopharmacology*, *157*, 277–283.

Marczinski, C. A., Fillmore, M. T., Bardgett, M. E., & Howard, M. A. (2011). Effects of energy drinks mixed with alcohol on behavioral control: Risks for college students consuming trendy cocktails. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *35*, 1282–1292.

Marczinski, C. A., Fillmore, M. T., Henges, A. L., Ramsey, M. A., & Young, C. R. (2013). Making an energy drink with an alcoholic beverage increases motivation for more alcohol in college students. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *37*, 276–283.

Marczinski, C. A., Fillmore, M. T., Maloney, S. F., & Stamates, A. L. (2017). Faster self-paced rate of drinking for alcohol mixed with energy drinks versus alcohol alone. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *31*, 154–161.

Marczinski, C. A., Fillmore, M. T., Stamates, A. L., & Maloney, S. F. (2016). Desire to drink alcohol is enhanced with high caffeine energy drink mixers. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *40*, 1982–1990.

Marks, V., & Kelly, J. F. (1973). Absorption of caffeine from tea, coffee, and Coca Cola. *Lancet*, *3*, 827.

Marlatt, G. A. (Ed.) (1998). *Harm reduction*. New York: Guilford Press.

Marlatt, G. A., Bowen, S. W., & Witkiewitz, K. (2009). Relapse prevention: Evidence base and future. In P. M. Miller (Ed.), *Evidence-based addiction treatment* (pp. 215–232). Boston: Elsevier.

Marlatt, G. A., & Gordon, J. R. (Eds.). (1985). *Relapse prevention*. New York: Guilford Press.

Marlatt, G. A., Larimer, M. E., Baer, J. S., & Quigley, L. A. (1993). Harm reduction for alcohol problems: Moving beyond the controlled drinking controversy. *Behavior Therapy*, *24*, 461–504.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Marlatt, G. A., & Witkiewitz, K. (2005). Relapse prevention for alcohol and drug problems. In G. A. Marlatt & D. M. Donovan (Eds.), *Relapse prevention* (2nd ed., pp. 1–44). New York: Guilford Press.

Marmot, M. G. (2001). Alcohol and coronary heart disease. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, *30*, 724–729.

Marona-Lewicka, D., Thisted, R. A., & Nichols, D. E. (2005). Distinct temporal phases in the behavioral pharmacology of LSD: Dopamine D2 receptor-mediated effects in the rat and implications for psychosis. *Psychopharmacology*, *180*, 427–435.

Marsch, L. A. (2011). Technology-based interventions targeting substance use disorders and related issues: An editorial. *Substance Use and Misuse*, *46*, 1–3.

Marshall, E. (1988). The drug of champions. *Science*, *242*, 183–184.

Martin, B. R., Cabral, G., Childers, S. R., Deadwyler, S., Mechoulam, R., & Reggio, P. (1993). International Cannabis Research Society meeting summary, Keystone, CO (June 19–20, 1992). *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *31*, 219–227.

Mathew, S. J. (2008). Treatment-resistant depression: Recent developments and future directions. *Depression and Anxiety*, *25*, 989–992.

Matsuda, L., Lolait, S. J., Brownstein, J. J., Young, A. C., & Bonner, T. I. (1990). Structure of a cannabinoid receptor and functional expression of the cloned cDNA. *Nature*, *346*, 561–564.

Matthew, R. J., Wilson, W. H., Coleman, R. E., Turkington, T. G., & DeGrado, T. R. (1997). Marijuana intoxication and brain activation in marijuana smokers. *Life Sciences*, *60*, 2075–2089.

May, P. A., & Gossage, J. P. (2011). Maternal risk factors for fetal alcohol spectrum disorders. *Alcohol Research and Health*, *34*, 15–26.

Mayor LaGuardia's Committee on Marihuana. (1944). *The marihuana problem in the city of New York*. Lancaster, PA: Jacques Cattell Press. Reprinted by Scarecrow Reprint Corporation, Metuchen, NJ, 1983.

Mayo-Smith, M. F. (1997). Pharmacological management of alcohol withdrawal. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *278*, 144–151.

Maziak, W. (2008). The waterpipe: Time for action. *Addiction*, *103*, 1763–1767.

Mazis, M. B., Morris, L. A., & Swasy, J. L. (1991). An evaluation of the alcohol warning label: Initial survey results. *Journal of Public Policy and Marketing*, *10*, 229–241.

McBride, C. M., Pollak, K. L., Lyna, P., Lipkus, I. M., Samsa, G. P., & Beplor, G. (2001). Reasons for quitting smoking among low-income African American smokers. *Health Psychology*, *20*, 334–340.

McBride, N., Farringdon, F., Midford, R., Meuleners, L., & Phillips, M. (2004). Harm minimization in school drug education: Final results of the School Health and Alcohol Harm Reduction Project (SHAHRP). *Addiction*, *99*, 278–291.

McCarthy, D. M., Kroll, L. S., & Smith, G. T. (2001). Integrating disinhibition and learning risk for alcohol use. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *9*, 389–398.

McCarty, D. (1985). Environmental factors in substance abuse: The microsetting. In M. Galizio & S. A. Maisto (Eds.), *Determinants of substance abuse: Biological, psychological, and environmental factors* (pp. 247–282). New York: Plenum Press.

McCloskey, J., & Bailes, J. (2005). *When winning costs too much: Steroids, supplements and scandal in today's sports*. Lanham, MD: Taylor Trade Publishing Group Inc.

McCrady, B. S., & Langenbucher, J. W. (1996). Alcohol treatment and health care system reform. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *53*, 737–746.

McCrady, B. S., & Ziedonis, D. (2001). American Psychiatric Association practice guideline for substance use disorders. *Behavior Therapy*, *32*, 309–336.

McGlothlin, W. H., & West, L. J. (1968). The marihuana problem: An overview. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *125*, 370–378.

McGovern, M. P., & Carroll, K. M. (2003). Evidence-based practices for substance use disorders. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America*, *26*, 991–1010.

McGregor, C., Srisurapanont, M., Jittiwutikarn, J., Laobhripatr, S., Wongtan, T., & White, J. (2005). The nature, time course, and severity of methamphetamine withdrawal. *Addiction*, *100*, 1320–1329.

McKay, J. R., Murphy, R. T., & Longabaugh, R. (1991). The effectiveness of alcoholism treatment: Evidence from outcome studies. In S. M. Mirin, J. T. Gossett, & M. C. Grob (Eds.), *Psychiatric treatment: Advances in outcome research* (pp. 143–158). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.

McKean, M. (2013). Psychiatric care during pregnancy and postpartum. *Psychopharm Review*, *48*, 17–24.

McKee, M., & Capewell, S. (2015). Electronic cigarettes: We need evidence, not opinions. *The Lancet*, *386*, 1239.

McKee, S. A., O'Malley, S. S., Salovey, P., Krishnan-Sarin, S., & Mazure, C. M. (2005). Perceived risks and benefits of smoking cessation: Gender-specific predictors of motivation and treatment outcome. *Addictive Behaviors*, *30*, 423–435.

McKenna, T. (1992). *Food of the gods: The search for the original tree of knowledge*. New York: Bantam Books.

McKetin, R., & Coen, A. (2014). The effect of energy drinks on the urge to drink alcohol in young adults. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *38*, 2279–2285.

McKim, W. A. (2000). *Drugs and behavior* (4th ed.). Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

McLaren, J., Swift, W., Dillon, P., & Allsop, S. (2008). Cannabis potency and contamination: A review of the literature. *Addiction*, *10*, 1100–1109.

McLellan, A. T., Luborsky, L., Woody, G. E., O'Brien, C. P., & Druley, K. A. (1983). Increased effectiveness of substance abuse treatment: A prospective study of patient treatment matching. *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, *171*, 597–605.

McLellan, A. T., Lewis, D. C., O'Brien, C. P., & Kleber, H. D. (2000). Drug dependence, a chronic medical illness: Implications for treatment, insurance, and outcomes evaluation. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *284*, 1689–1695.

McLellan, T. M., Caldwell, J. A., & Lieberman, H. R. (2016). A review of caffeine's effects on cognitive, physical and occupational performance. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, *71*, 294–312.

McPherson, A., & Martin, C. R. (2010). A contemporary review of the alcohol/aggression relationship and the Buss-Perry Aggression Questionnaire for use in an alcohol dependent population. *Journal of Aggression, Conflict, and Peace Research*, *2*, 45–56.

Mechoulam, R. (1973). Cannabinoid chemistry. In R. Mechoulam (Ed.), *Marijuana: Chemistry, pharmacology, metabolism, and clinical effects* (pp. 2–99). New York: Academic Press.

Meier, M. H., Caspi, A., Ambler, A., Harrington, H., Houts, R., Keefe, R. S. E., ... Moffitt, T. (2012). Persistent cannabis users show neuropsychological decline from childhood to midlife. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, *109*, E2657–E2664.

Mellaart, J. (1967). *Catal Huyuk: A Neolithic town in Anatolia*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Mello, N. K., & Griffiths, R. R. (1987). Alcoholism and drug abuse: An overview. In H. Y. Meltzer (Ed.), *Psychopharmacology: The third generation of progress* (pp. 1511–1514). New York: Raven Press.

Mendelson, J. H., & Mello, N. K. (1985). *Alcohol: Use and abuse in America*. Boston: Little, Brown.

Mendelson, W. B. (1980). *The use and misuse of sleeping pills: A clinical guide*. New York: Plenum Press.

Meredith, S. E., Juliano, L. M., Hughes, J. R., & Griffiths, R. R. (2013). Caffeine use disorder: A comprehensive review and research agenda. *Journal of Caffeine Research*, *3*, 114–130.

Messinis, L., Kyprianidou, A., Malefaki, S., & Papathanasopoulos, P. (2006). Neuropsychological deficits in long-term frequent cannabis users. *Neurology*, *66*, 737–739.

Metrik, J., Kahler, C. W., Reynolds, B., McGeary, J. E., Monti, P. M., Haney, M., ... Rohsenow, D. J. (2012). Balanced placebo design with marijuana: Pharmacological and expectancy effects on impulsivity and risk taking. *Psychopharmacology*, *223*, 489–499.

Meyer, J. S., & Quenzer, L. F. (2013). *Psychopharmacology: Drugs, the brain, and behavior* (2nd ed.). Sunderland, NY: Sinauer.

Meyer, R. E., & Mirin, S. M. (1979). *The heroin stimulus: Implications for a theory of addiction*. New York: Plenum Press.

Midanik, L. T., & Room, R. R. (1992). The epidemiology of alcohol consumption. *Alcohol Health and Research World*, *16*, 183–190.

Miller, K. E. (2008). Energy drinks, race, and problem behaviors among college students. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *43*, 490–497.

Miller, K. E. (2012). Alcohol mixed with energy drink use and sexual risk-taking: Casual, intoxicated, and unprotected sex. *Journal of Caffeine Research*, *2*, 62–69.

Miller, K. E., Quigley, B. M., Eliseo-Arras, R. K., & Ball, N. J. (2016). Alcohol mixed with energy drink use as an event-level predictor of physical and verbal aggression in bar conflicts. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *40*, 161–169.

Miller, L. G., & Greenblatt, D. J. (1996). Benzodiazepine discontinuation syndromes: Clinical and experimental aspects. In C. R. Schuster & M. J. Kuhar (Eds.), *Pharmacological aspects of drug dependence: Toward an integrated neurobehavioral approach* (pp. 53–82). Berlin: Springer-Verlag.

Miller, N. S. (1991). *The pharmacology of alcohol and drugs of abuse/addiction*. New York: Springer-Verlag.

Miller, W. R., & C'de Baca, J. (2001). *Quantum change*. New York: Guilford Press.

Miller, W. R., & Hester, R. K. (1980). Treating the problem drinker: Modern approaches. In W. R. Miller (Ed.), *The addictive behaviors: Treatment of alcoholism, drug abuse, smoking, and obesity* (pp. 11–141). New York: Plenum Press.

Miller, W. R., & Hester, R. K. (1986). Inpatient alcoholism treatment: Who benefits? *American Psychologist*, *41*, 794–805.

Miller, W. R., & Hester, R. K. (1989). Treating alcohol problems: Toward an informed eclecticism. In R. K. Hester & W. R. Miller (Eds.), *Handbook of alcoholism treatment approaches* (pp. 3–14). New York: Pergamon Press.

Miller, W. R., & Hester, R. K. (1995). Treatment for alcohol problems: Toward an informed eclecticism. In R. K. Hester & W. R. Miller (Eds.), *Handbook of alcoholism treatment approaches* (2nd ed., pp. 1–11). Needham Heights, MA: Allyn & Bacon.

Miller, W. R., & Hester, R. K. (2002). Treating alcohol problems: Toward an informed eclecticism. In R. K. Hester & W. R. Miller (Eds.), *Handbook of alcoholism treatment approaches* (3rd ed., pp. 1–12). Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Mills, J. L., Holmes, L. B., Aarons, J. H., Simpson, J. L., Brown, A. A., Jovanovic-Peterson, L. G., ... Metzger, B. E. (1993). Moderate caffeine use and the risk of spontaneous abortion on intrauterine growth retardation. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *269*, 593–597.

Minnes, S., Lang, A., & Singer, L. (2011). Prenatal tobacco, marijuana, stimulant, and opiate exposure: Outcomes and practical implications. *Addiction Science and Clinical Practice*, *6*, 57–70.

Mintzer, M. Z., Copersino, M. L., & Stitzer, M. L. (2005). Opioid abuse and cognitive performance. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *78*, 225–230.

Mintzer, M. Z., Guarino, J., Kirk, T., Roache, J. D., & Griffiths, R. R. (1997). Ethanol and pentobarbital: Comparison of behavioral and subjective effects in sedative drug abusers. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *5*, 203–215.

Miroff, N. (2017, March 4). American cocaine use is way up. Colombia's coca boom might be why. *Washington Post*.

Mitchell, D. C., Knight, C. A., Hockenberry, J., Teplansky, R., & Hartman, T. J. (2013). Beverage caffeine intakes in the U.S. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, *63*, 136–142.

Mitchell, S. G., Gryczynski, J., O'Grady, K. E., & Schwartz, R. P. (2013). SBIRT for adolescent drug and alcohol use: Current status and future directions. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, *44*, 463–472.

Mithoefer, M. C., Grob, C. S., & Brewerton, T. D. (2016). Novel psychopharmacological therapies for psychiatric disorders: Psilocybin and MDMA. *The Lancet Psychiatry*, *3*, 481–488.

Modell, J. G. (1997). Protracted benzodiazepine withdrawal syndrome mimicking psychotic depression. *Psychosomatics*, *38*, 160–161.

Möhler, H., & Okada, T. (1977). Benzodiazepine receptor: Demonstration in the central nervous system. *Science*, *198*, 849–851.

Molarus, A., Parsons, R. W., Dobson, A. J., Evans, A., Fortmann, S. P., Jamrozik, K., ... Puska, P., and the WHO MONICA Project. (2001). Trends in cigarette smoking in 36 populations from the early 1980s to the mid-1990s: Findings from the WHO MONICA project. *American Journal of Public Health*, *91*, 206–212.

Molina, B. S., Hinshaw, S. P., Arnold, L. E., Swanson, J. M., Pelham, W. E., Hechtman, L., ... Marcus, S. (2013). Adolescent substance use in the multimodal treatment study of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) (MTA) as a function of childhood ADHD, random assignment to childhood treatments, and subsequent medication. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, *52*, 250–263.

Moncrieff, J., & Kirsch, I. (2005). Efficacy of antidepressants in adults. *British Medical Journal, 331*, 155–157.

Montana Meth Project. (2008, May 3). *The Economist*, 36.

Mooney, L. J., & McCance-Katz, E. F. (2016). Psychopharmacological treatments. In A. H. Mack, K. T. Brady, S. I. Miller, & R. J. Frances (Eds.), *Clinical textbook of addictive disorders* (4th ed., pp. 666–704). New York: The Guilford Press.

Moore, T. H. M., Zammit, S., Lingford-Hughes, A., Barnes, T. R. E., Jones, P. B., Burke, M., & Lewis, G. (2007). Cannabis use and risk of psychotic or affective mental health outcomes: A systematic review. *The Lancet*, *370*, 319–328.

Moreira, M. T., Smith, L. A., & Foxcroft, D. (2009). Social norms interventions to reduce alcohol misuse in university or college students. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, *3*, Article No. CD006748. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD006748.pub2

Morelli, M., & Simola, N. (2011). Methylxanthines and drug dependence: A focus on interactions with substances of abuse. *Handbook of Experimental Pharmacology*, *200*, 483–507.

Morgan, C., McAndrew, A., Stevens, T., Nutt, D., & Lawn, W. (2017). Tripping up addiction: The use of psychedelic drugs in the treatment of problematic drug and alcohol use. *Current Opinion in Behavioral Sciences*, *13*, 71–76.

Morgan, C. J. A., Riccelli, M., Maitland, C. H., & Curran, H. V. (2004). Long-term effects of ketamine: Evidence for a persisting impairment of source memory in recreational users. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *75*, 301–308.

Morgan, H. W. (1981). *Drugs in America: A social history, 1800–1980*. Syracuse, NY: Syracuse University Press.

Morgenstern, J., Labouvie, E., McCrady, B. S., Kahler, C. W., & Frey, R. M. (1997). Affiliation with Alcoholics Anonymous after treatment: A study of its therapeutic effects and mechanisms of action. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *65*, 768–777.

Morral, A. R., McCaffrey, D. F., & Paddock, S. M. (2002). Reassessing the marijuana gateway effect. *Addiction*, *97*, 1493–1504.

Mortimer, W. G. (1901). *Peru: History of coca, "the divine plant" of the Incas*. New York: J. H. Vail.

Morton, J. (2005). Ecstasy: Pharmacology and neurotoxicity. *Current Opinion in Pharmacology*, *5*, 79–86.

Mosher, J. F., & Colman, V. J. (1986). Prevention research: The model Dram Shop Act of 1985. *Alcohol Health and Research World*, *10*, 4–11.

Mostofsky, E., Rice, M. S., Levitan, E. B., & Mittleman, M. A. (2012). Habitual coffee consumption and risk of heart failure. *Circulation and Heart Failure*, *5*, 401–405.

Mueller, F., Lenz, C., Steiner, M., Dolder, P. C., Walter, M., Lang, U. E., ... Borgwardt, S. (2016). Neuroimaging in moderate MDMA use: A systematic review. *Neuroscience & Biobehavioral Reviews*, *62*, 21–34.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Mumford, G. K., Rush, C. R., & Griffiths, R. R. (1995). Alprazolam and DN-2327 (Pazinaclone) in humans: Psychomotor, memory, subjective, and reinforcing effects. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *3*, 39–48.

Munro, S., Thomas, K. L., & Abu-Shaar, M. (1993). Molecular characterization of a peripheral receptor for cannabinoids. *Nature*, *365*, 61–65.

Murray, B. L., Murphy, C. M., & Beuhler, M. C. (2012). Death following recreational use of designer drug "bath salts" containing 3,4 methylenedioxypyrovalerone (MDPV). *Journal of Medical Toxicology*, *8*, 69–75.

Murray, J., Burgess, S., Zuccolo, L., Hickman, M., Gray, R., & Lewis, S. J. (2016). Moderate alcohol drinking in pregnancy increases risk for children's persistent conduct problems: Causal effects in a Mendelian randomization study. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, *57*, 575–584.

Murrough, J. W. (2016). Ketamine for depression: An update. *Biological Psychiatry*, *80*, 416–418.

Nadelmann, E. A. (1989). Drug prohibition in the United States: Costs, consequences, and alternatives. *Science*, *245*, 939–947.

Nahas, G. G. (1973). *Marijuana—Deceptive weed*. New York: Raven Press.

Naqvi, N. H., Rudrauf, D., Demasioo, H., & Bechara, A. (2007). Damage to the insula disrupts addiction to cigarette smoking. *Science*, *315*, 531–534.

Naranjo, C. (2001). Experience with the interpersonal psychedelics. In J. Holland (Ed.), *Ecstasy: The complete guide: A comprehensive look at the risks and benefits of MDMA* (pp. 208–221). Rochester, VT: Park Street Press.

Nasca, C., Xenos, D., Barone, Y., Caruso, A., Scaccianoce, S., Matrisciano, F., ... Nicoletti, F. (2013). L-Acetylcarnitine causes rapid anti-depressant effects through the epigenetic induction of mGlu2 receptors. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, *110*, 4804–4809.

Nathan, P. E. (1984). Alcoholism prevention in the workplace: Three examples. In P. M. Miller & T. D. Nirenberg (Eds.), *Prevention of alcohol abuse* (pp. 387–405). New York: Plenum Press.

Nathan, P. E., & Niaura, R. S. (1987). Prevention of alcohol problems. In W. M. Cox (Ed.), *Treatment and prevention of alcohol problems: A resource manual* (pp. 333–354). New York: Academic Press.

National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine (NAS). (2017). *The health effects of cannabis and cannabinoids: The current state of evidence and recommendations for research*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.

National Cancer Council of Australia. (2006). *National cancer prevention policy: 2004–2006*. New South Wales: Author.

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA). (1993). *Eighth special report to the U.S. Congress on alcohol and health*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA). (1982). *Marijuana and health: Ninth annual report to the U.S. Congress from the Secretary of Health and Human Services*. Rockville, MD: Author.

National Institutes of Health. (2000, January). *Cirrhosis of the liver*. NIH Publication No. 00-1134.

NIAAA. (1999). Brief interventions for alcohol problems. *Alcohol Alert*, No. 43.

NIAAA. (2000). *Tenth special report to the U.S. Congress on alcohol and health*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

NIAAA. (2001, July). Cognitive impairment and recovery from alcoholism. *Alcohol Alert*, No. 53.

NIAAA. (2002). *A call to action: Changing the culture of drinking at U.S. colleges*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

NIAAA. (2005). *Helping patients who drink too much*. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health.

NIAAA. (2008). *Research findings on college drinking and the minimum drinking age*. Bethesda, MD: Author.

NIDA. (1991). *Annual emergency room data: 1990*. Washington, DC: Author.

NIDA. (2002). *Research report series: Nicotine addiction*. Bethesda, MD: Author.

NIDA. (2003). *Preventing drug abuse among children and adolescents: A research-based guide for parents, educators, and community leaders* (2nd ed.). Bethesda, MD: Author.

NIDA. (2016). *Monitoring the future: 2016 survey results*. National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

NIDA. (2017). National overdose deaths, data from National Center on Health Statistics, CDC Wonder. https://www.drugabuse.gov/related-topics/trends-statistics/overdose-death-rates

NDEWS. (2017, April 22). *Poison Center Control Statistics*. https://ndews.umd.edu/resources/poison-control-center-statistics.

Neal, D. J., & Fromme, K. (2007). Event-level covariation of alcohol intoxication and behavioral risks during the first year of college. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *75*, 294–306.

Nehlig, A. (2004). Dependence upon coffee and caffeine: An update. In A. Nehlig (Ed.), *Coffee, tea, chocolate, and the brain* (pp. 133–146). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Nestler, E. J. (2009). Cellular and molecular mechanisms of drug addiction. In D. S. Charney & E. J. Nestler (Eds.), *Neurobiology of mental illness* (3rd ed., pp. 775–786). New York: Oxford University Press.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Newmark, S. (2013). Are ADHD medications overprescribed? Yes: We diagnose too fast. *Wall Street Journal*. http://online.wsj.com/article/SB10000872396390444301704577631591596516110.html

Newton, N. C., Conrod, P. J., Slade, T., Carragher, N., Champion, K. E., Barrett, E. L., ... Teesson, M. (2016). The long-term effectiveness of a selective, personality-targeted prevention program in reducing alcohol use and related harms: A cluster randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, *57*, 1056–1065.

Newton, T. F., De La Garza, R., Kalechstein, A. D., & Nestor, L. (2005). Cocaine and methamphetamine produce different patterns of subjective and cardiovascular effects. *Pharmacology, Biochemistry and Behavior*, *82*, 90–97.

Ng, M., Freeman, M. K., Fleming, T. D., Robinson, M., Dwyer-Lindgren, L., Thomson, B., ... Galddau, E. (2014). Smoking prevalence and cigarette consumption in 187 countries, 1980–2012. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *311*, 183–192.

Nichols, D. E. (2004). Hallucinogens. *Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, *101*, 131–181.

Nies, A. S. (2001). Principles of therapeutics. In J. G. Hardman & L. E. Limbird (Eds.), *Goodman & Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (10th ed., pp. 45–66). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Nirenberg, T. D., & Miller, P. M. (1984). History and overview of the prevention of alcohol abuse. In P. M. Miller & T. D. Nirenberg (Eds.), *Prevention of alcohol abuse* (pp. 3–14). New York: Plenum Press.

Nixon, C. L., Mansfield, P. M., & Thoms, P. (2008). Effectiveness of antismoking public service announcements on children's intent to smoke. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *22*, 496–503.

Nkondjock, A. (2009). Coffee consumption and the risk of cancer: An overview. *Cancer Letters*, *277*(2), 121–125.

Nolen-Hoeksema, S. (2004). Gender differences in risk factors and consequences for alcohol use and problems. *Clinical Psychology Review*, *24*, 981–1010.

Nutt, D. (2012). *Drugs without the hot air: Minimizing the harms of legal and illegal drugs*. Cambridge, England: UIT Cambridge Ltd.

Oberg, M., Jaakkola, M. S., Woodward, A., Peruga, A., & Pruss-Ustun, A. (2011). Worldwide burden of disease from exposure to second-hand smoke: A retrospective analysis of data from 192 countries. *The Lancet*, *377*, 139–146.

O'Brien, C. (1995). *Nicotine dependence*. University of Pennsylvania Health System, Internet Alcohol Recovery Center.

O'Brien, C. P. (1996). Recent developments in the pharmacotherapy of substance abuse. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *64*, 677–686.

O'Brien, C. P. (2001). Drug addiction and drug abuse. In J. G. Hardman & L. E. Limbird (Eds.), *Goodman & Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (10th ed., pp. 621–643). New York: McGraw-Hill.

O'Brien, M. C., McCoy, T. P., Rhodes, S. D., Wagoner, A., & Wolfson, M. (2008). Caffeinated cocktails: Energy drinking consumption, high-risk drinking, and alcohol-related consequences among college students. *Academy of Emergency Medicine*, *15*, 453–460.

O'Brien, R., & Cohen, S. (1984). *The encyclopedia of drug abuse*. New York: Facts on File.

Oehen, P., Traber, R., Widmer, V., & Schnyder, U. (2013). A randomized, controlled pilot study of MDMA (±3, 4-Methylenedioxymethamphetamine)-assisted psychotherapy for treatment of resistant, chronic Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD). *Journal of Psychopharmacology*, *27*, 40–52.

O'Hanlon, J. F., & de Gier, J. J. (1986). *Drugs and driving*. London: Taylor & Francis.

Olds, J., & Milner, P. (1954). Positive reinforcement produced by electrical stimulation of septal area and other regions of rat brains. *Journal of Comparative and Physiological Psychology*, *47*, 419–427.

O'Leary, M., Mackie, C. J., Castellanos-Ryan, N., Al-Khudhairy, N., & Conrod, P. J. (2010). Personality-targeted interventions delay uptake of drinking and decrease risk of alcohol-related problems when delivered by teachers. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, *49*, 954–963.

Olfson, E., & Bierut, L. J. (2012). Convergence of genome-wide association and candidate gene studies for alcoholism. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *36*, 2086–2094.

Olfson, M., Blanco, C., Wang, S., & Greenhill, L. L. (2013). Trends in office-based treatment of adults with stimulants in the United States. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, *74*, 43–50.

O'Loughlin, J., Gervais, A., Dugas, E., & Meshefedjian, G. (2009). Milestones in the process of cessation among novice adolescent smokers. *American Journal of Public Health*, *99*, 499–504.

O'Malley, S. S., Jaffe, A. J., Chang, G., Schottenfeld, R. S., Meyer, R. E., & Rounsaville, B. (1992). Naltrexone and coping skills therapy for alcohol dependence. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *49*, 881–887.

Orcutt, J. D. (1987). Differential association and marijuana use: A closer look at Sutherland (with a little help from Becker). *Criminology*, *25*, 341–358.

Orford, J. (1985). *Excessive appetites: A psychological view of addictions*. Chichester, England: John Wiley.

Oviedo, A., Glowa, J., & Herkenham, M. (1003). Chronic cannabinoid administration alters cannabinoid receptor binding in rat brain: A quantitative autoradiographic study. *Brain Research*, *616*, 293–302.

Oviedo-Joekes, E., Brissette, S., Marsh, D. C., Lauzon, P., Guh, D., Anis, A., & Schechter, M. T. (2009). Diacetylmorphine versus Methadone for the treatment of

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

opioid addiction. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *361*, 777–786.

Owen, F. (2007). *No speed limit: The highs and lows of meth*. New York: St. Martins Press.

Oyebode, F., Rastogi, A., Berrisford, G., & Coccia, F. (2012). Psychotropics in pregnancy: Safety and other considerations. *Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, *135*, 71–77.

Page, J. B. (1983). The amotivational syndrome hypothesis and the Costa Rica study: Relationship between methods and results. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *15*, 261–267.

Pagliaro, L. A., & Pagliaro, A. M. (2009). *Pagliaros' comprehensive guide to drugs and substances of abuse* (2nd ed.). Washington, DC: American Pharmacists Association.

Palmgreen, P., & Donohew, L. (2003). Effective mass media strategies for drug abuse prevention campaigns. In Z. Sloboda & W. J. Bukoski (Eds.), *Handbook of drug abuse prevention: Theory, science, and practice* (pp. 27–43). New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers.

Parks, K. A., & Kennedy, C. L. (2004). Club drugs: Reasons for and consequences of use. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *36*, 295–302.

Parrino, L., & Terzano, M. G. (1996). Polysomnographic effects of hypnotic drugs. *Psychopharmacology*, *126*, 1–16.

Parrott, A. C. (1998). Nesbitt's paradox revisited? Stress and arousal modulation during cigarette smoking. *Addiction*, *93*, 27–39.

Parrott, A. C. (2004). Is ecstasy MDMA? A review of the proportion of ecstasy tablets containing MDMA, their dosage levels, and the changing perceptions of purity. *Psychopharmacology*, *173*, 234–241.

Parrott, A. C., Milani, R. M., Parmar, R., & Turner, J. J. D. (2001). Recreational ecstasy/MDMA and other drug users from the UK and Italy: Psychiatric symptoms and psychobiological problems. *Psychopharmacology*, *159*, 77–82.

Parrott, D. J., & Giancola, P. R. (2004). A further examination of the relation between trait anger and alcohol-related aggression: The role of anger control. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *28*, 855–864.

Parsons, O. A. (1986). Alcoholics' neuropsychological impairment: Current findings and conclusions. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, *8*, 13–19.

Paton, W. D. M., & Pertwee, R. G. (1973). The actions of cannabis in man. In R. Mechoulam (Ed.), *Marijuana: Chemistry, pharmacology, metabolism, and clinical effects* (pp. 288–333). New York: Academic Press.

Peachey, J. E., & Annis, J. (1985). New strategies for using the alcohol-sensitizing drugs. In C. A. Naranjo & E. M. Sellers (Eds.), *Research advances in new psychopharmacological treatments for alcoholism* (pp. 199–216). Amsterdam: Elsevier Science Publishers.

Peck, J. D., Leviton, A., & Cowan, L. D. (2910). A review of the epidemiological evidence concerning the reproductive health effects of caffeine consumption: A 2000–2009 update. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, *48*, 2549–2576.

Pedersen, L. H., Henriksen, T. B., & Olsen, J. (2010). Fetal exposure to antidepressants and normal milestone development at 6 and 19 months of age. *Pediatrics*, *125*, e600–e608.

Pennay, A., Miller, P., Busija, L., Jenkinson, R., Droste, N., Quinn, B., ... Lubman, D. I. (2015). "Wide-awake drunkenness"? Investigating the association between alcohol intoxication and stimulant use in the night-time economy. *Addiction*, *110*, 356–365.

Perkins, H. W. (2002). Social norms and the prevention of alcohol misuse in collegiate contexts. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, (Suppl. 14), 164–172.

Perkins, H. W. (2007). Misperceptions of peer drinking norms in Canada: Another look at the "reign of terror" and its consequences among college students. *Addictive Behaviors*, *32*, 2645–2656.

Perkins, K. A. (1996). Sex differences in nicotine versus nonnicotine reinforcement as determinants of tobacco smoking. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *4*, 166–177.

Perkins, K. A., Fonte, C., Ashcom, J., Broge, M., & Wilson, A. (2001). Subjective responses to nicotine in smokers may be associated with responses to caffeine and to alcohol. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *9*, 91–100.

Perrine, D. M. (1996). *The chemistry of mind-altering drugs. History, pharmacology, and cultural context*. Washington, DC: American Chemical Society.

Pert, C., & Snyder, S. H. (1973). Opiate receptor: Demonstration in nervous system tissue. *Science*, *179*, 1011–1014.

Pertwee, R. (2002). Sites and mechanism of action. In F. Grotenhermen & E. Russo (Eds.), *Cannabis and cannabinoids: Pharmacology, toxicology and therapeutic potential* (pp. 73–88). London: Haworth.

Petersen, R. C. (1977). History of cocaine. In R. C. Petersen & R. C. Stillman (Eds.), *Cocaine: 1977*. Research Monograph 13 (pp. 17–34). Washington, DC: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Petersson, A., Garle, M., Holmgren, P., Druid, H., Krantz, P., & Thiblin, I. (2006). Toxicological findings and manner of death in autopsied users of anabolic androgenic steroids. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *81*, 241–250.

Petrovic, P., Kalso, E., Petersson, K. M., & Ingvar, M. (2002). Placebo and opioid analgesia: Imaging a shared neuronal network. *Science*, *295*, 1737–1740.

Peugh, J., & Belenko, S. (2001). Alcohol, drugs, and sexual function: A review. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *33*, 223–232.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Pijlman, F. T., Rigter, S. M., Hoek, J., Goldschmidt, H. M. J., & Niesink, R. J. M. (2005). Strong increase in total delta-THC in cannabis preparations sold in Dutch coffee shops. *Addiction Biology*, *10*, 171–180.

Poli, A., & Visioli, F. (2015). Moderate alcohol use and health: An update of a consensus document. *BIO Web of Conferences, 5*.

Popovici, I., & French, M. T. (2013). Economic evaluation of substance abuse interventions: Overview of recent research findings and policy implications. In B. S. McCrady & E. E. Epstein (Eds.), *Addictions: A comprehensive guidebook* (2nd ed., pp. 882–899). New York: Guilford Press.

Pires, A., Fortuna, A., Alves, G., & Falcao, A. (2009). Intranasal drug delivery: How, why, and what for? *Journal of Pharmacology and Pharmaceutical Sciences*, *12*, 288–311.

Pisinger, C., & Godtfredsen, N. S. (2007). Is there a health benefit of reduced tobacco consumption? A systematic review. *Nicotine and Tobacco Research*, *9*, 631–646.

Pittler, M. H., Verster, J. C., & Ernst, E. (2005). Interventions for preventing or treating alcohol hangover: Systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *British Medical Journal*, *331*, 1515–1517.

Pletcher, M. J., Vittinghoff, E., Kalhan, R., Richman, J., Safford, M., Sidney, S., Lin, F., & Kertesz, S. (2012). Association between marijuana exposure and pulmonary function over 20 years. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *307*, 173–181.

Pliner, P., & Cappell, H. (1974). Modification of affective consequences of alcohol: A comparison of social and solitary drinking. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, *89*, 224–233.

Plosker, G. L. (2011). Buprenorphine 5, 10 and 20 μg/h transdermal patch: A review of its use in the management of chronic non-malignant pain. *Drugs*, *71*, 2491–2509.

Poling, A., & Cross, J. (1993). State-dependent learning. In F. van Haaren (Ed.), *Methods in behavioral pharmacology* (pp. 245–256). Amsterdam: Elsevier.

Pomerleau, C. S. (1997). Co-factors for smoking and evolutionary psychobiology. *Addiction*, *92*, 397–408.

Pomerleau, C. S., & Saules, K. (2007). Body image, body satisfaction, and eating patterns in normal-weight and overweight/obese women current smokers and never-smokers. *Addictive Behaviors*, *32*, 2329–2334.

Pope, H. G., Jr., Gruber, A. J., Hudson, J. I., Huestis, M. A., & Yurgelun-Todd, D. (2001). Neuropsychological performance in long-term cannabis users. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *58*, 909–915.

Pope, H. G., Jr., & Katz, D. L. (1988). Affective and psychotic symptoms associated with anabolic steroid use. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *145*, 487–490.

Porjesz, B., & Begleiter, H. (1995). Event-related potentials and cognitive function in alcoholism. *Alcohol Health and Research World*, *19*, 108–113.

Portenoy, R. K., & Foley, K. M. (1986). Chronic use of opioid analgesics in non-malignant pain: Report of 38 cases. *Pain*, *25*, 171–186.

Prastu, N., Kooyman, M., Robino, A., van der Spek, A., Navarini, L., Amin, N., ... Gasparini, P. (2016). Non-additive genome-wide association scan reveals a new gene associated with habitual coffee consumption. *Science Reports*, *6*, 31590; doi:10.1038/srep31590

Primack, B. A., Gold, M. A., Land, S. R., & Fine, M. J. (2006). Association of cigarette smoking and media literacy about smoking among adolescents. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, *39*, 465–472.

Prinz, R. J. (2015). A population approach to parenting and family intervention. In L. M. Scheier (Ed.), *Handbook of adolescent drug use prevention: Research, intervention strategies, and practice* (pp. 237–247). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Prochaska, J. O., DiClemente, C. C., & Norcross, J. C. (1992). In search of how people change. Applications to addictive behaviors. *American Psychologist*, *47*, 1102–1114.

Project MATCH Research Group. (1997). Matching alcoholism treatments to client heterogeneity: Project MATCH posttreatment drinking outcomes. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *58*, 7–29.

Prus, A. (2014). *An introduction to drugs and the neuroscience of behavior*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, Cengage Learning.

Quaglio, G., Lugoboni, F., Pattaro, C., Melara, B., Mezzelani, P., & Des Jarlais, D. C. (2008). Erectile dysfunction in male heroin users receiving methadone and buprenorphine maintenance treatment. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *94*, 12–18.

Quickfall, J., & Crockford, D. (2006). Brain neuroimaging in cannabis use: A review. *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences*, *18*, 318–332.

Quinones, S. (2015). *Dreamland: The true tale of America's opiate epidemic*. New York: Bloomsbury Press.

Rajacic, N. (1997). Coordinator presents on SMART to social workers. *S.M.A.R.T. Recovery News and Views*, *III*, 4–5.

Rall, T. W. (1990a). Drugs used in the treatment of asthma. The methylxanthines, cromolyn sodium, and other agents. In A. G. Gilman, T. W. Rall, A. S. Niles, & P. Taylor (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (8th ed., pp. 618–637). New York: Pergamon Press.

Rall, T. W. (1990b). Hypnotics and sedatives: Ethanol. In A. G. Gilman, T. W. Rall, A. S. Nies, & P. Taylor (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (8th ed., pp. 345–382). New York: Pergamon Press.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Ranganathan, M., & D'Souza, D. C. (2006). The acute effects of cannabinoids on memory in humans: A review. *Psychopharmacology*, *188*, 425–444.

Rasmussen, C. (2005). Executive functioning and working memory in fetal alcohol spectrum disorder. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *29*, 1359–1367.

Raven, M. A., Necessary, B. D., Danluck, D. A., & Ettenberg, A. (2000). Comparison of the reinforcing and anxiogenic effects of intravenous cocaine and cocaethylene. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *8*, 117–124.

Rawson, R. A. (1990–1991). Chemical dependency treatment: The integration of the alcoholism and drug addiction/use treatment systems. *International Journal of the Addictions*, *25*, 1515–1536.

Ray, W. A., Chung, C. P., Murray, K. T., Hall, K., & Stein, M. (2009). Atypical antipsychotic drugs and the risk of sudden cardiac death. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *360*, 225–235.

Ream, G. L., Benoit, E., Johnson, B. D., & Dunlap, E. (2008). Smoking tobacco along with marijuana increases symptoms of cannabis dependence. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *95*, 199–208.

Reed, S. C., Haney, M., Evans, S. M., Vadhan, N. P., Rubin, E., & Foltin, R. W. (2009). Cardiovascular and subjective effects of repeated smoked cocaine administration in experienced cocaine users. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *102*, 102–107.

Rees, V., & Connolly, G. N. (2006). Measuring air quality to protect children from secondhand smoke in cars. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, *31*, 363–368.

Rehm, J., Mathers, C., Popova, S., Thavorncharoensap, M., Teerawattananon, Y., & Patra, J. (2009). Global burden of disease and injury and economic cost attributable to alcohol use and alcohol-use disorders. *Lancet*, *373*, 2223–2233.

Rehm, J., Samokhvalov, A. V., & Shield, K. D. (2013). Global burden of alcoholic liver diseases. *Journal of Hepatology*, *59*, 160–168.

Reissig, C. J., Strain, E. C., & Griffiths, R. R. (2009). Caffeinated energy drinks—A growing problem. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *99*, 1–10.

Renaud, S., & de Lorgeril, M. (1992). Wine, alcohol, platelets, and the French paradox for coronary heart disease. *The Lancet*, *339*, 1523–1526.

Ricaurte, G., Bryan, G., Strauss, L., Seiden, L., & Schuster, C. (1985). Hallucinogenic amphetamine selectively destroys brain serotonin nerve terminals. *Science*, *299*, 986–988.

Rich, J. D., McKenzie, M., Macalino, G. E., Taylor, L. E., Sanford-Colby, S., Wolf, F., ... Stein, M. D. (2004). A syringe protection program to prevent infectious disease and improve health of injection drug users. *Journal of Urban Health*, *81*, 122–134.

Richards, J. B., Papaioannou, A., Adachi, J. D., Joseph, L., Whitson, H. E., Prior, J. C., & Goltzman, D., for the Canadian Multicentre Osteoporosis Study (CaMos) Research Group. (2007). Effect of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors on the risk of fracture. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, *167*, 188–194.

Richmond, L. B. (1977, Winter). Decisions and drinking: A prevention approach. *Alcohol Health and Research World*, 22–26.

Ridenour, T. A., Bray, B. C., & Cottler, L. B. (2007). Reliability of use, abuse, and dependence of four types of inhalants in adolescents and young adults. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *91*, 40–49.

Riedlinger, J., & Montagne, M. (2001). Using MDMA in the treatment of depression. In J. Holland (Ed.), *Ecstasy: The complete guide: A comprehensive look at the risks and benefits of MDMA* (pp. 261–272). Rochester, VT: Park Street Press.

Rigler, S. K. (2000). Alcoholism in the elderly. *American Family Physician*, *61*, 1710–1716.

Rimm, E. B. (2000). Moderate alcohol intake and lower risk of coronary heart disease: Meta-analysis of effects on lipids and homeostatic factors. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *319*, 1523–1528.

Rinaldi, R. C., Steindler, E. M., Wilford, B. B., & Goodwin, D. (1988). Clarification and standardization of substance abuse terminology. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *259*, 555–557.

Ritchie, J. M. (1985). The aliphatic alcohols. In A. G. Gilman, L. S. Goodman, T. W. Rall, & F. Murod (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (7th ed., pp. 372–386). New York: Macmillan.

Roberts, C. A., Jones, A., & Montgomery, C. (2016). Meta-analysis of executive functioning in ecstasy/polydrug users. *Psychological Medicine*, *46*, 1581–1596.

Robins, L. N., Helzer, J. E., & Davis, D. H. (1975). Narcotic use in Southeast Asia and afterward. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *32*, 955–961.

Robinson, T. E., & Berridge, K. C. (2003). Addiction. *Annual Review of Psychology*, *54*, 25–53.

Robison, L. L., Buckley, J. D., Daigle, A. E., Wells, R., Benjamin, D., Arthur, D. C., ... Hammond, G. D. (1989). Maternal drug use and risk of childhood non-lymphoblastic leukemia among offspring. *Cancer*, *63*, 1904–1911.

Roiser, J. P., & Sahakian, B. J. (2004). Relationship between ecstasy use and depression: A study controlling for poly-drug use. *Psychopharmacology*, *173*, 411–417.

Roldan, M. (1999). Colombia: Cocaine and the "miracle" of modernity in Medellin. In P. Gootenberg (Ed.), *Cocaine: Global histories* (pp. 165–182). London: Routledge Press.

Rollnick, S., & Heather, N. (1982). The application of Bandura's self-efficacy theory to abstinence-oriented alcoholism treatment. *Addictive Behaviors*, *7*, 243–250.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Room, R., & Livingston, M. (2016). The distribution of customary behaviour in a population: The total consumption model and alcohol policy. *Sociological Perspectives*, *60*, 10–22.

Rose, A. H. (1977). History and scientific basis of alcoholic beverage production. In A. H. Rose (Ed.), *Alcoholic beverages* (pp. 1–41). New York: Academic Press.

Rose, J. E. (1991). Transdermal nicotine and nasal nicotine administration as smoking cessation treatments. In J. A. Cocores (Ed.), *The clinical management of nicotine dependence* (pp. 196–207). New York: Springer-Verlag.

Rose, J. E., Mukhin, A. G., Lokitz, S. J., Turkington, T. G., Herskovic, J., Behm, F. M., ... Fowler, J. S. (2010). Kinetics of brain nicotine accumulation in dependent and non-dependent smokers assessed with PET and cigarettes containing C-nicotine. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, *107*, 5190–5195.

Rose, J. E., Salley, A., Behm, F. M., Bates, J. E., & Westman, E. C. (2010). Reinforcing effects of nicotine and non-nicotine components of cigarette smoke. *Psychopharmacology*, *210*, 1–12.

Rosen, L. W. (2015). International drug control policy: Background and U.S. responses. *Congressional Research Services Report to Congress*. https://fas.org/sgp/crs/row/RL34543.pdf

Rosenbaum, C. D., Carriero, S. P., & Babu, K. M. (2012). Here today, gone tomorrow … and back again? A review of synthetic marijuana alternatives (Spice, K2), synthetic cathinones (bath salts), kratom, salvia divinorum, methoxetamine, and piperazines. *Journal of Medical Toxicology*, *8*, 15–32.

Rosenberg, H. (1993). Prediction of controlled drinking by alcoholics and problem drinkers. *Psychological Bulletin*, *113*, 129–139.

Rosenberg, N. L., & Sharp, C. W. (1992). Solvent toxicity: A neurological focus. In C. W. Sharp, F. Beauvais, & R. Spence (Eds.), *Inhalant abuse: A volatile research agenda*. Research Monograph 129 (pp. 117–171). Rockville, MD: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Rosenthal, R. N., Levounis, P., & Herron, A. J. (2016). Polysubstance use, abuse, and dependence. In A. H. Mack, K. T. Brady, S. I. Miller, & R. J. Frances (Eds.), *Clinical textbook of addictive disorders* (4th ed., pp. 267–291). New York: The Guilford Press.

Roshan, M. H. K., Tambo, A., & Pace, N. P. (2016). Potential role of caffeine in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *The Open Neurology Journal*, *10*, 42–58.

Ross, E. M., & Gilman, A. G. (1985). Pharmacodynamics: Mechanisms of drug action and the relationship between drug concentration and effect. In A. G. Gilman, L. S. Goodman, T. W. Rall, & F. Murod (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (7th ed., pp. 35–48). New York: Macmillan.

Ross, S., & Peselow, E. (2009). Pharmacotherapy of addictive disorders. *Clinical Neuropharmacology*, *32*, 277–289.

Rossato, M., Pagano, C., & Vettor, R. (2008). The cannabinoid system and male reproductive functions. *Journal of Neuroendocrinology*, *20*(Suppl. 1), 90–93.

Rosso, A., Mossey, J., & Lippa, C. F. (2008). Caffeine: Neuroprotective functions in cognition and Alzheimer's disease. *American Journal of Alzheimer's Disease & Other Dementias*, *23*, 417–422.

Rowberg, R. E. (2001). *Pharmaceutical research and development: A description and analysis of the process: A CRS report for Congress*. Washington, DC: Library of Congress.

Rush, B., & Gliksman, L. (1986). The distribution of consumption approach to the prevention of alcohol-related damage: An overview of relevant research and current issues. *Advances in Alcohol and Substance Abuse*, *5*, 9–32.

Rush, C. R., & Griffiths, R. R. (1996). Zolpidem, triazolam, and temazepam: Behavioral and subject-rated effects in normal volunteers. *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *16*, 146–157.

Rush, C. R., & Griffiths, R. R. (1997). Acute participant-rated and behavioral effects of alprazolam and buspirone, alone and in combination with ethanol in normal volunteers. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *5*, 28–38.

Rush, C. R., Roll, J. M., & Higgins, S. T. (1998). Controlled laboratory studies on the effects of cocaine in combination with other commonly abused drugs in humans. In S. T. Higgins & J. L. Katz (Eds.), *Cocaine abuse: Behavior, pharmacology, and clinical applications* (pp. 239–264). San Diego: Academic Press.

Russell, M. A. H. (1976). Tobacco smoking and nicotine dependence. In R. J. Gibbins, Y. Israel, H. Kalant, R. E. Popham, W. Schmidt, & R. G. Smart (Eds.), *Research advances in alcohol and drug problems* (Vol. 3, pp. 1–47). New York: John Wiley.

Ryan, R. M., Plant, R. W., & O'Malley, S. S. (1995). Initial motivations for alcohol treatment: Relations with patient characteristics, treatment involvement, and dropout. *Addictive Behaviors*, *20*, 279–297.

Sack, R. L., & DeFraites, E. (1977). Lithium and the treatment of mania. In J. D. Barchas, P. A. Berger, R. D. Ciaranello, & G. R. Elliott (Eds.), *Psychopharmacology: From theory to practice*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Sacks, O. (2012). *Hallucinations*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf.

Sadeu, J. C., Hughes, C. L., Agarwal, S., & Foster, W. G. (2010). Alcohol, drugs, caffeine, tobacco, and environmental contaminant exposure: Reproductive health consequences and clinical implications. *Critical Reviews in Toxicology*, *40*, 633–652.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Sadock, B. J., & Sadock, V. A. (2008). *Kaplan & Sadock's concise textbook of clinical psychiatry* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Saitz, R. (2005). Unhealthy alcohol use. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *352*, 596–607.

Salamone, J. D., & Correa, M. (2012). The mysterious motivational functions of mesolimbic dopamine. *Neuron*, *76*, 470–485.

Salamone, J. D., Correa, M., Nunes, E. J., Randall, P. A., & Pardo, M. (2012). The behavioral pharmacology of effort-related choice behavior: Dopamine, adenosine and beyond. *Journal of the Experimental Analysis of Behavior*, *97*, 125–146.

Saloner, B. (2017). An update on "Insurance coverage and treatment use under the Affordable Care Act among adults with mental and substance use disorders." *Psychiatric Services*, *68*, 310–311.

Salzman, C. (1992). Behavioral side effects of benzodiazepines. In J. M. Kane & J. A. Lieberman (Eds.), *Adverse effects of psychotropic drugs* (pp. 139–152). New York: Guilford Press.

Sanger, D., Willner, P., & Bergman, J. (2003). Applications of behavioral pharmacology in drug discovery. *Behavioral Pharmacology*, *14*, 363–367.

Santarelli, L., Saxe, M., Gross, C., Surget, A., Battaglia, F., Dulawa, S., ... Hen, R. (2003). Requirement of hippocampal neurogenesis for the behavioral effects of antidepressants. *Science*, *301*, 805–809.

Sarris, J. (2013). St. John's wort for the treatment of psychiatric disorders. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America*, *36*, 65–72.

Sawa, A., & Snyder, S. H. (2002). Schizophrenia: Diverse approaches to a complex disease. *Science*, *296*, 692–695.

Sawyer, D. A., Julia, H. L., & Turin, A. C. (1982). Caffeine and human behavior: Arousal, anxiety, and performance effects. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, *5*, 415–439.

Sayed, B. A., & French, M. T. (2016). To your health!: Re-examining the health benefits of moderate alcohol use. *Social Science and Medicine*, *167*, 20–28.

Sayette, M. A., Kirchner, T. R., Moreland, R. L., Levine, J. M., & Travis, T. (2004). Effects of alcohol on risk-seeking behavior: A group-level analysis. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *18*, 190–193.

Scammon, D. L., Mayer, R. N., & Smith, K. R. (1991). Alcohol warnings: How do you know when you have had one too many? *Journal of Public Policy and Marketing*, *10*, 214–228.

Schaffer, M., Jeglic, E. L., & Stanley, B. (2008). The relationship between suicidal behavior, ideation, and binge drinking among college students. *Archives of Suicide Research*, *12*, 124–132.

Schak, K. M., Vande Voort, J. L., Johnson, E. K., Kung, S., Leung, J. G., Rasmussen, K. G., ... Frye, M. A. (2016). Potential risks of poorly monitored ketamine use in depression treatment. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *173*, 215–218.

Schama, K. F., Howell, L. L., & Byrd, L. D. (1998). Prenatal exposure to cocaine. In S. T. Higgins & J. L. Katz (Eds.), *Cocaine abuse: Behavior, pharmacology, and clinical applications* (pp. 159–180). San Diego: Academic Press.

Scheffler, R. M., Brown, T. T., Fulton, R. D., Hinshaw, S. P., Levine, P., & Stone, S. (2009). Positive association between attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder medication use and academic achievement during elementary school. *Pediatrics*, *123*, 1273–1279.

Schifano, F. (2004). A bitter pill. Overview of ecstasy (MDMA, MDA) related fatalities. *Psychopharmacology*, *173*, 242–248.

Schindler, C. W., Thorndike, E. B., Goldberg, S. R., Lehner, K. R., Cozzi, N. V., Brandt, S. D., & Baumann, M. H. (2016). Reinforcing and neurochemical effects of the "bath salts" constituents 3, 4-methylenedioxypyrovalerone (MDPV) and 3, 4-methylenedioxy-N-methylcathinone (methylone) in male rats. *Psychopharmacology*, *233*, 1981–1990.

Schivelbusch, W. (1992). *Taste of paradise*. New York: Pantheon Books.

Schlieffer, H. (1973). *Sacred narcotic plants of the New World Indians*. New York: Hafner Press.

Schmid, Y., Hysek, C. M., Simmler, L. D., Crockett, M. J., Quednow, B. B., & Liechti, M. E. (2014). Differential effects of MDMA and methylphenidate on social cognition. *Journal of Psychopharmacology*, *28*, 847–856.

Schmidt, W., & Popham, R. E. (1978). The single distribution theory of alcohol consumption. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *39*, 400–419.

Schuckit, M. A. (1987). Biology of risk of alcoholism. In H. Y. Meltzer (Ed.), *Psychopharmacology: The third generation of progress* (pp. 1527–1533). New York: Raven Press.

Schuckit, M. A. (1995). *Drug and alcohol abuse: A clinical guide to diagnosis and treatment* (4th ed.). New York: Plenum Press.

Schuckit, M. A. (2000). *Drug and alcohol abuse: A clinical guide to diagnosis and treatment* (5th ed.). New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers.

Schuckit, M. A., Smith, T. L., & Kalmijn, J. (2004). The search for genes contributing to the low level of response to alcohol: Patterns of findings across studies. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *28*, 1449–1458.

Schultes, R. E. (1976). *Hallucinogenic plants*. New York: Golden Press.

Schweinsburg, A. D., Brown, S. A., & Tapert, S. F. (2008). The influence of marijuana use on neurocognitive functioning in adolescents. *Current Drug Abuse Reviews*, *1*, 99–111.

Schweizer, T. A., & Vogel-Sprott, M. (2008). Alcohol-impaired speed and accuracy of cognitive functions: A review of acute tolerance and recovery of cognitive performance. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *16*, 240–250.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Scott, J. M. (1969). *The white poppy: A history of opium*. New York: Funk & Wagnalls.

Seely, K. A., Lapoint, J., Moran, J. H., & Fattore, L. (2012). Spice drugs are more than harmless herbal blends: A review of the pharmacology and toxicology of synthetic cannabinoids. *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry*, *39*, 234–243. doi:10.1016/j.pnpbp.2012.04.0175

Seely, K. A., Prather, P. L., James, L. P., & Moran, J. H. (2011). Marijuana-based drugs: Innovative therapeutics or designer drugs of abuse? *Molecular Interventions*, *11*, 36–50.

Seifert, S. M., Schaechter, J. L., Hershorin, E. R., & Lipshultz, S. E. (2011). Health effects of energy drinks on children, adolescents, and young adults. *Pediatrics*, *127*, 511–528.

Selvaraj, S., Hoshi, R., Bhagwagar, Z., Murthy, N. V., Hinz, R., Cowen, P., ... Grasby, P. (2009). Brain serotonin transporter binding in former users of MDMA (ecstasy). *British Journal of Psychiatry*, *194*, 355–359.

Senate Special Committee on Illegal Drugs. (2002). *Cannabis: Our position for a Canadian public policy*. Ottawa: Senate of Canada.

Sevak, R. J., Stoops, W. W., Hays, L. R., & Rush, C. R. (2009). Discriminative-stimulus and subject-rated effects of methamphetamine, d-amphetamine, methylphenidate and triazolam in methamphetamine trained humans. *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, *328*, 1007–1018.

Sharp, C. W. (1992). Introduction to inhalant abuse. In C. W. Sharp, F. Beauvais, & R. Spence (Eds.), *Inhalant abuse: A volatile research agenda*. Research Monograph 129 (pp. 1–12). Rockville, MD: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Shelton, R. C., Keller, M. B., Gelenberg, A., Dunner, D., Hirschfeld, R., Thase, M. E., ... Halbreich, U. (2001). Effectiveness of St. John's wort in major depression: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *285*, 1978–1986.

Sher, K. J. (1987). Stress response dampening. In H. T. Blane & K. E. Leonard (Eds.), *Psychological theories of drinking and alcoholism* (pp. 227–271). New York: Guilford Press.

Sher, K. J., & Levenson, R. W. (1982). Risk for alcoholism and individual differences in the stress-dampening effect of alcohol. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, *91*, 350–368.

Shetty, V., Harrell, L., Clague, J., Murphy, D. A., Dye, B. A., & Belin, T. R. (2016). Methamphetamine users have increased dental disease: A propensity score analysis. *Journal of Dental Research*, *95*, 814–821.

Shiffman, S. (1993). Smoking cessation treatment: Any progress? *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *61*, 718–722.

Shiffman, S., Gnys, M., Richards, T. J., Paty, J. A., Hickcox, M., & Kassel, J. D. (1996). Temptations to smoke after quitting: A comparison of lapsers and maintainers. *Health Psychology*, *15*, 455–461.

Shulgin, A., & Shulgin, A. (1991). *PiHKAL: A chemical love story*. Berkeley, CA: Transform Press.

Shulgin, A., & Shulgin, A. (1997). *TiHKAL: The continuation*. Berkeley, CA: Transform Press.

Siegel, R. K. (1984). The natural history of hallucinogens. In B. L. Jacobs (Ed.), *Hallucinogens: Neurochemical, behavioral, and clinical perspectives* (pp. 1–19). New York: Raven Press.

Siegel, R. K. (1985). New patterns of cocaine use: Changing doses and routes. In N. J. Kozel & E. H. Adams (Eds.), *Cocaine use in America: Epidemiological and clinical perspectives*. NIDA Research Monograph 61 (pp. 204–220). Rockville, MD: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Siegel, R. K. (1992). *Fire in the brain: Clinical tales of hallucination*. New York: Dutton.

Siegel, S. (2016). The heroin overdose mystery. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, *25*, 375–379.

Sigitova, E., Fišar, Z., Hroudová, J., Cikánková, T., & Raboch, J. (2017). Biological hypotheses and biomarkers of bipolar disorder. Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences, *71*(2), 77–103. doi:10.1111/pcn.12476

Sim-Selley, L. J. (2003). Regulation of cannabinoid CB1 receptors in the central nervous system by chronic cannabinoids. *Critical Reviews in Neurobiology*, *15*, 91–119.

Single, E. (1995). Harm reduction and alcohol. *International Journal of Drug Policy*, *6*, 26–30.

Sivertz, K., & Kostaras, X. (2005). The use of psychotropic medications in pregnancy and lactation. *BC Medical Journal*, *47*, 135–138.

Skirrow, J., & Sawka, E. (1987). Alcohol and drug abuse prevention strategies: An overview. *Contemporary Drug Problems*, *14*, 147–241.

Skog, O. J. (1985). The collectivity of drinking cultures: A theory of the distribution of alcohol consumption. *British Journal of Addiction*, *80*, 83–99.

Smit, H. J., & Rogers, P. J. (2000). Effects of low doses of caffeine on cognitive performance, mood, and thirst in low and higher caffeine consumers. *Psychopharmacology*, *152*, 167–173.

Smith, A. (2002). Effects of caffeine on human behavior. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, *40*, 1243–1255.

Smith, A. P., Christopher, G., & Sutherland, D. (2013). Acute effects of caffeine on attention: A comparison of non-consumers and withdrawn consumers. *Journal of Psychopharmacology*, *27*, 77–83.

Smith, D. E. (1968). Acute and chronic toxicity of marijuana. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *2*, 37–47.

Smith, D. E., & Gay, G. R. (1972). *It's so good, don't even try it once*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.

Smith, N. T. (2002). A review of the published literature into cannabis withdrawal symptoms in human users. *Addiction*, *97*, 621–632.

Smith, P. (2004). The influence of St. John's wort on the pharmacokinetics of protein binding of imatinib mesylate. *Pharmacotherapy*, *24*, 1508–1514.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Smith, T. C., Cooperman, L. H., & Wollman, H. (1980). The therapeutic gases. In A. G. Gilman, L. S. Goodman, & A. Gilman (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (6th ed., pp. 321–338). London: Macmillan.

Snel, J., Tieges, Z., & Lorist, M. M. (2004). Effects of cocaine on sleep and wakefulness: An update. In A. Nehlig (Ed.), *Coffee, tea, chocolate, and the brain* (pp. 13–33). Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Snyder, S. H. (1989). *Brainstorming: The science and politics of opiate research.* Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.

Snyder, S. H., Burt, D. R., & Creese, I. (1976). Dopamine receptor of mammalian brain: Direct demonstration of binding to agonist and antagonist states. *Neuroscience Symposia*, *1*, 28–49.

Snyder, S. H., & Largent, B. L. (1989). Receptor mechanisms in antipsychotic drug action: Focus on sigma receptors. *Journal of Neuropsychiatry*, *1*, 7–15.

Snyder, S. H., & Sklar, P. (1984). Behavioral and molecular actions of caffeine: Focus on adenosine. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, *18*, 91–106.

Sobczak, J. A. (2009). Alcohol use and sexual function in women: A literature review. *Journal of Addictions Nursing*, *20*, 71–85.

Sobell, L. C., Klingemann, H. K.-H., Toneatto, T., Sobell, M. B., Agrawal, S., & Leo, G. I. (2001). Alcohol and drug abusers' perceived reasons for self-change in Canada and Switzerland: Computer-assisted content analysis. *Substance Use and Misuse*, *36*, 1467–1500.

Sobell, L. C., Sobell, M. B., Toneatto, T., & Leo, G. I. (1993). What triggers the resolution of alcohol problems without treatment? *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *17*, 217–224.

Sobell, M. B., & Sobell, L. C. (1981). *Alcohol abuse curriculum guide for psychology faculty.* Rockville, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

Sobell, M. B., & Sobell, L. C. (1993). *Problem drinkers: Guided self-change treatment.* New York: Guilford Press.

Sobell, M. B., & Sobell, L. C. (2000). Stepped care as a heuristic approach to the treatment of alcohol problems. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *68*, 573–579.

Sokolow, L., Welte, J., Hynes, G., & Lyons, J. (1981). Multiple substance use by alcoholics. *British Journal of Addiction*, *76*, 147–158.

Soliman, F., Glatt, C. E., Bath, K. G., Levita, L., Jones, R. M., Pattwell, S. S., ... Casey, B. J. (2010). A genetic variant BDNF polymorphism alters extinction learning in both mouse and human. *Science*, *327*, 863–865.

Solomon, D. (Ed.). (1966). *The marijuana papers.* New York: Bobbs-Merrill.

Solomon, R. (1980). The opponent process theory of acquired motivation: The costs of pleasure and the benefits of pain. *American Psychologist*, *35*, 691–712.

Solomon, R. L., & Corbit, J. D. (1974). An opponent-process theory of motivation: I. Temporal dynamics of affect. *Psychological Review*, *81*, 119–145.

Solowij, N. (1998). *Cannabis and cognitive functioning.* Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press.

Sommers, I., Baskin, D., & Baskin-Sommers, A. (2006). Methamphetamine use among young adults: Health and social consequences. *Addictive Behaviors*, *31*, 1469–1476.

Sorer, H. (1992). *Acute cocaine intoxication: Current methods of treatment.* Research Monograph 123. Washington, DC: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

Spector, I. (1985). AMP: A new form of marijuana. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, *46*, 498–499.

Spiegel, R., & Aebi, H. (1983). *Psychopharmacology.* New York: John Wiley.

Spillane, J. F. (2000). *Cocaine: From medical marvel to modern menace in the United States, 1884–1920.* Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins Press.

Spinella, M. (2001). *The psychopharmacology of herbal medicine.* Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Spitzer, R. L., Gibbon, M., Skodol, A. E., Williams, J. B. W., & First, M. B. (2002). *DSM-IV-TR casebook.* Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.

Spitzer, R. L., Skodol, A. E., Gibbon, M., & Williams, J. B. W. (1981). *DSM–III case book.* Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.

Spoth, R., Redmond, C., Mason, W. A., Schainker, L., & Bouduin, L. (2015). Research on the Strengthening Families Program for parents and youth ages 10-14: Long-term effects, mechanisms, translation to public health, prosper partnership scale up. In L. M. Scheier (Ed.), *Handbook of adolescent drug use prevention: Research, intervention strategies, and practice* (pp. 267–292). Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association.

Spoth, R. L., Randall, G. K., Trudeau, L., Shin, C., & Redmond, C. (2008). Substance use outcomes 5½ years past baseline for partnership-based family–school preventive interventions. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *96*, 57–68.

Spring, B., Howe, D., Berendsen, M., McFadden, H. G., Hitchcock, K., Rademaker, A. W., & Hitsman, B. (2010). Behavioral intervention to promote smoking cessation and prevent weight gain: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Addiction*, *104*, 1472–1486.

Squires, R. F., & Braestrup, C. (1977). Benzodiazepine receptors in rat brain. *Nature*, *266*, 732–734.

Stanford History of Education Group. (2016). *Evaluating information: The cornerstone of civic online reasoning.* Palo Alto, CA: Author.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Stead, L. F., Perra, R., Bullen, C., Mant, D., Hartmann-Boyce, J., Cahill, K., & Lancaster, T. (2012). Nicotine replacement therapy for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, *11*, Article No. CD000146.

Steenland, K., Thun, M., Lally, C., & Heath, C., Jr. (1996). Environmental tobacco smoke and coronary heart disease in the American Cancer Society CPS-II cohort. *Circulation*, *94*, 622–628.

Steffan, M., Kuhle, C., Hensrud, D., Erwin, P. J., & Murad, M. H. (2012). The effect of coffee consumption on blood pressure and the development of hypertension: A systematic review and meta-analyses. *Journal of Hypertension*, *30*, 2245–2254.

Steptoe, A., & Wardle, J. (1999). Mood and drinking: A naturalistic diary study of alcohol, coffee, and tea. *Psychopharmacology*, *141*, 315–321.

Sternbach, L. H. (1983). The discovery of CNS active 1,4-benzodiazepines. In E. Costa (Ed.), *The benzodiazepines: From molecular biology to clinical practice* (pp. 1–6). New York: Raven Press.

Stevens, J. (1987). *Storming heaven: LSD and the American dream*. New York: Atlantic Monthly Press.

Stewart, G. C. (1967). A history of the medical use of tobacco. *Medical History*, *11*, 228–268.

Stewart, O. C. (1987). *Peyote religion: A history*. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.

Stock, S. H. (1986). Synthetic drugs: A history of ups and downs—Part 2. *PharmChem Newsletter*, *15–4*, 1–6.

Stoeber, M., Jullié, D., Lobingier, B. T., Laeremans, T., Steyaert, J., Schiller, P. W., Manglik, A., & von Zastrow, M. (2018). A genetically encoded biosensor reveals location bias of opioid drug action. Neuron, 98(5), 963–976. e5.https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuron.2018.04.021

Stogner, J. M., & Miller, B. L. (2015). Assessing the dangers of dabbing: Mere marijuana or harmful new trend? *Pediatrics*, *136*, 1–3.

Strassman, R. (2000). *DMT: The spirit molecule: A doctor's revolutionary research into the biology of near-death and mystical experiences*. South Paris, ME: Park Street Press.

Strassman, R. (2005). Hallucinogens. In M. Earlywine (Ed.), *Mind-altering drugs: The science of subjective experience* (pp. 49–85). Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

Streatfeild, D. (2001). *Cocaine: An unauthorized biography*. New York: St. Martins Press.

Stuart, R. B. (1974). Teaching facts about drugs: Pushing or preventing. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, *66*, 189–201.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2013). *Drug Abuse Warning Network, 2010: National estimates of drug-related emergency department visits*. Rockville, MD: Author.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). (2016b). *Report shows cocaine use in young adults up in 16 states*. https://www.samhsa.gov/newsroom/press-announcements/201612200930. April 22, 2017.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). (2016a). *Results from the 2015 National Survey on Drug Use and Health*. Rockville, MD: Author.

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). (2018). *National Survey 2018*. https://www.samhsa.gov

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). (2019). *National Survey 2019*. https://www.samhsa.gov

Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). (2020). *National Survey 2020*. https://www.samhsa.gov

Sugiura, T., Kondo, S., Kishimoto, S., Miyashita, T., Nakan, S., Kodaka, T., ... Waku, K. (2000). Evidence that 2-arachidonoylglycerol but no N-palmitoylethanolamine or anandamide is the physiological ligand for the cannabinoid CB2 receptor. Comparison of the agonistic activities of various cannabinoid receptor ligands in HL-60 cells. *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, *275*, 605–612.

Sullivan, E. V., Rosenbloom, M. J., & Pfefferbaum, A. (2000). Pattern of motor and cognitive deficits in detoxified alcoholic men. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *24*, 611–621.

Sussman, S., Stacy, A. W., Dent, C. W., Simon, T. R., & Johnson, C. A. (1996). Marijuana use: Current issues and new research directions. *Journal of Drug Issues*, *26*, 695–733.

Suter, P. M., Schutz, Y., & Jequier, E. (1992). The effect of ethanol on fat storage in healthy subjects. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *326*, 983–987.

Suzuki, J., & El-Haddad, S. (2017). A review: Fentanyl and non-pharmaceutical fentanyls. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *171*, 107–116.

Swift, R., & Leggio, L. (2009). Adjunctive pharmacotherapies in the treatment of alcohol and drug dependence. In P. M. Miller (Ed.), *Evidence-based addiction treatment* (pp. 287–310). Boston: Elsevier.

Syed, I. B. (1976). The effects of caffeine. *Journal of the American Pharmaceutical Association*, *16*, 568–572.

Tagliazucchi, E., Roseman, L., Kaelen, M., Orban, C., Muthukumaraswamy, S. D., Murphy, K., ... Carhart-Harris, R. (2016). Increased global functional connectivity correlates with LSD-induced ego dissolution. *Current Biology*, *26*, 1043–1050.

Tancer, M., & Johanson, C. (2003). Reinforcing, subjective, and physiological effects of MDMA in humans: A comparison with d-amphetamine and mCPP. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *72*, 33–44.

Taylor, P. (2001). Anticholinesterase agents. In J. G. Hamilton & L. E. Limbird (Eds.), *Goodman & Gilman's The pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (10th ed., pp. 175–192). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Temple, J. L. (2009). Caffeine use in children: What we know, what we have left to learn, and why we should worry. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, *33*, 793–806.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Temple, J. L., Ziegler, A. M., Graczyk, A., Bendlin, B. S., Sion, B. S., & Vattana, B. S. (2014). Cardiovascular responses to caffeine by gender and pubertal stage. *Pediatrics*, *134*, e112–119.

The Alcoholism Report. (1993). Drug czar calls for treatment of drug addicted criminals. *The Alcoholism Report*, *21*, 6–7.

Thomas, G., Gonneau, G., Poole, N., & Cook, J. (2014). The effectiveness of alcohol warning labels in the prevention of Fetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorder: A brief review. *International Journal of Alcohol and Drug Research*, *3*, 91–103.

Thomas, K. (2012, December 4). Generic drug makers see a drought ahead. *The New York Times*, pp. B1, B7.

Thombs, D., Rossheim, M., Barnett, T. E., Weiler, R. M., Moorhouse, M. D., & Coleman, B. N. (2011). Is there a misplaced focus on AmED? Associations between caffeine mixers and bar patron intoxication. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *116*, 31–36.

Thompson, H. S. (1971). *Fear and loathing in Las Vegas*. New York: Random House.

Thomson, L. M., Vanderberg, B., & Fitzgerald, J. L. (2012). An exploratory study of drinkers views of health information and warning labels on alcohol containers. *Drug and Alcohol Review*, *31*, 240–247.

Ticku, M. K., Burch, T. P., & Davis, W. C. (1983). The interactions of ethanol with the benzodiazepine-GABA receptor-ionophore complex. *Pharmacology, Biochemistry, and Behavior*, *18*, 15–18.

Tiffany, S. T. (1990). A cognitive model of drug urges and drug use behavior: Role of automatic and nonautomatic processes. *Psychological Review*, *97*, 147–168.

Tiffany, S. T. (1992). A critique of contemporary urge and craving research: Methodological, psychometric, and theoretical issues. *Advances in Behavior Research and Therapy*, *14*, 123–139.

Tilashalski, K., Rodu, B., & Cole, P. (2005). Seven-year follow-up of smoking cessation with smokeless tobacco. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *37*, 105–108.

Thun, M. J., Carter, B. D., Feskanich, D., Freedman, N. D., Prentice, R., Lopez, A. D., ... Gapstur, S. M. (2013). 50-Year trends in smoking-related mortality in the United States. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *368*, 351–364.

Tobler, N. S. (1986). Meta-analysis of 143 adolescent drug prevention programs: Quantitative outcome results of program participants compared to a control or comparison group. *Journal of Drug Issues*, *16*, 537–567.

Todd, M. (2004). Daily processes in stress and smoking: Effects of negative events, nicotine dependence, and gender. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, *18*, 31–39.

Tokuda, K., Izumi, Y., & Zorumski, C. F. (2011). Ethanol enhances neurosteroidogenesis in hippocampal pyramidal neurons by paradoxical NMDA receptor activation. *Journal of Neuroscience*, *31*, 9905–9909.

Tolman, S. A. (2005). The Oxycontin epidemic. *The Boston Globe*, June 30.

Tolstrup, J., Jensen, M. K., Tjanneland, A., Overvad, K., Mukamel, M. J., & Granbaak, M. (2006). Prospective study of alcohol drinking and coronary heart disease in women and men. *British Medical Journal*, *332*, 1244–1248.

Trimpey, J. (1992). *Rational recovery from alcoholism* (4th ed.). New York: Delacorte Press.

Tsai, V. W., Anderson, C. L., & Vaca, F. E. (2010). Alcohol involvement among young female drivers in U.S. fatal crashes: Unfavorable trends. *Injury Prevention*, *16*, 17–20.

Tuchfeld, B. (1981). Spontaneous remission in alcoholics: Empirical observation and theoretical implications. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *42*, 626–641.

Tunnicliff, G., Eison, A., & Taylor, D. (1991). *Buspirone: Mechanisms and clinical aspects*. Orlando, FL: Academic Press.

Tyler, L. (2000). *Understanding alternative medicine: New health paths in America*. New York: Haworth Herbal Press.

Tyrer, P. J. (Ed.). (1982). *Drugs in psychiatric practice*. London: Butterworths.

Tyrer, S., & Shaw, D. M. (1982). Lithium carbonate. In P. J. Tyrer (Ed.), *Drugs in psychiatric practice*. London: Butterworths.

Uhl, G. R., Liu, Q-R., Drgon, T., Johnson, C., Walther, D., Rose, J. E., ... Lerman, C. (2008). Molecular genetics of successful smoking cessation. *Archives of General psychiatry*, *65*, 683–693.

Ulbricht, C., Conquer, J., D'Auria, D., Isaac, R., Lynch, M., Rusie, E., ... Windsor, R. C. (2012). Caffeine clinical bottom line: An evidence-based systematic review by the Natural Standard Research Collaboration. *Alternative and Complementary Therapies*, *18*, 324–328.

Ullrich, S., de Vries, Y. C., Kuhn, S., Repantis, D., Dreslet, M., & Ohla, K. (2015). Feeling smart: Effects of caffeine and glucose on cognition, mood and self-judgment. *Physiology and Behavior*, *151*, 629-637.

United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime. (2003). *Terminology and information on drugs*. New York: The United Nations.

United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime. (2015). *World drug report: 2015*. Vienna: United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (USDHHS). (1987a). *Alcohol and health*. Rockville, MD: Author.

USDHHS. (1987b). *Smoking, tobacco, and health. A fact book*. Rockville, MD: U.S. Public Health Service.

USDHHS. (1989). *Reducing the health consequences of smoking: 25 Years of progress*. Rockville, MD: U.S. Public Health Service.

USDHHS. (1990). *Alcohol and health*. Rockville, MD: Author.

USDHHS. (2001). *Women and smoking: A report to the Surgeon General*. Rockville, MD: Author.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

USDHHS. (2008). *Treating tobacco use and dependence: 2008 update*. Rockville, MD: Author.

USDHHS. (2016). *Facing addiction in America: The Surgeon General's report on alcohol, drugs, and health*. Washington, DC: Author.

U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (USNHTSA). (1997). *Setting limits, saving lives. The case for .08 BAC laws*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Transportation.

University of California–Irvine Transdisciplinary Tobacco Use Research Center (UCI TTURC). (2005). *Closing the gap on youth tobacco use*. Irvine, CA: Author.

Urgert, R., Meyboom, S., Kuilman, M., Rexwinkel, H., Vissers, M. N., Klerk, M., ... Katan, M. B. (1996). Comparison of effect of cafetiere and filtered coffee on serum concentrations of liver aminotransferases and lipids: A six-month randomized controlled trial. *British Medical Journal*, *313*, 1362–1366.

Uttal, W. R. (2001). *The new phrenology*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Valenstein, E. S. (2005). *The war of the soups and the sparks: The discovery of neurotransmitters and the dispute over how nerves communicate*. New York: Columbia University Press.

Van Amsterdam, J. G. C., van der Laan, J. W., & Slangen, J. L. (1996). *Residual effects of prolonged heavy cannabis use*. National Institute of Public Health and the Environment, Report No. 318902003. Bilthoven, the Netherlands.

van Dam, R. M. (2008). Coffee consumption and risk of type 2 diabetes, cardiovascular diseases, and cancer. *Applied Physiology, Nutrition, and Metabolism*, *33*, 1269–1283.

van Laar, M., van Dorsselaer, S., Monshouwer, K., & de Graaf, R. (2007). Does cannabis use predict the first incidence of mood and anxiety disorders in the adult population? *Addiction*, *102*, 1251–1260.

Vegting, Y., Reneman, L., & Booij, J. (2016). The effects of ecstasy on neurotransmitter systems: A review on the findings of molecular imaging studies. *Psychopharmacology*, *233*, 3473–3501.

Verster, J. C., Benjaminsen, J. M., van Lanen, J. H., van Stavel, N. M., & Olivier, B. (2015). Effects of mixing alcohol with energy drink on objective and subjective intoxication: Results from a Dutch on-premise study. *Psychopharmacology*, *232*, 835–842.

Viscusi, W. K. (1992). *Smoking: Making the risky decision*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Vocci, F. J., Acri, J., & Elkashef, A. (2005). Medication development for addictive disorders: The state of the science. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, *162*, 1432–1440.

Vogel-Sprott, M. (1992). *Alcohol tolerance and social drinking: Learning the consequences*. New York: Guilford Press.

Vogel-Sprott, M., & Fillmore, M. T. (1999). Expectancy and behavioral effects of socially used drugs. In I. Kirsch (Ed.), *How expectancies shape experience* (pp. 215–232). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Volpicelli, J. R., Alterman, A. I., Hayashida, M., & O'Brien, C. P. (1992). Naltrexone in the treatment of alcohol dependence. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *49*, 876–880.

Vuchinich, R. E., & Tucker, J. A. (1988). Contributions from behavioral theories of choice to an analysis of alcohol abuse. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, *97*, 181–195.

Wagenaar, A. C., & Toomey, T. L. (2002). Effects of minimum drinking age laws: Review and analyses of the literature from 1960 to 2000. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol, (Suppl. 14)*, 206–225.

Walker, D. J., & Zacny, J. P. (2005). Subjective effects of nitrous oxide. In M. Earlywine (Ed.), *Mind-altering drugs: The science of subjective experience* (pp. 305–337). Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

Walsh, B. T., Seidman, S. N., Sysko, R., & Gould, M. (2002). Placebo response in studies of major depression: Variable, substantial, and growing. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *287*, 1840–1847.

Walsh, D. C., Hingson, R. W., Merrigan, D. M., Levenson, S. M., Cupples, A., Heeren, T., ... Kelly, C. A. (1991). A randomized trial of treatment options for alcohol abusing workers. *New England Journal of Medicine*, *325*, 775–782.

Walters, P. G. (1992). FDA's new drug evaluation process: A general overview. *Journal of Public Health and Dentistry*, *52*, 333–337.

Wang, P. S., Berglund, P., Olfson, M., Pincus, H. A., Wells, K. B., & Kessler, R. C. (2005). Failure and delay in initial treatment contact after first onset of mental disorders in the national comorbidity survey replication. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *62*, 603–613.

Wang, P. S., Lane, M., Olfson, M., Pincus, H. A., Wells, K. B., & Kessler, R. C. (2005). Twelve-month use of mental health services in the United States. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *62*, 629–640.

Wang, Y. (2012). Extracting knowledge from failed development programs. *Pharmaceutical Medicine*, *26*, 91–96.

Wansink, B., & van Ittersum, K. (2005). Shape of glass and amount of alcohol poured: Comparative study of effect of practice and concentration. *British Medical Journal*, *331*, 1512–1514.

Ward, A. S., Haney, M., Fischman, M. W., & Foltin, R. W. (1997). Binge cocaine self-administration in humans: Intravenous cocaine. *Psychopharmacology*, *132*, 375–381.

Wardle, M. C., & de Wit, H. (2012). Effects of amphetamine on reactivity to emotional stimuli. *Psychopharmacology*, *220*, 143–153.

Wardle, M. C., Kirkpatrick, M. G., & de Wit, H. (2014). "Ecstasy"as a social drug: MDMA preferentially affects responses to emotional stimuli with social content. *Social Cognitive and Affective Neuroscience*, *9*, 1076–1081.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Warner, J. (1997). Shifting categories of the social harms associated with alcohol: Examples from late medieval and early modern England. *American Journal of Public Health*, *87*, 1788–1797.

Warner, K. E., Slade, J., & Sweanor, L. L. B. (1997). The emerging market for long-term nicotine maintenance. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *278*, 1087–1092.

Wasson, R. G. (1979). Fly agaric and man. In D. H. Efron, B. Holmstedt, & N. S. Kline (Eds.), *Ethnopharmacologic search for psychoactive drugs* (pp. 505–514). New York: Raven Press.

Webb, G., Shakeshaft, A., Sanson-Fisher, R., & Havard, A. (2009). A systematic review of work-place interventions for alcohol-related problems. *Addiction*, *104*, 365–377.

Wechsler, H., Nelson, T. F., Lee, J. E., Seibring, M., Lewis, C., & Keeling, R. P. (2003). Perception and reality: A national evaluation of social norms marketing interventions to reduce college students' heavy alcohol use. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *64*, 484–494.

Weil, A., & Rosen, W. (1983). *From chocolate to morphine*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin.

Weiner, M., Sarantopoulos, C., & Gordon, E. (2012). Transdermal buprenorphine controls central neuropathic pain. *Journal of Opioid Management*, *8*, 414–415.

Weiss, K. J., & Greenfield, D. P. (1986). Prescription drug abuse. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America*, *9*, 475–490.

Weiss, R. D., & Mirin, S. M. (1987). *Cocaine*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.

Welte, J. W., & Barnes, G. M. (1985). Alcohol: The gateway to other drug use among secondary-school students. *Journal of Youth and Adolescence*, *14*, 487–498.

West, R. J., & Russell, M. A. H. (1985). Nicotine pharmacology and smoking dependence. In S. D. Iverson (Ed.), *Psychopharmacology: Recent advances and future prospects* (pp. 303–314). Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

West, S. L., & O'Neal, K. K. (2004). Project D.A.R.E. outcome effectiveness revisited. *American Journal of Public Health*, *94*, 1027–1029.

Wetter, D. W., Kenford, S. L., Welsch, S. K., Smith, S. S., Fouladi, R. T., Fiori, M. C., ... Baker, T. B. (2004). Prevalence and predictors of transitions in smoking behavior among college students. *Health Psychology*, *23*, 168–177.

Weyandt, L. L., Marraccini, M. E., Gudmundsdottir, B. G., Zavras, B. M., Turcotte, K. D., Munro, B. A., & Amoroso, A. J. (2013). Misuse of prescription stimulants among college students: A review of the literature and implications for morphological and cognitive effects on brain functioning. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *21*, 385.

Whitaker, B. (1987). *The global connection: The crisis of drug addiction*. London: Jonathan Cade.

White, J. M. (1991). *Drug dependence*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.

Whitehead, P. C. (1975). Prevention of alcoholism: Divergences and convergences of two approaches. *Addictive Diseases*, *7*, 431–443.

Wiegand, T., Thai, D., & Benowitz, N. (2008). Medical consequences of the use of hallucinogens: LSD, mescaline, PCP and MDMA (ecstasy). In J. Brick (Ed.), *Handbook of the medical consequences of alcohol and drug abuse* (2nd ed., pp. 461–490). New York: Haworth Press.

Wilens, T. E., Faraone, S. V., Biederman, J., & Gunawardene, S. (2003). Does stimulant therapy of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder beget later substance abuse? A meta-analytic review of the literature. *Pediatrics*, *111*, 179–185.

Wilhelmus, M. M. M., Hay, J. L., Zuiker, R. G. J. A., Okkerse, P., Perdrieu, C., Sauser, J., ... Siber, B. Y. (2017). Effects of a single, oral 60 mg caffeine dose on attention in healthy adult subjects. *Journal of Psychopharmacology*, *31*, 222–232.

Wilkinson, J. (1986). *Tobacco: The facts behind the smoke screen*. Middlesex, England: Penguin Books.

Wilkinson, R. (1970). *The prevention of drinking problems: Alcohol control and cultural influences*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Williams, N. (1996). How the ancient Egyptians brewed beer. *Science*, *273*, 432.

Wilson, M. D., Ferguson, R. W., Mazer, M. E., & Litovitz, T. L. (2011). Monitoring trends in dextromethorphan abuse using the National Poison Data System: 2000–2010. *Clinical Toxicology*, *49*, 409–415.

Windle, M., Barnes, G. M., & Welte, J. (1989). Causal models of adolescent substance use: An examination of gender differences using distribution-free estimators. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, *56*, 132–142.

Winickoff, J. P., Friebely, J., Tanski, S. E., Sherrod, C., Matt, G. E., Hovell, M. F., & McMillen, R. C. (2009). Beliefs about the health effects of "third hand" smoke and home smoking bans. *Pediatrics*, *123*, e74–e79.

Winkelmayer, W. C., Stampfer, M. J., Willett, W. C., & Curhan, G. C. (2005). Habitual caffeine intake and the risk of hypertension in women. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *294*, 2330–2335.

Wise, R. A. (1988). The neurobiology of craving: Implications for the understanding and treatment of addiction. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, *97*, 118–132.

Witkiewitz, K., & Marlatt, G. A. (2004). Relapse prevention for alcohol and drugs: That was Zen, this is Tao. *American Psychologist*, *59*, 224–235.

Wolfe, T. (1969). *The electric Kool-Aid acid test*. New York: Bantam Books.

Woloshin, S., Schwartz, L. M., & Welch, H. G. (2002). Risk charts: Putting cancer in context. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, *94*, 799–804.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Women for Sobriety. (April 1985). *Sobering thoughts.* Quakertown, PA: Author.

Wood, K. E. (2013). Exposure to bath salts and synthetic tetrahydrocannabinol from 2009 to 2012 in the United States. *Journal of Pediatrics.*

Woods, J. H., & Winger, G. (1997). Abuse liability of flunitrazepam. *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *17*(Suppl. 2), 1–57.

Woodward, B. (1984). *Wired: The short life and fast times of John Belushi.* New York: Pocket Books.

Workshop on the Medical Utility of Marijuana. (1997). *Report to the Director, National Institutes of Health, by the Ad Hoc Group of Experts.* Washington, DC: National Institutes of Health.

World Health Organization (WHO). (1981). Nomenclature and classification of drugs and alcohol-related problems: A WHO memorandum. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, *59*, 225–242.

WHO. (1999). Press releases 1999. *Cigars and pipes as lethal as cigarettes, says new European study.* Geneva, Switzerland: Author.

Wray, L. A., Herzog, A. R., Willis, R. J., & Wallace, R. B. (1998). The impact of education and heart attack on smoking cessation among middle-aged adults. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, *39*, 271–294.

Wu, L., Pilowsky, D. J., & Patkar, A. A. (2008). Non-prescribed use of pain relievers among adolescents in the United States. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, *94*, 1–11.

Xiao, Q., Sinha, R., Graubard, B. I., & Freedman, N. D. (2014). Inverse associations of total and decaffeinated coffee with liver enzyme levels in National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey 1999–2010. *Hepatology*, *60*, 2091–2098.

Yang, S. (2005). Researchers find that passive smoking kills as many women as active smoking in China. Retrieved October 2005, from www.berkeley.edu/news/media/releases/2005/09/04_smoking.shtml

Yesalis, C. E., Bahrke, M. S., Kopstein, A. M., & Barsukiewicz, C. K. (2000). Incidence of anabolic steroid use: A discussion of methodological issues. In C. E. Yesalis (Ed.), *Anabolic steroids in sport and exercise* (2nd ed., pp. 73–116). Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics Press.

Young, A. M., & Herling, S. (1986). Drugs as reinforcers: Studies in laboratory animals. In S. R. Goldberg & I. Stolerman (Eds.), *Behavioral analysis of drug dependence* (pp. 9–68). Orlando, FL: Academic Press.

Young, A. M., McCabe, S. E., & Boyd, C. J. (2007). Adolescents' sexual inferences about girls who consume alcohol. *Psychology of Women Quarterly*, *31*, 229–240.

Young, C. R. (1997). Sertraline treatment of hallucinogen persisting perception disorder. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, *58*, 85.

Young, T., Lawson, G. W., & Gacono, C. B. (1987). Clinical aspects of phencyclidine (PCP). *The International Journal of the Addictions*, *22*, 1–15.

Zacny, J. P. (1995). A review of the effects of opioids on psychomotor and cognitive functioning in humans. *Experimental and Clinical Psychopharmacology*, *3*, 432–466.

Zador, P. L. (1991). Alcohol-related relative risk of fatal driver injuries in relation to driver age and sex. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, *52*, 302–310.

Zhdanova, I. V., & Friedman, L. (2002). Melatonin for sleep disorders. In D. Mischoulon & J. F. Rosenbaum (Eds.), *Natural medications for psychiatric disorders* (pp. 147–171). Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

Zhou, H. H., & Liu, Z. Q. (2000). Ethnic differences in drug metabolism. Clinical Chemistry and Laboratory Medicine, 38(9), 899–903. doi:10.1515/CCLM.2000.131

Zimmer, L., & Morgan, J. P. (1997). *Marijuana myths, marijuana facts.* New York: Lindesmith Center.

Zinberg, N. E. (1984). *Drug, set, and setting.* New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

Zubieta, J. K., Bueller, J. A., Jackson, L. R., Scott, D. J., Xu, Y., Koeppe, R. A., ... Stohler, C. S. (2005). Placebo effects mediated by endogenous opioid activity on μ-opioid receptors. *Journal of Neuroscience*, *25*, 7754–7762.

Zubieta, J. K., & Stohler, C. S. (2009). Neurobiological mechanisms of placebo responses. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, *1156*, 198–210.

Zucker, R. A., Kincaid, S. B., Fitzgerald, H. E., & Bingham, R. C. (1996). Alcohol schema acquisition in preschoolers: Differences between children of alcoholics and children of nonalcoholics. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, *19*, 1011–1017.

Zuckerman, B., Frank, D. A., & Mayes, L. (2002). Cocaine-exposed infants and developmental outcomes. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *287*, 1990–1991.

Zuckerman, M. (1979). *Sensation seeking: Beyond the optimal level of arousal.* New York: John Wiley.

Zule, W. A., Poulton, W. E., Coomes, C. M., Mansergh, G., Charania, M., & Jones, W. E. (2012). Results of a pilot study to reduce methamphetamine use and sexual risk behaviors among methamphetamine-using men who have sex with men not currently in treatment. *Journal of Psychoactive Drugs*, *44*, 351–358.

Zusy, A. (1987, July 15). For smokers, ways to quit are many, but the goal is elusive. *The New York Times*, pp. C1, C10.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

INDEX

Note: A page number followed by a "b" indicates a box; an "f" indicates a figure; and a "t" indicates a table. Photographs are indicated by page numbers in italic type.

Aaron, Hank, 395b
Abd-al-Kadir, 192
Abel, Ernest, *Marihuana: The First Twelve Thousand Years,* 287
Abilify, 356t, 359, 382
Abrams, D. B., 180
Absorbed, defined, 76
Absorption
  alcohol, 84, 84t, 227
  amphetamines, 84t
  aspirin, 84
  caffeine, 199
  defined, 82
  drug, 82–85
  LSD, 84t
  marijuana, 298
  MDMA, 84t
  nicotine, 84t, 168
  opiates, 272
  PCP, 84t
  THC, 298
Abstinence, as treatment goal, 426–427
Abstinence syndrome, 19. *See also* Withdrawal
Acamprosate, 431t, 437
Acceptable drinking, 463
Acetaldehyde, 230, 255b, 430
Acetaminophen, 400, 410
  defined, 400
Acetylcholine (ACH), 57, 58t, 59–60
  defined, 57
  effects of, 167–168
Acetylsalicylic acid, defined, 399
Action potential, 52–53, 55
  defined, 52
Acupuncture, 274, *274*
Acute effects, 148–150
  alcohol, 233–243
  behavioral, 149
  caffeine, 201–207
  cocaine and, 147f
  high doses, 150
  low and moderate doses, 148–149
  nicotine, 171–173
  opium, 277–278
  physiological, 148–149
  See also Toxicity
Acute tolerance, 110, 113
  defined, 110
Adderall, 136t, 153
Addiction, 16, 107
  defined, 16
  heroin, 17b
  opiate, 443
  opioid, 38
Addictive behavior, 19
Addictive personality, 107
  defined, 107
Adenosine, 198
  blockade of, 201, 211
  cyclic monophosphate (AMP), 55
  hypothesis, 198
ADHD. *See* Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)
Adler, I., 296b
Administration. *See* Routes of drug administration
Adulteration
  in drug testing, 88
  heroin and, 265–266
  street drugs, 193
Adult neurogenesis and depression, 62b
Advertising, *135*
  alcohol, 226b
  Allen's Cocaine Tablets, 135
  anti-drug campaigns, 464
  beer manufacturers, 226b
  cannabis, 300b
  to children and teenagers, 470, 472–473
  Coca-Cola, 135
  energy drinks, 204b
  "Just Say No," 461
  kava, 404–405
  prescription drugs, 204b
  tobacco industry, 44, 166, 172, 177, 178b, *181,* 184
Advil, 400
Affect-oriented prevention programs, 473–474
Afghanistan, *266,* 266b
African Americans, 13b, 44, 97b, 142, 270
Aftercare, defined, 430
Age
  alcohol, 113b, 223t, 224b, 237–238, 467b
  antidepressants, 360
  caffeine consumption, 196, *199*
  drinking, 224b, 467b
  drug use, 119
  energy drinks, 204b
  illicit drugs, 10t
  marijuana use, 294
  neurogenesis, 62b
  polysubstance abusers, 445–446
  reaction to drugs, 105
  smokeless tobacco, 166t
  smoking, 164t, 179
Aggression, 67, 68
  alcohol and, 108, 233, 239–241, 257
  drug use and, 17b
  hypothalamus, 66f, 67
  limbic system, 68
  marijuana and, 291, 310, 311
  nicotine, 165
  prevention programs, 468t–469t
  steroids, 397
Agitated depression, 355, 384
  defined, 355
Agonists, 58, 58t
  defined, 58
  opiates and, 276b
Agranulocytosis, 358–359
AIDS
  condoms, 392b
  drug treatments, 126b, 440b
  intravenous drug use, 460
  marijuana and, 303
  needle sharing and, 80b
Akinesia, defined, 357
Al-Anon, 418
Alateen, 418
Alcohol, 10t
  and crime, 17
  range of elimination and detection times, 88t
  in the United States, 8–15
Alcohol abuse, 10t, 15
  biopsychosocial approaches to etiology, 254–255
  brain and, 65–66, 246–247
  crime and, 239
  development of, 252–255
  DSM criteria, 18, 247
  factors, 4, 224, 252–255
  prevalence, 221
  traditional approaches to etiology, 252–254
  See also Drug abuse
Alcohol hepatitis, 257
Alcoholic beverages, 216–257
  absorption, 227
  acute effects, 233–243
  administration routes, 84t
  age of use and, 113b, 223t, 224b, 237–238, 467b
  aggression and, 239–241
  alcohol content, 217–218
  behavior, 239–243
  binge drinking, 12
  brain functioning, 246–247
  caffeine and, 202–206
  chronic use effects, 243–252
  college students, 224–226
  content, 218t
  dependence, 232
  and depression, 235
  distribution in body, 227–230
  and driving ability, 236–239
  fermentation and distillation, 28–29, 216–217
  fetal alcohol syndrome, 14, 248–250
  French paradox, 251–252
  hangovers, 235b
  heavy use, 221–226
  history of use, 28–29, 219–221
  interactions with, 202–206
  in Japan, 255b
  liver damage, 247–248, *248*
  major types of, 218t
  manufacture of, 218t
  mechanism of action, 226
  metabolism and excretion, 230–231
  moderate drinking, 250–252
  negative consequences, 221, 224, 226b, 234, 255b
  neurotransmitters and, 63
  overview, 216, 256–257
  per capita consumption, 222–223
  pharmacokinetics, 227–231
  pharmacology, 226–231
  physiological effects, 233–236
  prevalence of use, 221, 223t
  Prohibition, 221, 250, 256
  psychological effects, 239
  Red Bull and, 205b
  reproductive functioning, 248
  "safe" consumption level, 249
  self-reports, 245b
  sensorimotor effects, 236
  servers, 478b
  sex and, 241–243
  sites of action, 226
  social impact, 219–221
  therapeutic uses, 232–233
  tolerance, 231–232
  types of, 218t, 222
  United States, 8–15, 222–223
  use disorder, development of, 252–255
  warning labels on, 473b
  See also Alcohol abuse; Alcohol treatment; Drug use
Alcoholics Anonymous (AA), 253b, 418–421
Alcoholism, 253, 253b
Alcohol-sensitizing drugs, 430, 431, 454
Alcohol treatment, 428–437
  accessibility, 423, 426, 436, 451, 452
  brief interventions, 434b
  economic factors, 450–452
  effectiveness, 431–432
  nonmedical, 435t
  nonpharmacological, 432–433

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Alcohol treatment (*continued*)
patient matching, 425, 428, 433
pharmacological, 430–431
self-help groups, 433–436
settings and services, 428–430
special populations, 443b
Alcohol use disorder, 105, 246, 252–255, 253b, 418–420, 431t, 435t, 478t
Aleve, 400
Ali, Muhammad, *62*
Alkaloids, 192
Allen, J. P., 439
Allen's Cocaine Tablets, 135
Allergy medications, 401
Allison, M., 438
Alpert, Richard, 325
Alprazolam, 63, 368t, 376t, 378, 380
Alternative behaviors, as prevention strategy, 474–475
Alzado, Lyle, 397
Alzheimer's disease, 60, *60,* 209, 404
defined, 60
Ambien
classification, 43t
as depressant drug, 367t
insomnia and, 380
treatment use, 380
American Academy of Pediatrics, 253b
American Chiropractic Association, 253b
American Civil War, 220
American College Health Association, 253b
American College of Emergency Physicians, 237
American Dental Association, 253b
American disease model, of substance abuse, 422, 423
American Hospital Association, 253b
American Medical Association, 126, 237, 253b
American Psychiatric Association (APA), 15, 201, 301, 433
American Society of Addiction Medicine, 453
Amethyst Initiative, 467b
Amino acid neurotransmitters, 63
Amobarbital, 367t, 370
Amotivational syndrome, 311, 312, 313
defined, 311
AMP, 312b
Amphetamines, 31, 41, 136–137
administration routes, 84t
agonists and antagonists, 58t
classification, 6
history of use, 136–137
names for, 136t
See also Methamphetamine; Stimulants
Amyl nitrite, 408
Anabolic Steroid Control Act (1990), 394
Anabolic steroids, 393–398
background, 393–396
BALCO, 395b
classification, 43t
clinical uses, 394
defined, 393
mechanism of action, 396
prevalence of use, 394
side effects, 396–398
types of, 396t
Analgesia, 263, 274
withdrawal, 278t
Analgesics, 399–401
classification, 399t
over-the-counter, 399–401
Analogue Enforcement Act (1986), 34b, 42, 46
Anandamide, 58t, 63, 299
defined, 63
Anderson, T. L., 80
Androstenedione, 396
Anesthesia, 271, 319, 367, 370, 371. *See also* General anesthesia; Pediatric anesthesia; Surgical anesthesia
Angel dust. *See* Phencyclidine (PCP)
Animal studies, 119–120, 124
Annis, H. M., 447t
Annis, J., 430, 431
Anorectic effects, 148
defined, 148
Anslinger, Harry J., 39, 290–291
Antabuse, 430, 431t
Antagonism
defined, 97
drugs and, 97
Antagonists, 58, 58t
defined, 58
Antagonist therapy, 444
Anterograde amnesia, defined, 379
Anthonisen, N. R., 181
Anthony, Susan B., *221*
Antianxiety agents, 367–380
background, 367
barbiturates, 370–372
benzodiazepines, 375–380
depressant drugs and, 367t, 368f, 379b
early history, 369
nonbenzodiazepine treatment, 380
potentiation, 379b
quaaludes and other nonbarbiturate sedatives, 372–373
representative, 367t
roofies, 378b
Anticholinergic drugs, 59
Anticholinergic hallucinogens, 319, 340–341
defined, 319
Antidepressants, 360–366
case example, 360–361
cyclic, 362, 363t
dosage, 368f
effectiveness, 362, 366
herbs, 366, 366b
MAOIs, 362–365
overview, 360–361
placebo effects, 365b
representative, 363t, 367t
side effects, 364–365, 366
Anti-Doping Agency, 395b
Antidote, 268b
Anti-Drug Abuse Acts (1986, 1988), 37f, 41, 142
Antihistamines, 235, 401, 411
defined, 401
Antipsychotics, 354–359
case study, 355–357
representative types, 356t
Antipunishment effects, 376
Anti-Saloon League, 38
Antitussives, defined, 401
Anxiety, 373–375
case example, 373–374
Anxiolytic, 367, 375
defined, 367
Apothecary, 289
Areca, 403, 410
Argentina, 141b, 197t
Aripiprazole, 356t, 359, 382
Armor, D. J., 428
"As a function of," defined, 91
Ashley, R., 138
Asian flushing response, 255b
Aspartic acid, agonists and antagonists, 58t
Aspirin, 194t, 399–401
Assassin of Youth (film), 466
Assessment, in substance abuse treatment, 425–427
Atharva Veda, 287
Ativan
antianxiety agent, 368t
classification, 43t
half-life, 376t
toxicology, 371f
Atropine, 340, 344
agonists and antagonists, 58t
auto-injections, 340
defined, 340
source of, 319
Attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 153–156
adults diagnosed with, 155–156
controversy over, 154–155
defined, 111
side effects of medication, 154–155
stimulants and, 153–156
tolerance to drugs and, 111
Atypical antidepressants, 362
Augustine, St., 426
Australia, 197t, 204b, 335, 475
Australian Aborigines, *465*
Auto-injections, 340
Autonomic nervous system (ANS), 64, 64f
defined, 64
sympathetic branch of, 64
Avoirdupois, defined, 38
Axons, 52, 65
defined, 52
Axon terminals, 53–54, 56
defined, 53
Ayahuasca, 320t, 322
DMT and, 324b
AZT, 126b
Aztec people, 321–322, 321b

Bacon, Seldon, 450
Bakker, C. B.
Balanced placebo design, 243b
BALCO, 395, 395b
Banisteriopsis caapi, 322
Barbiturates, 6, 17b, 370–372
administration routes, 84t
agonists and antagonists, 58t
chemical structure, 6, 370
defined, 367
dependence, 371–372
effects of, 370
history of, 370–371
lethal dose, 372
medical use, 371
range of elimination and detection times, 88t
as sedative-hypnotic drug, 371
street names, 6
suicide, 372
Baroness Wootton Report (1972), 291
Basal ganglia, 68–69
defined, 68
Bateman, Benson, 475
Bath salts, as drugs, 34t, 43t, 46, 144–145
defined, 32, 144
history of use, 144–145
Bayer Company, 399
Bayer laboratories, 370
Beatles, 325
Bechler, Steve, 404
Becker, C. E., 218
Becker, H. S., 109, 308
Beer, 28, 38, 91–92, 217, 218t
acid, 219
-bashes, 240
-belly, 234
effects of, 229f
manufacturers, 226
See also Alcoholic beverages; College students
Beer industry, 226b
Beer pong, 226b
Behavioral effects, 149
alcohol, 239–243
caffeine, 201–202
marijuana, 308–309
stimulants, 149

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Behavioral pharmacology, 114–118
conflict paradigm, 118
defined, 114
drug discrimination, 117–118
ethical issues, 120
human, 120–122
operant principles, 116–117
overview, 114–115
placebo controls, 120–122
reinforcement and punishment, 115–116
treatment programs, 187, 414, 437, 447t
Behavioral programs, for smoking cessation, 181–182
Behavioral Self-Control Program for Windows (BSCPWIN), 429
Behavioral tolerance, 110, 113
defined, 110
Belgium, 13
Belladonna, 319
Belushi, John, 151
Benzedrine, 41, 43t, 136
classification, 43t
Benzodiazepines, 235, 375–380
abuse and dependence, 378, 379
administration routes, 84t
adverse effects, 375–380
defined, 375
kinetic classification, 376t
mechanism of action, 375
other uses, 376–377
range of elimination and detection times, 88t
tolerance, 375, 377
Bernard, Claude, 91
Beta-blockers, 97b
defined, 64
Betel nuts, 403
Bicuculline, agonists and antagonists, 58t
Big Book, 420
"Biker" drug, 143
Billboards, 472, *472*
B. inebrians, 322
Binge drinking, 12, 224
Bioavailability, 82, 86, 89–90
defined, 82
Biological model, of substance abuse, 422, 423, 424t, 450
Biology. *See* Brain; Nervous system; Neurotransmitters
alcohol dependence, 231–232
alcohol pharmacotherapy, 226–231
depression, 61, 62b
smoking initiation, 165–166
Biopsychosocial models, 254–255, 424
Biphasic drug effects, 93f
Bipolar disorder, 381, 385, 446
Birney's Catarrh Powder, 135
Birth control drugs, 390–393
Birth control methods, 391t, 392b
Blackout, 234, 380
defined, 234
Blocking agents, 57
Blood alcohol concentration (BAC), 228, *230*
alcohol, 229f
defined, 228
Blood-brain barrier, 85, 199, 227, 272–273, 327
defined, 61
Blunts, 295
Body weight
alcohol and, 228, 229f
caffeine and, 196, 211
drugs and, 105
MDMA and, 338
nicotine and, 172, 186
smoking and, 172
Bolivia, 132, *133,* 322
Bonds, Barry, 395b
Bongs, 295
"Boozah," 219
Boston State Hospital, 359b
Botox, 59
Botulinum toxin, 59
Botvin, Gilbert, 475b
Bradley, Charles, 153
Brain, 66f
alcohol and, 65–66, 246–247
cross-section, 66f
dorsal view of, 66f
drug craving and, 71b
forebrain, 65, 67–69
hindbrain, 65–66
imaging, 69–71
midbrain, 65, 66f, 66–67
MRI image of, *70*
sagittal (inside) view of, 66f
Brand name, 125–126
defined, 125
Brandon, T. H., 108
Braun, Ryan, 395b
Brazil, 197t, 322, 324b, 348
Breath analysis, *230*
Brecher, E. M., 38–39, 290, 372, 376
Brief Alcohol Screening and Intervention for College Students (BASICS), 479
Brief interventions, 434b
British Medicines and Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency, 365
Brody, A. L., 176
Bromide salts, 374
Brown, Lee, 416
Brown, Rita Mae, 107
Browning, Elizabeth Barrett, 264
Bruce, Lenny, 12
Buprenorphine, 276b, 439t, 441, 443
Bupropion, 183, 362, 363t
Bureau of Narcotics and Dangerous Drugs, 39. *See also* Drug Enforcement Administration
Burma, 266b
Burroughs, William S., 78, 80, 277, 278
BuSpar, 118, 368t, 380
Buspirone, 368t, 380
Butisol, classification, 43t
Byron, Lord, 106

Cachexia, 301
Cade, John, 350, 381
Caffeine, 191–211
absorption, 199
acute effects, 201–207
administration routes, 84t
alcohol and, 202–206
behavioral/psychological effects, 201–202
children and, 198b
chronic use effects, 207–209
cognitive skills, *206*
concentrations, 194t, 204b
dependence, 200–201
distribution in body, 199
energy drinks, 204b–205b
global use of, 205b
history of use, 29, 194–195
interactions with, 202–206
mechanism of action, 198
metabolism and excretion, 199
motor skills, *206*
nicotine and, 202–206
overview, 192, 211
pharmacokinetics, 199
pharmacology, 198–199
prevalence of use, 195–198
protective effects, 210
sites of action, 198
sources, 192–194
therapeutic uses, 210
tolerance, 200
toxicity, 206–207
withdrawal, 200–201
Caffeinism, 206–207, 211
Caldwell, A. E., 350
Cali Cartel, 140
Caminiti, Ken, 394, 395
Canada, 197t, 228, 292, 439
Cannabinoid receptors, 299–300
Cannabinoids, 297
defined, 297
designer, 300b
fetus and, 307
Cannabis clubs, 303
Cannabis: Our Position for a Canadian Public Policy (Senate Special Committee on Illegal Drugs), 292
Cannabis sativa, 29–30, 313
cultivation in the U.S., 286
defined, 28
See also Marijuana
Canseco, Jose, 395
Cappell, H., 109
Carbamazepine, 382, 384
Carbimide, 430, 431
Carbon monoxide, 175–176
Carcinogens, 179
Cardiovascular health, 251
Cardiovascular system, 306
Carfentanyl, 271
Carlin, A. S., 109
Carlin, George, 87
Carnegie, Andrew, 221
Carrig, David, 179
Carroll, K. M., 448
Cataplexy, 407
Catecholamine, 362, 363, 385
CAT scan, 70, *70*
Causal relationships, defined, 119
C'de Baca, Janet, 417
Celexa, 363t, 365
Cell adaptation theory, of drug tolerance, 111–112
Center for Lawful Access and Abuse Deterrence, 155
Center on Addiction and Substance Abuse, Columbia University, 296b
Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), 140
Central nervous system (CNS), 64, 64f
defined, 64
stimulants and, 6, 172t
Cerebellum, 65–66, 66f
defined, 65
diagram of, 66f
Cerebral cortex, 66f, 68–69
Cesamet, 302
Characterological anxiety, 373
Charpentier, Paul, 350
Chaucer, Geoffrey, 242
Chein, Isidor, 14
Chemical dependence treatment, defined, 451
Chemical Diversion and Trafficking Act (1988), 37f, 42
Chemical name, 125
Chen, T. T. L., 471
Cheracol, with codeine, 43t
Chesterton, Lord, 14
Chewing tobacco, 81, *161*
absorption, 168
administration routes, 84t
health and, 178
metabolism and excretion, 169
smokeless, 161
sources of, 161
sublingual, 81, 83t
Children
ADHD and, 153, 155
advertising, 470
antidepressants and suicide risk, 360, 364–365
caffeine, 198b, *199*
cocaine babies, 154b
drinking, 224b
drug sensitivity, 105
energy drinks, 204b

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Children (*continued*)
fetal alcohol syndrome, 248–250
marijuana exposure, 307
parental behavior, 471–472
parents who smoke and, 179
China, 13, 28, 29, 175b, 195, 219, 263, 287
Chloral hydrate, 367t, 370
classification, 43t
Chlordiazepoxide, 86, 367, 368t, 375
Chloroform, 35, 370
Chlorpheniramine maleate, 401
Chlorpromazine
agonists and antagonists, 58t
drug era, 350–351
pre-, drug era, 349–350
Cholesterol
alcohol and, 250
anabolic steroids, 397
caffeine and, 208
treatment for, 366
Chronic use, of drugs, 150–152
alcohol, 243–252
caffeine use, 207–209
dependence, 152
opiates, 278–281
tobacco use, 173–179
tolerance, 151–152
See also Acute effects
Cicero, T. J., 111, 277
Cigarette smoking. *See* Smoking
Cigar smoking, 175, 177, 178b, 184
Cirrhosis, 248
Clapton, Eric, 267
Claritin, 399, 401
Classical conditioning, 112, 114, 152, 435t
Classification. *See* Drug classification
Clients
AA, 433–436
BALCO and, 395b
depression, 61
heroin dependence, 443
methadone maintenance, 277
progress monitoring, 453
self-help groups, 417–422
substance abuse, 341
therapeutic community (TC), 438
Clinger, O.W., 31
Clinical trials, 123–124, 123t
Clonazepam, 368t, 382
Clozapine, 356t, 358
Club drugs, 33b, 143
Cobain, Kurt, 378b
Coca-Cola, 135
Cocaine, 10t, 37, 38, 41, 43t, 44–46, 132
accidental deaths due to, 96
addiction to, 137–142
administration routes, 80, 84t
age and, 10t
agonists and antagonists, 58t
babies exposed in utero to, 154b
classification, 43t
coca leaf, 141b
crack, 138
crime and, 17b
criminal penalties, 296b
early use of, 134–135
elimination, 88t
epidemic II, 137–142
freebase, 81
history of use, 28–31, 35, 134–135
mood effects, 147f
names for, 136t
and other drugs, 151b
overdose symptoms, 134
pharmacokinetics, 146
range of elimination and detection times, 88t
routes of administration, 84t
second epidemic, 137–142
in Stone Age, 28
as tonic in 1800s, *135*
types of, and their routes of administration, 138t
See also Stimulants
Coca leaf, 132–134, *133, 140*
administration routes of, 138t
Incas and, 132–133
in Latin America, 141b
Coca paste, administration routes of, 138t
Cocoa, 196, 210t
Codeine, 43t
classification, 6, 43t
major opiate comparison, 275t
Coffee, 29, 193t, *196*, 197t, 209b. *See also* Caffeine
Cognitive function
alcohol and, 246–247, 251
cigarette smoking and, 183
marijuana and, 309–310
MDMA (Ecstasy) and, 339
opiates and, 277
Cohen, S., 28
Cold medications, 401
Coleridge, Samuel, 264
College students
consequences of drinking, 478t
drinking among, 224–226, 467b, 478t
drug use, 155
hookahs, 164
prevention programs, 477–480
smoking, 165
Colombia, 140, 141b, 322
Colonial America, 219
Columbia, 13
Columbus, 29, 161
Combat Methamphetamine Epidemic Act (2006), 143
Combination pill, 391–392
defined, 391
Comer, S. D., 151–152
Community Mental Health Centers Act (1963), 40
Community reinforcement approach, 450
Comorbidity, 352
Compensatory reactions, 112–113
Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act (1970), 40. *See also* Controlled Substances Act (1970)
Comprehensive Methamphetamine Control Act, 37f, 42, 143
Computerized axial tomography (CT), 70
defined, 70
Concerta, 136t, 153, 155
Concorde study, 126b
Confabulation, 247
Confessions of an English Opium-Eate (De Quincey), 264
Conflict paradigm, 118
defined, 118
Connolly, Harold, 394
Conte, Victor, 395b
Contemporary issues
adult neurogenesis, 62b
AIDS, 80b
alcohol consumption self-reports, 245b
alcohol use disorder, 253b
Amethyst Initiative, 467b
AMP, 312b
antidepressants, 365
balanced placebo design, 243b
BALCO, 395b
bath salts, 34b
birth control, 392b
brain, 71b
brief interventions, for alcohol problems, 434b
caffeine and children, 198b
club drugs, 33b
cocaine and other drugs, 151b
DARE prevention program, 475b
depressant drugs and potentiation, 379b
designer cannabis, 300b
drinking age, 467b
drinking by the young/old, 224b
drinking games and advertising, 226b
drug approval, 126b
drug craving, 71b
drug discoveries, 126b
drugs and aggression, 17b
drugs and crime, 17b
drug testing, 45b
drug treatment expansion, 440b
DUI laws, 113b
energy drinks, 204b–205b
hangovers, 235b
harm reduction, 185b
herbs as depression treatment, 366b
heroin in Afghanistan, 266b
Internet pharmacies, 374b
intravenous drug use, 80b
LSD effects, 328b
marijuana and embalming fluid, 312b
marijuana as gateway to other drugs, 296b
marijuana, legalization, 296b
medicinal marijuana, 296b
methamphetamine and health, 144b
naloxene, 268b
needle sharing and AIDS, 80b
nicotine dependence and harm reduction, 185b
nonmedical use of prescription drugs, 12b
opiates, 276b
rapid pace of approval for SARS-CoV-2 therapeutics, 122b
roofies, 378b
sedative abuse, 378b
server interventions, 478b
smoking health risks and responsibility, 178b
sports and drugs, 395b
substance use disorder treatment, 449b
survey data accuracy, 11b
synthetic hallucinogens, 335b
synthetic marijuana, 34b
telehealth, 449b
tolerance and DUI Laws, 113b
treatment research and clinical practice, 444b
U.S. drug use, 9b, 11b
warning labels on alcoholic beverages, 473b
war on drugs, 44b
Contingency contracting, 445
Continuous birth control pills, 391
Contraceptive methods, 391t
Contraceptive patch, 391t, 392
Control (research), defined, 76
Control groups, 120–121
defined, 120
Controlled stimulants, 132, 136t
Controlled substances
classification, 42t, 43t
current drug laws and, 40–42, 46
schedules of, 42t
Controlled Substances Act (1970), 37f, 40–41, 46, 291, 353, 374b
Controlled Substances Analogue Enforcement Act (1986), 34, 34b, 42
Cook, Timothy, 422
Corbit, John, 112
Correlated vulnerabilities theory, 296b
Cortex, 66
cerebral, 68–69
defined, 68

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

diagram, 66f
frontal, 68
occipital, 69
prefrontal, 69
Cosadein, classification, 43t
Cost-effectiveness, 442
Cost-of-illness studies, 14, 15, 174
Counseling, defined, 428
Couples treatment, 429
Crack, 138–139, 138t, 154b
administration routes of, 138t
babies, 154b
defined, 138
Crack babies, 154b
Crack house, 142
Crank bugs, 137
Craving,71b, 182–183
defined, 17
Crime
beginning of drug crime, 265
drugs and, 17b
heroin and, 17b
opiates and, 265
Criminal penalties
cocaine, 31, 44
illegal drug manufacturing, 46
legislation of, 9, 31, 36, 39–40
marijuana, 39, 290, 291, 296b
Cross tolerance, 111, 232, 327, 375, 377
defined, 111
Cue exposure, 445, 448
Culture
African Americans, drug effects, 13b, 97b
alcohol in Japan, 255b
coca leaf in Latin America, 141b
coffee, 209b
crack babies, 154b
DMT, 324b
drug use, 13b, 97b
ecstasy, 337b
hashish, 28, 288b
khat, 155b
LSD effects, 331b
peyote, 321b
pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, 97b
prescription hallucinogens, 328b
"rave," 32
refusal of psychotherapeutic medications, 359b
smoking overseas, 175b
special populations and alcohol/drug treatment, 443b
stimulant from Africa, 155b
Cyclic antidepressants, 362, 363t

Dabbing, 2952–96
Dackis, C. A., 68
Dali, Salvador, 7
Dalmane
classification, 43t, 376t
representative agent, 368t, 376t
DARE. *See* Drug Abuse Resistance Education (DARE)
Darvocet, classification, 43t
Darvon
caffeine concentration in, 194t
classification, 43t
Dass, Baba Ram, 325
Date rape drugs, 42, 374b, 378b, 407, 478t
Datura, 340
Davy, Humphry, 369
Daytrana, 153, 155
Deadly nightshade, 340, 344
Death, by overdose, 137, 138, 139, 150
Degenhardt, L., 13–14
Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), 403
de Jerez, Rodrigo, 29
Delaney, H. D., 429
Delirium tremens (DTs), 371, 386
DeLong, F. L., 309
Delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), 297, 298, 299
defined, 297
Demerol
classification, 43t
as major opiate, 275t
Dendrites, 52, 53–54, 53f
defined, 52
Deniker, P., 350, 351
Denmark, 196, 197t, 251
Depakote, 382
Department of Veterans Affairs, 253b
Department of Veterans Affairs Health Care System, 453–454
Dependence
alcohol, 232
barbiturates, 371–372
caffeine, 200–201
chronic use and, 152
drug, 16, 116–117
marijuana, 300–301
nicotine, 170–171, 185b
operant principles and, 116–117
opiates, 262, 280–281, 439
psychological, 16–17
stimulants, 152
See also Withdrawal
Depressant drugs, 367t, 368f, 370, 375
effects of, 385
potentiation, 379b
See also Antianxiety agents
Depression
adult neurogenesis and, 62b, 364
agitated depression, 355, 384
antidepressants, 62b, 360–366
biological factors, 61, 364, 382
case example, 360–361
herb treatments, 366b
overview, 62b
See also Mood
De Quincey, Thomas, *The Confessions of an English Opium-Eate,* 264
Designer drugs, 32, 42, 272
bath salts, 34b, 144
cannabis, 300b
ecstasy, 334
heroin, 267, 275t, 278
law enforcement agencies and recreational, 34b
steroids, 394, 395b
synthetic, 34b
Detection times, 88t
Detoxification, 280, 428, 430, 438, 442t, 443, 454
Development of new drugs. *See* New drug development
Dexedrine, 43t
DHEA. *See* Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA)
Diagnostic and Statistical Manual-III (DSM-III), 247
Diagnostic and Statistical Manual- IV (DSM-IV), 357, 361, 374, 381, 426
Diagnostic and Statistical Manual-5 (DSM-5), 15–19, 232
criteria for substance use disorder, 18t
Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 201
Diagnostic systems, 15
Diazepam, 41, 125, 367, 368t, 375. *See also* Valium
Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act (1994), 402
Dietary supplements, 402–408
Diffusibility, defined, 85
Dilaudid, 12
classification, 43t
major opiate, 275t
Dilution, in drug testing, 88
Dimethyltryptamine (DMT), 322
classification, 43t
history of use, 322
pharmacokinetics, 327
serotonergic hallucinogen, 320t, 322
source of, 320t, 322
spirit(ual) molecule, 324b
Diphenhydramine, 399, 401, 402, 410
Diprivan, 367t, 371f
Disease(s)
alcohol dependence an, 253b
defined, 253b
smoking-related, 176–177
Disease model, of substance abuse, 422, 423, 450
Disinhibition theory, 106, 241
Dispensatory, 302
Dispositional tolerance, 110, 111
defined, 110
Dissociative anesthetics, 342
defined, 319
effects of, 342
Dissolved, defined, 79
Distillation, 216–217
Distribution, in body
alcohol, 227–230
caffeine, 199
defined, 76
drugs, 85–89
marijuana, 298
nicotine, 168–169
opiates, 272–273
Distribution of consumption model, 464–465
Disulfiram, defined, 430
Divided-attention tasks, 237
DMT, 322, 324b
history of use, 322
pharmacokinetics, 327
source of, 320t, 322
spirit(ual) molecule, 324b
DMT: The Spirit(ual) Molecule (film), 324b
Doctor shopping, 12b
DOM, 333–334, 333t
Dopamine, 57–58, 58t, 60–61, 67–68
agonists and antagonists, 58t
deficiency, 61
defined, 61
L-dopa, 61
Dopaminergic pathway, 311
defined, 68
mesolimbic, 68
Doriden, 372
classification, 43t
Dosage. *See* Drug dosage
Dose-effect curve, 91–94, 92f, 93f, 95f
for a biphasic drug effect, 93f
efficacy, 94
potency, 94
prototype, 91, 92f
sexual arousal and, 93f
for a single drug, 92f
slope, 94
variations of, 92–93
Double-blind method, 121, 378, 397
Downers, 7
Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan, 135
Dram shop laws, 478b, 482
Dreser, Heinrich, 264
The Drinker's Dictionary (Franklin), 219–220
Drinking games, 226b
Driving ability, alcohol's influence on, 236–239
Driving under the influence (DUI), 113b
Dronabinol, 302

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Drug abuse, 4
crime and, 17b
defined, 5
detection of, 88t
DSM criteria, 17–18, 18t
elimination of, 88t
illicit, 5, 9b, 10, 14
negative effects of, 14
overview, 4
prevention principles, 468–470
resources for, 25
in the U.S., 9b
Drug Abuse and Drug Abuse Research (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services), 292
Drug Abuse Control Amendment of 1965, 40
Drug Abuse Resistance Education (DARE), 474, 475b, *476*
Drug Abuse Treatment Outcome Study (DATOS), 441
Drug Abuse Warning Network (DAWN), 353
Drug action, neurochemical mechanisms, 57t
Drug administration. *See* Routes of drug administration
Drug approval, 126b
Drug classification, 6–7
antianxiety agents, 367–380
antidepressants, 360–366
antipsychotics, 354–359
by chemical structure, 6
by mechanism of action, 6
mood-stabilizing drugs, 380–382
nonbenzodiazepine treatment, 380
by origin, 6
psychoactive effects of, 52, 54, 70
by site of drug action, 6
street names, 6–7
by therapeutic use, 6
Drug craving and brain, 71b
Drug dependence, 16, 152
operant principles and, 116–117
Drug discoveries, *124,* 125, 126b. *See also* New drug development
Drug discrimination, 117–118
Drug discrimination studies, 117–118
defined, 117
Drug distribution, 85–89
Drug dosage, defined, 7
Drug effects, 6–7, 52, 56, 57t
defined, 6
dosage and, *77*
dose-effect curve for a biphasic, 93f
qualitative, 99
neurochemical mechanisms, 57t
Drug elimination
alcohol, 88t
barbiturates, 88t
benzodiazepines, 88t
caffeine, 198b
cocaine, 88t
lithium, 382
marijuana, 88t
nicotine, 169
opiates, 88t
overview, 86
psychoactive, 86
Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA), 37f, 39, 42
drug products, 43t
establishment, 37f
stimulants and, 140
Drug expectancy, 107–108
beliefs and, 107–108
defined, 107
Drug experience, 7, 76–77, 90f, 114
Drug holidays, 154, 358
Drug interactions, 96–99
alcohol, 96–99, 202–206
caffeine, 96, 99, 202–206
cultural factors and, 97b
diminishing, 97
enhancement of, 96–97
importance of, 97–99
nicotine, 202–206
overview, 96
Drug laws
and alcohol prohibition, 38–39
current, 40–46
development of, 35–40
Harrison Narcotics Tax Act, 37–38
post-prohibition legislation, 39–40
Pure Food and Drug Act, 36–37
San Francisco Ordinance, 36
Drug misuse, 5
Drug Policy Alliance, 30
Drug potency, 94, 94f
defined, 94
illustrated, 94f
sexual arousal and, 93f
See also specific drugs
Drug products, 43t
Drugs
aggression and, 17b
criminal activity and, 17b
defined, 5
neurochemical mechanisms of drug action, 57t
subcultures, 6
Drugs and culture. *See* Culture
Drug testing, 45b, 87–89, *89*
defined, 87
detection of common drugs, 88t
false-positives, 88
at home, 45b
major methods of, 87–89
marketing and, 123t
overview, 87
at school, 45b
as social concern, 88–89
steps, 87–88
validity of, 87
in workplace, 45b
Drug use, *8,* 17b
by age, 10t
aggression, 17b
and criminal activity, 17b
defined, 5, 18
by ethnicity/race, 164t
factors in, 7, 13b
harmful, 15–20
historical overview, 28–35
international comparisons, 12–14
medical science and, 34–35
multiple, 11–12
national household survey, 11
negative consequences, 14
nonmedical use, 28, 30, 35
nonmedical use of prescribed drugs, 12b
patterns, 8–9, 12
sequence of, 12
street names, 6–7
subcultures and, 6
survey data, accuracy of, 11b
tragic consequences of, *16*
in United States, 8–15, 9b, 29–34
U.S. society and, 9b
See also Alcohol use; Drug abuse
DSM-III Casebook, 246–247
Dual-diagnosis patients, 446
DuPont, R. L., 471
Dyskinesia, defined, 357

E-cigarette, 166, *167,* 185b
Economic factors, in alcohol and drug treatment, 450–452
Ecstasy. *See* MDMA (Ecstasy)
Edgerton, R. B., 107
Edison, Thomas, 135
Education, prevention through, 471–473
Effective dose (ED)
defined, 95
illustrated, 95f
Effexor, 363t, 365
Efficacy
defined, 94
dose-effect curve and, 94, 94f
Egypt, 197t, 219, 263, 287
Eighteenth Amendment, 38, 290, 314
Elderly
drinking, 224b
misuse of prescription drugs, 353
Electroencephalography (EEG), defined, 70
Electronic cigarettes (e-cigarette), 166, *167,* 185b
Electroshock therapy, 350
Elimination. *See* Drug elimination
Ellis, Albert, 421
Embalming fluid, 312b
Emergency contraception, 393
Emotional effects of marijuana use, 310–311
Emphysema, 174f, 177
defined, 177
Employee assistance program (EAP), 451, 477
Emrick, C. D., 417–418, 432
Endogenous, defined, 360
Endogenous morphine, 62, 274
Endorphins, 56, 58t, 62, 63
agonists and antagonists, 58t
defined, 62, 63
discovery of, 273–274
functions of, 274–275
Energy drinks, 204b–205b
England, 28–29, 126b, 217, 228, 338, 349
Ennett, S. T., 475b
Environmental Protection Agency, 178
Enzyme breakdown, defined, 57
Ephedra, 404
Ephedrine, 143, 404
Epidemiology
marijuana use, 292–295
MDMA, 334–335
mental illness, 351–354
Equanil, 368t, 372
classification, 43t
Erickson, Pat, 470
Ernst, E., 235
Escobar, Pablo, 140
Estrogen, 391, 392, 410
defined, 391
Ethanol. *See* Alcohol
Ethchlorvynol, 367t, 372
Ether, 35, 139, 369, 370f, 385
Ethics, in human behavioral pharmacology, 120
Ethiopia, 29, *155,* 155b, 195
Ethnicity
alcohol use and, 10t, 223t
illicit drugs and, 10t
and smoking, 164t
Euenas, 241
Eugene, Rudy, 145
Europe
alcoholic beverages, 29, 219, *220*
bath salts, 144–145
caffeine consumption, 28–29, 195, 209b
cannabis sativa, 29, 288
cocaine, 28, 134–135
coca use, 133
designer cannabis, 300b
drug laws, 46
GHB, 407
hashish, 28
narcotic drug abuse, 29
opiate use, 34–35, 262
Rohypnol, 33b

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

tea, 29
tobacco use, 29, 175b
valerian, 406–407
Excitatory receptors, 55
Excretion
marijuana, 298
opiates, 272–273
See also Drug elimination
Exogenous, defined, 360
Expectancy effects, 108
Extended-cycle pills, 391
Extinction, 113
Extinction phase, 152
Extrapyramidal, 357, 358
defined, 357

Fair Sentencing Act (2010), 37f, 44, 142
Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act (2009), 43
Fast receptors, 54
Fatty liver, 247, 257
FDA. *See* Food and Drug Administration (FDA)
Federal Bureau of Narcotics, 290. *See also* Drug Enforcement Administration
Federal Cigarette Labeling and Advertising Act (1965), 178b
Federal Trade Commission (FTC), 176
Feedback, defined, 76
Fentanyl, 271–272, 275t
Ferguson, Craig, 96
Fergusson, D. M., 296b
Fermentation, 216–217
defined, 28
Fetal alcohol syndrome, 14, 248–250
Fields, W. C., 227
Fillmore, M. T., 108, 251
Finland, 196, 197t, 228
First Opium War, 29
First-pass effects, 82, 86
First Report of the National Commission on Marihuana and Drug Abuse (1972), 291–292
Flashbacks, 332, 344
defined, 332
Flay, B. R., 474
Fleischl-Marxow, Ernst von, 134
Fleming, M. F., 434b
Flunitrazepam, 33b, 378, 378b
classification, 43t
representative, 368t
Fluoxetine, 183, 363t
Fly agaric mushroom, 340
Food and Drug Administration (FDA)
classifications, 398–399
clinical trials and approval, 123–124, 123t
and Covid-19 drugs, 122b
and generic drugs, 125–126
guidelines, 123
over-the-counter drugs classification, 398
pharmacotherapies for alcohol treatment, 431t
pharmacotherapies for opioid treatment, 439t
Ford, Henry, 221
Forebrain, 65, 67–69
defined, 65
limbic system, basal ganglia, and cerebral cortex, 68–69
neural basis of reward, 67–68
thalamus and hypothalamus, 66f, 67
Formaldehyde, 312b
Formication syndrome, 134
defined, 134
Fox, Michael J., *62*
France, 13, 28, 126b, 175b, 197t
cannabis and, 287
French paradox, 251–252
Kava, 405
mental illness and, 349–350
world's pharmaceutical sales and, 348–349
Frankfurt Resolution (1990), 46
Franklin, Benjamin, 202, 219–220
Frary, C. D., 196
Freebase, 81, 138
French paradox, 251–252
Freud, Sigmund, 134
Functional MRI (fMRI), 70–71, 71b
Functional tolerance, 110, 111
defined, 110

GABA, 58t, 407
agonists and antagonists, 58t
defined, 63
GABA/benzodiazepine receptor complex, 226, 375, 380
Gabitril, 382
Gage, Phineas, 69–70
Galen (Greek physician), 263
Gamblers Anonymous, 418
Gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), 33b, 407–408
classification, 43t
Gascoigne, Paul, 423
Gateway theory, 296b
Gautier, Théophile, 287, 288b, *289*
Gender
alcohol use and, 223t
blood alcohol concentration, 228
body weight and, 105
drug use differences, 13b
drinking and driving, 236–239
illicit drug use, 10t
reaction to drugs, 7, 105
smokeless tobacco, 166t
smoking, 164
tobacco use, 164t
General anesthesia, 367, 385
defined, 367
effects per dose, 368f
history of use, 341
lethal dose, 372
Generalizability, 119
defined, 119
Generally recognized as effective (GRAE), 398, 403
Generally recognized as safe (GRAS), 398, 403
Generic drugs, 125–126, *126*
Generic name, 125
defined, 125
Germany, 13, 197t, 348, 349, 366b, 405
GHB, 33b, 43t, 407–408
Giambi, Jason, 395b
Ginkgo biloba, 404
Ginkgo tree, 404
Gin Lane, 219, *220*
Glaucoma, 301, 303
"Global Burden of Disease" project, 13
Glutamate, 58t, 63, 359
defined, 63
Glutethimide, 372
Goals, in substance abuse treatment, 425–427
Gold, M. S., 68
Goldman, 12
Gordon, Barbara, 377
I'm Dancing as Fast as I Can, 377
Gold, M. S., 62b
Governors Highway Safety Association, 467b
G protein, 55, 56f
Graham, D. M., 210t
Graham, Trevor, 395b
Grain, defined, 12
Grant, Cary, 325
Grant, Ulysses, 135
Grateful Dead, 325
Grayouts, 234
Great Britain, 29, 263, 287, 292, 365, 480b
Griffiths, R. R., 329, 378
Group A carcinogens, 179
Group design, 121
defined, 121
Group (community) level attitudes, 4
Guaifenesin, defined, 401

Hague Convention (1912), 37
Halcion, 368t, 377, 380
classification, 43t
half-life, 376t
Half-life, 376t
defined, 86
importance of, 86
Halfway houses, 428
Hall, W. D., 296b
Hallucinogens, 64, 318–344
anticholinergic hallucinogens, 59, 340–341
dissociative anesthetic hallucinogens, 341–343
methylated amphetamines, 333–339
overview, 318–319
serotonergic hallucinogens, 320–332
types, 320t, 321b, 323b, 328b, 331b, 333t, 334b, 337b
Halpern, L., 332
Halsted, William, 149, 264
Hangovers, *116,* 117, *235,* 235b
Harm reduction, 185b, 427, 480b
Harper, Charles, 179
Harrison, George, 34
Harrison Narcotics Act, 135, 136
Harrison Narcotics Tax Act (1914), 37–38, 37f, 38, 39, 281
Hashish, 28, 41, 286, 288b, 313
defined, 28
Hash oil, 43t, 297, 313
defined, 297
Health
alcohol use, 250–252
cigarette smoking and, 178b
drug use and, 13b
heroin use, 265
marijuana use, 301–303
methamphetamine use, 144b
tobacco products, 177
See also specific drugs and effects
Heart, 85, 96, 148, 177
Heart rate, 92, 151, 280, 305
Heath, Dwight, 255b
Heavy drinking, 243–252
brain functioning, 246–247
effects on body systems, 245t
fetal alcohol syndrome, 248–250
health and, 250–252
liver, 247–248
overview, 243–246
reproductive functioning, 248
See also Alcohol abuse
Hemingway, Ernest, 239
Hemp, 286, 288–289
Henbane, 319, 340
Henderson, Hollywood, 138
Hendrix, Jimi, 325
Herbal products, 402–408
areca (Betel), 403
DHEA, 403
dietary supplements, 402–403, 408
ephedra/ma huang, 404
gamma hydroxybutyrate (GABA), 407
gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), 403
ginkgo biloba, 404
hormones, 402–408
kava, 404–405
kratom, 405–406

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Herbal products (*continued*)
S-adenosyl-methionine (SAM/SAMe), 406
St. John's wort, 403, 406
valerian, 406–407
Herbert, A. P., 171
Herbs, 366, 402–403
Hernandez, Fernando, 320
Herodotus, 287
Heroin, 10t, 17, 34, 37–38, 43t, 266b
addiction to, 17b, 267, 268b, 270, 274
administration routes, 84t
Afghanistan, 266b
age and, 10t, 267
classification, 6, 43t
crime and, 17b, 267
defined, 264
development of, 275
first synthesized in, 32
health risks, 268b, 270
history of use, 29–30, 32, 34, 263f, 264–265
medical uses, 30, 275–277
mimicking, 273–274
processing of, 265
Taliban and, 266b
teenagers and, 32
treatment, 438–439, 440b, *441,* 443, 445, 451, 454
in United States, 264–265, 267, 270–271, 280–281
See also Opiates
Hester, R. K., 422, 424t, 429, 432, 451
Hickey, Kenny, 429
High school seniors
anabolic steroids, 394, 398
cocaine, 139
LSD, 326
marijuana, 294–295, 296b
MDMA, 333, 341
PCP, 341
Hindbrain, 65–66
defined, 65
Hippocampus, 62b, 66f, 68–69
defined, 68
stress and, 62b
Hispanics, 13b, 223, 270
Hoffman, Philip Seymour, *271*
Hofmann, Albert, 323–325, 329, 344
Hogarth, William, 219, *220*
Homeostasis, 111, 112
defined, 111
Homeostasis hypothesis, 111
Hookah, 164
Hoover, Herbert, 38
Hormones, 402–408
Hospitals, treatment in, 38, 450
House of Lords (Britain), 292
Hubbard, R. L., 438, 441
Hughes, J. R., 171
Human behavioral pharmacology, 120–122
Human growth hormone (HGH), 395
Hunt, W. A., 446
Huxley, Aldous, 325
Hydrocodone, 43t, 269, 275t
Hypericum. *See* St. John's wort
Hypodermic needles, introduction of, 30, 278
Hypothalamus, 66f, 67
defined, 67

Ibogaine, 320t
Ibsen, Henrik, 135
Ibuprofen, 399, 400, 410
defined, 400
Immune system, 306
Incas, 132–133
Inciardi, J. A., 139, 140, 142, 335
India, 29, 197t, 263, 287, 297, 403
Indian Hemp Drugs Commission Report (1894), 291, 313
Inferior colliculi, 66, 66f
defined, 66
diagram, 66f
Inhalants, 81, *407,* 408–409
age and, 10t
chemical structure, 409t
common types of, 409t
Inhalation, 80–81, *82,* 83t
Inheritance of reaction to drugs, 105
Inhibitory neurotransmission, 370, 407
Initial sensitivity, 105, 114
defined, 105
Injection, 79–80
Innocent X, Pope, 162
An Inquiry into the Effects of Ardent Spirits upon the Human Body and Mind (Rush), 220
Institute of Medicine, 441, 443
Interact, defined, 96. *See also* Drug interactions
International issues
drug laws, 37
drug use, 12–14
See also Culture
International Narcotic Education Association, 290
International Olympic Committee, 394
International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 176
Internet, prescription drug sales on, 374b
Intoxication
alcohol, 17b
defined, 233
effects of, 244t, 256, 257
laws, 231
legal level, 228, 237
Intramuscular injection, 79, 83t
Intranasal drug administration, 81, 83t
Intrauterine device (IUD), 391t, 392b
Intravenous injection, 79–80, 80b, 83t, 134, 146, 168, *267*
Investigational New Drug (IND), 124
Ionotropic receptors, 55, 55f
defined, 55
diagram, 55f
Ions, 52–53, 55f
Ireland, 126, 196, 197t
Italy, 13, 338, 348

Jackson, Michael, *371*
James I, king of England, 162
Jamison, Kay Redfield, 381
Japan, 13, 136, 162, 176, 255b, 348
Japanese, and alcohol use, 255b
Jefferson Airplane, 325
Jimsonweed, 319, 340, 344
Johanson, C., 336
Johnson, Ben, 393–394
Johnson, R. K., 31
Joint, 295
Jones, Marion, 395b
Joplin, Janis, 278
Julia, H. L., 203t
Juliano, L. M., 200
"Just Say No" campaign, 461, 464

Kandel, D., 296b
Kapoun, J., 22
Katz, D. L., 397
Kava, 404–405
Kefauver-Harris Amendment (1962), 398
Kennedy, Patrick J., 20
Kesey, Ken, 325, 344
Ketamine, 32, 33b, 344
agonists and antagonists,58t
classification, 43t
defined, 341
effects of, 342
history of use, 341
pharmacokinetics, 341
Khat, 155b
"Kicking the habit," 280
Kid Rock, 12
Kirsch, I., 365b
"Kitchen" meth labs, 143
Klonopin, 368t, 382
Kober, 71b
Korsakoff's syndrome, 246–247, 257
Kranzler, H. R., 436, 437
Kratom, 405–406
Krippner, Stanley, 331b
Kuwait, 196, 197t

LAAM. *See* Levo-alphaacetylmethadol (LAAM)
Laborit, Henri, 350
LaGuardia, Fiorello, 290, 291
Laguardia Committee Report (1944), 291, 313
Lane, James D., 206
Langenbucher, J. W., 433, 435t
Laos, 266b
Laties, V. G., 149
Latin America
cocaine, 140, 141b
Rohypnol, 378b
roofies, 378b
war on drugs in, 140
Laws. *See* Legislation
L-dopa, defined, 61
Leary, Timothy, 32, 86, 325, 328, 344
Lebanon, 13
LeDain Commission, 291, 305
Le Dain Commission Interim Report, 116
Ledermann, Sully, 464
Ledger, Heath, 278, *279*
Leggio, L., 431, 437, 439
Legislation, 37f
alcohol prohibition, 38–39
controlled substances, 37f, 40–42
current drug, 40–46
drug products schedule, 43t
drug testing, 45b
effectiveness, 36
Harrison Narcotics Tax Act (1914), 37–38
historical development, 36
international, 37
major U.S. laws, 37f
marijuana, 30-31
opiates, 36–38, 265
post-prohibition, 39–40
Pure Food and Drug Act (1906), 36, 37f
San Francisco ordinance, 36
U.S., 29–34, 37f
war on drugs, 44b
Leith, Sam, 115
Lethal dose (LD), 94–96
alcohol, 96
barbiturates, 372
benzodiazepines, 375
caffeine, 207–208
defined, 95
sedation and, 95f, 368f
See also Overdose deaths
Leuchter, Andrew, 365b
Levenson, R. W., 107
Levo-alpha-acetylmethadol (LAAM), 440
defined, 440
for opioid dependence, 439t
Levy, B. I., 80
Lexapro, 363t, 365
LGBTQ+ people, 13
Librium, 86, 232, 367, 368t, 375
classification, 43t
Lichtenberg, Georg Christoph, 209
Licit and Illicit Drugs, 290
Life skills, 351
LifeSkills Training (LST), 475b
Light therapy, 366
Limbic system, 68–69
defined, 68
Lingeman, Richard, 331b
Lingford-Hughes, A. R., 439
Lithium, 350, 381–382, 384, 385

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Litten, R. Z., 439
Liver, 245t, 247–248
Lohan, Lindsay, 91
Lomotil, classification, 43t
Long-term memory, 234
Loratadine, 399, 401
Lorazepam, 368t, 376t
Lorillard Tobacco Company, 176
LSD, 32, 33b, 43t, 320–332
  administration routes, 84t
  adverse effects, 330–332
  agonists and antagonists, 58t, 326
  banned use, 32
  classification, 43t
  as club drug, 33b
  DEA and, 334
  discovered in , 323
  effects, 329–330
  history of use, 32, 320–326
  mechanism of action, 326–327
  overview, 320
  pharmacokinetics, 327
  psychotherapeutic uses, 328–329
  subjective effects, 331b
  tolerance, 327
Luce, Henry, 325
Lucky Strike, 172
Ludlow, Fitz Hugh, *The Hasheesh Eater,* 289
Luminal, 367t
  classification, 43t
Luvox, 365
Lynskey, M., 296b
Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD). *See* LSD

MacAndrew, C., 107
Macht, David, 349
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 70
  defined, 70
Ma huang, 404
Major League Baseball, 395, 395b
Managed care, 451
Mandrake, 319, 340
Mania, 355, 380, 382, 384
  lithium and, 385
Manic, 350, 380–381
  defined, 350
Manic-depressive disorder, 382
Manson, Charles, 332
Mantegazza, Paolo, 133
MAOIs. *See* Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs)
Mariani's Coca Wine, 135
Marihuana: The First Twelve Thousand Years (Abel), 287
Marihuana: Weed with Roots in Hell (film), 466
Marijuana, 10t, 43t, 286–313
  absorption, 298
  active ingredients, 297
  acute effects, 305
  age and, 10t
  aggression and, 291, 310, 311
  AMP, 312b
  behavioral effects, 308–309
  cachexia and, 301
  cardiovascular system, 306
  classification, 43t
  cognitive function, 309–310
  decriminalization of, 31
  dependence, 300–301
  as designer drug, 300b
  detection of, 88t
  dispensaries, 307
  distribution in body, 298
  drug expectancies and beliefs, 108
  embalming fluid combined with, 312b
  emotional effects, 310–311
  epidemiology, 292–295
  excretion, 298
  fat solubility, 85
  as gateway to other drugs, 296b
  glaucoma and, 301
  hashish study, 288b
  health effects, 303–304. *See also* Medicinal marijuana
  history of use, 30–31, 287–292
  immune system, 306
  legislation on, 30–31, 39
  longer-term effects, 305–307
  mechanism of action, 299–301
  medicinal uses, 30–31, 35, 39, 303–304, 304t
  metabolism and excretion, 298
  methods of use, 295–296
  overview, 286
  performance effects, 299–300
  pharmacokinetics, 297–298
  physiological effects, 305–307
  plant, *287*
  potency, 297
  prevalence of use, 292–295
  psychological effects, 308–312
  psychotherapeutic uses, 301–304
  range of elimination and detection times, 88t
  reports on, 291–292
  reproductive system, 306–307
  research findings, 299–300
  respiratory system, 306
  sex and, 309
  social/environmental effects, 109, 311–312
  synthetic, 32, 34, 43t, 46, 300b. *See also* THC
  THC, 297, 298
  therapeutic use history, 301–303
  tolerance, 300–301
  treatments for disorders, 303–304
  trends in use, 294f, 295f
  in 20th century, 286
  in United States, 288–291
  uses, 297
Marijuana and Health (National Institute on Drug Abuse), 292
Marijuana Tax Act (1937), 39, 291, 302
Marinol, 302
  classification, 43t
Marketing of drugs, 123t, 124–125
Marlatt, Alan, 446
Marsalis, Branford, 35
Mass media, 471–473
  defined, 471, 472
  education and, 471–473
  effectiveness, 473
  See also Warning labels
Mayan people, 322
Mazatec people, 42, 343
Maziak, W., 164
McCaffrey, Barry, 41
McCrady, B. S., 433, 435t
McGlothlin, W. H., 311
McGwire, Mark, 395b, 396
McLaughlin, Mignon, 181
McLellan, T., 439
MDA, 319, 333t, 334–335, 344
MDE, 333t, 335
MDMA (Ecstasy), 32, 33b, 43t
  administration routes, 84t
  classification, 43t
  cultural use of, 328b
  defined, 319
  effects, 335–337
  history and epidemiology, 334–335
  overview, 333–334
  residual effects, 337–339
  toxicity, 337
  types, 333t, 335b, 337b
Medellín, Colombia, 140
Medellín Cartel, 140
Media, 471–473
Medical science
  and drug use, 34–35
  and hangovers, 235b
Medicinal marijuana, 287, 303–304
Medulla oblongata, 65
  defined, 65
Mejia, Jenrri, 395b
Melatonin, 406
Mello, 12
Memory, 233, 234, 309, 338, 380. *See also* Anterograde amnesia; Blackout
Mendelson, 12
Meninges, 65
Mental illness. *See* Psychotherapeutic medications
Mephedrone, 144
Meprobamate, 351, 368t, 372, 375, 379b
Merck Pharmaceuticals, 334
Mescaline, 344
  classification, 43t
  defined, 319
  mechanisms of action, 326–327
  source of, 319, 320t, 321b
  See also Peyote
Mesolimbic dopaminergic pathway, defined, 68
Metabolism, 364
  alcohol, 230–231
  caffeine, 199
  defined, 76
  and drug elimination, 86
  marijuana, 298
  nicotine, 169
  opiates, 272–273
Metabotropic receptors, 55. 56f
  defined, 55
  diagram, 56f
Methadone, 276b, 439t, 454
  classification, 43t
  maintenance, 438, 439, 439t, 440, *441*
  major opiate comparison, 275t
Methamphetamine, 33b, 142–143
  classification, 43t
  as club drugs, 33b
  control acts, 143
  geography of, 143
  health risks, 144b
  as heroin treatment, 136
  labs, 143
  names for, 136t
  prevalence, 143
  sexual behaviour, 143
  social impact, 143
  users, 143
Methaqualone, 372–373, 376, 380, 385
  blackouts and, 380
  classification, 43t
  representative, 367t
  street names, 7
Methcathinone, 41, 132, 136t
  acute effects, 150
  classification, 41, 43t
  synthetic, *145*
  toxicity, 337
Methylated amphetamines, 333–339
  defined, 319
  effects, 335–337
  history and epidemiology, 334–335
  overview, 333–334
  psychotherapeutic uses, 339
  residual effects, 337–339
  toxicity, 337
  types, 333t, 335b, 337b
Methylenedioxypyrovalerone (MDPV), 144, 145
Methylphenidate, 41, 136t, 153, 155. *See also* Ritalin
Methylxanthines, 210
  therapeutic uses, 210t
Mexico, 13, 42, 140, 143, 265, 321b, 322, 343
Meyers, Annie C., 135

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Michelet, Jules, 209b
Midazolam, 368t, *371,* 376t
Midbrain, 65, 66–67, 66f
  defined, 65
Mifepristone, 393
Milieu treatment, defined, 428
Miller, Kathleen, 204b
Miller, William, 417
Miller, W. R., 422, 424t, 432
Milner, P., 68
Miltown, classification, 43t
Mimicry, 56
Minipill, 391
Models of prevention. *See specific models*
Models of Substance Use Disorder (SUD), 422–424
  biopsychosocial, 424
  categories, 422–424
  causes and treatments, 424t
  overview, 422
Moderation, as treatment goal, 426–427
Monoamine oxidase (MAO), 57, 322
Monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors, 235, 351, 362, 363
Monoamines, 60–61, 62
  defined, 60
Monophasic pills, 391
Montana Meth Project, 472–473
Mood
  alcohol and, 116
  amphetamines and, 61
  caffeine and, 202
  case example, 381
  cocaine and, 61, 147–148, 147f
  neurotransmitters and, 61
  See also Depression
Mood-stabilizing drugs, 380–382
Morales, Evo, 141b
Moral model, of substance abuse, 422–423, 450
Moreau, Jacques, 287, 302
Moreau de Tours, Jacques-Joseph, 349–350
Morning glory seeds, 320t, 321
Morpheus, 30
Morphine, 56, 58t, 62, 275t
  agonists and antagonists , 58t
  Civil War, use during, 30
  classification, 6, 43t
  defined, 29
  distribution in body, 272–273
  endogenous, 62, 274
  as "God's own medicine," or "G.O.M.", 30
  heroin converted to, 273
  medical uses, 34–35
  mimicry, 56
  use in the U.S., 30
Morton, William, 369, *370*
Mothers Against Drunk Driving (MADD), 236, 467b
Motivational enhancement therapy, 433, 435t
Motivation to change, 414–416
Mujahid, Abdul Hakeem, 266b
Multiphasic pills, 391
Murad IV, Sultan, 162
Muscarine, 60, 340
Muscimole, 340
Muscle relaxants, 351, 375
Mushrooms. *See* Fly agaric mushroom; Psilocybin
Muslims
  khat use, 155b
Musto, David F., 41
Myasthenia gravis, 59
Myelin, defined, 52
"Mystical-type" experiences, 330

Nabilone, 302
Nahas, G. G., 30, 287, 289
Naloxone, 274
  agonists and antagonists, 58t
  defined, 273
  reversible analgesia, 274
  safer use of, 268b
Naltrexone, 431t, 436–437, 439t, 441, 444
Naprosyn, 400
Naproxen, defined, 400
Narcolepsy, 407
Narcoleptic, defined, 350
Narcotic Addicts Rehabilitation Act (1966), 40
Narcotics
  defined, 29
  legislation on, 37–39, 37f
  use in the U.S., 30
Narcotics Anonymous (NA), 418, 420–421, 442, 454
Nathan, P. E., 476, 478b
National Academy of Sciences, 292, 304t
National Advisory Council on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism, 477
National Center for Health Statistics Public Use Multiple Cause of Death, 174
National Comorbidity Survey Replication (NCS-R), 352
National Formulary, 289, 302
National High School Senior Survey, 139
National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism, 224
National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA), 14, 139, 379b, 468, 471
National Minimum Drinking Age Act, 467b
National Organization for the Reform of Marijuana Laws (NORML), 30
National Prohibition Act (1920), 38
National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH), 9–11, 13, 252, 293, 294, 351, 352, 418
National survey studies, 11
Native Americans, 13, 161–162, 186, 220, 399
Nausea, marijuana as remedy for, 301, 303
Nazi Germany, 120, 394
Needle exchange programs, 480b
Needle sharing, 80b
Negative reinforcement, 115–116, 173, 280
Nerve gas, 340
Nervous system, 52, 63–65
  organizational structure of, 64f
Netherlands, 13, 196, 197t, 480b
Neural transmission, 53–56
  drug influence on, 56–59
  process, 54
Neurogenesis, 62b
Neuroleptics, 355, 357, 358, 384
  defined, 355
Neuromuscular junction, 59–60
  defined, 59
Neuron membrane, 55f
Neurons, 52, 53, 56, 58–59, 62b, 65
  defined, 52
  diagram of, 53f
Neuropsychological tests, 246
Neuroses, defined, 350
Neurotransmitters, 58t
  acetylcholine, 57, 58t, 59–60
  agonists and antagonists of major, 58t
  amino acid neurotransmitters, 63
  deactivation of, 57
  defined, 53
  depression and, 54
  diagram of, 54f
  endorphins, 56, 58t, 62
  lock-key analogy, 54
  monoamines, 60–61, 62
  other types of, 63
  overview, 53–54
New Drug Application, 123–124
New drug development, 122–126
  awaiting approval, 126b
  clinical trials and FDA approval, 123–124, 123t
  costs, 125
  distribution and marketing, 124–125
  FDA guidelines, 123, 123t
  generic drugs, 125–126, *126*
  overview, 123
  stages in, 123t
  See also Drug discoveries
New Orleans, 290
New Zealand, 13, 204b, 467b
Niaura, R. S., 478b
Nicholas, Czar of Russia, 135
Nicot, Jean, 162
Nicocodeine, classification, 43t
Nicotiana rustica, 160
Nicotiana tabacum, 160, 162
Nicotine, 160–186
  absorption, 168
  acute pharmacological effects of, 171–173, 172t
  administration routes, 84t
  agonists and antagonists, 58t
  blood levels, 170f, 173, 187
  caffeine interactions with, 202–206
  carbon monoxide, 175–176
  chronic use effects, 173–179
  dependence, 171, 173
  distribution in body, 168–169
  harm reduction and, 185b
  health and, 177, 178b
  history of tobacco use, 161–163
  isolation of, 163
  legislation and, 173
  metabolism and excretion, 169
  overseas use, 175b
  overview, 160–161, 186–187
  as panacea, 162
  passive use, 178–179
  pharmacokinetics, 168
  pharmacology, 167–169, 170f, 172t
  prevalence of tobacco use, 163–166
  sites of action, 167–168
  smokeless products, 165
  source of, 160–161
  tar, 175–176
  tolerance, 170
  toxicity, 176, 185b
  treatments for smoking, 179–186
  warnings, 174f
Nicotine poisoning, 168, 170
Nicotine replacement therapies (NRT), 182–183
Nigeria, 13, 197t
Nitrite inhalants, 408
Nitrous oxide, 367t, 369, 385, 409
N-methyl d-aspartate (NMDA), 341
Nodular, classification, 43t
Nonmedical use of prescription drugs, 12b, 28, 35
Nonopiate drug use disorder, treatment of, 438–439
Nonpharmacological professional treatment, 441–442
Nonphenothiazine antipsychotics, 355
Norepinephrine, 58t, 60–61, 64
  defined, 60
Norway, 196, 197t, 208, 228
Nuremberg Code, 120
Nutt, D. J., 144, 150

Obama, Barack, 142
Obesity Action Coalition (OAC), 418

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

O'Brien, R., 28
Oerter, Al, 398
Office of National Drug Control Policy, 416
Office of the Surgeon General, 171, 186
Olanzapine, 356t, 358, 359, 382
Olds, James, 68
Omnibus tobacco settlement, 178b, 184
Opiate receptors, 274, 276b
Opiates, 21, 262–281
  absorption, 272
  acute effects, 277–278
  addiction, 443
  administration effects, 269
  Afghanistan, heroin trade and, 266b
  antagonists for, 276b
  chronic use effects, 278–281
  classification, 6
  comparison of, 275t
  demographics of users, 265, 270
  dependence, 262, 280–281
  distribution in body, 272–273
  early history, 263
  epidemic, 270–272
  history of use, 263
  intake patterns, 279f
  interactions with, 277
  legislation, 36–38, 265
  mechanism of action, 273–275
  medical uses, 34–35, 275–277
  metabolism and excretion, 272–273
  in nineteenth-century, 263–265
  opiates and, 267
  pharmacokinetics, 272–273
  physiological effects, 277–278
  preparation of, 263
  prescription opiate abuse, 269
  psychological effects, 277–278
  range of elimination and detection times, 88t
  sex and, 267, 277
  tolerance, 279
  treatment, 264, 269, 270, 273, 274, 281
  withdrawal, 278t, 280–281
Opioids, 10t
  addiction, 38
Opium, 43t
  Afghanistan, *266,* 266b
  classification, 43t
  defined, 262
  as "God's own medicine," or "G.O.M.", 30
  history of use, 29–30
  preparation of, 263
  smoking of, 30, *30,* 36
  use in the U.S., 29–30
  See also Opiates
Opium dens, 36
Opium poppy, 30
  defined, 28
Opium Wars, 29, 263
Opponent process theory of motivation, 112, 447t
Oral administration, 78, 83t
Orford, J., 415
O'Shaughnessy, William, 287, 302
Osmond, Humphrey, 318
Osteoporosis, caffeine and, 208
Outpatient settings, 428, 429, 430
Overdose deaths, 137, 138, 139, 150, 271f, 335b. *See also* Lethal dose (LD)
Over-the-counter drugs, 398–402
  analgesics, 399–401
  cold and allergy medications, 401
  defined, 21
  drug abuse, 353
  FDA classification, 398–399
  sedatives, 401–402
  stimulants, 401–402
Oxycodone, 269, 275t
  classification, 43t
OxyContin, 12b
Owen, F., 143

Palmeiro, Rafael, 395b
Panama Canal Zone Military Investigations (1933), 291
Panic attacks, 145
  case example, 373–374
Paradoxical, defined, 111
Paraguay, 197t
Paranoid schizophrenia
  case example, 355–357
  defined, 355
Parasympathetic branch, defined, 64
Paregoric, classification, 43t
Parents, and prevention of substance abuse, 471–472
Parkinson's disease, 60–61, *62,* 67, 121, 210, 357
Paroxetine, 363t
Partnership for a Drug-free Greater New York, 461
Passive smoking, 178–179
Patent medicines, 31, *31,* 34, 37, 38
  defined, 30
  opiates and, *264*
Patients, dual-diagnosis, 446
Paton, W. D. M., 309
Paxil, 363t, 365
PCP. *See* Phencyclidine (PCP)
Peachey, J. E., 431
Peer self-help, 417–418
Penalties. *See* Criminal penalties
Pentobarbital, 367t, 370, 372
Percocet, 43t
Percodan, 269, 275t
  classification, 43t
Performance
  caffeine and, 202, 203t
  GHB, 407–408
  marijuana and, 299–300
  steroids, 394, 395b, 396, 405
  stimulants and, 149
Peripheral nervous system (PNS), defined, 64
Perkins, H. W., 183, 479
Perphenazine, 356t, 358
Personality
  addictive, 107
  characteristics, 106–107
  defined, 106
Personality disorders, defined, 446
Pert, Candace, 273
Pertwee, R. G., 309
Peru, 132, 141b, 323b
Peyote, 43t, 319
  classification, 43t
  consumption, 327
  defined, 29
  early history, 321
  religious use, 321b
  use in various cultures, 321b
  See also Mescaline
Pharmacodynamics, 76–77, 91–99
  and cultural factors, 97b
  defined, 76
  dose-effect curve, 91–94, 92f, 93f
  drug interactions, 96–99
  effective and lethal doses, 94–96, 94f, 95f
Pharmacokinetics
  alcohol, 86–87, 88t, 227–231
  anesthetic hallucinogens, 341–342
  caffeine, 199
  defined, 76
  drug absorption, 82–85
  drug administration, 78–82, *79,* 83t–84t
  drug distribution, 85–89
  drug dose, 77–89
  drug elimination, 86
  LSD-like drugs, 327
  marijuana, 85, 87, 88t, 108, 109, 111, 115, 297–298
  nicotine, 81, 82, *82,* 84t, 168
  opiates, 272–273
  overview, 76–77
  stimulants, 146
Pharmacology, 4, 5–8
  alcohol, 5–7, 84, 86–87, 88t, 91–92, 93f, 96–99, 226–231
  behavioral, 114–118
  caffeine, 198–199
  chemical reactions to, 6
  defined, 5
  drug classification, 6
  factors, 7
  nicotine, 81–82, *82,* 84t, 167–169, 170f
  opiates, 88, 88t
  overview, 21, 76–77
  pharmacokinetics and drug dose, 77–89
  See also Pharmacotherapy
Pharmacotherapy, 430–431, 439–441
  alcohol dependence, 430–431
  effectiveness, 431–432
  nicotine dependence, 82
  opioid dependence, 439t, 443–444
  other drug problems, 439–441
Phencyclidine (PCP)
  administration routes, 84t
  classification, 43t
  defined, 341
  effects of, 342
  history of use, 341
Phenergan, classification, 43t
Phenethylamines, 335b
Phenobarbital, 367t, 370
Phenothiazine antipsychotics, 355
Phenylpropanolamine (PPA), 401
Physician Leadership on National Drug Policy, 44b
Physiological effects
  alcohol, 233–236
  marijuana, 305–307
  opiates, 276b, 277–278
  stimulants, 148–149
Pipe smoking, 163, 175, 176
Pittler, M. H., 235
Placebo, 7
Placebo controls, 120–122
  defined, 120
Placebo effects, 120
  antidepressant medications and, 365b
  balanced design, 243b
  defined, 7
Placidyl, 367t, 372
  classification, 43t
Plan B emergency contraception pills, 393
Plant food, 144, 145
Pliner, P., 109
Poeppig, Edward, 133
Poland, 197t
Poland, R. E., 97
Polo, Marco, 28
Polydrug use, 11–12
  defined, 11
Polymorphism, defined, 437
Polysubstance abuse, 445–446
Pomerleau, C. S., 180
Pons
  defined, 65
  diagram, 66f
Pope, H. G., 332, 397
Positive reinforcement, 115, 116
Positron-emission tomography (PET), 70
  defined, 70
Posselt, W. H., 162
Posters, 461, *463,* 477, 479
Potency. *See* Drug potency
Potentiation, 96, 309, 379b, 386

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The Power of Positive Parenting, 472
Precision medicine, defined, 426
Pregnancy
alcohol use, 248–250
caffeine use, 199
cocaine use, 154b
marijuana use, 307
nicotine use, 174f, 177
psychotherapeutic drugs, 383–384
See also Birth control drugs
Prescription drugs, 390–398
anabolic steroids, 393–398
BALCO and, 395b
birth control drugs, 390–393
distribution of consumption model, 464–465
Internet sales, 374b, 405
nonmedical use of, 12b, 28, 35
opiate abuse, 270
overview, 390
steroids, types of, 396t
Presley, Elvis, 379b
Prevalence, defined, 10
Prevention
affect-oriented programs, 473–474
alternative behaviors, 474–475
college student programs, 477–480
current topics, 470–480
DARE, 475b, *476*
defining, 461
distribution of consumption model, 464–465
drinking age and, 467b
education and mass media efforts, 471–473
harm-reduction social policies, 480b
high-risk college drinking, 478t
models, 462–468
overview, 460, 480–481
principles, 468–470
proscriptive model, 466–468
resistance-skills training, 474–475
server interventions, 478b
sociocultural model, 462–464
temperament-based interventions, 475–476
warning labels and, 473b
worksite programs, 476–477
Preventure, 475–476
Priestley, Joseph, 369
Primary prevention, 461, 477, 481, 482
defined, 461
Prince, *272*
Problem behavior syndrome, 204b
Professional treatment, 425–427
Progesterone, 391, 393, 410
antagonist, 393
defined, 391
synthetic, 391
Progestin-only pills, 391
defined, 391
Prohibition, *39, 40, 41*
alcohol, 38–39
defined, 29
post-, 39–40
repeal of, 39
in United States, 466
Proof (alcohol), 217
Propofol, 367t, *371*
Proscriptive model of prevention, 459, *466,* 482
Prostaglandins, defined, 399
Protracted tolerance, 110, 113
defined, 110
Prozac, 20, 61, 183, 363t, 365, 366b
Pryor, Richard, 139
Pseudoephedrine, 401, 404, 410
defined, 401
Psilocybin, 344
classification, 43t
defined, 319
effects of, 329
history of use, 322
mechanisms of action, 327
psychotherapeutic uses, 328
sources of, 319, 320t
Psychedelics, 318
Psychoactive, defined, 7
Psychoactive drugs, 5, 7
Psychological dependence, 16–17
defined, 16
Psychological effects
of acute alcohol use, 239
caffeine, 201–202
marijuana, 308–312
opiates, 277–278
smoking, 172
steroids, 397
Psychological set, defined, 7
Psychological treatment, defined, 428
Psychology
alcohol dependence, 239
anabolic steroids, 397
defined, 5
drug experience and, 7
marijuana use, 308–312
smoking initiation, 165–166
See also Mood
Psychomimetics, 318
Psychomotor skills, 308
alcohol, 236
caffeine, 208
cannabis, 308
embalming fluid, 312b
indifference syndrome, 350
Psychopharmacology, 5, 19, 21, 349
defined, 5
influences of, 19
overview, 21
psychosis, 111
See also New drug development
Psychosurgery, 350
Psychotherapeutic medications, 347–385
antianxiety agents, types of, 367
antidepressant, types of, 360–366, 363t
antipsychotic, types of, 354–359, 356t
background, 348–349, 383–384
chlorpromazine era, 350–351
classification, 354
defined, 348
depressant, types of, 367t
dosage, 368f
dual-diagnosis patients, 446
epidemiology of mental illness, 351–354
herbs and, 366b
historical overview, 349–351
Internet pharmacies, 374b
kinetic classification, benzodiazepines, 376t
LSD, 32, 33b, 43t, 328–329
methylated amphetamines, 339
placebo effects, 365b
potentiation, 379b
pre-chlorpromazine era, 349–350
pregnancy, 383–384
right to refuse, 359b
roofies, 378b
See also specific drugs
Psychotherapy, 428, 430, 433
alcohol treatment, 431t. *See also* Psychotherapeutic medications
defined, 428
Psychotomimetics, 325
Public Health Service, 163
Public service announcements (PSAs), 472
Puerto Rico, 228, 244t
Punisher, defined, 115
Punishment, 115–116, 117, 118
Purdue Pharma, 269
Pure Food and Drug Act (1906), 36, 37f
Pylorospasm, 227

Quaaludes, 372–373, 379b, 385
representative drug, 367t
Qualitative, defined, 99
Quantum Change (Miller and C'de Baca), 417
Quetiapine, 356t, 358, 359, 382, 431

Race
and alcohol consumption, 8, 13b, 223t
cultural differences, and drugs, 92b
marijuana use, 294
and smoking, 164t
Rambis, Kurt, 89
Rational emotive behavior therapy, 421
Rave culture, 32
Raves, 335
Reagan, Ronald, *60*
Rebound insomnia, 371, 377, 380
defined, 371
Receptors
agonist of, 58
antagonist of, 58
beta-adrenergic, 64
defined, 54
excitatory, 55
ionotropic, 55, 55f
metabotropic, 55, 56f
Receptor sites, 54, 55f, 56, 58
defined, 54
diagram of, 55f
Recovery, 417–421
defined, 419
Recreational designer drugs, 34b
Red Bull, 193t, 204b–205b, 401
Red wine, 251
Reefer Madness (film), 466
Rehabilitation. *See* Treatment
Reimann, L. A., 162
Reinforcement, 115–116, 117, 118
Reinforcers, 115–116
defined, 115
Relapse, 415f, 446–449
defined, 180
major models and theories of, 447t
smoking, 180
Relapse prevention methods, 446–449
Religion
DMT, 323b
peyote and, 319, 321b
REM rebound, defined, 372
REM sleep, 234
Report of the Canadian Government's LeDain Commission (1972), 291
Reproductive functioning and alcohol, 248
Reproductive system, 306–307
Reserpine, 57, 61, 351, 362
Resistance-skills training, 474–475
Resources
on alcohol, 259
on alcohol and drug abuse, 25
on amphetamines, 157
on caffeine, 213
on cocaine, 157
on drugs and the nervous system, 73
on drug use, 49
on hallucinogens, 345
on marijuana, 315
on new drug development, 129
on nicotine, 189
on opiates, 283
over-the-counter drugs, 411
on pharmacology, 101
on prevention, 483
on psychopharmacology, 129
on smoking, 189

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

on steroids, 411
on stimulants, 157
on tobacco, 189
on treatment of substance use disorders, 456–457
Respiratory system, 306
Restoril, 368t, 377
classification, 43t
Resveratrol, 252
Reticular activating system, 65
Reuptake, 57
Reverse tolerance, defined, 111
Reward, neural basis of, 67–68
Reye's syndrome, 400
Rig-Veda, 340
Riley, Diane, 480b
Rimonabant, 302
Rinaldi, R. C., 5, 16–17
Risperdal, 356t, 358, 359
Risperidone, 356t, 358, 359
Ritalin, 41, 43t, 132, 136t
acute effects, 150
ADHD and, 111, 153–156
classification, 43t
Roche Laboratories, 375
Rockefeller, John D., 221
Rodriguez, Alex, 395b
Rohypnol, 33b, 368t, 378b
classification, 43t
Rolfe, John, 162
Romanowski, Bill, 395b
Roofies, 378b
Rosen, W., 4
Routes of drug administration
cocaine, 80, 81, 84t
defined, 7
general consideration, 82, 83t
heroin, *79,* 80, 81, 84t
inhalation, 80–81, *82,* 83t
injection, 79–80
intramuscular, 79, 83t
intranasal, 81, 83t
needles sharing and AIDS, 80b
oral, 78, 81–82, 83t, 84t
overview, 7, 78
sublingual, 81, 83t
transdermal, 81–82, 83t
Royal Society of Canada, 171
RU-486, 393
Rush, Benjamin, *An Inquiry into the Effects of Ardent Spirits upon the Human Body and Mind,* 220
Russell, M. A. H., 168
Russian Federation, 197t
Ryan Haight Online Pharmacy Consumer Protection Act (2008), 374b

S-adenosyl-methionine (SAM or SAMe), 406
Saloon, 220
Salvia (Salvinorin A), 343, 344
Salvia divinorum, 42
San Francisco, opium den ordinance in, 36
Sapirstein, G., 365b
Sativex, 302
Saudi Arabia, 4, 197t
Save Our Selves (SOS), 421–422
Sawyer, D. A., 203t
Scheduled drugs and drug products
Controlled Substances Act and, 41
examples of, 43t
Schizophrenia, 61, 355, 384
Schuster, Charles, 465
Scopolamine, 340
defined, 340
source of, 319
Scott, Walter, 264
Scythians, 287
Secobarbital, 6, 41, 367t, 370
Seconal, 41, 43t, 367t
classification, 43t
Secondary prevention, 461, 470, 481
defined, 461
Secondhand smoking, 178–179
Second-messenger molecules, 55, 56f
Second Opium War, 29
Secular Organizations for Sobriety (SOS), 421, 454
Sedative-hypnotic effects, 367
defined, 367
Sedatives, over-the-counter, 401–402
Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 362, 363
Self-administration studies, 115–116, 118, 119
defined, 115
Self-help groups, 417–422
Alcoholics Anonymous, AA, 418–421
drug treatment, 433–436
other, 421–422
overview, 417–418
twelve steps of AA, 419t
Self-help treatment, 433–436, 442
Self-Management and Recovery Training (SMART), 421, 435, 454
Self-reports, 245b
Sensation seeking, 106, *108*
Sensitization, 19, 111, 152
Sensorimotor effects of alcohol, 236
Serax, 368t
classification, 43t
Serenity Prayer, 421
Seroquel, 356t, 358, 382
Serotonergic hallucinogens, 320–332
adverse effects, 330–332
defined, 319
early history, 320–322
effects, 329–330
mechanisms of action, 327
pharmacokinetics, 327
psychotherapeutic uses, 328–329
recent history, 323–326
sources of, 320t
types, 320t, 321b, 323b, 328b, 331b
Serotonin, 58t, 60–61
agonists and antagonists, 58t
defined, 60
Serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), 362, 363
Seroxat, 365
Serturner, F. W., 264
Servers, of alcoholic beverages, 478b
Setting, drug effects influenced by, 438, 440b
Sexual activity
alcohol and, 241–243
anabolic steroid and, 396
birth control pills and, 391–392, 392b, 393
dose-curve effect and, 92–93, 93f
MAOIs, 364
marijuana and, 309
methaqualone and, 373
opiates and, 267, *277*
quaaludes and, 373
Sexual offenses, 17
Shakespeare, William, 241, 242
Shelley, Percy, 264
Shen Nung, 28, 195, 287, 301
Sher, K. J., 106–107
Short-term memory, 234
alcohol and, 239
defined, 234
impairments in, 246
Korsakoff's syndrome and, 246–247
Side effects
anabolic steroids, 396–398
antidepressants, 364–365
antipsychotic medications, 357–358
defined, 86
valium, 86
Siegel, R. K., 342
Single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), 70
Situational anxiety, 373
Sleeping pills, 367, 371–372, 377
Slope, 94
SMART, 421, 435, 454
Smith, D. E., 311
Smith, P., 366b
Smith, T. C., 369
Smokeless cigarettes, 185b
Smokeless tobacco, 166, 166t, *167,* 185b
Smokers Anonymous, 418
Smoking
age and, 164t
biological factors, 165–166
blood levels in, 170f
chronic effects, 173–179
gender and, 164t
harmful tobacco constituents, 175
health risks, 176–177
initiation of, 165–166
overseas, 175b
passive, 178–179
psychological factors, 165–166
quitting, 179–186
race/ethnicity, 164t
smokeless tobacco use, 166, 166t, *167*
social impact, 165–166
treatments, 179–186, 417
United States, 163–165
See also Nicotine; Tobacco
Smoking and Health: Report of the Advisory Committee to the Surgeon General, 163
Sniffing, 31–32, 81, *139*
Snorting, 81
Snuff, 81, 161, 322
acute effects, 169
chewing tobacco and, 168, 186
sensation, 165
virola, 323b
Snus, 161, 185b
Snyder, Solomon, 273
Sobell, L. C., 453
Sobell, M. B., 453
Social and environmental factors, 109
Social detoxification, 430
Social learning theory, 423, 429, 433, 445
Social norms approach, 462, 479, 481
Sociocultural models, 462–464
Sociological models, 254
Sociopathy, defined, 446
Soft drinks, 196, 198b, 204b, 209b
Soldier's disease, 30, 264
Solomon, Richard, 112
Solubility, 85
Solvents, 31
defined, 31
Solvent sniffing, *32*
Sopor, 372
South Africa, 13, 197t
Souza-Formigoni, Oliveira de, 205b
Spain, 13, 28, 29, 348
Speakeasy, *40*
defined, 39
Special populations, 13b, 443b
Spector, Ivan, 312b
Speed bugs, 137
Spontaneous remission, 414–415, 417, 432, 454
defined, 415

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Stages of change model, 416, 425, 454
Standard drink, 227, 228
  defined, 227
Stanford History of Education Group, 22
State-dependent learning, 149, 211, 234
  defined, 149
States, drug laws of, 30–31, 41, 43, 44b
Stepped care approach, 452–454
Steroids. *See* Anabolic steroids
Stevenson, Robert Louis, 135
Stimulant psychosis, 137, 144b, 150, 155
  defined, 137
Stimulants, 10f, 12b
  acute effects at high dose, 150
  acute effects at low/moderate doses, 148–149
  ADHD and, 153–156
  amphetamines, 31, 41, 136t
  behavioral effects, 6
  caffeine, 132
  chronic use effects, 144b, 150–152
  classification, 6
  cocaine, 136t, 151b
  cognitive performance, 149, 152
  controlled, 132, 136t
  defined, 132
  dependence, 152
  dextroamphetamine, 136, 136t
  khat and, 155b
  mechanism of action, 146–148
  mephedrone, 136t
  methamphetamine, 136t
  methylphenidate, 136t
  nicotine, 132
  over-the-counter, 132, 143, 401–402
  pharmacokinetics, 146
  physiological effects, 148–149
  tolerance, 151–152
  types, 149
St. John's wort, 366b, 406, 410
Stress response dampening (SRD) model, 106–107
Students Against Drunk Driving (SADD), 236
Subcutaneous injection, 79, 83t
Subgroups, of drug use, 114, 164
Sublingual drug administration, 81, 83t
Substance abuse
  DSM criteria, 15–17, 18, 18t
  models of causes and treatments, 450
  models of prevention of, 462–465
  models of use disorders, 415f, 422–424
  See also Alcohol abuse; Drug abuse; Models of Substance Use Disorder (SUD); Treatment
Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA), 9
  marijuana report, 293, 294f, 295f
Substance dependence, DSM criteria for, 16
Substantia nigra, 66–67
  defined, 66
Substitution, in drug testing, 88
Sudafed, 401
Sudden sniffing death syndrome, 32
Suicide
  accidental, 96
  alcohol and, 240, 478t
  antidepressants and, 360, 364–365, 372, 376
  barbiturates and, 372
  college students and, 240, 478t
  cyclics and, 364–365
  depression and, 360, 372, 376
  heroin, 378b
  LSD and, 325, 332
Superior colliculi, defined, 66
Supplements, dietary, 402–408
Surgeon General. *See* Office of the Surgeon General
Surgical anesthesia, 271, 319, 367, *370*, 371
Suspended, defined, 79
Sweden, 136, 185b, 197t
Swift, R., 439
Switzerland, 197t, 323
Sydenham, Thomas, 262
Sympathetic branch, defined, 64
Sympathomimetic, defined, 64
Synapses, 53–55, 57, 59, 64–65
  defined, 53
  diagram of, 54f
Synaptic gap, 54f
Syndrome, defined, 19
Synergism
  defined, 96
  dose-effect curve, 98f
Synesthesia, 329
Synthetic cannabinoids, 34b
Synthetic Drug Abuse Prevention Act, 34b, 44, 45
Synthetic marijuana, 32, 34, 43t, 46

Taliban, 266b
Tancer, M., 336
Tar, 175–176
Tardive dyskinesia, 358, 385
  defined, 358
Taylor, Walter Stephen, 473b
Tea, 193t, 197t. *See also* Caffeine
Tea-pads, 290–291
  defined, 290
Tegretol, 382
Teichmann, Bernadette, 237
Telehealth, 449b
Temazepam, 368t, 377
Temperament-based interventions, 475–476
Temperance movement, 220–221
Temposil, 430
Teratogenic, defined, 383
Teratology, 248
Terminal buttons, 53–54, 56, 57
  defined, 53
Tertiary prevention, 461, 482
  defined, 461
Testosterone, 393, 394, 396, 403, 410
  defined, 393
Tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), 58, 145, 272, 286, 297–299, 310, 313
Tetrahydrogestrinone (THG), 395b
Thalamus, 67
  defined, 67
Thalidomide, 126
THC, 58, 145, 272, 286, 297–299, 310, 313
Theobromine, 192, 210t
Theophylline, 192, 210t, 404
Therapeutic community (TC), 438, 442t
Therapeutic index
  defined, 96
  of lithium, 382
Therapeutic uses of drugs
  alcohol, 232–233
  caffeine, 210, 210t
Third-hand smoke, 179, 184
Thompson, Hunter S., 106, 326
Tiagabine, 382
Tilden and Co., 289
Tilden's Extract of Cannabis Indica, 289
Tobacco, 10t
  advertising, 172, 177, 178b, *181*, 184
  chronic use effects, 173–179
  constituents of, 160, 175
  early medical uses, 162–163
  history of use, 161–163
  legislation on, 164–165
  as panacea, 162
  plants producing, 160
  prevalence of use, 163–167
  smokeless, 44, 166, 166t, *167*
  types, 160–161
  warning labels, 178b
  West and, 161–162
  See also Nicotine; Smoking
Tobacco industry, 178b
Tolerance, 16
  alcohol, 110–111, 113b, 231–232
  barbiturates, 111, 371
  benzodiazepines, 375, 377, 379
  caffeine, 112, 200
  cell adaptation theory, 111–112
  chronic use and, 151–152
  defined, 18
  drug-use patterns, 19
  DUI laws and, 113b
  explanations of, 18–20, 111–114
  final notes on, 113–114
  importance of, 111
  learned, 110
  LSD-like drugs, 118
  marijuana, 111, 300–301
  opiates, 279
  reactions and learning, 112–113
  reversibility of, 113
  stimulants, 110
  types, 110–111
Topamax, 382
Topiramate, 382, 431
Torrey, Jesse, 162
Toxicity
  alcohol, 243
  bath salts, 145
  benzodiazepines, 375
  botulinum, 59
  caffeine, 206–207
  cocaine, 151b
  GHB, 407–408
  inhalants, 408–409
  kava, 405
  MDMA, 337
  methylated amphetamines, 337
  neonatal, 383. *See also* specific drugs
  serotonin, 338
Trait anxiety, 373
Trall, R. T., 163
Tranquilizers, 31, 41, 355, 406
Transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS), 366
Transdermal drug administration, 81–82, 83t
Tranxene, 368t, 386
  classification, 43t
Treatment, 179–186
  abstinence or moderation, 426–427
  accessibility, 423, 443b, 451
  alcohol treatment settings and services, 428–430
  assessment and goals, 425–427
  behavioral programs, 181–182, 436–437
  biopsychosocial model, 424

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

change without formal treatment, 180–181, 417
cigarette smoking, 179–186
defined, 414
dual-diagnosis patients, 446
economic factors, 450–452
effectiveness, 181–183, 431–432, 435t, 441, 442t
harm reduction, 427
Ibogaine, 320t
interventions, 434b
model of process, 415f
models of causes and treatment methods, 450
models of substance-use disorders, 422–424
motivation to change, 415–416
nicotine replacement therapies, 182–183
nonmedical, 435t
nonopiate drug abusers, 438–439
nonpharmacological, 432–433, 441–442
opiates, 273, 274
other drug treatment settings and services, 438–445
overview, 186–187, 410, 454–455
patient matching, 425–426, 428, 433, 442
patient-matching, 454
pharmacological, 430–431, 436–437, 443–444
polysubstance abuse, 445–446
promising techniques, 433, 444–445
relapse, 415f, 446–449
research and practice, 426, 444b
self-help groups, 417–422
special populations, 443b, 445–449
special topics in, 445–449
stepped care approach, 452–454
See also specific treatment groups
Treatment effects, 435t, 445
alcohol, 432–433
defined, 445
drug, 441
nonmedical for alcohol use disorders, 435t
pharmacological, 430–431
therapeutic community and outpatient, 442t
Treatment outcome research, 432
defined, 432
Treaty of Nanking, 29
Triazolam, 368t, 376t, 377, 380
Tricyclic antidepressants, 362, 363–365, 363t, 380
Trilafon, 356t, 358
Troisi, J. R., II, 118
Turin, A. C., 203t
Twain, Mark, 85, 164, 180
Twelve Steps, 418–420, 419t, 421
Twelve Steps and Twelve Traditions, 420
Twenty-first Amendment, 38
Tylenol, 194t, 400
classification, 43t

Uhl, G. R., 184
Ukraine, 13
Unacceptable drinking, 463
United Arab Emirates, 197t
United Kingdom, 20, 197t, 297, 348, *464,* 480b
United Nations, 141b, 266b, 292
United Nations Single Convention on Narcotic Drugs (1961), 46
United States, 13, 197t
alcohol and drug use, 8–15, 9b
alcoholic beverages, 222–223
caffeine consumption, 196
drug legislation, 35–46, 37f
drug use in, 29–34
harm reduction, 480b
marijuana cultivation and use, 289–291
nonmedical use of prescribed drugs, 12b
smoking prevalence, 163–165
United States Pharmacopeia, 289, 302
Urban VIII, Pope, 162
U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), 174, 184, 270, 271f
U.S. Congress, 253b, 292
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 9
Users, 5, 18t
age and, 105
biological characteristics, 105
expectancies and beliefs of, 107–108
gender and, 105
inherited differences, 105
psychological characteristics, 106–107
weight and, 105
U.S. Office of the Surgeon General, 171, 186
U.S. Supreme Court, 253b, 323b

Vaginal ring, 392–393
Valerian, 406–407
Valium, 63, 85, 86, 98, 125, 232, 367, 368t, 375, 376t, 379b. *See also* Benzodiazepines
classification, 43t
Valmid, 368t
Valproic acid, 382
Values clarification, 473
Van Ittersum, K., 245b
Van Kirk, J., 436, 437
Vaping, 295
Varenicline, 183
Venezuela, 197t
Verne, Jules, 135
Veronal, 370
Versed, 368t, *371,* 376t, 377
Verster, J. C., 235
Vesicles
defined, 56
drug action and, 57t
monoaminergic, 61
Vicodin, 269, 270, 275t
Vietnam War, 32
Vietnam war veterans, 32, 281
Violence
alcohol and, 239–241, *240. See also* Aggression
cocaine distribution and, 141
Virola tree, 320t, 321b
Vivarin, 194t
Vogel-Sprott, M., 108
Volstead, Andrew, 38
Volstead Act (1920), 38, 221, 290
Vomiting, marijuana as remedy for, 303
Vyvanse, 153

Wallace, David Rains, 217
Walsh, B. T., 121, 451
Wansink, B., 245b
Ward, A. S., 151
Warning labels, 178b, 204b, 365, 473b
War on drugs, 44b, 480b
Washington, George, 288, 314
Water pipes, 295
Websites
evaluation of, 21–22, 22t
Google, 21
Weight, reaction to drugs influenced by, 105
Weight gain
alcohol and, 234
anabolic steroids and, 396
smoking and, 172, 180
tricyclics and, 364
Weight Watchers, 418
Weil, A., 4
Weiss, B., 149
Weller, Ian, 125
Wells, Horace, 369
Wender, Paul, 364
Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, 246–247
Wernicke's disease, 244, 246
West, L. J., 311
Westermeyer, Joseph, 443
Wilkinson, Rupert, 462, 463
Williams, Ricky, 425
Wilson, G. T., 180
Wilson, Woodrow, 38
Winder, A. E., 471
Wine, 216–217, *217,* 218t, *251,* 251–252
Withdrawal, 16
alcohol, 30
barbiturates, 371–372
benzodiazepine, 377
caffeine, 200–201
defined, 19
drug-use patterns, 19
importance of, 19
marijuana, 300–301
opiates, 278t, 280–281
sleeping pills, 386
symptoms, 19
Valium, 377
See also Dependence
Wolfe, T., 325
Woloshin, S., 174
The Women's Petition Against Coffee, 196
Women for Sobriety (WFS), 421
Women's Christian Temperance Union, 38
Worksite prevention programs, 476–477
World Health Organization (WHO), 5, 6, 13, 174, 244, 292
"World Mental Health Survey," 13
World War I, 221
World War II, 31, 136, 177, 255b
Wright, Alder, 264

Xanax, 63, 98, 368t, 376t, 378, 380
classification, 43t
Xyrem, 408

Yamaguchi, K., 296b
Yopo, 320t

Zeldox, 356t, 358
Zero-tolerance laws, 41, 44, 237–238
Zero tolerance policies, 41, 44, 480b
Ziglar, Zig, 432
Ziprasidone, 356t, 358
Zola, Emile, 135
Zoloft, 365
Zolpidem, 367t, 380
Zombie powder, 340
Zuckerman, M., 106, 154b
Zyprexa, 356t, 358, 359, 382

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2022 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.